ENGLISH LANGUAGE BOOK SOCIETY

# ORGANIC

VOLUME ONE

The Fundamental Principles

I. L. FINAR

LOW-PRICED TEXTBOOK





# ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

A Man would do nothing, if he waited until he could do it so well that no one would find fault with what he has done.

CARDINAL NEWMAN.



# Some Titles in the E.L.B.S. Low-priced Textbook Series

#### CHEMISTRY

Barnett and Wilson. Inorganic Chemistry. Longmans, 15s.
Emeléus and Anderson. Modern Aspects of Inorganic Chemistry.
Routledge, 12s.

Finar. Organic Chemistry. Longmans. Volume I, 18s., Volume II, 18s. Kipping and Kipping. Organic Chemistry. Chambers. Parts I and II, 9s., Part III, 9s.

Mee. Physical Chemistry. Heinemann, 12s.

Mellor and Parkes. Modern Inorganic Chemistry. Longmans, 15s.

Partington. A Textbook of Inorganic Chemistry. Macmillan, 12s.

Vogel. A Textbook of Quantitative Inorganic Analysis. Longmans, 21s.

#### CHEMICAL TECHNOLOGY

Coulson and Richardson. Chemical Engineering. Pergamon Press. Volume 1, 15s., Volume 11, 21s.

#### PHYSICS

Besant and Ramsey. A Treatise on Hydromechanics. Bell. Parts 1 and 11, 18s.

Born. Atomic Physics. Blackie, 15s. Ditchburn. Light. Blackie, 21s.

Duncan and Starling. A Textbook of Physics. Macmillan, 12s. Elton. Introductory Nuclear Theory. Pitman, 15s.

Ramsey. Statics. Cambridge, 9s.

Ramsey. Dynamics. Cambridge. Part 1, 9s., Part 11, 9s. Richardson. Sound. Arnold, 12s.

Roberts. Heat and Thermodynamics. Blackie, 15s.

Starling. Electricity and Magnetism for Degree Students. Longmans, 12s. Starling and Woodall. Physics. Longmans, 21s.

# ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

VOLUME ONE
THE FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES

By

I. L. FINAR

B.Sc., Ph.D.(Lond.), A.R.I.C.

Senior Lecturer in Organic Chemistry, Northern Polytechnic, Holloway, London



# LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO LTD 48 Grosvenor Street, London, W.1

Associated companies, branches and representatives throughout the world

© I. L. Finar 1959; 1963

First published 1951
Second Edition 1954
Second impression 1955
Third impression 1956
Fourth impression 1957
Third Edition 1959
Second impression 1960
Third impression 1960
Fourth impression 1961
Fourth Edition 1963
Second impression 1964

The third impression of the second edition of this book was retitled Organic Chemistry Volume One: The Fundamental Principles, as a second volume, dealing with Stereochemistry and the Chemistry of Natural Products, is now published and is designated Volume Two.

Third edition first published for E.L.B.S. 1961
Second impression 1962
Fourth edition published for E.L.B.S. 1964

1785 Rs. 1440 T

S.C.BR.T. W.B. LIBRARY

Dan

Acca No. 9576

Printed in Great Britain by Richard Clay and Company, Ltd., Bungay, Suffolk

# PREFACE TO THE FOURTH EDITION

This book has been revised to bring it up to date. At the same time I have rewritten many sections on mechanisms, the added material being an elementary account of the sort of evidence that has led workers to suggest the mechanisms that are acceptable at the present time. This treatment should be more interesting to the reader, and will give him a better under-

standing of this branch of organic chemistry.

Expanded subjects include quantum numbers, resonance, free radicals, r,2-shifts, allylic rearrangements, substitution at a saturated carbon atom, Walden inversion, hyperconjugation, the Diels-Alder reaction, aromaticity, aromatic substitution, configuration of oximes, etc. Additional matter includes shapes of molecules, structure and reactivity, transition state theory of reactions, correlation and specification of configuration, ion-pairs, neighbouring group participation, molecular overcrowding, mechanisms of hydrolysis and esterification, Wittig reaction, hydroboronation, kinetically and thermodynamically controlled products, principle of microscopic reversibility, methylenes, Newman projection formulae, new reagents, etc.

A great deal of the mechanistic work is given in small print. This has been done to keep the book within a reasonable size. The various modifications of nomenclature by the *Chemical Society* have been described in the appropriate places in the text, but I have not used many of them since the cost of resetting so many names would have increased the price of the book out of proportion to the advantage gained. Since a summary of nomenclature; including some of the changes, has been given in the Appendix, the

reader should not have any difficulties with this problem.

I. L. FINAR

December, 1961



# PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

THE fourth impression of this book (1956) was retitled Organic Chemistry Volume One: The Fundamental Principles, and since then Volume Two: Stereochemistry and the Chemistry of Natural Products (1956) has appeared. The latter volume is, in effect, a continuation of the former, and so some material that has been described in this volume (I) in a relatively elementary manner, particularly Stereochemistry, has been dealt with far more fully in

Volume II.

Volume I has now been revised in order to bring it up to date. This has meant rewriting many sections, and at the same time I have made some additions which, I hope, will improve the value of this book. It may be useful if I indicate briefly the more important changes I have made in this new edition. Rewritten and expanded subjects include dipole moments, resonance, SI and S2 mechanisms, steric effects, tautomerism, hyperconjugation, organolithium compounds, stereochemistry, Diene synthesis, carbohydrates, aromatic substitution, transition state, and heterocyclic compounds. Additions include the use of isotopes, molecular diagrams, molecular crowding, E1 and E2 mechanisms, inclusion complexes, conformation, ferrocene, cycloalkynes, paracyclophanes, ortho-para ratio in aromatic substitution, and cine-substitution.

In addition to these changes, I have added many mechanisms for various reactions and at the same time have used the more recent methods of writing mechanisms. I have also rewritten aromatic systems with double bonds.

Once again I wish to thank those reviewers, correspondents and many of my students who have pointed out errors and have made suggestions for improving the book.

I. L. FINAR.

October, 1957.

# PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

The aim of this book has remained unchanged. Since I do not consider the chemistry of natural products fundamental chemistry but rather the application of fundamental principles, I have excluded almost completely the study of natural products. It is my hope, however, to write a companion volume in which I shall deal with further aspects of stereochemistry and also with the chemistry of many classes of natural products.

In this second edition, I have taken the opportunity to correct various errors in the text. I wish to thank those reviewers, correspondents and many of my students who brought these errors to my notice, and also made

suggestions for improving the book.

In this edition I have used the alphabetical order of naming prefixes, and I have described the older method on p. 784. The principal additions include a more detailed account of molecular orbital theory, some further aspects of stereochemistry, various heterocyclic compounds, and a number

of dyestuffs.

My original intention was to deal with molecular orbital theory in the future companion volume. I came to the conclusion, however, that the treatment of this subject is best dealt with in this book. I have therefore given an elementary account of molecular orbitals in Chapter II, and I have discussed their applications throughout the text alongside the resonance theory so that the student can gain some knowledge of both theories. In order to keep the size of this book within reasonable limits, I have used smaller type for much of the additional matter.

It is impossible to express my indebtedness to those authors of monographs, articles, etc., from which I have gained so much information. I can only hope that some measure of my gratitude is expressed by the

references I have given to their works.

I. L. FINAR.

1953



## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION

In this book my aim has been to describe the fundamental principles of organic chemistry. Although the book has not been written with any particular examination in view, nevertheless the subject matter covers most of the organic chemistry required for the General Honours degree of the London University. It also covers a large amount of the organic chemistry of Part I of the Special Honours degree in chemistry of the London University, and a number of sections of this book should serve as an introduction to Part II.

To many beginners organic chemistry may seem to consist of a large variety of methods and reactions which appear to be isolated and, consequently, only to be learned by heart. After many years' experience of teaching organic chemistry to degree students, I have found that the best method of instruction is by the introduction of electronic theories as early as possible, with a constant application of their principles. These electronic theories give to organic chemistry a certain coherence that is soon appreciated by the beginner, and thus facilitate his study in this branch of chemistry. Stress has been laid on structural formulæ, properties of compounds, and reaction mechanisms. Special attention has been given to the systematic nomenclature of organic compounds. The alphabetical order of naming prefixes was adopted by the Chemical Society in April, 1950. This book was completed before this date and so this method has not been used. The reader, however, should have no difficulty in locating a compound in the index.

It is my experience that only a fairly detailed study of this subject matter enables the student to appreciate the problems involved. Too short an account usually leaves the impression that "everything works according to plan". This is undesirable for those who are expected to acquire a certain amount of factual knowledge and at the same time learn to think for themselves. I have therefore included detailed discussions on developments of a straightforward nature and also of a controversial nature, in the hope of encouraging the student to weigh up the evidence for himself. This will also give him an idea of some of the problems being investigated at the present time, and will show him that many "facts" are subject to change. Controversial material and the more advanced sections have generally been printed in small type.

Only by reading original papers in which are described the "whys and wherefores" can the student hope to gain a more mature outlook. A selected number of reading references have therefore been given at the end of each chapter. Since summaries of various topics by workers in special fields are of great value in extending the student's knowledge, references of this type have also been included. An account of the literature of organic

chemistry has been given in an appendix.

In describing methods of preparation of various compounds, I have given, wherever possible, actual percentage yields (taken mainly from *Organic Syntheses*). The student will thus be enabled to assess the value of a particular method. Where general methods of preparation have been described, the yields have been indicated according to the following (arbitrary) scheme:

0-15% very poor (v.p.); 16-30% poor (p.); 31-45% fair (f.); 46-60% fairly good (f.g.); 61-75% good (g.); 76-90% very good (v.g.); 91-100% excellent (ex.).

At the end of each chapter there are questions designed to test the student's "book knowledge" and to test the application of his book knowledge. At the end of the book there are also fifty questions chosen from various examinations—B.Sc. General and Special Honours of the University of London, and the Associateship and Fellowship of The Royal Institute of Chemistry. I should here like to thank these Examining Boards for permission to reproduce these questions.

It is hoped that the method of presentation in this book will stimulate the reader's interest in organic chemistry and enable him to read with understanding original papers and monographs covering specialised fields.

I should like to acknowledge the valuable help given me by Mr. K. Merton in reading the manuscript and by Miss A. B. Simmonds, B.Sc., Ph.C., A.R.I.C., in reading the proofs.

I. L. Finar.

July, 1950.



# LIST OF JOURNAL ABBREVIATIONS

ABBREVIATIONS.

JOURNALS.

Angew. Chem.

Angewandte Chemie (the name Die Chemie was used for vol. 55, 1942, to vol. 58, 1945).

Ann. Reports (Chem. Soc.)

Annual Reports of the Progress of Chemistry (The

Chemical Society, London).

Ber.

Berichte der Deutschen Chemischen Gesellschaft (name now changed to Chemische Berichte).

Chem. Eng. News

Chemical and Engineering News (American Chemical

Society).

Chem. Reviews

Chemical Reviews.

Chem. and Ind. Helv. Chim. Acta Chemistry and Industry. Helvetica Chimica Acta.

Ind. Eng. Chem.

Industrial and Engineering Chemistry.

Ind. Eng. Chem. (Anal. Ed.)

Industrial and Engineering Chemistry (Analytical Edition) [name now changed to Analytical Chemistry].

Ind. Eng. Chem. (News Ed.)

Industrial and Engineering Chemistry (News Edition).

J. Amer. Chem. Soc.

Journal of the American Chemical Society.

J. Chem. Educ.

Journal of Chemical Education.

J.C.S.

Journal of the Chemical Society. Journal of Organic Chemistry.

J. Ovg. Chem.

J. Roy. Inst. Chem.

J. Soc. Dyers and Col.

Journal of the Royal Institute of Chemistry.

J.S.C.I.

Journal of the Society of Chemical Industry.

Journal of the Society of Dyers and Colourists.

Nature

Nature.

Proc. Chem. Soc.

Proceedings of the Chemical Society.

Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.)

Quarterly Reviews of the Chemical Society (London).

Rec. trav. chim.

Recueil des Travaux Chimiques des Pays-Bas.

Research

Research.

Science

Science.

Tetrahedron

Tetrahedron.

Trans. Faraday Soc.

Transactions of the Faraday Society.

# CONTENTS

PAGE		all and the
X	JOURNAL ABBREVIATIONS	LIST OF
I	TITTE OF TIOTEON	CHAPTI
	Historical Introduction, 1. Analysis of Organic Compounds, 2. Structural Formulæ and Isomerism, 7. Saturated and Unsaturated Compounds, 8. Classification of Organic Compounds, 8.	1.
10	STRUCTURE OF THE ATOM	II.
	Structure of the Atom, 10. Electronic Theory of Valency, 11. Chelate Compounds, 14. Dipole Moments, 14. Electron Displacements in a Molecule, 15. Effect of Structure on Reactivity, 21. Hydrogen Bond, 21. Atomic and Molecular Orbitals, 22. Hybridisation of Bond Orbitals, 25. General Nature of Organic Reactions, 31. Principle of Microscopic Reversibility, 32. Kinetically and Thermodynamically Controlled Products, 32. Transition State Theory of Reactions, 33. Use of Isotopes in Organic Chemistry, 35.	
	ALIPHATIC COMPOUNDS	
38	PARAFFINS	III.
	Some Individual Paraffins, 38. Nomenclature of the Paraffins, 44. Homologous Series, 47. General Methods of Preparation, 48. General Properties, 52. General Reactions, 54. Petro-Leum and Natural Gas, 56. Cracking, 58. Synthetic Fuels, 60.	
62	UNSATURATED HYDROCARBONS	IV.
	OLEFINS: Nomenclature, 62. Preparation, 63. Reactions, 65. Polymerisation and Plastics, 77. Some Individual Olefins, 80. UNSATURATED COMPOUNDS WITH TWO OR MORE DOUBLE BONDS: Nomenclature, 83. Isolated Double Bonds, 83. Cumulated Double Bonds, 84. Thiele's Theory of Partial Valencies, 85. M.O. Treatment of Butadiene, 88. Molecular Diagrams, 89. ACETYLENES: Nomenclature, 90. Acetylene: Preparation, 90. Reactions, 91. Effect of Hybridisation on Electronegativity of a Carbon Atom, 96. Homologues of Acetylene, 97.	
100	HALOGEN DERIVATIVES OF THE PARAFFINS .	V.
	Nomenclature, 100. ALKYL HALIDES: Preparation, 100. 1,2-Shifts, 101. Reactions, 105. S <sub>N</sub> 1 and S <sub>N</sub> 2 Mechanisms, 106. Polar Effects, 107. Steric Effects, 107. Solvent Effects, 109. Ion pairs, 109. Elimination Reactions, 111. Some Individual Members, 114. DIHALOGEN DERIVATIVES: Preparation, 115. Reactions, 115. Some Individual Members, 116. TRIHALOGEN DERIVATIVES: Chloroform, 116. Bromoform, 118. Iodoform, 118. Polyhalogen Derivatives: Carbon Tetrachloride, 118. Tetrachloroethane, 119. Hexachloroethane, 119. Fluorine Derivatives, 120.	
124	MONOHYDRIC ALCOHOLS	VI.
	Nomenclature, 124. Preparation, 124. Reactions, 128. Methods of Distinguishing Between the Three Classes of Alcohols, 132. Some Individual Members, 133. Determination of Structure, 136.	
	A. C.	

ii		CONTENTS	PAGE
	CHAPTER	ETHERS	140
	VII.	Nomenclature, 140. Preparation, 140. Reactions, 141. Some Individual Members, 143.	
	VIII.	ALDEHYDES AND KETONES	145
		Nomenclature, 145. Preparation of Aldehydes and Ketones, 146. Reactions common to Aldehydes and Ketones, 149. Reactions Given by Aldehydes Only, 160. Reactions Given by Ketones Only, 162. Some Individual Members, 164. Chloral, 167. Pinacol-Pinacone Rearrangement, 171. Bridged-ions, 172.	
	IX.	FATTY ACIDS	174
		FATTY ACIDS: Nomenclature, 174. Preparation, 175. Reactions, 176. Some Individual Members, 179. ESTERS: Nomenclature, 186. Preparation, 187. Reactions, 191. Ortho-Esters, 194. Esters of Inorganic Acids, 195. ACID CHLORIDES: Nomenclature, 197. Preparation, 197. Reactions, 198. Acetyl Chloride, 200. ACID ANHYDRIDES: Nomenclature, 201. Acetic Anhydride, 201. ACID AMIDES: Nomenclature, 203. Preparation, 203. Reactions, 204. HYDROXAMIC ACIDS, 207. IMDIC ESTERS AND AMIDINES, 208. ACID HYDRAZIDES AND ACID AZIDES, 209. HALOGENO-ACIDS: Nomenclature, 210. Preparation, 210. Reactions, 212. Some Individual Members, 213.	
	X.	TAUTOMERISM	216
		Tautomerism, 216. Estimation of Enol Content, 218. Enolisation, 220. Modern Theories of Tautomerism, 221. Preparation of Acetoacetic Ester, 224. Reactions, 225. Acetoacetic Ester Syntheses, 227. Malonic Ester Syntheses, 232. Hydroxyaldehydes and Hydroxyketones: Principal Function, 235. Names of Prefixes and Suffixes of Functions, 235. Some Individual Hydroxyaldehydes and Hydroxyketones, 236. Dialdehydes: Some Individual Members, 238. Diketones: Some Individual Members, 240. Aldehydic Acids: Some Individual Members, 242. Ketonic Acids: Some Individual Members, 243.	
	XI.	POLYHYDRIC ALCOHOLS	247
		Nomenclature, 247. GLYCOLS: Preparation of Glycol, 247. Reactions, 248. Ethylene Oxide, 250. Dioxan, 252. General Methods of Preparing Glycols, 253. Pinacol, 253. Polymethylene GLYCOLS: Some Individual Members, 254. GLYCEROL: Preparation, 254. Reactions, 255. Polyhydric Alcohols, 258. Oils, Fats and Waxes, 259.	
	XII.	UNSATURATED ALCOHOLS, ETHERS, CARBONYL COMPOUNDS AND ACIDS.	265
		UNSATURATED ALCOHOLS: Some Individual Members, 265. Hyperconjugation, 269. Allylic rearrangement, 272. UNSATURATED ETHERS: Some Individual Members, 274. UNSATURATED ALDEHYDES: Some Individual Members, 275. UNSATURATED KETONES: Some Individual Members, 277. UNSATURATED MONOCARBOXYLIC ACIDS: Nomenclature, 279. Preparation, 280. Reactions, 282. Some Individual Members, 284. PRINCIPLE OF VINYLOGY, 287. KETENS: Keten, 287.	

Diketen, 289.

XIII.

NITROGEN COMPOUNDS

Hydrogen Cyanide, 292. ALKYL CYANIDES: Nomenclature, 293. Preparation, 294. Reactions, 295. ALKYL isoCYANIDES: Preparation, 297. Reactions, 297. CYANOGEN AND ITS RELATED COMPOUNDS, 298. NITROPARAFFINS: Nomenclature, 301.

. 292

332

348

368

393

436

Structure, 301. Preparation, 302. Reactions, 303. NITROSO-PARAFFINS, 306. Monoamines, 308. Nomenclature, 308. Preparation, 308. Preparation of Quaternary Compounds, 313. Reactions of the Amines, 313. QUATERNARY AMMONIUM COMPOUNDS, 318. DIAMINES: Some Individual Members, 320. UNSATURATED AMINES: Some Individual Members, 321. AMINOALCOHOLS: Some Individual Members, 322. AMINOACIDS, 322. Preparation and Reactions of Glycine, 322. Betaines, 325. ALIPHATIC DIAZO-COMPOUNDS: Diazomethane, 325. Diazoacetic ester, 329.

# XIV. ALIPHATIC COMPOUNDS OF SULPHUR, PHOS-PHORUS, ARSENIC AND SILICON . . . .

THIORUS, ARSENIC AND SILICON

THIOALCOHOLS: Nomenclature, 332. Preparation, 332. Reactions, 333. THIOETHERS: Preparation, 334. Reactions, 335. THIOCYANIC ACID, isoTHIOCYANIC ACID, and THEIR DERIVATIVES, 336. ALKYL SULPHOXIDES, 338. ALKYL SULPHONES, 338. SULPHONIC ACIDS: Nomenclature, 338. Preparation, 339. Reactions, 339. THIOALDEHYDES AND THIOKETONES, 340. THIOACIDS, 340. DITHIOACIDS, 341. ALKYL-PHOSPHINES: Preparation, 341. Reactions, 342. ALKYL-ARSINES: Preparation, 343. Reactions, 343. Cacodyl Oxide and its Related Compounds, 344. Antimony Compounds, 345. Bismuth Compounds, 345. ALKYL-SILANES: Preparation, 345. Reactions, 346. Silanols and Silicones, 346.

# XV. ORGANO-METALLIC COMPOUNDS .

GRIGNARD REAGENTS: Preparation, 348. Structure, 348. Reactions, 349. Synthetic Uses of the Grignard Reagents, 351. Abnormal Behaviour of Grignard Reagents, 359. ALKYL-METALLIC COMPOUNDS: Nomenclature, 360. Preparation, 361. Alkali Group, 361. Copper Group, 362. Organo-Zinc Compounds, 363. Organo-Cadmium Compounds, 364. Organo-Mercury Compounds, 365. Organo-Lead Compounds, 365. Preparation and Reactions of Free Alkyl Radicals, 365.

# XVI. SATURATED DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS

Nomenclature, 368. Preparation, 368. Some Individual Members, 370. N-Bromosuccinimide, 375. Blanc's Rule, 380. Carbonic Acid and its Derivatives, 381. Urea, 383. Inclusion Complexes, 387. Compounds Related to Urea, 388.

# XVII. HYDROXYACIDS. STEREOCHEMISTRY. UN-SATURATED DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS . . .

Monobasic Hydroxyacids: Nomenclature, 393. Preparation, 393. Reactions, 394. Some Individual Members, 397. Stereochemistry, 399. Elements of Symmetry, 409. Resolution of Racemic Modifications, 411. Racemisation, 412. Walden Inversion, 413. Correlation of Configuration, 413. Neighbouring Group Participation, 415. Asymmetric Synthesis, 416. Hydroxy-Dibasic and Polybasic Acids, 417. Unsaturated Dicarboxylic Acids, 423. Geometrical Isomerism, 425. Mechanism of Addition to Double and Triple Bonds, 428. Some Individual Unsaturated Dicarboxylic Acids, 430. Allenes and Spirans, 432. Optical Isomerism of Elements other than Carbon, 432.

# XVIII. CARBOHYDRATES .

Nomenclature, 436. Monosaccharides, 436. Configuration of the Monosaccharides, 456. Determination of the Size of Sugar-Rings, 458. Disaccharides, 460. Polysaccharides, 463.

200			
VIX			

9	1	22	TOT	22.31	TYPE	rs

CHAPTER	ALICYCLIC COMPOUNDS	
XIX.	ALICYCLIC COMPOUNDS.  Nomenclature, 467. Preparation, 468. Diels-Alder Reaction, 472. Reactions, 474. Some Individual Members, 475. Ferrocene, 480. Cycloalkynes, 486. Baeyer's Strain Theory, 486. Theory of Strainless Rings, 488. Conformational Analysis, 488. Large Ring Compounds, 492.	467
	AROMATIC COMPOUNDS	
XX.	SIMPLE AROMATIC HYDROCARBONS	499
	Benzene, 499. Properties, 501. Structure, 503. Aromaticity, 507. Methods of Orientation, 511. Substitution in the Benzene Ring, 514. Electrophilic Substitution, 516. Ortho-para Ratio, 523. Nucleophilic Substitution, 524. Free-radical Substitution, 526. Preparation of Benzene Homologues, 529. Synthesis of Aromatics from Aliphatics, and vice-versa, 541.	
XXI.	AROMATIC HALOGEN COMPOUNDS	544
	Addition Compounds, 544. Nuclear Substitution Products: Preparation, 544. Properties, 546. Benzyne mechanism, 547. Side-Chain Substituted Compounds: Preparation, 549. Some Individual Members, 550. Polyvalent Iodine Compounds, 551.	
XXII.	AROMATIC NITRO-COMPOUNDS	553
	Methods of Nitration, 553. Properties, 554. Some Individual Members, 554. Charge-transfer Complexes, 557. Aromatic Nitroso-Compounds: Nitrosobenzene, 560. Phenylhydroxylamine, 561. Reduction Products of Nitro-Compounds, 562.	
XXIII.	AROMATIC AMINO-COMPOUNDS	56
	Preparation, 564. Some Individual Members, 566. Diamines, 578.	
XXIV.	DIAZONIUM SALTS AND THEIR RELATED COMPOUNDS	58:
	DIAZONIUM SALTS: Diazotisation, 582. Nomenclature, 583. Replacement Reactions, 583. Reactions in which Nitrogen is Retained, 588. Structure of Diazonium Salts, 591. Phenylhydrazine, 594. DIAZOAMINO- AND AMINOAZO-COMPOUNDS, 595. Azoxybenzene, 599. Azobenzene, 600. Hydroxyazo-Compounds, 601. Hydrazobenzene, 602. Benzidine Rearrangement, 602.	
XXV.	SULPHONIC ACIDS	600
	Methods of Sulphonation, 606. Some Individual Sulphonic Acids, 608. Sulphinic Acids, 614. Thiophenol, 615. Aminobenzenesulphonic Acids, 615.	
VVVI	PHENOIS	61

Monohydric Phenols: Phenol and its Derivatives, 618. Homologues of Phenol, 631. Dihydric Phenols, 632. Trihydric Phenols, 635. Aromatic Ethers, 637. Claisen Rearrangement, 640.

Literature, 818. Use of Beilstein, 819.

INDEX

823

#### CHAPTER I

### INTRODUCTION

#### HISTORICAL INTRODUCTION

Although organic substances such as sugar, starch, alcohol, resins, oils, indigo, etc., had been known from earliest times, very little progress in their chemistry was made until about the beginning of the eighteenth century. In 1675, Lemery published his famous Cours de Chymie, in which he divided compounds from natural sources into three classes: mineral, vegetable and animal. This classification was accepted very quickly, but it was Lavoisier who first showed, in 1784, that all compounds obtained from vegetable and animal sources always contained at least carbon and hydrogen, and frequently, nitrogen and phosphorus. Lavoisier, in spite of showing this close relationship between vegetable and animal products, still retained Lemery's classification. Lavoisier's analytical work, however, stimulated further research in this direction, and resulted in much-improved technique, due to which Lemery's classification had to be modified. Lemery had based his classification on the origin of the compound, but it was now found (undoubtedly due to the improved analytical methods) that in a number of cases the same compound could be obtained from both vegetable and animal sources. Thus no difference existed between these two classes of compounds, and hence it was no longer justifiable to consider them under separate headings. This led to the reclassification of substances into two groups: all those which could be obtained from vegetables or animals, i.e., substances that were produced by the living organism, were classified as organic; and all those substances which were not prepared from the living organism were classified as inorganic.

At this stage of the investigation of organic compounds it appeared that there were definite differences between organic and inorganic compounds, e.g., complexity of composition and the combustibility of the former. Berzelius (1815) thought that organic compounds were produced from their elements by laws different from those governing the formation of inorganic compounds. This then led him to believe that organic compounds were produced under the influence of a vital force, and that they could not be

prepared artificially.

In 1828, Wöhler converted ammonium cyanate into urea, a substance hitherto obtained only from animal sources. This synthesis weakened the distinction between organic and inorganic compounds, and this distinction was completely ended with the synthesis of acetic acid from its elements by Kolbe in 1845, and the synthesis of methane by Berthelot in 1856. common belief appears to be that Wöhler's synthesis had little effect on the vital-force theory because it did not start with the elements. Wöhler had prepared his ammonium cyanate from ammonia and cyanic acid, both of which were of animal origin. Partington (1960), however, has pointed out that Priestley (1781) had obtained ammonia by reduction of nitric acid, which was later synthesised from its elements by Cavendish (1785). Also, potassium cyanide was obtained by Scheele (1783) by passing nitrogen over a strongly heated mixture of potassium carbonate and carbon, and since one form of carbon used was graphite, this reaction was therefore carried out with inorganic materials. Since potassium cyanide is readily converted into potassium cyanate, Wöhler's synthesis is one which starts from the elements.

Since the supposed differences between the two classes of compounds have been disproved, the terms organic and inorganic would appear to be no longer necessary. Nevertheless, they have been retained, but it should be appreciated that they have lost their original meaning. The retention of the terms organic and inorganic may be ascribed to several reasons: (i) all so-called organic compounds contain carbon; (ii) the compounds of carbon are far more numerous (over 750,000) than the known compounds of all the other elements put together; (iii) carbon has the power to combine with other carbon atoms to form long chains. This property, known as catenation, is not shown to such an extent by any other element.

Hence organic chemistry is the chemistry of the carbon compounds.

This definition includes compounds such as carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, carbonates, carbon disulphide, etc. Since these occur chiefly in the inorganic kingdom (original meaning), they are usually described in text-books of inorganic chemistry.

#### ANALYSIS OF ORGANIC COMPOUNDS

The following is an outline of the methods used in the study of organic compounds.

(1) Purification. Before the properties and structure of an organic compound can be completely investigated, the compound must be prepared in the pure state. Common methods of purification are:

(i) Recrystallisation from suitable solvents.

(ii) Distillation: (a) at atmospheric pressure; (b) under reduced pressure or in vacuo; (c) under increased pressure.

(iii) Steam distillation.(iv) Sublimation.

(v) Chromatography. This method is based on the differential adsorption of the different components of a mixture on various adsorbents. Chromatography offers a means of concentrating a product that occurs naturally in great dilution, and is an extremely valuable method for the separation, isolation, purification and identification of the constituents of a mixture.

It is surprising how much information has often been obtained about the properties and structure of a substance that has not been isolated in a pure state. Even so, purification should always be attempted, since it is much simpler to investigate a pure substance than an impure one.

(2) Qualitative analysis. The elements commonly found in organic substances are: carbon (always: by definition), hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, halogens, sulphur, phosphorus and metals.

(i) Carbon and hydrogen. The compound is intimately mixed with dry cupric oxide and the mixture then heated in a tube. Carbon is oxidised to carbon dioxide (detected by means of calcium hydroxide solution), and hydrogen is oxidised to water (detected by condensation on the cooler parts of the tube).

(ii) Nitrogen, halogens and sulphur. These are all detected by the Lassaigne method. The compound is fused with metallic sodium, whereby nitrogen is converted into sodium cyanide, halogen into sodium halide, and sulphur into sodium sulphide. The presence of these sodium salts is then

detected by inorganic qualitative methods.

(iii) Phosphorus. The compound is heated with fusion mixture, whereby the phosphorus is converted into metallic phosphate, which is then detected by the usual inorganic tests. -(iv) Metals. When organic compounds containing metals are strongly heated, the organic part usually burns away, leaving behind a residue. This residue is usually the oxide of the metal, but in certain cases it may be the free metal, e.g., silver, or the carbonate, e.g., sodium carbonate.

As a rule, no attempt is made to carry out any test for oxygen: its presence is usually inferred from the chemical properties of the compound.

The non-metallic elements which occur in *natural* organic compounds, in order of decreasing occurrence, are hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, sulphur, phosphorus, iodine, bromine and chlorine. Halogen compounds are essentially synthetic compounds, and are not found to any extent naturally. Some important exceptions are chloramphenicol (chlorine), Tyrian Purple (bromine) and thyroxine (iodine). In addition to these non-metallic elements, various metallic elements occur in combination with natural organic compounds, e.g., sodium, potassium, calcium, iron, magnesium, copper.

- (3) Quantitative analysis. The methods used in the determination of the composition by weight of an organic compound are based on simple principles.
- (i) Carbon and hydrogen are estimated by burning a known weight of the substance in a current of dry oxygen, and weighing the carbon dioxide and water formed. If elements (non-metallic) other than carbon, hydrogen and oxygen are present, special precautions must be taken to prevent their interfering with the estimation of the carbon and hydrogen.

(ii) Nitrogen may be estimated in several ways, but only two are commonly

used.

(a) Dumas' method. This consists in oxidising the compound with copper oxide, and measuring the volume of nitrogen formed. This method is

applicable to all organic compounds containing nitrogen.

(b) **Kjeldahl's method.** This depends on the fact that when organic compounds containing nitrogen are heated with concentrated sulphuric acid, the organic nitrogen is converted into ammonium sulphate. This method, however, has certain limitations.

(iii) Halogens may be estimated in several ways. One is the classical method of *Carius*. The substance is heated in a sealed tube with fuming nitric acid in the presence of silver nitrate. Silver halide is formed, and this is estimated gravimetrically.

A simpler method for *non-volatile* compounds is to fuse the substance with sodium peroxide in a nickel crucible, whereupon the halogen is converted into sodium halide, which is then estimated as before.

(iv) Sulphur may be estimated by the methods used for the halogens. In the Carius method for sulphur, no silver nitrate is used. Organic sulphur is converted into sulphuric acid (Carius method) or sodium sulphate (sodium peroxide fusion). In both cases the sulphate is precipitated as barium sulphate and weighed.

(v) Phosphorus may be estimated by heating the compound with fusion

mixture and weighing the phosphate as magnesium pyrophosphate.

The Carius determination (no silver nitrate used, cf. sulphur) invariably gives low results for phosphorus. Olivier (1940) found that exact results were obtained by heating the organic compound mixed with calcium oxide in a stream of oxygen. The phosphate was then estimated as above.

(vi) Oxygen is usually estimated by difference. All direct methods are still not completely satisfactory, but recently Aluise and co-workers (1947) claim to have evolved a satisfactory technique. The organic compound is subjected to pyrolysis in a stream of nitrogen, and all the oxygen in the pyrolysis products is converted into carbon monoxide by passage over

carbon heated at 1120°. The carbon monoxide is then passed over iodine pentoxide, and the iodine liberated is estimated titrimetrically.

Quantitative analysis falls into three groups according to the amount of material used for the estimation:

- (i) Macro-methods which require about 0·1-0·5 g. of material (actual amount depends on the element being estimated).
  - (ii) Semi-micro methods which require 20-50 mg. of material.
  - (iii) Micro-methods which require 3-5 mg. of material.

Nowadays the tendency is to use method (ii) or (iii). Although all the methods are simple in theory, their successful application (particularly when using micro- or semi-micro methods) requires a great deal of technical skill. These methods have become standardised, and are described in detail in many books on practical organic chemistry. Improvements and new methods for analysis, however, are always being published; e.g., chlorine and sulphur may be determined by wrapping the sample of the compound in filter paper, igniting and lowering it into a flask filled with oxygen. The acid gases are absorbed in hydrogen peroxide; the sulphuric acid formed is titrated with standard alkali, and the chloride is determined by titrating the neutralised solution with mercuric nitrate (Mikl et al., 1953). Fluorine, chlorine and nitrogen may be determined by decomposition in a nickel bomb (Brown et al., 1955).

- (4) Empirical formula determination. The empirical formula indicates the *relative numbers* of each kind of atom in the molecule, and is calculated from the percentage composition of the compound.
- (5) Molecular weight determination. The molecular formula—this gives the actual number of atoms of each kind in the molecule—is obtained by multiplying the empirical formula by some whole number which is obtained from consideration of the molecular weight of the compound. In many cases this whole number is one.

The methods used for the determination of molecular weights fall into two main groups: physical and chemical. The standard physical methods are the determination of: (i) vapour density; (ii) elevation of boiling point; (iii) depression of freezing point. These methods are described fully in text-books of physical chemistry. In addition to these standard methods, which are used mainly for relatively simple molecules, there are also other physical methods used for compounds having high molecular weights, e.g., rate of diffusion, rate of sedimentation, viscosity of the solution, osmotic pressure, etc.

The chemical methods, since they are only useful in organic work, will be here described in detail.

(i) Molecular weights of organic acids (method of silver salt). If the basicity of the acid is known, then the molecular weight of that acid may be determined from the analysis of its silver salt. The silver salt is chosen because: (a) Most silver salts are insoluble in water, and hence they are readily prepared. (b) Most silver salts are anhydrous; this is a definite advantage, since it does not introduce a possible source of error (i.e., the determination of water of crystallisation). (c) All silver salts are readily decomposed on ignition, leaving a residue of metallic silver.

The method of calculation is shown in the following example: 0.701 g. of the silver salt of a dibasic acid on ignition yielded 0.497 g. of metallic silver. Calculate the M.Wt. of the acid, given that the A.Wt. of silver is 108.

Since the acid is dibasic, its molecule can be represented by the formula H<sub>2</sub>A, where A is that part of the molecule other than replaceable hydrogen atoms. Hence the silver salt will be Ag<sub>2</sub>A, *i.e.*, one gram molecule of it contains 216 g. of silver.

There is 0.497 g. silver in 0.701 g. of Ag<sub>2</sub>A.

: there is 216 g. silver in  $\frac{\text{o·701} \times 216}{\text{o·497}}$  g. of Ag<sub>2</sub>A = 304·7 g.

i.e., the M.Wt. of Ag2A is 304.7.

: the M.Wt. of acid  $H_2A$  is  $(Ag_2A - 2Ag + 2H) = (304.7 - 216 + 2) = 90.7$ .

(ii) Molecular weights of organic bases (method of chloroplatinate). Organic bases combine with chloroplatinic acid, H<sub>2</sub>PtCl<sub>6</sub>, to form insoluble, anhydrous chloroplatinates (platinichlorides) which, on ignition, leave a residue of metallic platinum. Let B represent one molecule of the base. If it is a "monoacid" base, the formula of its chloroplatinate will be B<sub>2</sub>H<sub>2</sub>PtCl<sub>6</sub>; if a "diacid" base, BH<sub>2</sub>PtCl<sub>6</sub>.

EXAMPLE. 0.800 g. of the chloroplatinate of a "monoacid" base on ignition gave 0.262 g. of platinum. Calculate the M.Wt. of the base, given that the A.Wt. of platinum is 195.

Since the base is "monoacid", the formula of its chloroplatinate will be B<sub>2</sub>H<sub>2</sub>PtCl<sub>6</sub>, i.e., one gram molecule of the chloroplatinate contains 195 g. of

platinum.

There is 0.262 g. of platinum in 0.800 g. of B2H2PtCl6.

: there is 195 g. of platinum in  $\frac{0.800 \times 195}{0.262} = 595.4$  g. of  $B_2H_2PtCl_8$ .

i.e., the M.Wt. of B2H2PtCl6 is 595.4.

: the M.Wt. of B is

$$\frac{B_2H_2PtCl_6 - H_2PtCl_6}{2} = \frac{595.4 - (2 + 195 + 213)}{2} = 92.7.$$

(iii) The molecular formula of any gaseous hydrocarbon (compound containing carbon and hydrogen only) may be determined by exploding a measured volume of the gas with a measured excess of oxygen, in a eudiometer tube.

Example. 10 ml. of a gaseous hydrocarbon was mixed with 80 ml. of oxygen and the mixture exploded. 70 ml. of gas remained (after cooling to room temperature), and this was reduced to 50 ml. (of oxygen) after treatment with potassium hydroxide solution. What is the formula of the hydrocarbon?

There are two ways of solving this problem:

$$(a) C + O_2 \longrightarrow CO_2.$$

Thus one atom of carbon requires one molecule of oxygen.

$$2H_2 + O_2 \longrightarrow 2H_2O.$$

Thus one atom of hydrogen requires  $\frac{1}{4}$  molecule of oxygen. Let the formula of the hydrocarbon be  $C_xH_y$ . Then x molecules of oxygen will be required to burn the carbon to carbon dioxide, and  $\frac{y}{4}$  molecules of oxygen to burn the hydrogen to water. Thus we have

$$C_xH_y + \left(x + \frac{y}{4}\right)O_2 \longrightarrow xCO_2 + \frac{y}{2}H_2O$$
 . . . (i)

From Avogadro's law, it follows that

I vol. of 
$$C_xH_y + \left(x + \frac{y}{4}\right)$$
 vol. of  $O_2 \longrightarrow x$  vol.  $CO_2 + \frac{y}{2}$  vol.  $H_2O$  (as steam) (ii)

Since measurements of volume are carried out at room temperature, the water will be present as liquid, the volume of which may be ignored. Therefore, contraction after sparking  $= \left(\mathbf{1} + x + \frac{y}{4}\right) - x = \left(\mathbf{1} + \frac{y}{4}\right)$  vol.

After treatment with potassium hydroxide solution, the contraction will be vol. (i.e., vol. of CO<sub>2</sub>).

From the figures of the experiment, we have

First contraction = 90 - 70 = 20 ml. Second contraction = 70 - 50 = 20 ml.

: since 10 ml. of  $C_zH_y$  is to be taken as 1 vol. (from equation ii), then  $1+\frac{y}{4}=2$ .

 $\therefore y = 4 \text{ and } x = 2.$ 

Hence the hydrocarbon is C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>4</sub>.

(b) Total amount of oxygen used = 80 - 50 = 30 ml.

Of this, 20 ml. was required for burning the carbon (vol. of  $\mathrm{CO}_2$  is equal to vol. of  $\mathrm{O}_2$  used). Hence 10 ml. was required for the hydrogen which gives 20 ml. of steam.

:. 10 ml.  $C_xH_y + 30$  ml.  $O_2 \longrightarrow 20$  ml.  $CO_2 + 20$  ml.  $H_2O$  (steam).

:. from Avogadro's law

$$C_xH_y + 3O_2 \longrightarrow 2CO_2 + 2H_2O.$$

 $\therefore$  x = 2, y = 4; and the hydrocarbon is  $C_2H_4$ .

(6) **Determination of structure**, *i.e.*, the manner in which the atoms are arranged in the molecule. The usual procedure for elucidating the structure of an unknown compound is to make a detailed study of its chemical reactions. This procedure is known as the *analytical method*, and includes breaking down (*degrading*) the compound into smaller molecules of *known* structure.

In addition to the purely chemical means, there are also various physical

properties which are used to elucidate structure, e.g.:

(i) Dipole moment. This gives information on the spatial arrangement of atoms in a molecule, and so offers a means of distinguishing between alternative arrangements.

(ii) Refractive index. This may be used to distinguish between two types of

structure, e.g., between a keto and an enol form.

(iii) Parachor. This has been used to distinguish between alternative structures. (iv) X-Ray analysis. This offers a means of studying the arrangement of atoms in crystalline solids, but it may also be used for liquids and gases. Since most organic compounds are complex from the point of view of structure, X-ray analysis has mainly been used to "round off" information obtained by purely chemical means. Bond lengths may be measured by X-ray analysis, and deviations from "normal" values give information on structure.

(v) Electron diffraction. This has been used in the same way as X-ray analysis, and is applicable to gases, liquid and solids. It is, however, usually confined to

gases or compounds in the vapour state.

(vi) Absorption spectra. All organic compounds absorb light, which may be in one or more of the following regions: infra-red, visible or ultra-violet. Many bands are associated with particular groups, and it is therefore possible to ascertain the presence of these various groups in a new compound. In general, compounds possessing similar structures show similar absorption spectra. Hence the structure of a new compound may be elucidated by comparing its absorption spectrum with known spectra.

The Raman effect also is characteristic of a particular group, and has been

widely used to ascertain the nature of the groups present in a compound.

When sufficient evidence has been accumulated, a tentative structure which best fits the facts is accepted. Sometimes two (or even more) structures fit the facts almost equally well, and it has been shown in certain cases that the compound exists in both forms which are in equilibrium. This phenomenon is known as *tautomerism*. Where tautomerism has not been shown to be present, one must accept (with reserve) the structure that has been chosen (see also next section).

(7) Synthesis of the compound. The term synthesis means the building up of a compound, step by step, from a simpler substance of known structure.

The term complete synthesis means the building up of a compound, step by step, starting from its elements (and any others that may be necessary). In either case (synthesis or complete synthesis), the structure of each intermediate compound is taken as proved by its synthesis from the compound that

preceded it.

The synthesis of a compound is necessary to establish its structure beyond doubt. There is always the possibility of one or more steps not proceeding "according to plan". Hence the larger the number of syntheses of a compound by different routes, the more reliable will be the structure assigned to that compound.

#### STRUCTURAL FORMULÆ AND ISOMERISM

In 1857, Kekulé postulated the *constant* quadrivalency (tetravalency) of carbon. From 1900 onwards, however, compounds containing *tervalent* carbon have been prepared, and their number is increasing rapidly. These compounds usually require special methods of preparation, and many have a very short life (see text). Since their properties are different from those compounds containing quadrivalent carbon, they are fairly easily recognised. More recently, compounds containing bivalent carbon (*carbenes*) are believed to be formed as intermediates during certain reactions. Hence, unless there is definite evidence to the contrary, carbon is always assumed to be quadrivalent.

If "valency units" or "valency bonds" (see Ch. II) are represented by lines, then the number of lines drawn from the symbol shows the valency of

that atom, e.g.,

The molecular formula shows the number of each kind of atom present in the molecule, but does not indicate their arrangement. In organic chemistry there are many cases where a given formula represents two or more compounds that differ in physical and chemical properties, e.g., there are at least seven compounds having the same molecular formula C<sub>4</sub>H<sub>10</sub>O. Such compounds, having the same molecular formula, but differing in physical and chemical properties, are known as isomers or isomerides, the phenomenon itself being known as isomerism. The existence of isomerism may be explained by assuming that the atoms are arranged in a definite manner in a molecule, and that there is a different arrangement in each isomer, i.e., the isomers differ in structure or constitution. This type of isomerism is known as structural isomerism.

Obviously, then, from what has been said above, it is always desirable to show the arrangement (if known) of the atoms in the molecule, and this is done by means of structural formulæ or bond-diagrams; e.g., the molecular

formula of ethanol is 
$$C_2H_6O$$
; its structural formula is  $H-C-C-O-H$ .

So far nothing has been said about the *spatial* disposition of the four valencies of carbon. Later (Ch. II) it will be shown that when carbon is joined to four univalent atoms or groups, the four valencies are directed towards the four corners of a tetrahedron. Thus the above plane-structural

formula does not show the disposition of the atoms in space; a threedimensional formula is necessary for this. Usually the plane-formula is satisfactory. Since the actual spatial arrangements of a given structure may differ, this gives rise to isomerism of the type known as stereoisomerism. Stereoisomers have different configurations, i.e., the spatial arrangements are

different but not their structures (see p. 399).

A structural formula is really a short-hand description of the properties of the compound. Hence the study of organic chemistry is facilitated by mastering the structural formula of every compound the reader meets. An organic molecule, however, is only completely described when the following facts are known: structure or constitution (this includes a knowledge of the electron distribution; see resonance, p. 17), configuration (p. 399), and conformation (p. 488).

#### SATURATED AND UNSATURATED COMPOUNDS

If, in an organic compound containing two or more carbon atoms, there are only single bonds linking any two adjacent carbon atoms, then that compound is said to be saturated, e.g., ethane, C2H6 (I), normal propanol, C<sub>3</sub>H<sub>8</sub>O (II), acetaldehyde, C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>4</sub>O (III).

On the other hand, if the compound contains at least one pair of adjacent carbon atoms linked by a multiple bond, then that compound is said to be unsaturated, e.g., ethylene,  $C_2H_4$  (IV); this compound contains a double bond. Acetylene,  $C_2H_2$  (V); this contains a triple bond. Acraldehyde,  $C_3H_4O$  (IV); this contains a double bond. The double bond between the carbon and oxygen atoms is not a sign of unsaturation (cf. acetaldehyde above).

#### CLASSIFICATION OF ORGANIC COMPOUNDS

Organic compounds are classified into three major groups:

(1) (a) Aliphatic, open-chain, or acyclic compounds.

(b) Alicyclic compounds. These are carbocyclic or ring compounds which resemble aliphatic compounds in many ways.

(2) Aromatic compounds. These are carbocyclic or ring compounds

containing at least one benzene ring (see also p. 509).

(3) Heterocyclic compounds. These are cyclic (ring) compounds containing other elements besides carbon in the ring. In a few cases no carbon atom is in the ring.

#### READING REFERENCES

Partington, A Short History of Chemistry, Macmillan (1957, 3rd ed.). Ch. X. The Beginnings of Organic Chemistry.

Schorlemmer, The Rise and Development of Organic Chemistry, Macmillan (1894).

Japp, Kekulé Memorial Lecture, J.C.S., 1898, 73, 97.
Mann and Saunders, Practical Organic Chemistry, Longmans, Green (1960, 4th ed.). Part IV. Quantitative Analysis.
Belcher and Godbert, Semi-Micro Quantitative Organic Analysis, Longmans, Green

(1954, 2nd ed.).

Pregl, Quantitative Organic Microanalysis, Churchill (1937). Vogel, Practical Organic Chemistry, Longmans, Green (1956, 3rd ed.), Ch. 12. Semi-

micro Technique.

Ann. Reports (Chem. Soc.), 1955, 52, 353. Classical Organic Analysis.
Ingram, The Rapid Micro-combustion Procedure, Chem. and Ind., 1956, 103.



#### CHAPTER II

#### STRUCTURE OF THE ATOM

According to modern theory, an atom consists of a nucleus which contains protons and neutrons, and which is surrounded by electrons. The mass of a proton is almost the same as that of a neutron, but whereas the proton carries a unit of positive charge, the neutron is electrically neutral. The electron has about 11,50th of the mass of a proton, and carries a unit of negative charge. The electrons are arranged in shells around the nucleus, each shell being able to contain up to a maximum number of electrons, this maximum depending on the number of the shell, n. n is known as the principal quantum number, and indicates the main energy level of the electrons in that shell. n has whole number values, I, 2, 3, 4 . . ., the shells corresponding to which are also denoted by the letters K, L, M, N . . . respectively. In every principal quantum shell there are n energy sublevels, and these are indicated by l, the orbital quantum number (also known as the azimuthal or serial quantum number). Just as the principal quantum number n can have values  $1, 2, 3 \dots$ , so can l have values 0, 1, 1 $2, 3 \dots, n-1$ . The energy state corresponding to l=0 is called the s state; l = I, the p state; l = 2, the d state; etc. As we shall see later (p. 23), these s,  $\phi$  and d states are subdivided into a number of orbitals. The total number of orbitals that a principal quantum shell can contain is given by  $n^2$ . Thus, when the principal quantum number is I (i.e., the first or K shell), then l = 0, i.e., there is a single orbital in this K skell and is of the s type and is known as the is orbital. When n=2 (i.e., the second or L shell), then l=0 or I. This means there are two energy sublevels in the L shell. As pointed out above, the total number of orbitals in a given quantum shell is equal to  $n^2$ . Thus, when n=2, there are four possible orbitals. When l = 0, this corresponds to the 2s orbital. When l = 1, then there are three equivalent orbitals; these are the three 2p orbitals. When n=3 (i.e., the third or M shell), then the total number of possible orbitals is 9 (3<sup>2</sup>). These correspond to one 3s orbital (l = 0), three 3p orbitals (l = 1) and five 3d orbitals (l=2). The existence of one s level, three p, five d and seven f levels of energy was used to explain the existence of spectral lines observed in the spectra of atoms and molecules. It should also be noted that the farther an electron is from the nucleus, the greater is its potential energy. Owing to the phenomenon of penetration of orbitals, i.e., outer electrons can penetrate into the shell of inner electrons, the energy level of an electron is thus not completely determined by its principal quantum number, but also depends on the orbital quantum number (i.e., on the shape of the orbital). Thus there is the following order of increasing energy: 1s, 2s, 2p, 3s, 3p, 4s, 3d, 4p, 5s, 4d, 5p . . . (see also p. 24).

In addition to the energy levels of an electron described by quantum numbers n and l, electrons have spin about their axis, some spinning in one direction and others in the opposite direction. This is indicated by the *spin quantum number* (s), and can have values of  $+\frac{1}{2}$  and  $-\frac{1}{2}$ . Finally, an electron also has a magnetic quantum number (m), and this gives the allowed orientations of the orbitals in an external magnetic field. Thus an electron is

described by four quantum numbers, n, l, s and m.

By the fundamental *Pauli Exclusion Principle* (1925), no two electrons, in any system, can be assigned the same set of four quantum numbers. Hence there can be only *two* electrons in any one orbital, and these must be differentiated from each other by their spins, which *must* be *antiparallel*, *i.e.*, in the

opposite sense. Such electrons are said to be paired, and a pair of electrons with antiparallel spins in the same orbital is represented by the symbol  $\sqrt{\uparrow}$ . Since a moving charge is accompanied by a magnetic field, a spinning electron behaves as a small bar-magnet, and consequently two paired electrons will

give a zero resultant magnetic field.

The hydrogen atom consists of one proton and one electron. When the hydrogen atom is in the "ground" state, i.e., the state of lowest energy, its electron will be in the lowest energy level, i.e., the 1s level, and is represented by (1s). When hydrogen is in an "excited" state, its electron will occupy a higher energy level, the actual level depending on the amount of " excitation ".

Helium has two electrons; hence its electron configuration in the ground state is represented as (1s)2. Lithium has three electrons. Since the maximum number of electrons in the K shell (n = 1, l = 0) is two, the third electron must start the L shell (n=2, l=0, I). Electrons occupy lowest energy levels first. Thus this third electron occupies the 2s orbital, and not the 2p, because the 2p is a higher energy level than the 2s. Hence the electron configuration of lithium is  $(1s)^2(2s)$ . Thus the K shell is filled first. Then the electrons enter the L shell until that is filled. In this shell the s level is filled before the  $\phi$ . In fitting electrons into shells containing orbitals of equivalent energy, Hund's rules are used to assign the electrons to their orbitals. These rules are: (i) electrons tend to avoid being in the same orbital as far as possible; (ii) two electrons, each singly occupying a given pair of equivalent orbitals, tend to have their spins parallel when the atom is in the ground state. Thus carbon, with six electrons, may be represented as  $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^2$ . The K shell is filled first; the L shell is filled next, the 2s orbital being doubly filled before a higher level is used; then singly two of the 2p orbitals. Nitrogen, with seven electrons, is  $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^3$ : all three 2p orbitals each contain one electron. Oxygen, with eight electrons, is  $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^4$ : here one of the 2p orbitals is doubly filled.

# THE ELECTRONIC THEORY OF VALENCY

The electronic theory of valency starts with the assumption that valency involves the electrons in the outer shells: in some cases only those in the highest sublevel in the outermost shell; in other cases those in the highest and penultimate sublevels, even though the penultimate sublevel may be in a lower quantum shell. Lewis (1916) assumed that the electron configuration in the rare gases was particularly stable (since these gases are chemically inert), and that chemical combination between atoms took place by achieving this configuration. The outermost shell of the rare gases always contains an octet of two s and six p electrons. Since both the s and p sublevels are completely filled, the octet will be a stable configuration. In the case of helium, however, an octet is impossible; here the stable arrangement is the duplet, the two is electrons of which completely fill the first quantum shell.

The octet rule applies only to atoms with 2s and 2p electrons, i.e., to elements in the second period (Li-F). With the other elements, d orbitals may also be used in bond formation, and hence higher covalencies (i.e., expansions beyond an octet) are possible, e.g., PBr<sub>5</sub> (10 electrons), SF<sub>6</sub> (12 electrons) and IF, (14 electrons). Since elements in period 2 have only 2s and

2p orbitals, the maximum covalency they can exhibit is 4.

Lewis also suggested that there was a definite tendency for electrons in a molecule to form pairs. This rule of 2, as we have seen, became established by the developments of quantum mechanics. There are few molecules that contain an odd number of valency electrons: where such odd electron molecules do exist, unusual properties are found to be associated with them (see free radicals).

There are three general extreme types of chemical bonds: electrovalent, covalent and metallic bonds. In addition to these extreme types, there are

also bonds of intermediate types.

1. Electrovalency is manifested by the transfer of electrons, and gives rise to the *ionic* bond. Consider sodium chloride. Sodium is  $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^6(3s)$ : chlorine is  $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^6(3s)^2(3p)^5$ . Sodium has completed K and L shells, and is starting the M shell with one electron. This electron (the 3s electron) is the valency electron of sodium. Chlorine has completed K and L shells, and has seven electrons in the M shell. These M electrons are the valency electrons of chlorine. If the sodium completely transfers its valency electron to the chlorine atom, then each atom will have eight electrons in its outermost shell, and this, as we have seen, is a stable arrangement. Since both atoms were originally electrically neutral, the sodium atom, in losing one electron, will now have a single positive charge, i.e., the neutral atom has become a positive ion. Similarly, the neutral chlorine atom, in gaining one electron, has become a negative ion. In the sodium chloride crystal these ions are held together by electrostatic forces. If the symbol of an element is used to represent the nucleus of an atom and all the electrons other than the valency electrons, and dots are used to represent the valency electrons, then the combination of the sodium and chlorine atoms to form sodium chloride may be represented as follows:

$$Na^{\cdot} + : Cl \cdot \longrightarrow Na^{+} : Cl :$$

2. Covalency. This type of bonding involves a sharing of electrons in pairs, each atom contributing one electron to form a shared pair, each pair of electrons having their spins antiparallel. This method of completing an octet (or any of the other possible values) gives rise to the covalent bond.

Hydrogen is usually unicovalent: occasionally it is unielectrovalent, e.g., in sodium hydride, hydrogen exists as the hydride anion, formed by accepting

an electron from the sodium:

$$Na' + H' \longrightarrow Na' H$$

Carbon almost invariably forms covalent compounds. The electron configuration of carbon is  $(rs)^2(2s)^2(2p)^2$ . Since the two 2s electrons are paired, it would appear that carbon is bivalent, only the two single 2p electrons being involved in compound formation. As pointed out previously, carbon is almost always quadrivalent; thus the 2s and 2p electrons must be involved. Just how these four electrons readjust themselves to give quadrivalent carbon will be described later; at this stage we shall assume it done, and write quadrivalent carbon as  $\cdot \hat{C} \cdot$ .

In methane the four hydrogen atoms each contribute one electron and the carbon atom four electrons towards the formation of four shared pairs:

$$4H\cdot + \cdot \dot{C} \cdot \longrightarrow H : \dot{C} : H$$

Each hydrogen atom has its duplet (as in helium), and the carbon atom has an octet.

Each pair of shared electrons is equivalent to the ordinary "valencybond", and so electronic formulæ are readily transformed into the usual structural formulæ, each bond representing a shared pair, e.g.,

From these examples it can be seen that there is a very important difference between an electronic formula and its equivalent structural formula. In the former, all valency electrons are shown whether they are used to form covalent bonds or not; in the latter, only those electrons which are actually used to form covalent bonds are indicated. This is a limitation of the usual structural formula. A widely used scheme is to represent structures with ordinary valency bonds and to indicate lone pairs by pairs of dots (see below).

3. Co-ordinate valency is a special type of covalency. Its distinguishing feature is that both of the shared electrons forming the bond are supplied by only one of the two atoms linked together, e.g., when ammonia combines with boron trifluoride to form a "molecular compound", it is the lone pair of the nitrogen atom that is involved in the formation of the new bond. In boron trifluoride, the boron has only six electrons in its valency shell; hence it can accommodate two more to complete its octet. Thus, if the nitrogen atom uses its lone pair, the combination of ammonia with boron trifluoride may be shown as:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} H & :F: & H:F: \\ H:N:+B:F: \longrightarrow H:N:B:F: \\ H & :F: & H:F: \end{array}$$

In the usual structural formula notation, a co-ordinate bond may be represented by an arrow pointing away from the atom supplying the lone pair (Sidgwick, 1927); thus:

The atom that supplies the lone pair is known as the donor, and the atom that receives a share is the acceptor. Since it is one atom that donates the lone pair, the co-ordinate link is also known as the dative link (Sidgwick, 1927).

Before combination, both donor and acceptor are electrically neutral: after combination, the donor has lost a share in the lone pair, and the acceptor has gained a share. Therefore the donor acquires a positive charge and the acceptor a negative charge, and the presence of these charges

may be indicated by writing the formula  $H_3N-BF_3$ .

Hence we have a covalent bond holding together two charged portions, and because of this the co-ordinate link is also known as the *semi-polar* or semi-ionic bond (Noyes, 1933). The co-ordinate link has also been named the "mixed double bond" (Lowry, 1923), and the "semi-polar double bond" (Sugden, 1925).

Once the co-ordinate bond has been formed, there may be no way of distinguishing it from any other covalent bond, but since one atom has supplied the pair of shared electrons, charges are produced in the molecule. When a covalent bond is formed, charges may also be produced in the molecule, giving rise to a dipole (q.v.). Hence the co-ordinate bond is effectively a covalent bond. The extent of the charge on each atom in a dative (or covalent) bond may be found as follows. Add the number of unshared electrons to one half of the shared electrons, and compare the result with the number of valency electrons of the neutral atom, e.g., (i) methane,  $CH_4$ . Here there are 8 shared electrons;  $\frac{1}{2} \times 8 = 4 = \text{number}$  of electrons in the neutral carbon atom; therefore methane is uncharged. (ii)  $H_3N \rightarrow BF_3$ . For the nitrogen atom we have  $\frac{1}{2} \times 8 = 4$ ; but since the neutral nitrogen atom has 5 valency electrons, in the compound  $H_3N \rightarrow BF_3$  the nitrogen has a charge of +1. For boron we have  $\frac{1}{2} \times 8 = 4$ ; but since the neutral boron atom has 3 electrons, in this molecular compound the boron has a charge of -1.

Electrovalent compounds are good electrical conductors in the fused state or in solution. They are generally non-volatile, and are usually insoluble in hydrocarbons and allied solvents. Covalent compounds are non-electrical conductors, are generally volatile, and are usually soluble in hydrocarbons and allied solvents. Since the covalent bond is directional, stereoisomerism (space-isomerism) is possible (see p. 399). Co-ordinated compounds behave very much like covalent compounds, but they are usually

less volatile than purely covalent compounds.

#### CHELATE COMPOUNDS

In the co-ordinated compounds discussed above, one donor atom has shared its lone pair with one acceptor atom. It is possible, however, for an acceptor atom to receive a number of shares in lone pairs, e.g., cobalt-ammine chloride,  $[Co(NH_3)_6]^{3+3}Cl^-$ . In this complex, the cobalt atom receives shares from six lone pairs, each ammonia molecule donating its nitrogen lone pair (I). Now let us consider ethylenediamine as the donating molecule. Its structure is  $NH_2-CH_2-NH_2$ . In this molecule there

$$(I) \begin{bmatrix} NH_{3} & NH_{3} & NH_{3} \\ H_{3}N & NH_{3} & NH_{3} \\ NH_{3} & NH_{3} & NH_{3} \end{bmatrix}^{3+} \\ \begin{bmatrix} Co \left\{ \begin{array}{c} NH_{2} \cdot CH_{2} \\ NH_{2} \cdot CH_{2} \end{array} \right\}_{3} \\ \end{bmatrix}^{3+} \\ (II) \\ \end{bmatrix}$$

are two lone pairs, and it has been found that each nitrogen atom can act independently as a donor. Thus one ethylenediamine molecule can occupy two positions in the complex, producing the cation (II). This complex will, therefore, contain three rings. Compounds such as this are known as chelate compounds, chelation taking place when the donating molecule shares two lone pairs on different atoms within the molecule with a single acceptor atom, thereby producing a ring. Chelation may also take place intramolecularly, i.e., between two atoms in the same molecule; but in these cases the chelate rings are formed, not by co-ordinate bonds, but by hydrogen bonds (see later).

#### DIPOLE MOMENTS

When a covalent bond is formed between two identical atoms, e.g., H—H, Cl—Cl, etc., the two electrons forming the covalent bond may be regarded as being symmetrically disposed between the two atoms. The centres of

gravity of the electrons and nuclei therefore coincide. With two dissimilar atoms the two electrons are no longer symmetrically disposed, because each atom has a different electron-affinity (electronegativity), i.e., attraction for electrons. Chlorine has a much greater electron-affinity than hydrogen; so that when chlorine and hydrogen combine to form covalent hydrogen chloride, the electrons forming the covalent bond are displaced towards the chlorine atom without any separation of the nuclei:

$$H \cdot + : Ci \cdot \longrightarrow H : Ci : \text{ or } \overset{\delta +}{H} - \overset{\delta -}{Cl}$$

The hydrogen atom will, therefore, be slightly positively charged, and the chlorine atom slightly negatively charged. Thus, owing to the greater electron-attracting power of the chlorine atom, the covalent bond in hydrogen chloride is characterised by the separation of small charges in the bond. A covalent bond such as this, in which one atom has a larger share of the electron-pair, is said to possess partial ionic character.

In analogy with a magnet, such a molecule is called a *dipole*, and the product of the electronic charge, e, and the distance d, between the charges (positive and negative centres) is called the *dipole moment*,  $\mu$ ; *i.e.*,  $\mu = e \times d$ . e is of the order of 10<sup>-10</sup> e.s.u.; d, 10<sup>-8</sup> cm. Therefore  $\mu$  is of the order 10<sup>-18</sup> e.s.u., and this unit is known as the Debye (D), in honour of Debye, who did

a large amount of work on dipole moments.

The dipole moment is a vector quantity, and its direction is often indicated by an arrow parallel to the line joining the points of charge, and pointing

towards the negative end, e.g.,  $\overrightarrow{H-Cl}$ . The greater the value of the dipole moment, the greater is the *polarity* of the bond. The terms *polar* and *non-polar* are used to describe bonds, molecules and groups, and the reader is advised to make sure he appreciates how the terms are applied in each case under consideration.

The following points are useful in organic chemistry:

(i) In the bond H-X, where X is any atom other than hydrogen or carbon,

the hydrogen atom is the positive end of the dipole, i.e., H-X.

(ii) In the bond C—X, where X is any atom other than carbon, the carbon atom is the positive end of the dipole, i.e., C—X. Earlier work appeared to show that in saturated compounds of carbon, the dipole for the C—H bond was C—H. Work by Coulson (1942), however, indicates that the dipole is in the opposite direction, i.e., C—H, and that in methane the value is o 30D. Both the direction, i.e., C—H, and that in methane the value is o 30D.

tion and value, however, are not constant, but depend on the nature of the hybridisation (see p. 96).

(iii) When a molecule contains two or more polar bonds, the resultant dipole

moment of the molecule is obtained by the vectorial addition of the constituent bond dipole moments (see also pp. 427, 513).

(iv) A symmetrical molecule is non-polar, although it may contain polar bonds.

# ELECTRON DISPLACEMENTS IN A MOLECULE

1. Inductive effect. Consider a carbon chain in which one terminal carbon atom is joined to a chlorine atom:  $-C_3-C_2-C_1$ —Cl. Chlorine has a greater electron-affinity than carbon; therefore the electron pair forming the covalent bond between the chlorine atom and  $C_1$  will be displaced towards the chlorine atom. This causes the chlorine atom to acquire a small negative charge, and  $C_1$  a small positive charge. Since  $C_1$  is positively charged, it will attract towards itself the electron pair forming the covalent

bond between  $C_1$  and  $C_2$ . This will cause  $C_2$  to acquire a small positive charge, but the charge will be smaller than that on  $C_1$  because the effect of the chlorine atom has been transmitted through  $C_1$  to  $C_2$ . Similarly,  $C_3$  acquires a positive charge which will be smaller than that on  $C_2$ . This type of electron displacement along a chain is known as the *inductive effect*; it is *permanent*, and decreases rapidly as the distance from the source increases. From the practical point of view, it may be ignored after the second carbon atom. It is important to note that the electron pairs, although permanently displaced, *remain in the same valency shells*.

This inductive effect is sometimes referred to as a transmission effect, since it takes place by a displacement of the intervening electrons in the molecule. There is also another effect possible, the direct or field effect, which results from the electrostatic interaction across space or through a solvent of two charged centres in the same molecule, i.e., the direct effect takes place independently of the electronic system in the molecule (Ingold, 1934). Apparently it has not been possible to separate these two modes of inductive effect in practice.

The inductive effect may be represented in several ways. The following will be adopted in this book:  $-C \rightarrow -C \rightarrow -C$ .

Inductive effects may be due to atoms or groups, and the following is the

order of decreasing inductive effects:

For measurement of relative inductive effects, hydrogen is chosen as reference in the molecule  $CR_3$ —H as standard. If, when the H atom in this molecule is replaced by Z (an atom or group), the electron density in the  $CR_3$  part of the molecule is less in this part than in  $CR_3$ —H, then Z is said to have a —I effect (electron-attracting or electron-withdrawing). If the electron density in the  $CR_3$  part is greater than in  $CR_3$ —H, then Z is said to have a +I effect (electron-repelling or electron-releasing) e.g., Br is —I;  $C_2H_5$  is +I. This terminology is due to Ingold (1926); Robinson suggests the opposite signs for I, i.e., Br is +I;  $C_2H_5$ , —I. Ingold's terminology will be used in this book.

2. Electromeric effect. This is a temporary effect involving the complete transfer of a shared pair of electrons to one or other atom joined by a multiple bond, i.e., a double or triple bond. The electromeric effect is brought into play only at the requirements of the attacking reagent, and takes place almost instantaneously. Consider the following: C=O or C:O. At the moment of reaction the oxygen atom takes complete control of one of the shared electron pairs, the electronic structure becoming C:O:. Since the carbon has lost its share in the electron pair, and the oxygen gained a share, the carbon acquires a positive charge and the oxygen a negative one. Removal of the attacking reagent causes the charged molecule to revert to its original electronic condition. It should be noted that the original condition of the molecule will have small charges on both the carbon and oxygen atoms (positive and negative, respectively), due to the inductive effect of the oxygen, which is more strongly electron-attracting than carbon. Another effect may also operate to give each atom a small charge (see resonance).

The electromeric effect is represented as follows:

$$c = \tilde{c} \longrightarrow \tilde{c} - \tilde{o}$$

The curved arrow shows the displacement of the shared electron pair, beginning at the position where the pair was originally, and ending where

the pair has migrated. It should be noted that the electromeric effect might have taken place:

However, this is most unlikely, since oxygen is strongly electron-attracting, and therefore "assists" the displacement towards itself, and "opposes" the displacement away from itself. This is an example of the electromeric and inductive effects aiding each other. It is possible, however, for them to oppose each other, and when they do so, the electromeric effect generally overcomes the inductive effect, but this happens only when the chain has conjugated double bonds (see e.g., benzene).

The electromeric effect is represented by the symbol E, and is said to be +E when the displacement is away from the atom or group, and -E

when towards the atom or group (cf. the I effect).

The displacement of the electron pair forming a covalent bond when a unit charge is brought up is a measure of the *polarisability* of that bond. It is not a permanent polarisation since, when the charge is removed, the electron displacement disappears.

3. Mesomerism or Resonance. The theory of mesomerism was developed on chemical grounds. It was found that no structural formula could satisfactorily explain all the properties of certain compounds, e.g., benzene. This led to the idea that such compounds exist in a state which is some combination of two or more electronic structures, all of which seem equally capable of describing most of the properties of the compound, but none of describing all the properties. Ingold (1933) called this phenomenon mesomerism ("between the parts", i.e., an intermediate structure). Heisenberg (1926), from quantum mechanics, supplied a theoretical background for mesomerism; he called it resonance, and this is the name which is widely used.

The chief conditions for resonance are:

(i) The positions of the nuclei in each structure must be the same or nearly the same.

(ii) The number of unpaired electrons in each structure must be the same.

(iii) Each structure must have about the same internal energy, i.e., the various structures have approximately the same stability.

Let us consider carbon dioxide as an example. The electronic structure of carbon dioxide may be represented by at least three possible electronic arrangements which satisfy the above conditions:

Structures (II) and (III) are identical as a whole, since both oxygen atoms are the same.\* Each structure, however, shows a given oxygen atom to be in a different state, e.g., the oxygen atom on the left in (II) is negative, whereas in (III) it is positive. Although two (or more) of the electronic structures may be the same when the molecule is considered as a whole, each one must be treated as a separate individual which makes its own contribution to the resonance state. Structures (I), (II) and (III) are called the resonating, unperturbed or canonical structures of carbon dioxide, and carbon dioxide is said to be a resonance hybrid of these structures, or in the mesomeric state.

<sup>\*</sup> If the two oxygen atoms are not the same but one is isotope <sup>16</sup>O and the other isotope <sup>18</sup>O, then clearly structures (II) and (III) are different.

It is hoped that the following crude analogy will help the reader to grasp the concept of resonance. Most readers will be familiar with the rotating disc experiment that shows the composite nature of white light. When stationary, the disc is seen to be coloured with the seven colours of the rainbow. When rotating quickly, the disc appears to be white. The resonating structures of a resonance hybrid may be compared to the seven colours, and the actual state of the resonance hybrid to the "white"; i.e., the resonating structures may be regarded as superimposed on one another, the final result being one kind of molecule. In a resonance hybrid all the molecules are the same; a resonance hybrid cannot be expressed by any single structure.

In a resonance hybrid the molecules have, to some extent, the properties of each resonating structure. The greater the contribution of any one structure, the more closely does the actual state approach to that structure. At the same time, however, a number of properties differ from those of any one structure. The observed heat of formation of carbon dioxide is greater than the calculated value by 31.6 kg. cal. In other words, carbon dioxide requires 31.6 kg. cal. more energy than expected to break it up into its elements, i.e., carbon dioxide is more stable than anticipated on the structure O=C=O. How can this be explained? Arguments based on quantum mechanics show that a resonance hybrid would be more stable than any single resonating structure, i.e., the internal energy of a resonance hybrid is less than that calculated for any one of the resonating structures. difference between the heat of formation of the actual compound, i.e., the observed value, and that of the resonating structure which has the lowest internal energy (obtained by calculation) is called the resonance energy. Thus the value of the resonance energy of any resonance hybrid is not an absolute value; it is a relative value, the resonating structure containing the least internal energy being chosen as the arbitrary standard for the resonance hybrid. The greater the resonance energy, the greater is the stabilisation due to resonance. The resonance energy is a maximum when the resonating structures have equal energy content, and the more resonating structures there are, the greater is the resonance energy. When the resonating structures are identical in energy content, and consequently the resonance energy is a maximum, the compound is said to be completely degenerate.

The resonance energy of a molecule is a property of the molecule in the ground state. Most measurements of resonance energies have been obtained from heats of combustion, but a few measurements have also been obtained from heats of hydrogenation; the latter method is more accurate than the The heat of combustion of the most stable classical structure (i.e., the resonating structure with the lowest internal energy) is, as mentioned above, obtained by calculation. This presupposes that accurate values for bond-energies are known. If these values are not accurate, then one cannot expect to obtain accurate resonance energies. In practice, several different sets of bond-energies have been proposed, one set using bond-energies in isolation (i.e., the bond between two atoms is assumed to be independent of other atoms in the molecule), and another set using bond-energies which depend on the environment (i.e., takes into account other atoms in the molecule). Thus different resonance energies are usually obtained for any given molecule, and so, when these values are small (i.e., the resonance energy is small), the value may be almost, if not completely, due to the use of inaccurate bond-energies and not actually due to stabilisation of the molecule

by resonance.

Another property of the resonance hybrid which differs from that of any of the resonating structures is that of the bond length, *i.e.*, the distance between atoms joined by a covalent bond. The normal length of the car-

bonyl double bond (C=O) in ketones is about 1·22 A; the value found in carbon dioxide is 1·15 A. For a given pair of atoms, the length of a single bond is greater than that of a double bond, which, in turn, is greater than that of a triple bond. Resonance, therefore, accounts for the carbonyl bond in carbon dioxide not being single, double or triple (see also butadiene, p. 87, and benzene, p. 507).

In a resonance hybrid, the electronic arrangement and bond lengths will be different from those of the resonating structures. Consequently the observed dipole moment may differ from that calculated for any one

structure.

As we have seen above, in a resonance hybrid all the molecules have the same structure. A difficulty that arises with the resonance theory is the representation of a resonance hybrid. The molecules corresponding to the structures chosen as the resonating structures do not necessarily have an actual existence. Thus, if these resonating structures are fictitious, what fictitious structures are we to choose? The normal way of solving this problem is first to ascertain the structure of the molecule by the usual methods, and then describe it by means of the classical valency-bond formula. Let us consider again the case of carbon dioxide. The classical structure is (I) (see above). As we have also seen, it has been found that not all the properties of carbon dioxide are described by this classical formula. Thus the classical structure is an approximation, and it is in this sense that classical structures are fictitious. By postulating other electronic structures (II) and (III), wave functions can then also be obtained for these fictitious structures. By a linear combination of all three functions, a "structure" is obtained which describes the properties of carbon dioxide. This "structure" is called the resonance hybrid of the classical (I) and the two postulated electronic structures (II) and (III).

It is very important to note here that wave-mechanics offers a theoretical method of studying the electron distribution in a molecule, but starts with a knowledge of the relative positions of all the nuclei concerned, *i.e.*, with the "classical structure". Theoretically, it is possible to start from a molecular formula, and then solve the structure. The number of possibilities and mathematical difficulties, however, are far too great at present, and so it seems that the classical chemist, who arrives at the classical structures by classical methods, will still be "in business" for a long time to come. Since, however, by means of wave-mechanics one can calculate the density of electronic charge at all points in a molecule (of known classical structure), it is possible from this information to deduce charge distributions, bond lengths and bond angles, and consequently the size and shape of a mole-

cule.

The question that now arises is: Starting with the classical structure, what other electronic structures are we justified in postulating? A very important point in this connection is that resonance can occur only when all the atoms involved lie in the same plane (or nearly in the same plane). Thus any change in structure which prevents planarity will diminish or inhibit resonance. This phenomenon is known as steric inhibition of resonance (p. 688).

In practice, then, the conditions described above must be considered when choosing canonical structures. At the same time, the following observations

will be a useful guide:

(i) Elements of the first two rows never violate the octet rule (hydrogen,

of course, can never have more than a duplet).

(ii) The more stable a structure, then generally the larger will be its contribution to the resonance state. The stability of a molecule can be found from its bond energies. The bond energy is the amount of energy required

to dissociate a compound, say AB, in the gaseous state, into the neutral atoms A and B. Generally, the structure with the largest number of bonds

is the most stable.

(iii) If the different resonating structures have the same number of bonds, but some structures are charged, then the charged molecules will be less stable than the uncharged. The high energy content of a charged molecule is due to the work put into the molecule to separate the charges, and the greater the distance of charge separation, the less stable is that structure. Even so, charged structures may make a considerable contribution to the resonance state, since resonance among a number of charged structures gives a resonance hybrid that is more stable than any one resonating structure.

The final problem is the method of representing a resonance hybrid. Various methods have been used, and the one used in this book is that introduced by Bury (1935). This consists of writing down the resonating structures with a double-headed arrow between each pair:

$$0=c=0 \leftrightarrow \bar{0}-c=\bar{0} \leftrightarrow \bar{0}=c-\bar{0}$$

Inductive and resonance (mesomeric) effects are permanently operating in the "real" molecule; collectively they are known as the polarisation effects. On the other hand, there are also two temporary (time-variable) effects, the electromeric effect and the inductomeric effect (which operates by an inductive mechanism). Both of these are brought into play by the attacking reagent, and collectively they are known as the polarisability effects. Remick (1943) has suggested the use of subscripts s and d to represent the static (permanent) and dynamic (time-variable) effects. Thus the inductive effect may be represented by the symbol I, and the inductomeric effect by I<sub>d</sub>. Since polarisability effects are brought into play only by the approach of the attacking reagent, they will therefore aid and never inhibit a reaction.

Strictly speaking, the term resonance effect (R) is not the same as the mesomeric effect (M). The mesomeric effect is a permanent polarisation, and the mechanism of electron transfer is the same as that in the electromeric effect, i.e., the mesomeric effect is a permanent displacement of electron pairs

which occurs in a system of the type Z-C=C; e.g., Z=R2N, C1:

Thus the essential requirement for mesomerism is the presence of a multiple bond in the molecule. On the other hand, the resonance effect embraces all permanent electron displacements in the molecule in the ground state, e.g., the hydrogen chloride molecule is a resonance hybrid of two resonating structures:

$$H-Cl \leftrightarrow H+Cl$$

Since there is no multiple bond in this molecule, the mesomeric effect is not

possible.

When the electronic displacement is away from the group the mesomeric (resonance) effect is said to be +M (+R), and when towards the group,

The mesomeric effect is particularly important in conjugated systems (p. 84), and the combined mesomeric and electromeric effects are known as the conjugative effect. This term is also used in the same sense as the resonance effect. Also, since this combined effect was first recognised in connection with tautomerism, it has also been called the tautomeric effect  $(\pm T)$ .

The possible polar influences of groups are shown in the following table:

Electronic mechanism	Polarisation effect (permanent)	Polarisability effect (temporary)			
Inductive (±I)	Inductive (I or I <sub>s</sub> )	Inductomeric (I <sub>d</sub> )			
Conjugative (Tautomeric, ±T; or Resonance, ±R)	Mesomeric (M) or Resonance (R)	Electromeric (E)			
Fields in which operative	Physical properties. Reaction equilibria. Reaction rates.	Reaction rates only			

As has been pointed out above, resonance describes all permanent electron displacements in the molecule in the ground state. It therefore follows that the I-effect can be described as due to resonance. Thus resonance is the combination of I- and M-effects. It is more convenient, however, from the point of view of the organic chemist, to consider a molecule with respect to its I-effect and "resonance" (mesomeric) effect separately. Hence from this point of view, resonance is the additional permanent electronic displacements to the I-effect, and it is customary to ignore the latter effect when discussing "resonance". In other words, resonance, in this context, is concerned only with the part of the molecule containing multiple bonds and is therefore, strictly speaking,  $\pi$ -electron resonance. This is the sense in which the term resonance will be used in this book.

Effect of structure on reactivity. The type of reaction of an organic compound is largely dependent on the nature of the functional group present (p. 48). It has been found that various structural changes, e.g., the introduction of a given group into different positions in a molecule containing a given functional group, usually affect the rate of a given type of reaction and also the equilibrium position, and may even change the type of mechanism of the reaction. Much work has been done to try to correlate structure and reactivity (i.e., rate of reaction), and as an outcome of this work, it appears that some sort of quantitative correlation can be made on the basis of consideration of independent contributions of inductive, resonance (mesomeric) and steric effects. When each effect has been assessed, then all three may be combined, and in this way there is obtained a relationship between structure and reactivity. In the text are discussed many cases of the effects on reaction rates and mechanism by polar (I and R) and steric

Reactions in organic chemistry may be classified into the following main types: (i) substitution; (ii) replacement or displacement; (iii) addition; (iv) elimination; (v) isomerisation (rearrangement).

# THE HYDROGEN BOND OR HYDROGEN BRIDGE

Compounds containing OH or NH groups often exhibit unexpected properties such as relatively high boiling points, and it was soon felt necessary to assume that the elements oxygen or nitrogen were linked by means of hydrogen, thereby producing the hydrogen bond. Detailed study has shown that the unexpected properties were exhibited only when the atoms participating in the bond had high electron-affinity—fluorine, oxygen and nitrogen (decreasing in this order), and to a less extent, chlorine and sulphur. Thus the hydrogen bond explained, for example, the existence of the HF<sub>2</sub> ion, the association of hydroxylic compounds such as water, alcohols, etc., and the association of animonia.

6785

S.C.E R.T. W.B. LIBRARY

Date ...

9526

Harra with Ares

The exact nature of the hydrogen bond has been the subject of much discussion. Possibly a number of factors contribute, but it appears that the most important one is electrostatic. In bond Z—H, if Z has high electronaffinity, there will be a relatively large amount of polarity, i.e., the state of  $\delta$ -  $\delta$ +

affairs will be Z-H, where  $\delta$  + is relatively large. Since the hydrogen atom

has a tiny volume, the H will exert a large electrostatic force and so can attract atoms with a relatively large  $\delta$ — charge, providing these atoms have a small atomic radius. Fluorine, oxygen and nitrogen are of this character. If the atom has a greater radius the electrostatic forces are weaker; thus chlorine, although it has about the same electron-affinity as nitrogen, forms very weak hydrogen bonds since its atomic radius is greater.

This theory of electrostatic union has much to support it. The hydrogen bond is very weak, and has more in common with the "van der Waals forces" (which are electrical in nature) than with anything else. Values obtained for the energy of the hydrogen bond are H—F....H, 10 k.cal./mole;

H-O-H, 7; H-N-H, 2.

Hydrogen bond formation *intramolecularly*, *i.e.*, involving one molecule only, gives rise to ring formation or chelation, and this usually when the formation of a 5-, 6- or 7-membered ring is possible. Hydrogen bonding *intermolecularly*, *i.e.*, between two or more molecules, gives rise to association. Many examples of hydrogen bonding will be found in the text, and this is represented by a dotted line between the hydrogen and other atom involved

(as shown above).

Hydrogen bonding affects all physico-chemical properties such as m.p., b.p., solubility, spectra (infra-red and Raman shifts), etc., e.g., association produces a higher boiling point than expected (e.g., from the molecular weight of the compound). On the other hand, chelation usually produces a lower boiling point than expected, e.g., a nitro-compound usually has a higher boiling point than its parent compound, but if chelation is possible in the nitro-compound, the boiling point is lowered (see, e.g., nitrophenols, p. 626).

### ATOMIC AND MOLECULAR ORBITALS

So far, we have discussed the structure of molecules in terms of valency bonds. There is an alternative method of investigating the structure of molecules, and to appreciate this approach—and to extend the other—it is necessary to consider the structure of matter from the point of view of wave-mechanics. Classical physics (i.e., the laws of mechanics, etc.) is satisfactory when dealing with large masses. These laws are approximations, but deviations become significant only when dealing with very small particles such as electrons and nuclei. The behaviour of these small particles, however, may be satisfactorily studied by wave (quantum) mechanics. This uses the idea of the particle-wave duality of matter. It has already been pointed out that the electron may be regarded as a tiny mass carrying a negative charge. In 1923, de Broglie proposed that every moving particle has wave properties associated with it. This was first experimentally verified in the case of the electron (Davisson and Germer, 1927; G. P. Thomson, 1928). Thus an electron has a dual nature, particle and wave, but it behaves as one or the other according to the nature of the experiment; it cannot at the same time behave as both. According to wave-mechanics, a moving particle is represented by a wave function  $\psi$  such that  $\psi^2 dv$  is the probability of finding the particle in the element of volume dv. The greater the value of  $\psi^2$ , the greater is the probability of finding the electron in that volume dv. Theoretically,  $\psi$  has a finite value at a large distance (compared with atomic dimensions) from the nucleus, but in practice there is very little probability of finding the electron beyond a distance of 2–3A. It is therefore possible to map out regions or contours within which the probability of finding the electron is high, and outside which there is very little likelihood of finding the electron.

An alternative interpretation of the wave function  $\psi$  is to regard the electron as a cloud (charge-cloud), the density of the cloud at any point being proportional to  $\psi^2$ . Hence once again it is possible to draw contours within which almost all the electron charge is to be found. These regions (of probability or of density of charge-cloud) are known as atomic orbitals

(A.O.s), and have characteristic shapes.

In 1926, Schrödinger developed the wave-equation, which connected the wave function  $\psi$  of an electron with its energy, E. This equation has an infinite number of solutions, but very few of these solutions describe the known behaviour of electrons. Thus only certain values for E are permissible, since certain conditions must be satisfied. The permitted solutions for  $\psi$  are called the eigenfunctions, and the corresponding values of E are called the eigenvalues. A number of eigenfunctions exist, the simplest being those which possess spherical symmetry ( $\psi_s$  function), and the next simplest being those which possess an axis of symmetry ( $\psi_p$  function). The eigenvalues (i.e., the energy values) for the  $\psi_s$  functions are not, in general, the same as those for the  $\psi_p$  functions. Since  $\psi^2 dv$  measures the probability of finding the electron in the element of volume dv, we can therefore picture "probability regions "which will be generated by the expressions  $\psi_s^2$  and  $\psi_p^2$ . Such regions are those we have called atomic orbitals, and we can speak of the energy of an A.O. if we mean the eigenvalue (energy value) corresponding to that wave function  $\psi$ .

In addition to its wave function  $\psi$ , an electron also has spin. Two electrons can have the same wave function, *i.e.*, can occupy the same orbital *provided* their spins are opposite (Pauli exclusion principle). In this case the electrons

are said to be paired.

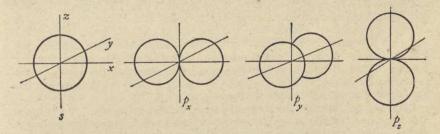


FIG. 2.1.

The various A.O.s are classified as s, p, d, f, . . . orbitals. Only the s and p orbitals need concern us, and Fig.  $r^*$  shows their shapes. The s-orbital is spherically symmetrical, which means that the region within which it is reasonable to expect to find the electron is a sphere having the nucleus as centre. The p-orbitals are dumb-bell in shape, and the two halves are separated by a nodal plane, over which the value of  $\psi$  is zero, i.e., there is no likelihood of finding the electron in this plane. In these p-orbitals, the electron is confined to regions which have a marked directional character, each orbital having an axis at right angles to those of the other

<sup>\*</sup> Each diagram has been given two numbers, the first indicating the chapter, and the second the order in that chapter. Reference to a diagram in its own chapter will be indicated by the second number only.

two, and hence they are known as the  $p_x$ ,  $p_y$ ,  $p_z$  orbitals, respectively. These orbitals are entirely equivalent except for their directional property.

The order of orbital energies is  $1s < 2s < 2p < 3s < 3p < \dots$  Since an electron must occupy some particular orbital, when the electron "jumps" from that orbital to another, it acquires the energy of the new orbital, absorbing or emitting the difference in a "discrete energy packet" or quantum. Not all transitions between different energy levels are allowable; a definite rule of selection exists, e.g., permitted transitions are  $s \longrightarrow p$ ,  $p \longrightarrow s$  or d, etc.;  $s \longrightarrow s$  is not permitted. When an electron absorbs a quantum of energy, it is driven into an (allowable) orbital of higher energy. The atom is then said to be "excited", and is more reactive. On returning to its normal orbital, the electron emits the quantum of energy at a definite wave-length, giving rise to a particular line in the emission spectrum (see p. 773). When all the electrons in an atom are in their normal orbitals, i.e., orbitals of lowest energy, the atom is said to be in the

" ground " state.

So far, we have dealt only with atoms, i.e., with electrons associated with one nucleus. The wave-equations for molecules cannot be solved without making some approximations. Two types of approximations have been made, one set giving rise to the valence-bond method (V.B.); and the other set to the molecular orbital method (M.O.). The V.B. method—due mainly to the work of Heitler, London, Slater and Pauling-considers the molecule as being made up of atoms with electrons in atomic orbitals on each atom. Thus a molecule is treated as if it were composed of atoms which, to some extent, retain their individual character when linked to other atoms. The M.O. method—due mainly to the work of Hund, Lennard-Jones and Mulliken -treats a molecule in the same way as an atom, except that in the molecule an electron moves in the field of more than one nucleus, i.e., molecular orbitals are polycentric. Thus each electron in a molecule is described by a certain wave function, the molecular orbital, for which contours can be drawn as for A.O.s, but differing in that the former are polycentric and the latter monocentric. In general, the greater the freedom (i.e., the larger the region for movement) allowed to an electron, the lower will be its energy. Thus atoms combine to form a molecule because, owing to the overlap of the A.O.s when the atoms are brought together, the electrons acquire a greater freedom, and the energy of the system is lowered below that of the separate atoms. Energy would therefore have to be supplied to separate the atoms in the molecule, and the greater the amount of energy necessary, the stronger are the bonds formed between the various atoms.

Let us now consider the case of the hydrogen molecule. A hydrogen atom has one is electron. When the bond is formed between two hydrogen atoms to form the hydrogen molecule, these two is electrons become paired to form molecular electrons, i.e., both occupy the same M.O., a state of affairs which is possible provided their spins are antiparallel. A very important principle for obtaining the M.O. is that the bond energy is greatest when the component A.O.s overlap one another as much as possible. To get the maximum amount of overlap of orbitals, the orbitals should be in the same plane. Thus the M.O. is considered as being a linear combination of atomic orbitals with maximum overlap (L.C.A.O.). Furthermore, according to L.C.A.O. theory, the binding energy is greater the more nearly equal are the energies of the component A.O.s. If these energies differ very much, then there will be no significant combination between the two atoms con-

cerned.

Since the hydrogen molecule is composed of two identical atoms, the probability of finding both electrons simultaneously near the same nucleus is very small. Hence one might expect the M.O. to be symmetrical with respect

to the two hydrogen nuclei, i.e., the M.O. in the hydrogen molecule will be "plum-shaped" (Fig. 2).

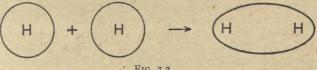


FIG. 2.2.

Although the probability of finding the two electrons simultaneously near the same nucleus is very small, nevertheless this probability exists, and gives rise to the two ionic structures H+H- and H-H+. Thus the hydrogen molecule will be a resonance hybrid of three resonating structures, one purely covalent (i.e., the two electrons are equally shared), and two ionic (i.e., the pair of electrons are associated with one nucleus all the time):

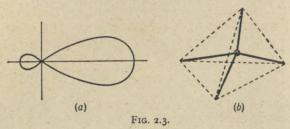
# $H:H \longleftrightarrow H:H \longleftrightarrow H:H$

Calculation has shown that the ionic structures contribute very little to the actual state of the hydrogen molecule, and the bond between the two hydrogen atoms is described as a covalent bond with partial ionic character. It should here be noted that when the single bond is formed between the two hydrogen atoms, the probability of finding the electrons is greatest in the region between the two nuclei. It is this concentration of the negatively charged electrons between the two positive hydrogen nuclei that binds the nuclei together. Since electrons are negatively charged, they will repel each other and so tend to keep out of the region between the two nuclei. On the other hand, since the spins of the two electrons are antiparallel, this produces attraction between the two electrons, thereby tending to concentrate them in the internuclear region. The net result is that the electron density for paired electrons is greatest between the two nuclei. Such a bond is said to be a localised M.O., and preserves the idea of a bond connecting the two atoms. This localisation (in a covalent bond) gives rise to the properties of bond lengths, dipole moments, polarisability and force constants.

# HYBRIDISATION OF BOND ORBITALS

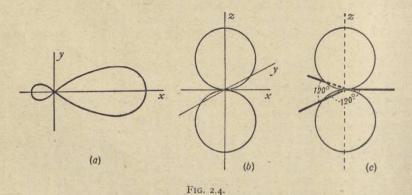
The electron configuration of carbon is  $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p_x, 2p_y)$ . It therefore appears to be bivalent. To be quadrivalent, the  $(2s)^2$  and the  $(2p_x, 2p_y)$ electrons must be involved. One way is to uncouple the paired 2s electrons, and then promote one of them to the empty 2p2 orbital. Should this be done, four valencies would be obtained, since each of the electrons could now be paired with an electron of another atom. The resulting bonds, however, would not all be equivalent, since we would now have the component A.O.s 2s,  $2p_x$ ,  $2p_y$ ,  $2p_z$ . All work on saturated carbon compounds indicates that the four valencies of carbon are equivalent (but see below). In order to get four equivalent valencies, the four "pure" A.O.s must be "mixed" or hybridised. It is possible, however, to hybridise these four "pure" A.O.s in a number of ways to give four valencies which may, or may not, be equivalent. Three methods of hybridisation are important: (i) tetrahedral (sp3 bond), (ii) trigonal (sp2 bond), (iii) digonal (sp bond).

 (i) In tetrahedral hybridisation, the (2s) and (2p<sub>x</sub>, 2p<sub>y</sub>, 2p<sub>z</sub>) electrons are all hybridised, resulting in four equivalent orbitals arranged tetrahedrally, i.e., pointing towards the four corners of a regular tetrahedron (Fig. 3). The orbitals are greatly concentrated along these four directions (Fig. a shows the shape along one of these directions). Then by linear combination with the 1s orbitals of four hydrogen atoms, four equivalent M.O.s are obtained for methane. Because of the large amount of overlapping between the hybridised A.O.s of the carbon and the s A.O. of the hydrogen atom, there will be strong binding between the nuclei. As in the case of the hydrogen molecule, each M.O. is almost completely confined to the region between the two nuclei concerned, i.e., in methane are four localised molecular orbitals. This scheme of localised M.O.s may be satisfactorily applied to all compounds containing single covalent bonds. Bond orbitals which are symmetrical about the line joining the two nuclei concerned are known as  $\sigma$ -bonds.



The above state of affairs holds good only so long as four *identical* groups are attached to the carbon atom, e.g., in CH<sub>4</sub>, CCl<sub>4</sub>, C(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub>, etc. When the groups are different, e.g., in CHCl<sub>3</sub>, the four bonds are no longer equivalent. The four carbon valencies are now hybridised in a non-equivalent fashion, pointing towards the four corners of an *irregular* tetrahedron. In CHCl<sub>3</sub>, the three Cl—C—Cl angles are increased from the normal angle of 109° 28′ to about 111°, and the three Cl—C—H angles decreased to about 108°.

(ii) In trigonal hybridisation, the 2s,  $2p_x$  and  $2p_y$  orbitals are hybridised,



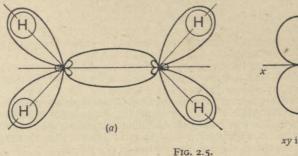
resulting in three equivalent coplanar orbitals pointing at angles of  $120^{\circ}$  in the xy plane (Fig. 4a). The remaining orbital is the undisturbed  $2p_z$  (Fig. b). Thus there will be three equivalent valencies in one plane and a fourth pointing at right angles to this plane (Fig. c). The three coplanar valencies form  $\sigma$ -bonds, and the  $2p_z$  valency forms the so-called  $\pi$ -bond. The  $2p_z$  electrons are known as  $\pi$ -electrons, mobile electrons, or unsaturation electrons when they form the  $\pi$ -bond. The trigonal arrangement occurs in compounds containing a double bond, which is regarded as being made up

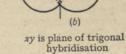
of a strong bond (o-bond) between two trigonal hybrid A.O.s of carbon, and a weaker bond (π-bond) due to the relatively small overlap of the two pure pz orbitals in a plane at right angles to the trigonal hybrids. Fig. 5(a) shows the plan, and (b) the elevation of ethylene,  $CH_2 = CH_2$  (see also p. 427).

The H-C-H angle in ethylene has been measured spectroscopically, and it has been found to be 119° 55' (Gallaway et al., 1942). This is in agreement

with the value expected for trigonal hybridisation.

It is the  $\pi$ -electrons which are involved in the electromeric and resonance effects. When a compound contains two or more double bonds, the resulting





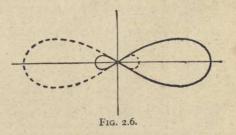
M.O.s depend on the positions of these bonds with respect to one another

(see, e.g., butadiene, p. 88, and benzene, p. 509).

(iii) In digonal hybridisation, only one 2s electron and the  $2p_x$  electron are hybridised, resulting in two equivalent collinear orbitals (Fig. 6); the 2 py and 2pz electrons remain undisturbed. Thus we get two equivalent valencies (forming the o-type of bond) pointing in opposite directions along a straight line, and two other valencies (each forming a π-type of bond),

one concentrated along the y-axis (the  $2p_y$  orbital), and the other along the z-axis (the  $2p_z$  orbital). The digonal arrangement occurs in compounds containing a triple bond, e.g., acetylene.

When the electrons of any atom have been placed in hybridised orbitals, that atom is said to be in a "valence state". The atom on its own cannot exist in a valence state; energy is required to promote the



atom to this condition. This energy is obtained through the formation of bonds which are stronger with the hybridised orbitals than with the "pure" orbitals, i.e., more energy is released with the former than with the latter.

In the foregoing account of carbon hybridisation, multiple bonds (double and triple) have been described in terms of  $\sigma$ -bonds and  $\pi$ -bonds. There is, however, an alternative approach to this problem of valency theory. The application of this theory makes use of the Pauli exclusion principle, and also takes into account the electrostatic repulsion between electrons. These principles lead to the conclusion that electrons with the same spin avoid each other. Thus, for example, Zimmerman et al. (1949) have shown, as a consequence of the exclusion principle, that the most probable arrangement of the four electrons of carbon (2s, 2p, 2p, 2p) is at the corners of a regular tetrahedron provided all the electrons have the same spin. This tetrahedral configuration, however, is achieved only if the four electrons are equivalent, i.e., the electrons occupy orbitals which in carbon atoms are sp3 hybrid orbitals.

As we have seen, in saturated carbon compounds the four  $sp^3$  orbitals point towards the corners of a tetrahedron. In ethylene we have used  $sp^2$  trigonal hybridisation (one  $\sigma$ - and one  $\pi$ -bond) to describe the double bond. It is possible, however, to still use  $sp^3$  hybridisation to describe ethylene. In this case two electrons are in one orbital of "banana" shape ("bent" bond), and the other two electrons in a second "banana" orbital, equivalent to the first but the mirror image of it. Thus ethylene may be represented (Fig. 7; see also p. 488):

It is interesting to note that this "bent" bond method of representing ethylene is equivalent to Baeyer's description of a double bond (p. 487).

In the same way, the triple bond in acetylene (previously described in terms of one  $\sigma$ - and two  $\pi$ -bonds) may also be regarded as made up of three equivalent

sp³ hybrids symmetrically disposed round the C—C axis.

Quantum mechanical arguments show that both methods of representing these multiple bonds are equal to each other, each method having certain advantages. The  $\sigma$ - $\pi$  bond method is more convenient for describing transitions from one state into another (e.g., in electronic spectra), whereas the "bent" bond method is more convenient for describing electron distribution in a molecule.

Now let us consider molecules in which the central atom has lone pairs. Consider nitrogen, with electron configuration  $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^3$ . This has three 2p orbitals, and if each combines with a hydrogen atom, then the molecule of ammonia is  $:NH_3$ . In this molecule there is a lone pair  $(2s)^2$ , and the three hydrogen atoms, bound by the overlap with 2p orbitals, will therefore have a valency angle of 90°. The nitrogen atom is tercovalent, and by virtue of its lone pair, can act as a donor to become quadrivalent uni-electrovalent, e.g.,

At first sight it might appear that the four hydrogen atoms in the ammonium ion are not equivalent; three bonds are formed from 2p electrons, and one by the lone  $2s^2$ . However, the fact is that all four hydrogen atoms in NH<sub>4</sub><sup>+</sup> are equivalent, and also the valency angle is about  $109.5^{\circ}$  (the tetrahedral value). Moreover, the valency angle in ammonia is about  $107^{\circ}$  and not  $90^{\circ}$  (the expected value from 2p bonding).

Now consider oxygen  $(1s)^2(2s)^2(2p)^4$ . One 2p orbital is doubly filled, and so, in water, one would expect that the two single 2p electrons would combine with hydrogen to form water in which the bond angle HOH is 90°. Actually the bond angle is about 104.5°. Also, since the water molecule has two lone pairs, it can act as a donor to form the hydroxonium ion, H3O.+, and it is found that all the three hydrogen atoms are equivalent. The valency angles are nearly those expected of tetrahedral configurations, and the difference from 90° is far too large to be accounted for by repulsion between hydrogen atoms. A satisfactory explanation is as follows. Sidgwick et al. (1940) assumed that lone pairs of electrons and bonding pairs were of equal importance, and that they arranged themselves symmetrically so as to minimise the repulsions between them. pairs of electrons in a valency shell, whether a bonding pair or a lone pair, are always arranged in the same way, and this depends only on the total number of pairs. Thus two pairs are arranged linearly (e.g., HgCl2), three pairs in the form of an equilateral triangle (e.g., BCl<sub>2</sub>), four pairs tetrahedrally (e.g., CH<sub>4</sub>), five pairs in the form of trigonal bipyramid and six pairs octahedrally. In all cases it is assumed that all the pairs of electrons occupy hybridised orbitals and only σ-bonds are present (see also p. 335).

Now let us consider ammonia and water from this point of view. In each of the valency shells of these central atoms there are four pairs of electrons (nitrogen with one lone pair, and oxygen with two lone pairs). If these four pairs occupy four tetrahedrally hybridised orbitals, then the valency angles should be about

109.5°. As we have seen above, in ammonia the angle is about 107°, and in water about 104.5°. The problem then is to account for these deviations from the anticipated "regular" shapes. This may be explained by assuming electrostatic repulsions between electron pairs in the valency shell (both bonding and lone pairs) are in the following order:

lone pair - lone pair > lone pair - bond pair > bond pair - bond pair.

This order can be explained on the basis that lone pairs are more concentrated than bonding pairs (the latter are "stretched" in the formation of covalent bonds). Thus lone-pair electrons exert greater electrostatic repulsions on other lone pairs than on bonding pairs. Consequently, when lone pairs occupy the valency shell, bonding pairs are "forced together". In CH4 there are four bonding pairs, and so the distribution is symmetrical with a valency angle of 109° 28'. In NH<sub>3</sub>, there are three bonding pairs and one lone pair, and since the latter has a bigger repulsive force, the bonding pairs are forced closer together (the bond angle is about 107°). It should also be noted that the lone pair is also in a hybridised orbital, and so when the ammonia molecule is converted into the ammonium ion the four bonding pairs are in the same state of hybridisation, and consequently all four hydrogen atoms are equivalent.

In the water molecule (bond angle 104.5°), there are two lone pairs, and consequently the bonding pairs are "closed up" more than in ammonia.

Other factors also play a part in deciding the values of the bond angles: the electronegativity of the central atom and the electronegativities of the attached

Let us now consider the hydrogen chloride molecule, H:Cl:. Here again the four pairs of electrons of the chlorine atom (one bonding pair and three lone pairs) each occupy each sp3 hybrid orbital. In this molecule, however, since chlorine is more strongly electron-attracting than hydrogen, the electrons are more likely to be simultaneously near the former atom than the latter. Thus, although the electrons will be found with great probability in the region between the atoms, i.e., we have a localised M.O., nevertheless the region near the chlorine atom will tend to be occupied more than that near the hydrogen atom. In other words, in addition to the covalent structure H-Cl, there will also be a significant contribution of the ionic structure H+Cl-, the contribution of H-Cl+ being negligible. Thus we may say that hydrogen chloride is a resonance hybrid of the two resonating structures H—Cl and H+Cl-. The actual hydrogen chloride molecule will

therefore have a dipole moment H-C1. In general, when two dissimilar atoms are linked, the contribution of the two ionic structures, A+B- and A-B+, will not be equally important. The greater the electron-affinity of B with respect to A, the greater will be the contribution of A+B- to the actual state of the molecule. The problem is then to decide what are the weights of the contributions of the resonating structures. The importance of this problem is readily seen from a consideration of carbon dioxide.

$$O = C = O$$
  $O = C = O$   $O = C = O$   $O = C = O$   $O = C = O$ 

Suppose these three structures are described by the wave functions  $\psi_1$ ,  $\psi_2$ and  $\psi_3$ . Then the actual molecule will be represented by a wave function which is a linear combination of the three structures:

$$\psi = a_1 \psi_1 + a_2 \psi_2 + a_3 \psi_3$$

The best approximation is given by values for the coefficients  $a_1$ ,  $a_2$  and  $a_3$ that give the lowest energy to the resonance hybrid, i.e., coefficients a1, a2 and  $a_3$  are a measure of the weights of the resonating structures. This may be done by calculation. On the other hand, in qualitative resonance arguments, it is usual to assume that the weight of a resonating structure is directly related to its energy content. This, however, appears to be satisfactory only when two structures are involved, but often leads to erroneous results when three or more are involved.

Now let us consider the problem of ionic character of a bond, and for this purpose let us examine the hydrogen chloride molecule. There are two important structures for this molecule, one purely covalent and the other purely ionic: H-Cl and H+Cl-. The wave function of the resonance

hybrid is:

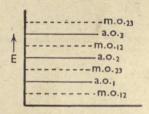
 $\psi = \psi_{\text{covalent}} + a\psi_{\text{ionic}}$ 

When the value of a is such that minimum energy is obtained, then  $(a^2/1 + a^2) \times 100$  is called the per cent. ionic character of the bond. may be calculated from a knowledge of the dipole moment of the bond. The following values have been found for the hydrogen halides:

Thus HF is largely ionic, and HI is mainly covalent.

We have already discussed the problem of the ground and excited states of an atom. Now let us consider the analogous position of molecules. Suppose we are dealing with a diatomic molecule in which each atom has supplied one electron to form the bond. By means of the L.C.A.O. theory, the solution

for the M.O. is found by ultimately solving a quadratic equation derived from the combination of the two wave functions (A.O.s). Two real roots are obtained, i.e., two M.O.s of different energy levels are possible when two A.O.s are combined. Now it is possible for both electrons to occupy either M.O., or for one electron to be in the M.O. of the lower energy level and the other in the higher energy level. When both electrons occupy the lower M.O., the molecule is in the ground state, and when one or both electrons occupy the higher M.O., the mole-



cule is in an excited state. Suppose  $E_1$  and  $E_2$  (where  $E_1 < E_2$ ) are the energies of the two contributing A.O.s and  $\mathscr{E}_1$  and  $\mathscr{E}_2$ , (where  $\mathscr{E}_1 < \mathscr{E}_2$ ) are the energies of the two resulting M.O.s. On comparing these energies, it will be found that  $\mathscr{E}_1 < E_1$  and  $\mathscr{E}_2 > E_2$ , i.e., one M.O. has lower energy than the lower of its components (this is the ground state), and the other M.O. has a higher energy than the higher of its components (this is an excited state). In general, if n A.O.s are combined, then there are n resultant M.O.s, and any two consecutive M.O.s embrace one of the contributing A.O.s (see Fig. 8).

It can now be seen that when two atoms combine to form a bond, two types of bonding are possible. In one M.O., the energy level is lower than either of its component A.O.s. In this M.O., the electron charge is concentrated in the region between the two nuclei, resulting in strong bonding between the atoms. This type of M.O. is called a bonding orbital or o, bond (Fig. 9a). have seen, a bonding orbital is formed by two electrons with their spins antiparallel. In the other M.O., the energy level is higher than either of its component A.O.s. In this M.O., the charge is pushed away from the region between the two nuclei, resulting in a nodal plane midway between A and B. condition A and B repel each other, and this M.O. is said to be anti-bonding or a σ, bond (Fig. 9b). In an anti-bonding orbital, the two electrons have the same spin, and since negatively charged electrons repel each other, and since electrons with the same spin tend to keep as far away from each other as possible, the concentration of two such electrons in the internuclear region is reduced to such a great extent that there is no bonding between the two nuclei; the result is thus an anti-bond.

Any two A.O.s can be combined provided their energies are approximately the same. In the above example of bonding and anti-bonding orbitals, A and B were atoms with s electrons. Combination of two 2p electrons also gives one bonding and one anti-bonding orbital (Fig. 10a and b). In the bonding orbital, a  $\pi_u$ -bond, there is one nodal plane (which contains the molecular axis), but in the anti-bonding orbital, a  $\pi_g$ -bond, there are two nodal planes (one containing the

molecular axis, and the other perpendicular to it). It should here be noted that as the number of nodes in a bond increases, the energy level rises, and consequently the bond becomes weaker. When a molecule undergoes transitions from one energy level to another (with emission or absorption of light), a g state must go to a u state, or vice-versa. Transitions from one g state to another g state, and from one g state to another g state, are forbidden.

An important difference between V.B. and M.O. theories is that when dealing with energy levels of electrons in *molecules*, in the V.B. method, electrons are dealt with in *pairs*, whereas in the M.O. method, electrons can be dealt with

individually (see also p. 777).

# THE GENERAL NATURE OF ORGANIC REACTIONS

Much work has been done on reaction mechanisms, i.e., the actual steps by which a reaction takes place. A chemical equation indicates the initial and final products of a reaction; rarely does it indicate how the reaction proceeds. Many reactions take place via intermediates which may or may not have been isolated. When the products of a reaction are formed by a single collision of the reactant molecules, i.e., the reaction proceeds without any intermediates, the reaction is said to be a one-step (or elementary) reaction. Most reactions, however, are complex, i.e., they occur via a number of reaction steps. The rate of the overall reaction is controlled by the slowest step; this is known as the rate-determining step.

There is, in general, no one method that is satisfactory for the determination of mechanisms of reactions, but the use of a number of methods may lead to an acceptable answer. It should be borne in mind that mechanisms are, in general, theories that have been devised to explain the facts which have been obtained experimentally. Some of the commoner methods

used for elucidating mechanisms are:

(1) Kinetics. Kinetic studies are concerned with rates of reactions and provide the most general method for determining reaction mechanisms.

(2) The identification of all the products of a reaction.

(3) The detection, or better still (if it is possible), the isolation of intermediates.

(4) The effect on reaction rates of changing the structure of the reactants.

(5) The effect on reaction rates of changing the solvent,

(6) Stereochemical evidence. This type of approach can only be used

when dealing with optically active compounds.

(7) The use of isotopes. This method is particularly useful for tracing the part played by a particular atom in a reaction.

Applications of these methods are discussed in the text, but before ending this discussion, there are two other points of interest. One is the *principle* of microscopic reversibility. According to this principle, the mechanism of any reaction, under a given set of conditions, is identical in microscopic detail to that of the reverse reaction under the same conditions, except that it proceeds in the opposite way. With this principle it has been possible to deduce mechanisms where the forward or backward reactions do not lend

themselves to kinetic studies (see, e.g., p. 70).

The other point is that when the various possible products of a reaction are *not* interconvertible under the conditions of the reaction, then the product formed most rapidly will be the one that predominates in the products. This most rapidly formed product is known as the *kinetically controlled* product. If, however, the possible products of the reaction are interconvertible under the reaction conditions, then the most stable product will predominate in the final products. This most stable product is known as the *thermodynamically controlled* product (see, *e.g.*, p. 87).

Now let us examine in more detail what happens when molecules containing

covalent bonds undergo chemical reaction. Consider the reaction

$$Y + R - X \longrightarrow Y - R + X$$

where RX and RY are both covalent molecules. It can be seen that in this reaction, bond R—X has been broken and the new bond Y—R has been formed. The mechanism of the reaction depends on the way in which these bonds are broken. There are three possible ways in which this may occur, and the result of much work has shown that the actual way in which the break occurs depends on the nature of R, X and Y, and the experimental conditions.

(i) Each atom (forming the X-R bond) retains one electron of the shared pair, i.e.,

$$X-|-R \longrightarrow X^{\bullet} + R^{\bullet}$$

This equation is usually written:

$$X-R \longrightarrow X \cdot + R \cdot$$

This gives rise to free radicals, and the breaking of the bond in this manner is known as homolytic fission (homolysis). Free radicals are odd electron molecules, e.g., methyl radical  $\mathrm{CH_3}$ , triphenylmethyl radical  $(\mathrm{C_6H_5})_3\mathrm{C}$ , etc. The majority are electrically neutral (a few free radical ions are known). All possess addition properties, and are extremely reactive; when a free radical is stable, its stability is believed to be due to resonance. Free radicals are paramagnetic, i.e., possess a small permanent magnetic moment, due to the presence of the odd (unpaired) electron. This property is used to detect the presence of free radicals. Diradicals are also known; these have an even number of electrons, but two are unpaired (see, e.g., methylene, anthracene). In general, free-radical reactions are catalysed or initiated by compounds which generate free radicals on decomposition, or by heat or light. Furthermore, a reaction which proceeds by a free-radical mechanism can be inhibited by the presence of compounds that are known to combine with free radicals. Another important characteristic is that a free-radical mechanism leads to abnormal orientation in aromatic substitution.

(ii) Atom (or group) R retains the shared pair. This may be represented as:

$$X|-R \longrightarrow X^{\dagger} + : \bar{R}$$

This equation is now usually written:

$$X \xrightarrow{R} \longrightarrow X^+ + R^-$$

This is known as heterolytic fission (heterolysis), and Y is said to be an electrophilic (electron-seeking) or cationoid reagent, since it gains a share in the two electrons retained by R. Obviously an electrophilic reagent attacks a molecule at the point of high electron density. When an electrophilic reagent is involved in a substitution or a replacement reaction, that reaction is represented by  $S_{\mathbb{R}}$  (S referring to substitution, and E to the electrophilic

reagent). When  $\bar{R}$ : is a negative group in which the carbon atom carries the negative charge, *i.e.*, has an unshared pair of electrons, the group is known as a carbanion.

(iii) Atom (or group) R loses the shared pair, i.e., the shared pair remains

with X. This may be represented as:

$$X-|R \longrightarrow \bar{X}: + \bar{R}$$
  
 $X-R \longrightarrow X^- + R^+$ 

01

This also is heterolytic fission (heterolysis), and Y is said to be a nucleophilic (nucleus-seeking) or anionoid reagent, since it supplies the electron pair. Obviously a nucleophilic reagent attacks a molecule at the point of low electron density. When a nucleophilic reagent is involved in a substitution or a replacement reaction, that reaction is represented by S<sub>N</sub>. When R<sup>+</sup> is a positive group in which the carbon atom carries the positive charge, i.e., lacks a pair of electrons in its valency shell, the group is known as a carbonium ion, and is in a trigonal state of hybridisation. Furthermore, such a carbonium ion is said to have a "classical" structure. There are, however, various cases where the ion is better represented as a bridged carbonium ion, and in these cases the ions are said to have a "non-classical" structure (see, e.g., p. 101).

Because of their positive charge, carbonium ions are very unstable, but they may be stabilised by delocalisation (i.e., by spreading) of the charge by means of solvation. Alternatively, the ion may be stabilised by delocalisation of the charge within the molecule by inductive and/or resonance effects. In certain cases, delocalisation may be the result of hyperconjugation (see

p. 269).

Transition state theory of reactions. According to the collision theory of reactions, before molecules can enter into chemical reaction, they must collide and they must be activated, i.e., they must attain a certain amount of energy (E) above the average value. However, the rate of a reaction depends not only on the frequency of collisions in which the energy of activation is exceeded but also on whether the colliding molecules are suitably oriented with respect to each other for effective reaction to occur. This limitation is known as the probability or steric factor, and depends, for a given type of reaction, on the geometry of the reacting molecules. A simple example of the steric factor is that in the reaction

$$_{2}\mathrm{HI}\longrightarrow\mathrm{H_{2}+I_{2}}$$

If hydrogen iodide decomposes on collision, then activated molecules can collide in one of two ways, the "right" way leading to decomposition, and the "wrong" way leading to merely a "change in partners".

"Right way" 
$$\begin{array}{c|c} H & \longrightarrow H & H-H \\ & \downarrow & \downarrow & \rightarrow + \\ I & \longrightarrow I & I-I \\ \end{array}$$
 "Wrong way" 
$$\begin{array}{c|c} H & \longrightarrow H & H-H \\ & \downarrow & \downarrow & \rightarrow + \\ I & \longrightarrow H & I-H \end{array}$$

One can expect that when various paths are possible for a given reaction under given conditions, then the path actually followed will be the one requiring the lowest energy of activation. The problem therefore is to try to work out the path that requires the minimum energy of activation.

The transition state theory of reactions does not use the simple idea of collision, but considers how the potential energy of a system of atoms and/or molecules

varies as the molecules are brought together. Consider the reaction

$$A + BC \longrightarrow AB + C$$

This is known as a three-centre reaction. London (1929), by making certain approximations, showed that the minimum energy required in a three-centre reaction is when the reaction proceeds by an end-on approach, i.e., in the above reaction, the approach of A to BC requiring the minimum activation energy is for A to approach BC along the bonding line of BC and on the side remote from C:

$$A \longrightarrow B \longrightarrow A \longrightarrow B + C$$

In this three-centre reaction, the value of the activation energy depends on four factors: (i) The strength of the B—C bond. The stronger this is, the greater will be E. (ii) The repulsion between A and BC. The greater this repulsion, the greater will be E. (iii) The repulsion between AB and C. The greater this repulsion, the greater will be E. (iv) The strength of the A—B bond. The greater the strength of this bond, the lower be E.

Since most reactions are carried out in solution, another factor affecting the

value of E is solvation of molecules and ions.

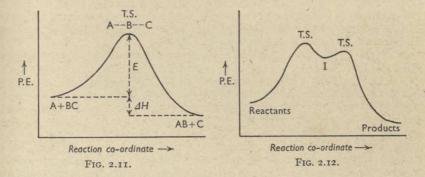
When we consider the mechanism of activation of this three-centre reaction, we can imagine that there are two extreme cases possible: (i) A is forced up against the repulsion of BC until it is close enough to compete with B on equal terms with C, which is finally expelled. (ii) BC acquires so much energy that the bond B—C is broken, and then A and C combine without any opposition.

Polanyi et al. (1931–1938) amplified London's ideas into the transition state theory. These authors showed by mathematical treatment that the lowest value of E is obtained when the reaction proceeds through a compromise between the two extremes (i) and (ii) mentioned above. A approaches BC along the bonding line of BC remote from C, and is forced against the repulsion of BC, and at the same time bond BC stretches until A and C can compete on equal terms for B. Thus a point is reached when the distances A—B and B—C are such that the forces between each pair are the same. This condition is the transition state (activated complex); in this state neither molecule AB nor BC exists independently. The system can now proceed in either direction to form A and BC or AB and C. This sequence of events may be represented by the following equation (T.S. = transition state):

$$A + BC \longrightarrow A \xrightarrow{\dots} B \xrightarrow{\dots} C \longrightarrow AB + C$$
T.S.

It should be noted that the *new* bond is formed on the side opposite to that of the *original* bond (which was broken). Thus the original molecule is turned "inside out", *i.e.*, *inverted* when the new molecule is formed. This inversion may be observed if B contains an asymmetric carbon atom (see the Walden inversion, p. 413).

The above sequence of events may also be represented graphically by means of an *energy profile diagram* (Fig. 11). This diagram is obtained by plotting the potential energy (P.E.) of the system against the reaction co-ordinates (the various distances between the nuclei of A, B and C).



E is the activation energy, and  $\Delta H$  is the heat of reaction at constant pressure. It is assumed that the reaction rate is given by the rate at which the reactant molecules pass through the transition state. For a given shaped "hump", the lower it lies (i.e., the lower the energy barrier is), the easier it is for the reactant molecules to enter the transition state. Also, the wider the hump for a given height, the easier it is for the reactant molecules to enter the transition state, since there is now a wider latitude in nuclei positions for the activated complex.

The activated complex is not a true molecule; it contains partial bonds, and the energy content of the system is a maximum. Its life is extremely short, and hence it cannot be isolated; it is always decomposing into reactants or products. The reaction, however, if complex, will proceed through true intermediates which possess some measure of stability, and if this is great enough, the intermediates may be isolated. If the reaction proceeds through a true intermediate (I) (Fig. 12), there will be a minimum in the energy profile diagram. The greater the dip, the more stable will be the intermediate, and conversely, the shallower the dip, the less stable will be the intermediate. In the extreme case, the dip may be so shallow that the intermediate is indistinguishable from the transition state. It should be noted here that each intermediate has its own transition state, and it appears that it is usual to assume that the structure of the transition state closely resembles the structure of the intermediate (i.e., the product of that step). There is, however, evidence to show that in some cases the transition state may be closer to the parent system than to the intermediate (or product).

Use of isotopes in organic chemistry. In recent years the use of isotopes has been extremely helpful in the study of reaction mechanisms and rearrangements, in the elucidation of structures, and also in quantitative analysis. The application of isotopes in biochemistry has also been particularly fruitful, since they offer a means of identifying intermediates and the "brickwork" of the final products. The common isotopes that have been used in organic chemistry are: deuterium (2H, D; stable), tritium (3H, T; radioactive), <sup>13</sup>C (stable), <sup>14</sup>C (radioactive), <sup>15</sup>N (stable), <sup>18</sup>O (stable), <sup>32</sup>P (radioactive), <sup>35</sup>S (radioactive), <sup>37</sup>Cl (stable), <sup>82</sup>Br (radioactive), <sup>131</sup>I (radioactive).

Various methods of analysis are used. Radioactive isotopes are usually analysed with the Geiger-Müller counter, and the stable isotopes by means of the mass spectrograph. Deuterium is often determined by means of infrared spectroscopy; and there are also the older methods for deuterium and <sup>18</sup>O of density, or refractive index measurements (of the water produced after combustion of the compound). A new method is that of nuclear

magnetic resonance, this technique being applicable only to those isotopes

having nuclear magnetic moments, e.g., D, T, 13C and 15N.

Isotopes are usually used as *tracers*, *i.e.*, the starting material is labelled at some particular position, and after reaction the labelled atom is then located in the product. This does not mean that labelled compounds contain 100 per cent. of the isotope, but that they usually contain an abnormal amount of the isotope. Many examples of the use of isotopic indicators will be found in the text (see Index, Isotopic indicators).

The use of isotopes, stable or radioactive, is based on the fact that the chemical behaviour of any particular isotope is the same as that of the other atoms isotopic with it (the chemical properties of an element depend on the nuclear positive charge and the number of electrons surrounding the nucleus, and not on the number of neutrons in the nucleus). This identity in chemical behaviour is essentially true for the heavy atoms, but in the case of the lightest elements, reactions involving heavier isotopes are slower, but so long as identical paths are followed, the final result is unaffected. This difference in rates of reaction of isotopes is known as the kinetic isotope effect, and the magnitude of such effects depends on the weight ratio of the isotopes involved. Thus the kinetic isotope effect is greatest with H and D (and T). The kinetic effect has been widely used to study reaction mechanisms, since this difference in rate is significant when the bond attaching the isotopic atom is stretched in the activated state, e.g., a protonated molecule may react about seven times as fast as the corresponding deuterium compound.

Ion accelerators and nuclear reactors produce, as by-products, artificial isotopes, particularly those which are radioactive. These isotopes are then supplied in the form of some compound from which a labelled compound can be synthesised, e.g., <sup>14</sup>C is usually supplied as Ba<sup>14</sup>CO<sub>3</sub>, <sup>15</sup>N as <sup>15</sup>NH<sub>4</sub>Cl, etc. A simple example of the synthesis of a labelled compound is that of acetic

acid (in the following equations, which involve a Grignard reagent, C is <sup>14</sup>C; this is a common method of representing a tracer atom, provided its nature has been specified).

$$Ba \overset{\text{\tiny \$}}{\text{\tiny $CO_3$}} + 2 \text{HCl} \longrightarrow Ba \text{Cl}_2 + \text{H}_2 \text{O} + \overset{\text{\tiny \$}}{\text{\tiny $CO_2$}}$$

$$\overset{\text{\tiny $CO_2$}}{\text{\tiny $CO_2$}} + \text{CH}_3 \text{MgI} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \overset{\text{\tiny $CO_2$}}{\text{\tiny $CO_2$}} + \text{CH}_3 \text{MgI}$$

$$\overset{\text{\tiny $CO_2$}}{\text{\tiny $CO_2$}} + 3 \text{H}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{\tiny $CO_2$}} \text{H}_2 \text{O} + \overset{\text{\tiny $CH_3$}}{\text{\tiny $CO_2$}} \text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{\tiny $CO_2$}} \overset{\text{\tiny $Mg$}}{\text{\tiny $CO_2$}} \overset{\text{\tiny $CH_3$}}{\text{\tiny $CO_2$}} \text{H}$$

In a number of cases, an exchange reaction is a very simple means of preparing a labelled compound, e.g., dissolving a fatty acid in water enriched with deuterium.

# $R \cdot CO_2H + D_2O \Longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2D + DHO$

Because of the possibility of this exchange reaction, it is often necessary to

carry out control experiments.

Isotopes are also very useful in the analysis of mixtures, particularly for the determination of the yield of products in a chemical reaction when isolation is difficult. A simple method is that of isotopic dilution. The labelled compound is prepared, and a known amount is then added to the mixture to be analysed. A portion of the substance is now taken and

analysed for its isotopic content. From a knowledge of the isotopic content of the labelled compound added and recovered, and the weight of the labelled compound added, it is thus possible to calculate the weight of the labelled compound in the mixture. This method can only be used as long as there is no isotopic exchange during the isolation.

### READING REFERENCES \*

Sidgwick, Electronic Theory of Valency, Oxford Press (1927). Watson, Modern Theories of Organic Chemistry, Oxford Press (1941, 2nd ed.). Remick, Electronic Interpretations of Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1943).

Pauling, The Nature of the Chemical Bond, Cornell University Press (1960, 3rd ed.).

Hammett, Physical Organic Chemistry, McGraw-Hill (1940). Branch and Calvin, The Theory of Organic Chemistry (An Advanced Course), Prentice-

Hall (1941). Dewar, The Electronic Theory of Organic Chemistry, Oxford Press (1949).

Walsh, Remarks on the Strengths of Bonds, Trans. Faraday Soc., 1947, 43, 60 (also pp. 158, 342).

Coulson, Representation of Simple Molecules by Molecular Orbitals, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1947, I, 144.
Coulson, Valence, Oxford Press (1961, 2nd ed.).

Wheland, Resonance in Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1955).

Wheland, Resonance in Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1955).
Wheland, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1960, 3rd ed.).
Ferguson, Electronic Structures of Organic Molecules, Prentice-Hall (1952).
Hermans, Theoretical Organic Chemistry, Elsevier (1954).
Ingold, Structure and Mechanism in Organic Chemistry, Bell and Sons (1953).
Cartmell and Fowles, Valency and Molecular Structure, Butterworths (1956).
Hine, Physical Organic Chemistry, McGraw-Hill (1962, 2nd ed.).
Gould, Mechanism and Structure in Organic Chemistry, Holt and Co. (1959).
Pipental and McGlellan, The Hudrogen Rond, Freeman and Co. (1960).

Pimental and McClellan, The Hydrogen Bond, Freeman and Co. (1960).

Leffler, The Reactive Intermediates of Organic Chemistry, Interscience (1956).

Dickens and Linnett, Electron Correlation and Chemical Consequences, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1957, 11, 291.

Gillespie and Nyholm, Inorganic Stereochemistry, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1957, 11, 339.
Bent, Distribution of Atomic s Character in Molecules and its Chemical Implications,

J. Chem. Educ., 1960, 37, 616.Sanderson, Principles of Chemical Bonding, J. Chem. Educ., 1961, 38, 382.

Orville-Thomas, Nuclear Quadruple Coupling and Chemical Bonding, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1957, 11, 162.

Pople, The Molecular-Orbital and Equivalent Orbital Approach to Molecular Structure, ibid., 1957, II, 273.

Arnstein and Bentley, Isotopic Tracer Technique, *ibid.*, 1950, 4, 172. Thomas and Turner, The Syntheses of Isotopically Labelled Organic Compounds,

ibid., 1953, 7, 407. Gold and Satchell, The Principles of Hydrogen Isotope Exchange Reactions in Solution,

ibid., 1955, 9, 51. Semenow and Roberts, Uses of Isotopes in Organic Chemistry, J. Chem. Educ., 1956,

Popjak, Chemistry, Biochemistry, and Isotopic Tracer Technique, Lectures, Monographs and Reports of the Royal Institute of Chemistry, 1955, No. 2.

\* Books which deal with the electronic theories of organic chemistry will not be given as reading references in subsequent chapters in this book. The reader should always be prepared to refer to them on any matter dealing with mechanisms.

#### CHAPTER III

## ALIPHATIC COMPOUNDS

### PARAFFINS

ALIPHATIC compounds are *open-chain* or *acyclic* compounds, and the name aliphatic arises from the fact that the first compounds of this class to be studied were the fatty acids (Greek: *aliphos*, fat).

Carbon forms a large number of compounds with hydrogen only and these are known collectively as *hydrocarbons*. There are two groups of hydro-

carbons: (i) saturated hydrocarbons; (ii) unsaturated hydrocarbons.

The paraffin hydrocarbons or the *paraffins* are the saturated hydrocarbons. Many occur naturally, and the chief source of the paraffins is *mineral oil* or

petroleum, which occurs in many parts of the world.

The simplest paraffin is **methane**,  $CH_4$ , which occurs in "natural gas" (q.v.) and the gases from oil-wells. Methane is the principal product of organic decay in swamps and marshes, the gas being set free by the action of bacteria; this method of formation in nature has given rise to the name "marsh-gas" for methane. Sewage sludge which has been fermented by bacteria yields a gas containing about 70 per cent. methane, and this is used as a liquid fuel. Methane also forms about 40 per cent. by volume of coal-gas.

Methane may be synthesised as follows:

(i) By striking an electric arc between carbon electrodes in an atmosphere of hydrogen. Only a very small amount of methane is obtained in this way.

(ii) A mixture of carbon and reduced nickel is heated at 475° in the pre-

sence of hydrogen.

(iii) The first synthesis of methane was carried out by Berthelot in 1856, who passed a mixture of carbon disulphide and hydrogen sulphide over heated copper:

$$CS_2 + 2H_2S + 8Cu \longrightarrow CH_4 + 4Cu_2S$$

(iv) A mixture of carbon monoxide or dioxide and hydrogen is passed over finely divided nickel heated at about 300°:

$$\begin{array}{c} CO + 3H_2 \longrightarrow CH_4 + H_2O \\ CO_2 + 4H_2 \longrightarrow CH_4 + 2H_2O \end{array}$$

This synthesis is due to Sabatier and Senderens (1897). Until recently the nickel catalyst was usually prepared by reducing with hydrogen nickel oxide deposited on a suitable inert, porous support, e.g., kieselguhr. The support is impregnated with a nickel salt, treated with sodium hydroxide, washed and dried, and the resulting nickel oxide reduced with hydrogen at 300–450°. Many organic compounds may be reduced by passing their vapours mixed with hydrogen over nickel heated at 200–300°. Any reduction that is carried out in this manner is referred to as the Sabatier-Senderens reduction, in honour of the workers who first introduced this method. It is quite a common feature in organic chemistry to name a reaction after its discoverer or, in certain cases, after a worker who investigated the reaction and extended its application. The reader should always make himself familiar with the reaction associated with a particular name.

The most common nickel catalyst used to-day is that prepared by the method introduced by Raney (1927). An alloy containing equal amounts of nickel and aluminium is digested with sodium hydroxide; the aluminium

is dissolved away, and the residual very finely divided nickel is washed and stored under water, ethanol, or any other suitable liquid. Raney nickel is more reactive than the supported nickel catalyst, and is usually

effective at lower temperatures, often at room temperature.

None of the syntheses described above is of any practical importance as a method of preparing methane in quantity. The following methods are those which may be used in the laboratory, i.e., convenient methods of preparing methane in reasonable quantities. The degree of purity of the product depends on the particular method used. Quite often it is the purification of the crude product which causes an appreciable loss of material, and the more we aim at getting the "pure" compound, the smaller is the final yield.

I. The most convenient method is to heat a mixture of anhydrous sodium

acetate and soda-lime:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO_2Na + NaOH(CaO) \longrightarrow CH_4 + Na_2CO_3$$

In chemical reactions soda-lime behaves as sodium hydroxide (or calcium hydroxide); it is not deliquescent and does not attack glass, and is therefore more convenient to use than solid sodium hydroxide.

2. By boiling aluminium carbide with water:

$$Al_4C_3 + 12H_2O \longrightarrow 3CH_4 + 4Al(OH)_3$$

The methane is impure; it contains hydrogen.

3. Almost pure methane (it contains traces of hydrogen) is obtained by the reduction of methyl iodide with nascent hydrogen:

$$CH_3I + 2[H] \longrightarrow CH_4 + HI$$

A common method for generating hydrogen uses zinc and acetic acid saturated with hydrogen chloride, or hydrochloric acid alone, or with aqueous sodium hydroxide. Another useful method is by the action of a zinc-copper couple on ethanol.

Lithium aluminium hydride or lithium hydride may also be used for

reducing alkyl bromides.

4. By the action of water on:

(a) dimethylzinc,  $(CH_3)_2Zn + 2H_2O \longrightarrow 2CH_4 + Zn(OH)_2$ 

(b) Methylmagnesium iodide,

$$CH_3 - Mg - I + H_2O \longrightarrow CH_4 + MgI(OH).$$

Method (b) is far more convenient than (a). Methylmagnesium iodide is a member of a group of compounds known as the *Grignard reagents* (p. 348). Methane is obtained in vast quantities from natural gas, gas from the

oil-wells, and from cracked petroleum (q.v.).

**Properties of methane.** Methane is a colourless, odourless, non-poisonous gas; its b.p. is  $-164^{\circ}/760$  mm., and m.p.  $-184^{\circ}$ . It is somewhat soluble in water, 100 ml. of water dissolving about 5 ml. of methane at 20°; but is quite soluble in ethanol and ether. It burns with a non-luminous flame in air or oxygen, forming carbon dioxide and water:

$$CH_4 + 2O_2 \longrightarrow CO_2 + 2H_2O$$

It explodes violently when mixed with air (or oxygen) and ignited, and this is believed to be the cause of explosions in coal-mines, where methane is known as *fire-damp*. Methane may be *catalytically* oxidised to methanol and formaldehyde.

Substitution reactions of methane. Chlorine has no action on methane in the dark. In bright sunlight the reaction is explosive, and hydrogen chloride and carbon are formed:

$$CH_4 + 2Cl_2 \longrightarrow C + 4HCl$$

In diffused sunlight no explosion occurs, but a series of reactions takes place whereby the four hydrogen atoms in methane are successively replaced by chlorine atoms:

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{CH_4} + \operatorname{Cl_2} \longrightarrow \operatorname{CH_3Cl} + \operatorname{HCl} & \operatorname{methyl} \text{ chloride} \\ \operatorname{CH_3Cl} + \operatorname{Cl_2} \longrightarrow \operatorname{CH_2Cl_2} + \operatorname{HCl} & \operatorname{methylene} \text{ chloride} \\ \operatorname{CH_2Cl_2} + \operatorname{Cl_2} \longrightarrow \operatorname{CHCl_3} + \operatorname{HCl} & \operatorname{chloroform} \\ \operatorname{CHCl_3} + \operatorname{Cl_2} \longrightarrow \operatorname{CCl_4} + \operatorname{HCl} & \operatorname{carbon} \text{ tetrachloride} \\ \end{array}$$

In methane the four carbon valencies are satisfied by combination with four hydrogen atoms. Carbon never exhibits a valency of more than four, and so cannot combine with more than four hydrogen atoms or four other univalent atoms or groups. Hence in the reaction with chlorine, the hydrogen atoms are displaced, and chlorine atoms take their place. This type of reaction is known as substitution, and is the direct replacement of hydrogen by some other atom or group. The products so formed are known as substitution products. The atom or group that has replaced the hydrogen atom is called the substituent, and when a substituent atom or group is replaced by some other atom or group, the reaction is referred to as a replacement (or displacement) reaction. It should be noted that in substitution or replacement reactions there is no change in structure. The spatial arrangement of the molecule, however, may have changed (see p. 413).

In the substitution reaction between methane and chlorine, all four substitution products are obtained, since it is impossible to stop the reaction at any particular stage. It has been found possible, however, to control

the reaction so as to obtain mainly methyl chloride (q.v.).

Methane also undergoes substitution with bromine, but the reaction is less vigorous than that with chlorine. With iodine the reaction is reversible:

$$CH_4 + I_2 \Longrightarrow CH_3I + HI$$

The equilibrium lies almost completely on the left, and consequently the yield of methyl iodide is negligible. On the other hand, in the presence of an oxidising agent, e.g., iodic acid, nitric acid, mercuric oxide, etc., the reaction proceeds to the right, since the equilibrium is upset by the removal of the hydrogen iodide which is oxidised, e.g.,

$$5HI + HIO_3 \longrightarrow 3I_2 + 3H_2O$$

Methane reacts explosively with gaseous fluorine. The initial reaction is possibly:

$$CH_4 + 2F_2 \longrightarrow C + 4HF$$

Structure of methane. The molecular formula of methane is CH<sub>4</sub>. Assuming the quadrivalency of carbon and the univalency of hydrogen, we find that there is only one structure possible for methane, viz., (I). Study of the reactions of methane shows that all four hydrogen atoms are equivalent,

e.g., methylene chloride, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, prepared by totally different methods, is always the same. Thus (II) and (III) are different ways of writing the same structure. At first sight it may appear that these two structural formulæ are different. They are different if the molecule is two-dimensional, but, as we have seen (p. 25), in saturated compounds the four valencies of carbon are arranged tetrahedrally. Examination of the two structures as tetrahedral figures shows that they are identical.\* The chief disadvantage of the planestructural formula is that it does not show the spatial arrangement of the On the other hand, the three-dimensional structural formula is cumbersome, and for many complicated molecules cannot easily be drawn on paper. Hence we usually adopt the plane-formulæ when dealing with compounds from the point of view of their structure; only when we wish to stress the spatial arrangement of the atoms or groups in a molecule do we resort to solid diagrams (see, e.g., Ch. XVII). How we show the relative positions of the various atoms or groups in the plane-structural formula of a given compound usually depends on ourselves, but where possible the simplest method of writing the structure should be chosen. Consider I:5-dichloropentane, C<sub>5</sub>H<sub>10</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. This is a "straight" chain compound, Now, 1:5-dichloropentane gives cyclopentane when treated with zinc. cycloPentane is a ring compound, and to show its formation from 1:5-dichloropentane, we write the structure of the latter as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{CH_2 \cdot CH_2 Cl} \\ \operatorname{CH_2} + \operatorname{Zn} \longrightarrow \operatorname{CH_2} \\ \operatorname{CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 Cl} \end{array} + \operatorname{ZnCl_2} \\ \end{array}$$

Thus "straight" chains may be "bent" to stress a particular point we may have in mind.

Uses of methane. (i) When heated at 1000°, methane is decomposed into

carbon and hydrogen:

$$CH_4 \longrightarrow C + 2H_2$$

The carbon is formed in a very finely divided state, and is known as carbon black. This is used in making printers' ink and paints; it is also used in the rubber industry for motor tyres, etc.

(ii) Methane is used as a source of hydrogen (for synthetic ammonia and for synthesis gas). Methane is mixed with steam and passed over nickel

supported on alumina heated at 725°:

$$CH_4 + H_2O \longrightarrow CO + 3H_2$$

(iii) For the technical preparation of methyl chloride and methylene chloride (q.v.).

(iv) For the technical preparation of methanol and formaldehyde (q.v.).

(v) As a liquid fuel.

Ethane, C2H6, occurs with methane in natural gas and the gases from the oil-wells. It is formed to a slight extent when an electric arc is struck between carbon rods in an atmosphere of hydrogen. It may be prepared by any of the following methods:

I. By reduction of ethyl iodide with nascent hydrogen using, for example, the zinc-copper couple and ethanol:

$$C_2H_5I + 2[H] \longrightarrow C_2H_6 + HI$$

\* "Atomic models" are very useful to the organic chemist. Sets of these models may be bought; alternatively the reader can build his models from plasticine and matchsticks, which provide crude but usually satisfactory models.

The ethane is contaminated with traces of hydrogen:

$$Zn/Cu + 2C_2H_5OH \longrightarrow H_2 + (C_2H_5O)_2Zn + Cu$$

2. By treating a dry ethereal solution of methyl iodide with sodium:

$$2CH_3I + 2Na \longrightarrow C_2H_6 + 2NaI$$

This is an example of the *Wurtz* reaction. It is not so straightforward as the equation indicates; other products are obtained in addition to ethane (see p. 51).

3. By the electrolysis of a concentrated solution of sodium or potassium acetate. A mixture of ethane and carbon dioxide is evolved at

the anode, and hydrogen is evolved at the cathode:

$$2CH_3 \cdot CO_2Na + 2H_2O \longrightarrow C_2H_6 + 2CO_2 + 2NaOH + H_2$$

This means of preparation is an example of *Kolbe's electrolytic method*. The ethane may be freed from carbon dioxide by washing the mixture with aqueous sodium hydroxide, but still contains other impurities (see p. 52).

4. Pure ethane may be obtained by the action of water on ethyl-

magnesium iodide (a Grignard reagent):

$$C_2H_5$$
— $Mg$ — $I + H_2O \longrightarrow C_2H_6 + MgI(OH)$ 

5. The best way of preparing pure ethane in large quantity is by the catalytic hydrogenation of ethylene:

$$C_2H_4 + H_2 \xrightarrow{Ni} C_2H_6$$

**Properties of ethane.** Ethane is a colourless gas, b.p. -89°, sparingly soluble in water but readily soluble in ethanol. It burns in air or oxygen to form carbon dioxide and water:

$$2C_2H_6 + 7O_2 \longrightarrow 4CO_2 + 6H_2O$$

It reacts with halogens in a similar manner to methane to form substitution products, but a much greater number of products are possible due, firstly to the presence of six hydrogen atoms in ethane compared with four in methane, and secondly, to the fact that isomerism is possible in the substitution products of ethane, and not in those of methane. Thus, for example, two dichloroethanes are possible:  $CH_3 \cdot CHCl_2$  and  $CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \cdot CHCl_2$  (see later).

Structure of ethane. The molecular formula of ethane is  $C_2H_6$ . Assuming the quadrivalency of carbon and the univalency of hydrogen, the only possible structure for ethane is (I). This structure agrees with all the known properties of ethane. Writing the structural formula of ethane in the bond-diagram way uses up a lot of space. Hence it has become customary to use a "contracted" structural formula:  $CH_3$ — $CH_3$  or  $CH_3$ · $CH_3$  or  $CH_3$ · $CH_3$ . The reader should make himself familiar with these different ways of writing structural formulæ as soon as possible.

Propane. C<sub>3</sub>H<sub>8</sub> is a constituent of natural gas and gas from the oil-wells. It may be prepared by the following methods:

1. By reduction of propyl iodide with nascent hydrogen:

$$C_3H_7I + 2[H] \xrightarrow{Z_0/C_0} C_3H_8 + HI$$

2. By the Wurtz reaction, using a mixture of methyl and ethyl halides, e.g.,

$$\mathsf{CH_3Br} + \mathsf{CH_3}\text{-}\mathsf{CH_2Br} + 2\mathsf{Na} \xrightarrow{\mathsf{ether}} \mathsf{CH_3}\text{-}\mathsf{CH_2}\text{-}\mathsf{CH_3} + 2\mathsf{NaBr}$$

The yield of propane is poor, since ethane and butane, C4H10 (as well as other compounds), are obtained as by-products:

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm 2CH_3Br} + {\rm 2Na} \longrightarrow {\rm C_2H_6} + {\rm 2NaBr} \\ {\rm 2C_2H_5Br} + {\rm 2Na} \longrightarrow {\rm C_4H_{10}} + {\rm 2NaBr} \end{array}$$

3. By Kolbe's electrolytic method using a mixture of sodium acetate and sodium propionate:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO_2Na + C_2H_5 \cdot CO_2Na + 2H_2O \longrightarrow C_3H_8 + 2CO_2 + 2NaOH + H_2$$

Apart from other products, ethane and butane are obtained in relatively large quantities, resulting in a poor yield of propane (cf. 2 above).

4. By the action of water on propylmagnesium iodide:

$$C_3H_7$$
— $Mg$ — $I + H_2O \longrightarrow C_3H_8 + MgI(OH)$ 

Properties of propane. Propane is a colourless gas, b.p. -44.5°. It

resembles methane and ethane in many of its chemical properties.

Structure of propane. The molecular formula of propane is C<sub>3</sub>H<sub>8</sub>. Assuming the quadrivalency of carbon and univalency of hydrogen, the only possible structure for propane is CH3·CH2·CH3. This structure agrees with all the known properties of propane.

Butanes,  $C_4\dot{H}_{10}$ . Theoretical consideration of this formula shows that two structures are possible:

(I) has a straight chain, and (II) a branched chain. Both isomers are known, and thus "butane" is the first paraffin to exhibit structural isomerism. This is an example of chain or nuclear isomerism, and is characterised by the manner of linking of the carbon chain. (I) is known as normal butane, and (II) as isobutane. Both occur in natural gas and in petroleum gas, and they may be separated by fractional distillation under pressure.

normal Butane may be prepared by the Wurtz reaction using ethyl iodide:

$$2CH_3\cdot CH_2I + 2Na \xrightarrow{\text{ether}} CH_3\cdot CH_2\cdot CH_2\cdot CH_3 + 2NaI$$

It is a colourless gas, b.p. -0.5°. isoButane may be prepared by reducing tertiary butyl iodide with nascent hydrogen:

 $(CH_3)_3CI + 2[H] \xrightarrow{Zn/Cu} (CH_3)_3CH + HI$ 

It is a colourless gas, b.p. -10.2°.

Examination of the two butane structures shows that all the carbon atoms are not equivalent, and also that all the hydrogen atoms are not equivalent. A *primary* carbon atom is one that is joined to *one* other carbon atom; a *secondary* carbon atom to *two* other carbon atoms; and a *tertiary* carbon atom to *three* other carbon atoms. Hydrogen atoms joined to primary, secondary and tertiary carbon atoms are known as primary, secondary, or tertiary hydrogen atoms, respectively. Thus *normal* butane contains two primary carbon atoms, two secondary carbon atoms, six primary and four secondary hydrogen atoms. *iso*Butane contains three primary carbon atoms, one tertiary carbon atom, nine primary hydrogen atoms, and one tertiary hydrogen atom. As we shall see later, the behaviour of these various types of hydrogen atoms differs considerably.

Pentanes, C<sub>5</sub>H<sub>12</sub>. Three pentanes are possible theoretically, and all are

known.

All the pentanes occur in natural gas and petroleum gas. neoPentane contains a quaternary carbon atom, i.e., a carbon atom joined to four other carbon atoms.

As the number of carbon atoms in the paraffin increases, the number of possible isomers increases rapidly, e.g., the paraffin  $C_{15}H_{32}$  can exist in 4347 isomeric forms. The number of isomers of a given paraffin may be calculated by means of mathematical formulæ; in most cases very few have actually been prepared.

### Nomenclature of the Paraffins

Whenever a new branch of knowledge is opened up, there is always the problem of introducing a system of nomenclature. The early chemists usually named a compound on the basis of its history, e.g., methane. This is the parent hydrocarbon of methyl alcohol, CH<sub>3</sub>OH. Methyl alcohol was originally obtained by the destructive distillation of wood, and was named "wood-spirit". From this arose the word methyl, which is a combination of two Greek words, methu (wine) and hule (wood). Other examples of this way of naming compounds are acetic acid, which is the chief constituent of vinegar (Latin: acetum, vinegar); malic acid, which was first isolated from apples (Latin: malum, apple), and so on. Thus grew up a system of common or trivial names, and in many cases the origin of the name has been forgotten. One advantage of the trivial system is that the names are usually short and easily remembered, but a disadvantage is that a particular compound may have a number of names.

As the number of known organic compounds increased, it became apparent that it was necessary to systematise the method of nomenclature. The most satisfactory system is one which indicates the structure of the compound. This task was originally begun in 1892 by an international committee of chemists at Geneva, and hence is referred to as the Geneva system of nomenclature. The work was carried on by the International Union of Chemists (I.U.C.) by a committee appointed in 1922, and in 1931 these

drew up a report which is often referred to as the I.U.C. system. Nomenclature is always undergoing revision, and the latest rules are those recommended in 1957 by the Commission on the Nomenclature of Organic Chemistry of the International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (I.U.P.A.C.). Various changes have been made, but two that have not been incorporated into this book are: (i) Numbers indicating the positions of substituents are to be separated by commas (not by colons as used in this book). (ii) Prefixes are to be italicised when they define the positions of named substituents or which are used to define stereoisomers (see p. 46). The reader should always consult the Chemical Society Handbook if he wishes to publish work in the Journal, and any mistakes he makes in nomenclature will soon be put right by the Editors!

Dyson (1946) has developed "a new notation for organic chemistry". This scheme does not provide a new means of naming compounds, but shows how it is possible to portray the structure of an organic compound irrespec-

tive of its complexity, and how it may be used for indexing.

There are at least three systems in use for naming paraffins, and in all three the class-suffix, i.e., the ending of the name which indicates the particular homologous series (see later), is -ane.

I. In the trivial system of nomenclature the straight-chain compounds are always designated as normal compounds, and the word normal is usually abbreviated to n-. If the compound contains the grouping (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C—H, it is known as the iso-compound; if it contains a quaternary carbon atom, the compound is known as the neo-compound. It is impossible to name many of the more complex paraffins by the trivial system (see later for examples of the trivial system).

The first four paraffins have special names (related to their history); from the fifth member onwards, Latin or Greek numerals are used to indicate

the number of carbon atoms in the molecule.

	Nan	ne.			Formula.	Na	me.		Formula.
methane			0.00		CH <sub>4</sub>	hexadecane			C16H34
ethane	1500				C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>6</sub>	heptadecane			C17H36
propane	. 1				C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>8</sub>	octadecane			C18H38
butane					C4H10	nonadecane			C19H40
pentane					C5H12	eicosane.			C20H42
ĥexane					C6H14	heneicosane			C21H44
heptane					C7H16	docosane.			C22H46
octane		10			C <sub>8</sub> H <sub>18</sub>	tricosane, etc.		18	C <sub>23</sub> H <sub>48</sub> , etc.
nonane		-			C9H20	triacontane		*	C30H62
decane					$C_{10}H_{22}$	hexatriacontar	1e		C36H74
undecane	1				C11H24	tetracontane			C40H82
hendecane	5	210			Constant	pentacontane			C50H102
dodecane					$C_{12}H_{26}$	hexacontane			C60H122
tridecane				-	C <sub>13</sub> H <sub>28</sub>	heptacontane	18.7		C70H142
tetradecan					C14H30	octacontane			C <sub>80</sub> H <sub>162</sub>
pentadecar	ne				$C_{15}H_{32}$	1000			

Univalent radicals that are formed by the removal of one hydrogen atom from a paraffin are known as alkyl or alphyl radicals or groups. The name of each individual radical is obtained by changing the suffix -ane of the parent hydrocarbon into -yl. The first five alkyl radicals are often represented by a shorthand notation.

The radical derived from pentane has, in the past, been usually named amyl. This name is now abandoned and pentyl and isopentyl are to be

The paraffins are also known as the alkanes, since an alkyl radical plus one hydrogen atom gives a paraffin, i.e., alkyl + H = alkane.

In chemical equations, if we are dealing with alkyl compounds as a group

Radical. Short-hand notation. Paraffin. Me methyl CH3methane ethyl C2H5ethane . n-propyl CH3 · CH2 · CH2 n-Pr, Pra, or Pr propane. isopropyl CH3 CH CH3 isoPr, PrB, or Pr n-butyl CH3 CH2 CH2 CH2n-Bu, Buα, or Bu sec.-butyl CH3.CH2.CH.CH3 sec.-Bu, Bus, Bus, or s-Bu butane . iso-butyl (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH·CH<sub>2</sub>— tert.-butyl (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>C isoBu or Bui tert .- Bu, But, or t-Bu · { amyl CH<sub>3</sub>·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>— isoamyl (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub> n-Am pentane isoAm or Ami

and we do not wish to specify any particular member, we use the symbol R to represent the unspecified alkyl radical, e.g., RCl represents any alkyl chloride.

2. In this system of nomenclature the hydrocarbon, except the *n*-compound, is regarded as a substitution product of methane. The most highly branched carbon atom in the compound is named as the methane nucleus, and the alkyl groups attached to this carbon atom are named in order of increasing molecular weight of the groups (or in alphabetical order). If two groups have the same molecular weight, the simpler is named before the more complex, *e.g.*, propyl before *iso*propyl. Hydrogen atoms, if joined to the carbon atom chosen as the methane nucleus, are not named. Since April, 1950, however, the *Chemical Society* has adopted an alphabetical order for prefixes denoting substituents. This order follows in general that adopted in *Chemical Abstracts* except for differences in nomenclature, spelling, italicising, or punctuation. *Italicised prefixes* are neglected when assembling substituents, *e.g.*, *iso*butyl will be named before ethyl. Isomeric substituents, however, are arranged in alphabetical order of the italicised prefixes, except that *iso* follows directly after *n*, *e.g.*, *n*-butyl, *iso*butyl, *sec.*-butyl, *tert.*-butyl.

In the I.U.P.A.C. rules, however, the prefixes n, iso, sec., tert., neo, cyclo, epi, allo, etc., are no longer to be italicised, i.e., they are to be written n, iso, s, t, neo, cyclo, epi, allo, etc. Also, the alphabetical order of prefixes follows the first roman letter, e.g., ethyl, isobutyl, etc. (see appendix for

further information on nomenclature).

This system of nomenclature is fairly good, since the name indicates the structure of the compound. It is impossible, however, to name the complex

paraffins by this system.

3. In the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature the longest chain possible is chosen, and the compound is named as a derivative of this *n*-hydrocarbon. The carbon chain is numbered from one end to the other by arabic numerals, and the positions of *side-chains* are indicated by numbers, the direction of numbering being so chosen as to give the lowest numbers possible to the side-chains. When series of locants containing the same number of terms are compared term by term, that series is "lowest" which contains the lowest number on occasion of the first difference, and this principle is used irrespective of the nature of the substituents, *e.g.*,

$$\overset{\text{10}}{\text{CH}_3} \overset{\text{9}}{\cdot} \overset{\text{8}}{\text{CH}_2} \overset{\text{7}}{\cdot} \overset{\text{6}}{\text{CH}_2} \overset{\text{5}}{\cdot} \overset{\text{4}}{\text{CH}_2} \overset{\text{3}}{\cdot} \overset{\text{2}}{\text{CH}_2} \overset{\text{1}}{\cdot} \overset{\text{1}}{\text{CH}_3}$$

This is named 2:7:8-trimethyldecane and not 3:4:9-trimethyldecane; the first set is "lower" than the second set because at the first difference 2 is less than 3. When two sets of numbers are equally possible, then the

order of the prefixes in the name decides which shall be used, e.g., I-bromo-3-chloropropane and not 3-bromo-I-chloropropane. It should also be noted that the names of prefixes are arranged alphabetically, regardless of the number of each, e.g., 5-ethyl-2: 3-dimethyloctane.

The I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature is undoubtedly superior to the

other two, since it permits the naming of any paraffin on sight.

The following are examples of the three systems of nomenclature:

N.B. The following names are retained for unsubstituted hydrocarbons only: isobutane, isopentane, neopentane, isohexane.

When several chains are of equal length, that chain chosen goes in series to: (a) the chain which has the greatest number of side-chains; (b) the chain whose side-chains have the lowest-numbered locants; (c) the chain having the greatest number of carbon atoms in the smaller side-chains; (d) the chain having the least-branched side-chains. Also, where there is a side-chain within a side-chain, the latter is also numbered, and the name of the complex radical is considered to begin with the first letter of its complete name, e.g.,

$$\overset{\circ}{C}H_3 \overset{\circ}{\cdot}\overset{\circ}{C}H - \overset{\circ}{C}H - \overset{\circ}{C}H - \overset{\circ}{C}H \overset{\circ}{\cdot}\overset{\circ}{C}H_3 \qquad 4-ethyl-2:3:5-$$

$$\overset{\circ}{C}H_3 \overset{\circ}{C}H_2 \overset{\circ}{C}H_3 \overset{\circ}{C}H_3 \qquad trimethylhexane$$

$$\overset{\circ}{C}H_3 \overset{\circ}{C}H_3 \overset{\circ}{C}H_2 \overset{\circ}{\cdot}\overset{\circ}{C}H_3 \qquad 5-(i:i-dimethylpropyl)-$$

$$\overset{\circ}{C}H_3 \overset{\circ}{\cdot}\overset{\circ}{C}H_2 \overset{\circ}{\cdot}\overset{\circ}{C}H_2 \overset{\circ}{\cdot}\overset{\circ}{C}H_2 \overset{\circ}{\cdot}\overset{\circ}{C}H_2 \overset{\circ}{\cdot}\overset{\circ}{C}H_3 \qquad 5-(2-methylpropyl)nonane$$

$$\overset{\circ}{C}H_3 \overset{\circ}{\cdot}\overset{\circ}{C}H_2 \overset{\circ}{\cdot}\overset{\circ}{C}H_2 \overset{\circ}{\cdot}\overset{\circ}{C}H_2 \overset{\circ}{\cdot}\overset{\circ}{C}H_3 \qquad 5-(2-methylpropyl)nonane$$

$$\overset{\circ}{C}H_3 \overset{\circ}{\cdot}\overset{\circ}{C}H_2 \overset{\circ}{\cdot}\overset{\circ}{C}H_3 \overset{\circ}{C}H_3 \overset{\circ}{\cdot}\overset{\circ}{C}H_3 \overset{\circ}{\cdot}\overset{\circ$$

# Homologous Series

If we examine the formulæ of the various paraffins we find that the formula of each individual differs from that of its "neighbour" by  $CH_2$ , e.g.,  $CH_4$ ,  $C_2H_6$ ,  $C_3H_8$ ,  $C_4H_{10}$ ,  $C_5H_{12}$ , . . . A set of compounds, such as

the paraffins, in which the members differ in composition from one another by CH<sub>2</sub>, is known as an homologous series, the individual members being

known as homologues.

Throughout organic chemistry we find homologous series, each series being characterised by the presence of a functional group. The functional group is an atom or a group of atoms that causes a compound to behave in a particular way, i.e., it is the functional group that gives rise to homologous series. Some of the more important functional groups and the classes of compounds to which they give rise are shown in Table I.

It is also possible for a compound to contain two (or more) identical or different functional groups, and this gives rise to polyfunctional compounds

(see text).

If we examine the formulæ of the various paraffins, we find that the formula  $C_nH_{2n+2}$  will represent any particular homologue when n is given the appropriate value, e.g., for pentane n is 5; therefore the formula of pentane is  $C_5H_{12}$ . The formula  $C_nH_{2n+2}$  is known as the general formula of the paraffins. The composition of any homologous series can be expressed by means of a general formula.

When we study the methods of preparation of the different paraffins, we find that several methods are common to all, i.e., similar methods may be used for the preparation of all the homologues. This gives rise to the

general methods of preparation of a particular homologous series.

TABLE I

Functional Group.			
Formula.	Name.*		
-OH	Hydroxyl group Carbonyl group		
-COH	Carboxyl group		
-C≡N	Cyano group		
-NO <sub>2</sub>	Nitro group		
	Amino group		
	Mercapto group Sulphonic acid group		
	Formula.  -OH -C=O -COH -C=N -NO <sub>2</sub> -NH <sub>2</sub> -SH		

<sup>\*</sup> Many functional groups are known by more than one name. Nomenclature is dealt with in each homologous series described in the text.

Examination of the properties of the paraffins shows that many properties are, more or less, common to all the paraffin homologues. This

gives rise to the general properties of an homologous series.

The occurrence of homologous series facilitates the study of organic chemistry, since it groups together compounds having many resemblances. If we know the properties of several of the lower homologues, we can obtain a fair idea of the properties of higher homologues, i.e., we can forecast (within limits) the properties of a compound that we have not yet prepared. The reader, however, must never be too hasty in predicting the properties of an unknown homologue. The idea of homologous series should be used as a guide, not as a hard-and-fast rule.

In view of what has been said above, we can see that in studying organic chemistry it is advantageous to describe first the general methods of preparation of an homologous series, and then the general properties of that series. It is also usual to describe the more important members individually, and

to indicate, at this stage, any *special* methods of preparation and any *special* properties. This is the way (wherever possible) in which we shall deal with organic chemistry throughout this book, and we shall start by reconsidering the paraffins from this point of view.

The general methods of preparation of the paraffins fall into three groups.

## A. From compounds containing the same number of carbon atoms.

1. By the catalytic reduction of unsaturated hydrocarbons, e.g., reduction of ethylene:

$$C_2H_4 + H_2 \xrightarrow[300]{Ni} C_2H_6$$
 (ex.)\*

2. (a) An alcohol, ROH, is converted into its corresponding alkyl iodide using, e.g., phosphorus triodide (see alkyl halides):

$$3ROH + PI_3 \longrightarrow 3RI + H_3PO_3$$
 (v.g.)

The alkyl iodide may then be converted into the paraffin by various means:

(i) Reduction with nascent hydrogen:

$$RI + 2[H] \longrightarrow RH + HI \quad (g.-v.g.)$$

(ii) Catalytic reduction using palladium as catalyst (see p. 65 for the preparation of this catalyst):

$$RI + H_2 \xrightarrow{Pd} RH + HI$$
 (v.g.)

(iii) Reduction by heating with concentrated hydriodic acid at 150°. This high temperature necessitates heating under pressure, since the maximum boiling point of hydriodic acid (57 per cent. HI) is 126°. High-pressure work is carried out in *autoclaves*, but where the pressure is not excessive, sealed, thick-walled glass tubes may be used. Reductions with hydriodic acid under pressure are carried out in sealed tubes:

$$RI + HI \longrightarrow RH + I_2$$
 (g.-ex.)

The reduction can be performed directly on the alcohol, using excess of hydriodic acid:

$$ROH + 2HI \xrightarrow{150^{\circ}} RH + I_2 + H_2O$$
 (g.-ex.)

Reduction with concentrated hydriodic acid is usually carried out in the presence of a small amount of red phosphorus which regenerates the hydriodic acid from the iodine formed. The hydriodic acid—red phosphorus mixture is one of the most powerful reducing agents used in organic chemistry.

Instead of reduction, the alkyl iodide may be converted into the corresponding Grignard reagent, which is then decomposed by water to form

the paraffin:

$$RI + Mg \xrightarrow{\text{ether}} R - Mg - I \xrightarrow{H_iO} RH \quad (v.g.)$$

(b) Py the reduction of a carbonyl compound with concentrated hydriodic acid and red phosphorus, heated under pressure at 150°, e.g., acetone is converted into propane:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{HI/P} CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \quad (v.g.)$$

<sup>\*</sup> See preface for the significance of these terms in parentheses.

Alternatively, the carbonyl compound can be reduced to the corresponding alcohol, which is then reduced by HI/P (cf. above). On the other hand, ketones may be converted into the corresponding paraffins by the Clemmensen (see p. 150) and Wolff-Kishner (see p. 153) reductions.

(c) By the reduction of fatty acids, R.CO<sub>2</sub>H, with HI/P in a sealed tube at 200°:

$$R \cdot CO_2H \xrightarrow[200^{\circ}]{HI/P} R \cdot CH_3$$

The yields are very good for the higher paraffins, and may even be improved by heating the fatty acids with hydrogen under pressure in the presence of a nickel catalyst.

## B. From compounds containing a larger number of carbon atoms.

1. By heating a mixture of the sodium salt of a fatty acid and soda-lime:

$$R \cdot CO_2Na + NaOH(CaO) \longrightarrow RH + Na_2CO_3$$

This process of eliminating carbon dioxide from a carboxylic acid is known as decarboxylation. Soda-lime is a very useful reagent for this process, but various other reagents may also be used.

Oakwood et al. (1950) have shown that only sodium acetate decomposes according to the equation given above. In all of the other cases tested propionate, butyrate and caproate—various products were obtained, e.g., with sodium propionate:

$$C_2H_5$$
· $CO_2$ Na  $\xrightarrow{NaOH}$   $C_2H_6 + CH_4 + H_2 + Unsaturated compounds.$ 

This method, therefore, is not suitable for the preparation of simple paraffins since, apart from the low yield of the desired product, it is very difficult to separate the mixtures obtained.

2. By heating a mixture of the disodium salt of a dicarboxylic acid and

soda-lime, e.g., sodium adipate gives n-butane:

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm CO_2Na \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2Na} + {\rm 2NaOH(CaO)} \longrightarrow \\ {\rm CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \cdot$$

The reader may well ask: why not use tricarboxylic acids, etc.? When dealing with a preparation, there are at least three important points that must be considered: (i) the yield of crude product; (ii) the yield of pure product; (iii) the accessibility of the starting materials. In certain cases the yield of crude material is high, but the nature of the impurities is such that purification causes a large loss of material, resulting in a poor yield of pure product. On the other hand, it often happens that the product of one reaction is to be used as the starting material for some other compound which can readily be freed (i.e., purified with very little loss) from the original impurity. Provided, then, that this impurity does not interfere with the second reaction, the crude material of the first step can be used as the starting material for the second. Thus the yield alone of a particular reaction cannot decide the usefulness of that method of preparation; the subsequent history of the product must also be taken into consideration. Furthermore, all things being equal, the more accessible materials, i.e., readily prepared or purchased, are used as the starting materials.

With respect to the decarboxylation of acids as a means of preparing paraffins, the reader will find that tricarboxylic acids, etc., are not readily accessible; in fact, they are less accessible than the paraffins that can be prepared from them. It would, therefore, be useless, from the practical point of view, to use these acids as starting materials for paraffins. From the point of view of learning the subject, however, some useful purpose is served in carrying out "paper reactions" with inaccessible materials, since the reader may then master reactions of practical value.

## C. From compounds containing fewer carbon atoms.

1. By the Wurtz reaction (1854). An ethereal solution of an alkyl halide (preferably the bromide or iodide) is treated with sodium, e.g.,

$$RX + R'X + 2Na \longrightarrow R-R' + 2NaX$$

As previously pointed out, when we do not wish to specify a particular alkyl radical, we use the symbol R. When we deal with two unspecified alkyl radicals which may, or may not, be the same, we can indicate this by R and R': also, when dealing with compounds containing a halogen atom, and we do not wish to specify the halogen, we can indicate the presence of

the unspecified halogen atom by means of X.

Consideration of the equation given above shows that in addition to the desired paraffin R—R', there will also be present the paraffins R—R and R'—R'. Unsaturated hydrocarbons are also obtained. Obviously, then, the best yield of a paraffin will be obtained when R and R' are the same, i.e., when the paraffin contains an even number of carbon atoms and is symmetrical. It has been found that the Wurtz reaction gives good yields only for "even carbon" paraffins of high molecular weight, and that the reaction generally fails with tertiary alkyl halides (q.v.).

Sodium is used in the Wurtz reaction. Other metals, however, in a finely-divided state, may also be used, e.g., Ag, Cu (see text).

Two mechanisms have been suggested for the Wurtz reaction, and there is evidence in favour of both. It is even possible that both take place simultaneously.

(i) The intermediate formation of an organo-metallic compound, e.g., the formation of n-butane from ethyl bromide:

$$C_2H_5$$
—Br + 2Na·  $\longrightarrow$   $C_2H_5$ Na<sup>+</sup> + NaBr  
 $C_2H_5$ Na<sup>+</sup> +  $C_2H_5$ Br  $\longrightarrow$   $C_2H_5$ — $C_2H_5$  + NaBr

(ii) The intermediate formation of free radicals, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} C_2H_5 - Br + Na \cdot \longrightarrow C_2H_5 \cdot + NaBr \\ C_2H_5 \cdot + C_2H_5 \cdot \longrightarrow C_2H_5 - C_2H_5 \end{array}$$

One of the properties of free radicals is disproportionation, i.e., intermolecular hydrogenation, one molecule acquiring hydrogen at the expense of the other, e.g.,

 $C_2H_5$  +  $C_2H_5$   $\longrightarrow$   $C_2H_6$  +  $C_2H_4$ 

This would account for the presence of ethane and ethylene in the products. According to Morton et al. (1942), however, ethane and ethylene may be produced as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \operatorname{Na^{+}} & \overset{\operatorname{CBr}}{\stackrel{\longleftarrow}{\longleftarrow}} & \overset{\operatorname{CH}_{2}}{\stackrel{\longleftarrow}{\longleftarrow}} & \overset{\operatorname{CH}_{3}}{\stackrel{\longleftarrow}{\longleftarrow}} + \overset{\operatorname{CH}_{2}}{\stackrel{\longleftarrow}{\longleftarrow}} + \operatorname{NaBr} \\ & \overset{\operatorname{CH}_{3}}{\stackrel{\longleftarrow}{\longleftarrow}} & \overset{\operatorname{CH}_{2}}{\stackrel{\longleftarrow}{\longleftarrow}} & \overset{\operatorname{CH}_{2}}{\stackrel{\longleftarrow}{\longleftarrow}} & \overset{\operatorname{CH}_{2}}{\stackrel{\longleftarrow}{\longleftarrow}} & \overset{\operatorname{CH}_{2}}{\stackrel{\longleftarrow}{\longleftarrow}} & \overset{\operatorname{CH}_{2}}{\stackrel{\longleftarrow}{\longleftarrow}} & \overset{\operatorname{CH}_{2}}{\stackrel{\longleftarrow}{\longleftarrow}} & \overset{\operatorname{CH}_{3}}{\stackrel{\longleftarrow}{\longleftarrow}} &$$

This mechanism is particularly interesting in view of the fact that disproportionation is commonly accepted as a criterion for a free-radical mechanism. Furthermore, Bryce-Smith (1956) has obtained evidence that free radicals play only a minor part in the formation of the usual Wurtz coupling and disproportionation products. Also, Le Goff *et al.* (1958) have obtained evidence to show that the Wurtz reaction of sodium with 2-chloro-octane is a bimolecular reaction of an alkylsodium with an alkyl halide.

2. Kolbe's electrolytic method (1849). A concentrated solution of the sodium or potassium salt of a fatty acid or mixture of fatty acids is electro-

lysed, e.g.,

$$R \cdot CO_2K + R' \cdot CO_2K + 2H_2O \longrightarrow R - R' + 2CO_2 + H_2 + 2KOH$$

If R and R' are different, then hydrocarbons R—R and R'—R' are also obtained (cf. Wurtz reaction). Such mixtures can often be separated readily. Yields of 50–90 per cent. have been obtained with straight-chain acids containing 2–18 carbon atoms. Alkyl groups in the  $\alpha$ -position decrease the yield (usually below 10 per cent.). The by-products are olefins, alcohols (particularly in alkaline solution), and esters. It is also interesting to note that the yields of the alkanes are increased when dimethylformamide is used as solvent (Finkelstein et al., 1960).

The Kolbe electrolytic method now has application in the synthesis of

natural compounds, particularly lipids.

The mechanism of the reaction is still obscure; a possibility is via free radicals, e.g., when sodium propionate is electrolysed, n-butane, ethane, ethylene and ethyl propionate are obtained. The propionate ion discharges at the anode to form a free radical:

$$C_2H_5CO_2 \longrightarrow C_2H_5CO_2 + e$$

This free propionate radical then breaks up into the free ethyl radical and carbon dioxide:

Then:

$$C_2H_5CO_2 \longrightarrow C_2H_5 + CO_2$$

(i)  ${}_{2}C_{2}H_{5} \longrightarrow C_{4}H_{10}$ 

(ii)  $C_2H_5 + C_2H_5 \longrightarrow C_2H_6 + C_2H_4$ 

(iii)  $C_2H_5 \cdot + C_2H_5CO_2 \cdot \longrightarrow C_2H_5 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5$ 

Reaction (i) gives *n*-butane; (ii) gives ethane and ethylene by disproportionation (cf. Wurtz reaction); and (iii) gives ethyl propionate.

3. By the action of an alkyl halide on a Grignard reagent:

$${\rm R-Mg-I} + {\rm R'I} \xrightarrow{\rm ether} {\rm R-R'} + {\rm MgI_2} \quad (g.\text{-}v.g.)$$

4. Frankland's method (1850). Dialkyl-zinc compounds readily react with alkyl halides to form hydrocarbons:

$$R_2Zn + R'I \longrightarrow R-R' + R-Zn-I$$

Dialkyl-zinc compounds are difficult to handle and as far as hydrocarbons are concerned, are used only for the preparation of paraffins containing a quaternary carbon atom, e.g.,

$$(CH_3)_3CCl + (CH_3)_2Zn \longrightarrow (CH_3)_4C + CH_3-Zn-Cl$$

General properties of the paraffins. The name paraffin arose through contracting the two Latin words "parum affinis", which means "little affinity". This name was suggested because these hydrocarbons were apparently very unreactive. It is difficult to define the terms "reactive"

and "unreactive", since a compound may be reactive under one set of conditions and unreactive under another. Under "ordinary" conditions, the paraffins are inert towards reagents such as acids, alkalis, oxidising reagents, reducing reagents, etc. In recent years, however, it has been shown that the paraffins are reactive if the "right" conditions are used (see below).

General physical properties of the paraffins. The normal paraffins from C<sub>1</sub> to C<sub>4</sub> are colourless gases; C<sub>5</sub> to C<sub>17</sub>, colourless liquids; and from C<sub>18</sub> onwards, colourless solids. The b.ps. rise fairly regularly as the number of carbon atoms in the compound increases. This holds good only for the normal compounds, and the difference in b.ps. decreases as the higher homologues are reached. Other physical properties, such as m.p., specific gravity, viscosity, also increase in the same way as the b.ps. (of the normal paraffins), e.g., the specific gravity of the normal paraffins increases fairly steadily for the lower members, and eventually tends to a maximum value of about 0.79. Straight-chain paraffins containing at least six carbon atoms form inclusion compounds with urea (see p. 387).

At the moment comparatively little is known about the quantitative relationships between physical properties and chemical constitution. It is believed that variation in b.ps. of compounds is due to different intermolecular forces such as hydrogen bonding, dipole moments, etc. Hydrogen bonding may produce association, and this will cause the b.p. to be higher than anticipated (see, e.g., alcohols). The greater the dipole moment of the compound, the higher is the b.p., since, owing to the charges, more work is required to separate the molecules, e.g., nitro-compounds, R.NO<sub>2</sub>, which have large dipole moments, have much higher b.ps. than the paraffins in which the dipole moment is absent or very small.

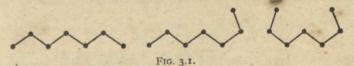
Observation has shown that in a group of isomeric compounds (acyclic), the normal compound always has the highest b.p. and m.p., and generally, the greater the branching, the lower the b.p.

The paraffins are almost insoluble in water, but readily soluble in ethanol and ether, the solubility diminishing with increase in molecular weight.

It is believed that solubility depends on the following intermolecular forces: solvent/solute; solute/solute; solvent/solvent. A non-electrolyte dissolves readily in water only if it can form hydrogen bonds with the water. Thus paraffins are insoluble, or almost insoluble, in water. Methane is more soluble than any of its homologues; hydrogen bonding with the water is unlikely, and so other factors—possibly molecular size—must also play a part. A useful rule in organic chemistry with respect to solubility is that "like dissolves like", e.g., if a compound contains a hydroxyl group, then the best solvents usually contain hydroxyl groups. This rule is not rigid (cf. paraffins).

X-Ray analysis of solid paraffins has shown that the carbon chains are fully

extended, i.e., zigzag. In the liquid state this extended form is also one of the



stable conformations provided that the carbon chain is not very long. When the number of carbon atoms is sixteen or more, the extended form is no longer present in the liquid state. The presence of a number of these different conformations (or rotational isomers) has been shown by a study of infra-red and Raman spectra of liquid paraffins. The various conformations arise from the fact that groups can rotate about single bonds (p. 404). Furthermore, it has been found that not all possible conformations are present, e.g., n-heptane shows the presence of three conformations (Sheppard et al., 1948, 1949). Fig. 1 shows diagrammatically three possible forms.

Since the dipole moment of methane is zero, the dipole moment of the methyl group is equal to that of the fourth C—H bond (in methane) and is directed along this axis. Thus replacement of hydrogen by a methyl group will not be expected to change the dipole moment, i.e., the dipole moment of all paraffins, whether straight- or branched-chain, will be zero. This has been found to be so in practice. This will always hold good whatever conformation is taken up by the paraffin provided that no deformation of the normal carbon valency angle (of 109° 28') is produced in the twisting, since all methyl groups will be balanced by a C—H bond. It therefore follows that the electronegativity of all alkyl groups is equal to that of hydrogen, namely zero (p. 16). As soon as one hydrogen atom is replaced by another atom or group (other than alkyl), the resultant molecule will now be found to possess a dipole moment (see also p. 106).

## General Chemical Properties of the Paraffins

studied in very great detail. It may be brought about by light, heat or catalysts, and the extent of chlorination depends largely on the amount of chlorine used. A mixture of all possible isomeric monochlorides is obtained, but the isomers are formed in unequal amounts, due to the difference of the reactivity of primary, secondary and tertiary hydrogen atoms. Markownikoff (1875) found experimentally that the order of ease of substitution is tertiary hydrogen>secondary>primary. This observation is very useful for predicting the possible courses of a reaction, and qualitatively, to what extent each course will proceed, e.g., chlorination of isobutane at 300° gives a mixture of two isomeric monochlorides:

We should expect to find more of (II) than (I); quantitative experiments show that this is so.

Bromination is similar to chlorination, but not so vigorous. Iodination is reversible, but it may be carried out in the presence of an oxidising agent, such as HIO<sub>3</sub>, HNO<sub>3</sub>, HgO, etc., which destroys the hydrogen iodide as it is formed (see p. 40). Iodides are more conveniently prepared by treating the chloro- or bromo-derivative with sodium iodide in methanol or acetone solution, e.g.,

$$RCl + NaI \xrightarrow{acetone} RI + NaCl$$

This reaction is possible because sodium iodide is soluble in methanol or acetone, whereas sodium chloride and sodium bromide are not.

Direct fluorination is usually explosive; special conditions are necessary for the preparation of the fluorine derivatives of the paraffins (see p. 120).

2. Nitration (see also p. 302). Under certain conditions, paraffins react with nitric acid, a hydrogen atom being replaced by a nitro-group, NO<sub>2</sub>. This process is known as nitration. Nitration of the paraffins may be carried out in the vapour phase between 150° and 475°, whereupon a complex mixture of mononitroparaffins is obtained. The mixture consists of all the possible mononitro-derivatives and the nitro-compounds formed by every

possibility of *chain fission* of the paraffin; *e.g.*, propane gives a mixture of r-nitropropane, 2-nitropropane, nitroethane and nitromethane:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{·CH}_2\text{·CH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{HNO}_3} & \text{NO}_2 \\ & \downarrow \\ \text{CH}_3\text{·CH}_2\text{·CH}_2\text{·CH}_2\text{·NO}_2 + \text{CH}_3\text{·CH}_2\text{·CH}_3 + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{·NO}_2 + \text{CH}_3\text{·NO}_2 \end{array}$$

As in the case of halogenation, the various hydrogen atoms in propane are

not replaced with equal ease.

3. Sulphonation (see also p. 606) is the process of replacing a hydrogen atom by a sulphonic acid group, SO<sub>8</sub>H. Sulphonation of a normal paraffin from hexane onwards may be carried out by treating the paraffin with oleum (fuming sulphuric acid). The ease of replacement of hydrogen atoms is: tertiary very much greater than secondary, and secondary greater than primary; replacement of a primary hydrogen atom in sulphonation is very slow indeed. isoButane, which contains a tertiary hydrogen atom, is readily sulphonated to give tert.-butylsulphonic acid:

$$(CH_3)_3CH + H_2SO_4/SO_3 \longrightarrow (CH_3)_3C \cdot SO_3H + H_2SO_4$$

Sulphuryl chloride, in the presence of light and a catalyst, converts hydrocarbons into sulphonyl chlorides (p. 339).

It has been shown that in concentrated sulphuric acid, hydrocarbons containing a tertiary hydrogen atom undergo hydrogen exchange (Ingold *et al.*, 1936). The mechanism is believed to occur via a carbonium ion:

$$\begin{array}{c} R_3CH + 2H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow R_3C^+ + HSO_4^- + SO_2 + 2H_2O \\ R_3C^+ + R_3CH \longrightarrow R_3CH + R_3C^+, \text{ etc.} \end{array}$$

This reaction is of particular interest since optically active hydrocarbons have been racemised in sulphuric acid (see p. 412); e.g., Burwell et al. (1948) have shown that optically active 3-methylheptane is racemised in sulphuric acid.

4. Oxidation. All paraffins readily burn in excess of air or oxygen to form carbon dioxide and water. Incomplete oxidation, due to insufficient air, produces carbon-black in variable yields. The mechanism of the oxidation of paraffins in the vapour state appears to take place via the formation of a hydrocarbon peroxide; eg.,

$$R \cdot CH_3 + O_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CH_2O \cdot OH \longrightarrow R \cdot CHO + H_2O$$

Other products are also obtained by fission of the carbon chain.

Oxidising reagents such as potassium permanganate readily oxidise a tertiary hydrogen atom to a hydroxyl group, e.g., isobutane is oxidised to tert.-butanol:

$$(CH_3)_3CH + [O] \xrightarrow{KMnO_4} (CH_3)_3 \cdot COH$$

The catalytic oxidation of methane produces methanol, CH<sub>3</sub>OH, and formaldehyde, H·CHO. The catalytic oxidation of higher homologues

(C16-) produces long-chain fatty acids and some other products.

5: Isomerisation of *n*-paraffins into branched-chain paraffins in which the side-chain is a methyl group, may be brought about by heating the *n*-paraffin with aluminium chloride at 300°, e.g., *n*-hexane isomerises into 2- and 3-methylpentanes:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_3\xrightarrow{300^\circ} \\ \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_3\text{$$

According to Pines et al. (1946), this isomerisation does not occur unless a trace of water is present (to form HCl from the AlCl<sub>3</sub>) together with a trace of alkyl halide or an olefin. The isomerisation is believed to be an ionic chain reaction. The olefin "impurity" is converted into a carbonium ion (by the AlCl<sub>3</sub> and HCl), and this initiates the chain reaction, isomerisation then occurring by 1,2-shift (p. 101).

Instead of writing out the formulæ of the 2- and 3-methylpentanes as shown in the equation, an alternative way is to write the formula in a "straight" line, enclosing in parentheses any side-chain; thus:  $CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \cdot$ 

ntheses, 
$$e.g.$$
,
$$CH_3 \cdot C - CH \longrightarrow CH_3$$

In many cases where there is no ambiguity, the parentheses may be omitted, e.g., isopropanol is CH<sub>3</sub>·CH·CH<sub>3</sub>; this is often written CH<sub>3</sub>·CHOH·CH<sub>3</sub>,

OH
but if the rules are strictly adhered to, it should be written CH<sub>3</sub>·CH(OH)·CH<sub>3</sub>.
6. The thermal decomposition of the paraffins (see cracking).

#### PETROLEUM AND NATURAL GAS

Crude petroleum (mineral oil) is the term usually applied to the gases occurring naturally in the oilfields, the liquid from the wells, and the solids which are dissolved in, or have separated from, the liquid. The composition of crude petroleum varies with the locality of occurrence, but all contain paraffins (from about  $C_1$  to  $C_{49}$ ), cycloparaffins or naphthenes, and aromatic hydrocarbons. The low-boiling fractions of almost all petroleums are composed of paraffins; it is the composition of the higher-boiling fractions which differs according to the source of the petroleum. In addition to hydrocarbons, there are also present compounds containing oxygen, nitrogen, sulphur and metallic constituents.

Natural gas is the term applied to the large quantities of gas associated with or unassociated with liquid petroleum. The composition of natural gas varies with the source, and consists chiefly of the first six paraffins, the percentage of each decreasing with increasing molecular weight. Other gases such as water vapour, hydrogen, nitrogen, carbon dioxide and hydrogen sulphide may be present in amounts that vary with the locality of occurrence.

The origin of petroleum and natural gas is still uncertain. Many theories have been suggested, but not one explains all the known facts. There is now, however, general agreement that petroleum has organic origin, and this is due to the fact that the higher boiling fractions of petroleum contain optically active compounds (p. 399) and that petroleum has been shown to contain both animal and plant type of porphyrins, i.e., hæmin and chlorophyll (Treibs, 1934–36). The problem is how organic matter is converted into petroleum. A very highly favoured theory is that it takes place by means of bacterial decomposition, but there is a growing belief that bacterial action is only the first stage in the conversion and this is then followed by physical and chemical stages.

Another highly favoured theory is that petroleum is formed from organic matter by the catalytic activity of certain natural inorganic compounds. There is a great deal of experimental work that supports this theory which, in many ways, appears superior to any other. It is probable that both mechanisms are operating.

Distribution and general composition of crude petroleum. If the residue of petroleum, after removal of volatile compounds, contains a large amount of paraffins or wax, the petroleum is classified as paraffinic or paraffin base oil. naphthenes predominate, the petroleum is classified as asphaltic or asphalt base oil. The crudes from the wells in Pennsylvania, Iran, Irak and Rumania are paraffinic; those from Baku and Venezuela are asphaltic; and those from Oklahoma, Texas and Mexico are intermediate in composition, and may be classified as paraffinic and asphaltic.

Distillation of petroleum. The crude oil is nearly always associated with water and sand; hence the crude petroleum discharged from the top of the well contains water and sand in suspension. The mixture is passed, under pressure, into

cylindrical tanks, and the gas, oil and solids are drawn off separately.

Except for the low-boiling hydrocarbons, no attempt is made to separate the individual hydrocarbons. The crude oil is fractionated by continuous distillation into four main fractions: petrol (gasoline), kerosene (kerosine, paraffin oil), gas oil (heavy oil) and lubricating oil. The residue may be fractionated by means of vacuum-distillation to give light, medium and heavy lubricating oils, paraffin wax, and asphaltic bitumen. Each of the four main fractions may be further split up by batch distillation into fractions of narrow boiling range. Recently, it has been possible to isolate individuals by "superfractionation". The final number of fractions taken depends on the purpose in view.

Table II shows one set of fractions that may be obtained.

Refining of the various fractions. It appears that refining was originally introduced to remove the bad colour and objectionable odour of petrol. To-day it is realised that it is more important to remove sulphur compounds which lower

the response of petrol to added tetraethyl-lead.

An internal-combustion engine, i.e., one which burns fuel within the working cylinder, is more efficient the higher the compression ratio. Petrol engines use "spark ignition", and as the compression ratio increases, a point is reached when "knocking" is observed, i.e., after passage of the firing spark, instead of

TABLE II

Name.	B.P. ° C.	Approximate Composition.	Uses.
Light petrol Benzine	. "	$\begin{array}{c} C_5H_{12}-C_7H_{16} \\ C_6-C_7 \\ C_6-C_8 \\ C_6-C_{11} \\ C_{12}-C_{16} \\ C_{13}-C_{18} \\ C_{16}-C_{20} \\ C_{18}-C_{22} \\ \end{array}$	Solvent Dry cleaning Solvent Motor fuel Lighting Fuel oil Lubricants Pharmaceutical preparations Candles, waxed paper, etc. Asphalt tar; petro- leum coke

all the fuel gas burning smoothly, the end portion burns with explosive violence, giving rise to a metallic rattle. The phenomenon of knocking is still not fully understood, but it has been found that, among other factors, the tendency to knock depends on the nature of the petrol. n-Paraffins tend to produce knocking far more than branched-chain paraffins. Edgar (1927) introduced 2:2:4trimethylpentane (incorrectly known as iso-octane), which has higher antiknock properties, and n-heptane, which has lower antiknock properties than any commercial petrol, as standards for rating fuels. "iso-Octane" is arbitrarily given the value of 100 and n-heptane, o, and the octane number of any fuel is the per cent. of "iso-octane" in a mixture of this compound and n-heptane which will knock under the same conditions as the fuel being tested.

Olefins and aromatic compounds have high octane numbers. Tetraethyl-lead also raises the octane number of a given petrol, but if sulphur compounds are present, the response to this "dope" is lowered. Hence it is very important to remove sulphur compounds from petrol. The method of refining depends on the particular fraction concerned, and it is not practicable to refine before

distillation (of the petroleum).

Gasoline refining. 1. Petroleum may be treated with concentrated sulphuric acid which reduces the sulphur content and also removes unsaturated compounds which polymerise on standing to form gums (see olefins). For straight-run gasoline, i.e., gasoline obtained directly from crude petroleum, 98 per cent. sulphuric acid is used; for cracked gasoline (see later), 80 per cent. acid is used. This diluted acid removes only unstable unsaturated hydrocarbons, i.e., those which tend to polymerise, leaving the stable unsaturated hydrocarbons, which raise the octane number of the gasoline. The diluted acid, however, causes some polymerisation to take place, but the gasoline is readily separated from these high-boiling polymers by distillation.

2. Instead of sulphuric acid the adsorption process can be used to remove thioalcohols (the chief group of sulphur compounds occurring in petroleum) from straight-run gasoline. The gasoline vapour is passed, under pressure, over an adsorbent such as clays, bauxite, etc., heated at about 450°C. Cracked gasoline contains sulphur as thiophens, and these cannot be removed so easily this way. Thiophens, however, are not so objectionable as thioalcohols.

this way. Thiophens, however, are not so objectionable as thioalcohols.

3. Straight-run gasolines may be refined by sodium hydroxide washing, which may remove almost all thioalcohol sulphur. Where this simple sodium hydroxide treatment is insufficient, it is followed by "sweetening". By sweetening, the thioalcohols (which give gasoline an unpleasant odour) are converted into disulphides, thereby improving the odour. Common sweetening agents are:

(i) An alkaline solution of sodium plumbite ("doctor solution"):

$$2RSH + Na_2PbO_2 + S \longrightarrow R-S-S-R + PbS + 2NaOH$$

Free sulphur is added as required in carefully controlled amounts. The spent doctor solution is regenerated by blowing with air.

(ii) Sodium hypochlorite:

$$2RSH + [O] \xrightarrow{NaOCl} R - S - S - R + H_2O$$

(iii) Cupric chloride:

$$2RSH + 2CuCl_2 \longrightarrow R - S - S - R + 2CuCl + 2HCl$$

Sweetening of "sour" gasoline does not appreciably alter the total sulphur content, and will not improve the octane number or lead susceptibility; in fact sweetened gasoline may have a lower octane number and lead susceptibility than

unsweetened; only the odour is improved.

4. The solutiser process involves the use of solvents, and the more common ones are a methanolic solution of sodium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide and sodium butyrate, and potassium hydroxide and potassium butyrate. By this means the thioalcohols are removed completely, and thus the octane number and lead susceptibility are raised.

Kerosene refining. (i) The kerosene is washed first with sulphuric acid, then with sodium hydroxide solution, and finally with water. (ii) The kerosene is treated with liquid sulphur dioxide, which removes most of the sulphur compounds and aromatic hydrocarbons. Because of the removal of the latter, this method of refining cornect he used for reaching

method of refining cannot be used for gasoline.

Gas oil and lubricating oil refining is carried out by extraction with liquid sulphur dioxide.

#### CRACKING

The thermal decomposition of organic compounds is known as *pyrolysis*; pyrolysis, when applied to paraffins, is known as *cracking*.

When heated to about 500-600°, paraffins are decomposed into smaller molecules, and the products obtained from a given paraffin depend on: (i) the structure of the paraffin; (ii) the pressure under which cracking is

carried out; and (iii) the presence or absence of catalysts such as silica-alumina, silica-alumina-zirconia.

The mechanism of cracking is still obscure. Many theories have been suggested, and one that is highly favoured is a free-radical mechanism, evidence for which has been obtained from the observation that at cracking temperatures many hydrocarbons produce free alkyl radicals.

When petroleum is cracked, of all the compounds produced, the most important are those containing up to four carbon atoms: methane, ethane, ethylene, propane, propylene, butane, butylene and isobutylene. All of these have found wide application as the materials for the preparation of a

large number of chemicals (see text).

By using suitable catalysts, paraffins containing six or more carbon atoms may be catalytically cyclised, e.g., n-hexane, under pressure, passed over chromic oxide carried on an alumina support and heated at 480–550°, gives benzene (see also p. 500):

$$C_6H_{14} \longrightarrow C_6H_6 + 4H_2$$

There are two main types of cracking: (i) liquid phase, and (ii) vapour

phase.

(i) Liquid phase cracking. Heavy oil (from the petroleum distillation) is cracked by heating at a suitable temperature (475–530°) and under pressure (100–1000 lb/sq. in.), by means of which the cracked material is maintained in the liquid condition. The heavy oil is converted into gasoline to the extent of 60–65 per cent. of the oil (by volume), and has an octane number of 65–70. If attempts are made to increase the yield of gasoline, the octane number decreases.

(ii) In vapour phase cracking the cracking temperature is 600° and the pressure is 50–150 lb/sq. in. The cracking stock may be gasoline, kerosene, gas oils, but not the heavy oils, since these cannot be completely vaporised

under the above conditions.

Reforming is the process whereby straight-run gasoline is cracked in order to raise the octane number. The gasoline is heated to about 600° and under pressure of 400–750 lb/sq. in., and the yield varies from 60 to 90 per cent.; the greater the yield, the lower is the octane number. Catalysts—the oxides of silicon and aluminium, plus small amounts of other oxides such as magnesia, zirconia, etc.—are usually employed in the reforming process, and their use produces a higher octane number (which is partly due to the increased content of benzene and toluene), and also increases the yield of gasoline.

Catalytic cracking is also increasing in use, since it has been found that catalytically cracked gasoline contains few olefins that readily polymerise. Gum formation in cracked gasolines is prevented by the addition of *inhibitors*, which are mainly phenols or aromatic amines, *e.g.*, catechol, *p*-benzyl-

aminophenol, naphthylamine.

As pointed out above, large quantities of gases up to  $C_4$  (and small amounts of  $C_5$ , *i.e.*, the pentanes and pentenes) are produced in cracking. These gases may be used as the starting materials for various chemicals. Alternatively, by polymerising the olefins under the influence of a catalyst, *e.g.*, phosphoric acid on kieselguhr, or sulphuric acid, a high-octane (80–85) gasoline can be obtained.

Treatment of natural gas. When natural gas does not contain hydrocarbons above ethane, it is said to be "lean" or "dry"; when it contains the higher hydrocarbons (up to hexane) it is said to be "rich" or "wet". The paraffins may be separated by fractional distillation under increased pressure, thereby giving methane, ethane, propane, n- and isobutanes, n-, iso- and neopentanes, and hexane. These gases are used for various purposes (see text). On the other

hand, natural gas itself may be used in the manufacture of various compounds. Oxidation of natural gas under carefully controlled conditions produces a complex mixture of compounds, among which are formaldehyde, acetaldehyde, acetic acid, acetone, methanol, ethanol, propanols and butanols.

separated by distillation, solvent extraction, etc.

Wet gas is also used as a source of gasoline. The vapours of the liquid hydrocarbons (pentanes and hexane) in the wet gas are removed by various methods, e.g., compression, and cooling. The liquid product obtained from wet gas is known as "natural" or "casinghead" gas, and is "wild" because of the dissolved gases in it. These gases may be removed by distillation under pressure, and the resulting liquid is known as "stabilised natural gasoline"; this has very high antiknock properties.

Synthetic Fuels. (i) Fischer-Tropsch Gasoline Synthesis or Synthine Process. Synthesis gas, which is water-gas mixed with half its volume of hydrogen, at

about 200-300° and a pressure of 1-200 atm., is passed over a catalyst.

## $xCO + yH_2 \longrightarrow mixture of hydrocarbons + water$ (saturated and unsaturated)

The water-gas is made from coke. One third of the water-gas is passed with steam at 400° over iron, and the hydrogen-enriched water-gas is then mixed with the rest of the water-gas to produce the synthesis gas. This contains about 20 per cent. of inert gases. If the synthine process is carried out at atmospheric pressure, the carbon dioxide (about one third of the volume of the inert gases) is left in; if the synthesis is carried out under pressure, most of the carbon dioxide is washed out.

Synthesis gas contains sulphur compounds, and since these poison the catalyst, their removal is necessary. Hydrogen sulphide is removed by bog-iron ore. Organic sulphur compounds are oxidised under carefully controlled conditions, the sulphur being retained as sodium sulphate. If the synthesis gas contains large amounts of hydrocarbons, the latter are almost completely removed by passing through active carbon adsorbers before removing the sulphur com-The purified gas is then passed to the catalyst chambers, with or without compression. Other methods of preparing synthesis gas are also available, e.g., from methane and steam (p. 41).

Various metals and oxides have been used as catalysts. One of the best is: cobalt (100 parts), thoria (5 parts), magnesia (8 parts) and kieselguhr (200 parts). When synthesis gas is passed over the catalyst at moderate pressure (9-11 atm.), more of the high-boiling fraction is obtained than when the process is carried out at atmospheric pressure. The liquid products are fractionally distilled, and refined in the same way as are the petroleum fractions; furthermore the higher-

boiling fractions are cracked.

Gasoline from the synthine process costs more than that from petroleum. The Fischer-Tropsch oils appear to be more valuable as chemical raw materials than as fuels, and have been used for the production of higher olefins, fatty acids, detergents and in the oxo-process (see p. 127).

(ii) Petrol from coal. (a) Distillation of coal-tar gives a fuel oil, fractionation of which yields petrol (about one sixth of the volume). On the other hand, hydrogenation of the fuel oil under a pressure of 200 atm. and at about 475° produces petrol in 100 per cent. yield.

(b) In the Bergius process coal dust is heated to 400-500° in hydrogen at 250 atm., preferably in the presence of a catalyst, one of the best being an organic compound of tin. The yield of petrol may be as high as 60 per cent. (on

the coal used).

(c) In the I.C.I. process coal dust is mixed with heavy oil to form a paste (50 per cent. of oil), which is pumped, with hydrogen, under pressure (250 atm.), into chambers containing the catalyst (organic tin compound) heated at 450°. The gases produced are scrubbed and condensed, and the liquid fractions are distilled to give the petrol fraction. The higher-boiling oils may be further hydrogenated to give more petrol.

## **OUESTIONS**

1. Write out the structures and names (by the three methods described in the text) of the isomeric hexanes. State how many primary, secondary, tertiary and quaternary carbon atoms there are in each isomer.

2. By means of equations, show how you would convert methane into propane.

3. What is the percentage of carbon and hydrogen in the paraffin C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>82</sub>? Could you distinguish this paraffin from its next homologue by determining the percentage composition of each hydrocarbon?

4. Synthesise all the alkanes you can, by methods dealt with so far, from (a) CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·

6. What reagents could you use to convert:—(a) a monohalogen derivative of a paraffin and (b) carbonyl compounds, into the corresponding and higher paraffins? 7. Write notes on:—(a) the Wurtz reaction, (b) Kolbe's electrolytic method, (c)

Frankland's method, (d) Fischer-Tropsch reaction.

The reader should test himself on the general methods of preparation and general properties of any homologous series.

#### READING REFERENCES

Handbook for Chemical Society Authors. Special Publication No. 14. The Chemical

Society (1960).

Rules for I.U.P.A.C. Notation for Organic Compounds, Longmans, Green (1961). Beezer, Latin and Greek Roots in Chemical Terminology, J. Chem. Educ., 1940, 17, 63. Hurd, The General Philosophy of Organic Nomenclature, J. Chem. Educ., 1961, 38, 43. Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1942, 2nd ed.), (i) Vol. I, Ch. 1. Reactions of the Paraffins. (ii) Vol. II, Ch. 23. Constitution and Physical Properties of

Organic Compounds.

Advances in Organic Chemistry, Vol. I (1960). Weedon, The Kolbe Electrolytic Syn-

thesis, p. 1.
Goldstein, The Petroleum Chemicals Industry, Spon (1949). Brooks, The Chemistry of the Non-benzenoid Hydrocarbons, Reinhold (1950, 2nd ed.). Astle, The Chemistry of Petrochemicals, Reinhold (1956).

Rossini, Hydrocarbons in Petroleum, J. Chem. Educ., 1960, 37, 554.

#### CHAPTER IV

## UNSATURATED HYDROCARBONS

## Olefins, Alkylenes or Alkenes

The olefins are the unsaturated hydrocarbons that contain one double bond. The simplest member of the series is ethylene,  $CH_2$ — $CH_2$ ; hence this homologous series is often referred to as the "ethylene series". The olefins have the general formula  $C_nH_{2n}$ , and the double bond is also known as the "olefinic bond" or "ethylenic bond".

Olefins have recently become very important technically, since they are obtained in huge quantities in the cracking of petroleum, and may be used

to prepare a large variety of organic compounds (see text).

Nomenclature. The name olefin arose from the fact that ethylene was called "olefiant gas" (oil-forming gas), since it formed oily liquids when treated with chlorine or bromine. The original name given to this homologous series was olefine; but it was later decided to reserve the suffix -ine for basic substances only. Since the name olefine had gained wide usage, it was decided to compromise and call the series the olefins.

One method of nomenclature is to name the olefin from the corresponding paraffin by changing the suffix -ane of the latter into -ylene, e.g., (methylene),

ethylene, propylene, etc.

The name alkylene is obtained in a similar manner, alkane being converted

into alkylene.

Isomers differing only in the position of the double bond are prefixed by Greek letters or numbers which indicate the position of the double bond. The lowest number is usually given to the double bond (see below), and the number (or Greek letter) indicates the *first* of the two carbon atoms that are joined together by the double bond, *e.g.*,

CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH=CH<sub>2</sub>  $\alpha$ -Butylene or 1-Butylene CH<sub>3</sub>·CH=CH·CH<sub>3</sub>  $\beta$ -Butylene or 2-Butylene (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub> isoButylene (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C=CH·CH<sub>3</sub>  $\beta$ -isoAmylene (cf. pentane and amyl)

Another method of nomenclature is to consider ethylene as the parent substance and the higher members as derivatives of ethylene. If the compound is a monosubstituted derivative of ethylene, then no difficulty is encountered in naming it; if the compound is a disubstituted derivative of ethylene isomerism is possible, since the alkyl groups can be attached to the same or different carbon atoms. When the groups are attached to the same carbon atom the olefin is named as the asymmetrical or unsymmetrical compound (abbreviated to as- or unsym-); when attached to different carbon atoms the olefin is named as the symmetrical (sym- or s-) compound, e.g.,

According to the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature, the class suffix of the olefins is -ene, and so the series becomes the alkene series. The longest carbon chain containing the double bond is chosen as the parent alkene,

the name of which is obtained by changing the suffix -ane of the corresponding paraffin into -ene. The positions of the double bond and side-chains are indicated by numbers, the lowest number possible being given to the double bond, and this is placed before the suffix, e.g.,

When there are several chains of equal length containing the double bond, then the same principles apply as for the alkanes (p. 47), e.g.,

A double or triple bond is regarded as a functional group. When there are several functional groups in the molecule, then the lowest number possible is given, in order of preference: (i) to the *principal* functional group of the compound; (ii) to the double or triple bond; and (iii) to atoms or groups designated by prefixes.

General Methods of Preparation of the Olefins. I. By the action of concentrated sulphuric acid, at 160–170°, on primary alcohols. The acid acts as a dehydrating agent, removing one molecule of water from the alcohol to form the olefin, e.g., ethylene from ethanol:

$$C_2H_5OH_3^{\bullet} \xrightarrow{-H_2O} C_2H_4$$
 (f.-g.)

Dehydration of secondary and tertiary alcohols is best carried out using dilute sulphuric acid, since the olefins produced from these alcohols (particularly tertiary alcohols) tend to polymerise under the influence of the concentrated acid. The yields of olefin from secondary and tertiary alcohols are very good.

Instead of sulphuric acid, glacial phosphoric acid (HPO<sub>3</sub>), phosphorus pentoxide, or alumina may be used. With alumina, at 350°, the yields are v.g.-ex. Brandenberg et al. (1950) have converted all three classes of alcohols into olefins in excellent yields by means of boric acid as catalyst (borates are formed as intermediates):

$$3\text{R-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{OH} + \text{H}_3\text{BO}_3 \longrightarrow (\text{R-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{O})_3\text{B} \longrightarrow \\ 3\text{R-CH} = \text{CH}_2 + \text{H}_3\text{BO}_3$$

Methyl xanthates may also be used to prepare olefins (p. 131).

2. By the action of *ethanolic* potassium hydroxide on monohalogen

2. By the action of *ethanolic* potassium hydroxide on monohalogen derivatives of the paraffins, *e.g.*, propylene from propyl bromide:

$$\texttt{CH}_3\textbf{\cdot}\texttt{CH}_2\textbf{\cdot}\texttt{CH}_2\texttt{Br} + \texttt{KOH} \xrightarrow{\texttt{ethanol}} \texttt{CH}_3\textbf{\cdot}\texttt{CH} = \texttt{CH}_2 + \texttt{KBr} + \texttt{H}_2\texttt{O}$$

This is not a very important method for the preparation of the lower alkenes, since these may be prepared directly from the corresponding alcohols, which are readily accessible. The reaction, however, is very important, since by means of it a double bond can be introduced into an organic compound (see text). The yield of olefin depends on the nature of the alkyl halide used; it is fair with primary, and very good for secondary and tertiary alkyl halides. Ethylene cannot be prepared by this method from ethyl halide (see alkyl halides for the mechanism of dehydrohalogenation, i.e., removal of halogen acid).

3. (i) By the action of zinc dust on methanolic solutions of gem-dihalogen derivatives of the paraffins, e.g., propylene from propylidene bromide:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CHBr_2 + Zn \longrightarrow ZnBr_2 + [CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH \triangleleft \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_2$$

If sodium is used instead of zinc, and the reaction is carried out preferably in ether solution, comparatively little propylene is formed, the main product being hex-3-ene:

$$_2$$
CH $_3$ ·CH $_2$ ·CHBr $_2$  +  $_4$ Na  $\longrightarrow$  CH $_3$ ·CH $_2$ ·CH $=$ CH·CH $_2$ ·CH $_3$  +  $_4$ NaBr

This reaction is really an extension of the Wurtz synthesis, and the important point to note is that the use of sodium tends to produce lengthening of the carbon chain.

(ii) By the action of zinc dust on methanol solutions of vic-dihalogen

derivatives of the paraffins, e.g., propylene from propylene bromide:

$$CH_3 \cdot CHBr \cdot CH_2Br + Zn \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_2 + ZnBr_2$$

Sodium can also be used, but zinc dust is usually more satisfactory.

Neither (i) nor (ii) is used very much for preparing alkenes, since the necessary dihalogen compounds are not readily accessible. The method, however, is very useful for purifying alkenes or for "protecting" a double bond (see, e.g., allyl alcohol). Sodium iodide may be used instead of zinc dust, and its use depends on the fact that the vic-di-iodide which is formed is unstable, and readily eliminates iodine to form a double bond:

$$CBr\cdot CBr \leftarrow 2NaI \longrightarrow 2NaBr + [CI\cdot CI \leftarrow ] \longrightarrow C=C \leftarrow I_2$$

4. By heating a quaternary ammonium hydroxide, e.g., ethylene from tetraethylammonium hydroxide:

$$(C_2H_5)_4NOH \longrightarrow C_2H_4 + (C_2H_5)_3N + H_2O$$

This method of preparation is more important as a means of ascertaining the structure of a compound containing nitrogen in a ring, and is the basis of the Hofmann Exhaustive Methylation reaction (see p. 318).

5. Boord et al. (1930-33) have prepared olefins by conversion of an aldehyde into its chloro-ether, treating this with bromine followed by a Grignard reagent, and finally treating the product with zinc and n-butanol.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R*CH$_2$*CHO} \xrightarrow{C_2H_4\text{OH}} \text{R*CH$_2$*CHCl*OC$_2$H$_5} \xrightarrow{\text{Br$_2$}} \text{R*CHBr*CHBr*OC$_2$H$_5} \\ \xrightarrow{\text{R'MgBr}} \text{R*CHBr*CHR'*OC$_2$H$_5} \xrightarrow{Zn} \text{R*CH$=CH*R'$} \end{array}$$

This method is very useful for preparing olefins of definite structure, and an interesting point about it is the replacement of the  $\alpha$ -chlorine atom by bromine when the  $\alpha$ -chloro-ether undergoes bromination in the  $\beta$ -position.

6. The Wittig reaction (1953, 1956). This is also a means of preparing olefins where the position of the double bond is definite. An alkyl (or aralkyl) triphenylphosphonium halide is treated with, e.g., sodium ethoxide and the alkylidene- (or arylidene-) phosphorane produced is then warmed with an aldehyde or ketone (Ph =  $C_6H_5$ ):

$$\begin{array}{c} Ph_{3}P + RCH_{2}Br \longrightarrow Ph_{3}PCH_{2}R\}^{+}Br \xrightarrow{EtONa} \\ Ph_{3}P = CHR \xrightarrow{R'_{3}CO} R'_{2} - C - CHR \cdot PPh_{3} \xrightarrow{warm} \\ O^{+} \\ R'_{2}C = CHR + Ph_{3}P = O \end{array}$$

7. A number of olefins are prepared by the cracking of petroleum (p. 58), e.g., ethylene, propylene, butylenes, etc. (see also the individuals). For the production of the lower olefins the most suitable starting material is gas oil, whereas for the higher olefins it is best to use paraffin wax or Fischer–Tropsch wax (p. 60). The lower olefins ( $C_2$ – $C_5$ ) are also prepared by the catalytic dehydrogenation of saturated hydrocarbons, the most satisfactory catalysts being those of the chromium oxide–alumina type.

General properties of the olefins. The members containing two to four carbon atoms are gases; five to fifteen, liquids; sixteen onwards, solids at room temperature. All are lighter than water, in which they are insoluble,

and they burn in air with a luminous smoky flame.

Owing to the presence of a double bond, the olefins undergo a large number of addition reactions, but under special conditions they also undergo substitution reactions. The high reactivity of the olefinic bond is due to the presence of the two  $\pi$ -electrons. These are less firmly held between the two nuclei than the  $\sigma$ -electrons, and are more exposed to external influences, and so are readily polarisable. It is the  $\pi$ -electrons which undergo the electromeric effect at the requirements of the attacking reagent, and when addition occurs, the trigonal arrangement in the olefin changes to the tetrahedral arrangement in the saturated compound produced (see p. 429).

1. Olefins are readily hydrogenated under pressure in the presence of a catalyst. Finely divided platinum and palladium are effective at room temperature; nickel on a support (Sabatier-Senderens reduction) requires a temperature between 200° and 300°; Raney nickel is effective at room

temperature and atmospheric pressure:

$$C_2H_4 + H_2 \xrightarrow{\text{catalyst}} C_2H_6$$

Platinum and palladium-black, i.e., the metals in a very finely divided state, may be prepared by reducing their soluble salts with formaldehyde. Adams' platinum-platinum oxide catalyst is prepared by reducing platinum oxide with hydrogen before the addition of the compound being hydrogenated, or it may be added to the compound, reduction of the oxide taking place during hydrogenation.

One molecule of hydrogen is absorbed for each double bond present in

the unsaturated compound.

The olefinic bond is readily reduced *catalytically*, but it is not reduced by metals and acid, or sodium and ethanol, unless the double bond is in the  $\alpha\beta$ -position with respect to certain groups (see text).

The mechanism of catalytic hydrogenation is not yet fully understood. It appears that adsorption occurs to give metal-carbon and metal-hydrogen bonds.

In this way the catalyst lowers the energy of activation.

2. Olefins form addition compounds with chlorine or bromine, e.g., ethylene adds bromine to form ethylene bromide:

$$CH_2 = CH_2 + Br_2 \longrightarrow CH_2Br \cdot CH_2Br \quad (85\%)$$

Addition of halogen to olefins can take place by two types of mechanism, polar or free-radical.

Polar mechanism. Evidence for this mechanism is as follows. Stewart et al. (1923) showed that the reaction between ethylene and bromine (in the absence of light) occurs only at the surface of the reaction vessel. Norrish (1923) showed that a polar surface was necessary. When the walls of the container were coated with paraffin wax (a non-polar substance), the rate of reaction between ethylene and bromine was very much reduced, whereas when the walls were coated with stearic acid (a polar substance), the reaction rate was very much increased. Norrish et al. (1926), examining the addition of chlorine to ethylene, showed that a small amount of water vapour catalyses the reaction when the

walls of the container were "bare", but had no effect when the walls had been previously coated with paraffin wax. Water vapour can be adsorbed on bare glass but not on wax-coated glass. All these experiments lead to the conclusion that reaction occurs at the *surface* and takes place by a polar mechanism. That a polar mechanism is operating is supported by the fact that the reaction is also catalysed by inorganic halides such as aluminium chloride, etc. The addition of halogen to olefins may also be carried out in a suitable solvent, *e.g.*, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride.

The next problem to be considered is whether in this addition reaction the halogen behaves as an electrophilic or a nucleophilic reagent. All the evidence has shown that reaction takes place in two stages, with the halogen behaving as an electrophilic reagent, e.g., Francis (1925) showed that when ethylene reacts with bromine in aqueous sodium chloride solution, the products are ethylene dibromide and 1-bromo-2-chloroethane; no ethylene dichloride is obtained. These results are readily explained by the following mechanism:

$$CH_2 = CH_2 \longrightarrow CH_2 \longrightarrow$$

The bromine atom that adds on shares a pair of electrons from the ethylene molecule, and in doing so releases its own bonding pair to the other bromine atom (of the bromine molecule), the latter thus being released as a bromide ion. Since the bromine atom that adds on first gains a share in the two electrons retained by the ethylene molecule, bromine is thus an electrophilic reagent. The carbonium ion produced can now combine with any negative ion, and so, since both bromide and chloride ions are available, both of these can add on to give the final products:

$$Br \xrightarrow{\uparrow} \stackrel{+}{C}H_2 - CH_2Br \Longrightarrow \stackrel{\delta-}{Br} \stackrel{-}{\cdots} \stackrel{\delta+}{C}H_2 - CH_2Br \longrightarrow CH_2Br - CH_2Br$$
T.S.

In the same way, the Cl<sup>-</sup> adds on to give CH<sub>2</sub>Cl·CH<sub>2</sub>Br.

It has been shown, however, that the above mechanism for addition of halogen to olefins satisfies many reactions but not others (Robertson et al., 1937-).

The addition of halogen to a double bond is trans; this stereochemical aspect is

discussed on p. 428.

An interesting point about the above mechanism is why, with a symmetrical olefin such as ethylene, the addition is not nucleophilic, *i.e.*,

$$\overrightarrow{Br-Br} \xrightarrow{CH_2 = CH_2} \longrightarrow \overrightarrow{CH_2Br-CH_2} + \overrightarrow{Br^+} \longrightarrow \overrightarrow{CH_2Br^*CH_2Br}$$

Several reasons have been proposed to explain electrophilic attack, e.g., negative ions (nucleophilic reagents) are hindered from attacking ethylenic carbon atoms by the screen of  $\pi$ -electrons. In fact,  $\pi$ -electrons are very susceptible to attack by electrophilic reagents. Thus olefins are themselves nucleophilic reagents; e.g., many olefins form addition complexes with the silver ion as, e.g., perchlorate. These addition compounds are known as  $\pi$ -complexes (p. 70).

$$(CH_3)_2C = C(CH_3)_2 + Ag^+ \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2C = C(CH_3)_2$$

$$Ag^+$$

$$Ag^+$$

**Free-radical mechanism.** Under suitable conditions, halogens may add to olefins by a free-radical mechanism, e.g., Stewart et al. (1935) have shown that the addition of chlorine to ethylene is accelerated by light. This suggests a free-radical mechanism.

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{Cl}_2 \xrightarrow{\operatorname{h}\nu} {}_2\operatorname{Cl} \cdot \\ \operatorname{CH}_2 &\longrightarrow \operatorname{CH}_2\operatorname{Cl} - \operatorname{CH}_2 \cdot \\ \operatorname{CH}_2\operatorname{Cl} &\longrightarrow \operatorname{CH}_2\operatorname{Cl} - \operatorname{CH}_2\operatorname{Cl} + \operatorname{Cl} \cdot \\ \operatorname{CH}_2 &\longrightarrow \operatorname{CH}_2\operatorname{Cl} - \operatorname{CH}_2\operatorname{Cl} + \operatorname{Cl} \cdot \\ \operatorname{CH}_2 &\longrightarrow \operatorname{CH}_2\operatorname{Cl} - \operatorname{CH}_2 \cdot , \text{ etc.} \end{array}$$

It may be asked why the free radical CH<sub>2</sub>Cl·CH<sub>2</sub>• does not combine with the other chlorine atom (free radical). There is, of course, always a chance of this occurring, but since the concentration of the chlorine molecules is infinitely greater, the reaction will therefore proceed as shown above. On the other hand, since the concentration of the ethylene is high, it would appear that the free radical CH<sub>2</sub>Cl·CH<sub>2</sub>• could react with ethylene molecules. If this were to happen, polymerisation (or at least dimerisation) would take place. There appears to be no evidence for this, and so, if the reaction is via free radicals, we must suppose it to take place as shown. This type of reaction is known as a free-radical chain reaction, and once started, carries on until the reactants are used up, or the chain broken by the destruction of the free radicals (see below, polymerisation).

propylene heated with chlorine between 400° and 600° gives allyl chloride:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_2 + Cl_2 \longrightarrow CH_2Cl \cdot CH = CH_2 + HCl$$

Above a certain temperature range, substitution takes place; below this range, addition takes place. The temperature range varies according to the olefin used, but for most olefins lies between 300° and 600°.

On the other hand, substitution is fairly easy with branched-chain olefins,

and again occurs in the allyl position (see, e.g., isobutene).

The action of fluorine on olefins usually results in the formation of carbon tetrafluoride, but addition to the double bond may be effected by treating the olefin with hydrogen fluoride in the presence of lead dioxide (Henne *et al.*, 1945); the fluorinating agent is lead tetrafluoride:

3. Olefins form addition compounds with the halogen acids, e.g., ethylene adds hydrogen bromide to form ethyl bromide:

$$C_2H_4 + HBr \longrightarrow C_2H_5Br$$

The order of reactivity of the addition of the halogen acids is hydrogen iodide>hydrogen bromide>hydrogen chloride>hydrogen fluoride. The conditions for the addition are similar to those for the halogens; the addition of hydrogen fluoride, however, is effected only under pressure.

In the case of unsymmetrical olefins it is possible for the addition of the halogen acid to take place in two different ways, e.g., propylene might add

on hydrogen iodide to form propyl iodide:

$$CH_3$$
· $CH$ = $CH_2$  +  $HI$   $\longrightarrow$   $CH_3$ · $CH_2$ · $CH_2$ I

or it might form isopropyl iodide:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_2 + HI \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CHI \cdot CH_3$$

Markownikoff studied many reactions of this kind, and as a result of his work, formulated the following rule: the negative part of the addendum adds on to the carbon atom that is joined to the least number of hydrogen atoms.

In the case of the halogen acids the halogen atom is the negative part, and so isopropyl halide is obtained.

Markownikoff's rule is empirical, but may be explained theoretically on the basis that the addition occurs by a polar mechanism. As with halogens, the addition of halogen acid is an electrophilic reaction, the proton adding first, followed by the halide ion. That the polar mechanism operates is supported by much experimental work. One piece of evidence that may be cited is that Hennion et al. (1939, 1941) have shown that the addition of hydrogen chloride or bromide to, e.g., cyclohexene, is faster in hydrocarbon solvents such as heptane than in nucleophilic solvents such as ether. These rate differences may be explained by the fact that ether but not heptane can form oxonium ions with protons and thereby greatly reduce the proton concentration:

$$(C_2H_5)_2O + HCl \longrightarrow (C_2H_5)_2OH^+\}Cl^-$$

This also indicates that the addition of the proton is the rate-determining step. Thus:

$$\text{CH}_2 = \overrightarrow{\text{CH}_2} + \overrightarrow{\text{CI}} \stackrel{\text{slow}}{\longleftarrow} \overset{\text{th}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3}{\longrightarrow} + \text{CI} - \xrightarrow{\text{fast}} \rightarrow \text{CH}_2 \text{CI} \cdot \text{CH}_3$$

Now consider the case of propylene. Since the methyl group has a +I effect, the electromeric effect will be away from the methyl group. Thus the proton adds on to the carbon farthest from the methyl group, and the halide ion then adds to the carbonium ion:

$$\text{CH}_3 \longrightarrow \text{CH} = \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{H} = \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_3 + \text{I} = \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHI} \cdot \text{CH}_3$$

The Peroxide Effect (Kharasch, 1933). The presence of oxygen or peroxides that are formed when the olefin stands exposed to the air, or added peroxides such as benzoyl peroxide, causes the addition of hydrogen bromide to take place in the direction opposite to that predicted by Markownikoff's rule. This departure from the rule is known as the "abnormal" reaction, and was shown to be due to the "peroxide effect" (Kharasch et al., 1933). Hydrogen chloride, hydrogen iodide and hydrogen fluoride do not exhibit the abnormal reaction. The abnormal reaction in the presence of peroxides can be prevented by the addition of an "inhibitor" such as diphenylamine, catechol, etc. It has been found that the addition of hydrogen bromide is "abnormally" effected photochemically as well as by peroxide catalysts (Vaughan, et al., 1942).

The mechanism of the peroxide effect is believed to be a free-radical chain reaction, the peroxide generating the free radical R\* (cf. polymerisation,

below):

$$(R \cdot CO_2)_2 \longrightarrow 2RCO_2 \cdot \longrightarrow 2R \cdot + 2CO_2$$

$$R \cdot + HBr \longrightarrow RH + Br \cdot$$

$$R' \cdot CH = CH_2 + Br \cdot \longrightarrow R' \cdot \dot{C}H \cdot CH_2Br \xrightarrow{HBr} R' \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2Br + Br \cdot, \text{ etc.}$$

In the photochemical addition, the bromine atom is produced by a quantum of light:

At least two explanations may be offered for the fact that the bromine atom attacks the carbon atom not joined to the least number of hydrogen atoms:

(i) Free halogen atoms are *electrophilic* reagents owing to their tendency to complete their octets, and hence will attack the olefin at its point of highest electron density. As we have seen above, the electromeric effect in olefins

of the type R·CH=CH<sub>2</sub> takes place away from the CH group, owing to the electron-repelling effect of the R group, i.e., we have:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R}\cdot\dot{\text{C}}\text{H}=\dot{\tilde{\text{C}}}\text{H}_2\longrightarrow\text{R}\cdot\dot{\tilde{\text{C}}}\text{H}-\dot{\tilde{\text{C}}}\text{H}_2\\ \\ \text{R}\cdot\dot{\tilde{\text{C}}}\text{H}-\dot{\tilde{\text{C}}}\text{H}_2+\text{Br}\cdot\longrightarrow\text{R}\cdot\dot{\text{C}}\text{H}-\text{CH}_2\text{Br}\xrightarrow{\text{HBr}}\text{R}\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{Br}+\text{Br}\cdot,\text{ etc.} \end{array}$$

(ii) Each of two carbon atoms joined by the double bond retains its π-electron. Thus a bromine atom can attack either carbon atom equally well, but of the two free radicals that can be produced, viz., R·CH·CH<sub>2</sub>Br and R·CHBr·CH<sub>2</sub>·, it is the former which has the lower free energy, and hence this one is more likely to be formed.

Another problem is why only hydrogen bromide exhibits the peroxide effect. The answer is possibly as follows. In HX, the bond strength order is HCl> HBr>HI. Thus the H—Cl bond is too strong to be broken (homolytically). On the other hand, since the H—I bond is weaker than that of H—Br, one might have expected HI to also exhibit the peroxide effect. The reason that it does not is believed to be due to the fact that although HI is split into hydrogen and iodine atoms, iodine atoms are not reactive enough to add on to a double bond, but combine with each other to form iodine molecules, thereby continuously breaking the chain reaction.

Tri- and tetra-halogenated methanes also add on to a terminal double bond in the presence of peroxides (Kharasch et al., 1945-). Here again the mechanism

is believed to be a free-radical chain reaction, e.g.,

$$\begin{split} (R \cdot CO_2)_2 &\longrightarrow 2R \cdot + 2CO_2 \\ R \cdot + CHCl_3 &\longrightarrow RH + \cdot CCl_3 \\ R \cdot CH &= CH_2 + \cdot CCl_3 &\longrightarrow R \cdot CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CCl_3 \\ &\xrightarrow{CHCl_3} &\rightarrow R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CCl_3 + \cdot CCl_3; \text{ etc.} \end{split}$$

4. Hypohalous acids add on to olefins to form halohydrins. Usually the reaction is carried out by treating the olefin with chlorine- or bromine-water.

The mechanism is believed to be (cf. p. 66):

$$CH_2 = CH_2 + Br_2 \Longrightarrow Br^- + CH_2Br^+CH_2 \xrightarrow{H_2O} \longrightarrow$$

$$CH_2Br^+CH_2OH_2 \longrightarrow M^+ + CH_2Br^+CH_2OH$$

With unsymmetrical olefins, the hydroxyl group adds on to the carbon atom joined to the least number of hydrogen atoms:

$$R \cdot CH = CH_2 \quad Cl \xrightarrow{} Cl \xrightarrow{} Cl \xrightarrow{} + R \cdot CH \cdot CH_2Cl \xrightarrow{H_9O} R \cdot CHOH \cdot CH_2Cl$$

Aqueous solutions of hypohalous acid also add on to olefins in the presence of strong acids to form halohydrins, e.g., the addition of hypochlorous acid to ethylene. The mechanism is probably via the formation of the chlorinium ion:

Cloh.+ H<sup>+</sup> 
$$\rightleftharpoons$$
 Cloh<sub>2</sub>  $\rightleftharpoons$  Cl<sup>+</sup> + H<sub>2</sub>O

Ch<sub>2</sub>=Ch<sub>2</sub> + Cl<sup>+</sup>  $\Longrightarrow$  Ch<sub>2</sub>Cl·Ch<sub>2</sub>  $\Longrightarrow$ 

Ch<sub>2</sub>Cl·Ch<sub>3</sub>OH<sub>2</sub>+  $\rightleftharpoons$ 

Ch<sub>2</sub>Cl·Ch<sub>2</sub>OH

Various sulphenyl halides form adducts with olefins; 2:4-dinitrobenzenesulphenyl chloride in particular has been found extremely useful for identifying olefins (Kharasch et al., 1949-). The mechanism of the addition is possibly as follows, the sulphur being the positive end of the dipole:

$$CH_2 \stackrel{\frown}{=} CH_2 + NO_2 \stackrel{\delta + \quad \delta -}{=} S \stackrel{-}{=} CI \longrightarrow CICH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot S \stackrel{\frown}{=} NO_2$$

Two products are obtained with unsymmetrical olefins, the predominating adduct being the one formed in accordance with Markownikoff's rule.

Compounds containing triple bonds also form adducts with one molecule

of the sulphenyl chloride.

5. Olefins are absorbed by concentrated sulphuric acid to form alkyl hydrogen sulphates. Addition takes place according to Markownikoff's rule, e.g., propylene reacts with sulphuric acid to form isopropyl hydrogen sulphate:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_2 \quad H = O \cdot SO_2 \cdot OH \longrightarrow$$

$$CH_3 \cdot \dot{C}H \cdot CH_3 + \bar{O} \cdot SO_2 \cdot OH \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2 CHO \cdot SO_2 \cdot OH$$

Paraffins are not absorbed by cold concentrated sulphuric acid, and hence may be separated from olefins (see also ethers and alcohols).

6. Hydration of olefins. Olefins may be hydrated to alcohols by absorption in concentrated sulphuric acid followed by hydrolysis of the alkyl sulphate (see above section and p. 134). Olefins, however, may also be catalytically hydrated in dilute acid solution, e.g., Lucas et al. (1934) showed that isobutylene forms t-butanol in dilute acid solution:

$$(CH_3)_2C=CH_2 + H_2O \xrightarrow{\stackrel{\leftarrow}{H}} (CH_3)_3COH$$

The mechanism of olefin hydration has been the subject of much discussion. The hydration reaction, as such, cannot be examined kinetically, but since the reaction is reversible, the principle of microscopic reversibility may be applied (p. 32). Hughes and Ingold (1941) have examined the elimination of water from t-alcohols, and on the basis of their results have proposed the following mechanism for hydration:

Me<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub> H-OH<sub>2</sub>+ slow Me<sub>2</sub>C-Me + H<sub>2</sub>O
$$\stackrel{\text{He}}{\rightleftharpoons} \text{Me}_{2}\text{C-Me} \xrightarrow{\text{-H+}} \text{Me}_{2}\text{C-Me}$$
+OH<sub>2</sub> OH

Thus the first step (which is the rate determining step) is protonation to form a carbonium ion. Taft et al. (1952–1954), however, have obtained evidence that the classical carbonium ion (shown in the equation) is not formed first. According to these authors, a  $\pi$ -complex is formed first, and this is then converted into the classical carbonium ion. In the  $\pi$ -complex the proton is not directly bound to either carbon atom; the  $\pi$ -orbital overlaps the vacant hydrogen orbital.

$$\overset{\mathrm{Me_2C}}{\underset{\mathrm{CH_2}}{\parallel}} + \mathrm{H_3O^+} \Longrightarrow \mathrm{H_2O} + \overset{\mathrm{Me_2C}}{\underset{\mathrm{CH_2}}{\parallel}} + \mathrm{H^+} \longrightarrow \overset{\mathrm{Me_2C^+}}{\underset{\mathrm{CH_3}}{\parallel}}$$

The problem, however, cannot be regarded as settled.

7. Olefins add on nitrosyl chloride, nitrosyl bromide and oxides of nitrogen; e.g., ethylene forms ethylene nitrosochloride with nitrosyl chloride:

$$CH_2 = CH_2 + NOCl \longrightarrow CH_2Cl \cdot CH_2 \cdot NO$$

Since the X atom is the negative end of the dipole in NOX, it will add on to the carbon atom joined to the least number of hydrogen atoms (Mar-

kownikoff's rule), e.g., trimethylethylene adds on nitrosyl bromide to form the following trimethylethylene nitrosobromide:

$$(CH_3)_2C$$
  $CH \cdot CH_3 + NO$   $Br \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2CBr \cdot CH(NO) \cdot CH_3$ 

The reaction with nitrosyl chloride is usually carried out by treating a solution of the olefin and ethyl or pentyl (amyl) nitrite in glacial acetic acid with concentrated hydrochloric acid, the temperature being maintained at about 10°. The nitrosochlorides (and nitrosobromides) are usually bimolecular crystalline solids, e.g.,

The addition of the oxides of nitrogen to olefins is complicated, and much of the work done is of a doubtful nature. The compound formed depends on the structure of the olefin and the nature of the "nitrous fumes"; usually a mixture of addition products is formed. According to Levy, Scaife et al. (1946), when ethylene, propylene, and some other olefins react with dinitrogen tetroxide, N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>, then according to the conditions dinitroparaffin, nitro-alcohols and nitro-alkyl nitrates can be obtained in high yield. The reaction is best carried out in the liquid phase at  $-10^{\circ}$  to  $+25^{\circ}$ . Dinitro-compounds or nitro-nitrites are produced, but the latter are usually partly oxidised to nitro-nitrate. The unchanged nitro-nitrite is unstable, tending to explode, but it may be converted into the stable nitro-alcohol when treated in the cold with water or a lower aliphatic alcohol. The nitrogen tetroxide behaves as (i) two NO<sub>2</sub> groups to give dinitro-compounds, and (ii) one NO<sub>2</sub> group and one ONO group (nitrite radical) to give nitro-nitrites (see also nitro-compounds):

ee also nitro-compounds):

$$C = C < \xrightarrow{(NO_s)(ONO)} C \xrightarrow{ROH} C \xrightarrow{ROH} C$$

$$NO_2 O \cdot NO NO_2 O \cdot NO_2 O$$

According to Schechter et al. (1953), the addition of dinitrogen tetroxide occurs via the formation of the nitronium free-radical:

Dinitrogen trioxide in ether adds on to olefins at -70 to 5° to give mainly dimeric nitro-nitroso compounds:

$$>$$
C=C $<$  + NO·NO<sub>2</sub>  $\longrightarrow$  C C $<$   $\stackrel{\text{2 mols.}}{\longrightarrow}$  C C C $<$  NO NO<sub>2</sub> NO NO<sub>2</sub>

If the olefin is unsymmetrical, then the nitro group adds to the carbon joined to the larger number of hydrogen atoms. This may be explained by assuming that the nitro group is the positive part of the addendum (i.e., the addition takes place according to Markownikoff's rule):

$$\widehat{\operatorname{CH}_3\text{-}\operatorname{CH}=\operatorname{CH}_2}^{\bullet} \operatorname{O_2N} \stackrel{\longleftarrow}{\longrightarrow} \operatorname{CH_3\text{-}}\overset{\dagger}{\operatorname{CH}} \cdot \operatorname{CH_2\text{-}NO_2} + \stackrel{\bar{\operatorname{NO}}}{\longrightarrow} \stackrel{\longrightarrow}{\operatorname{CH_3\text{-}}\operatorname{CH}(\operatorname{NO})\text{-}\operatorname{CH}_2\text{-}\operatorname{NO}_2}$$

Acetyl nitrate (70 per cent. nitric acid and excess of acetic anhydride) reacts with many alkenes to give a mixture of  $\beta$ -nitro-acetate,  $\beta$ -nitro compound and  $\beta$ -nitro-nitrate (Bordwell *et al.*, 1960), *e.g.* (Ac = CH<sub>3</sub>\*CO):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{MeC} = \text{CH}_2 + 2\text{AcO} \cdot \text{NO}_2 \xrightarrow{1-20^\circ} \rightarrow \text{Me}_2\text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NO}_2 \quad (64\%) \\ \text{Me} \qquad \qquad \text{OAc} \\ + \text{CH}_2 = \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NO}_2 + \text{Me}_2\text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NO}_2 \\ \text{Me} \qquad \qquad \text{ONO}_2 \\ (5\%) \qquad \qquad (4\%) \end{array}$$

- 8. Olefins are readily hydroxylated, *i.e.*, add on hydroxyl groups, to form dihydroxy-compounds known as glycols (q.v.). Hydroxylation may be effected:
  - (i) By cold dilute alkaline permanganate solution (cis-hydroxylation); e.g., ethylene is converted into ethylene glycol:

$$\mathrm{CH_2}\!\!=\!\!\!\mathrm{CH_2} + \mathrm{H_2O} + \mathrm{[O]} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{KMnO_4}} \mathrm{CH_2OH} \cdot \mathrm{CH_2OH}$$

The mechanism of hydroxylation with permanganate is believed to proceed via a cyclic intermediate (cf. osmium tetroxide, below).

$$\begin{array}{c} HC \\ HC \\ HC \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{KMnO_4} \begin{array}{c} H-C-O \\ H-C-OH \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{O} \begin{array}{c} hydrolysis \\ H-C-OH \\ \end{array}$$

This mechanism accounts for *cis*-hydroxylation and is supported by the work of Wiberg *et al.* (1957), who used potassium permanganate labelled with <sup>18</sup>O and showed that *both* glycol oxygen atoms come from the oxidising agent.

(ii) By 90 per cent. hydrogen peroxide in glacial acetic acid or better, in formic acid; e.g., oleic acid is converted into 9: 10-dihydroxystearic acid (see also reaction 9):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\boldsymbol{\cdot} (\text{CH}_2)_7\boldsymbol{\cdot} \text{CH} \!\!=\!\! \text{CH}\boldsymbol{\cdot} (\text{CH}_2)_7\boldsymbol{\cdot} \text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{H}_2\text{O}_2 \longrightarrow \\ \text{CH}_3\boldsymbol{\cdot} (\text{CH}_2)_7\boldsymbol{\cdot} \text{CH} (\text{OH})\boldsymbol{\cdot} \text{CH} (\text{OH})\boldsymbol{\cdot} (\text{CH}_2)_7\boldsymbol{\cdot} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$$

The addition of hydrogen peroxide may be catalysed by various oxides, e.g., osmium tetroxide in *tert*.-butanol (cis-addition), selenium dioxide in *tert*.-butanol or acetone (*trans*-addition; see p. 429).

(iii) By means of osmium tetroxide. This compound adds very readily to an ethylenic double bond at room temperature (Criegee, 1936):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CH} \\ \parallel \\ \text{R-CH} \end{array} + \text{OsO}_4 \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{R-CH-O} \\ \text{R-CH-O} \end{array} \text{Os} \begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \text{(v.g.-ex.)} \end{array}$$

These cyclic compounds (osmic esters), on refluxing with aqueous ethanolic sodium hydrogen sulphite, are hydrolysed to 1:2-glycols (cis-glycols).

If the addition of osmium tetroxide is carried out in the presence of pyridine, coloured crystalline compounds are obtained, usually in theoretical yield:

$$\begin{array}{l} {\mathop{\rm R}\nolimits \cdot CH} \\ {\mathop{\parallel}\nolimits} \\ {\mathop{\rm R}\nolimits \cdot CH} \end{array} + {\mathop{\rm OsO}\nolimits}_4 + {\mathop{\rm 2C}\nolimits}_5 H_5 N \\ \longrightarrow \\ {\mathop{\rm R}\nolimits \cdot CH} \\ \longrightarrow \\ {\mathop{\rm R}\nolimits \cdot CH} \\ \longrightarrow \\ {\mathop{\rm OsO}\nolimits}_2, \ {\mathop{\rm 2C}\nolimits}_5 H_5 N \end{array}$$

Berkowitz et al. (1958) have shown that ruthenium tetroxide is more convenient to use than osmium tetroxide; it is less toxic.

cis-Hydroxylation of a double bond may also be effected by treating the olefin with iodine and silver acetate in wet acetic acid, and then hydrolysing the mixed mono- and di-acetates with alkali (Barkley et al., 1954):

$$> C = C < \xrightarrow{I_3} > C - C < + > C - C < \xrightarrow{NaOH} > C - C < \xrightarrow{NaOH}$$

Glycols are readily oxidised to acids or ketones by means of acid permanganate or acid dichromate, the nature of the products being determined by the structure of the glycol, e.g.,

(a) propylene glycol gives acetic and formic acid:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{[O]} CH_3 \cdot CO_2H + H \cdot CO_2H$$

(b) isoButylene glycol gives acetone and formic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array} \text{C(OH)} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \text{OH} \xrightarrow{[O]} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array} \text{CO} + \text{H} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} + \text{H}_2 \text{O} \end{array}$$

Sodium bismuthate, in acid solution, also effects similar oxidations (Rigby, 1950). An advantage of this reagent is that an aldehyde is one of the products (when possible); it is not further oxidised.

Oxidation of a glycol may also be effected by lead tetra-acetate,  $(CH_3 \cdot CO_2)_4 Pb$ , or by periodic acid,  $HIO_4$  or  $H_5 IO_6$ , the products being aldehydes or ketones, according to the structure of the glycol, e.g., (a) ethylene glycol gives two molecules of formaldehyde:

$$CH_2OH \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{[O]} H \cdot CHO + H \cdot CHO$$

(b) isoButylene glycol gives acetone and formaldehyde:

$$CH_3$$
 C(OH)·CH<sub>2</sub>OH  $\xrightarrow{[O]}$   $CH_3$  CO + H·CHO

It can be seen that whatever oxidising agent is used the glycol is split into two fragments, the rupture of the carbon chain occurring between the two carbon atoms joined to the hydroxyl groups. Since these two carbon atoms were linked together by the double bond in the original olefin, identification of the two fragments which may be acids, aldehydes or ketones, will indicate the position of the double bond in the olefin, e.g.,

$$R \cdot CH = CH \cdot R' \xrightarrow{H_1O_2} R \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH(OH) \cdot R' \xrightarrow{HIO_4} R \cdot CHO + R' \cdot CHO$$

9. Prileschaiev's reaction (1912). By means of per-acids, the double bond in olefins is converted into the *epoxide* (olefin oxide). Perbenzoic acid,  $C_6H_5$ ·CO·O<sub>2</sub>H, and monoperphthalic acid,  $CO_2H$ ·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·CO·O<sub>2</sub>H, have been widely used for this reaction, *e.g.*,

$$R \cdot CH = CH \cdot R' + C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot O_2Na \longrightarrow R \cdot CH \cdot CH \cdot R' + C_6H_5 \cdot CO_2Na$$

Emmons et al. (1954, 1955) have found that peroxytrifluoroacetic acid ( $CF_3 \cdot CO \cdot O_2H$ ) is a very good reagent for epoxidation and hydroxylation.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CH=-CH-R} \xrightarrow{\text{CF}_3 \text{-CO}_3 \text{H}} \text{R-CH--CH-R} \xrightarrow{\text{CF}_3 \text{-CO}_3 \text{H}} \\ \text{R-CHOH-CH(O-CO-CF}_3) \cdot \text{R} \xrightarrow{\text{HCl in}} \text{R-CHOH-CHOH-R} \quad \text{(60-95\%)} \end{array}$$

This method is particularly useful for high molecular-weight alkenes with a terminal double bond (these are only slowly hydroxylated by other peracids). Furthermore, peroxytrifluoroacetic acid may be used to hydroxylate negatively substituted olefins, e.g., ethyl acrylate,  $CH_2 = CH \cdot CO_2C_2H_5$ .

Epoxides are readily converted into glycols (p. 248).

Many mechanisms have been proposed for epoxidation, but none is certain.

According to Pausacker et al. (1955), the mechanism is

$$\begin{array}{c} CH \\ CH \\ CH \end{array} + O \begin{array}{c} O - C \cdot C_6H_5 \\ CH \\ CH \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CH \\ CH \\ CH \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} O - C \cdot C_6H_5 \\ CH \\ CH \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CH \\ CH \\ C$$

10. Olefins add on ozone to form **ozonides**. These are usually explosive in the free state, and their structure and mechanism of formation have been the subject of a great deal of work. Staudinger (1922) suggested that the *molozonide* is formed first, and this then rearranges to the ozonide, some polymerising as well.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CH=-CH-R'} + \text{O}_3 \longrightarrow \text{R-CH--CH-R'} \longrightarrow \text{R-CH--CH-R'} + \text{polymer} \\ \hline \\ \text{O} \longrightarrow \text{O} \longrightarrow \text{O} \\ \text{molozonide} \\ \end{array}$$

Criegee (1959) has isolated the molozonide of trans-di-t-butylethylene at  $-80^{\circ}$  (R = R' = (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>C—); reduction of this compound gives the glycol, thereby showing that one of the C—C bonds is still intact. When the temperature was allowed to rise to  $-60^{\circ}$ , the molozonide rearranged to the ozonide.

According to Criegee et al. (1954), the formation of the ozonide takes place as follows:

Bailey (1957), however, has proposed a mechanism in which the first step is the formation of a  $\pi$ -complex. This then produces a zwitterion which breaks down to produce the zwitterion and carbonyl compound in the Criegee mechanism:

In this way Bailey explains the ready fission of carbon-carbon multiple bonds.

The ozonide is prepared by dissolving the olefinic compound in a solvent that is unaffected by ozone, e.g., chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, glacial acetic acid, light petrol, etc., and a stream of ozonised oxygen is passed through. Subsequent treatment may be by one of the following procedures.

(i) The solvent is evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residual ozonide is treated with water and zinc dust in the presence of traces of silver and hydroquinone (Whitmore, 1932). Aldehydes or ketones are obtained according to the structure of the olefin. The function of the zinc dust is to destroy the hydrogen peroxide which is formed in the reaction, and which tends to oxidise the aldehyde (if this is a primary cleavage product) to the corresponding acid, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R}_2\text{C} \longrightarrow \text{CH-R'} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{R}_2\text{CO} + \text{R'-CHO} + \text{H}_2\text{O}_2 \\ \longrightarrow \text{CHO} + \text{H}_2\text{O}_2 \longrightarrow \text{R'-CO}_2\text{H} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \end{array}$$

In practice both aldehyde and acid are obtained.

(ii) A better method than the above is the *reductive* decomposition of the ozonide (Fischer, 1928, 1932). A palladium catalyst carried on a calcium carbonate support is added to the solution of the ozonide and then hydrogen is passed in. Usually a good yield (50–90 per cent.) of aldehyde or ketone is obtained:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CH-O-CH-R'} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2} \text{R-CHO} + \text{R'-CHO} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \\ \text{O----O} \end{array}$$

(iii) Wilms (1950) has found that peracetic acid in acetic acid oxidises

ozonides to carboxylic acids in high yields.

The resulting aldehydes (or acids) and ketones are identified, and thus the position of the double bond in the olefinic compound is found. The complete process of preparing the ozonide and decomposing it (and identifying the products formed) is known as ozonolysis, and this is probably the best method for determining the position of a double bond in any olefinic compound. Recently, however, some doubt has been cast on ozonolysis as a means of determining the positions of double bonds in unsaturated compounds, e.g., according to Barnard et al. (1950), during the ozonolysis of citral (an acyclic terpene), partial rearrangement from the isopropylidene (I) to the isopropenyl structure (II) occurs (this is an example of a three-carbon tautomeric system; see p. 220):

Ozonides may be reduced to alcohols directly by sodium borohydride (inter alia, Sousa et al., 1960).

II. Olefins isomerise when heated at high temperature (500-700°), or at a lower temperature (200-300°) in the presence of various catalysts, e.g., aluminium sulphate. Isomerisation may be due (i) to the change in position of the double bond, which always tends to move towards the centre of the chain, e.g., pent-I-ene isomerises to pent-2-ene:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH = CH_2 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH = CH \cdot CH_3$$

(ii) To the migration of a methyl group, e.g., but-I-ene isomerises to isobutene:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH = CH_2 \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2 C = CH_2$$

(i) and (ii) may, or may not, occur together.

12. Olefins add on to isoparaffins in the presence of a catalyst, many of which are known, but the one usually employed is concentrated sulphuric acid, e.g., ethylene adds on to isobutane to form a mixture of 2-methylpentane and 2:3-dimethylbutane:

$$(\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH}\cdot\mathrm{CH_3} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{H_2SO_4}]{\mathrm{C_2H_4}} (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH}\cdot\mathrm{CH_2}\cdot\mathrm{CH_2}\cdot\mathrm{CH_3} + (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH}\cdot\mathrm{CH}(\mathrm{CH_3})_2$$

This reaction is particularly useful for preparing "iso-octane", 2:2:4-trimethylpentane (see p. 57) by treating isobutane with isobutene in the presence of concentrated sulphuric acid:

$$(CH_3)_3CH + CH_2 = C(CH_3)_2 \longrightarrow (CH_3)_3C \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH(CH_3)_2$$

13. Diborane reacts rapidly at room temperature with olefins, giving the trialkylborons. Terminal olefins give the primary alkylborons, which can be oxidised by hydrogen peroxide to primary alcohols (Brown *et al.*, 1957):

$$R \cdot CH = CH_2 \xrightarrow{B_3H_6} (R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 - )_3B \xrightarrow{H_3O_8} 3R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2OH \quad (g.)$$

The s- and t-alkylborons obtained from non-terminal olefins readily undergo isomerisation to primary alkylborons when heated. The addition of diborane is known as hydroboronation (hydroboration).

If the trialkylboron is treated with a carboxylic acid, the corresponding alkane is obtained by protolysis:

Thus the final product is formed by reduction of an olefin by a non-catalytic method.

In the same way, acetylenes undergo monohydroboronation and protolysis to give almost pure *cis*-olefin:

$$-C = C - \xrightarrow{B_0H_0} (-CH = C -)_3B \xrightarrow{H^+} -CH = CH -$$

14. Olefins condense with acetic anhydride,  $(CH_2 \cdot CO)_2O$ , in the presence of a catalyst, e.g., zinc chloride, to form unsaturated ketones, e.g., ethylene forms methyl vinyl ketone:

$$\mathrm{CH_2}\!\!=\!\!\mathrm{CH_2} + (\mathrm{CH_3}\!\!\cdot\!\!\mathrm{CO})_2\mathrm{O} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{ZnCl_2}} \mathrm{CH_2}\!\!=\!\!\!\mathrm{CH}\!\!\cdot\!\!\mathrm{CO}\!\!\cdot\!\!\mathrm{CH_3} + \mathrm{CH_3}\!\!\cdot\!\!\mathrm{CO}_2\mathrm{H}$$

Acid chlorides, alkyl chlorides and  $\alpha$ -halogenated ethers also combine with olefins in the presence of aluminium chloride, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{\cdot}\text{COCl} + \text{CH}_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{AlCl}_2} & \text{CH}_3\text{\cdot}\text{CO}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{Cl} \\ \text{(CH}_3)_3\text{CCl} + \text{CH}_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{AlCl}_3} & \text{(CH}_3)_3\text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{Cl} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{\cdot}\text{O}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{Cl} + \text{CH}_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{AlCl}_3} & \text{CH}_3\text{\cdot}\text{O}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{Cl} \\ \end{array}$$

All of these condensations are examples of the Friedel-Crafts reaction in

aliphatic compounds (see p. 529).

15. Olefins readily polymerise in the presence of suitable catalysts, e.g., isobutene gives a polymer in the presence of concentrated sulphuric acid:

$$nC_4H_8 \longrightarrow (C_4H_8)_n$$

When two compounds have the same empirical formula but differ in molecular weight, the more complicated compound is called a *polymer* of the simpler one. The term *polymerisation* was used originally to indicate the process that took place when a single substance—the monomer—gave products having the same empirical formula but different molecular weights, each of these being a multiple of that of the monomer. As the investigation of polymerisation reactions progressed, it was found that many compounds of high molecular weight, although they produced a large number of monomer molecules on suitable treatment, did not always have exactly the same empirical formula as the parent monomer. This led to a modification of the definitions of the terms polymer and polymerisation. According to Carothers (1931) polymerisation is best defined as intermolecular combinations that are functionally capable of proceeding indefinitely. This definition implies that there is no limit theoretically to the size of the polymer molecule. In practice, however, the polymer ceases to grow, for various reasons (see below). The terms polymer and polymerisation are now used mainly in connection with high molecular weight compounds, which, in addition to being called polymers, are also known as macromolecules.

There are two types of polymerisation, addition polymerisation and

condensation polymerisation.

Addition Polymerisation. Addition polymerisation occurs among molecules containing double or triple bonds; but in certain cases it can also occur between bifunctional compounds that result from the opening of ring structures (see, e.g., ethylene oxide). There is no liberation of small molecules during addition polymerisation.

A very important group of olefinic compounds that undergo addition polymerisation is of the type CH<sub>2</sub>=CHY, where Y may be H, X, CO<sub>2</sub>R

CN, etc.:

$$nCH_2 = \begin{matrix} H \\ C \\ Y \end{matrix} \longrightarrow \begin{pmatrix} -CH_2 - C \\ Y \end{pmatrix}_n$$

There are three possible ways in which this polymerisation can occur:

(i) Head to tail: —CH2·CHY—CH2·CHY—

(ii) Head to head and tail to tail:

# -CHY·CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>·CHY-CHY·CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>·CHY-

(iii) A random arrangement involving (i) and (ii).

Experimental work seems to indicate that (i) is favoured.

Most polymerisations are carried out in the presence of catalysts, and polymerisation of olefins can be accelerated by ionic-type catalysts or radical-type catalysts. Both types of reaction consist of a number of steps which follow one another consecutively and rapidly, and appear to take place in three principal steps:

(i) The initiation or activation.

(ii) The growth or propagation.(iii) The termination or cessation.

If M represents the monomer, the series of reactions may be represented as follows:

The Ionic Mechanism of Catalysis. The ionic mechanism is believed to take place in the presence of certain metallic and non-metallic halides such as AlCl<sub>3</sub>, SnCl<sub>4</sub> or BF<sub>3</sub>. In certain cases sulphuric acid also catalyses polymerisation. Ionic catalysts are usually electrophilic reagents, and Hunter and Yohe (1933) have suggested that the chain-initiating action of these catalysts depends on their electrophilic nature, and consists in the catalyst acquiring a share in a pair of electrons (the  $\pi$ -electrons) from the double bond of the monomer, e.g.,

(ii) 
$$AlCl_3 + \stackrel{\bigcirc}{C} \stackrel{\bigcirc}{C} \stackrel{\longrightarrow}{C} \stackrel{\longrightarrow}{C} \stackrel{\longrightarrow}{C} \stackrel{\longrightarrow}{C} \stackrel{\longrightarrow}{Al} \stackrel{\longrightarrow}{C} \stackrel{\longrightarrow}{C} \stackrel{\longrightarrow}{C} \stackrel{\longrightarrow}{Al} \stackrel{\longrightarrow}{C} \stackrel{\longrightarrow}$$

In (iii) a proton is lost, thus producing a double bond at the end of the chain so that the molecule becomes deactivated, and hence ceases to grow (see also below).

The Free-Radical Mechanism of Catalysis. The most important cases of addition polymerisation are those which take place by chain reactions and are brought about by catalysts that are known to generate free radicals. The most widely used catalysts are the organic and inorganic peroxides and the salts of the peracids, e.g., benzoyl peroxide, acetyl peroxide, hydrogen peroxide, potassium perborate, etc.

Staudinger (1932) was the first to suggest a free-radical mechanism, and it may be as follows for an organic peroxide:

(i) 
$$(R \cdot CO_2)_2 \longrightarrow 2RCO_2 \cdot RCO_2 \cdot$$

(iii) The cessation reaction may take place:

(a) By the collision between two growing chains which unite to form a deactivated molecule:

$$2\mathrm{R-\!M_n}\!\!\cdot\!\longrightarrow\mathrm{R-\!M_n-\!M_n-\!R}$$

Alternatively, disproportionation (see p. 51) may take place, and thereby deactivate the growing molecules.

$$2R-(-\overset{\downarrow}{C}-\overset{\downarrow}{C}-)_{n}-\overset{\downarrow}{C}-\overset$$

(b) By the collision between the growing chain and a catalyst radical:

$$R-M_{"}+R^{\bullet}\longrightarrow R-M_{"}-R$$

(c) By the collision between the growing chain and impurities which have become activated during the polymerisation, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} R - M_n \cdot + YZ \longrightarrow R - M - Y + Z \cdot \\ Z \cdot + M \longrightarrow ZM \cdot \stackrel{M}{\longrightarrow} ZM_n \cdot \\ ZM_n \cdot + YZ \longrightarrow Z - M_n - Y + Z \cdot \end{array}$$

In "uncatalysed" polymerisation, i.e., in the absence of foreign substances, initiation may begin by dimerisation of the monomer:

Not only can addition polymerisation take place among molecules of one kind, but it can also take place among molecules of two kinds, when the phenomenon is known as *copolymerisation* or *interpolymerisation*.

Condensation Polymerisation or Polycondensation. In condensation polymerisation, bi- or polyfunctional molecules condense with one another, and in doing so repeatedly eliminate a small molecule such as water, ammonia, hydrogen chloride, etc., as the reaction proceeds. This type of polymerisation takes place by a series of steps, and is discussed in various parts of the text (see, for example, the aldol condensation, the esterification of glycols with dibasic acids, etc.).

Polymers may be classified into three groups:

(i) natural, e.g., rubber, proteins, cellulose; (ii) semi-synthetic, e.g. nitro-cellulose, cellulose acetate; and (iii) synthetic, e.g., nylon, bakelite, perspex.

Plastics form a group of high polymers which have a fair range of deformability and mouldability, particularly at high temperatures. In plastics the polymers formed do not all have the same molecular weight, and since the polymers are not amenable to the ordinary methods of separation, the molecular weight of a "polymer" is the average molecular weight. Polymerisation is carried out with the object of building up compounds with predicted properties, and since the properties of a plastic depend on the degree of polymerisation it is necessary to stop polymerisation when the desired average molecular weight is reached. This may be done by various means, e.g., variation of the concentration of the catalyst. The average molecular weight of plastics varies from about 20,000 (e.g., nylon) to several hundred thousand (e.g., polyvinyl chloride, 250,000).

Plastics are generally tough, resistant to the action of acids and alkalis, and not

Plastics are generally tough, resistant to the action of acids and alkalis, and not very much affected over a fair range of temperature. They can be moulded to

any desired shape or form.

Plastics are of two main types, thermoplastic and thermosetting. Thermoplastics are linear polymers which are soluble in many organic solvents, and which soften on heating and become rigid on cooling. The process of heat-softening, moulding and cooling can be repeated as often as desired, and hardly affects the properties of the plastic. Typical thermoplastics are cellulose acetate, nitrocellulose and vinyl polymers such as polythene, perspex, etc.

Thermosetting plastics are three-dimensional polymers which are insoluble in any kind of solvent, and which can be heat-treated only once before they set, *i.e.*, their formation, after which heating results in chemical decomposition, and hence they cannot be "reworked". Typical thermosetting plastics are phenolformaldehyde, urea-formaldehyde, melamine-formaldehyde, silicones, etc.

In thermoplastics the chains are, more or less, free chemically, but are held together by van der Waals' forces. It is possible, however, to link together these linear molecules (cf. the rungs of a ladder) and the cross-linking agent converts the thermoplastic into a thermosetting plastic, e.g., in the vulcanisation of rubber the

sulphur cross-links the long chains. Furthermore, such thermosetting plastics may be reconverted into thermoplastics by opening the cross-links, e.g., the reclaiming of rubber. Most thermosetting plastics may be regarded as cross-

linked polymers.

Those plastics which do not soften very much with rise in temperature are made soft and readily workable by the addition of certain compounds known as *plasticisers*; e.g., polyvinyl chloride is extremely stiff and hard, but addition of tricresyl phosphate makes it soft and rubber-like.

## Some Individual Olefins.

The first member of the olefin series is methylene (carbene), CH<sub>2</sub>, but it exists only as a free *diradical* with a very short life period. It has been prepared by heating diazomethane at very low pressure:

$$CH_2N_2 \longrightarrow \dot{C}H_2 + N_2$$

The two electrons must be *unpaired* for methylene to be a diradical. It has been shown that methylene and its derivatives behave as electrophilic reagents. Methylene reacts with alkyl chlorides to attack both the C—Cl and  $\alpha$ -C—H bonds (*inter alia*, Bradley *et al.*, 1961); *e.g.* (see also p. 483):

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{$$

Ethylene, ethene,  $C_2H_4$ . Ethylene may be prepared by any of the general methods of preparation (except 2), but the most convenient laboratory method is to heat ethanol with excess of concentrated sulphuric acid.

The mechanism of this reaction is the reverse of hydration of olefins (p. 70):

$$\mathrm{C_2H_5OH} + \mathrm{H^+} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2SO_4}} \mathrm{C_2H_5OH_2^+} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{slow}} \mathrm{C_2H_5^+} + \mathrm{H_2O}$$

The carbonium ion, which is unstable, stabilises itself by eliminating a proton to form ethylene; the proton is accepted by a water molecule:

$$\stackrel{+}{\text{CH}_2} \stackrel{-}{\text{CH}_2} - H \stackrel{\text{O}}{\text{O}} \text{H}_2 \stackrel{\text{fast}}{\longleftarrow} \text{CH}_2 = \text{CH}_2 + \text{H}_3\text{O}^+$$

For each molecule of ethanol converted into ethylene, one molecule of water is produced, and hence, after a time the sulphuric acid becomes too dilute to behave as a dehydrating agent.

Ethylene may also be prepared by the electrolysis of sodium succinate (Kolbe):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{COONa} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{COONa} \\ \end{array} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} + 2\text{CO}_2 + 2\text{NaOH} + \text{H}_2 \end{array}$$

Ethylene is still prepared industrially by passing ethanol vapour over heated alumina at about 350°:

$$C_2H_5OH \longrightarrow C_2H_4 + H_2O$$

It is, however, now being obtained in huge quantities as a by-product in the cracking of crude oil and of ethane, propane and butane. Ethylene is also manufactured by the partial hydrogenation of acetylene, which is mixed with hydrogen and passed, at 200°, over a palladium catalyst carried on a silica-gel support:

$$CH = CH + H_2 \longrightarrow CH_2 = CH_2 \quad (95\%)$$

Ethylene is a colourless gas, b.p. -105°, sparingly soluble in water. It burns with a smoky luminous flame. It has been claimed that carefully

purified ethylene does not react with chlorine in the absence of light. When ethylene is heated with chlorine at 350-450°, vinyl chloride is obtained:

$$CH_2 = CH_2 + Cl_2 \longrightarrow CH_2 = CHCl + HCl$$

The unsaturated radical CH<sub>2</sub>=CH—is known as the *vinyl* or *ethenyl* radical. Ethylene may be oxidised by atmospheric oxygen in the presence of silver as catalyst, and at a temperature of 200-400°, to ethylene oxide:

$$\mathrm{CH_2}\!\!=\!\!\mathrm{CH_2} + \tfrac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_2} \!\!\!-\!\!\!\mathrm{CH_2}$$

Ethylene polymerises under high pressure and high temperature to form polyethylene or polythene:

$$nCH_2 = CH_2 \longrightarrow -(-CH_2 - CH_2 -)_n -$$

This polymerisation is catalysed by traces of oxygen (which produces the free radicals). Polythene is very resistant to acids, bases, and most of the

usual organic solvents.

Ethylene is used for ripening fruit. Unripe fruit may be transported easily without damage, and ripens on exposure to ethylene gas for a few days, the product being apparently indistinguishable from the natural ripened fruit. Ethylene is also used as an anæsthetic, in the manufacture of mustard gas and plastics (polythene, polystyrene), and in the preparation

of various solvents such as glycol, dioxan, cellosolves, etc.

Structure of Ethylene. The molecular formula of ethylene is  $C_2H_4$ . Two carbon atoms have the power to combine with six univalent atoms or groups, as in ethane, neopentane, etc. There are only four univalent hydrogen atoms present in ethylene: therefore ethylene is said to be unsaturated, and should be capable of adding on two univalent atoms or groups, and this, as we have seen above, is observed in practice. Thus the structure of ethylene must be such as to be capable of undergoing addition reactions. Assuming carbon to be quadrivalent and hydrogen univalent, three structures are possible for ethylene:

Two isomeric compounds of molecular formula  $C_2H_4Cl_2$  are possible:  $CH_3 \cdot CHCl_2$  and  $CH_2Cl \cdot CH_2Cl$ . Both isomers are known, one (ethylene chloride) being formed by the direct combination between ethylene and chlorine, and the other (ethylidene chloride) by the action of phosphorus pentachloride on acetaldehyde. The structure of ethylidene chloride is  $CH_3 \cdot CHCl_2$  (see p. 116); hence the structure of ethylene chloride is  $CH_2Cl \cdot CH_2Cl$ . If (I) were the structure of ethylene, then the addition of chlorine should give ethylidene chloride, and not ethylene chloride. We may, therefore, reject structure (I). Furthermore, since (I) is unsymmetrical it would have a fairly large dipole moment; actually ethylene has a zero dipole moment.

large dipole moment; actually ethylene has a zero dipole moment.

Structure (II) represents ethylene as possessing "free" bonds by means of which addition compounds are formed. If this is the structure, then we might expect that the "free" carbon valencies could be satisfied one at a

time, i.e., a compound such as CH2Cl·CH2- should be possible, since if two "free" valencies can exist independently of each other, it is logical to suppose that one can exist by itself. No such compounds have yet been obtained, and in practice it is found that unsaturated compounds always combine with an even number of univalent atoms or groups. Hence structure (III) is accepted for ethylene, and the presence of the double bond (consisting of one  $\sigma$ -bond and one  $\pi$ -bond) is supported by other evidence (length of the carbon-carbon bond; geometrical isomerism).
In structures (I) and (II) the unconnected bonds indicate one electron. If

the two electrons in (II) are paired, they form a covalent bond, and so (II) and (III) are the same. On the other hand, if the two electrons in (II) are unpaired, then (II) is a diradical. Since ethylene does not exhibit the usual

properties of a free diradical, we must reject (II).

The presence of a double (or triple bond) in an organic compound may be found readily by means of bromine water, bromine in chloroform solution, or dilute alkaline permanganate. If the compound under investigation is unsaturated, then the above reagents are decolorised. Perbenzoic acid or monoperphthalic acid can be used to detect the presence of a double bond, and also to estimate the number of double bonds (see also iodine value, p. 261).

Propylene, propene, C3H6, may be prepared by heating propanol or isopropanol with sulphuric acid (mechanism as for ethylene from ethanol):

It may also be prepared by heating propyl iodide with ethanolic potassium hydroxide:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{I} + \text{KOH} \xrightarrow{\text{ethanol}} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH} = \text{CH}_2 + \text{KI} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

Propylene is obtained commercially in huge quantities as a by-product in the cracking of petroleum. It is a colourless gas, b.p. -48°, insoluble in water but fairly soluble in ethanol. It is used industrially for the preparation of isopropanol, glycerol, etc.

The unsaturated radical  $CH_2$ — $CH \cdot CH_2$ — is known as the allyl radical. Butylenes, butenes, C4H8. There are three isomeric butylenes, and all

CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH=CH<sub>2</sub>,  $\alpha$ -butylene, but-1-ene (b.p.  $-6 \cdot 1^{\circ}$ ); CH<sub>3</sub>·CH=CH·CH<sub>3</sub>,  $\beta$ -butylene, but-2-ene (b.p.  $1^{\circ}$ ); (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C=CH<sub>2</sub>, isobutylene, isobutylene

 $(b.p. -6.6^{\circ}).$ 

All the butylenes are obtained from cracked petroleum. The 1- and 2butenes are used for the preparation of sec.-butanol (q.v.), and isobutene for tert.-butanol (q.v.). But-2-ene differs from its isomers in that it exhibits geometrical isomerism (see p. 425). isoButene differs from its isomers in that it reacts with chlorine at room temperature to give mainly substitution products, substitution occurring in the allyl position (see p. 67). Thus 3-chloro-2-methylprop-1-ene is the main product, and is accompanied by a small amount of the addition product 1:2-dichloro-2-methylpropane:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array} \text{C=CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{CI}_4} \begin{array}{c} \text{CICH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array} \text{CCI-CH}_2 \text{CI} \\ \end{array}$$

#### UNSATURATED COMPOUNDS WITH TWO OR MORE DOUBLE BONDS

When the compound contains two double bonds, it is known as a diolefin or alkadiene, and has the general formula  $C_nH_{2n-2}$ ; when there are three double bonds present, the compound is known as a triolefin or alkatriene,

and has the general formula  $C_n\hat{H}_{2n-4}$ ; etc.

Nomenclature. The longest carbon chain containing the maximum number of double bonds is chosen as the parent hydrocarbon, and the chain is so numbered as to give the lowest possible numbers to the double bonds, e.g.,

$$\overset{\overset{\circ}{\text{CH}_3}}{\overset{4}{\sim}} \overset{\overset{3}{\text{C}}}{\overset{\circ}{\text{C}}} \overset{\circ}{\text{C}} \overset{\circ}{\text{C}} \overset{\circ}{\text{C}} \overset{\circ}{\text{C}} \overset{\circ}{\text{C}} \overset{\circ}{\text{H}_3} ) \overset{\circ}{\overset{\circ}{\text{C}}} \overset{\circ}{\text{C}} \overset{\circ}{\text{H}_2}$$
 2:3:4-trimethylpenta-1:3-diene

There are three different types of compounds with two double bonds.

I. Hydrocarbons with isolated double bonds contain the arrangement >C=CH·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>·CH=C<, where n>0. One of the simplest compounds of this type is diallyl or hexa-1:5-diene, which may be prepared by the action of sodium on allyl iodide (Wurtz reaction):

$${}_{2\text{CH}_{2}}\!\!\!=\!\!\text{CH}\cdot\text{CH}_{2}\text{I} + {}_{2}\text{Na} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_{2}\!\!\!=\!\!\text{CH}\cdot\text{CH}_{2}\cdot\text{CH}_{2}\cdot\text{CH} = \text{CH}_{2} + {}_{2}\text{NaI}$$

Diallyl is a liquid, b.p. 59.6°. It resembles the olefins chemically, but since there are two double bonds present, it may add on two or four univalent atoms or groups according to the relative concentration of the addendum; e.g., with excess bromine, diallyl forms 1:2:5:6-tetrabromohexane.

2. Hydrocarbons with cumulated double bonds contain the arrangement C=C=C. The simplest compound of this type is allene or propadiene, which may be prepared by heating 1:2:3-tribromopropane with solid potassium hydroxide, and then treating the resulting 2: 3-dibromopropylene with zinc dust in methanol solution:

$$\text{CH$_2$Br$^{\bullet}$CHBr$^{\bullet}$CH$_2$Br} \xrightarrow{\text{KOH}} \text{CH$_2$Br$^{\bullet}$CBr} = \text{CH$_2$} \xrightarrow{\text{Zn/CH}_3$OH} \text{CH$_2$} = \text{C} = \text{CH}_2$$

Allene is a gas, b.p.  $-32^{\circ}$ . With bromine it forms 1:2:2:3-tetrabromopropane; with sulphuric acid it forms acetone; and when treated with sodium in ether, the sodium derivative of propyne (CH<sub>3</sub>·C≡CNa) is produced. Allene compounds are very important from the view of stereochemistry (see p. 432).

In recent years, allenes have been prepared from acetylenes by rearrangement, e.g.,

$$\text{CH} = \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \xrightarrow[40^o]{\text{aq. K}_4 \text{CO}_4} \rightarrow \text{CH}_2 = \text{C} = \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H}$$

A novel way of preparing allenes is by treating the cyclopropane derivative formed from an olefin and bromoform and alkali with magnesium in ether (Doering et al., 1958). Dibromomethylene is an intermediate (p. 117).

$$\begin{array}{c} R_2C \!\!=\!\! CR_2 + \!\!\!:\!\! CBr_2 \longrightarrow R_2C \!\!\!=\!\!\! CR_2 \xrightarrow{Mg} R_2C \!\!\!=\!\! C \!\!\!=\!\! CR_2 \\ Br_2 \end{array}$$

An extended allene type of linkage gives the *cumulene* system, the simplest member of which is butatriene, and this has been prepared by debrominating 1:4-dibromobut-2-yne with zinc (Schubert *et al.*, 1952, 1954):

$$CH_2Br \cdot C = C \cdot CH_2Br \xrightarrow{Zn} CH_2 = C = C + CH_2$$

3. Hydrocarbons with conjugated double bonds contain single and double bonds arranged alternately, i.e., they contain the arrangement —C=CH—CH=CH—CH=CH—. The simplest member of this group of compounds is buta-1: 3-diene, which may be prepared by passing cyclohexene over a heated nichrome wire (an alloy of nickel, chromium and iron):

$$\begin{array}{c|ccccc} CH_2 & CH_2 & CH_2 \\ CH_2 & CH & CH & CH_2 \\ CH_2 & CH & CH & CH_2 \\ CH_2 & CH_2 & CH_2 & CH_2 \end{array} (65-75\%)$$

Butadiene is prepared technically:

(i) By dehydrogenating *n*-butane (from natural gas or from petroleum gas) or but-i-ene (from cracked petroleum) by passing the gas over a heated catalyst, *e.g.*, chromic oxide on an alumina support.

(ii) By passing a mixture of butane-1: 3-diol and steam, in proportions 4: 1, over trisodium phosphate containing 20 per cent. free phosphoric acid, heated at 270°:

$$CH_3\cdot CH(OH)\cdot CH_2\cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{-2H_3O} CH_2 = CH - CH = CH_2 \quad (85-90\%)$$

(iii) By passing ethanol vapour over a catalyst of alumina-zinc oxide heated at 420-470°:

$$2C_2H_5OH \longrightarrow CH_2=CH-CH=CH_2 + 2H_2O + H_2$$
 (20%)

The yield is low owing to the production of many by-products such as acetic acid, ethyl acetate, ether, etc. The yield of butadiene has been improved by passing a mixture of ethanol and acetaldehyde over a heated catalyst of silica-gel plus 2 per cent. tantalum oxide:

$$C_2H_5OH + CH_3\cdot CHO \longrightarrow CH_2=CH-CH=CH_2 + 2H_2O$$

(iv) By passing a mixture of acetylene and formaldehyde over copper acetylide as catalyst, whereupon butynediol CH₂OH·C≡C·CH₂OH is formed. This is hydrogenated catalytically to butane-1: 4-diol, which, on catalytic dehydration, gives butadiene:

$$\begin{split} \text{C}_2\text{H}_2 + 2\text{H} \cdot \text{CHO} & \xrightarrow{\text{Cu}_2\text{C}_2} \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \cdot \text{C} \Longrightarrow \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2} \\ & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \text{OH} \xrightarrow{-2\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{CH}_2 \Longrightarrow \text{CH} \Longrightarrow \text{CH} \Longrightarrow \text{CH}_2 \text{CH} \Longrightarrow \text{CH}_2 \text{CH}$$

Butadiene is a gas, b.p.  $-2.6^{\circ}$ . Under the influence of sodium as catalyst, butadiene readily polymerises to a product which has been used as a rubber substitute known as *buna* (*butadiene* + Na). The mechanism of this polymerisation is uncertain, but a possibility is discussed in connection with isoprene (see below).

A very important diolefin is isoprene or 2-methylbut-1: 3-diene, CH<sub>3</sub>

CH2=C-CH=CH2, which may be obtained, in poor yield, by the slow

distillation of rubber. It may be prepared by heating isopentanol with hydrogen chloride, and chlorinating the resulting isoamyl chloride, three dichlorides thereby being formed:

$$(CH_3)_2CH\cdot CH_2\cdot CH_2OH + HCI \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2CH\cdot CH_2\cdot CH_2CI + H_2O$$

$$(CH_3)_2CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2Cl \xrightarrow{Cl_2} \rightarrow \\ (CH_3)_2CCl \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2Cl + (CH_3)_2CH \cdot CHCl \cdot CH_2Cl + \\ (II) \qquad (III) \qquad (III) \qquad CH_2Cl \qquad (III)$$

(I) is the main product (cf. p. 54), and this, when passed over soda-lime heated at 500°, gives isoprene:

$$(CH_3)_2CCl^*CH_2\cdot CH_2Cl \xrightarrow{-2HCl} CH_2 = C - CH = CH_2$$

Isoprene is prepared technically:

(i) By passing *iso*pentane or *iso*pentene over heated chromic oxide on an alumina support (cf. butadiene).

(ii) By treating acetone as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \\$$

Isoprene is a liquid, b.p. 35°, and when heated with sodium at 60° it polymerises to a substance resembling natural rubber. The mechanism of this polymerisation is not settled; one that has been suggested is as follows:

Compounds containing conjugated double bonds have physical and chemical properties that are not usually shown by compounds containing isolated or cumulated double bonds, e.g., they show optical exaltation, undergo abnormal addition reactions, readily polymerise, and undergo the Diels-Alder reaction (p. 472). Another typical reaction of conjugated dienes is their combination with sulphur dioxide to form a cyclic sulphone, e.g.,

Thiele's Theory of Partial Valencies. Conjugated compounds undergo abnormal addition reactions, e.g., when butadiene is treated with bromine

(one molecule), two dibromo-derivatives are obtained, the "expected" 3:4-dibromobut-I-ene (I:2-addition), and the "unexpected" I:4-dibromobut-2-ene (I:4-addition):

$$\texttt{CH}_2 \!\!=\!\! \texttt{CH-CH=\!CH}_2 \!\!\stackrel{\texttt{Br}_2}{\longrightarrow} \texttt{CH}_2 \\ \texttt{Br} \cdot \texttt{CHBr} \cdot \texttt{CH=\!CH}_2 \!\!+\! \texttt{CH}_2 \\ \texttt{Br} \cdot \texttt{CH=\!CH}_2 \\ \texttt{CH}_2 \\ \texttt{Dr} \cdot \texttt{Dr} \cdot \texttt{Dr}_2 \\ \texttt{Dr} \cdot \texttt{Dr} \cdot \texttt{Dr}_2 \\ \texttt{Dr}$$

It has been found that I: 2- and I: 4-additions usually take place together, and the relative amount of each generally depends on the nature of the addendum and the conditions of the experiment, e.g., type of solvent,

temperature.

Thiele (1899) suggested his theory of partial valencies to account for I:4-addition. According to Thiele, a single bond is sufficient to hold two carbon atoms together, and the two valencies of the double bond are not used completely to link the two carbon atoms, but only one valency and part of the other, leaving a surplus on each carbon atom. Thiele called this surplus valency the residual or partial valency, and if we represent it by a broken line, the formula of butadiene (and similarly for any other conjugated compound) may be written CH<sub>2</sub>—CH—CH—CH<sub>2</sub>. Thiele

thought that the two middle partial valencies mutually satisfied each other rather than remain free. Thus the actual state of butadiene is

The ends of this molecule are therefore the most active parts, and so addition of, e.g., bromine will occur at these ends, first by attachment through the partial valencies, and then by each bromine atom acquiring a full valency, causing the two middle carbon atoms to utilise completely the two valencies left:

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathsf{CH_2}\!\!=\!\!\mathsf{CH}\!\!=\!\!\mathsf{CH}\!\!=\!\!\mathsf{CH}_2 + \mathsf{Br}_2 \xrightarrow{\mathsf{CH}_2}\!\!=\!\!\mathsf{CH}\!\!=\!\!\mathsf{CH}\!\!=\!\!\mathsf{CH}\!\!=\!\!\mathsf{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\mathsf{CH}_2}\!\!=\!\!\mathsf{CH}\!\!=\!\!\mathsf$$

Thiele's theory explains I: 4-addition so well that it does not account at all for I: 2-addition!

The mechanism of addition to conjugated systems is now believed to be as follows. The first problem to solve is which carbon atom in butadiene is attacked initially. Assuming that the addition mechanism is the same as for monoolefins (i.e., a two-stage electrophilic reaction), then attack on butadiene will be at a terminal carbon atom since this becomes electron rich through the +E effect of the vinyl group:

The carbonium ion produced is a resonance hybrid:

This resonance hybrid may be represented as

Thus there are two positive centres which may be attacked by the chloride ion in the second step.

$$\begin{array}{c} ^{\delta+} \text{CH}_2 \text{---} \text{CH} \text{---} \text{CH}_2 \text{CI} + \text{CI}^- \longrightarrow \\ \text{CH}_2 \text{----} \text{CH} \text{----} \text{CHCI-CH}_2 \text{CI} + \text{CH}_2 \text{CI} \text{----} \text{CH}_2 \text{CI} \\ \end{array}$$

Since both the 1:2- and 1:4-dichlorides are formed in practice, the interesting question is whether one can predict which isomer will predominate. The answer to this depends on whether the isomers are interconvertible or not under the conditions of the experiment. If the conditions permit interconversion, then the thermodynamically controlled product (i.e., the more stable one) will predominate. If the conditions do not permit interconversion, then the kinetically controlled product (i.e., the one formed faster) will predominate (p. 32). Consider the following:

$$-c=c-c-x$$

In this type of structure, halogen hyperconjugation is possible (p. 270), and this makes the molecule more stable than one in which such hyperconjugation is not possible. Inspection of the two butadiene dichlorides shows that the 1:2-product has one chlorine-hyperconjugated system whereas the 1:4-product has two. Thus, the latter is more stable and so should be the thermodynamically controlled product if the two forms are interconvertible, and consequently will be the predominant product under these conditions. These predictions have been observed experimentally, e.g., Muskat et al. (1930) treated butadiene with chlorine under conditions where the two isomers were not interconvertible, and obtained about 60 per cent. of the 1:2- and 40 per cent. of the 1:4-product. This implies that the 1:2-compound is the kinetically controlled product. Pudovic (1949) heated each isomer at 200° and obtained the same equilibrium mixture containing about 30 per cent. 1:2- and 70 per cent. 1:4-. Thus, the 1:4-isomer is the thermodynamically controlled product, and predominates under conditions of interconvertibility.

The addition of halogen acid to butadiene also produces two products, the I:2- and the I:4-. Furthermore, since the proton adds on first, this adds always to the *terminal* carbon, the halogen then adding at position 2 or 4.

In the foregoing account of the reactions of butadiene, we have assumed that the molecule has the structure  $CH_2$ —CH—CH— $CH_2$ . There are, however, alternative electronic structures which are *charged*. Hence butadiene is a resonance hybrid of a number of resonating structures:

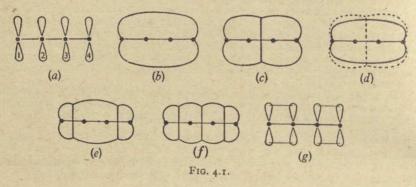
There is still, however, another contributing structure of butadiene, viz., (I). The two electrons have antiparallel spins, since the number of unpaired electrons in each resonating structure must be the same (p. 17). Thus these paired electrons would, in the ordinary way, form a covalent bond. The distance between them, however, is too great for them to form an effective bond. Consequently this bond is referred to as a formal bond, and may be

$$\dot{\text{CH}}_2\text{--CH}=\text{CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \dot{\text{CH}}_2\text{--CH}=\text{CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2\text{--CH}=\text{CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2\text{--CH}=\text{CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2\text{--CH}=\text{CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2\text{--CH}=\text{CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2\text{---CH}=\text{CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2\text{---CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2\text{---CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2\text{---CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2\text{---CH}=\text{CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2\text{---CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2\text{---CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2\text{---CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2\text{---CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2\text{---CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2\text{---CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2\text{---CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2\text{---CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2\text{---CH}-\dot{\text{CH}}_2 \qquad \text{CH}_2 \qquad \text$$

represented by a dotted line (II). Structure (II) carries no charges and so (II) and (III) (also uncharged) are probably the main contributing resonance structures (p. 20). If only these two contribute significantly to the resonance hybrid, the resonance energy can be expected to be small. Actually, calculation has shown it to be about 3.5 k.cal./mole. Thus in butadiene there are no "pure" single or double bonds. The lengths of the bonds will therefore be somewhere between the extremes (of single and double bonds), the actual values depending on the relative contributions of the resonating structures to the resonance hybrid. Furthermore, if we assume that the charged structures make a very small contribution, it might at first sight

appear that the butadiene molecule possesses a dipole moment. This, however, is not so in practice, the reason being that the terminal carbon atoms can be either positive or negative, since the electronic displacements can occur equally well in either direction. For this reason butadiene is said to exhibit balanced conjugation, and this may be represented as:

So far we have considered the structure of conjugated compounds from V.B. theory. When we consider their structure from M.O. theory, we get a different picture. Each carbon atom in butadiene has the trigonal arrangement, and Fig. I(a) shows the  $p_a$  electrons associated with each carbon atom. If the molecule is planar, the p<sub>2</sub> electron of C<sub>2</sub> overlaps that of C<sub>1</sub> as much as it does that of C3, etc. Therefore all four p2 orbitals can be treated as forming an M.O. covering all four carbon atoms (b). In this condition, a pair of electrons are no longer mainly confined to the region between two nuclei, i.e., the bond formed is no



longer a localised bond. The bonds produced are therefore called delocalised bonds. In all, there are four delocalised M.O.s possible from the combination of the four  $\pi$ -electrons, two bonding and two anti-bonding M.O.s (p. 30). The two bonding M.O.s are shown in Fig. 1(b) and (c), the former having one nodal plane, and the latter, two. The two anti-bonding M.O.s are shown in (e), with three nodal planes, and in (f), with four nodal planes. As pointed out on p. 31, as the number of nodes in an orbital increases, so does the energy associated with that orbital. Furthermore, according to the Pauli exclusion principle, no more than two electrons can occupy the same M.O. Therefore in the ground state of butadiene, two of the  $\pi$ -electrons will occupy the M.O. in (b), and the other two the M.O. with the next higher energy level, i.e., (c). Fig. (d) represents these two in one diagram, i.e., (d) represents the ground state of butadiene. In any excited state of butadiene, electrons will occupy orbitals (e) or (f) (see p. 777).

In general, in a conjugated system containing  $2n \pi$ -electrons, there are n bonding and n anti-bonding orbitals, and in the ground state these electrons will

occupy, in pairs, the n M.O.s of lowest energy.

In delocalised bonds, the electrons have greater freedom of movement than in localised bonds. Thus the total energy of the system is lowered, i.e., delocalisation of bonds makes the molecule more stable. Hence the butadiene molecule in state (d) is more stable than in state (g), in which the  $\pi$ -electrons are paired as "isolated" pairs, each pair covering two carbon atoms. This energy of stabilisation could be called the delocalisation energy (Coulson), but it is more usual to call it the resonance energy. It should here be noted that delocalisation of bonds is in M.O. theory what resonance is in V.B. theory,

It can be seen from the foregoing discussion that the M.O. treatment of conjugated systems does away with the idea of "bonds" between atoms (this applies to the π-bonds, and not to the σ-bonds). Also the term conjugation is

used in M.O. theory to indicate the existence in any part of a molecule of molecular orbitals which embrace three or more nuclei. It is important to note that a conjugated system (defined as above) always contains double bonds, but that the

reverse is not necessarily the case. e.g., ethylene.

Since the electron cloud covers the whole of the butadiene molecule, an electrical influence in one part of the system is easily propagated to another (cf. p. 517). Calculation (Coulson and Longuet-Higgins, 1947) has shown that when, for example, bromine attacks butadiene, the bromine molecule approaches the end of butadiene molecule most easily, and produces an alternate polarity:

The negative bromide ion can then attack C<sub>2</sub> or C<sub>4</sub>.

The relationship between the observed bond-length and the value expected on the assumption that it is a "pure" single or double bond has been put on a quantitative basis. In the V.B. method the double-bond character of a bond may be calculated from a knowledge

of the observed bond length, the values of the single bond in ethane, and the double bond in ethylene being taken as standard lengths for "pure" single and double bonds, respectively. Calculations by Pauling et al. (1933) have shown that the "single" bond in butadiene has about 20 per cent. double-bond character (see also below).

In the M.O. method, the character of a bond is defined by its fractional bond order, where the bond orders of 1, 2 and 3 are given to the bonds in ethane, ethylene and acetylene, respectively. Since also the method of calculation is different from that of the V.B. method, the numerical values obtained by the two methods are different. Even so, these values always correspond.

Coulson (1941, 1947) has shown that the butadiene molecule may be

represented as shown in (IV).

Calculation gives a bond order of 1.894 to the two outer "double" bonds, and a bond order of 1.447 to the central "single" bond. Thus the total bond number of either of the end carbon atoms is  $2 \times 1.0 + 1.894 = 3.894$ , and the total bond number of either middle carbon is 1.0 + 1.447 + 1.894 = 4.341. Furthermore, since calculation has shown that the maximum bond number for a carbon atom, since the same of th atom is 4.732, it follows that each carbon atom in butadiene has the "free valency" shown in (IV) (Coulson has suggested that free valency be represented by an arrow). On the other hand, if a structure containing fractional double bonds is written with single bonds labelled with the bond order, and charges are placed on the atoms, then the resulting diagram is known as a molecular diagram, e.g., the molecular diagram for benzene is (V) (see also p. 528). Among other things, a molecular diagram enables one to estimate the most likely points of attack (see, e.g., pyrrole, p. 750).

## ACETYLENES OR ALKYNES

The acetylenes are unsaturated hydrocarbons that contain one triple bond. The simplest member of the series is acetylene CH=CH, and hence this homologous series is often referred to as the "acetylene series". The acetylenes have the general formula CnH2n-2 and the triple bond is also known as the "acetylenic bond".

Nomenclature. One method is to name higher homologues as derivatives of acetylene, the first member of the series, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{C} \Longrightarrow \text{CH} & \text{methylacetylene} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{C} \Longrightarrow \text{C}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_3 & \text{ethylmethylacetylene} \end{array}$$

In the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature the class suffix is -yne, and the rules for numbering are as for the olefins (p. 63), e.g.,

CH≡CH ethyne; CH<sub>3</sub>·C≡C·CH<sub>3</sub> but-2-yne 
$$(CH_3)_2$$
CH·C≡C·CH<sub>3</sub> 4-methylpent-2-yne

Acetylene or ethyne, C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>2</sub>, is the most important member of this series, and it may be prepared by any of the following methods:

1. By the action of water on calcium carbide:

$$CaC_2 + 2H_2O \longrightarrow C_2H_2 + Ca(OH)_2$$

This method of preparation is used industrially, since calcium carbide is readily manufactured by heating calcium oxide with coke in an electric furnace:

$$CaO + 3C \longrightarrow CaC_2 + CO$$

Acetylene prepared from calcium carbide is not pure, but contains small amounts of phosphine, hydrogen sulphide, arsine, ammonia, etc.; the impurities present depend on the purity of the calcium carbide used. Scrubbing with water is usually sufficient to reduce the amount of all the impurities, except phosphine, below the limit necessary for the safe application of acetylene for technical purposes. Phosphine is removed by means of oxidising agents, e.g., acid dichromate or bleaching-powder, whereby the phosphine is retained as phosphoric acid.

A more recent industrial preparation of acetylene is by the electric arc cracking of methane-ethane mixtures which are derived from coal hydro-

genation (p. 60).

2. By the action of ethanolic potassium hydroxide on ethylene bromide. The reaction proceeds in two steps, and under suitable conditions the intermediate product vinyl bromide may be isolated:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH$_2$Br$\cdot$CH$_2$Br} + \text{KOH} \xrightarrow{\text{ethanol}} \text{CH$_2$=$CHBr} + \text{KBr} + \text{H$_2$O} \\ \text{CH$_2$=$CHBr} + \text{KOH} \xrightarrow{\text{ethanol}} \text{CH$=$CH} + \text{KBr} + \text{H$_2$O} \end{array}$$

Ethylidene chloride may be used instead of ethylene bromide (or chloride), and this reaction also proceeds in two steps:

$$CH_3$$
· $CHCl_2$   $\xrightarrow{KOH}$   $CH_2$   $\xrightarrow{CHCl}$   $\xrightarrow{KOH}$   $CH$   $\xrightarrow{CH}$ 

Sodamide can be used instead of ethanolic potassium hydroxide, and the yields are usually better since there is less tendency to form by-products, e.g.,

$$-CH_2 \cdot CBr_2 - + 2NaNH_2 \longrightarrow -C = C - + 2NaBr + 2NH_3$$

3. By the electrolysis of a concentrated solution of sodium (or potassium) salt of maleic or fumaric acid (q.v.):

$$CO_2Na\cdot CH = CH \cdot CO_2Na + 2H_2O \longrightarrow CH = CH + 2CO_2 + 2NaOH + H_2$$

4. By heating a trihalogen derivative of methane with silver powder; e.g., iodoform gives acetylene when heated with silver powder:

$$_2$$
CHI $_3 + 6$ Ag $\longrightarrow C_2$ H $_2 + 6$ AgI

Acetylene may be synthesised from its elements by striking an electric arc between carbon rods in an atmosphere of hydrogen. It is also formed by the incomplete combustion of hydrocarbons, e.g., when a bunsen burner "strikes back".

Acetylene is a colourless gas, b.p.  $-84^{\circ}$ , and has an ethereal smell when pure. It is sparingly soluble in water but readily soluble in acetone. When compressed or liquefied acetylene is explosive, but its solution under pressure (10 atm.) in acetone adsorbed on some suitable porous material can be handled with safety. Acetylene burns with a luminous smoky flame (due to the high carbon content), and hence is used for lighting purposes. It is also used in the oxy-acetylene blow-pipe, a temperature above 3000° being reached. Acetylene is used for the preparation of a large number of compounds, e.g., acetaldehyde, ethanol, acetic acid, etc. (see text).

Owing to the presence of a triple bond, acetylene is more unsaturated than ethylene, and forms addition products with two or four univalent atoms or groups, never one or three (cf. ethylene). A triple bond consists of one  $\sigma$ -bond and two  $\pi$ -bonds. When two univalent atoms add on to a triple bond the digonal arrangement changes into the trigonal, and the further addition of two univalent atoms changes the trigonal into the tetrahedral arrangement. Under suitable conditions it is possible to isolate

the intermediate olefin.

 Acetylene adds on hydrogen in the presence of a catalyst, the reaction proceeding in two stages:

$$C_2H_2 \xrightarrow[\text{cat.}]{H_2} C_2H_4 \xrightarrow[\text{cat.}]{H_3} C_2H_6$$

The intermediate product, ethylene, can be obtained in very good yield if the hydrogenation is carried out with a *measured* amount of hydrogen in the presence of Adams' platinum-platinum oxide catalyst (p. 65), or palladium carried on a barium sulphate support.

The partial catalytic reduction of a triple bond in a wide variety of acetylenic compounds has been carried out, but great difficulty has been encountered in partially reducing a triple bond conjugated with a double

bond, i.e., the following reduction has proved difficult:

$$-c=c-c=c< \rightarrow -cH=cH-c=c<$$

Lindlar (1952), however, has now developed a catalyst for the partial hydrogenation of a triple bond in a wide variety of compounds; it consists of a Pd—CaCO<sub>3</sub> catalyst partially inactivated by treatment with lead acetate, or better, by the addition of quinoline.

Dialkylacetylenes may be catalytically reduced to a mixture of cis- and transolefins, the former predominating. On the other hand, reduction with sodium in liquid ammonia produces the trans-olefin. Acetylenes are also reduced to trans-olefins by lithium in aliphatic amines of low molecular weight (Benkeser et al., 1955) cis—Reduction may be carried out with diborane (p. 76).

$$\begin{array}{c}
R \\
C \\
C \\
R
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
R \\
H$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
H \\
R \\
H
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
H \\
H
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
H \\
H
\end{array}$$

Lithium aluminium hydride may also be used to partially reduce a triple bond provided the molecule contains the grouping —C=C—C(OH)<.

2. Acetylene adds on gaseous chlorine or bromine in the dark to form acetylene di- and tetrahalides; the addition is catalysed by light and metallic halides (cf. olefins):

$$C_2H_2 \xrightarrow{Cl_2} C_2H_2Cl_2 \xrightarrow{Cl_3} C_2H_2Cl_4$$

Direct combination of acetylene with chlorine may be accompanied by explosions, but this is prevented by the presence of a catalyst.

Acetylene reacts with dilute bromine water to produce acetylene di-

bromide:

$$CH \equiv CH + Br_2 \xrightarrow{aq.} CHBr = CHBr$$

With liquid bromine and in the absence of a solvent, acetylene forms acetylene tetrabromide:

$$C_2H_2 + 2Br_2 \longrightarrow C_2H_2Br_4$$

Acetylene adds on iodine with difficulty, but if the reaction is carried out in ethanolic solution, acetylene di-iodide is obtained:

$$CH \equiv CH + I_2 \xrightarrow{\text{ethanol}} CHI = CHI$$

Acetylene also undergoes substitution with halogen provided the right conditions are used, e.g., dichloroacetylene is formed when acetylene is passed into sodium hypochlorite solution at o° in the absence of air and light:

$$C_2H_2 + 2NaOCl \longrightarrow C_2Cl_2 + 2NaOH$$

Similarly, if acetylene is passed into a solution of iodine in liquid ammonia, di-iodoacetylene is formed (Vaughan and Nieuland, 1932):

$$C_2H_2 + 2I_2 + 2NH_3 \longrightarrow C_2I_2 + 2NH_4I$$

These substitution reactions of acetylene are characteristic of hydrogen only in the ≡CH group. Thus, for example, but-I-yne, but not but-2-yne, can undergo these substitutions. Furthermore, it should be noted that the halogen of the ≡CX group is very unreactive (cf. vinyl halides, p. 266).

3. Acetylene can add on the halogen acids, their order of reactivity being HI>HBr>HCl>HF; HF adds on only under pressure (cf. ethylene). The addition of the halogen acids can take place in the dark, but is catalysed by light or metallic halides. The addition is in accordance with Markownikoff's rule, e.g., acetylene combines with hydrogen bromide to form first vinyl bromide, and then ethylidene bromide:

$$\text{CH} = \text{CH} + \text{HBr} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_2 = \text{CHBr} \xrightarrow{\text{HBr}} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHBr}_2$$

Peroxides have the same effect on the addition of hydrogen bromide to acetylene as they have on olefins (p. 68).

The mechanism of the addition of halogens and halogen acids is probably the same as that for the olefins, e.g., the addition of hydrogen bromide may be as follows:

$$\widehat{\operatorname{CH=CH}^{\prime}} \operatorname{H-Br} \longrightarrow \widehat{\operatorname{Br}^{\prime}} \stackrel{\leftarrow}{\operatorname{CH=CH}_2} \longrightarrow \operatorname{CHBr=CH_2}$$

Vinyl bromide may undergo the electromeric effect in two ways:

(i) 
$$\overrightarrow{CH_2}$$
= $\overrightarrow{CH}$ - $\overrightarrow{Br}$   $\longrightarrow \overrightarrow{CH_2}$ - $\overrightarrow{CH}$ - $\overrightarrow{Br}$ 
(ii)  $\overrightarrow{CH_0}$ = $\overrightarrow{CH}$ - $\overrightarrow{Br}$   $\longrightarrow \overrightarrow{CH_0}$ - $\overrightarrow{CH}$ - $\overrightarrow{Br}$ 

At the same time vinyl bromide is also capable of existing as a resonance hybrid (cf., e.g., chlorobenzene, p. 546):

$$CH_2 = CH - Br : \longleftrightarrow CH_2 - CH = Br :$$

Considering the high electron-affinity of bromine, (ii) would seem to be more likely than (i), and the bromine atom would therefore cause the electron drift to take place towards itself. Considering the resonance effect, the tendency would be to drive the electrons in the opposite direction to that of (ii), and since the resonance effect is much stronger than the inductive effect (p. 519) direction (i) will be the result; hence the addition of a molecule of hydrogen bromide to vinyl bromide is:

4. When passed into dilute sulphuric acid at 60° in the presence of mercuric sulphate as catalyst, acetylene adds on one molecule of water to form acetaldehyde. The mechanism of this hydration probably takes place via the formation of vinyl alcohol as an intermediate (cf. p. 70). Vinyl alcohol has not yet been isolated; all attempts to prepare it result in the formation of acetaldehyde (p. 265). Since we are suggesting it is an intermediate product, but that it has never been isolated in this reaction, we indicate this by enclosing vinyl alcohol in square brackets:\*

$$\mathtt{CH} = \mathtt{CH} + \mathtt{H}_2\mathtt{O} \xrightarrow{\mathtt{H}_4\mathtt{SO}_4} \mathtt{[CH}_2 = \mathtt{CHOH}] \longrightarrow \mathtt{CH}_3 \cdot \mathtt{CHO}$$

The conversion of acetylene into acetaldehyde is very important technically, since acetaldehyde can be used for the preparation of many important compounds (see text).

The homologues of acetylene form ketones when hydrated, e.g., methylacetylene gives acetone:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{C} = \text{CH} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4} \text{[CH}_3\text{-}\text{C}(\text{OH}) = \text{CH}_2] \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO}\text{-}\text{CH}_3$$

5. When acetylene is passed into dilute hydrochloric acid at 65° in the presence of mercuric ions as catalyst, vinyl chloride is formed:

$$CH \equiv CH + HCl \xrightarrow{Hg_4^+} CH_2 \equiv CHCl$$

Acetylene adds on hydrogen cyanide in the presence of barium cyanide as catalyst to form vinyl cyanide:

$$CH = CH + HCN \xrightarrow{Ba(CN)_s} CH_2 = CHCN$$

Vinyl cyanide is used in the manufacture of Buna N synthetic rubber, which is a copolymer of vinyl cyanide and butadiene.

When acetylene is passed into warm acetic acid in the presence of mercuric ions as catalyst, vinyl acetate and ethylidene acetate are formed:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH} = \text{CH} + \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{Hg}^{a+}} \text{CH}_2 = \text{CH} \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{OC} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_2 = \text{CH} \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{OC} \cdot \text{CH}_3 + \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{Hg}^{a+}} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH} (\text{OOC} \cdot \text{CH}_3)_2 \end{array}$$

Vinyl acetate (liquid) is used in the plastic industry. Ethylidene acetate (liquid), when heated rapidly to 300-400°, gives acetic anhydride and acetaldehyde.

\* In this book any compound that is suggested as an intermediate will be enclosed in square brackets provided that it has not been isolated in the reaction shown.

Acetylene reacts with nitric acid in the presence of mercuric ions to form nitroform, CH(NO<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>. Acetylene combines with arsenic trichloride to form Lewisite (p. 345). When acetylene is passed into methanol at 160–200° in the presence of a small amount (1–2 per cent.) of potassium methoxide and under pressure just high enough to prevent boiling, methyl vinyl ether is formed:

 $\text{CH} = \text{CH} + \text{CH}_3\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3\text{OK}} \text{CH}_2 = \text{CH} \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ 

This is used for making the polyvinyl ether plastics.

This process whereby acetylene adds on to compounds containing an active hydrogen atom (p. 350) to form vinyl compounds is known as vinylation.

Acetylene and formaldehyde interact in the presence of copper acetylide as catalyst to form butynediol, together with smaller amounts of propargyl alcohol, CH=C·CH<sub>2</sub>OH:

$$CH = CH + HCHO \xrightarrow{Cu_1C_1} CH = C \cdot CH_2OH$$

$$CH = CH + 2HCHO \xrightarrow{Cu_2C_2} CH_2OH \cdot C = C \cdot CH_2OH$$

Propargyl alcohol is used to prepare allyl alcohol, glycerol, etc. Butynediol

is used to prepare butadiene, etc.

This reaction in which acetylene (or any compound containing the  $\equiv$ CH group, *i.e.*, a methyne hydrogen atom) adds on to certain unsaturated links (such as in the carbonyl group), or eliminates a molecule of water by reaction with certain hydroxy-compounds, is known as **ethinylation**. Thus the above reactions with formaldehyde are examples of ethinylation; another example is the following:

$$R_2N\cdot CH_2OH + CH \equiv CH \longrightarrow R_2N\cdot CH_2\cdot C \equiv CH + H_2O$$

Alkyl bromo- and chloro-methyl ethers (p. 354) add to acetylenes in the presence of the corresponding aluminium halide to form olefins (Bindácz et al, 1960); e.g.,

$$EtO \cdot CH_2CI + CH = CH \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} EtO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH = CHCI$$

6. When acetylene is passed into hypochlorous acid solution, dichloro-acetaldehyde is formed:

$$CH \equiv CH + HOCl \longrightarrow [CHCl = CHOH] \xrightarrow{HOCl} CHO(OH)_2] \longrightarrow CHCl_2 \cdot CHO + H_2O$$

Dichloroacetic acid, CHCl2 CO2H, is also formed by the oxidation of di-

chloroacetaldehyde by the hypochlorous acid.

7. Acetylene and its homologues form ozonides with ozone, and these compounds are decomposed by water to form diketones, which are then oxidised to acids by the hydrogen peroxide formed in the reaction:

$$R \cdot C \equiv C \cdot R' + O_3 \longrightarrow R \cdot C \xrightarrow{O} C \cdot R' \xrightarrow{H_1O} R \cdot C \xrightarrow{C} C \cdot R' + H_2O_2 \xrightarrow{} \xrightarrow{R} \cdot CO_2H + R' \cdot CO_2H$$

Acetylene is exceptional in that it gives glyoxal as well as formic acid (Hurd and Christ, 1936):

$$CH \equiv CH + O_3 \longrightarrow CH \xrightarrow{CH} CH \xrightarrow{H,O} CH \cdot CH$$

The triple bond in acetylenes is usually oxidised by potassium permanganate to give acid fission products:

$$R \cdot C \equiv C \cdot R' \xrightarrow{\mathrm{KMnO_4}} R \cdot CO \cdot CO \cdot R' \xrightarrow{\mathrm{KMnO_4}} R \cdot CO_2 H + R' \cdot CO_2 H$$

The intermediate  $\alpha$ -diketone can be isolated if the oxidation is carried out in the presence of magnesium sulphate.

8. When passed through a heated tube acetylene polymerises, to a small

extent, to benzene.

$$3C_2H_2 \longrightarrow$$

Homologues of acetylene behave in a similar manner, e.g., methylacetylene polymerises to s-trimethylbenzene, and dimethylacetylene to hexamethylbenzene:

$$_{3}$$
CH $_{3}$ C $\equiv$ CH $_{3}$ CH

Under suitable conditions acetylene polymerises to *cyclo*octatetraene (q.v.):

$$_{4}C_{2}H_{2} \longrightarrow \begin{matrix} HC \\ HC \\ HC \end{matrix} CH = CH \begin{matrix} CH \\ CH \end{matrix}$$

In addition to the above type of *cyclic* polymerisation, acetylene undergoes *linear* polymerisation when passed into a solution of cuprous chloride in ammonium chloride to give vinylacetylene and divinylacetylene:

Compounds containing both a double and triple bond are named systematically as *alkenynes*. The double bond is always expressed first in the name, and numbers as low as possible are given to the double and triple bonds, even though this may give "yne" the lower number. Thus vinylacetylene is but-1-en-3-yne, and divinylacetylene is hexa-1:5-dien-3-yne. The following compound, CH<sub>3</sub>\*CH—CH\*C=CH, however, is pent-3-en-1-yne.

Vinylacetylene adds on one molecule of hydrogen chloride to the triple bond to form *chloroprene* or 2-chlorobuta-1: 3-diene, the addition taking place in accordance with Markownikoff's rule:

$$\mathrm{CH_2}\!\!=\!\!\mathrm{CH}\!\!-\!\!\mathrm{CE}\!\!\!=\!\!\mathrm{CH}+\mathrm{HCl}\longrightarrow\mathrm{CH_2}\!\!\!=\!\!\mathrm{CH}\!\!-\!\!\mathrm{CCl}\!\!\!=\!\!\!\mathrm{CH_2}$$

Chloroprene readily polymerises to a rubber-like substance known as neoprene.

9. Acetylene forms metallic derivatives by replacement of one or both hydrogen atoms, e.g., if acetylene is passed over heated sodium, both the monosodium and disodium acetylides are formed:

$$CH = CH \xrightarrow{Na} CH = CNa \xrightarrow{Na} NaC = CNa$$

By using a large excess of acetylene the main product is monosodium acetylide, which is also obtained by passing acetylene into a solution of sodium in liquid ammonia until the blue colour disappears. By treatment of a fine dispersion of sodium in xylene at 100–105° with acetylene, sodium acetylide can be obtained in 98 per cent. yield (Rutledge, 1957). The monosodium derivative possesses the interesting property of being able to absorb dry carbon dioxide to form the sodium salt of propiolic acid (q.v.):

$$CH \equiv C \cdot Na + CO_2 \longrightarrow CH \equiv C \cdot CO_2 Na$$

The alkali metal acetylides react with carbonyl compounds to form acetylenic alcohols:

$$>$$
CO + NaC $\equiv$ CR  $\longrightarrow$   $>$ C(OH)·C $\equiv$ CR

Acetylene also forms Grignard reagents by reaction with alkylmagnesium

halides (p. 351).

When acetylene is passed into an ammoniacal solution of cuprous chloride or silver nitrate, cuprous acetylide  $\mathrm{Cu_2C_2}$  (red) or silver acetylide  $\mathrm{Ag_2C_2}$  (white) is precipitated. Both these compounds, when dry, explode when struck or heated. When they are treated with potassium cyanide solution pure acetylene is obtained, but on treatment with inorganic acid, the acetylene liberated is impure.

The acidic nature of hydrogen in acetylene is characteristic of hydrogen in the group  $\equiv$ CH, and it has been suggested that this is because the C—H bond has considerable ionic character due to resonance.

$$H-C \equiv C-H \longleftrightarrow H-C \equiv \stackrel{-}{CH} \longleftrightarrow \stackrel{+}{HC} \equiv C-H \longleftrightarrow \stackrel{+}{HC} \equiv \stackrel{-}{CH}$$

There is, however, evidence to show that the electronegativity of a carbon atom depends on the number of bonds by which it is joined to its neighbouring carbon atom (Walsh, 1947). Since  $\pi$ -electrons are more weakly bound than  $\sigma$ -electrons, the electron density round a carbon atom with  $\pi$ -bonds is less than that when only  $\sigma$ -bonds are present. Thus, a carbon atom having one  $\pi$ -bond has a slight positive charge compared with a carbon atom which has only  $\sigma$ -bonds. Thus, the electronegativity of an  $sp^2$  hybridised carbon atom is greater than that of an  $sp^3$  hybridised carbon atom. Similarly, a carbon atom which has two  $\pi$ -bonds carries a small positive charge which is greater than that carried by a carbon atom with only one  $\pi$ -bond. Thus the electronegativity of an sp hybridised carbon atom is greater than that of an  $sp^2$  hybridised carbon atom. It therefore follows that the more s character a bond has, the more electronegative is that carbon atom. Thus the attraction for electrons by hybridised carbon will be  $sp>sp^2>sp^3$ . Therefore the ionic character of a C—H bond depends on the state of hybridisation of the carbon atom and is greatest for sp hybridisation and least for  $sp^3$  hybridisation. Hence, in acetylene, the hydrogen atoms have a large amount of ionic character (relative to ethylene and methane) and consequently are more readily released as protons (than hydrogen in ethylene and methane).

This interpretation of change in electronegativity with change in hybridisation has a very important bearing on the problem of hyperconjugation (p. 271).

The structure of metallic carbides, i.e., compounds formed between carbon and metals, is still a matter of dispute. It appears certain, so far, that the carbides of the strongly electropositive metals: Na, K, Ca, Sr, Ba, are ionic—X-ray crystal analysis has shown the lattice of these carbides to be ionic, containing the

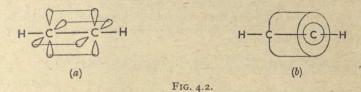
ion C=C. These carbides react with water to produce acetylene. Copper and silver carbides are not affected by water, and are explosive when dry. On account of these differences it seems likely that the carbides of these two metals are covalent, e.g., Cu—C=C—Cu. Thus these compounds may be regarded as acetylides.

In addition to the above carbides, there are a number of carbides which react with water or dilute acids to produce methane, e.g., aluminium carbide; or a mixture of hydrocarbons, e.g., uranium carbide which gives acetylene and other unsaturated hydrocarbons; iron carbide which gives methane and hydrogen. Many authors believe these carbides to be ionic, and include carbides of copper and silver in this group.

There is also one other group of carbides which are highly refractory, and which are extremely stable chemically; e.g., vanadium carbide is not attacked by water or hydrochloric acid even at 600°. These carbides are believed to be interstitial compounds, i.e., their lattice is not composed of ions, but resembles a

metallic or atomic lattice.

Structure of acetylene. By reasoning similar to that used for ethylene, the structure of acetylene is shown to be H—C=C—H, and may be repre-



sented as Fig. 2(a). This representation, however, appears to be inadequate. According to Coulson (1952), the two  $\pi$ -bonds form a charge cloud which has cylindrical symmetry about the carbon-carbon axis (Fig. 2b).

### HOMOLOGUES OF ACETYLENE

Homologues of acetylene may be prepared by any of the following methods:

1. By the action of ethanolic potassium hydroxide on vic- or gem-dihalogen derivatives of the paraffins (cf. preparation of acetylene, method 2), e.g., methylacetylene from propylene bromide:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CHBr}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{Br} + 2\text{KOH} \xrightarrow{\text{ethanol}} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{C} \equiv \text{CH} + 2\text{KBr} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$$

Since gem-dihalides are not usually readily accessible, and the vic-dihalides are,

the latter are used.

This method affords a simple means of introducing a triple bond into an organic compound, e.g., n-butanol is catalytically dehydrated to but-1-ene, which on treatment with bromine gives 1:2-dibromobutane, and this, when heated with ethanolic potassium hydroxide, yields but-1-yne:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH} = \text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_2} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH} \text{Br} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{Br} \xrightarrow{\text{KOH}} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH} \\ \text{ethanol} \end{array}$$

2. Monosodium acetylide (see reaction 9 of acetylene) is treated with an alkyl halide, preferably a bromide, whereupon an acetylene homologue is produced:

$$CH = CH + Na \xrightarrow{liquid} CH = CNa \xrightarrow{RX} CH = C \cdot R + NaX$$

This reaction may be carried further as follows:

$$R \cdot C = CH + Na \xrightarrow{\text{liquid}} R \cdot C = CNa \xrightarrow{R'X} R \cdot C = C \cdot R' + NaX$$

In practice this method is limited to the use of primary alkyl halides, since higher sec. and tert. halides give mainly olefins when they react with the monosodium derivatives of acetylene or its homologues.

3. By the action of acetylene on a Grignard reagent (q.v.) and then treating the resulting magnesium complex with an alkyl halide:

$$CH = CH + R - Mg - Br \longrightarrow RH + CH = C - Mg - Br \xrightarrow{RBr} CH = C \cdot R$$

The properties of the homologues of acetylene are very similar to those of acetylene, particularly when they are of the type R·C=CH, i.e., contain the ECH group. A very interesting reaction of the acetylene homologues is their ability to isomerise when heated with ethanolic potassium hydroxide, the triple bond moving towards the centre of the chain, e.g., but-1-yne isomerises to but-

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C = CH \longrightarrow [CH_3 \cdot CH = C = CH_2] \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot C = C \cdot CH_3$$

There is a great deal of evidence to show that an allene is formed as an intermediate.

On the other hand, when alkynes are heated with sodamide in an inert solvent, e.g., paraffin, the triple bond moves towards the end of the chain; e.g., but-2-yne gives the sodium derivative of but-1-yne, which is converted into but-1-yne by the action of water:

This reaction affords a means of stepping up the alkyne series by method 2 above. A very useful acetylene derivative for synthetic work is ethoxyacetylene. This may conveniently be prepared by the action of sodamide on chloroacetaldehyde diethyl acetal (Jones et al., 1954):

$$\text{CH}_2\text{Cl-CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{NaNH}_3} \text{CH} = \text{C-O-C}_2\text{H}_5$$

Lithium derivatives of monosubstituted acetylenes can be prepared by interaction of the acetylene and lithium amide in dioxan (Schlubach et al., 1958).

### QUESTIONS

1. Write out the structures of the isomeric pentenes and name them (use three methods of nomenclature).

2. Give an account of the evidence for the structure of propylene.

3. Give as many methods as you can for separating a mixture of isobutane and but-I-ene into its constituents.

4. Show how you would distinguish experimentally between the three isomeric

5. Name the compounds and indicate the conditions under which they are formed

5. Name the compounds and indicate the conditions under which they are formed when but-1-ene is treated with:—(a) bromine, (b) hydrogen bromide, (c) hydrogen chloride, (d) hypochlorous acid, (e) ozone, (f) cone. sulphuric acid, (g) hydrogen, (h) chlorine, (i) nitrosyl chloride, (j) peracetic acid, (k) heat.

6. Define and give examples of:—(a) unsaturation, (b) dehydration, (c) dehydro-halogenation, (d) conjugation, (e) I: 4-addition, (f) polymerisation, (g) hydroxylation of a double bond, (h) peroxide effect, (i) ozonolysis, (j) Prileschaiev's reaction, (h) polycondensation, (l) plastics, (m) thermoplastic, (n) thermo-setting plastic, (o) plasticiser, (p) ethinylation, (q) vinylation, (r) Wittig reaction, (s) hydroboronation.

7. Write out the structures and names (by two methods) of the isomeric pentynes.

7. Write out the structures and names (by two methods) of the isomeric pentynes. 8. Give an analytical table to show how you would distinguish between ethane, ethylene and acetylene.

9. Name the compounds and indicate the conditions under which they are formed when acetylene reacts with the reagents named in question 5.

10. Prepare methylpropylacetylene using only acetylene and methyl iodide and any inorganic compounds you wish.

11. Give an account of the evidence for the structure of acetylene.

12. Discuss the structures of butadiene and acetylene from the M.O. point of view.

### READING REFERENCES

Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1942, 2nd ed.).

Vol I. (a) Ch. r. The Reactions of the Aliphatic Hydrocarbons.
(b) Ch. 7. Unsaturation and Conjugation.
(c) Ch. 8. Synthetic Polymers.

Mayo and Walling, The Peroxide Effect, Chem. Reviews, 1940, 27, 357. Riebsomer, Reactions of Nitrogen Tetroxide with Organic Compounds, ibid., 1945, 36, 197-211.

Levy, Scaife et al., Addition of Dinitrogen Tetroxide to Olefins, J.C.S., 1946, 1093, 1096, 1100; 1948, 52.
Gorin, Kuhn, and Miles, Mechanisms of the Catalysed Alkylation of isoButane with

Olefins, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1946, 38, 745. Groll and Hearne, Substitution in Straight-Chain Olefins, ibid., 1939, 31, 1530. Bailey, The Reactions of Ozone with Organic Compounds, Chem. Reviews, 1958, 58, 925. Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. II (1944), Ch. 8. Periodic Acid Oxidation. ibid., 1945, 42, 143-145. Oxidation with Lead Tetra-acetate. De la Mare, Kinetics of Thermal Addition of Halogens to Olefinic Compounds, Quart.

Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1949, 3, 126.

Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. V (1949), Ch. I. The Synthesis of Acetylenes.
Raphael, Acetylenic Compounds in Organic Synthesis, Butterworth (1955).

Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. VII (1953), Ch. 7. Epoxidation and Hydros of Ethylenic Compounds with Organic Per-acids. Epoxidation and Hydroxylation

Lynch and Pausacker, The Oxidation of Olefins with Perbenzoic Acids. A Kinetic

Study, J.C.S., 1955, 1525.
Trapnell, Specificity in Catalysis by Metals, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1954, 8, 404. Bond, The Mechanism of Catalytic Hydrogenation and Related Reactions, ibid., 1954, 8, 279.

Cadogan and Hey, Free-Radical Addition Reactions to Olefinic Systems, ibid., 1954, 8, 308.

Bu'Lock, Acetylenic Compounds as Natural Products, ibid., 1956, 10, 371.

Kharasch, The Unique Properties of 2:4-Dinitrobenzenesulphenyl Chloride, J. Chem.

Educ., 1956, 33, 585.
Langford and Lawson, Characterisation of Organic Compounds with 2:4-Dinitro-

benzenesulphenyl Chloride, ibid., 1957, 34, 510. Crawford, Infrared Spectra of Adsorbed Gases, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1960, 14,

Advances in Organic Chemistry, Interscience, Vol. I (1960). Trippett, The Wittig Reaction, p. 83. Gunstone, Hydroxylation Methods, p. 103. Bradley and Ledwith, The Reaction of Carbene with Alkyl Halides, J.C.S., 1961, 1495.

# HALOGEN DERIVATIVES OF THE PARAFFINS

HALOGEN derivatives of the paraffins are divided into mono-, di-, tri-, etc., substitution products according to the number of halogen atoms in the molecule.

Nomenclature. Monohalogen derivatives are usually named as the halide of the corresponding alkyl group, e.g., C2H5Cl ethyl chloride; CH3\*CHBr\*CH3

isopropyl bromide; (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>CCl tert.-butyl chloride.

Dihalogen derivatives. (i) When both halogen atoms are attached to the same carbon atom, they are said to be in the geminal (gem-) position. Since the loss of two hydrogen atoms from the same carbon atom gives the alkylidene radical, gem-dihalides are named as the alkylidene halides, e.g., CH3 · CHBr2 ethylidene bromide; CH3 · CCl2 · CH3 isopropylidene chloride.

(ii) When the two halogen atoms are on adjacent carbon atoms they are said to be in the vicinal (vic-) position, and these dihalides are named as the halide of the olefin from which they may be prepared by the addition of halogen, e.g., CH<sub>2</sub>Cl·CH<sub>2</sub>Cl ethylene chloride; (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CBr·CH<sub>2</sub>Br isobutylene bromide.

(iii) When there is a halogen atom on each of the terminal carbon atoms of the chain, i.e., in the αω-position, the compound is named as the polymethylene halide, e.g., CH2Cl·CH2·CH2·CH2·CH2Cl tetramethylene chloride.

(iv) When the two halogen atoms occupy positions other than those mentioned above, the compounds are named as dihalogen derivatives of the parent hydrocarbon, the positions of the halogen atoms being indicated by numbers (use principle of lowest numbers), e.g.,

#### CH3.CHCI.CH2.CHCI.CH3.CH3 2:4-dichlorohexane

The alkyl halides, gem-, vic- and αω-dihalides may also be named by this (I.U.P.A.C.) system, e.g., CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CHBr·CH<sub>3</sub> 2-bromobutane; CH2Cl-CH2-CH2Cl 1: 3-dichloropropane.

Polyhalogen derivatives are best named by the I.U.P.A.C. system (method iv), and the names of the halogens (and any other substituents present) are

arranged alphabetically:

CH<sub>2</sub>Br·CHCl·CHCl·CH<sub>3</sub> I-bromo-2: 3-dichlorobutane CH2Cl-CHI-CH(CH3)-CH2-CH2Br 5-bromo-1-chloro-2-iodo-3-methylpentane

### ALKYL HALIDES

The alkyl halides have the general formula  $C_nH_{2^{n+1}}X$  or RX, where X denotes chlorine, bromine or iodine. Fluorine is not included, since fluorides were, until fairly recently, chemical curiosities, and also do not behave like the other halides. Fluorine compounds are discussed separately at the end of this chapter.

General methods of preparation. I. The method most widely used is to replace the hydroxyl group of an alcohol by an X atom. This may be done by means of various halogen reagents, and the accessibility of the reagent is usually the factor deciding which one is used for the preparation

of a particular alkyl halide.

(i) Alkyl chlorides may be prepared by passing hydrogen chloride into the alcohol in the presence of anhydrous zinc chloride (Groves' process), e.g., ethyl chloride from ethanol:

$$C_2H_5OH + HCl \xrightarrow{ZnCl_4} C_2H_5Cl + H_2O$$

The yield of alkyl chloride depends on the nature of the alcohol. Primary alcohols of the type R·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH and R<sub>2</sub>CH·CH<sub>2</sub>OH usually give good yields of alkyl chloride, but when the alcohol is of the type R<sub>3</sub>C·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, the main product is a tertiary alkyl chloride formed by rearrangement of the molecule (see neopentyl alcohol, below). Secondary alcohols, except for isopropanol and sec.-butanol, react with hydrogen chloride to give mixtures of chlorides. e.g., pentan-2-ol gives a mixture of 2- and 3-chlorides. Secondary alcohols containing highly branched radicals attached to the carbinol group tend to give tertiary chlorides by molecular rearrangement, e.g., pinacolyl alcohol:

 $(CH_3)_3C \cdot CHOH \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{HCl} (CH_3)_2CCl \cdot CH(CH_3)_2$ 

Tertiary alcohols give very good yields of tertiary chloride with concentrated hydrochloric acid in the absence of zinc chloride.

The reaction between an alcohol and hydrogen chloride is reversible, and it is believed that the zinc chloride functions as a dehydrating agent, thus inhibiting the backward reaction.

The formation of the various halides by rearrangement is one example of class of rearrangements often referred to as **1,2-shifts**. In this type of rearrangement a group migrates from a carbon atom (the migration origin) to an adjacent atom (the migration terminus), which is usually carbon or nitrogen. The rearrangement may be expressed in the following general form:

$$\stackrel{Z}{\underset{A-B-Y}{\longleftarrow}} \xrightarrow{\bar{Y}} \stackrel{Z}{\underset{Y}{\longleftarrow}} \stackrel{Z}{\underset{A-B^+}{\longrightarrow}} \xrightarrow{A-B} \stackrel{\text{nucleophilic}}{\xrightarrow{\text{reagent}}} \text{products}$$

When Y ionises, B is left with only six valency electrons (open sextet), and consequently carries a positive charge. Z migrates with its bonding pair of electrons, and A now has an open sextet. Attack now takes place at A by Y-or some other nucleophilic reagent to form the products. This mechanism was first suggested by Whitmore (1932) and is often referred to as the Whitmore mechanism.

The nature of Z is quite varied; the "key" atom (i.e., the atom joined to the bonding pair which migrates) may be carbon, halogen, oxygen, etc. If Z has a lone pair of electrons, e.g., halogen, then this pair may be used in the migration to give a cyclic intermediate, i.e., a bridged ion.

$$A - B^+ \longrightarrow A - B \longrightarrow \text{products}$$

If Z is an aryl group, then this group can supply an electron pair to form a bridged ion (see, e.g., p. 172). If Z is an alkyl group, then there are no lone pairs or multiple bonds, but again it is believed that a bridged ion is possible, i.e.,

$$-\stackrel{R}{\leftarrow} \stackrel{C}{\leftarrow} \rightarrow > \stackrel{R}{\leftarrow} \stackrel{R}{\leftarrow} <$$

This type of bridged ion contains three partial bonds formed from one pair of electrons. This idea of bridged carbonium ions was first suggested by Nevell et al. (1939), but it must be admitted that the existence of such an ion has not yet been definitely established when the migrating group is an

alkyl group. The formation of these bridged ions in the 1,2-shifts is an example of neighbouring group participation, and when the rate of the rearrangement is increased because of this effect, the rearrangement is said to be anchimerically assisted (Winstein et al., 1953; see also p. 415).

A very important point about 1,2-shifts is that they are intramolecular, i.e., Z is never actually free. If the mechanism were such that Z was free during its migration, then the rearrangement would be called intermolecular. The intramolecular nature of the 1,2-shifts has been established by using a group Z which contains an asymmetric carbon atom attached to A, i.e., have type abcC—A. If Z actually separated during the migration, then it means that the free migrating unit is a carbanion, i.e., abcC:— Examination of such carbanions has shown that none ever retains its configuration; it racemises, i.e., half the molecules have their configuration inverted, and so the product is no longer optically active (the student should read pp. 413–416 before proceeding further). Thus if Z moves with its bonding pair and the configuration is retained in the product, then Z can never have been free, i.e., the rearrangement is intramolecular.

We can now illustrate the foregoing discussion with neopentyl alcohol as our example. Whitmore et al. (1932) showed that the reactions undergone by neopentyl alcohol and neopentyl halides are of two types: (i) replacement reactions, which occur very slowly (if at all) and produce neopentyl compounds; (ii) replacement (and elimination) reactions, which occur very fast

and produce t-amyl compounds.

Hughes and Ingold (1946) have shown that the slow reactions take place by the  $S_{\rm N}2$  mechanism (p. 106) and consequently without rearrangement, e.g., neopentyl bromide reacts with ethanolic sodium ethoxide to give ethyl neopentyl ether:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Me}_3\text{C} \\ \text{BrCH}_2 + \text{OEt}^- & \Longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{Me}_3\text{C} \\ \text{\delta}^- \\ \text{Br} & \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\delta^-} \begin{array}{c} \text{Me}_3\text{C} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OEt} \end{array}$$

On the other hand, when *neo*pentyl alcohol reacts with hydrobromic acid, the reaction is fast, proceeds by the  $S_N I$  mechanism (p. 106), and produces t-amyl bromide by rearrangement (a 1,2-shift):

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{Me_3C\cdot CH_2OH} \xleftarrow{\operatorname{HBr}} \operatorname{Me_3C\cdot CH_2} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{OH}_2^+} \Longrightarrow \\ \operatorname{H_2O} + \operatornamewithlimits{\bigvee}_{\operatorname{Me_2C-CH_2}} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{H}_2} \operatorname{\operatorname{Me_2C-CH_2Me}} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{Br}^-} \operatorname{Me_2CBr\cdot CH_2Me} \end{array}$$

There is no definite evidence that the intermediate is a bridged ion rather than the classical carbonium ion.

A point of interest here is that the "driving force" of the rearrangement is probably due to the stabilities of carbonium ions being tertiary > secondary > primary due to the delocalisation of the charge by the inductive effect of the alkyl groups increasing with the number of alkyl groups attached to the positively charged carbon atom (in the classical carbonium ion; cf. p. 33):

$$R \rightarrow C \rightarrow R > R \rightarrow C \rightarrow R > R \rightarrow C \rightarrow H$$

Alkyl bromides may be prepared:

(a) By refluxing the alcohol with excess constant-boiling hydrobromic acid (48 per cent.) in the presence of a little sulphuric acid, which must behave catalytically, since in its absence the reaction is slow.

The yield of alkyl bromide is usually excellent; when a secondary or tertiary alcohol is used, it is better to omit the sulphuric acid, since this would dehydrate these alcohols to olefins and thereby reduce the yield.

(b) By heating the alcohol with potassium bromide and concentrated

sulphuric acid in excess:

$$ROH + KBr + H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow RBr + KHSO_4 + H_2O$$

The yield is very good for primary alcohols only; secondary and tertiary

are readily dehydrated to olefins under these conditions.

Alkyl iodides may be prepared in good yield by refluxing the alcohol with excess of constant-boiling hydriodic acid (57 per cent.). Stone et al. (1950) have shown that alkyl iodides may be prepared in good yields by heating alcohols, ethers or olefins with sodium or potassium iodide in 95 per cent. phosphoric acid.

(ii) Any alkyl halide may be prepared by the action of a phosphorus halide on the alcohol. Phosphorus pentachloride gives variable yields

depending on the alcohol:

$$ROH + PCl_5 \longrightarrow RCl + HCl + POCl_3$$

Phosphorus trichloride gives poor yields of alkyl chloride except with alcohols which tend to react by an S<sub>N</sub>I mechanism, e.g., tert.-alcohols behave in accordance with the equation:

$$PCl_3 + 3ROH \longrightarrow 3RCl + P(OH)_3$$

The yields of alkyl halide with phosphorus tribromide or tri-iodide are v.g.-ex. for primary alcohols; less for secondary alcohols, and still less for tertiary. These phosphorus trihalides are usually prepared in situ; bromine or iodine is added to a mixture of red phosphorus and alcohol, and warmed.

(iii) Thionyl chloride (one molecule) refluxed with alcohols (one molecule) forms alkyl chlorides in the presence of pyridine (one molecule) [Darzens

procedure (see also p. 415):

$$ROH + SOCl_2 \xrightarrow{pyridine} RCl + SO_2 + HCl$$

In a number of cases only a small amount of pyridine need be used to give the same yield of alkyl chloride as in the Darzens procedure.

2. By the addition of halogen acids to an olefin.

3. By direct halogenation, i.e., substitution reactions of the paraffins with halogen, and this may be brought about by (a) light, (b) catalysts

(a) Photohalogenation is carried out by treating the paraffin with chlorine or bromine at ordinary temperature in the presence of light. The reaction is believed to take place by a free-radical chain mechanism, the initiation being brought about by the formation of chlorine atoms by the U.V. part of the spectrum of the light:

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{Cl}_2 \xrightarrow{\operatorname{hv}} \operatorname{2Cl} \cdot \\ \operatorname{Cl} \cdot + \operatorname{CH}_4 & \longrightarrow \operatorname{HCl} + \operatorname{CH}_3 \cdot \\ \operatorname{CH}_3 \cdot + \operatorname{Cl}_2 & \longrightarrow \operatorname{CH}_3 \operatorname{Cl} + \operatorname{Cl} \cdot \\ \operatorname{Cl} \cdot + \operatorname{CH}_3 \operatorname{Cl} & \longrightarrow \operatorname{HCl} + \operatorname{CH}_2 \operatorname{Cl} \cdot \\ \operatorname{CH}_2 \operatorname{Cl} \cdot + \operatorname{Cl}_2 & \longrightarrow \operatorname{CH}_2 \operatorname{Cl}_2 + \operatorname{Cl} \cdot \operatorname{etc}. \end{array}$$

The termination of the chain reaction may take place by adsorption of the chlorine atoms on the walls of the containing vessel, or by two chlorine atoms combining with each other to form a chlorine molecule. There

appears to be no evidence to show that CH3, . . CH2Cl, etc., radicals combine to terminate the chain reaction (cf. addition of chlorine to ethylene, p. 66). Ritchie and Winning (1950) suggest that the chain-ending involves the formation of Cla molecules:

$$Cl^{\bullet} + Cl_2 \longrightarrow Cl_3^{\bullet}; \ 2Cl_3^{\bullet} \longrightarrow 3Cl_2$$

(b) Catalytic halogenation is carried out by treating the paraffin with halogen in the presence of various metallic halides, e.g., cupric chloride

catalyses chlorination; ferric bromide, bromination.

(c) Thermal halogenation. Thermal chlorination has been studied in great detail by Hass, McBee and their co-workers (1935 onwards), and as a result of their work they suggested a number of rules for chlorination:

(i) If high temperature is avoided, no carbon skeleton rearrangements occur

in either thermal or photochemical chlorination.

(ii) Every possible monochloride is formed, and over-chlorination, i.e., chlorination beyond monosubstitution, may be suppressed by controlling the ratio of chlorine to paraffin (this rule also holds good for photochemical chlorination).

(iii) The order of ease of substitution is tertiary hydrogen>secondary> primary. At 300°, with reaction in the vapour phase, the relative rates of substitution of primary, secondary and tertiary hydrogen atoms are 1.00:3.25:4.43.

(iv) As the temperature rises above 300° the relative rates of substitution tend to become equal, i.e., 1:1:1. Increased pressure causes an increase in the

relative rate of primary substitution.

(v) In vapour-phase chlorination the presence of a chlorine atom on a carbon atom tends to prevent further reaction on that carbon atom during the second substitution. According to Tedder et al. (1960), this generalisation is a poor approximation to the truth. These authors have shown the effect of the halogen atom already present in the molecule is to retard substitution at a  $\beta$ carbon atom, and also affects substitution at an  $\alpha$ -carbon atom.

In the past it was believed that paraffins always tended to complete substitution. Rule (ii) shows this is not the case. Methane, however, has been found to be an exception; chlorination of methane always results in a mixture of all four substitution products, their relative amounts depending on the ratio of chlorine to methane (see, e.g., methyl chloride).

Bromination takes place with greater difficulty than chlorination, and

there is less tendency for polysubstitution.

The mechanism of thermal halogenation is believed to take place by a freeradical chain reaction (cf. photohalogenation). The initiation of the chain reaction is brought about by the thermal dissociation of chlorine molecules into separate atoms:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Cl}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \text{Cl} \cdot + \text{Cl} \cdot \\ \text{Cl} \cdot + \text{CH}_4 \longrightarrow \text{HCl} + \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{, etc.} \end{array}$$

4. Direct chlorination of paraffins may be effected by means of sulphuryl chloride. Sulphuryl chloride in the absence of light and catalysts does not react with paraffins even at their boiling points, but in the presence of light and a trace of an organic peroxide the reaction is fast:

$$RH + SO_2Cl_2 \longrightarrow RCl + SO_2 + HCl$$

The mechanism of this reaction is still obscure, but in view of the fact that it is catalysed by organic peroxides (which are known to generate free radicals), it is quite likely that chlorination with sulphuryl chloride proceeds by a free-radical chain reaction.

In general, the products obtained by chlorination with sulphuryl chloride are the same as those obtained by photochemical or thermal chlorination, and it has been found that when sulphuryl chloride is used:

(i) The order of ease of replacement of a hydrogen atom is tertiary>

secondary> primary.

(ii) The second chlorine atom tends to substitute on that carbon atom which is as far away as possible from the carbon atom already joined to the chlorine atom.

(iii) It is difficult to get two, and impossible to get three, chlorine atoms

on the same carbon atom.

Alkyl chlorides and bromides are generally obtained fairly easily, iodides not so easily. Fluorides have to be prepared by special means (see later in this chapter). In many cases the iodide may be obtained from the corresponding chloride or bromide by treating the latter in acetone or methanol solution with sodium iodide (see p. 54):

Iodides may also be prepared from the corresponding bromide via the Grignard reagent:

$$RBr + Mg \xrightarrow{ether} R - Mg - Br \xrightarrow{I_a} RI$$

5. Hunsdiecker et al. (1935) found that various salts of the fatty acids are decomposed by chlorine or bromine to form the alkyl halide, e.g.,

$$R \cdot CO_2Ag + Br_2 \longrightarrow RBr + CO_2 + AgBr$$

The silver salt appears to give the best yield, but the yield also depends on the solvent used; Stoll et al. (1951) found that trichloroethylene is a better solvent than either carbon tetrachloride or carbon disulphide. The yield of halide is primary>secondary>tertiary, and bromine is generally used, chlorine giving a poorer yield of alkyl chloride, and iodine tending to form esters.

 $_2R \cdot CO_2Ag + I_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2R + CO_2 + _2AgI$ 

Apart from preparing alkyl halides, this reaction also offers a means of stepping down the fatty acids and alcohols.

The reaction considered above is often referred to as the Hunsdiecker

reaction or the Borodine-Hunsdiecker reaction.

6. Rydon et al. (1954) have shown that alkyl halides may be prepared, in good yield, by the addition of halogen to a mixture of an alcohol and triphenyl phosphite:

$$(C_6H_5O)_3P + ROH + X_2 \longrightarrow RX + XPO(OC_6H_5)_2 + C_6H_5OH$$

General properties of the alkyl halides. The lower members methyl chloride, methyl bromide and ethyl chloride are gases; methyl iodide and the majority of the higher members are sweet-smelling liquids. The order of the values of the boiling points (and densities) of the alkyl halides is iodide>bromide>chloride>fluoride. In a group of isomeric alkyl halides, the order of the boiling points is primary>secondary>tertiary. Many of the alkyl halides burn with a green-edged flame. The chemical reactions of the alkyl halides are similar, but they are not equally reactive, the order of reactivity being iodide>bromide>chloride; the reactivity of alkyl fluorides depends on the nature of the fluoride (p. 122). Alkyl iodides are sufficiently reactive to be decomposed by light, the iodide darkening due to the liberation of iodine:

 $2RI \longrightarrow R-R+I_2$ 

Alkyl halides (and the polyhalides) are covalent compounds, insoluble in water, with which they cannot form a hydrogen bond, but soluble in organic solvents.

The alkyl halides are classified as primary, secondary and tertiary, according as the halogen atom is present in the respective groups — $CH_2X$ , =CHX and  $\equiv CX$ , *i.e.*, according as the halogen atom is joined to a primary,

secondary or tertiary carbon atom.

It has already been pointed out that alkyl groups have a +I effect. Before considering the reactions of the alkyl halides, it is important to explain why an alkyl group is electron-repelling. Several explanations have been offered; the following is a highly favoured one. As we have seen, methane and ethane are non-polar (p. 54). Thus the methyl group has a zero inductive effect; and this is true for all alkyl groups since all paraffins, whether straight- or branched-chain, have a zero dipole moment. When, however, one hydrogen atom in a paraffin is replaced by some polar atom (or group), the alkyl group now exerts a polar effect which is produced by the presence of the polar atom. Thus, in an alkyl halide, the alkyl group possesses an inductive effect, but it is one which is produced mainly by the mechanism of interaction polarisation (cf. p. 20). It therefore follows that the alkyl group is more polarisable than a hydrogen atom, and since most of the groups attached to the alkyl group are electron-attracting groups, the alkyl group thus usually becomes an electron-repelling group, i.e., alkyl groups normally have a +I effect.

General reactions of the alkyl halides. The alkyl halides are extremely important reagents because they undergo a large variety of reactions that

make them valuable in organic syntheses.

I. Alkyl halides are hydrolysed to alcohols very slowly by water, but rapidly by silver oxide suspended in boiling water, or by boiling aqueous alkalis (see also 5):

$$RX + KOH \longrightarrow ROH + KX$$

This type of reaction is an example of nucleophilic substitution  $(S_N)$  since the attacking reagent is a nucleophilic reagent (p. 33). It has been assumed that this type of heterolytic reaction in solution can take place by two

different mechanisms, unimolecular or bimolecular.

Unimolecular mechanism. This is a two-stage process, the first stage consisting of slow heterolysis of the compound to form a carbonium ion, followed by rapid combination between the carbonium ion and the substituting nucleophilic reagent. Since the rate-determining step is the first one, and since in this step only one molecule is undergoing a covalency change, this type of mechanism is called unimolecular, and is labelled S<sub>N</sub>I (Ingold et al., 1928, 1933). Thus, if the hydrolysis of an alkyl halide is an S<sub>N</sub>I reaction, it may be written:

$$R \xrightarrow{\text{slow}} X^- + R^+ \xrightarrow{\text{OH}^-} ROH$$

Bimolecular mechanism. This is a one-stage process, two molecules simultaneously undergoing covalency change in the rate-determining step. This type of mechanism is called bimolecular, and is labelled  $S_N 2$ . Since the rate-determining step in this reaction is the formation of the transition state, the hydrolysis of an alkyl halide by an  $S_N 2$  reaction may be written:

$$HO^{\sim}R-X \longrightarrow HO^{\sim}-R-X \longrightarrow HO-R+X^{\sim}$$

Any factor that affects the energy-of activation of a given type of reaction will affect the rate and/or the mechanism. Attempts have been made to

calculate E in terms of bond strengths, steric factor, heats of solution of ions, etc., but apparently the results are conflicting. The following discussion is therefore largely qualitative, and because of this, one cannot be sure which are the predominant factors in deciding the value of the energy of activation.

The main difference between the two mechanisms is the kinetic order of the reaction.  $S_{\rm N}2$  reactions would be expected to be second order, whereas  $S_{\rm N}1$  reactions would be expected to be first order. These orders are only true under certain circumstances, e.g., in a bimolecular reaction, the order is second-order if both reactants are present in small and controllable concentrations. If, however, one of the reactants is the solvent, this will be in constant excess, and so such a bimolecular mechanism will lead to first-order kinetics.

Another important difference is that in the  $S_N 2$  mechanism, the molecule is *always* inverted. In the  $S_N 1$  mechanism, the configuration of the resulting molecule depends on various factors (see p. 415).

Let us first consider the nature of R. There are two effects to be con-

sidered, the polar factor and the steric factor.

Polar factor. Consider the series of ethyl, isopropyl, and t-butyl halides. Since the methyl group has a +I effect, the larger the number of methyl groups on the carbon atom of the C—X, the greater will be the electron density on this carbon. If we use one arrow-head to represent (qualitatively) the electron-repelling effect of a methyl group, then we have the following state of affairs:

This increasing electron density on the central carbon atom increasingly opposes attack at this carbon atom by a negatively charged nucleophilic reagent. Thus the formation of the transition state for the S<sub>N</sub>2 mechanism becomes increasingly difficult. It can therefore be anticipated that the S<sub>N</sub>2 mechanism is made more difficult in passing from EtX to t-BuX. On the other hand, since the SNI mechanism involves ionisation as the first step, then it can be expected that as the electron density increases on the central carbon atom, the bonding pair in C-X becomes more and more displaced towards the X atom, and consequently ionisation of X as a negative ion will become easier. It therefore follows that the tendency for the S<sub>N</sub>I mechanism should increase from EtX to t-BuX. These anticipated results have been realised in practice. Hughes, Ingold et al. (1935-1940) examined the hydrolysis of alkyl bromides in alkaline aqueous ethanol and showed that MeBr and EtBr undergo hydrolysis by the S<sub>N2</sub> mechanism, isoPrBr by both S<sub>N</sub>2 and S<sub>N</sub>1 mechanisms, and t-BuBr by the S<sub>N</sub>1 mechanism only. It has also been shown, however, that the actual position where the mechanism changes over from S<sub>N</sub>2 to S<sub>N</sub>1 in a given graded polar series (such as the one above) is not fixed but also depends on other factors such as the concentration of the nucleophilic reagent and the nature of the solvent (see below).

Steric effects. The steric effect was originally thought to be a spatial effect brought into play by mechanical interference between groups, and was described as steric hindrance (see p. 686). The term steric hindrance considered the geometry of the reactant molecule. When, however, a molecule undergoes chemical reaction, it does so via a transition state. Consequently the geometry of both the initial and transition state must be taken into consideration. Thus steric factors may affect the speed and/or the

mechanism of a reaction. It is, however, often very difficult to distinguish between steric and polar factors. Nevertheless, the effects of the steric factor can often be assessed in some sort of qualitative manner. When steric effects slow down a reaction, that reaction is said to be subject to steric hindrance (or retardation), and when they speed up a reaction, that reaction is said to be subject to steric acceleration.

When there is repulsion between non-bonded atoms in a molecule due to their close proximity, forces of steric repulsion are said to be acting. When the stability of a molecule is decreased by internal forces produced by interaction between the constituent parts, that molecule is said to be under steric strain. There are three sources of steric strain: (i) repulsion between nonbonded atoms (steric repulsion); (ii) distortion of bond angles (angle strain);

iii) dipole interactions.

In an S<sub>N</sub>2 reaction there will be five groups "attached" to the carbon atom at which reaction occurs (p. 414). Thus there will be "crowding" in the transition state, and the bulkier the groups, the greater will be the compression energy, and consequently the reaction will be hindered sterically.

Let us consider the following example. Hughes et al. (1946) examined the rate of exchange of iodide ions in acetone solution with MeBr, EtBr, isoPrBr, and t-BuBr under conditions where only the S<sub>N</sub>2 mechanism operated. The relative reactivities were found to be 10,000; 65; 0.50; 0.039.

$$\overrightarrow{I} \stackrel{\$^-}{\longrightarrow} R \stackrel{\$^-}{\longrightarrow} I \stackrel{\$^-}{\longrightarrow} I - R + Br^-$$

Thus increasing the number of methyl groups on the central carbon atom increases the steric retardation.

The problem is somewhat different for the SNI mechanism. Here the transition state does not contain more than four groups attached to the central carbon atom, and hence one would expect steric hindrance to be less important in the SNI mechanism. If, however, the molecule contains bulky groups, then by ionising, the molecule can relieve the steric strain, since the carbonium ion produced is flat (trigonal hybridisation) and so there is more room to accommodate the three alkyl groups. Thus, in such  $S_N I$  reactions, there will be steric acceleration. Brown et al. (1949) showed that the solvolysis of tertiary halides is subject to steric acceleration (solvolysis is a nucleophilic substitution reaction in which the solvent is the nucleophilic reagent).

 $R_3C \xrightarrow{X} \xrightarrow{H_4O} R_3C^+ + X^-$ (tetrahedral; (trigonal; planar; large strain)

These authors showed that as R increases in size, the rate of solvolysis increases. However, the larger the R groups are, the more slowly will the carbonium ion be expected to react with solvent molecules, since steric strain will be re-introduced into the molecule. In cases like this, the carbonium ion tends to undergo an elimination reaction to form an olefin (cf. ethylene), and Brown et al. (1950) have shown that this elimination process increases as the alkyl groups become larger (see p. 112).

It should be noted that a fundamental part of the SNI mechanism is the postulate of the transient existence of carbonium ions. Symons et al. (1959) have shown that monoaryl-carbonium ions are stable in dilute solutions of sulphuric acid. These authors have also concluded, from a spectroscopic examination of t-butanol in sulphuric acid, that there is the trimethylcarbonium ion, CMe<sub>3</sub>+, in solution and that this ion is probably planar (cf. p. 366). It is interesting to note that of the ions Me+, MeCH<sub>2</sub>+, Me<sub>2</sub>CH+, Me<sub>3</sub>C+, the order of stability would be expected to increase from left to right, since the charge is

being increasingly neutralised by the +I effect of the methyl groups. On the other hand, the triphenylmethyl carbonium ion, (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>3</sub>C<sup>+</sup>, has been isolated as its perchlorate and borofluoride (Dauben et al., 1960).

Now let us consider the effect of the nature of the halogen atom. Experimental work has shown that the nature of X has very little effect, if any, on mechanism, but it does affect the rate of reaction for a given mechanism, e.g., it has been found that in SNI reactions, the rate follows the order RI>RBr>RCl. This may be explained by consideration of the C-X bond energy, the values of which are C-Cl, 77 k.cal.; C-Br, 65 k.cal.; C-I, 57 k.cal. Thus the C-I bond is most easily broken and the C-Cl bond least easily. These energy differences also explain the same order of increasing rate in S<sub>N2</sub> reactions. As we have seen, the stronger the C-X

bond, the greater will be the energy of activation.

The more pronounced the nucleophilic activity of the attacking reagent, i.e., the greater the availability of its unshared pair, then the more the S<sub>N</sub>2 mechanism will be favoured, since in the S<sub>N</sub>I mechanism the reagent does not enter into the rate-determining step of ionisation. However, it can also be expected that as the nucleophilic activity of the reagent decreases, a point will be reached where the nucleophilic activity is so low that the mechanism will change from S<sub>N</sub>2 to S<sub>N</sub>1. Hughes, Ingold, et al. (1935) examined the mechanism and rate of decomposition of various trimethylsulphonium salts ( $Me_3S^+X^-$ ; see also p. 335) and showed that for X = OH, the mechanism is  $S_N 2$ , and for X = I, Cl, or Br, the mechanism is  $S_N I$  and the rate decreases in this order.

Mechanism and rate of reaction are very much affected by the nature of the solvent. It has been found that the ionising power of a solvent depends on its dielectric constant and its power of solvation, and it appears that the latter is more important than the former. Solvation is due to the "attachment" between solvent and solute molecules, and one important contributing factor is attraction of a charge for a dipole. Since electrostatic work is done in the process of solvation, energy is lost by the system, and

consequently the system is more stable.

Although the solute molecules have ionised, the oppositely charged pair of ions may become enclosed in a "cage" of the surrounding solvent molecules, and may therefore recombine before they can escape from the cage. Such a complex is known as an ion-pair, and their recombination is known as internal return. It has now been shown that many organic reactions proceed via ion-pairs rather than dissociated ions (see p. 273) Thus we have the possibility of the following steps:

$$RX \rightleftharpoons R^+X^- \rightleftharpoons R^+ + X^-$$
dissociated ions

Many attempts have been made to correlate reaction rates and nature of the solvent. Hughes and Ingold (1935, 1948) proposed the following qualitative theory of solvent effects:

(i) Ions and polar molecules, when dissolved in polar solvents, tend to

become solvated.

(ii) For a given solvent, solvation tends to increase with increasing magnitude of charge on the solute molecules or ions.

(iii) For a given solute, solvation tends to increase with the increasing

dipole moment of the solvent.

(iv) For a given magnitude of charge, solvation decreases as the charge is spread over a larger volume.

(v) The decrease of solvation due to the dispersal of charge will be less

than that due to its destruction.

Since the rate-determining step in an  $S_N I$  reaction is ionisation, any factor that assists this ionisation will therefore facilitate  $S_N I$  reactions. Solvents with high dipole moments (i.e., high polarity) are usually good ionising media and, in general, it has been found that the more polar the solvent, the greater is the rate of the  $S_N I$  reaction. Let us consider the following  $S_N I$  reaction:

$$R - X \xrightarrow[]{\text{slow }} R^{\delta +} \stackrel{\delta -}{\underset{}{\stackrel{}{\sim}}} R \xrightarrow{\text{fast}} R^{+} + X^{-} \xrightarrow[]{\text{oh-}} R - OH$$

Since the transition state has a larger charge than the reactant molecule, the former will be more solvated than the latter (rule ii). Thus the transition state is more stabilised than the reactant molecule, *i.e.*, the energy of activation is lowered, and so the reaction proceeds faster than had there been no (or less) solvation.

The rates of S<sub>N</sub>2 reactions are also affected by the polarity of the solvent:

$$\stackrel{-}{\text{HO}} \quad \stackrel{\wedge}{\text{R-X}} \Longrightarrow \stackrel{\$^-}{\text{HO}} \stackrel{\$^-}{\text{NO}} \longrightarrow \stackrel{\$^-}{\text{HO}} \longrightarrow \text{HO-R} + \text{X-}$$

A solvent with a high dipole moment will solvate both the reactant ion (nucleophilic reagent) and the transition state, but more so the former than the latter, since in the latter the charge, although unchanged in magnitude ( $\delta^- = 1/2$ ), is more dispersed than in the former. Therefore solvation tends to stabilise the reactants more than the transition state (rule iv). Thus the activation energy is increased, and so the reaction is retarded.

The rate of the following S<sub>N2</sub> reaction is increased as the polarity of the

solvent increases.

$$R_3$$
N  $R-X \Longrightarrow R_3-N$   $R-X \longrightarrow R_4N^+X^-$ 

Here the charge on the transition state is greater than that on the reactants. Hence the transition state is more solvated than the reactants and con-

sequently stabilised, and so the activation energy is lowered.

The polarity of the solvent may change the mechanism of a reaction, e.g., Olivier (1934) showed that the alkaline hydrolysis of benzyl chloride in 50 per cent. aqueous acetone proceeds by both  $S_N2$  and  $S_N1$  mechanisms. When water was used as solvent, the mechanism was now mainly  $S_N1$ . The dipole moment of water is greater than that of aqueous acetone, and so ionisation of the benzyl chloride is facilitated.

2. Alkyl halides are reduced by nascent hydrogen (Zn/Cu or Na and

ethanol, Sn and HCl, etc.) to form the corresponding paraffins:

$$RX + 2[H] \longrightarrow RH + HX$$

Lithium aluminium hydride also effects this reduction.

Alkyl *iodides* may be reduced by heating them with concentrated hydriodic acid and a small amount of red phosphorus at 150°.

$$RI + HI \longrightarrow RH + I_2$$

Since alcohols are readily converted into the corresponding halide, this offers a method of converting alcohols into paraffins with the *same* number of carbon atoms.

3. Alkyl halides undergo the Wurtz reaction to form paraffins (p. 51):

$$2RX + 2Na \longrightarrow R-R + 2NaX$$

On the other hand alkyl halides, when heated with certain metallic alloys, form organo-metallic compounds, e.g., ethyl chloride heated with a sodium lead alloy under pressure gives tetraethyl-lead:

$$4C_2H_5Cl + 4Na/Pb \longrightarrow (C_2H_5)_4Pb + 4NaCl + 3Pb$$

4. When an alkyl halide is heated at about 300°, and at a lower temperature in the presence of aluminium chloride as catalyst, the alkyl halide undergoes rearrangement, e.g., 1-bromobutane rearranges to 2-bromobutane:

If there is no hydrogen atom on the carbon adjacent to the C—X group, an alkyl group migrates; e.g., neopentyl chloride rearranges to 2-chloro-2-methylbutane (see also p. 102):

$$(CH_3)_3C \cdot CH_2Cl \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2CCl \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3$$

5. When alkyl halides are boiled with ethanolic potassium hydroxide, olefins are obtained, e.g., propyl bromide gives propylene:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2Br + KOH \xrightarrow{ethanol} CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_2 + KBr + H_2O$$

According to Hughes and Ingold (1941), the elimination reaction between an alkyl halide and aqueous potassium hydroxide may take place by either a unimolecular (E1) or a bimolecular (E2) mechanism.

(i) E1: 
$$H-CH_2-CH_2\xrightarrow{X} \xrightarrow{slow} H-CH_2-CH_2^+ + X^ HO\xrightarrow{X} H-CH_2\xrightarrow{C}CH_2^+ \xrightarrow{fast} H_2O + CH_2=CH_2$$
(ii) E2:  $HO\xrightarrow{X} H-CH_2\xrightarrow{C}CH_2\xrightarrow{X} \to H_2O + CH_2=CH_2 + X^-$ 

On the other hand, in ethanolic potassium hydroxide, which contains potassium alkoxide  $RO^-K^+$ , the reaction tends to take place by an E2 (iii) or an  $S_{\rm N}2$  (iv) mechanism.

(iii) 
$$RO^{-1}H \xrightarrow{CH_2} CH_2 \xrightarrow{X} \longrightarrow ROH + CH_2 = CH_2 + X^{-1}$$
  
(iv)  $RO^{-1}CH_3 \xrightarrow{CH_3} \longrightarrow RO \xrightarrow{CH_3} + X^{-1}$ 

The course of the reaction depends on the nature of the alkyl halide and on the conditions used. Under the most favourable conditions for ethylene formation, ethyl halides give only I per cent. ethylene, the main products being replacement products. *iso*Propyl halide gives up to 80 per cent. propylene, and tertiary butyl halide 100 per cent. *iso*butene if the reaction is carried out in *ethanolic* potassium hydroxide, which favours the bimolecular mechanisms (iii) and (iv).

When two olefins may be formed by dehydrohalogenation of an alkyl halide, the one that predominates is that which is the most substituted olefin, i.e., the one carrying the largest number of alkyl substituents (Saytzeff's rule, 1875), e.g.,

$$CH_3 \cdot CHBr \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 - CH_3 \cdot CH = CH \cdot CH_3 \quad (I)$$

$$CH_3 \cdot CH = CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \quad (II)$$

(I) predominates (this is a disubstituted ethylene, whereas (II) is a monosubstituted ethylene).

Another way of stating Saytzeff's rule is that hydrogen is eliminated from that carbon atom joined to the least number of hydrogen atoms. Ingold et al. (1941)

have offered the following explanation for this rule. If (I) and (II) are produced by an E2 mechanism, their formation may be written as follows:

(v) 
$$HO^{-1}H \xrightarrow{CH}CH \xrightarrow{CH_3}H_2O + CH \xrightarrow{CH_3}CH_3$$
 (vi)  $HO^{-1}H \xrightarrow{CH_2}CH_2 \xrightarrow{CH_3}H_2O + CH_2 \xrightarrow{CH_3}CH_3$  (vi)  $CH_2 \xrightarrow{CH_3}CH_3$  (vi)  $CH_3 \xrightarrow{CH_3}CH_3$  (II)

In the transition state of (v), the CH<sub>3</sub> group can enter into hyperconjugation with the partly formed double bond (p. 269), thereby lowering the energy of the transition state. In (vi), however, the CH<sub>3</sub> group cannot enter into hyperconjugation with the partly formed double bond, and so the energy of this transition state is higher than that of (v), and consequently the latter path is favoured.

On the basis that the hyperconjugative effect determines the stability of the olefin produced, it can be deduced that the ease of formation of olefin from an alkyl halide by the E2 mechanism should be t-R>s-R>p-R, e.g., t-Bu (2 Me groups)>isoPr (1 Me group)> Et (no Me groups):

Saytzeff's rule also applies when the mechanism is E1. In this mechanism the formation of the carbonium ion is the rate-determining step (as for the S<sub>N</sub>I mechanism), and then the carbonium ion stabilises itself by elimination of a proton to form an olefin, the stability of which will be largely determined by the

hyperconjugative effect.

Steric factors also appear to play a part in the direction of olefin formation. Thus Brown et al. (1953) have shown that potassium t.-butoxide gives 53'4 per cent. of (II), and potassium ethoxide 19 per cent. of (II). Brown et al. (1956) have also shown that in the molecule R·CH<sub>2</sub>·CBr(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, as R increases in branching (methyl<ethyl<isopropyl<t-butyl), a regular increase is obtained in the ratio of 1-/2-olefin in the product. These authors also showed that when the potassium salts of ethanol, t.-butanol, t.-pentanol and triethylmethanol are used with secondary and tertiary alkyl bromides, the yield of 1-olefin is increased from the left to the right alkoxide.

A point of interest here is that substitution and elimination often occur together. Experimental results have shown that for a given compound, the olefin yield is higher for the E2 mechanism than for the E1. Since a high concentration of the base with high nucleophilic power favours the E2 mechanism, olefin preparation is best carried out in concentrated solutions of strong bases. Furthermore, since ionising solvents favour the E1 mechanism, the preparation of olefins is best carried out in solvents with low ionising power. Thus ethanolic sodium hydroxide solution (solvent of low ionising power and a very strong base, OEt-) gives better olefin yield than does aqueous sodium hydroxide (solvent of high ionising power and a base, OH-, which is weaker than OEt-). Also, a base of weak nucleophilic power will have little affinity for hydrogen, and consequently olefin forma-

tion will be decreased and substitution encouraged. The acetate ion is a very weak base, and hence its use will give an ester as the main product rather than olefin. Thus the conversion of an alkyl halide into the alcohol is often best carried out via the ester, which is then hydrolysed.

6. When alkyl halides are heated with ethanolic ammonia under pressure,

a mixture of amines, i.e., substituted ammonias, is obtained, e.g.,

$$RX + NH_3 \longrightarrow R \cdot NH_2 + HX \longrightarrow R \cdot NH_2 \cdot HX$$
 or  $[R \cdot NH_3] + X^-$ 

Only primary alkyl halides give good yields of amines; secondary—except isopropyl halide—and tertiary halides form mainly olefins.

7. When alkyl halides are heated with aqueous ethanolic potassium

cyanide, alkyl cyanides are obtained:

$$RX + KCN \longrightarrow RCN + KX$$

Tertiary alkyl cyanides cannot usually be prepared this way, since tertiary alkyl halides tend to eliminate hydrogen halide very readily when treated with potassium cyanide.

Alkyl cyanides are very important compounds, since they may be used

to prepare many other compounds, e.g., acids, amines, etc.

When alkyl halides are heated with aqueous ethanolic silver cyanide, cyanides and the isocyanides are formed:

$$RX + AgCN \longrightarrow R \cdot CN + AgX$$
  
 $RX + AgCN \longrightarrow R \cdot NC + AgX$ 

8. When alkyl halides are heated with an ethanolic solution of a silver salt, esters are obtained:

$$R \cdot CO_2Ag + R'X \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2R' + AgX$$

The acid may be organic or inorganic. If the salt is silver nitrite two isomeric compounds are obtained, the *nitrite* (ester) and the *nitro*-compound:

9. When alkyl halides are heated with sodium alkoxides, i.e., sodium derivatives of the alcohols, ethers are obtained. This is the Williamson synthesis (see p. 141):

$$RONa + R'X \longrightarrow R \cdot O \cdot R' + NaX$$

A modification of this reaction is to heat together an alkyl halide and an alcohol in the presence of *dry* silver oxide:

$$_{2}$$
ROH +  $_{2}$ R'I +  $_{2}$ Q  $\longrightarrow$   $_{2}$ R·O·R' +  $_{2}$ AgI +  $_{2}$ Q

This reaction is known as the Purdie method of alkylation, and is very important in sugar chemistry.

10. Alkyl halides heated with aqueous ethanolic sodium hydrogen sulphide form thioalcohols:

II. Alkyl halides heated with an ethanolic solution of a mercaptide, i.e., a metallic derivative of a thioalcohol, form thioethers:

$$RX + R'SNa \longrightarrow R \cdot S \cdot R' + NaX$$

12. When alkyl halides are heated with sodium, potassium or ammonium sulphite, a sulphonate is formed. This is known as the Strecker reaction:

13. Alkyl halides may be used in the *Friedel-Crafts* reaction, e.g., benzene reacts with methyl iodide in the presence of anhydrous aluminium chloride to form toluene:

$$C_6H_6 + CH_3I \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} C_6H_5 \cdot CH_3 + HI$$

14. Alkyl halides are used to prepare Grignard reagents:

$$RX + Mg \xrightarrow{\text{ether}} R - Mg - X$$

Methyl chloride, CH3Cl, is prepared industrially:

(i) By the action of hydrogen chloride on methanol in the presence of anhydrous zinc chloride:

$$CH_3OH + HCl \xrightarrow{ZnCl_3} CH_3Cl + H_2O$$

(ii) By heating trimethylamine hydrochloride with hydrochloric acid under pressure:

$$(CH_3)_3N\cdot HCl + 3HCl \longrightarrow 3CH_3Cl + NH_4Cl$$

(iii) By chlorinating methane with chlorine diluted with nitrogen, the ratio by volume of  $CH_4: Cl_2: N_2$  being 8: r: 80. The reaction is carried out in the presence of partly reduced cupric chloride as catalyst. All four chloromethanes are obtained, the methyl chloride comprising 90 per cent. of the chlorine used:

$$CH_4 + Cl_2 + (N_2) \longrightarrow CH_3Cl + HCl + (N_2) + (CH_2Cl_2 + CHCl_3 + CCl_4)$$

By adjusting the ratio of chlorine to methane, each chloromethane can

be obtained as the main product.

Methyl chloride is a colourless gas, b.p.  $-24^{\circ}$ . It is fairly soluble in water, and readily in ethanol. It is used in the manufacture of aniline dyes, as a refrigerating agent, local anæsthetic and as a fire extinguisher.

Methyl iodide, CH3I, is prepared industrially:

(i) By warming a mixture of methanol and red phosphorus with iodine:

$$6CH_3OH + 2P + 3I_2 \longrightarrow 6CH_3I + 2H_3PO_3$$

(ii) By the action of methyl sulphate on potassium iodide solution in the presence of calcium carbonate:

$$KI + (CH_3)_2SO_4 \longrightarrow CH_3I + K(CH_3)SO_4$$
 (90-94%)

Methyl iodide is a sweet-smelling liquid, b.p. 42.5°. Since it is a liquid, it is easier to handle than methyl chloride, and so is used a great deal as a methylating agent in laboratory organic syntheses, but the chloride is used industrially, since it is cheaper.

Ethyl chloride, C2H5Cl, is prepared industrially:

(i) By the action of hydrogen chloride on ethanol in the presence of anhydrous zinc chloride:

$$C_2H_5OH + HCl \xrightarrow{ZnCl_9} C_2H_5Cl + H_2O$$

(ii) By the addition of hydrogen chloride to ethylene (from cracked petroleum) in the presence of aluminium chloride as catalyst:

$$C_2H_4 + HCl \xrightarrow{AlCl_4} C_2H_5Cl$$

Ethyl chloride is a gas, b.p. 12.5°. It is used in the preparation of tetraethyl-lead, sulphonal, etc., and as a refrigerating agent.

### DIHALOGEN DERIVATIVES

# General methods of preparation. gem-Dihalides may be prepared:

(i) By the action of phosphorus pentahalides on aldehydes or ketones; e.g., acetone gives isopropylidene chloride when treated with phosphorus pentachloride:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + PCl_5 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CCl_2 \cdot CH_3 + POCl_3$$

(ii) By the addition of halogen acids to the acetylenes, e.g., ethylidene bromide from acetylene and hydrogen bromide:

$$CH = CH + HBr \longrightarrow CH_2 = CHBr \xrightarrow{HBr} CH_3 \cdot CHBr_2$$

vic-Dihalides may be prepared by the addition of halogen to olefins, e.g., propylene bromide from propylene and bromine:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_2 + Br_2 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CHBr \cdot CH_2Br$$

The method of preparing an  $\alpha\omega$ -dihalide is special to the particular halide, e.g., trimethylene bromide may be prepared by the addition of hydrogen bromide to allyl bromide at low temperatures:

Oldham (1950), however, has found that  $\alpha\omega$ -dibromides may be prepared by the action of bromine in carbon tetrachloride on the silver salt of a dibasic acid (cf. p. 105):

$$(CH_2)_n(CO_2Ag)_2 + 2Br_2 \longrightarrow Br \cdot (CH_2)_n \cdot Br + 2AgBr + 2CO_2.$$

The yields are very good provided n is 5 or more.

General properties and reactions of the dihalides. The dihalides are sweet-smelling, colourless liquids. gem-Dihalides are not as reactive as the alkyl halides. It has been found that the polarity of the C—Cl bond decreases progressively from methyl chloride, methylene chloride, chloroform and carbon tetrachloride. Therefore the reactivity of chlorine decreases progressively in these compounds in the same order (i.e., from methyl chloride to carbon tetrachloride; cf. p. 105).

gem-Dihalides are hydrolysed by aqueous alkalis to the corresponding carbonyl compound (aldehyde or ketone), e.g., isopropylidene chloride

gives acetone:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CCl}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_3 + 2\text{KOH} \longrightarrow 2\text{KCl} + [\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{C}(\text{OH})_2\text{-}\text{CH}_3] \longrightarrow \\ \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO}\text{-}\text{CH}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

It has generally been found that a compound containing two (or more) hydroxyl groups attached to the *same* carbon atom is unstable, and readily eliminates a molecule of water (see p. 168).

gem-Dihalides give olefins when treated with zinc dust and methanol (p. 64), and acetylenes when treated with ethanolic potassium hydroxide

(p. 90).

vic- and αω-Dihalides are just as reactive as the alkyl halides. When heated with zinc and methanol, vic-dihalides give olefins (p. 64), but awdihalides in which the two halogen atoms are in the I: 3 to the I: 6 positions give cyclic compounds, e.g., trimethylene bromide gives cyclopropane:

$$\mathsf{CH_2} \overset{\mathsf{CH_2Br}}{\longleftarrow} + \mathsf{Zn} \overset{\mathsf{CH_2}}{\longrightarrow} \mathsf{CH_2} \overset{\mathsf{CH_2}}{\longleftarrow} + \mathsf{ZnBr_2}$$

vic-Di-iodides tend to eliminate iodine, particularly at raised temperatures, to form olefins, e.g., propylene iodide gives propylene:

$$CH_3 \cdot CHI \cdot CH_2I \xrightarrow{heat} CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_2 + I_2$$

This property has been used to regenerate the double bond from vic-dichlorides or dibromides. These are heated with sodium iodide in ethanol, and the vic-diiodide formed decomposes into the olefin:

$$CBr\cdot CBr \leftarrow + 2NaI \xrightarrow{ethanol} 2NaBr + [CI\cdot CI \leftarrow ] \longrightarrow C=C \leftarrow + I_2$$

Methylene chloride, CH2Cl2 (liquid, b.p. 40°), was formerly prepared industrially by partially reducing chloroform with zinc and hydrogen chloride in ethanolic solution:

$$CHCl_3 + 2[H] \longrightarrow CH_2Cl_2 + HCl$$

It is now also prepared industrially by the direct chlorination of methane

(see methyl chloride). It is used as an industrial solvent.

Methylene bromide, CH<sub>2</sub>Br<sub>2</sub> (b.p. 97°), and methylene iodide, CH<sub>2</sub>I<sub>2</sub> (b.p. 181°), are prepared by the partial reduction of bromoform and iodoform, respectively, with sodium arsenite in alkaline solution (the yield of CH<sub>2</sub>Br<sub>2</sub> is 88-90 per cent.; CH<sub>2</sub>I<sub>2</sub>, 90-97 per cent.), e.g.,

$$CHI_3 + Na_3AsO_3 + NaOH \longrightarrow CH_2I_2 + NaI + Na_3AsO_4$$

All the methylene halides are used in organic syntheses.

Ethylene chloride, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl·CH<sub>2</sub>Cl (b.p. 84°), and ethylidene chloride, CH<sub>3</sub>·CHCl<sub>2</sub> (b.p. 57°), are isomers; the former is prepared from ethylene and chlorine, and the latter by the action of phosphorus pentachloride on acetaldehyde (q.v.).

# TRIHALOGEN DERIVATIVES

The most important trihalogen derivatives are those of methane, and they are usually known by their trivial names: chloroform, CHCl3, bromo-

form, CHBr3 and iodoform, CHI3.

Chloroform may be prepared in the laboratory or industrially by heating ethanol or acetone with bleaching powder, or with chlorine and alkali (vield about 40 per cent.). The reaction is extremely complicated, and the mechanism is obscure (see chloral, p. 168).

The equations usually given for the action of bleaching powder on ethanol are: (i) oxidation of ethanol to acetaldehyde; (ii) chlorination of acetaldehyde to trichloroacetaldehyde; (iii) decomposition of trichloroacetaldehyde (chloral) by free calcium hydroxide (present in the bleaching powder) into chloroform and formic acid:

(i)  $\text{CH}_3\text{-CH}_2\text{OH} + \text{Cl}_2 \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{-CHO} + 2\text{HCl}$ (ii)  $\text{CH}_3\text{-CHO} + 3\text{Cl}_2 \longrightarrow \text{CCl}_3\text{-CHO} + 3\text{HCl}$ (iii)  $2\text{CCl}_3\text{-CHO} + \text{Cs}(\text{OH})_2 \longrightarrow 2\text{CHCl}_8 + (\text{H}\text{-CO}_2)_3\text{Ca}$ 

When acetone is used, the first product given is trichloroacetone, which is then decomposed by the calcium hydroxide into chloroform and acetic acid:

(i) 
$$\text{CH}_3\text{*CO*CH}_3 + 3\text{Cl}_2 \longrightarrow \text{CCl}_3\text{*CO*CH}_3 + 3\text{HCl}$$
  
(ii)  ${}_2\text{CCl}_3\text{*CO*CH}_3 + \text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2 \longrightarrow {}_2\text{CHCl}_3 + (\text{CH}_3\text{*CO}_2)_2\text{Ca}$ 

Chloroform is also prepared industrially:

(i) By the chlorination of methane (see methyl chloride).

(ii) By the partial reduction of carbon tetrachloride with iron filings and water:

$$CCl_4 + 2[H] \longrightarrow CHCl_3 + HCl$$

When prepared this way chloroform is used for solvent purposes, and not for anæsthesia (see later).

Pure chloroform may be prepared by distilling chloral hydrate with aqueous sodium hydroxide:

$$CCl_3 \cdot CH(OH)_2 + NaOH \longrightarrow CHCl_3 + H \cdot CO_2Na + H_2O$$

Chloroform is a sickly, sweet-smelling, colourless liquid, b.p. 61°. It is sparingly soluble in water but readily soluble in ethanol and ether. It does not burn in air under usual conditions, but its vapour may be ignited, when it burns with a green-edged flame. According to Hine (1950, 1954), chloroform (and other haloforms) undergoes alkaline hydrolysis to produce the formate ion and carbon monoxide by what Hine calls the alpha-elimination mechanism; this involves the removal of hydrogen and chloride ions from the same carbon atom.

The mechanism proposed is as follows, involving the intermediate formation of dichloromethylene:

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CHCl_3} + \mathrm{OH^-} \Longrightarrow \mathrm{:CCl_3^-} + \mathrm{H_2O} \\ \mathrm{:CCl_3^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{:CCl_2} + \mathrm{Cl^-} \\ \mathrm{:CCl_2} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{H_2O}]{\mathrm{CO}} + \mathrm{HCO_2^-} \end{array}$$

Robinson (1961) has proposed, on kinetic evidence, that the intermediate dichloromethylene most likely decomposes to carbon monoxide as follows:

$$: CCl_2 + H_2O \longrightarrow H_2O \xrightarrow{-} CCl_2 \xrightarrow{-H^+} HO - CCl_2 \xrightarrow{-Cl_-} HO - C - Cl \xrightarrow{-Cl_-} CO$$

Formate is then formed as follows:

An interesting point about dichloromethylene is its reluctance to react with hydroxide ion.

When chloroform is treated with zinc and hydrogen chloride in ethanolic solution, methylene chloride (q.v.) is obtained; when treated with zinc and water, methane is obtained:

$$CHCl_3 + 6[H] \xrightarrow{Zn/H_2O} CH_4 + 3HCl$$

When chloroform is warmed with silver powder, acetylene is obtained:

$$_2$$
CHCl $_3 + 6$ Ag  $\longrightarrow$  C $_2$ H $_2 + 6$ AgCl

When treated with concentrated nitric acid, chloroform forms chloropicrin:

Chloropicrin or nitrochloroform (liquid, b.p. 112°) is used as an insecticide, and has been used as a war-gas. Chloroform adds on to the carbonyl

group of ketones in the presence of potassium hydroxide, e.g., with acetone it forms chloretone (colourless needles, m.p. 97°), which is used as a drug:

$$(CH_3)_2C = O + CHCl_3 \xrightarrow{KOH} (CH_3)_2C(OH) \cdot CCl_3$$

Chloroform is employed in surgery as an anæsthetic, and for this purpose it should be pure. In the presence of air and light, chloroform slowly forms carbonyl chloride, which is extremely poisonous:

$$CHCl_3 + \frac{1}{2}O_2 \longrightarrow COCl_2 + HCl$$

Chlorine, water and carbon dioxide are also produced. Anæsthetic chloroform is therefore kept in well-stoppered dark-brown or blue bottles. Ethanol is also added (I per cent.), but its function is not quite clear. According to some authors, it *retards* the decomposition of the chloroform. This is supported by the fact that infra-red measurements of such mixtures show the absence of the carbonyl frequency.

A delicate test for chloroform is the "isocyanide test". This is carried out by heating chloroform with ethanolic potassium hydroxide and aniline, whereby phenyl isocyanide is formed, and is readily detected by its nauseat-

ing odour:

$$CHCl_3 + 3KOH + C_6H_5 \cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot NC + 3KCl + 3H_2O$$

Chloroform is widely used in industry as a solvent for fats, waxes, resins,

rubber, etc.

Bromoform may be prepared by methods similar to those used for chloroform, but it is prepared industrially by the electrolysis of an aqueous solution of acetone or ethanol containing sodium carbonate and potassium bromide (acetone gives a better yield than ethanol). The solution is maintained at about 20°, and hydrobromic acid is run in to neutralise the sodium hydroxide produced during the electrolysis. Bromine is set free at the anode, and probably reacts in the same way as does chlorine in the preparation of chloroform.

Bromoform is a liquid, b.p. 149.5°, and smells like chloroform, which it

closely resembles chemically.

Iodoform is prepared industrially by the electrolysis of an aqueous solution of ethanol or acetone containing sodium carbonate and potassium iodide (ethanol gives a better yield than acetone). The solution is maintained at 60–70°, and a current of carbon dioxide is passed through the solution to neutralise the sodium hydroxide formed.

Iodoform crystallises in yellow hexagonal plates, m.p. 119°. It is insoluble in water, but is readily soluble in ethanol and ether. It is used as an antiseptic, but its antiseptic properties are due to the liberation of free iodine, and not to iodoform itself. Iodoform chemically resembles chloro-

form and bromoform.

## POLYHALOGEN DERIVATIVES

Carbon tetrachloride, CCl4, is prepared industrially in several ways:

(i) By the action of chlorine on carbon disulphide in the presence of aluminium chloride as catalyst:

$$CS_2 + 3Cl_2 \xrightarrow{AlCl_0} CCl_4 + S_2Cl_2$$

The sulphur monochloride is removed by fractional distillation, and the carbon tetrachloride is then shaken with sodium hydroxide, and finally distilled.

(ii) By the chlorination of methane (see methyl chloride).

(iii) By chlorinolysis. This term was suggested by McBee, Hass and coworkers (1941) to describe the process of chlorinating an organic compound under conditions which rupture the carbon–carbon bond to yield chlorocompounds with fewer carbon atoms than the original compound. Chlorinolysis may be effected with or without a catalyst, e.g., the hydrocarbon and chlorine are heated at high temperature (300–400°) and under high pressure (about 1000 lb./sq. in.). The product is usually a mixture, e.g., propane gives both carbon tetrachloride and hexachloroethane:

$$C_3H_8 \xrightarrow{Cl_2} CCl_4 + C_2Cl_6$$

Carbon tetrachloride is a colourless liquid, b.p. 77°, which has a sickly smell. It is insoluble in water but readily soluble in ethanol and ether. Since its vapour is non-inflammable, carbon tetrachloride is widely used as an industrial solvent (for fats, oils, resins, lacquers, etc.). It is also used as a fire-extinguisher under the name of *Pyrene*.

Carbon tetrachloride is stable at red heat (about 500°), but when its vapour comes into contact with water vapour at this temperature, some carbonyl chloride is formed:

$$CCl_4 + H_2O \longrightarrow COCl_2 + 2HCl$$

Hence after using pyrene to extinguish a fire, the room should be well ventilated.

Carbon tetrachloride is reduced by moist iron filings to chloroform (q.v.). The alkaline hydrolysis of carbon tetrachloride gives the same products (formate and carbon monoxide) as chloroform, but the rate of reaction is slower (Hine, 1954).

Tetrachloroethane or acetylene tetrachloride, CHCl<sub>2</sub>·CHCl<sub>2</sub>, is prepared by passing acetylene and chlorine into chambers filled with a mixture of kieselguhr and iron filings. This method is used since the combination of acetylene and chlorine is usually explosive unless a catalyst (and preferably a diluent) is present.

Acetylene tetrachloride is a very toxic, colourless liquid, b.p. 146°. It smells like chloroform; it is non-inflammable, and hence is widely used, under the name of *Westron*, as a solvent for oils, fats, paints, varnishes, rubber, etc.

When passed over heated barium chloride as catalyst, acetylene tetrachloride eliminates a molecule of hydrogen chloride to form trichloroethylene:

Trichloroethylene is a colourless liquid, b.p. 88-90°. It smells like chloroform, and is non-inflammable. It is more stable and less toxic than acetylene tetrachloride, and hence is more widely used as an industrial solvent, under the name of Westrosol, than Westron.

Hexachloroethane (perchloroethane), C2Cl6, may be prepared:

(i) By the chlorinolysis of propane (see carbon tetrachloride).
 (ii) By passing ethylene mixed with 10 per cent. excess of chlorine through a pyrex tube packed with activated charcoal at 300-350°:

$$C_2H_4 + 5Cl_2 \longrightarrow C_2Cl_6 + 4HCl$$

The excess chlorine prevents the formation of lower chlorinated products.

(iii) By passing a mixture of acetylene tetrachloride and chlorine over aluminium chloride as catalyst:

$$C_2H_2Cl_4 + 2Cl_2 \xrightarrow{AlCl_4} C_2Cl_6 + 2HCl$$

(iv) By treating trichloroethylene with chlorine and passing the pentachloroethane so produced over heated barium chloride, thus forming tetrachloroethylene, which, in turn, gives hexachloroethane when treated with chlorine:

$$\text{CHCl} = \text{CCl}_2 + \text{Cl}_2 \longrightarrow \text{CHCl}_2 \cdot \text{CCl}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{BaCl}_{\bullet}} \text{CCl}_2 = \text{CCl}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Cl}_{\bullet}} \text{CCl}_3 \cdot \text{CCl}_3$$

Hexachloroethane is a solid, m.p. 187°. It smells like camphor and is used as a substitute for it.

s-Dichloroethylene, CHCl=CHCl, may be prepared by the action of finely divided zinc on acetylene tetrachloride in the presence of water:

$$\text{CHCl}_2\text{-}\text{CHCl}_2 + 2\text{[H]} \xrightarrow{\text{Zn/H}_2\text{O}} \text{CHCl} \Rightarrow \text{CHCl} + 2\text{HCl}$$

It is a liquid and exists in two forms, the cis, b.p. 60°, and trans, b.p. 48° (see p. 427 for the meanings of cis and trans).

Dichloroethylene is used as a rubber solvent.

The halogen atom in the group =CHX is very unreactive (see p. 266). An important property of the chlorinated unsaturated hydrocarbons is their ability to add on chloroform or carbon tetrachloride in the presence of aluminium chloride as catalyst, e.g., dichloroethylene forms 1:1:1:2:3:3-hexachloropropane with carbon tetrachloride:

Paraffin wax has been chlorinated, and the products are used for dielectric materials, protective coatings for fabrics, etc. Polychloro-derivatives of ethane, propane and butadiene are used as dielectric materials, solvents (non-inflammable), insecticides, plasticisers, etc.

# FLUORINE DERIVATIVES OF THE PARAFFINS

Most organic compounds burn or explode when treated with fluorine gas. Carbon heated in fluorine is attacked, sometimes explosively, with the formation of mainly  $CF_4$ , and small amounts of  $C_2F_6$ ,  $C_2F_4$ ,  $C_3F_8$  and some other products.

Aliphatic fluorine compounds may be obtained in several ways:

(i) Direct fluorination of hydrocarbons may be carried out successfully by diluting the fluorine with nitrogen, and carrying out the reaction in a metal tube packed with copper gauze at a temperature of 150–350°. It is very difficult to control the fluorination, and the product is usually a complex mixture, e.g., methane gives CH<sub>3</sub>F, CH<sub>2</sub>F<sub>2</sub>, CHF<sub>3</sub>, CF<sub>4</sub>, C<sub>2</sub>F<sub>6</sub> and C<sub>3</sub>F<sub>8</sub>; ethane gives CF<sub>4</sub>, C<sub>2</sub>F<sub>6</sub>, CH<sub>3</sub>·CHF<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>F·CHF<sub>2</sub>; no mono- or s-diffuoroethane is obtained.

When catalysts other than copper (actually CuF<sub>2</sub>) are used, e.g., AgF, CoF<sub>2</sub>, CeF<sub>3</sub>, MnF<sub>2</sub>, perfluoro-compounds are obtained, e.g., n-heptane gives perfluoroheptane:

$$\begin{array}{c} 2\text{AgF} + \text{F}_2 \longrightarrow 2\text{AgF}_2 \\ \text{C}_7\text{H}_{16} \stackrel{\text{AgF}_2}{\longrightarrow} \text{C}_7\text{F}_{16} \end{array}$$

It appears that when a catalyst is used, the perfluoro-compound obtained usually has the same number of carbon atoms as the original compound; if no catalyst is used, fluoro-compounds with fewer carbon atoms are usually obtained.

The mechanism of direct fluorination is still obscure, but it appears that the first step is the conversion of the catalyst into a higher fluoride, e.g., AgF into AgF<sub>2</sub>; CoF<sub>2</sub> into CoF<sub>3</sub>, etc. Some of these higher fluorides have been isolated, e.g., AgF<sub>2</sub>.

(ii) Olefins and acetylenes add on hydrogen fluoride under pressure to form fluoro-derivatives of the paraffins, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} C_2H_4 + HF \longrightarrow C_2H_5F \quad (\textit{f.g.-g.}) \\ CH_3 \cdot C \equiv CH + 2HF \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CF_2 \cdot CH_3 \quad (\textit{f.g.-g.}) \end{array}$$

If the unsaturated compound contains a halogen atom (other than fluorine), this atom may be replaced by fluorine, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{R-CCl} & \leftarrow \text{CH}_2 + \text{HF} & \longrightarrow \text{R-CFcl-CH}_3 \\ \text{R-CCl} & \leftarrow \text{CH}_2 + \text{2HF} & \longrightarrow \text{R-CF}_2 & \leftarrow \text{CH}_3 + \text{HCl} \end{array}$$

Lead tetrafluoride (from lead dioxide and hydrogen fluoride) is particularly useful for introducing two fluorine atoms into an olefin containing chlorine, e.g.,

$${\tt CCl_2 = CCl_2 + PbF_4 \overset{\tt 25^o}{\longrightarrow} CFCl_2 \cdot CFCl_2 + PbF_2}$$

It is also possible to add fluorine directly without a catalyst to highly halogenated olefins, e.g.,

$$CFCl = CFCl + F_2 - \Rightarrow CF_2Cl \cdot CF_2Cl$$

(iii) By treating an alcohol with hydrogen fluoride, e.g.,

$$C_2H_5OH + HF \longrightarrow C_2H_5F + H_2O$$

This reaction is very little used in practice. On the other hand, alkyl fluorides may be prepared by heating alkyl toluene-p-sulphonates with potassium fluoride (Bergmann et al., 1958).

(iv) Fluorine compounds may be prepared indirectly by heating organic halides with inorganic fluorides such as AsF<sub>3</sub>, SbF<sub>3</sub>, AgF, Hg<sub>2</sub>F<sub>2</sub>, etc., e.g.,

$$C_2H_5Cl + AgF \longrightarrow C_2H_5F + AgCl$$
 (ex.)

This method was first used by Swarts (1898), and so is known as the Swarts reaction.

When the organic halide contains two or three halogen atoms attached to the same carbon atom, the best yield of fluoride is obtained when CoF<sub>3</sub> is used, but SbF<sub>3</sub> gives yields almost as good (and is more accessible), e.g.,

$$3CH_3 \cdot CCl_2 \cdot CH_3 + 2SbF_3 \longrightarrow 3CH_3 \cdot CF_2 \cdot CH_3 + 2SbCl_3 \quad (v.g.)$$

Alternatively, hydrogen fluoride may be used under pressure in the presence of a catalyst, e.g.,

$$CCl_4 \xrightarrow{HF : 300^{\circ}} CF_2Cl_2 + CFCl_3$$

(v) A newer method of fluorination is the direct electrolytic method. Nickel electrodes are used, and electrochemical fluorination takes place at the anode, the reaction being carried out by the electrolysis of a solution of the organic compound in anhydrous hydrogen fluoride, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_3 \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow CF_3 \cdot COF \\ C_2H_5 \cdot O \cdot C_2H_5 \longrightarrow C_2H_5 \cdot O \cdot C_2F_5 \end{array}$$

The particular merit of this method is that it usually leaves untouched many types of functional groups.

Sulphur tetrafluoride is a very useful fluorinating agent, since it replaces oxygen atoms by fluorine; thus:

$$R \cdot CO_2H \xrightarrow{SF_4} R \cdot CF_3$$
;  $R_2CO \longrightarrow R_2CF_2$ ;  $ROH \longrightarrow RF$ 

The lower n-alkyl fluorides are gases. The first four members are stable, and the higher members tend to decompose spontaneously into olefin and hydrogen fluoride, e.g.,

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 + HF$$

Secondary and tertiary alkyl fluorides are so unstable that it is impossible to prepare them free from olefin.

vic-Difluorides are also usually unstable, e.g., ethylene fluoride decomposes spontaneously at o° into hydrogen fluoride and butadiene:

$$_2\text{CH}_2\text{F}\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{F} \longrightarrow _4\text{HF} + _\text{CH}_2\text{:CH}\cdot\text{CH}:\text{CH}_2$$

Alkyl fluorides are readily hydrolysed by strong acids to the corresponding alcohols; alkalis have no effect. On the other hand, ethylene fluoride is immediately hydrolysed by water to glycol:

$$CH_2F \cdot CH_2F + 2H_2O \longrightarrow CH_2OH \cdot CH_2OH + 2HF$$

Fluorides with two or three fluorine atoms on the same carbon atom are

stable to water and strong acids, e.g., CHF3, CHF2 CHF2, etc.

Alkyl fluorides do not react with sodium, i.e., do not undergo the Wurtz reaction, and do not form Grignard reagents. An interesting compound is trifluoromethyl iodide, CF3I. It is converted into fluoroform, CHF3, by potassium hydroxide, and it combines directly with many non-metals such as P, As, Sb, S, Se, to give, e.g., with phosphorus, (CF3)3P, (CF3)2PI and CF<sub>3</sub>·PI<sub>2</sub>.

Chlorofluoro-derivatives of methane and ethane are used as refrigerants and for air-conditioning under the name of Freons, which are prepared by the action of hydrogen fluoride on carbon tetrachloride, chloroform and

hexachloroethane.

Tetrafluoroethylene, C2F4 (gas), is prepared by the action of antimony trifluoride and hydrogen fluoride on chloroform, and then heating the chlorodifluoromethane so produced at 800°:

$$\text{CHCl}_3 \xrightarrow[\text{HF}]{\text{SbF}_4} \text{CHF}_2 \text{Cl} \xrightarrow[\text{NF}_4]{\text{Soo}^\circ} \text{C}_2 \text{F}_4 + 2 \text{HCl} + \text{other products}$$

When tetrafluoroethylene is polymerised, the plastic Tefton is produced. Teflon is difficult to work, but is inert to chemical reagents, even to boiling aqua regia.

Polychlorofluoroethylenes are valuable as oils and greases. Perfluoroheptane is useful in a process for the separation of uranium isotopes by

gaseous diffusion.

### QUESTIONS

1. Write out the structures and names of all the dichloro-derivatives of butane and isobutane.

2. By means of equations show how you would convert ethanol into: (a) trichloroethylene, (b) hexachloroethane, (c) s-dichloroethylene, (d) tetrachloroethylene, (e)

pentachloroethane.

3. Name the products and state the conditions under which they are obtained when ethyl iodide reacts with: (a) HI, (b) KCN, (c) KOH, (d) H<sub>2</sub>, (e) Mg, (f) Na, (g) NH<sub>3</sub>, 4. Name the products and state the conditions under which they are obtained when chloroform reacts with (a) nascent hydrogen, (b) KOH, (c) C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, (d) O<sub>2</sub>, (e) Ag, 5. Define and give examples of:—(a) halogenation, (b) chain reaction, (c) Strecker reaction, (d) Darzens procedure, (e) molecular rearrangement, (f) elimination reaction, (k) hyperconjugation, (l) chlorinolysis, (m) Swarts reaction, (j) Grignard reagent, 6. Discuss (i) the inductive effect of the alkyl group, (ii) S<sub>N</sub> and E mechanisms, (iii) steric hindrance and steric acceleration, (iv) Saytzeff's rule.

#### READING REFERENCES

Hass, McBee et al., Chlorination of Paraffins, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1935, 27, 1190; 1936, 28,

333; 1941, 33, 137, 176, 181, 185; 1943, 35, 317.
Vaughan and Rust, Chlorination of Paraffins, J. Org. Chem., 1940, 5, 449.
Fredricks and Tedder, Free-radical Substitution in Aliphatic Compounds, J.C.S., 1960,

Bethell and Gold, The Structure of Carbonium Ions, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1958, 12, 173

Brown, Sulphuryl Chloride in Organic Chemistry, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1944, 36, 787. Organic Reactions, Wiley, Vol. II (1944), Ch. 2. The Preparation of Aliphatic Fluorine Compounds.

Bigelow, Action of Fluorine upon Organic Compounds, Chem. Reviews, 1947, 40, 51.

Ann. Reports (Chem. Soc.), 1954, 51, 279. Perfluoroalkyl Compounds. Cook (Ed.), Progress in Organic Chemistry, Butterworths. Vol. 2 (1953). Ch. 2. Organic Fluorine Compounds.

Musgrave, The Reactions of Organic Fluorine Compounds, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.),

1954, 8, 331.
Stacey et al. (Eds.), Advances in Fluorine Chemistry, Butterworths. Vol. 1 (1960).
Hughes, Reactions of Halides in Solution, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1951, 5, 245.

Clark and Streight, Systematic Study of the Preparation of Alkyl Chlorides from the Corresponding Alcohols, Trans. Roy. Soc., Can., 1929, [3], 23, 77.

Huntress, Organic Chlorine Compounds, Wiley (1949).

Johnson, The Degradation of Carboxylic Acids by means of Halogen: The Hunsdiecker

Reaction, Chem. Reviews, 1956, 56, 219.

Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. IX (1957), Ch. 5. The Reaction of Halogens with Silver Salts of Carboxylic Acids.

Streitwieser, Solvolytic Displacement Reactions at Saturated Carbon Atoms, Chem. Reviews, 1956, 56, 571.

#### CHAPTER VI

### MONOHYDRIC ALCOHOLS

An alcohol is a compound that contains one or more hydroxyl groups, i.e., alcohols are hydroxy-derivatives of the paraffins. They are classified according to the number of hydroxyl groups present. Monohydric alcohols contain one hydroxyl group; dihydric, two; trihydric, three; etc. When the alcohols contain four or more hydroxyl groups, they are usually called polyhydric alcohols.

The monohydric alcohols form an homologous series with the general formula  $C_nH_{2n+2}O$ , but, since their functional group is the hydroxyl group, their general formula is more satisfactorily written as  $C_nH_{2n+1}OH$  or ROH.

Nomenclature. The simpler alcohols are commonly known by their trivial names, which are obtained by naming the alcohol as a derivative of the alkyl radical attached to the hydroxyl group, e.g., CH<sub>3</sub>OH, methyl alcohol; CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH. n-propyl alcohol; CH<sub>3</sub>·CH(OH)·CH<sub>3</sub>, isopropyl alcohol; (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>COH, tert.-butyl alcohol.

Another system of nomenclature considers the alcohols as derivatives of methyl alcohol, which is named *carbinol*, *e.g.*, CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, methylcarbinol. The *Chemical Society*, however, now proposes to use *methanol* instead of carbinol, *e.g.*, CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CHOH·CH<sub>3</sub>, ethylmethylmethanol (both

methods have been used in this book).

In the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenciature, the longest carbon chain containing the hydroxyl group is chosen as the parent hydrocarbon. The class suffix is -ol, and the positions of side-chains and the hydroxyl group are indicated by numbers, the lowest possible number being given to the hydroxyl group (p. 63), e.g., CH<sub>3</sub>OH, methanol; C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>OH, ethanol; CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH,

propan-1-ol; (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH·CHOH·CH<sub>3</sub>, 3-methylbutan-2-ol.

Monohydric alcohols are subdivided into primary, secondary and tertiary alcohols according as the alkyl group attached to the hydroxyl group is a primary, secondary or tertiary group, respectively. Primary alcohols contain the primary alcoholic group  $-CH_2OH$ , e.g., ethanol,  $CH_3 \cdot CH_2OH$ ; secondary alcohols, the secondary alcoholic group  $\cdot CH(OH) \cdot$ , e.g., isopropanol,  $(CH_3)_2CHOH$ ; and tertiary alcohols the tertiary alcoholic group  $\equiv C(OH)$ , e.g., tert.-butanol,  $(CH_3)_3COH$ .

General methods of preparation. I. By the hydrolysis of an alkyl halide

with aqueous alkali or silver oxide suspended in water:

$$RX +$$
 "AgOH"  $\longrightarrow ROH + AgX$ 

2. By the hydrolysis of esters with alkali:

$$R \cdot CO_2R' + KOH \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2K + R'OH$$

This method is important industrially for preparing certain alcohols that occur naturally as esters.

As pointed out previously (p. 113), tertiary halides do not give a good yield of alcohol on hydrolysis. A good yield of alcohol can, however, be obtained by first heating the tertiary halide with silver acetate in ethanolic solution; and then hydrolysing the ester so formed with alkali. Under these conditions the tertiary alkyl radical shows little tendency to form olefin:

$$R_3CX + CH_3 \cdot CO_2Ag \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO_2CR_3 + AgX$$
  
 $CH_3 \cdot CO_2CR_3 + NaOH \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO_2Na + R_3COH$ 

3. By heating ethers with dilute sulphuric acid under pressure, e.g., diethyl ether forms ethanol:

$$(C_2H_5)_2O + H_2O \xrightarrow{H_2SO_4} 2C_2H_5OH$$

This method is important industrially, since ethers are formed as byproducts in the preparation of certain alcohols (see ethanol and propanols).

4. By the reduction of aldehydes, ketones or esters by means of excess sodium and ethanol as the reducing agent (Bouveault-Blanc reduction, 1903), e.g.,

(i) Aldehydes: R·CHO + 2[H]  $\longrightarrow$  R·CH<sub>2</sub>OH (g.-v.g.)

(ii) Esters:  $R \cdot CO_2R' + 4[H] \longrightarrow R \cdot CH_2OH + R'OH$  (g.)

(iii) Ketones:  $R_2CO + 2[H] \longrightarrow R_2CHOH$  (g.)

Hansley (1947) has improved the Bouveault-Blanc method by using the *theoretical* quantity of sodium and ethanol (see below), and carrying out the reaction in an inert solvent such as toluene or xylene. The yields are usually 85-90 per cent.

The mechanism of the reaction is uncertain. Hansley has proposed the following:

$$\begin{array}{c} O \\ R - C - OC_2H_5 \\ + 2Na \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} ONa \\ R - C - OC_2H_5 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{C_4H_5OH} C_2H_5ONa \\ + DONa \\ + DONa \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{Na \text{ derivative of the hemiacetal}} \xrightarrow{Na \text{ derivative of the hemiacetal}} \xrightarrow{Na \text{ derivative of the hemiacetal}} \xrightarrow{R \cdot CH_2ONa} + C_2H_5ONa \xrightarrow{C_4H_5OH} \begin{bmatrix} ONa \\ R - C - Na \\ H_4O \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{H_4O} \xrightarrow{H_4O} \xrightarrow{R \cdot CH_2OH} \xrightarrow{R$$

According to these equations, the theoretical amount of sodium is *four* atoms per molecule of ester and *two* molecules of the reducing alcohol.

Darzens (1947) found that sodium hydride, NaH, gives a better yield of alcohol than does sodium by the Bouveault–Blanc reduction of aldehydes, ketones and esters. Nystrom and Brown (1947) have found that lithium aluminium hydride, LiAlH<sub>4</sub>, also gives very good yields of alcohols from aldehydes, ketones, esters, acids, acid chlorides and acid anhydrides, and one advantage of this reagent is that it does not normally reduce the olefinic bond, and hence an unsaturated aldehyde, ketone, etc., can be reduced to an unsaturated alcohol. The most remarkable feature of this reagent is the reduction of an acid to an alcohol, e.g., stearic acid is reduced to octadecan-I-ol:

$$CH_3^{\bullet}(CH_2)_{16}^{\bullet}CO_2H \xrightarrow{LIAIH_4} CH_3^{\bullet}(CH_2)_{16}^{\bullet}CH_2OH$$
 (91%)

Reductions with lithium aluminium hydride are usually carried out in ethereal solutions, the compound in ether being added to the lithium aluminium hydride solution. In certain cases the reverse addition is necessary, i.e., the hydride solution is added to the solution of the compound to be reduced.

The reactions for the various compounds have been formulated as follows:

(i) 
$$_4\text{R-CO-R} + \text{LiAlH}_4 \longrightarrow (\text{R}_2\text{CHO})_4\text{LiAl} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} + \text{LiOH} + \text{Al(OH)}_3$$

(ii) 
$$2R \cdot CO_2R' + LiAlH_4 \longrightarrow (R \cdot CH_2O)_2(OR')_2LiAl \xrightarrow{H_2O} 2R \cdot CH_2OH + 2R'OH$$

(iii) 
$$_4\text{R}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H} + _3\text{LiAlH}_4 \longrightarrow (\text{R}\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{O})_4\text{LiAl} + _2\text{LiAlO}_2 + _4\text{H}_2 \\ \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \to _4\text{R}\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$$

(v) 
$$(R \cdot CO)_2O + LiAlH_4 \longrightarrow (R \cdot CH_2O)_2LiAlO \xrightarrow{H_2O} \rightarrow 2R \cdot CH_2OH$$

Aluminium trialkyls and dialuminium hydrides appear to be similar in their reducing properties to lithium aluminium hydride (inter alia, Miller

et al., 1959)

Sodium borohydride, NaBH<sub>4</sub>, which is insoluble in ether but soluble in water without decomposition, also reduces carbonyl compounds to alcohols, but does not reduce acids. On the other hand, lithium borohydride, which is soluble in ether and is decomposed by water, behaves like lithium aluminium hydride but is not so vigorous and hence may be used to reduce a more reactive group when the molecule contains two or more reducible groups, e.g., when the compound contains both a carbonyl and a carboxyl group, the former is reduced preferentially:

$$R \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \xrightarrow{LiBH_4} R \cdot CHOH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$$

Aldehydes, ketones, esters, acid chlorides and acid anhydrides can be reduced catalytically to alcohols in very good yields, e.g.,

acid chloride: 
$$R \cdot COCl + 2H_2 \xrightarrow{cat.} R \cdot CH_2OH + HCl$$
  
acid anhydride:  $(R \cdot CO)_2O + 4H_2 \xrightarrow{cat.} 2R \cdot CH_2OH + H_2O$ 

Catalytic reduction is particularly useful for preparing the higher alcohols from esters. The ester is hydrogenated at 200° and at 150–200 atm. using a copper catalyst, whereupon alcohols free from hydrocarbons are produced. If a nickel catalyst is used and the temperature is above 250°, hydrocarbons are the main product. Cadmium–nickel salts of acids may also be hydrogenated under pressure in the presence of copper chromite to alcohols, the lower members ( $C_1$  to  $C_5$ ) giving 70–95 per cent. yields (Adams et al., 1952). On the other hand, carboxylic acids can be hydrogenated to primary alcohols in the presence of a ruthenium or copper chromite catalyst (Guyer et al., 1955). Aldehydes, ketones, carboxylic acids, acid chlorides, and esters are readily reduced to alcohols by diborane (Brown et al., 1957).

5. Primary, secondary and tertiary alcohols may be prepared by means of a Grignard reagent and the appropriate carbonyl compound (see p. 352).

6. A number of alcohols are obtained by fermentation processes (see later).

7. In recent years synthetic methods have become very important for preparing various alcohols:

(i) By the hydration of olefins, e.g., ethanol, isopropanol, etc.

(ii) By heating a mixture of carbon monoxide and hydrogen under pressure in the presence of a catalyst, e.g., zinc chromite plus small amounts of alkali metal or iron salts. A mixture of alcohols containing methyl, ethyl, n-

propyl, isobutyl and higher-branched alcohols is obtained, the individuals

being separated by fractional distillation (see below).

(iii) By the "oxo" process, which is the process whereby carbon monoxide and hydrogen are added to olefins to yield aldehydes and alcohols (which are separated by fractional distillation). Carbon monoxide, hydrogen and the olefin are compressed to 200 atm. at 125–145°, and passed over a catalyst. One catalyst consists of cobalt, thoria, magnesia and kieselguhr in the proportions of 100:5:8:200—this catalyst is also used in the Fischer–Tropsch synthesis (p. 60); e.g., propylene, CO and H<sub>2</sub> give a mixture of the two straight-chain butanols. The oxo-process is also known as the oxosynthesis and the carbonylation or hydroformylation reaction.

(iv) Methanol, ethanol, propanols and butanols are prepared industrially

by the oxidation of natural gas (p. 60).

Most of the methods given above can be used for the preparation of any particular class of alcohol: it is only a question of starting with the appropriate compound. *Primary* alcohols may be prepared by the hydrolysis of *primary* alkyl halides; by the reduction of aldehydes, esters, acids, acid chlorides and acid anhydrides; and by means of a Grignard reagent and formaldehyde:

$$H-C \bigvee_{H}^{O} + RMgX \longrightarrow H-C \begin{matrix} OMgX \\ -R \end{matrix} \xrightarrow{H_{\mathfrak{p}O}} R \cdot CH_{\mathfrak{p}OH}$$

In addition to these, primary alcohols may be prepared, in variable yields, by the action of nitrous acid on primary amines of the type R·CH<sub>2</sub>·NH<sub>2</sub>:

$$R \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH_2 + HNO_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CH_2OH + N_2 + H_2O$$

Primary alcohols may also be prepared by the oxidation of primary

trialkylborons (p. 76).

Secondary alcohols may be prepared by the hydrolysis of secondary alkyl halides, or better, via the ester (see above); by the reduction of ketones; and by means of a Grignard reagent and any aldehyde other than formaldehyde:

$$R - C \bigvee_{H}^{O} + R'MgX \longrightarrow R - C \bigvee_{H}^{OMgX} \xrightarrow{H_{\bullet}O} R \cdot CH(OH) \cdot R'$$

Tertiary alcohols may be prepared by the *indirect* hydrolysis of *tertiary* alkyl halides, *viz.*, via the ester; and by means of a Grignard reagent and a ketone (or an ester):

$$R_2C=O + R'MgX \longrightarrow R_2C \xrightarrow{OMgX} \xrightarrow{H_4O} R_2C(OH)\cdot R'$$

General properties of the alcohols. The alcohols are neutral substances: the lower members are liquids, and have a distinctive smell and a burning

taste; the higher members are solids and are almost odourless.

In a group of isomeric alcohols, the primary alcohol has the highest boiling point and the tertiary the lowest, with the secondary having an intermediate value. The lower members are far less volatile than is to be expected from their molecular weight, and this is believed to be due to association through hydrogen bonding extending over a chain of molecules,

thus giving rise to a "large molecule" the volatility of which would be expected to be low:

The lower alcohols are very soluble in water, and the solubility diminishes as the molecular weight increases. Their solubility in water is to be expected, since the oxygen atom of the hydroxyl group in alcohols can form hydrogen bonds with the water molecules. In the lower alcohols the hydroxyl group constitutes a large part of the molecule, whereas as the molecular weight of the alcohol increases the hydrocarbon character of the molecule increases, and hence the solubility in water decreases. This, however, is not the complete story; the structure of the carbon chain also plays a part, e.g., n-butanol is fairly soluble in water, but tert.-butanol is miscible with water in all proportions.

General reactions of the alcohols. I. Alcohols react with organic and

inorganic acids to form esters:

$$R \cdot CO_2H + R'OH \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2R' + H_2O$$

Esters of the halogen acids are, as we have seen (p. 100), the alkyl halides.

Alcohols, when heated with concentrated hydriodic acid and red phos-

phorus, are converted into paraffins.

The order of reactivity of an alcohol with a given organic acid is primary alcohol>secondary>tertiary, but with a given halogen acid the order is reversed. This implies that the mechanism of esterification (p. 187) of organic acids is different from that of halogen acids. It has also been observed that for a given alcohol the order of reactivity of the halogen acids is HI>HBr>HCl. An explanation of all these observations is offered later when the mechanism of esterification is discussed in detail.

2. Alcohols react with phosphorus halides to form alkyl halides (p. 103). Treatment of alcohols with chlorine or bromine results in the formation of halogen-substituted oxidised products (see also p. 168), e.g., chlorination

of ethanol gives trichloroacetaldehyde (cf. chloroform):

On the other hand, when chlorine is passed into an alcohol (primary or secondary) in the presence of alkali, an organic hypochlorite is formed:

$$R_2CHOH + Cl_2 \xrightarrow{NaOH} R_2CHOCl + HCl$$

These hypochlorites are unstable, and when heated or exposed to light, eliminate hydrogen chloride:

3. Alcohols combine with phenyl isocyanate to form phenyl-substituted urethans:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NCO + ROH \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot CO_2R$$

Urethans are well-defined crystalline solids, and so may be used to characterise the alcohols.

Readily dehydrated alcohols, particularly tertiary alcohols, do not form urethans but produce olefins and diphenylurea as follows:

4. Alcohols are attacked by strongly electropositive metals, e.g., sodium and potassium; hydrogen is liberated and the alkoxide is formed; e.g., ethanol reacts with sodium to form sodium ethoxide:

$$_{2}C_{2}H_{5}OH + _{2}Na \longrightarrow _{2}C_{2}H_{5}ONa + H_{2}$$

Sodium and potassium alkoxides are electrovalent compounds; *i.e.*, their formulæ should be written, *e.g.*, RO-Na+; they are white deliquescent solids, readily soluble in water with decomposition:

$$RONa + H_2O \Longrightarrow ROH + NaOH$$

Alkoxides react with carbon disulphide to form xanthates:

The order of ease of formation of an alkoxide with sodium or potassium is primary alcohol> secondary> tertiary. This may be explained as follows. There are two possible ways in which the group COH may undergo fission: C = O - H and C = O - H. Since oxygen has a higher electron-affinity than either carbon or hydrogen, the shared electron pairs are displaced towards the oxygen, i.e., we have  $C \to O \to H$ . The greater the displacement of the shared pair towards the oxygen atom in the C = O bond, the larger is the negative charge on the oxygen atom, and consequently the weaker is the attraction of the

oxygen, i.e., we have  $C \rightarrow O \rightarrow H$ . The greater the displacement of the shared pair towards the oxygen atom in the  $C \rightarrow O$  bond, the larger is the negative charge on the oxygen atom, and consequently the weaker is the attraction of the oxygen atom for the shared pair of the  $O \rightarrow H$  bond. Since alkyl groups are electron-releasing, the larger the number of alkyl groups attached to the carbon atom of the COH group, the greater will be the negative charge on the oxygen atom. This may be represented as follows:

CH<sub>3</sub> 
$$\rightarrow$$
 CH<sub>2</sub>  $\rightarrow$  O—H; CH<sub>3</sub>  $\rightarrow$  CH<sub>3</sub>  $\rightarrow$ 

Thus the displacement of the bonding pair of electrons in the C—O bond towards the O atom is least in primary alcohols and greatest in tertiary, and consequently the tendency of the COH group to break as C|—OH is greatest in tertiary alcohols and least in primary; conversely, the tendency of the COH group to break as C—O—|H is greatest in primary alcohols and least in tertiary. Hence reactions involving the breaking of the C—O bond will take place most readily with tertiary alcohols and least readily with primary; but those reactions which involve the breaking of the O—H bond will take place most readily with primary alcohols and least readily with tertiary. When sodium attacks an alcohol, hydrogen is evolved, and since this involves the breaking of the O—H bond, we can now understand why the order of ease of formation of alkoxides is primary alcohol>secondary>tertiary.

A number of alkoxides are important as synthetic reagents; e.g., sodium ethoxide, C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>ONa; aluminium ethoxide, (C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>O)<sub>3</sub>Al; aluminium tert.butoxide [(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>CO]<sub>3</sub>Al (see text for their uses). The aluminium alkoxides may be conveniently prepared by the action of aluminium amalgam or aluminium

shavings on the alcohol.

5. Primary and secondary alcohols may be acetylated with acetyl chloride, e.g., ethanol gives ethyl acetate:

$$CH_3 \cdot COCl + C_2H_5OH \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + HCl$$

With tertiary alcohols the reaction is often accompanied by dehydration of the alcohol to olefin, or by the formation of a tertiary alkyl chloride; e.g., tert.-butanol gives a good yield of tert.-butyl chloride:

$$(CH_3)_3COH + CH_3 \cdot COCl \longrightarrow (CH_3)_3 \cdot CCl + CH_3 \cdot CO_2H$$

6. Alcohols may be oxidised, and the products of oxidation depend on

the class of the alcohol (see below).

7. Alcohols may be dehydrated to olefins by heat alone, but the temperature must be high (400–800°). Dehydration, however, can be effected at lower temperatures in the presence of catalysts, e.g., all three classes of alcohols are dehydrated by passing over alumina at 350°; primary alcohols are dehydrated by concentrated sulphuric acid at about 170°, and secondary and tertiary alcohols by boiling dilute sulphuric acid (this is used to avoid polymerisation of the olefin). The mechanism when sulphuric acid is used is described on p. 80. The mechanism with alumina is uncertain; a possibility is:

With secondary and tertiary alcohols, dehydration may occur in two ways, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{-}\text{CH}_3 \xrightarrow{-\text{H}_2\text{O}} \xrightarrow{\text{(I:IH}_2\text{SO}_4)} \\ \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}} \\ \end{array}$$

Experiment shows that hydrogen attached to the adjacent carbon atom joined to the least number of hydrogen atoms is eliminated most easily. Thus, in the above reaction, the main product is but-2-ene (65–80 per cent.). This elimination thus occurs in accordance with Saytzeff's rule for the dehydrohalogenation of alkyl halides, and the reason is the same (see p. 112).

When alcohols containing no hydrogen atoms on the carbon atom adjacent to the COH group are dehydrated, dehydration and molecular rearrangement occur together, e.g., neopentyl alcohol gives 2-methylbut-2-ene:

$$(CH_3)_3C \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{-H_3O} (CH_3)_2C = CH \cdot CH_3$$

This is an example of the 1,2-shift, and the mechanism may be formulated as follows (see also p. 101):

When a double bond is produced in the product and is accompanied by a 1,2-shift, the reaction is said to be a retropinacol rearrangement. This type of rearrangement, when occurring in open-chain compounds, is also sometimes called the Wagner rearrangement.

Alcohols may also be converted into olefins via their methyl xanthates (Tschugaev reaction, 1899):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R}_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{CS}_2} \text{R}_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{O} \cdot \text{C} \xrightarrow{\text{S}} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3\text{I}} \\ \\ \text{R}_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{O} \cdot \text{C} \xrightarrow{\text{S}} \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \text{R}_2\text{C} = \text{CH}_2 + \text{CH}_3\text{SH} + \text{COS} \end{array}$$

A very important feature of this reaction is that no rearrangement occurs in the formation of the olefin from alcohols which undergo rearrangement when dehydrated by the usual dehydrating agents.

By means of dehydration, it is possible to convert a primary alcohol into a secondary or tertiary, according to the structure of the primary alcohol, e.g.,

(i) 
$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot OH \xrightarrow{Al_2O_3} CH_3 \cdot CH = CH_2 \xrightarrow{HI} CH_3 \cdot C$$

In the same way, a secondary alcohol of suitable structure can be converted into a tertiary alcohol, e.g.,

$$(\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH}\text{-}\mathrm{CH}(\mathrm{OH})\text{-}\mathrm{CH_3} \xrightarrow{-\mathrm{Al_2O_3} \atop 350^\circ} (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{C} = \mathrm{CH}\text{-}\mathrm{CH_3} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{HI}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{HI}} \\ (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CI}\text{-}\mathrm{CH_2}\text{-}\mathrm{CH_3} \xrightarrow{-\mathrm{``AgOH''}} (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{C}(\mathrm{OH})\text{-}\mathrm{CH_2}\text{-}\mathrm{CH_3}$$

It is also possible to step down the alcohol series by means of dehydration, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3} \text{R}\text{-}\text{CH}\text{=-}\text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{O}_3} \\ & \text{R}\text{-}\text{CH}\text{--}\text{O}\text{--}\text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Zn/H}_3\text{O}} \text{R}\text{-}\text{CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_3} \text{R}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ & \text{O}\text{----\text{O}} \end{array}$$

8. Alcohols also combine with acetylene in the presence of mercury compounds as catalyst to form acetals:

$$_{2}$$
ROH + CH $\equiv$ CH $\xrightarrow{_{Hg^{++}}}$ CH $_{3}$ ·CH(OR) $_{2}$ 

If, however, the reaction is carried out in the presence of potassium alkoxides at high temperature and under pressure, vinyl ethers are obtained (p. 94).

9. Alcohols can be made to undergo self-condensation in the presence of sodium alkoxide at elevated temperatures:

$$_{2}$$
RCH $_{2}$ ·CH $_{2}$ OH  $\longrightarrow$  RCH $_{2}$ ·CH $_{2}$ ·CHR·CH $_{2}$ OH

This is known as the Guerbet reaction (1899), and can be used for primary and secondary alcohols and also for mixed condensations.

Methods of Distinguishing between the Three Classes of Alcohols. I. By means of oxidation. The nature of the oxidation products of an alcohol

depends on whether the alcohol is primary, secondary or tertiary.

(i) A primary alcohol on oxidation first gives an aldehyde, and this, on further oxidation, gives an acid. Both the aldehyde and acid contain the same number of carbon atoms as the original alcohol, e.g.:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{[0]} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CHO} \xrightarrow{[0]} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$$

(ii) A secondary alcohol, on oxidation, first gives a ketone with the same number of carbon atoms as the original alcohol. Ketones are fairly difficult to oxidise, but prolonged action of the oxidising agents produces a mixture of acids, each containing fewer carbon atoms than the original alcohol, e.g., methyl-n-propylmethanol gives first pentan-2-one, and then a mixture of acetic and propionic acids:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CHOH-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_3\xrightarrow{[O]}\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_3\\ &\xrightarrow{[O]}\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$$

(iii) Tertiary alcohols are resistant to oxidation in neutral or alkaline solution, but are readily oxidised by acid oxidising agents to a mixture of ketone and acid, each containing fewer carbon atoms than the original alcohol.

$$(\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{C}(\mathrm{OH})\text{-}\mathrm{CH_2}\text{-}\mathrm{CH_3} \xrightarrow{[\mathrm{O}]} (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CO} + \mathrm{CH_3}\text{-}\mathrm{CO}_2\mathrm{H}$$

The oxidising agents usually used for oxidising alcohols are: acid dichromate, acid or alkaline potassium permanganate, and dilute nitric acid.

The mechanism of oxidation of alcohols is still uncertain. There is, however, evidence to show, at least in the case of primary and secondary alcohols, that the first step is dehydrogenation at the carbon of the C-OH Westheimer et al. (1949) found that there is a kinetic isotope effect (p. 36) when 2-deuteroisopropanol, CH<sub>3</sub>·CDOH·CH<sub>3</sub>, is oxidised with chromic acid; the rate of oxidation of this compound was found to be about one-sixth the rate of oxidation of isopropanol. Thus the rate-determining step is the fission of the C-H bond in the group H-C-OH. This is supported by the fact that these authors found no kinetic isotope effect in the oxidations of (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CHOH and (CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CHOH. In tertiary alcohols, which are very resistant to oxidation, there is no H-C-OH group. Consequently it is logical to conclude that tertiary alcohols are oxidised by a different mechanism. Since tertiary alcohols are very readily dehydrated, their oxidation may therefore proceed via the oxidation of an intermediate

- 2. The three classes of alcohols differ in their behaviour when the vapour is passed over copper at 300°:
  - (i) A primary alcohol is dehydrogenated to an aldehyde, e.g.,

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{C_U} CH_3 \cdot CHO + H_2$$

(ii) A secondary alcohol is dehydrogenated to a ketone, e.g.,

$$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{Cu}} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 + \text{H}_2$$

(iii) A tertiary alcohol is dehydrated to an olefin, e.g.,

$$(CH_3)_2C(OH)\cdot CH_2\cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{Gu} (CH_3)_2C = CH\cdot CH_8 + H_2O$$

3. The alcohol is converted by phosphorus tri-iodide into its corresponding iodide, which is then heated with silver nitrite, and the resulting nitroparaffin is treated with nitrous acid and alkali. Characteristic colours are obtained according as the alkyl group is primary, secondary or tertiary (see p. 305).

Methyl alcohol, methanol (carbinol), CH3OH, is prepared industrially by several methods. The earliest method was by the destructive distillation of wood, whereby tar and an aqueous fraction known as pyroligneous acid are obtained. Pyroligneous acid contains methanol, acetone and acetic acid, and all three compounds may be obtained by suitable treatment (see acetic acid, p. 181). It was this method which gave rise to the name "wood spirit" for methanol. The modern methods are synthetic.

(i) Water gas mixed with half its volume of hydrogen-synthesis gas-is passed at a pressure of 200 atmospheres over a catalyst containing the oxides

of copper, zinc and chromium at 300°:

$$CO + 2H_2 \longrightarrow CH_3OH$$

If the proper precautions are taken, the yield of methanol is almost 100 per cent., and its purity is above 99 per cent. By changing the catalyst and the ratio of carbon monoxide to hydrogen, methanol and a variety of higher alcohols are produced (p. 126). Another commercial method uses carbon dioxide instead of the monoxide; again a catalyst is required:

$$CO_2 + 3H_2 \longrightarrow CH_3OH + H_2O$$

(ii) By the catalytic oxidation of methane. A mixture of methane and oxygen (ratio by volume of 9:1) at a pressure of 100 atmospheres is passed through a copper tube at 200°:

$$CH_4 + \frac{1}{2}O_2 \longrightarrow CH_3OH$$

Methanol is a colourless, inflammable liquid, b.p. 64°, and is poisonous. It is miscible with water in all proportions, and is also miscible with most organic solvents. It burns with a faintly luminous flame, and its vapour forms explosive mixtures with air or oxygen when ignited. It combines with calcium chloride to form CaCl2·4CH3OH, and hence cannot be dried this way (cf. ethanol).

Methanol is used as a solvent for paints, varnishes, shellac, celluloid cements, etc.; in the manufacture of dyes, perfumes, formaldehyde, etc. It is also used for making methylated spirit and automobile antifreeze

Structure of methanol. Analysis and molecular-weight determinations show that the molecular formula of methanol is CH4O. Assuming that carbon is quadrivalent, oxygen bivalent and hydrogen univalent, only one structure is possible:

This is supported by all the chemical reactions of methanol, e.g., (i) only one hydrogen atom in methanol is replaceable by sodium; this suggests that one hydrogen atom is in a different state of combination from the other three. (ii) Methanol is formed from methyl chloride by hydrolysis with sodium hydroxide. Methyl chloride can have only the structure CH3Cl. It is reasonable to suppose that the methyl group in methyl chloride is unchanged by the action of dilute alkali, and that the reaction takes place by the

replacement of the chlorine atom by a hydroxyl group.

(iii) The presence of the hydroxyl group is confirmed, for example, by the reaction between methanol and phosphorus pentachloride, when methyl chloride, hydrogen chloride and phosphoryl chloride are formed. Thus one oxygen atom (bivalent) and one hydrogen atom (univalent) have been replaced by one chlorine atom (univalent). This implies that the oxygen and hydrogen atoms exist as a univalent radical in methanol: the only possibility is as a hydroxyl group, OH. It is the hydrogen of the hydroxyl group which is displaced by sodium.

All these reactions indicate that the structure of methanol is CH<sub>3</sub>OH.

Ethyl alcohol, ethanol (methylcarbinol),  $C_2H_5OH$ , is prepared industrially by several methods: (i) Ethylene (from cracked petroleum) is absorbed in concentrated sulphuric acid (98 per cent.) at 75–80°, under pressure (250–500 lb./per sq. in.). Ethyl hydrogen sulphate and ethyl sulphate are formed:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_2H_4 + (HO)_2SO_2 \longrightarrow C_2H_5O \cdot SO_2 \cdot OH \\ C_2H_5O \cdot SO_2 \cdot OH + C_2H_4 \longrightarrow (C_2H_5O)_2SO_2 \end{array}$$

The reaction mixture is then diluted with about an equal volume of water, and warmed. Hydrolysis takes place and ethanol together with some diethyl ether is formed:

$$\begin{array}{l} C_2H_5O\cdot SO_2\cdot OH + H_2O \longrightarrow C_2H_5OH + H_2SO_4 \\ (C_2H_5O)_2SO_2 + 2H_2O \longrightarrow 2C_2H_5OH + H_2SO_4 \\ (C_2H_5O)_2SO_2 + C_2H_5OH \longrightarrow (C_2H_5)_2O + C_2H_5O\cdot SO_2\cdot OH \end{array}$$

The ether is kept to a minimum by separating the ethyl sulphate from the reaction products, and hydrolysing it separately.

The hydrolysed liquids are distilled, and the aqueous ethanol distillate

is concentrated by fractional distillation (see also below).

Ethanol is also manufactured by the *direct* hydration of ethylene with steam under pressure in the presence of a suitable catalyst:

$$C_2H_4 + H_2O \longrightarrow C_2H_5OH$$

(ii) Acetaldehyde (from acetylene) is catalytically reduced to ethanol by passing its vapour, mixed with hydrogen, over finely divided nickel at 100–140°:

$$CH_3$$
· $CHO + H_2 \longrightarrow CH_3$ · $CH_2OH$ 

(iii) The earliest method of preparing ethanol is by fermentation, and this is still used for the manufacture of beer, wine, brandy, etc., and also as a source of ethanol. The starting material is starch, which is obtained from sources depending on the particular country: common sources of starch are wheat, barley, potato, etc. Recently, molasses (p. 460) has also been used as the starting material for ethanol. The grain, e.g., wheat or barley, is mashed with hot water, and then heated with malt (germinated barley) at 50° for 1 hour. Malt contains the enzyme diastase which, by hydrolysis, converts starch into the sugar, maltose (q.v.):

$$(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n + \frac{n}{2}H_2O \xrightarrow{\text{diastase}} \frac{n}{2}C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$$

If molasses is used, then this step is unnecessary, since it contains carbohydrates already present as sugars which can be fermented.

The liquid is cooled to 30° and fermented with yeast for 1-3 days. Yeast

contains various enzymes, among which are maltase, which converts the maltose into glucose, and zymase, which converts the glucose into ethanol:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_{12}H_{22}O_{11} + H_2O \xrightarrow{maltase} 2C_6H_{12}O_6 \\ \\ C_6H_{12}O_6 \xrightarrow{zymase} 2C_2H_5OH + 2CO_2 \end{array}$$

The carbon dioxide is recovered and sold as a by-product. The fermented liquor or "wort", which contains 6-10 per cent. ethanol and some other compounds, is fractionated into three fractions:

(i) First runnings, which consists mainly of acetaldehyde.

(ii) Rectified spirit, which is 93-95% w/w ethanol.
(iii) Final runnings or fusel oil, which contains n-propyl, n-butyl, isobutyl, n-amyl, isoamyl and "active" amyl alcohol.

Industrial alcohol is ordinary rectified spirit. Methylated spirit is of two kinds: (a) Mineralised methylated spirit is 90 per cent. rectified spirit, 9 per cent. methanol and I per cent. petroleum oil, and a purple dye. (b) Industrial methylated spirit is 95 per cent. rectified spirit and 5 per cent. methanol, whose purpose is to "denature" the rectified spirit, i.e., make it

unfit for drinking purposes.

Absolute alcohol is 99.5 per cent. ethanol, and is obtained from rectified spirit. When an aqueous solution of ethanol is fractionated, it forms a constant-boiling mixture containing 96 per cent. ethanol from which 100 per cent. ethanol may be obtained by adding a small amount of benzene, and then distilling. The first fraction is the ternary azeotrope, i.e., a constant-boiling mixture containing three constituents, b.p. 64.8° (water, 7.4 per cent.; ethanol, 18.5 per cent.; benzene, 74.1 per cent.). After all the water has been removed, the second fraction that distils over is the binary azeotrope, b.p. 68.2° (ethanol, 32.4 per cent.; benzene, 67.6 per cent.). After all the benzene has been removed, pure ethanol, b.p. 78-1°, distils over.

Ethanol cannot be dried by means of calcium chloride, since a compound (an alcoholate) is formed, e.g., CaCl<sub>2</sub>·3C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>OH (cf. methanol). Distillation of rectified spirit over calcium oxide, and then over calcium, gives absolute alcohol. This method is often used in the laboratory, and was formerly

used industrially.

Ethanol is a colourless, inflammable liquid, b.p. 78·1°. It is miscible with water in all proportions, and is also miscible with most organic solvents. Ethanol and methanol resemble each other very closely, but they may be distinguished (i) by the fact that ethanol gives the haloform reaction (q.v.), whereas methanol does not; and (ii) ethanol gives acetic acid on oxidation; methanol gives formic acid. These two acids are readily distinguished from each other (p. 181).

Ethanol is used for the preparation of esters, ether, chloral, chloroform, etc. It is also used as a solvent for gums, resins, paints, varnishes, etc.,

and as a fuel.

Structure of ethanol. Analysis and molecular-weight determinations show that the molecular formula of ethanol is C2H6O. Assuming that carbon is quadrivalent, oxygen bivalent, and hydrogen univalent, two structures are possible:

(i) Only one hydrogen atom in ethanol is replaceable by sodium or potassium. This indicates that one hydrogen atom is in a different state of combination from the other five. In (I), one hydrogen atom differs from the

other five, but in (II) all the hydrogen atoms are equivalent.

(ii) When ethanol is treated with hydrochloric acid or phosphorus pentachloride, one oxygen atom (bivalent) and one hydrogen atom (univalent) are replaced by one chlorine atom (univalent) to give ethyl chloride, C2H5Cl. This implies the presence of a hydroxyl group (cf. methanol).

(iii) When ethyl chloride is hydrolysed with dilute alkali, ethanol is ob-

tained. This reaction also indicates the presence of a hydroxyl group in

ethanol.

(iv) Ethanol may be prepared as follows:

$$C_2H_6 \xrightarrow{Cl_2} C_2H_5Cl \xrightarrow{NaOH} C_2H_5OH$$

The arrangement of the six hydrogen atoms in ethane is known, and it is reasonable to suppose that five retain their original arrangement in ethyl chloride and ethanol, since these five hydrogen atoms do not enter (presumably) into the above reactions. Thus there is an ethyl radical C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> in ethanol. This is so in (I), but not in (II).

(v) Structure (II) is definitely eliminated, since it can be shown that it is the structure of dimethyl ether (q.v.), a compound that has very little

resemblance, physically or chemically, to ethanol.

Thus (I) is accepted as the structure of ethanol, and it accounts for all the known properties of ethanol.

It can be seen from the various examples given on structure determination, e.g., ethane, propane, ethylene, methanol and ethanol, that the method of approach follows certain definite lines. First the molecular formula is obtained. Then, if the compound is simple—in the sense that it contains a small number of unlike atoms, and that the total number of atoms is also small—the valencies of the atoms present are assumed, and various possible structures are written down. If the compound is "simple" the number of possible structures will not be large (four or five at the most). Then by considering the chemical properties of the compound in question, the structure which best fits the observed facts is accepted as the correct one. If the compound is not "simple", the procedure is to detect the presence of as many functional groups as possible; to degrade the compound into simpler substances whose structures are already known or which may be determined by further degradation; to build up structural formulæ based on the facts obtained; and then to choose that structure which best fits the facts. Finally a synthesis is attempted, and if successful, will usually give proof of the correctness of the structure suggested.

It can be seen from the above arguments that it is necessary to have methods, preferably simple ones, for detecting the presence of functional groups. The reader will become familiar with these methods as he reads the text. At this stage we shall confine our attentions to detecting the presence of a hydroxyl group. The usual tests are: (i) Treatment with sodium; if hydrogen is evolved, a hydroxyl group is present. (ii) Treatment with phosphorus pentachloride or acetyl chloride; the evolution of hydrochloric acid fumes indicates the presence of a hydroxyl group.

Acetyl chloride is usually the most satisfactory (remember, however,

alcohols of the type R<sub>3</sub>COH, p. 130).

Propyl alcohols, C<sub>3</sub>H<sub>7</sub>OH. Two isomeric propyl alcohols are possible, and both are known.

n-Propyl alcohol, propan-I-ol, n-propanol, CH3. CH2. CH2OH, was originally obtained from fusel oil (see above), but it is now also produced by the hydrogenation of carbon monoxide. A more recent method is by the catalytic reduction of propargyl alcohol (from acetylene and formaldehyde):

$$CH \equiv C \cdot CH_2OH + 2H_2 \xrightarrow{Ni} 2CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2OH$$

n-Propanol is a colourless liquid, b.p. 97.4°, and is miscible with water, ethanol and ether. It is used in the preparation of propionic acid, toilet preparations such as lotions, etc.

iso Propyl alcohol, propan-2-ol, isopropanol, CH3-CH(OH)-CH3, is prepared

industrially:

(i) By the catalytic hydrogenation of acetone under pressure:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + H_2 \xrightarrow{Ni} CH_3 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH_3$$

(ii) By passing propylene (from cracked petroleum) into concentrated sulphuric acid, then diluting with water, and distilling off the *iso*-propanol. *iso*Propyl ether is obtained as a by-product (*cf.* ethanol):

isoPropanol can also be prepared by direct hydration, and this can be effected by passing a mixture of propylene and steam at 220–250°, and under pressure (220 atm.), over a catalyst of tungsten oxide plus zinc oxide, on a silica carrier.

isoPropanol is a colourless liquid, b.p. 82.4°, and is soluble in water, ethanol and ether. It is used for preparing esters, acetone, keten, as a

solvent, and for high-octane fuel.

Butyl alcohols, C<sub>4</sub>H<sub>9</sub>OH. Four isomers are possible, and all are known. n-Butyl alcohol, butan-1-ol, n-butanol, CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·OH, b.p. 117·4°, is prepared industrially:

(i) By the Weizmann process (1911). Starch or molasses is fermented with the micro-organism, Clostridium acetobutylicum, whereupon acetone and n-butanol are obtained.

(ii) Synthetically from acetaldehyde:

$$2\text{CH}_3\text{·CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \text{CH}_3\text{·CH}(\text{OH})\text{·CH}_2\text{·CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \xrightarrow{-\text{H}_3\text{O}}$$

$$\text{CH}_3\text{·CH} = \text{CH}\text{·CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_3/\text{Ni}} \text{CH}_3\text{·CH}_2\text{·CH}_2\text{·CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{crotonaldehyde}}$$

(iii) From propylene by the Oxo process (p. 127).

n-Butanol is widely used as a solvent. iso Butyl alcohol, 2-methylpropan-I-ol, iso butanol, (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, b.p. IO8°, is obtained as a by-product in the preparation of methanol from synthesis gas (p. I33). It behaves as a primary alcohol, but it readily rearranges due to the presence of a branched chain near the COH group, e.g., when it is treated with hydrochloric acid, isobutyl chloride and tert-butyl chloride are obtained (cf. p. IOI):

$$(CH_3)_2CH \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{HCl} (CH_3)_2CH \cdot CH_2Cl + (CH_3)_3CCl$$

sec.-Butyl alcohol, butan-2-ol, sec.-butanol, CH3·CH2·CH(OH)·CH3, b.p. 100°, is prepared industrially by the hydration of 1- or 2-butene (from

cracked petroleum) by means of concentrated sulphuric acid (cf. ethanol and isopropanol).

sec.-Butanol is used for the preparation of butanone, esters, and as a

lacquer solvent.

tert.-Butyl alcohol, tert.-butanol (trimethylmethanol), (CH3)3COH, m.p. 25.5°, b.p. 83°, is prepared synthetically by the hydration of isobutene (from cracked petroleum). It is mainly used as an alkylating agent.

Amyl alcohols, C<sub>5</sub>H<sub>11</sub>OH. Eight isomers are possible, and all are known:

1. CH3 CH2 CH2 CH2 CH2 OH, n-amyl alcohol, pentan-1-ol, n-pentanol, b.p. 138°.

2. (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, isoamyl alcohol, isopentanol, b.p. 130°. 3. CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, "active" amyl alcohol, 2-methylbutan-1-ol, b.p. 128°

4. (CH3)3C·CH2OH, neopentyl alcohol, tert.-butylcarbinol, b.p. 113°.

5. CH3 CH2 CH2 CH(OH) CH3, pentan-2-ol, methyl-n-propylcarbinol, b.p. 120°. 6. CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>(OH)</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>3</sub>, pentan-3-ol, diethylcarbinol, b.p. 117°

7. (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH·CH(OH)·CH<sub>3</sub>, 3-methylbutan-2-ol, methylisopropylcarbinol, b.p.

8. (CH3)2C(OH)·CH2·CH3, 2-methylbutan-2-ol, tert.-amyl alcohol, tert.-pentanol, ethyldimethylcarbinol, b.p. 102°.

Three amyl alcohols, viz., n-pentanol, isopentanol and "active" amyl alcohol, have been isolated from fusel oil (q.v.). The last two are the chief constituents of fusel oil, and all three are produced by the fermentation of protein matter associated with the carbohydrates in starch. This mixture of amyl alcohols (from fusel oil) is used for the preparation of esters (for artificial essences), scents, and as a laboratory reducing agent with sodium it is better than ethanol owing to its higher boiling point (this mixture of amyl alcohols will be referred to in future as isopentanol).

A mixture of amyl alcohols, known as pentasol, is prepared industrially by chlorinating at 200°, and in the dark, a mixture of n- and isopentanes (from petroleum) to the amyl chlorides which are hydrolysed with dilute sodium hydroxide solution plus a little sodium oleate for emulsification, to the amyl alcohols. Seven isomeric amyl chlorides are theoretically possible by the chlorination of n- and isopentanes, but in practice six are obtained—no 2-chloro-3-methylbutane is produced. Pentasol (the mixture of six amyl alcohols) finds great use as a solvent in the lacquer industry.

Commercial "sec.-amyl alcohol" (80 per cent. 2- and 20 per cent. 3pentanol) is made by hydrating 1- and 2-pentenes (from cracked petroleum).

A number of higher alcohols occur as esters in waxes, e.g., cetyl (palmityl) alcohol (hexadecan-1-ol),  $C_{16}H_{33}OH$ , m.p. 49°, occurs as the palmitate in spermaceti (obtained from the oil of the sperm whale); carnaubyl alcohol (tetracosan-1-ol),  $C_{24}H_{49}OH$ , m.p. 69°, as esters in wool-grease; ceryl alcohol (hexacosan-1-ol),  $C_{26}H_{53}OH$ , m.p. 79°, as the cerotate in chinese wax; myricyl (melissyl) alcohol (triacontan-1-ol),  $C_{30}H_{61}OH$ , m.p. 88°, as esters in bees-wax.

A number of higher alcohols are now prepared industrially by the catalytic reduction of the ethyl (or glyceryl) esters of the higher fatty acids, particularly the alcohols lauryl (dodecan-1-ol), C12H25OH, m.p. 24°; myristyl (tetradecan-I-ol), C<sub>14</sub>H<sub>29</sub>OH, m.p. 38°; palmityl (hexadecan-I-ol), C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>33</sub>OH, m.p. 49°; and stearyl (octadecan-I-ol), C<sub>18</sub>H<sub>37</sub>OH, m.p. 59°. These alcohols These alcohols are used in the form of sodium alkyl sulphates, RO·SO2·ONa, as detergents, emulsifying agents, wetting agents, insecticides, fungicides, etc. sodium salts lather well, and are not affected by hard water, and hence can be used as a soap substitute.

#### QUESTIONS

 Write out the structures and names (three methods) of the isomeric amyl alcohols. Indicate the class of each alcohol.

2. By means of equations show how you would convert: (a) n-butanol, (b) n-pentanol,

(c) hexan-2-ol, into butan-2-ol.

3. Give as many methods as you can for distinguishing between the three classes of alcohols.

4. Define and give examples of:—(a) primary alcohol, (b) secondary alcohol, (c) tertiary alcohol, (d) the Bouveault-Blanc reduction, (e) association, (f) dehydrogenation, (g) fermentation, (h) the oxo process, (i) dehydration, (j) hydration, (k) Tschugaev reaction, (1) Wagner rearrangement.

5. Name the products and indicate the conditions under which they are formed when ethanol is treated with:—(a) AcOH, (b) HI, (c) PCl<sub>3</sub>, (d) PBr<sub>5</sub>, (e) PI<sub>3</sub>, (f) Na, (g) AcCl, (h)  $\rm H_2SO_4$ , (i)  $\rm C_8H_5^*NCO$ , (j)  $\rm Br_2$ .

Give an account of the evidence for the structure of (a) EtOH, (b) PriOH.

7. Starting from acetylene, how would you prepare:—(a) EtOH, (b) C2H6, (c) CH4,

(d) EtNO2, (e) Et2O?

8. Starting with the following compounds, name the alcohol formed and indicate the necessary conditions:—(a) acetaldehyde, (b) butan-2-one, (c) ethyl propionate, (d) palmitic acid, (e) acetyl chloride, (f) propionic anhydride, (g) n-propylamine, (h) EtMgI and HCHO, (i) MeMgI and CH<sub>3</sub>·CHO, (j) MeMgI and Me<sub>2</sub>CO.

9. Write brief notes on the industrial preparation of:—(a) MeOH, (b) EtOH, (c) ProH, (d) the four butyl alcohols, (e) isoProH, (f) pentasol, (g) lauryl alcohol.

10. Suggest why the tertiary alcohols may be dehydrated or converted into alkyl chlorides by Accil

chlorides by AcCl.

#### READING REFERENCES

Killeffer, Butanol and Acetone from Corn, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1927, 19, 46.

Wynkoop, n-Butanol and Acetone, ibid., 1943, 35, 1240.

Lee, Fermentation, *ibid.*, 1950, 42, 1672. Gabriel, Butanol Fermentation Process, *ibid.*, 1928, 20, 1063.

Backhaus, Ethyl Alcohol, ibid., 1930, 22, 1151.

Amyl Alcohols from Pentanes:

(i) Ayres, ibid., 1929, 21, 899. (ii) Clark, ibid., 1930, 22, 439.

Brooks, The Manufacture of Alcohols and Esters, ibid., 1935, 27, 282. Park and Donlan, Alcohols other than Butyl, ibid., 1943, 35, 1031.

Graves, Higher Alcohols formed from Carbon Monoxide and Hydrogen, ibid., 1931,

23, 1381.

Hansley, Sodium Reduction of Fatty Acid Esters, ibid., 1947, 39, 55.

Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. VI (1951), Ch. 10. Reductions by Lithium Aluminium Hydride.

Byrkit and Soule, Sodium Methylate and its Uses, Chem. Eng. News, 1944, 22, 1003. Gaylord. Reduction with Complex Metal Hydrides, J. Chem. Educ., 1957, 34, 367. Brown, New Selective Reducing Agents, J. Chem. Educ., 1961, 38, 173.
Becker, Base-catalysed Alkylations with Alcohols, J. Chem. Educ., 1959, 36, 119.

#### CHAPTER VII

#### **ETHERS**

The general formula of the ethers is  $C_nH_{2n+2}O$  (which is the same as that for the monohydric alcohols), and since their general structure is R-O-R', they may be regarded as alkyl oxides or the anhydrides of the alcohols (see below).

When the two alkyl groups in an ether are the same, the ether is said to be symmetrical or simple, e.g., diethyl ether,  $C_2H_5$ —O— $C_2H_5$ , is a simple ether. When the two alkyl groups are different, the ether is said to be unsymmetrical or mixed, e.g., ethyl methyl ether,  $CH_3$ —O— $C_2H_5$ , is a mixed ether.

**Nomenclature.** I. In this system of nomenclature all the members are known as ethers, and the individuals are named according to the alkyl groups attached to the oxygen atom, e.g.,  $CH_3$ —O— $CH_3$ , dimethyl ether;  $C_2H_5$ —O— $CH(CH_3)_2$ , ethyl isopropyl ether.

2. According to the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature, the ethers are regarded as hydrocarbons in which a hydrogen atom is replaced by an alkoxyl group, -OR, the larger radical being chosen as the alkane. For symmetrical ethers, method  $\tau$  is to be used, e.g.,  $C_2H_5$ ·O· $C_2H_5$ , diethyl ether;  $CH_3$ ·O· $C_2H_5$ , methoxyethane.

General methods of preparation. r. By heating excess of alcohol with concentrated sulphuric acid or glacial phosphoric acid. One molecule of water is removed from two molecules of alcohol—hence the reason for regarding ethers as the anhydrides of alcohols:

$$2ROH \xrightarrow{H_1SO_4} R_2O$$

According to Van Alphen (1930), ether is formed from ethanol as follows (cf. ethylene):

$$C_2H_5OH + H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow [C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{} OH_2]^+ HSO_4 \xrightarrow{} C_2H_6^+ + H_2O + HSO_4$$

The ethyl carbonium ion may eliminate a proton to form ethylene (which is obtained as a by-product), or react with a molecule of ethanol (which is in excess) to form ether:

$$C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{O} C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{+} C_2H_6 \xrightarrow{O} C_2H_5 + H^+$$

On the other hand, Brooks (1935) believes that ethyl sulphate is formed first, and this then reacts with the excess of alcohol to form ether (cf. ethanol):

$$2C_2H_5OH + H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow (C_2H_6O)_2SO_2 + 2H_2O$$
 
$$(C_2H_5O)_2SO_2 + C_2H_5OH \longrightarrow (C_2H_6)_2O + C_2H_5O\cdot SO_2\cdot OH$$

The yields of ether are good from primary alcohols and fairly good from secondary. Mixed ethers may also be prepared by this method, e.g., addition of tert.-butyl alcohol to a boiling mixture of ethanol and aqueous sulphuric acid gives tert.-butyl ethyl ether in excellent yield.

ETHERS 141

2. By Williamson's synthesis, in which the sodium of potassium alkoxide is heated with an alkyl halide:

$$RONa + R'X \longrightarrow R \cdot O \cdot R' + NaX$$
 (g.)

The mechanism is probably:

$$RO^{-1}R'-X \longrightarrow \overset{\delta^-}{RO}-R'-\overset{\delta^-}{X} \longrightarrow R\cdot O\cdot R' + X^-$$

This method is particularly useful for preparing mixed ethers, and it is best to use the alkoxide of the secondary or tertiary alcohol, and primary alkyl halide because secondary and tertiary alkyl halides readily decompose into olefins.

Williamson's synthesis proves the structure of the ethers.

When R' is a methyl or ethyl radical, methyl or ethyl sulphate, respectively, can be used instead of the corresponding alkyl halide, e.g.,

$$C_2H_5ONa + (CH_3)_2SO_4 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot O \cdot C_2H_5 + CH_3NaSO_4$$

3. By heating alkyl halides with dry silver oxide:

$$2RX + Ag_2O \longrightarrow R_2O + 2AgX \quad (v.p.)$$

4. By passing the alcohol vapour over a catalyst such as alumina, thoria, etc., at 250° and under pressure:

$$2ROH \longrightarrow R_2O + H_2O$$

5. By passing an olefin into concentrated sulphuric acid, etc. (see ethanol and isopropanol).

6. From halogeno-ethers and Grignard reagents (p. 354).

7. Ethers may also be obtained by refluxing alcohols with esters of toluenep-sulphonic acid in the presence of sodium (Drahowzal et al., 1951).

$$ROH + CH_3 \longrightarrow SO_3R' \xrightarrow{Na} R \cdot O \cdot R' + CH_3 \longrightarrow SO_3H$$

General properties of the ethers. The lower members are gases or volatile liquids, and their vapours are highly inflammable. Their boiling points are much lower than those of the alcohols containing the same number of carbon atoms, and this is probably due to the fact that ethers cannot associate through hydrogen bonding. All the ethers are less dense than water in which they are not very soluble, but their solubility is very much increased in the presence of small amounts of alcohol.

The solubility of ethers is not as high as might have been expected in view of the fact that the oxygen in ethers can form hydrogen bonds with water. This low solubility may possibly be due to steric effects of the alkyl groups in the ether.

General reactions. I. Ethers form stable salts (oxonium compounds) with strong inorganic acids, e.g., [(C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub>OH]+Cl,-[(C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub>OH]+HSO<sub>4</sub>-. Because of this, ethers can be separated from paraffins and alkyl halides, e.g., by shaking with concentrated sulphuric acid, ether is removed from a mixture of ether and ethyl bromide.

2. When heated with dilute sulphuric acid under pressure, ethers form

the corresponding alcohols:

3. When warmed with concentrated sulphuric acid, ethers form alkyl hydrogen sulphates:

$$R_2O + H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow RHSO_4 + ROH$$
  
 $ROH + H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow RHSO_4 + H_2O$ 

4. Ethers are readily attacked by concentrated hydriodic or hydrobromic acid, the final products depending on the temperature of the reaction.

(i) in the cold:

$$R_2O + HI \longrightarrow RI + ROH$$

In the case of a mixed ether the iodine atom attaches itself to the smaller alkyl radical:

$$CH_3 \cdot O \cdot C_2H_5 + HI \longrightarrow CH_3I + C_2H_5OH$$

If both alkyl radicals contain the same number of carbon atoms, the iodine atom attaches itself to the less complex group. Propyl isopropyl ether, however, is an exception:

$$\mathrm{CH_3\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH_2\text{-}O\text{-}CH}(\mathrm{CH_3})_2 + \mathrm{HI} \longrightarrow (\mathrm{CH_3})_2 \mathrm{CHI} + \mathrm{CH_3\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH_2\text{-}OH}$$

(ii) When heated:

$$R_2O + 2HI \longrightarrow 2RI + H_2O$$

Reactions (i) and (ii) are very useful for identifying the groups present in an ether. Furthermore, since (i) occurs very easily, it is possible to "protect" a hydroxyl group in a polyfunctional compound by converting the hydroxyl group into an ether, which is later treated with concentrated hydriodic acid to regenerate the hydroxyl group (see, e.g., p. 236).

Decomposition of ethers by concentrated hydriodic acid is the basis of

the Zeisel method for estimating methoxyl and ethoxyl groups (p. 314).

Although heating ethers with hydriodic acid results mainly in the formation of alkyl iodides, some reduction products are also formed (p. 49). This reduction may be avoided by heating the ether with potassium iodide and phosphoric acid (Stone et al., 1950):

$$R \cdot O \cdot R + 2KI + 2H_3PO_4 \longrightarrow 2RI + 2KH_2PO_4 + H_2O_4$$

Birch (1951) has shown that ethers are converted into paraffin and alcohol when treated with sodium in liquid ammonia.

$$R \cdot O \cdot R' + 2[H] \longrightarrow RH + R'OH \longrightarrow R'H + ROH$$

Which of these two directions occurs is decided by which transition state has the lower energy.

5. When treated with chlorine or bromine, ethers undergo substitution, the extent of which depends on the conditions. Hydrogen joined to the carbon directly attached to the oxygen atom is most readily replaced, e.g., diethyl ether reacts with chlorine in the dark to form I: I'-dichlorodiethyl ether:

 $\mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot O \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Cl_3}} \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CHCl \cdot O \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Cl_4}} \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CHCl \cdot O \cdot CHCl \cdot CH_3}$ In the presence of light, perchlorodiethyl ether is obtained:

$$(C_2H_5)_2O \xrightarrow{Cl_5} (C_2Cl_5)_2O$$

Halogeno-ethers may also be prepared in other ways (see, e.g., p. 354).

ETHERS 143

6. Acid chlorides react with ethers when heated in the presence of anhydrous zinc chloride, aluminium chloride, etc.; e.g.,

$$R_2O + CH_3 \cdot COCl \xrightarrow{ZnCl_2} RCl + CH_3 \cdot CO_2R$$

Acid anhydrides also split ethers to form esters:

$$R_2O + (CH_3 \cdot CO)_2O \xrightarrow{ZnCl_3} 2CH_3 \cdot CO_2R$$

7. Ethers react with carbon monoxide at 125-180° and at a pressure of 500 atmospheres, in the presence of boron trifluoride plus a little water:

$$R_2O + CO \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2R$$

Dimethyl ether (methyl ether) is prepared industrially by passing methanol vapour at 350-400°, and at a pressure of 15 atmospheres, over aluminium phosphate as catalyst (p. 141). It is a gas, b.p. -23.6°, and is used as a

refrigerating agent.

Diethyl ether (ether, "sulphuric ether") is prepared in the laboratory and industrially by the "continuous etherification process", i.e., heating excess ethanol with concentrated sulphuric acid. It is also obtained industrially: (i) as a by-product in the preparation of ethanol from ethylene and sulphuric acid (p. 134); (ii) by passing ethanol vapour, under pressure, over heated

alumina or aluminium phosphate (cf. dimethyl ether).

Diethyl ether is a colourless liquid, b.p. 34.5°. It is fairly soluble in water, and is miscible with ethanol in all proportions. It is highly inflammable and forms explosive mixtures with air; this is a great disadvantage in its use as an industrial solvent for oils, fats, gums, resins, etc., and as an extracting solvent. It is also used in surgery as an anæsthetic, and is the usual solvent for carrying out Grignard reactions. In the presence of air and light, ether forms ether peroxide  $(C_2H_5)_2O \cdot O_2$ , whose structure, according to Rieche and Meister (1936), is  $CH_3 \cdot CH \cdot O \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3$ . Ether peroxide is a

heavy, pungent, oily liquid, and is explosive. Since its boiling point is higher than that of ether, it is left in the residue after ether distillations, and may cause explosions. Addition of a small amount of a cuprous compound, e.g., cuprous oxide, has been recommended for avoiding the formation of ether peroxide. The chief impurity in ether is ethanol, and this has the property of preventing the formation of ether peroxide.

An important derivative of ether is 2:2'-dichlorodiethyl ether, which is prepared by heating ethylene chlorohydrin with concentrated sulphuric

acid at 100°:

$$2\text{CICH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_9 \text{SO}_4} \text{CICH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2$$

It may also be prepared by passing a mixture of ethylene and chlorine into ethylene chlorohydrin at 80°:

$$CH_2OH \cdot CH_2Cl + C_2H_4 + Cl_2 \longrightarrow (CH_2Cl \cdot CH_2)_2O + HCl$$

2: 2'-Dichlorodiethyl ether is used as a solvent, as a soil fumigant and also

as the starting point of many chemicals.

2:2'-Dichlorodiethyl ether is also named as bis-(2-chloroethyl) ether. The prefix bis (Latin, twice) indicates that there are two identical groups attached to a given atom; it is generally used for complex groups.

Di-isopropyl ether is obtained industrially as a by-product in the preparation of isopropanol from propylene and sulphuric acid (p. 137). It is also prepared by

passing propylene into 75 per cent. sulphuric acid at 75-125° under a pressure of 3-7 atmospheres; very little isopropanol is formed under these conditions.

Di-isopropyl ether is a colourless liquid, b.p. 69°. It is used as an industrial solvent for extraction operations, and for decreasing the knocking properties of

petrol which, mixed with di-isopropyl ether, acquires a high octane number. Di-isoamyl ether, [(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>-]<sub>2</sub>O, is prepared by the action of concentrated sulphuric acid on isopentanol. It is a colourless liquid, b.p. 172°, and has a pear-like odour. It is used as an industrial solvent, and as a solvent in Grignard reactions in which higher temperatures are required than can be obtained by using ether.

Mixed ethers of the following types have been prepared: primary-primary; primary-secondary; primary-tertiary; secondary-secondary;

tertiary; tertiary-tertiary.

Isomerism within the ether series, and any other series in which the isomers differ by the nature of the groups attached to a given atom, e.g., the amines (q.v.), is sometimes known as metamerism: thus there are three metamers of formula C4H10O, viz., diethyl ether, C2H5·O·C2H5; methyl propyl ether, CH<sub>3</sub>·O·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>3</sub>; methyl isopropyl ether, CH<sub>3</sub>·O·CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>.

The term metamerism was introduced by Berzelius, but he gave it a wider

meaning than that which is accepted today (see p. 399).

#### QUESTIONS

1. Write out the structures and names of the isomeric ethers having the molecular

formula C<sub>5</sub>H<sub>12</sub>O.

2. Name the compounds and state under what conditions they are formed when ether is treated with:—(a) H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, (b) HBr, (c) Br<sub>2</sub>, (d) PCl<sub>5</sub>, (e) Na, (f) AcCl, (g) CO, (h) NaOH, (i) O<sub>2</sub>.
3. Define and give examples of:—(a) Williamson's synthesis, (b) the Zeisel deter-

4. A compound has the molecular formula C4H10O. How would you show whether it was an alcohol or an ether? If it is an ether, how would you determine its structure?

#### READING REFERENCES

Van Alphen, The Formation of Ether from Alcohol, Rec. trav. chim., 1930, 49, 754. Brooks, The Manufacture of Alcohols and Esters, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1935, 27, 284.

Norris and Rigby, Preparation and Properties of Mixed Alphatic Ethers, J. Amer.

Chem. Soc., 1932, 54, 2088. Evans and Edlund, Tertiary Alkyl Ethers, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1936, 28, 1186.

#### CHAPTER VIII

### ALDEHYDES AND KETONES

ALDEHYDES and ketones both have the general formula  $C_nH_{2n}O$ .

Aldehydes are the first oxidation products of *primary* alcohols, and their

functional group is the aldehyde group CHO or CHO, which can only occur

at the end of a chain, since the carbon atom of the group has only one available valency. Ketones are the first oxidation products of secondary alcohols,

and their functional group is the ketonic group CC=O, which cannot occur

at the end of a chain, since in ketones the CO group has two available valencies, each of which is joined to a carbon atom (cf., however, ketens, p. 287).

The C=O group is known as the carbonyl group, but when it occurs in

ketones, it is referred to as the ketonic group.

Nomenclature. Aldehydes. The lower members are commonly named after the acids that they form on oxidation. The suffix of the names of acids is -ic (the names of the trivial system are used, see p. 174); this suffix is deleted and replaced by aldehyde, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{H-CHO} \xrightarrow{[0]} \text{H-CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{formaldehyde} & \text{formic acid} \end{array}$$

$$(\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH}\text{-}\mathrm{CHO} \xrightarrow{[O]} (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH}\text{-}\mathrm{CO}_2\mathrm{H}$$
 isobutyric acid

The positions of side-chains or substituents are indicated by Greek letters, the  $\alpha$  carbon atom being the one adjacent to the aldehyde group, e.g.,

# <sup>α</sup>CH<sub>3</sub>·CH(OH)·CH<sub>2</sub>·CHO β-hydroxybutyraldehyde

According to the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature, aldehydes are designated by the suffix -al, which is added to the name of the hydrocarbon from which they are derived. The longest carbon chain containing the aldehyde group is chosen as the parent hydrocarbon; the positions of side-chains or substituents are indicated by numbers, and the aldehyde group is given the number I, which may be omitted from the name if the aldehyde group is the only functional group present in the compound (see p. 63), e.g.,

CH<sub>3</sub>·CHO ethanal
CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH·CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>3</sub> 2-ethyl-3-methylpentanal
CHO

Ketones. The lower members are commonly named according to the alkyl groups attached to the ketonic group, e.g.,

CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·CH<sub>3</sub> dimethyl ketone CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO·CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub> ethyl isopropyl ketone

The positions of side-chains or substituents are indicated by Greek letters, the  $\alpha$  carbon atom being the one *adjacent* to the ketonic group, *e.g.*,

$$\overset{\beta}{\text{CH}_3} \cdot \overset{\alpha}{\text{C}} \text{HCl} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \overset{\alpha'}{\text{CH}_2} \cdot \overset{\beta'}{\text{CH}_2} \text{Cl} \quad \alpha : \beta' \text{-dichlorodiethyl ketone}$$

If the two alkyl groups in a ketone are the same, the ketone is said to be simple or symmetrical; if unlike, mixed or unsymmetrical (cf. ethers).

According to the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature, ketones are designated by the suffix -one, which is added to the name of the hydrocarbons from which they are derived. The longest carbon chain containing the ketonic group is chosen as the parent hydrocarbon; the positions of sidechains or substituents are indicated by numbers, and the ketonic group is given the lowest number possible, e.g.,

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3 \cdot CH$$

Since aldehydes and ketones both contain the carbonyl group, it might be expected that they would resemble one another. It is therefore instructive to compare their general methods of preparation and their general properties.

## General methods of preparation of aldehydes and ketones

I. Aldehydes. By the oxidation of a primary alcohol:

$$R \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{[O]} R \cdot CHO$$

Oxidation may be effected by acid dichromate (yield: f.g.-g.); or by passing the alcohol vapour mixed with air over heated silver (250°) as catalyst (yield: g.). Alternatively, the alcohol may be dehydrogenated by passing the alcohol vapour over heated copper (300°) as catalyst:

$$R \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{C_U} R \cdot CHO + H_2$$
 (ex.)

tert.-Butyl chromate (prepared by adding chromium trioxide to tert.-butanol) oxidises primary alcohols to aldehydes almost quantitatively (Oppenauer et al., 1949).

Ketones. By the oxidation of a secondary alcohol (using the same oxidising agents as for aldehydes), or by dehydrogenation over heated copper:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CH(OH)-R'} \xrightarrow{\text{[O]}} \text{R-CO-R'} \quad (g.-ex.) \\ \text{R-CH(OH)-R'} \xrightarrow[300^{\circ}]{\text{Cu}} \text{R-CO-R'} + \text{H}_2 \quad (ex.) \end{array}$$

There is, however, a specific reagent for oxidising secondary alcohols to ketones, viz., aluminium tert.-butoxide, [(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>CO]<sub>3</sub>Al (the Oppenauer oxidation. 1937). The secondary alcohol is refluxed with the reagent in excess acetone solution; it is the acetone which is reduced:

$$\text{R-CH(OH)-R'} + \text{CH}_3 \text{-CO-CH}_3 \longrightarrow \text{R-CO-R'} + \text{CH}_3 \text{-CH(OH)-CH}_3 \quad (g.-v.g.)$$

This reagent is particularly useful for oxidising unsaturated secondary alcohols because it does not affect the double bond. On the other hand, primary alcohols (particularly unsaturated alcohols) may also be oxidised to aldehydes if acetone is replaced by p-benzoquinone. In general, quinones and aromatic ketones are better hydrogen acceptors than acetone.

The mechanism of the Oppenauer oxidation is probably the reverse of that of the Meerwein-Ponndorf-Verley reduction (p. 150).

N-Bromosuccinimide (p. 375) oxidises primary and secondary alcohols to aldehydes and ketones, respectively (Barakat et al., 1952), e.g.,

$$CH_3\cdot CH_2OH + CH_2\cdot CO$$
  $NBr \longrightarrow CH_3\cdot CHO + CH_2\cdot CO$   $NH + HBr$ 

Primary and secondary alcohols, both saturated and unsaturated, may be oxidised to the corresponding carbonyl compound by means of manganese dioxide in acetone solution (inter alia, Bharucha, 1956). Ruthenium tetroxide also oxidises saturated primary and secondary alcohols to the corresponding carbonyl compound (Berkowitz et al., 1958).

2. Aldehydes. By heating a mixture of the calcium salts of formic acid and any one of its homologues:

$$(R \cdot CO_2)_2 Ca + (H \cdot CO_2)_2 Ca \longrightarrow 2R \cdot CHO + 2CaCO_3$$

The yields are poor on account of many side reactions.

The mechanism of this decomposition has been studied by Bell et al. (1952), who prepared acetaldehyde by heating a mixture of barium acetate containing <sup>13</sup>C and barium formate, and obtained acetaldehyde containing no <sup>13</sup>C.

Ketones. By heating the calcium salt of any fatty acid other than formic acid (yield: variable due to many side reactions):

$$(R \cdot CO_2)_2 Ca \longrightarrow R_2 CO + CaCO_3$$

If a mixture of calcium salts is used, mixed ketones are obtained:

$$(R \cdot CO_2)_2 Ca + (R' \cdot CO_2)_2 Ca \longrightarrow 2R \cdot CO \cdot R' + 2CaCO_3$$

Apparently only methyl ketones have actually been prepared this way, i.e., calcium acetate is one of the salts used. This method of pyrolysis of calcium salts as a general method seems to be of no value.

3. Aldehydes. By passing a mixture of the vapours of formic acid and any one of its homologues over manganous oxide as catalyst at 300°:

$$R \cdot CO_2H + H \cdot CO_2H \xrightarrow{MnO} R \cdot CHO + CO_2 + H_2O \quad (f.g.-g.)$$

R<sub>2</sub>CO and R·CHO are obtained as by-products, and the reaction probably proceeds via the manganous salt, the manganous carbonate which is formed decomposing at 300°.

 $MnCO_3 \longrightarrow MnO + CO_2$ 

This mechanism postulating the decomposition of the intermediate manganous salt is supported by experiments using isotopically enriched acid (Reed, 1955).

Ketones. By passing the vapour of any fatty acid other than formic acid over manganous oxide at 300°:

$$_{2}\text{R}\cdot\text{CO}_{2}\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{MnO}} \text{R}_{2}\text{CO} + \text{CO}_{2} + \text{H}_{2}\text{O}$$
 (g.)

A mixture of fatty acids gives mixed ketones:

$$R \cdot CO_2H + R' \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow R \cdot CO \cdot R' + CO_2 + H_2O$$

R2CO and R'2CO are obtained as by-products.

4. Aldehydes. By the reduction of an acid chloride with hydrogen in boiling xylene using a palladium catalyst suspended on barium sulphate (Rosenmund's reduction, 1918):

$$R \cdot COCl + H_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CHO + HCl \quad (g.-v.g.)$$

Aldehydes are more readily reduced than are acid chlorides, and therefore one would expect to obtain the alcohol as the final product. It is the barium sulphate that prevents the aldehyde from being reduced, acting as a poison (to the palladium catalyst) in this reaction. Generally, when the Rosenmund reduction is carried out, a small amount of quinoline and sulphur is added; these are very effective in poisoning the catalyst in the aldehyde reduction. Sakurai et al. (1944) have improved the Rosenmund reduction by using BaSO<sub>4</sub>—Pd(OH)<sub>2</sub> as catalyst, and anhydrous acetone or ethyl acetate as solvent (yield: 80–90 per cent.). On the other hand, Davies et al. (1943) have shown that aliphatic acid chlorides may be reduced to aldehydes in reasonable yield by means of sodium amalgam.

Brandt (1949) has shown that lithium hydride reduces acid chlorides, anhydrides and thiolesters to the corresponding aldehyde, the yield being best

with thiolesters (70 per cent.).

When t-butanol is added to lithium aluminium hydride in ether, lithium tri-t-butoxyaluminium hydride is precipitated. This, in diethylene glycol dimethyl ether solution at  $-78^{\circ}$ , readily reduces acid chlorides to the corresponding aldehydes (Brown et al., 1958). The yields are comparable with those obtained by the Rosenmund reduction. Kuivila (1960) has also shown that tri-n-butyltin reduces acid chlorides to aldehydes in good yield.

Ketones. There is no analogous method for the preparation of ketones. 5. Aldehydes. By the ozonolysis of olefins of the type R•CH•CH•R':

$$R \cdot CH \cdot CH \cdot R' \xrightarrow{O_0} \xrightarrow{R \cdot CH - O - CH \cdot R'} \xrightarrow{H_2} R \cdot CHO + R' \cdot CHO \quad (g.-v.g.)$$

Ketones. By the ozonolysis of olefins of the type R<sub>2</sub>C:CR'<sub>2</sub>:

6. Aldehydes. By the oxidation of 1:2-glycols of the type R•CH(OH)•CH(OH)•R' with lead tetra-acetate or periodic acid (see p. 73):

$$\text{R-CH(OH)-CH(OH)-R'} \xrightarrow{ [O] } \text{R-CHO} + \text{R'-CHO} \quad (g.-v.g.)$$

Ketones. By the oxidation of I: 2 glycols of the type R<sub>2</sub>C(OH)·C(OH)R'<sub>2</sub> with lead tetra-acetate or periodic acid:

$$R_2C(OH) \cdot C(OH)R'_2 \xrightarrow{[O]} R_2CO + R'_2CO \quad (g.-v.g.)$$

7. Aldehydes. Acetylene, when passed into hot dilute sulphuric acid in the presence of mercuric sulphate as catalyst, is converted into acetaldehyde:

$$CH:CH + H_2O \longrightarrow [CH_2:CHOH] \longrightarrow CH_3:CHO \quad (v.g.)$$

Ketones. All homologues of acetylene, treated in the same way as acetylene, form ketones, e.g.,

$$RC:CH + H_2O \longrightarrow [R\cdot C(OH):CH_2 \longrightarrow R\cdot CO\cdot CH_3 \quad (g.)$$

8. Aldehydes. By Stephen's method (1925). An alkyl cyanide is dissolved in ether, or better, in ethyl formate or ethyl acetate (Stephen et al.,

1956), and reduced with stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid, and then steam distilled. Turner (1956), who has modified Stephen's method, also showed that the yield of aldehyde from *normal*-cyanides increases with increase in chain-length, and that branching in the  $\alpha$ -position lowers the yield.

According to Hantzsch (1931), Stephen's reaction proceeds via the iminochloride or aldimine hydrochloride (which is present as the stannichloride):

$$\stackrel{\text{HCl}}{\longrightarrow} [R \cdot C \Longrightarrow NH]^+ Cl^- \xrightarrow[\text{HCl}]{\text{SnCl}_2} [R \cdot CH \Longrightarrow NH_2]_2^+ \text{SnCl}_6^{--} \xrightarrow[\text{H_2O}]{\text{H_2O}} R \cdot CHO$$

Alkyl cyanides may also be reduced to aldehydes by means of the reverse addition of the calculated amount of lithium aluminium hydride at low temperature (see also p. 125).

$$4R \cdot CN + LiAlH_4 \longrightarrow (R \cdot CH = N -)_4 LiAl \xrightarrow{H_2O} 4R \cdot CHO$$

Brown et al. (1959) have reduced amides and cyanides to aldehydes using ethoxy-aluminium hydrides:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{LiAlH}_4 \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{Li(EtO)}_2\text{AlH}_2 + \text{R*CONMe}_2 \longrightarrow \\ & \xrightarrow{3\text{EtOH}} \\ \text{Li(EtO)}_3\text{AlH} + \text{RCN} \longrightarrow \end{array} \longrightarrow \text{R*CHO} \quad (70-90\%)$$

Khuri (1960) has used lithium trimethylborohydride to reduce cyanides to aldehydes.

Ketones. There is no analogous method for the preparation of ketones. 9. Aldehydes. By means of a Grignard reagent and formic ester (see p. 354).

Ketones. By means of a Grignard reagent and, for example, an alkyl cyanide (see p. 355). Ketones are also formed by reaction between an alkyl

cyanide and lithium-alkyls (p. 361).

10. Ketones. By the ketonic hydrolysis of the alkyl derivatives of acctoacetic ester (see p. 228), and also from ethyl malonate derivatives (p. 234).

Aldehydes. There is no analogous method for the preparation of aldehydes

hydes.

II. Aldehydes. Many aldehydes may be prepared by the oxo process

(p. 127), e.g., propionaldehyde (q.v.).

Ketones. There is no analogous method for the preparation of ketones. 12. Aldehydes. Aldehydes may be prepared (in yields up to 50 per cent.) by means of the modified Sommelet reaction (Angyal et al., 1953; see benzaldehyde, p. 647); e.g., n-hexanal is produced by adding an aqueous solution of n-hexylamine hydrochloride to a solution of hexamine in acetic acid through which steam is passed.

$$CH_3 \cdot (CH_2)_5 \cdot NH_2 \cdot HCl + (CH_2)_6 N_4 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot (CH_2)_4 \cdot CHO$$
 (17%)

Ketones. There is no analogous method for the preparation of ketones.

### Reactions common to aldehydes and ketones

It has been found that the reactivity of the carbonyl group depends on the nature of the alkyl groups attached to it; the smaller the alkyl group, the more reactive is the carbonyl group. Thus the order of reactivity is:

$$\begin{array}{c} H \\ C = O > \\ \begin{array}{c} CH_3 \\ H \end{array} \\ C = O > \\ \begin{array}{c} CH_3 \\ CH_3 \end{array} \\ C = O > \\ \begin{array}{c} C_2H_5 \\ C_2H_5 \end{array} \\ C = O > \\ \begin{array}{c} C_2H_5 \\ C_2H_5 \end{array} \\ C = O > \\ \begin{array}{c} C_2H_5 \\ C_2H_5 \end{array} \\ C = O > \\ \begin{array}{c} C_1H_5 \\ C_2H_5 \end{array}$$

If the alkyl groups are very large, e.g., tert.-butyl, the carbonyl group shows very little reactivity. One contributing factor to this decreasing reactivity with increasing size of the attached groups is steric hindrance (p. 107).

The carbonyl compounds undergo many nucleophilic addition reactions. An important point in this connection is that the attack at a carbon atom is always considered to be the factor that decides whether the attack is electrophilic or nucleophilic; i.e., a negatively charged carbon atom is attacked by an electrophilic reagent and a positively charged carbon atom by a nucleophilic reagent. It is not necessarily the order in which the fragments of the addendum add on that decides electrophilic or nucleophilic addition; it is whether the first carbon atom atom attacked is negative or positive, respectively (see below).

1. Aldehydes and ketones are reduced catalytically or by nascent hydrogen,

aldehydes producing primary, and ketones secondary, alcohols, e.g.,

$$>$$
C=O + 2[H]  $\xrightarrow{\text{metal/acid}}$  >CHOH (g.-v.g.)

Aldehydes and ketones are conveniently reduced by Raney nickel in aqueous or ethanolic solution (yield: g.-v.g.). Reduction may also be effected by means of the Meerwein-Ponndorf-Verley reduction (1925, 1926). The carbonyl compound is heated with aluminium isopropoxide in isopropanol solution; the isopropoxide is oxidised to acetone, which is removed from the equilibrium mixture by slow distillation:

$$R_2CO + (CH_3)_2CHOAl/_3 \Longrightarrow R_2CHOAl/_3 + CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow[H_2SO_4]{\text{dilute}} R_2CHOH \text{ (g.)}$$

This reducing agent is specific for the carbonyl group, and so may be used for reducing aldehydes and ketones containing some other functional group that is reducible, e.g., a double bond or a nitro-group. The Meerwein-Ponndorf-Verley reduction has been improved by Truett et al. (1951). Aldehydes and ketones are also reduced to alcohols by lithium aluminium hydride, lithium borohydride and sodium borohydride (p. 126).

Williams et al. (1953) used aluminium isopropoxide containing deuterium to reduce cyclohexanone, and concluded that the mechanism involves the formation of a cyclic complex:

When carbonyl compounds are heated with concentrated hydriodic acid and red phosphorus, the carbonyl group is reduced to a methylene group—CH<sub>2</sub>—. This may also be effected by means of the Clemmensen reduction (1913): the carbonyl compound is reduced with amalgamated zinc and concentrated hydrochloric acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CHO} + 4[\text{H}] \xrightarrow{\text{Zn/Hg}} \text{R-CH}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \\ \\ \text{R-CO-R'} + 4[\text{H}] \xrightarrow{\text{Zn/Hg}} \text{R-CH}_2 \cdot \text{R'} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \end{array}$$

The Clemmensen reduction does not appear to work well for aldehydes, but is reasonably good for many ketones.

The mechanism of the Clemmensen reduction is uncertain. Poutsma *et al.* (1959) have shown, by gas chromatography, that the reduction of acetophenone proceeds as follows (Ph =  $C_8H_5$ ):

$$PhCOMe \longrightarrow PhCHOHMe \longrightarrow PhCHClMe \longrightarrow PhCH_2Me$$

It was also shown that the alcohol, phenylmethylmethanol, was reduced to ethylbenzene under the same conditions.

2. Aldehydes and ketones add on sodium hydrogen sulphite to form bisulphite compounds:

$$>$$
C=O + NaHSO<sub>3</sub>  $\Longrightarrow$   $>$ C $\stackrel{OH}{>}_{SO_3Na}$  or  $\left[>$ C $\stackrel{OH}{>}_{SO_3}\right]$ Na<sup>+</sup>

These bisulphite compounds are hydroxysulphonic acid salts, since the sulphur atom is directly attached to the carbon atom. This structure is supported

by work with isotope 34S (Sheppard et al., 1954).

Most aldehydes form bisulphite compounds. Ketones of the type CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·R, where R is a *primary* alkyl group, form bisulphite compounds fairly readily; but where R is a secondary or tertiary alkyl group, the bisulphite compound is formed very slowly. If the ketone is of the type R·CO·R' where R and R' are ethyl or higher alkyl groups, the bisulphite compound is not formed at all (cf. reactivity of carbonyl compounds, above).

Bisulphite compounds are usually crystalline solids, insoluble in sodium hydrogen sulphite solution. Since they regenerate the carbonyl compound when heated with dilute acid or sodium carbonate solution, their formation affords a convenient means of separating carbonyl compounds from non-

carbonyl compounds.

The mechanism of bisulphite formation is uncertain. Kinetic studies have shown that it is probably sulphite ions which are the active species; thus a possibility is:

3. Aldehydes and ketones add on hydrogen cyanide to form cyanohydrins. The carbonyl compound is treated with sodium cyanide and dilute sulphuric acid:

$$>$$
C=O + HCN  $\Longrightarrow$  >C $\stackrel{\text{OH}}{\leftarrow}$  (g.-v.g.)

Cyanohydrins are important compounds in organic synthesis since they are readily hydrolysed to  $\alpha$ -hydroxy-acids:

$$R \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CN \xrightarrow{H_4O} R \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CO_2H$$

All aldehydes form cyanohydrins; only the ketones acetone, butanone, pentan-3-one, and pinacolone form cyanohydrins.

Cyanohydrins are also prepared, if possible, indirectly from the bisulphite compound, which is treated with sodium (or potassium) cyanide solution:

$$>$$
C(OH)·SO<sub>3</sub>Na + NaCN  $\longrightarrow$   $>$ C(OH)·CN + Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>2</sub> (v.g.)

Lapworth (1903, 1904) showed that the addition of hydrogen cyanide to carbonyl compounds is accelerated by bases and retarded by acids, and he concluded that the addendum was the cyanide ion, and proposed the following mechanism:

$$R_2C \stackrel{\frown}{\longrightarrow} C + CN^- \stackrel{slow}{\longleftarrow} R_2C \stackrel{\bigcirc}{\longleftarrow} \frac{H^+; \; fast}{CN} R_2C \stackrel{\bigcirc}{\longleftarrow} CN$$

Svirbeley et al. (1955), however, have found that the addition of cyanide ion to, e.g., propionaldehyde, is slightly subject to general acid catalysis (cf. p. 168). In this respect, the reaction is similar to semicarbazone formation (p. 153), and so the following mechanism has been proposed:

$$>$$
C=O+HA  $\stackrel{\text{fast}}{\rightleftharpoons}>$ C=O--HA  $>$ C=O--HA + CN- $\stackrel{\text{slow}}{\longrightarrow}>$ C $\stackrel{\text{CN}}{\longrightarrow}$ 

4. Aldehydes and ketones form oximes when treated with hydroxylamine:

$${\rm R_2CO + NH_2OH} \longrightarrow \left[ {\rm R_2C} \bigvee_{\rm NHOH}^{\rm OH} \right] \xrightarrow{-{\rm H_2O}} {\rm R_2C} = {\rm NOH} \quad (v.g.)$$

The mechanism of this reaction is discussed in connection with semicarbazones (see below).

Oximes are usually well-defined crystalline solids, and may be used to

identify carbonyl compounds.

Aldoximes form cyanides when boiled with acetic anhydride, whereas ketoximes form the acetyl derivative of the oxime:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CH:N-OH} \xrightarrow{\text{(CH}_{\bullet}\text{-CO)}_{\bullet}\text{O}} \text{R-CN} \\ \\ \text{R_2C:N-OH} \xrightarrow{\text{(CH}_{\bullet}\text{-CO)}_{\bullet}\text{O}} \text{R_3C:N-O-CO-CH}_{3} \end{array}$$

5. Aldehydes and ketones react with hydrazine to form hydrazones and azines. The mechanism of their formation is probably similar to that of oxime formation (see above):

Hydrazone:

$$>$$
C=O + H<sub>2</sub>N·NH<sub>2</sub> $\longrightarrow$   $\left[>$ C $\stackrel{OH}{\sim}$ NH·NH<sub>2</sub> $\right]$   $\stackrel{-H_1O}{\longrightarrow}$   $>$ C:N·NH<sub>2</sub>

Azine:

$$>$$
C:N·NH<sub>2</sub> + O=C $<$   $\longrightarrow$  H<sub>2</sub>O +  $>$ C:N-N:C $<$ 

By using suitable derivatives of hydrazine, more well-defined crystalline products are obtained (and azine formation is avoided), e.g.,

(i) Phenylhydrazine forms phenylhydrazones:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot NH_2 + O = C \longrightarrow H_2O + C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot N:C <$$

(ii) φ-Nitrophenylhydrazine forms φ-nitrophenylhydrazones:

$$\mathrm{NO_2} \bigcirc \mathrm{NH \cdot NH_2} + \mathrm{O} = \mathrm{C} \bigcirc \longrightarrow \mathrm{NO_2} \bigcirc \mathrm{NH \cdot N: C} \bigcirc + \mathrm{H_2O}$$

(iii) 2:4-Dinitrophenylhydrazine forms 2:4-dinitrophenylhydrazones:

$$NO_2$$
 $NH\cdot NH_2 + O = C \longrightarrow NO_2$ 
 $NH\cdot N:C \longleftrightarrow H_2O$ 

(iv) Semicarbazide forms semicarbazones:

$$NH_2\cdot CO\cdot NH\cdot NH_2 + O = C \longrightarrow NH_2\cdot CO\cdot NH\cdot N: C + H_2O$$

The semicarbazone reaction has been studied in some detail by Conant et al. (1932) and Westheimer (1934), and has been shown to be a general acid-catalysed reaction. The following mechanism has been proposed by Bartlett (1953):

$$\begin{array}{c} R_{2}C = O + HA \Longrightarrow R_{2}C = O \cdots HA \xrightarrow{NH_{1}\cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot NH_{2}} \\ R_{2}C \xrightarrow{OH} \\ \uparrow_{NH_{2}\cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot NH_{2}} + A^{-} \Longrightarrow R_{2}C \xrightarrow{NH \cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot NH_{2}} + HA \Longrightarrow \\ (I) \\ H \\ R_{2}C \xrightarrow{NH \cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot NH_{2}} \Longrightarrow R_{2}C = \stackrel{\dagger}{NH}\cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot NH_{2} + H_{2}O + A^{-} \Longrightarrow \\ R_{2}C = N \cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot NH_{2} + H_{2}O + HA \end{array}$$

Since the first step is formation of the acid complex, the rate of its formation would be expected to increase with increasing pH. On the other hand, the greater the pH, the greater will be the concentration of the semicarbazide salt:

$$\mathrm{NH_2\cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 + H_3O^+} \Longrightarrow \overset{\dagger}{\mathrm{N}H_3 \cdot \mathrm{NH \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 + H_2O}}$$

This salt, however, no longer has a lone pair of electrons on the N atom, and so is no longer a nucleophilic reagent. Thus the second step will be retarded or may even be inhibited. It can therefore be expected that there will be an optimum pH for the reaction. Both Conant and Westheimer found this to be the case.

This mechanism is also believed to operate in the formation of oximes and phenylhydrazones. The addition compound (of type I) has been isolated in certain cases, e.g., with chloral.

The carbonyl compound may be regenerated from the oxime, phenylhydrazone or semicarbazone by boiling with dilute acid (hydrochloric or sulphuric acid).

Wolff-Kishner reduction (1912). When hydrazones (or semicarbazones) are heated with sodium ethoxide at 180°, nitrogen is eliminated, and a hydrocarbon is obtained, i.e., by this means the carbonyl group is converted into the methylene group:

$$>$$
C:N·NH<sub>2</sub> $\longrightarrow >$ CH<sub>2</sub> + N<sub>2</sub> (g.-v.g.)

An improved technique is to heat the carbonyl compound in ethylene or trimethylene glycol with 85 per cent. hydrazine hydrate in the presence of three equivalents of sodium, sodium hydroxide or potassium hydroxide, at 180–200°; the yield is usually above 65 per cent. (Huang-Minlon, 1946). The yield of hydrocarbon is better than that obtained by the Clemmensen reduction. Reduction of sterically hindered carbonyl groups by either the Clemmensen reduction or the Walf. Kick are receding in not regular effected. Barton et al. reduction or the Wolff-Kishner procedure is not easily effected. Barton et al.

(1954, 1955) have modified Huang-Minlon's method (by excluding water), and have thereby reduced sterically hindered carbonyl groups.

According to Szmant et al. (1952), the mechanism of the Wolff-Kishner re-

action is (B is the base):

$$R_2C\!\!=\!\!N\!\cdot\! NH_2+B \Longrightarrow R_2C\!\!=\!\!N\!\cdot\! \bar{N}H+BH^+\!\longrightarrow\! R_2\bar{C}H+N_2\stackrel{BH^+}{\longrightarrow} R_2CH_2$$

Weisberger et al. (1956) have suggested a free-radical mechanism.

Girard's reagents for carbonyl compounds (1934, 1936). Girard introduced two reagents for carbonyl compounds: Girard's reagents "T" and "P", which are respectively trimethylaminoacetohydrazide chloride: [(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>N·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO·NH·NH<sub>2</sub>]+Cl<sup>-</sup>, and pyridinium-acetohydrazide chloride, [C<sub>5</sub>H<sub>5</sub>N·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO·NH·NH<sub>2</sub>]+Cl<sup>-</sup> (see p. 209). These reagents react with carbonyl compounds to form derivatives of the type [(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>N·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO·NH·N·C]+Cl<sup>-</sup>. These compounds are soluble in water, and have been found particularly useful for isolating certain ketonic hormones.

6. Aldehydes and ketones condense with thio-alcohols (mercaptans) to

form mercaptals and mercaptols, respectively:

$$>C=O + 2RSH \longrightarrow >C(SR)_2 + H_2O$$

When mercaptols (dithioketals) are heated with hydrazine hydrate and Raney nickel at 90-135°, the compound undergoes desulphuration (Georgian et al., 1959).

 $R_2C(SR')_2 \longrightarrow R_2CH_2$ 

7. Aldehydes and ketones add on a molecule of a Grignard reagent, and the complex formed, when decomposed with water, gives a secondary alcohol from an aldehyde (except formaldehyde, which gives a primary alcohol), and a tertiary alcohol from a ketone (see p. 352):

$$>$$
C=O + RMgX  $\longrightarrow$   $>$ C $\langle \stackrel{OMgX}{R} \stackrel{H_sO}{\longrightarrow} >$ C $\langle \stackrel{OH}{R} \rangle$ 

8. Both aldehydes and ketones undergo the Wittig reaction to form olefins (p. 64).

9. Phosphorus pentachloride reacts with *simple* carbonyl compounds to form *gem*-dichlorides:

$$>C=O + PCl_5 \longrightarrow >CCl_2 + POCl_3$$

The yield of gem-dichloride is usually good with aldehydes, but with ketones it is poor. With more complicated carbonyl compounds chlorination also takes place, substitution occurring on the  $\alpha$ -carbon atom only; e.g., di-isopropyl ketone gives  $\alpha$ -chlorodiisopropyl ketone when treated with one molecule of phosphorus pentachloride:

$$(\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH}\text{-}\mathrm{CO}\text{-}\mathrm{CH}(\mathrm{CH_3})_2 + \mathrm{PCl_5} \longrightarrow (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CCl}\text{-}\mathrm{CO}\text{-}\mathrm{CH}(\mathrm{CH_3})_2 + \mathrm{PCl_3} + \mathrm{HCl}$$

Very little gem-dibromides are obtained with phosphorus pentabromide; the main product from any carbonyl compound is the  $\alpha$ -bromo-derivative. Phosphorus pentabromide dissociates more readily than phosphorus pentachloride, and it is probable that the halogenation in the  $\alpha$ -position is brought about by the free halogen (see below).

10. Chlorine or bromine replaces one or more  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms in aldehydes and ketones, e.g., acetone may be brominated in glacial acetic acid to give monobromoacetone:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + Br_2 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 Br + HBr (43-44\%)$$

The halogenation of carbonyl compounds is catalysed by bases and by acids, but the details of the mechanisms are not certain. Let us consider

the case of acetone. Now it is known that both bases and acids catalyse enolisation of a ketone (see p. 221 for further details).

$$CH_{3} \cdot CO \cdot CH_{3} \xrightarrow{\text{base or acid}} CH_{3} \cdot C = CH_{2}$$
keto
$$CH_{3} \cdot CO \cdot CH_{3} \xrightarrow{\text{(slow)}} CH_{3} \cdot C = CH_{2}$$

If the enol form is the one which is brominated, the bromination can be considered to occur as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} OH \\ CH_3 \cdot C = CH_2 \end{array} \\ Br = Br \xrightarrow{fast} CH_3 \cdot C^+ \cdot CH_2 Br + Br - \xrightarrow{-H^+} CH_3 \cdot C \cdot CH_2 Br \end{array}$$

In both base and acid catalysed reactions it has been shown that the rate of bromination (and of any other halogen) is independent of the concentration of the bromine but is proportional to the concentration of ketone and base or acid present. This is in agreement with at least a two-stage reaction, the first and slow stage being enolisation, and the second and fast stage being bromination.

A very interesting point about this mechanism is that if the change from keto to enol could be speeded up to such an extent that it is now faster than the halogenation, then the concentration of the halogen would enter into the rate equation. This has actually been observed in, e.g., the iodination of acetophenone in the presence of sulphuric acid (Hammett et al., 1939).

Another point that we shall discuss here is: How is it possible for a C—H bond to be broken so readily? This must occur whatever the mechanism of enolisation, and has been explained as follows. Owing to the inductive effect of the carbonyl group (caused by the high electron-affinity of the oxygen atom), the electrons of the C—H bonds on the  $\alpha$ -carbon atom are displaced towards the carbon atom, thus giving rise to a condition for an incipient proton leaving  $C_{\alpha}$ .

Since the inductive effect falls off extremely rapidly from the source, only  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms will be affected by the inductive effect of the carbonyl group. This offers an explanation for the unusual reactivity of hydrogen in a methyne group (=CH-) or in a methylene group (-CH<sub>2</sub>-) when adjacent to a carbonyl group or any other strongly electron-attracting group. In such structures the incipient proton is readily removed, and the compound is said to possess an "active" methyne or

methylene group. Aldehydes and ketones with  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms readily react with sulphuryl

Aldehydes and ketones with  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms reachly to replace  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms only, e.g.,  $CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{SO_2Cl_2} CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2Cl$ 

The halogen atom in the group CX·CO is very reactive, far more so than

the halogen atom in alkyl halides. It appears that the adjacent carbonyl group plays a part, but its mode of operation is still not clear.

II. Aldehydes and ketones with a methyl or methylene group adjacent to the carbonyl group are oxidised by selenium dioxide at room temperature to dicarbonyl compounds; e.g., acetaldehyde forms glyoxal, and acetone forms methylglyoxal:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-CHO} + \text{SeO}_2 \longrightarrow \text{CHO-CHO} + \text{Se} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{-CO-CH}_3 + \text{SeO}_2 \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{-CO-CHO} + \text{Se} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \end{array}$$

12. Aldehydes and ketones are converted into the formyl derivative of the corresponding primary amine by excess ammonium formate or formamide (Leuckart reaction. 1885):

>C=O + 
$$^{2}\text{H}\cdot\text{CO}_{2}\text{NH}_{4}$$
  $\longrightarrow$  >CH·NH·CHO +  $^{2}\text{H}_{2}\text{O}$  +  $^{2}\text{CO}_{2}$  + NH $_{3}$  >C=O +  $^{2}\text{H}\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{NH}_{2}$   $\longrightarrow$  >CH·NH·CHO + CO $_{2}$  + NH $_{3}$ 

13. Aldehydes and ketones undergo the Schmidt reaction (1924). This is the reaction between a carbonyl compound and hydrazoic acid in the presence of, e.g., concentrated sulphuric acid. Aldehydes give a mixture of cyanide and formyl derivatives of primary amines, whereas ketones give amides:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{R•CHO} + \text{HN}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{H}_1\text{SO}_4} \text{R•CN} + \text{R•NH•CHO} \\ \text{R•CO•R} + \text{HN}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4} \text{R•CO•NH•R} + \text{N}_2 \end{array}$$

The mechanism of the reaction is uncertain. It has been shown to be intramolecular, and Smith (1948) has proposed the following mechanism, which is an example of the 1,2-shift (from carbon to nitrogen); for ketones:

For aldehydes the mechanism is the same, except that ion (I) is now (Ia), and hence R or H can migrate:

In ketones, if the two radicals are not identical, then two geometrical isomers of (I) are possible. It is also reasonable to suppose that the *anti* group (to the diazonium nitrogen) is the group that migrates (cf. the Beckmann rearrangement, p. 667). In this way it is possible to explain how steric factors may influence the isomer ratio of amides formed:

$$\begin{array}{c} R \\ R \\ N - N_{2}^{+} \end{array} \longrightarrow R - N = \overset{t}{C} - R' \xrightarrow{H_{3}O} R \cdot NH \cdot COR'$$

$$\begin{array}{c} R \\ R \\ R' \\ R' \end{array} \longrightarrow R - \overset{t}{C} = NR' \xrightarrow{H_{3}O} R \cdot CO \cdot NHR'$$

14. Aldehydes and ketones undergo condensation reactions, i.e., two or more (identical or different) molecules unite with, or without, the elimination

of water (or any other simple molecule). There is very little difference between the terms condensation and condensation polymerisation or polycondensation (p. 79); generally, condensation is used for those reactions in which the resulting compound is made up of a small number of the reacting molecules.

Aldol Condensation. Acetaldehyde, in the presence of dilute sodium hydroxide, potassium carbonate or hydrochloric acid, undergoes condensa-

tion to form a syrupy liquid known as aldol:

$$_{2\text{CH}_{3}\text{-CHO}} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \text{CH}_{3}\text{-CH(OH)-CH}_{2}\text{-CHO}$$
 (50%)

On heating, aldols eliminate water to form unsaturated compounds, e.g., aldol forms crotonaldehyde:

$$CH_3$$
·CH(OH)·CH<sub>2</sub>·CHO  $\longrightarrow$   $CH_3$ ·CH:CH·CHO +  $H_2$ O

In many cases it is the unsaturated compound that is isolated, and not the

aldol, e.g., mesityl oxide and phorone (q.v.).

The aldol condensation can occur: (i) between two aldehydes (identical or different); (ii) between two ketones (identical or different); and (iii) between an aldehyde and a ketone. Whatever the nature of the carbonyl compound, it is only the  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms which are involved in the aldol condensation.

(i) Generally, with two different aldehydes all four possible condensation products are obtained; but by using different catalysts one product may

be made to predominate in the mixture, e.g.,

$$\label{eq:cho-cho} \begin{split} \mathrm{CH_3\text{-}CHO} &+ \mathrm{CH_3\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CHO} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{NaOH}} \mathrm{CH_3\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH(OH)\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CHO} \\ \mathrm{CH_3\text{-}CHO} &+ \mathrm{CH_3\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CHO} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{HCl}} \mathrm{CH_3\text{-}CH(OH)\text{-}CH(CH_3)\text{-}CHO} \end{split}$$

(ii) Acetone, in the presence of barium hydroxide, gives diacetone alcohol:

$$_{2\text{CH}_{3}\text{-CO}\text{-CH}_{3}} \stackrel{\text{Ba(OH)}_{2}}{\longleftarrow} (\text{CH}_{3})_{2}\text{C(OH)}\text{-CH}_{2}\text{-COCH}_{3}$$

This equilibrium lies almost completely on the left, but the yield of diacetone alcohol may be increased (71 per cent.) by boiling acetone in a Soxhlet with solid barium hydroxide in the thimble. The acetone in the flask gets richer and richer in diacetone alcohol, since the boiling point of the latter is 164°, and that of the former is 56°.

When acetone is treated with hydrochloric acid, mesityl oxide and phorone

are formed:

$$_{2\text{CH}_{3}\text{-CO-CH}_{3}}$$
  $\stackrel{\text{HCl}}{\longleftarrow}$   $_{2\text{CH}_{3}}$   $_{2\text{C:CH-CO-CH}_{3}}$   $\stackrel{\text{CH}_{3}\text{-CO-CH}_{3}}{\longleftarrow}$   $_{2\text{C:CH-CO-CH:C(CH}_{3})_{2}}$ 

(iii) When aldehydes condense with ketones, it is the  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atom of the *ketone* which is involved in the condensation, e.g.,

$$CH_3 \cdot CHO + CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 \stackrel{\text{NaOH}}{\longleftarrow} CH_3 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$$
 (25%)

The yield of 4-hydroxypentan-2-one is low because aldol and diacetone alcohol are also formed.

It is generally accepted that the base-catalysed aldol condensation of acetaldehyde takes place in two steps, the first being the formation of the carbanion (I), and the second the combination of this anion with a second molecule of

acetaldehyde to form the anion (II) of the aldol. The simplest mechanism that embraces these facts is:

$$HO^{-}H^{-}CH_{2}\cdot CHO \rightleftharpoons H_{2}O + \overline{C}H_{2}\cdot CHO$$

$$O^{-}OH$$
 $CH_{3}\cdot CH \cdot \overline{C}H_{2}\cdot CHO \rightleftharpoons CH_{3}\cdot CH\cdot CH_{2}\cdot CHO + OH^{-}$ 
(II)

Bell's work (1937) suggested that the reaction in dilute sodium hydroxide solution was first-order with respect to the aldehyde, thereby indicating that the first step is the rate-determining one. Bell also found that the reaction was not exactly first-order in hydroxide ion. This is not in keeping with the mechanism given above. More recent kinetic work led to a reaction order between first and second, varying with the aldehyde concentration (Broche et al., 1955). This suggests that the first and second steps of the reaction are of comparable rates, and this conclusion was supported by the work of Bell et al. (1958). Bell et al. (1960), however, have investigated the acidic properties of acetaldehyde in alkaline solutions, where it is converted into the ion (III), CH<sub>3</sub>·CHOH·O<sup>-</sup>. This produces considerable reduction of the hydroxide ion concentration and affects the apparent order of the reaction. Ion (III) is present in concentrations comparable to the hydroxide ion concentration and may well contribute to the formation of carbanion (I) in the first step given above. When the formation of (III) was taken into account, Bell found that the corrected results showed the aldol condensation is almost of the second-order in acetaldehyde. These results have been interpreted by assuming the ionisation and condensation steps have comparable rates (as already suggested above).

On the basis of analogy with acetaldehyde, the mechanism of the base-

catalysed condensation of acetone will be:

There appear to be no detailed kinetic investigations on acid-catalysed aldol condensations, but it is generally assumed that the condensation proceeds by reaction between conjugate acid and the *enol form* of the carbonyl compound; *e.g.*, the formation of mesityl oxide:

Claisen condensation (1881). This is the condensation between an ester and another molecule of an ester or ketone (see p. 224).

Claisen-Schmidt reaction (also known as the Claisen reaction) is the condensation between an aromatic aldehyde (or ketone) and an aldehyde or ketone, in the presence of dilute alkali to form an ag-unsaturated compound.

This reaction is similar to the aldol condensation, and is illustrated by the formation of cinnamaldehyde from benzaldehyde and acetaldehyde:

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHO +  $CH_3$ ·CHO  $\xrightarrow{NaOH}$   $C_6H_5$ ·CH:CH·CHO +  $H_2O$ 

The mechanism of the Claisen–Schmidt reaction is probably that of the base-catalysed aldol condensation:

$$HO^{-}H\overset{\frown}{-}CH_{2}\cdot CHO \Longrightarrow H_{2}O + \bar{C}H_{2}\cdot CHO$$

$$O^{-} \qquad OH$$

$$C_{6}H_{6}\cdot CH \overset{\frown}{C}H_{2}\cdot CHO \Longrightarrow C_{6}H_{5}\cdot CH\cdot CH_{2}\cdot CHO + OH^{-}$$

The elimination of a molecule of water from the condensation product in alkaline solution possibly proceeds as follows:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CH-CH\cdot CHO + OH^- \Longrightarrow H_2O + C_6H_5\cdot CH-CH\cdot CHO \Longrightarrow OH^- + C_6H_5\cdot CH=CH\cdot CHO$$

Other condensations involving aldehydes or ketones are the Knoevenagel

(p. 280) and Perkin (p. 651) reactions.

15. Darzens Glycidic Ester Condensation (1904). This reaction involves the condensation of an aldehyde or ketone with an  $\alpha$ -halogeno-ester to produce an  $\alpha$ :  $\beta$ -epoxy-ester (glycidic ester); the condensing agent is usually sodium ethoxide or sodamide:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{R}' + \text{R}'' \cdot \text{CHCI} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{ONa}} \\ & \qquad \qquad \qquad \\ & \qquad \qquad \\$$

These glycidic esters, on hydrolysis, give the epoxy-acid, and this, on decarboxylation, gives a ketone, or an aldehyde which is formed by rearrangement:

Darzens (1936, 1937) has also prepared glycidic esters by condensing  $\alpha$ :  $\alpha$ -di-halogeno-esters with an aldehyde or ketone in the presence of dilute magnesium amalgam:

$$R \cdot CO \cdot R' + CHCl_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{Mg/Hg} R C - CHCl \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{H_1O} OMgCl$$

$$R \cdot C - CHCl \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{C_1H_1ONa} R \cdot C - CH \cdot CO_2C_2H_5$$

$$R' = C - CHCl \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{C_1H_2ONa} R' = C - CH \cdot CO_2C_2H_5$$

According to Ballester et al. (1955), the mechanism of the reaction is:

$$CH_{2}CI \cdot CO_{2}Et + B \Longrightarrow \overline{C}HCI \cdot CO_{2}Et + BH^{+} \xrightarrow{RR'CO}$$

$$RR'C - CH \cdot CO_{2}Et \longrightarrow RR'C - CH \cdot CO_{2}Et + CI^{-}$$

This is an example of neighbouring group participation.

Reactions given by aldehydes only. I. Aldehydes restore the magenta colour to Schiff's reagent (rosaniline hydrochloride is dissolved in water, and sulphur dioxide is passed in until the magenta colour is discharged). The mechanism of this reaction is obscure.

2. Aldehydes are very easily oxidised, and hence are powerful reducing agents. Aldehydes reduce Fehling's solution (an alkaline solution containing a complex of copper tartrate) to red cuprous oxide; and Tollens' reagent (ammoniacal silver nitrate solution) to metallic silver, which often appears as a silver mirror on the walls of the containing vessel. In both cases the aldehyde is oxidised to the corresponding acid:

$$R \cdot CHO + [O] \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2H$$

It is worth noting that Fehling's solution and Tollens' reagent are both weak oxidising agents, and can be used to oxidise *readily oxidisable* groups, e.g., they will oxidise unsaturated aldehydes to the corresponding unsaturated acids; they are not sufficiently strong oxidising agents to attack an ethylenic bond.

According to Veksler (1952), ketones with the structures Ar·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO·CH<sub>3</sub> and Ar<sub>2</sub>CH·CO·CH<sub>3</sub> (Ar = aryl radical) reduce cold ammoniacal solutions of silver oxide to a silver mirror; it appears that ammoniacal silver nitrate is not reduced.

According to Daniels et al. (1960), some aliphatic aldehydes, e.g., acetaldehyde, crotonaldehyde, etc., do not give a positive test with Fehling's solution. These authors suggest that Tollens' test is most satisfactory for distinguishing between aldehydes and ketones.

3. All aldehydes except formaldehyde form resinous products when warmed with concentrated sodium hydroxide solution. The resin is probably formed via a series of condensations, e.g.,

$$2\text{CH}_3\text{-CHO} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{-CH(OH)}\text{-CH}_2\text{-CHO} \xrightarrow{-\text{H}_4\text{O}} \text{CH}_3\text{-CH:CH-CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_4\text{-CHO}} \text{CH}_3\text{-CH:CH-CH(OH)}\text{-CH}_2\text{-CHO} \xrightarrow{-\text{H}_4\text{O}} \text{CH}_3\text{-CH:CH-CH:CH-CHO}, \text{ etc.}$$

Aldehydes that have no  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms undergo the Cannizzaro reaction (1853), in which two molecules of the aldehyde are involved, one molecule being converted into the corresponding alcohol, and the other into the acid. The usual reagent for bringing about the Cannizzaro reaction is 50 per cent. aqueous or ethanolic alkali,  $\epsilon$ .g.,

$$_2\text{H-CHO} + \text{NaOH} \longrightarrow \text{H-CO}_2\text{Na} + \text{CH}_3\text{OH}$$

The Cannizzaro reaction is mainly applicable to aromatic aldehydes (see p. 649).

Although the Cannizzaro reaction is characteristic of aldehydes having no  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms, it is not confined to them, e.g., certain aliphatic  $\alpha$ -mono-

alkylated aldehydes undergo quantitative disproportionation when heated with aqueous sodium hydroxide at 170-200° (Häusermann, 1951):

$$_2(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH-CHO} + \text{NaOH} \xrightarrow{_{200}^{\circ}} (\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH-CO}_2\text{Na} + (\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH-CH}_2\text{OH} (100\%)$$

The Cannizzaro reaction can take place between two different aldehydes, and is then known as a "crossed" Cannizzaro reaction (see formaldehyde,

p. 165).

All aldehydes can be made to undergo the Cannizzaro reaction by treatment with aluminium ethoxide. Under these conditions the acid and alcohol are combined as the ester, and the reaction is then known as the Tischenko reaction (1906); e.g., acetaldehyde gives ethyl acetate, and propionaldehyde gives propyl propionate:

$$2\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{Al}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_3} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$$

$$2\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{Al}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3$$

Aldehydes give simple esters with aluminium ethoxide, the aldol condensation with sodium ethoxide, and trimeric glycol esters with magnesium or calcium ethoxides (Villani and Nord, 1947):

$$_{3}$$
R·CH<sub>2</sub>·CHO  $\xrightarrow{Mg(OC_9H_8)_3}$  R·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH(OH)·CHR·CH<sub>2</sub>O·CO·CH<sub>2</sub>·R

4. Aldehydes (except formaldehyde) react with ammonia in ethereal solution to give a precipitate of aldehyde-ammonia, e.g.,

$$CH_3 \cdot CHO + NH_3 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot NH_2$$
 (50%)

These aldehyde-ammonias are unstable and readily undergo cyclic polymerisation, and it has been suggested, from X-ray crystal analysis, that acetaldehyde-ammonia is the trihydrate of trimethylhexahydrotriazine \* (Moerman, 1938):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{·CHO} + \text{NH}_3 \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{·CHO}\text{·NH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{polymerises}} (\text{CH}_3\text{·CHO}\text{·NH}_3)_3 \longrightarrow \\ \text{CH}_3\text{·CH} \xrightarrow{\text{NH-CH}\text{·CH}_3} \text{NH-CH}_3\text{CH}_3$$

5. Aldehydes combine with alcohols in the presence of dry hydrogen chloride or calcium chloride to form first the hemi-acetal, and then the acetal:

$$\text{R-CHO} + \text{R'OH} \xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} \text{R-CH(OH)-OR'} \xrightarrow{\text{R'OH}} \text{R-CH(OR')}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \quad (g.)$$

The hemi-acetal is rarely isolated since it very readily forms the acetal. Acetals are diethers of the unstable I:I-dihydroxyalcohols, and may be named as I:I-dialkoxyalkanes. Unlike the parent dihydroxyalcohols these acetals are stable. They are also stable in the presence of alkali, but are converted into the aldehyde by acid. Thus acetal formation may be used to protect the aldehyde group against alkaline oxidising agents. On the other hand, the aldehyde group can be protected in acid solution by mecaptal formation (p. 334).

<sup>\*</sup> The reaction between aldehydes and ammonia is usually quoted to be simple. Although the first product is simple, the final one is complicated, and so this reaction is not characteristic of aldehydes, since ketones also give complex products with ammonia. In the latter case, however, it is doubtful whether a simple addition product has ever been isolated.

A possible mechanism is:

6. Aldehydes react with aniline to form anils (azomethines):

$$R \cdot CHO + C_6H_5 \cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CH : N \cdot C_6H_5 + H_2O$$

Aliphatic azomethines tend to polymerise; the aromatic analogues are stable.

7. The lower aldehydes polymerise with great ease (see formaldehyde and acetaldehyde, below).

Reactions given by ketones only. I. Ketones do not give Schiff's reaction.

Acetone, however, restores the magenta colour very slowly.

2. Ketones are not easily oxidised (cf. p. 132); they do not reduce Fehling's solution or ammoniacal silver nitrate (see p. 160).

α-Hydroxyketones, i.e., compounds containing the group •CH(OH)•CO•,

readily reduce Fehling's solution and ammoniacal silver nitrate.

Strong oxidising agents, e.g., acid dichromate, nitric acid, etc., oxidise ketones, only the carbon atoms adjacent to the carbonyl group being attacked, and the carbon atom joined to the smaller number of hydrogen atoms is preferentially oxidised:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-CO}\text{-}|\text{CH}_2\text{-CH}_3 \xrightarrow{[0]} \text{2CH}_3\text{-CO}_2\text{H}$$

If the adjacent carbon atoms have the same number of hydrogen atoms, the carbonyl group remains chiefly with the *smaller* alkyl group; *e.g.*, when hexan-3-one is oxidised, the main product is propionic acid, and this is accompanied by much smaller amounts of acetic and butyric acids:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}\cdot|\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_3\\ &\xrightarrow{[O]} \rightarrow 2\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2|\text{-}\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_3\\ &\xrightarrow{[O]} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \end{array}$$

All ketones containing the acetyl group, CH<sub>3</sub>·CO, undergo the haloform reaction. This reaction is best carried out by dissolving the compound in dioxan, adding dilute sodium hydroxide, then a slight excess of iodine in potassium iodide solution, warming, and finally adding water. If the compound contains the acetyl group, iodoform is precipitated (cf. iodoform, p. 118).

The haloform reaction is very useful in organic degradations. A positive iodoform test is given by all compounds containing the acetyl group attached to either carbon or hydrogen, or by compounds which are oxidised under the conditions of the test to derivatives containing the acetyl group, e.g.,

ethanol, isopropanol, etc.

Booth and Saunders (1950) have shown that a number of other compounds besides those mentioned above also give the haloform reaction, e.g., certain quinones, quinols and m-dihydric phenols.

In practice, the base-catalysed iodination of aliphatic methyl ketones does not occur quantitatively according to the equation:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot R + 3I_2 + 4NaOH \longrightarrow CHI_3 + R \cdot CO_2Na + 3NaI + 3H_2O$$

For example, acetone and butanone consume more than the theoretical amount of iodine, whereas, e.g., methyl isopropyl ketone consumes less than this quantity (Cullis et al., 1956). Thus methods based on this reaction for the quantitative estimation of methyl ketones are unsatisfactory.

3. Ketones react with ammonia to form complex condensation products, e.g., if acetone is treated with ammonia and then followed by acidification of the reaction products, diacetonamine (I), and triacetonamine (II), are formed. If the reaction is carried out at room temperature (I) is the chief product; if heated, (II) is the chief product (Bradbury et al., 1947).

The mechanism of the reactions is uncertain, but it may be as follows. Ammonia (base) causes acetone to undergo the aldol condensation to give mesityl oxide and phorone, which then combine with ammonia to form

respectively (I) and (II) (see also p. 278):

$$(CH_3)_2C:CH\cdot CO\cdot CH_3 + NH_3 \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2C(NH_2)\cdot CH_2\cdot CO\cdot CH_3$$

$$(CH_3)_2C:CH\cdot CO\cdot CH:C(CH_3)_2 + 2NH_3 \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2C\cdot CH_2\cdot CO\cdot CH_2\cdot C(CH_3)_2 \longrightarrow NH \longrightarrow NH \longrightarrow CC(CH_3)_2 \longrightarrow CO$$

$$NH_2 \qquad NH_2 \qquad NH_2 \qquad NH_2 \longrightarrow NH \longrightarrow NH \longrightarrow CC(CH_3)_2 \longrightarrow CO$$

$$(II)$$

4. Ketones do not readily form *ketals* when treated with alcohols in the presence of hydrogen chloride or calcium chloride (*cf.* acetals, above). Ketals may, however, be prepared by treating the ketone with ethyl orthoformate (Helferich and Hauser, 1924):

$$\mathrm{R_2CO} + \mathrm{H \cdot C(OC_2H_5)_3} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R_2C(OC_2H_5)_2} + \mathrm{H \cdot CO_2C_2H_5} \quad \text{(g.)}$$

5. When ketones are reduced catalytically or in acid solution, secondary alcohols are obtained in good yields, but when they are reduced in neutral or alkaline solution, *pinacols* are the main products; *e.g.*, acetone reduced with magnesium amalgam forms *pinacol*:

$$2CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + 2[H] \xrightarrow{Mg/Hg} (CH_3)_2 C(OH) \cdot C(OH)(CH_3)_2$$

6. When ketones are treated with nitrous acid, the "half oxime" of the  $\alpha$ -dicarbonyl compound is formed,  $\tilde{e}.g.$ , acetone gives oximinoacetone (isonitrosoacetone; see p. 307):

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + HNO_2 \xrightarrow{C_3H_3 \cdot O \cdot NO/HCl} CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH:N \cdot OH + H_2O$$

All compounds containing the 'CH<sub>2</sub>·CO' group form the oximino-derivative with nitrous acid, and this has been used to detect the presence of the 'CH<sub>2</sub>·CO' group.

Benzaldehyde can also be used to detect the presence of the ·CH2·CO·

group (p. 651): .

7. Ketones condense with chloroform in the presence of potassium hydroxide to form chlorohydroxy-compounds.

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + CHCl_3 \xrightarrow{KOH} (CH_3)_2 C \xrightarrow{OH}$$

8. Ketones form sodio-derivatives when treated with sodium or sodamide in ethereal solution (see p. 230), e.g.,

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + NaNH_2 \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} O^- \\ CH_3 \cdot C = CH_2 \end{bmatrix} \overset{+}{Na} + NH_3$$

Formaldehyde (methanal), H.CHO, is prepared industrially:

(i) By passing methanol vapour over copper at 300°:

$$CH_3OH \longrightarrow H \cdot CHO + H_2$$

(ii) By passing methanol vapour mixed with air over a copper or silver catalyst at 250-360°:

$$CH_3OH + \frac{1}{2}O_2 \longrightarrow H \cdot CHO + H_2O$$

The amounts of methanol and air must be carefully controlled, otherwise formic acid will result due to the further oxidation of the formaldehyde:

$$\text{H-CHO} + \frac{1}{2}\text{O}_2 \longrightarrow \text{H-CO}_2\text{H}$$

The vapours are cooled, and the condensate obtained is a mixture of formaldehyde, methanol and water. It is freed from excess methanol by distillation, and the resulting mixture is known as *formalin* (40 per cent. formaldehyde, 8 per cent. methanol, 52 per cent. water).

(iii) By passing a mixture of methane and oxygen over certain catalysts,

e.g., molybdenum oxides:

$$CH_4 + O_2 \longrightarrow H \cdot CHO + H_2O$$

(iv) By the oxidation of natural gas.

Formaldehyde is a colourless, pungent-smelling gas, b.p.  $-21^{\circ}$ , extremely soluble in water. The low boiling points of aldehydes (and ketones) compared with those of alcohols are probably due to the inability of carbonyl compounds to associate through hydrogen bonding. On the other hand, since the carbonyl oxygen atom is capable of forming hydrogen bonds with water, the solubility of aldehydes and ketones in water is to be expected for the lower members (cf. alcohols).

Formaldehyde is a powerful disinfectant and antiseptic, and so is used for preserving anatomical specimens. Its main uses are in the manufacture of dyes, the hardening of casein and gelatin, and for making plastics.

Formaldehyde undergoes many of the general reactions of aldehydes, but differs in certain respects. When treated with ammonia, it does not form an aldehyde-ammonia, but gives instead hexamethylenetetramine:

$$6\text{H}\cdot\text{CHO} + 4\text{NH}_3 \longrightarrow (\text{CH}_2)_6\text{N}_4 + 6\text{H}_2\text{O} (80\%)$$

The structure of hexamethylenetetramine appears to be a complicated ring compound. It is a crystalline solid, and has been used in medicine under the name of *urotropine* or *aminoform* as treatment for gout and rheumatism.

Formaldehyde, since it has no α-hydrogen atoms, readily undergoes the

Cannizzaro reaction (see p. 160).

Formaldehyde is very useful for methylating primary and secondary amines, e.g., it converts ethylamine into ethylmethylamine:

$$C_2H_5\cdot NH_2 + 2H\cdot CHO \longrightarrow C_2H_5\cdot NH\cdot CH_3 + H\cdot CO_2H$$

Polymers of formaldehyde. (i) In dilute aqueous solution, formaldehyde is almost 100 per cent. hydrated to form methylene glycol (Bieber et al., 1947). This is believed to be the reason for the stability of dilute formaldehyde solutions (see also p. 168):

$$CH_2O + H_2O \longrightarrow CH_2(OH)_2$$

(ii) When a formaldehyde solution is evaporated to dryness, a white crystalline solid, m.p. 121–123°, is obtained. This is known as paraformaldehyde, (CH<sub>2</sub>O)<sub>n</sub>·H<sub>2</sub>O, and it appears to be a mixture of polymers, n having values between 6 and 50. Paraformaldehyde reforms formaldehyde when heated.

Formaldehyde cannot be separated from methanol (in formalin) by fractionation; pure aqueous formaldehyde may be obtained by refluxing paraformaldehyde with water until solution is complete.

(iii) When a formaldehyde solution is treated with concentrated sulphuric acid, polyoxymethylenes,  $(CH_2O)_n \cdot H_2O - n$  is greater than 100—are formed. Polyoxymethylenes are white solids, insoluble in water, and reform formaldehyde when heated.

(iv) When allowed to stand at room temperature, formaldehyde gas slowly polymerises to a white solid, trioxymethylene (metaform-aldehyde, trioxan), (CH<sub>2</sub>O)<sub>3</sub>, m. p. 61–62°. This trimer is soluble in water, and does not show any reducing properties. Hence it is believed to have a cyclic structure (in which there is no free aldehyde group).

Trioxan is very useful for generating formaldehyde since:

(a) it is an anhydrous form of formaldehyde; (b) the rate depolymensation can be controlled; and (c) it is soluble in organic

of depolymerisation can be controlled; and (c) it is soluble in organic solvents.

(v) Formaldehyde polymerises in the presence of weak alkalis, e.g., calcium hydroxide, to a mixture of sugars of formula C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>12</sub>O<sub>6</sub>, which is known as formose or α-acrose.

Condensation reactions of formaldehyde. Formaldehyde can participate in the "crossed" Cannizzaro reaction, and the nature of the final product depends on the structure of the other aldehyde. Aldehydes with no  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms readily undergo the crossed Cannizzaro reaction; e.g., benzaldehyde forms benzyl alcohol:

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHO + H·CHO + NaOH  $\longrightarrow C_6H_5$ ·CH<sub>2</sub>OH + H·CO<sub>2</sub>Na

Aldehydes with one α-hydrogen atom react as follows:

This β-hydroxyaldehyde in the presence of excess formaldehyde forms a substituted trimethylene glycol:

$$RR'C \xrightarrow{CH_2OH} + \text{H-CHO} + \text{NaOH} \longrightarrow RR'C \xrightarrow{CH_2OH} + \text{H-CO}_2\text{Na}$$

Thus the first step in the above reaction is the replacement of the  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atom by a *hydroxymethyl* group, •CH<sub>2</sub>OH, and the second step is the crossed Cannizzaro reaction.

In a similar manner, aldehydes with  $two \alpha$ -hydrogen atoms are converted first into the hydroxymethyl, then into the bishydroxymethyl, and finally into the trishydroxymethyl compound:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CH}_2\text{-CHO} + \text{H-CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \text{R-CH} \xrightarrow{\text{CHO}} \xrightarrow{\text{H-CHO}} \\ \text{R-C} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{OH}} \xrightarrow{\text{H-CHO}} \text{R-C} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{OH}} + \text{H-CO}_2\text{Na} \end{array}$$

A special case is acetaldehyde, which has three α-hydrogen atoms. This reaction is best carried out by adding powdered calcium oxide to a suspension of paraformaldehyde in water containing acetaldehyde. Tetrakishydroxymethylmethane (tetramethylolmethane) or pentaerythritol is formed:

$$CH_3 \cdot CHO + _4H \cdot CHO \xrightarrow{Ca(OH)_2} C(CH_2OH)_4 + H \cdot CO_2Ca/2 \quad (55-57\%)$$

Pentaerythritol is important industrially since its tetra-nitrate is a powerful explosive.

Structure of formaldehyde, Analysis and molecular-weight determinations show that the molecular formula of formaldehyde is CH<sub>2</sub>O. Assuming the quadrivalency of carbon, the bivalency of oxygen and the univalency of hydrogen, only one structure is possible:

This structure agrees with all the known properties of formaldehyde, and has been proved by both infra-red and ulta-violet spectra measurements.

Acetaldehyde (ethanal), CH<sub>3</sub>·CHO, is prepared industrially:

(i) By passing ethanol vapour over copper at 300°:

(ii) By passing ethanol vapour mixed with air over a silver catalyst at 250°:

$$C_2H_5OH + \frac{1}{2}O_2 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CHO + H_2O$$

(iii) From acetylene:

$$C_2H_2 + H_2O \xrightarrow{H_2SO_4} CH_3 \cdot CHO$$

(iv) By the hydrolysis of methyl vinyl ether (q.v.):

$$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 + \text{H}_2 \text{O} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHO} + \text{CH}_3 \text{OH}$$

(v) By the oxidation of natural gas.

Acetaldehyde is a colourless, pungent-smelling liquid, b.p. 21°, miscible with water, ethanol and ether in all proportions. It is used in the preparation of acetic acid, ethanol, paraldehyde, rubber accelerators, phenolic resins, synthetic drugs, etc. Acetaldehyde is about 58 per cent. hydrated in aqueous solution to form ethylidene glycol (Bell et al., 1952; see also p. 168):

$$CH_3 \cdot CHO + H_2O \Longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CH(OH)_2$$

Polymers of acetaldehyde. (i) When acetaldehyde is treated with a few drops of concentrated sulphuric acid, a vigorous reaction takes place and the trimer paraldehyde, (CH<sub>3</sub>·CHO)<sub>3</sub>, is formed. This is pleasant-smelling liquid, b.p. 128°, and is used in medicine as an hypnotic. When paraldehyde is distilled with dilute sulphuric acid, acetaldehyde is regenerated. Paraldehyde has no reducing properties, and its structure is believed to be (I):

(ii) When acetaldehyde is treated with a few drops of concentrated sulphuric acid at o°, the tetramer *metaldehyde*, (CH<sub>3</sub>·CHO)<sub>4</sub>, is formed. This is a white solid, m.p. 246°, and regenerates acetaldehyde when distilled with dilute sulphuric acid. Its structure may be (II).

Structure of acetaldehyde. Analysis and molecular-weight determinations show that the molecular formula of acetaldehyde is  $C_2H_4O$ . Ethanol may be oxidised to acetaldehyde, which, in turn, may be oxidised to acetic acid. Both ethanol and acetic acid (q.v.) contain a methyl group, and it is therefore reasonable to suppose that this methyl group remains intact during the oxidation, and is therefore present in acetaldehyde:

$$\mathbf{CH_3}\mathrm{\!-\!CH_2OH} \xrightarrow{[0]} \mathbf{CH_3}\mathrm{\!-\!CHO} \xrightarrow{[0]} \mathbf{CH_3}\mathrm{\!-\!CO_2H}$$

Phosphorus pentachloride reacts with acetaldehyde to form ethylidene chloride,  $C_2H_4Cl_2$ , and no hydrogen chloride is evolved in the reaction. This implies that there is no hydroxyl group present in acetaldehyde (cf. p. 136), and since two univalent chlorine atoms have replaced one bivalent oxygen atom, the inference is that there is a carbonyl group, C=0, present.

Thus the structure of acetaldehyde is 
$$CH_3$$
— $C$  $H$ .

Study of the dipole moments of aldhydes and ketones, however, has presented some difficulty in elucidating the structure of carbonyl compounds. It has been suggested that the values of the dipole moments are larger than can be accounted for by the inductive effect of the oxygen atom, and it has therefore been proposed that aldehydes and ketones are resonance hybrids:

Chloral (trichloroacetaldehyde), CCl<sub>3</sub>·CHO, is prepared industrially by the chlorination of ethanol. Chlorine is passed into cooled ethanol, and then at 60°, until no further absorption of chlorine takes place. The final product is chloral alcoholate, CCl<sub>3</sub>·CH(OH)·(OC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>), which separates out as a crystalline solid which, on distillation with concentrated sulphuric acid, gives chloral.

The mechanism of the reaction is obscure. The following set of equations have been proposed (Fritsch, 1897):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{Cl}_2} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH} \xrightarrow{\text{Cl}_3} \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot (\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)]} \xrightarrow{\text{C}_2\text{H}_3\text{OH}} \\ \text{[CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2] \xrightarrow{\text{Cl}_2} \text{CH}_2\text{Cl} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Cl}_3} \text{CHCl}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2} \\ & \downarrow \text{HCl} & \downarrow \text{Cl}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{Cl} \cdot \text{CHCl} \cdot (\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5) \xrightarrow{\text{Cl}_3} \text{CHCl}_2 \cdot \text{CHCl} \cdot (\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5) \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \\ \text{CHCl}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot (\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5) \xrightarrow{\text{Cl}_3} \text{CCl}_3 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot (\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4} \text{CCl}_3 \cdot \text{CHO} \end{array}$$

Chloral is a colourless, oily, pungent-smelling liquid, b.p. 98°, soluble in water, ethanol and ether. When heated with concentrated potassium hydroxide, it yields pure chloroform:

$$CCl_3 \cdot CHO + KOH \longrightarrow CHCl_3 + H \cdot CO_2K$$

Chloral is oxidised by concentrated nitric acid to trichloroacetic acid (I), and is reduced by aluminium ethoxide to trichlorethanol (II).

$$\text{CCl}_3\text{CO}_2\text{H} \xleftarrow{\text{HNO}_3} \text{CCl}_3\text{\cdot}\text{CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{Al(OC}_3\text{H}_3)_3} \text{CCl}_3\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$$

Chloral undergoes the usual reactions of an aldehyde, but its behaviour towards water and ethanol is unusual. When chloral is treated with water or ethanol, combination takes place with the evolution of heat, and a crystalline solid is formed, chloral hydrate, m.p. 57°, or chloral alcoholate, m.p. 46°, respectively. These compounds are stable, and the water or ethanol can only be removed by treatment with concentrated sulphuric acid. It therefore seems likely that in chloral hydrate the water is present as water of constitution, i.e., the structure of chloral hydrate is CCl<sub>3</sub>·CH(OH)<sub>2</sub>; similarly, the structure of chloral alcoholate is CCl<sub>3</sub>·CH(OH)·(OC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>). The stability of these compounds is remarkable in view of the fact that the group >C(OH)<sub>2</sub> in other compounds very readily eliminates water.

Bell et al. (1952) showed the forward and backward reactions in the hydration of acetaldehyde are subject to general acid and general base catalysis (i.e., the catalytic effect is due to all of the acids or bases present). Bell proposed the following mechanism for general acid catalysis:

$$\begin{array}{c} H \\ CH_3 \cdot C = O + HA \xrightarrow{fast} CH_3 \cdot C = O \cdots H - A \xrightarrow{H_4O; slow} \\ H \\ CH_3 \cdot C \cdot OH + A - \xrightarrow{fast} CH_3 \cdot CH(OH)_2 + HA \\ + OH_2 \end{array}$$

Since the reaction is reversible, the conversion of the hydrate into the aldehyde will involve the loss of a water molecule. If, however, the carbon atom of the

C—ÖH<sub>2</sub> group has a positive charge, then fission of this bond is strongly opposed, and so the hydrate will be stabilised. In chloral, owing to the strong inductive

effect of the chlorine atoms, the central carbon atom acquires a positive charge (III). On the other hand, Davies (1940) has shown from infrared studies

that chloral hydrate (and related compounds) contain hydrogen bonds, and he suggests that this accounts for the stability of the hydrate (IV). Acetaldehyde hydrate (V) will be unstable because of the +I effect of the methyl group, and acetone hydrate still more unstable because of the +I effect of two methyl groups. In both of these hydrates the central carbon atom acquires a small

negative charge and so facilitates fission of the C-OH2 bond. In formaldehyde hydrate, there are no methyl groups, and so this compound would be expected to be more stable than the corresponding acetaldehyde hydrate.

Propionaldehyde, CH3 CH2 CHO, b.p. 49°, and isobutyraldehyde, (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH·CHO, b.p. 61°, are prepared industrially by the isomerisation of propylene oxide and isobutylene oxide, respectively, in the presence of steam and an alumina-silica catalyst.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{·CH} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{·CH}_2\text{·CHO} \\ \\ \text{(CH}_3)_2\text{·CH}_2 \longrightarrow \text{(CH}_3)_2\text{CH·CHO} \end{array}$$

Propionaldehyde is also prepared industrially by the oxo process by passing a compressed mixture of ethylene, carbon monoxide and hydrogen over the catalyst

at 125-145° (p. 127).

Many higher aldehydes occur in nature, e.g., n-octaldehyde, C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>16</sub>O, and n-nonaldehyde, CoH18O, in rose-oil; n-decaldehyde, C10H20O, in rose-oil and

orange-peel oil.

Acetone (dimethyl ketone, propan-2-one), CH3 CO CH3, is prepared industrially:

(i) By passing isopropanol vapour over copper at 300°:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH_3 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + H_2$$

(ii) By passing acetic acid vapour over calcium oxide or manganous oxide at 300-400°:

$$_{2\text{CH}_{3}\text{-CO}_{2}\text{H}} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_{3}\text{-CO}\text{-CH}_{3} + \text{CO}_{2} + \text{H}_{2}\text{O}$$

(iii) By passing ethanol vapour mixed with steam over zinc chromite as catalyst, at 500°:

$$_{2}C_{2}H_{5}OH + H_{2}O \longrightarrow CH_{3} \cdot CO \cdot CH_{3} + CO_{2} + _{4}H_{2}$$

A newer process is to pass a mixture of acetylene and steam over heated pure zinc oxide as catalyst. Another new process is to heat a mixture of propylene and steam under pressure in the presence of a suitable catalyst (p. 137). Acetone is also manufactured by the oxidation of natural gas.

(iv) By fermentation (see n-butanol, p. 137), but this method is being

replaced by the above synthetic methods.

Acetone is a colourless, pleasant-smelling liquid, b.p. 56°, miscible with water, ethanol and ether in all proportions. Pure acetone is best prepared by saturating acetone with sodium iodide at 25–30°. The solution is decanted off from the excess solid, cooled to —10°, and the precipitate, NaI·3CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·CH<sub>3</sub>, is warmed to 30°, pure dry acetone thereby being produced. Acetone is used as a solvent for acetylene, cellulose acetate and nitrate, celluloid, lacquers, etc., and for the preparation of keten, sulphonal, etc. Acetone is hydrated to only a very slight extent in water:

$$(CH_3)_2CO + H_2O \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2C(OH)_2$$

The fact that acetone *does* form a hydrate is shown by the isolation of acetone containing <sup>18</sup>O when dissolved in water enriched with <sup>18</sup>O (Urey *et al.*, 1938):

$$Me_2CO + H_2O \stackrel{*}{\rightleftharpoons} Me_2CO + H_2O$$

Ketones do not polymerise, but readily undergo condensation reactions. Acetone readily forms mesityl oxide, phorone and diacetone alcohol (p. 238). but in addition to these condensations, acetone forms mesitylene when distilled with concentrated sulphuric acid:

$$_{3\text{CH}_{3}\text{\cdot}\text{CO}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_{3}}$$
  $\longrightarrow$   $_{\text{CH}_{3}}$   $_{\text{CH}_{3}}$   $+$   $_{3}\text{H}_{2}\text{O}$  (25%)

Structure of acetone. Analysis and molecular-weight determinations show that the molecular formula of acetone is  $C_3H_6O$ . Acetone reacts with phosphorus pentachloride to form *iso*propylidene chloride,  $C_3H_6Cl_2$ , and no hydrogen chloride is evolved. This indicates that there is no hydroxyl group present, and since a bivalent oxygen atom has been replaced by two univalent chlorine atoms, this implies that a carbonyl group is present. Assuming the quadrivalency of carbon, the bivalency of oxygen and the univalency of hydrogen, there are two structures possible for acetone:

(I) contains the aldehyde group, but since acetone does not behave like an aldehyde, (II) must be its structure. This is confirmed by all the known reactions of acetone (cf. acetaldehyde, for the structure of the carbonyl group).

Ethyl methyl ketone, butan-2-one, CH3 CO CH2 CH3, is prepared industrially:

(i) By passing sec.-butanol vapour over copper at 300°:

$$\mathrm{CH_3\text{-}CH(OH)\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH_3} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_3\text{-}CO\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH_3} + \mathrm{H_2}$$

(ii) By the oxidation of sec.-butanol with air, using a silver catalyst at 250°:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-CH}(\text{OH})\text{-CH}_2\text{-CH}_3 + \tfrac{1}{2}\text{O}_2 \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{-CO-CH}_2\text{-CH}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

Butanone is a pleasant-smelling liquid, b.p. 80°. It is widely used as a solvent

for vinyl resins, synthetic rubber, etc.

Methyl isopropyl ketone, 3-methylbutan-2-one, CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, b.p. 94°, may be prepared in several ways, but the best method is by treating tert.-pentanol with bromine and hydrolysing the dibromo-derivative, whereupon a molecular rearrangement takes place(see pinacone, below):

$$(\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{C}(\mathrm{OH})\cdot\mathrm{CH_2}\cdot\mathrm{CH_3} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Br_2}} (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CBr}\cdot\mathrm{CHBr}\cdot\mathrm{CH_3} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_4O}} (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{C}(\mathrm{OH})\cdot\mathrm{CH}(\mathrm{OH})\cdot\mathrm{CH_3}] \xrightarrow{-\mathrm{H_2O}} (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH}\cdot\mathrm{CO}\cdot\mathrm{CH_3}$$

tert.-Butyl methyl ketone, pinacolone, pinacone, CH3·CO·C(CH3)3, may be prepared:

(i) By distilling pinacol or pinacol hydrate with sulphuric acid:

$$(\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{C(OH)}\cdot\mathrm{C(OH)}\,(\mathrm{CH_3})_2\xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_4O}}\mathrm{CH_3}\cdot\mathrm{CO}\cdot\mathrm{C(CH_3)_3}\quad(65-72\%)$$

(ii) By passing pinacol dissolved in dioxan over a heated catalyst of silica-gel impregnated with phosphoric acid, a 94 per cent. yield of pinacolone being obtained (Emerson, 1947).

This conversion of pinacol into pinacone is an example of the 1,2-shift (p. 101), and is known as the pinacol-pinacone rearrangement.

Pinacolone is a colourless liquid, b.p. 119°, with a camphor-like odour. It is oxidised by alkaline sodium hypobromite to trimethylacetic acid:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot C(CH_3)_3 \xrightarrow{Br_3/NaOH} (CH_3)_3 C \cdot CO_2 H$$
 (71-74%)

Many higher ketones occur in nature, e.g., heptan-2-one, CH3 CO·C5H11, in

clove-oil, and undecan-2-one, CH3 CO C9H19, in oil of rue.

The pinacol-pinacone rearrangement is general for 1:2-glycols under acid conditions; the migrating group may be alkyl or aryl. The detailed mechanism of this rearrangement is not certain, but it is generally accepted that the first stage is the addition of a proton to one of the hydroxy-groups, followed by loss of this as water. This leaves a carbonium ion, and it is the nature of this ion and the steps leading to the product that are uncertain. According to Bunton et al. (1959), the mechanism for the rearrangement of pinacol itself is:

Kinetic measurements have shown that the conversion of (I) into (II) is the rate-

determining step.

Whitmore et al. (1939), using a related pinacolic deamination, showed that when an optically active amine containing one asymmetric centre was used, this asymmetric centre was predominantly inverted in the product (cf. Walden inversion, p. 413; Ph =  $C_6H_5$ ):

These results mean that the classical carbonium ion, which is flat, if formed at all, must rearrange so fast that racemisation cannot occur (see p. 412). On the other hand, the inversion may be explained by a synchronous migration of a phenyl group and breaking of the C—N bond. In this case, the intermediate could be the phenonium ion, i.e., a bridged ion in which the configuration of the asymmetric carbon atom is held in the inverted position:

A pair of electrons of the benzene ring is used to form the bridge, and the rest of the benzene molecule is represented as a pentadienyl cation (see p. 516). The formation of this phenonium ion is supported by other experimental work, but

whether a bridged ion is formed when an alkyl group migrates is very doubtful.

When dealing with unsymmetrical pinacols, there are several other points to be considered, e.g., which hydroxyl group is removed. Since the OH group is removed as water, any polar effect in the molecule which weakens one C—O bond more than the other will facilitate the release of this OH group. Consider the two groups phenyl and methyl. The phenyl group has a powerful conjugative effect, whereas the methyl group has a weak inductive effect in comparison:

Therefore the OH group lost should be the one on the phenyl side, and consequently it will be the methyl group that migrates. This is borne out in practice, e.g.,

Ph<sub>2</sub>C(OH)•C(OH)Me<sub>2</sub>  $\xrightarrow{\text{H}_2SO_4}$  Ph<sub>2</sub>MeC•COMe

Another problem is that of "migration aptitude", i.e., which of the two groups migrates when the groups are different. A great deal of work has been done with pinacols of the type (Ar = aryl) ArAr'C(OH)C(OH)ArAr', and it has been shown that the aryl group with the greater electron-releasing property is the one that migrates (Bachmann et al., 1932-1934). This is understandable on the basis of the formation of an intermediate phenonium ion. Any polar factor that helps to release a pair of electrons from a benzene ring will therefore facilitate the formation of the bridged ion with this benzene ring. It has also been found that migration aptitudes depend on steric factors.

### QUESTIONS

r. Write out the structures and names of the isomeric aldehydes and ketones having the molecular formula C5H10O.

2. What are all the possible oxidation products of: (a) n-pentanol, (b) hexan-2-ol,

(c) tert.-butanol?

3. Give an analytical table to show how you could distinguish between the following alcohols: methanol, ethanol, isopropanol and pentan-3-ol.

4. Starting with ethanol, how would you synthesise: (a) isobutyraldehyde, (b) crotyl alcohol?

5. Show, by means of equations, how you would convert acetylene into isoprene.
6. Describe the industrial methods of preparation of:—(a) formaldehyde, (b) acetaldehyde, (c) chloral, (d) acetone, (e) butanone.
7. Give an account of the evidence for the structure of (a) propionaldehyde, (b)

butanone.

8. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when acetaldehyde or acetone, respectively, is treated with:—(a) "nascent" hydrogen, (b) molecular hydrogen, (c) aluminium isopropoxide, (d) aluminium ethoxide, (e) sodium ethoxide, (f) NH<sub>3</sub>, (g) NaHSO<sub>3</sub>, (ħ) HCN, (i) N<sub>2</sub>H<sub>4</sub>, (f) RSH, (k) Br<sub>2</sub>, (l) PBr<sub>3</sub>, (m) SeO<sub>2</sub>, (n) NaOH, (o) HCl, (p) ammoniacal AgNO<sub>3</sub>, (q) C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>8</sub>, NH<sub>2</sub>, (r) HN<sub>3</sub>, (s) ROH, (t) HNO<sub>2</sub>, (u) SO<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, (v) Fehling's solution, (w) H·CHO.

9. Define and give examples of:—(a) the Oppenauer oxidation, (b) the Rosenmund reduction, (c) ozonolysis, (d) Stephen's aldehyde synthesis, (e) the Meerwein-PonndorfVerley reduction, (f) the Wolff-Kishner reduction, (g) the Clemmensen reduction, (h) Girard's reagent, (i) the aldol condensation, (j) the Cannizzaro reaction, (h) the Claisen condensation, (l) the Claisen reaction, (m) the Knoevenagel reaction, (n) the Perkin reaction, (l) disproportionation, (l) the Tischenko reaction, (l) the haloform reaction, (l) the Cannizzaro (l) the Ca (r) the pinacol-pinacolone rearrangement, (s) the Schmidt reaction, (t) polymerisation, (u) condensation, (v) the crossed Cannizzaro reaction, (w) Darzens glycidic ester condensation.

### READING REFERENCES

Bevington, The Polymerisation of Aldehydes, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1952, 6, 141. Seelye and Turney, The Iodoform Reaction, J. Chem. Educ., 1959, 36, 572.

Organic Reactions (Wiley).

(i) Vol. I. (1942), Ch. 7. The Clemmensen Reduction.

(ii) Vol. II. (1944), Ch. 3. The Cannizzaro Reaction.
(iii) Vol. II. (1944), Ch. 5. Reduction with Aluminium Alkoxides.
(iv) Vol. IV. (1948), Ch. 7. The Rosenmund Reduction of Acid Chlorides to Aldehydes.

(v) Vol. IV. (1948), Ch. 8. The Wolff-Kishner Reduction. The Leuckart Reaction.

Selenium Dioxide Oxidation. The Darzens Glycidic Ester Condensation.

(vi) Vol. V. (1949), Ch. 7. (vii) Vol. V. (1949), Ch. 8. (viii) Vol. V. (1949), Ch. 10. (ix) Vol. VI. (1951), Ch. 5. The Oppenauer Oxidation.

(x) Vol. III. (1946), Ch. 8. The Schmidt Reaction. (xi) Vol. VII. (1953), Ch 6. The Nitrosation of Aliphatic Carbon Atoms.

The Synthesis of Aldehydes from Carboxylic Acids. (xii) Vol. VIII. (1954), Ch 5.

Whitmore, The Common Basis of Intramolecular Rearrangements, J. Amer. Chem.

Soc., 1932, 54, 3274.
Davies, An Infra-Red Study of Chloral Hydrate and Related Compounds, Trans. Faraday Soc., 1940, 63, 333, 1114

Walsh, Remarks on the Strengths of Bonds, ibid., 1947, 46, 60, 158, 342.

Angyal et al., The Preparation of Aliphatic Aldehydes, J.C.S., 1953, 1737

Ballester, Mechanisms of the Darzens and Related Condensations, Chem. Reviews, 1955, 55, 283.

Bethell and Gold, The Structure of Carbonium Ions, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1958,

Collins, The Pinacol Rearrangement, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1960, 14, 357. Moulton et al., Mechanism of the Meerwein-Ponndorf-Verley Reduction, J. Org. Chem.,

1961, 26, 290. Smith and Antoniades, The Interplay of Steric and Electronic Factors Affecting Geometrical Isomerism of Diaryl Ketimine Derivatives, Tetrahedron, 1960, 9, 210.

#### CHAPTER IX

## FATTY ACIDS

THE fatty acid series was so named because some of the higher members, particularly palmitic and stearic acids, occur in natural fats. The general formula of the fatty acids is  $C_nH_{2n}O_2$ . As, however, their functional group is the carboxyl group,  $-CO_2H$ , they are more conveniently expressed as C<sub>n</sub>H<sub>2n+1</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H or R·CO<sub>2</sub>H, since these show the nature of the functional group. Furthermore, since the fatty acids contain only one carboxyl group, they are also known as the saturated monocarboxylic acids.

Only the hydrogen atom of the carboxyl group is replaceable by a metal; therefore the fatty acids are monobasic. The structure of the carboxyl

group is written as —COOH), but, as we shall see later, it does

not represent accurately the behaviour of the carboxyl group.

Nomenclature. The fatty acids are commonly known by the trivial names, which have been derived from the source of the particular acid; e.g., formic acid, H·CO2H, was so named because it was first obtained by the distillation of ants; the Latin word for ant is formica. Acetic acid, CH<sub>3</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, is the chief constituent of vinegar, the Latin word for which is acetum; etc. (see below).

Another system of nomenclature considers the fatty acids, except formic

acid, as derivatives of acetic acid, e.g.,

CH3.CH2.CO2H (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>C·CO<sub>2</sub>H (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H isopropylacetic acid

methylacetic acid trimethylacetic acid

In the above two systems the positions of substituents in the chain are indicated by Greek letters, the a-carbon atom being the one joined to the carboxyl group, e.g.,

CH3·CH(OH)·CH2·CH2·CO2H y-hydroxyvaleric acid CH3.CHCI.CH.CO2H

β-chloro-α-methylbutyric acid

According to the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature, the suffix of the mono-carboxylic acids is -oic, which is added to the name of the alkane corresponding to the longest carbon chain containing the carboxyl group, e.g.,

> H·CO<sub>2</sub>H CH. CH. CO.H propanoic acid

methanoic acid

The positions of side-chains (or substituents) are indicated by numbers, the carboxyl group always being given number I (see p. 63), e.g.,

CH,CH.

CH3-CH-CH-CH2-CO2H 3:4-dimethylpentanoic acid

Alternatively, the carboxyl group is regarded as a substituent, and is denoted by the suffix carboxylic acid, e.g.,

$$\overset{\overset{4}{\text{C}}}{\text{H}_{3}} \cdot \overset{\overset{2}{\text{C}}}{\text{H}_{2}} \cdot \overset{\overset{2}{\text{C}}}{\text{H}_{2}} \cdot \overset{\overset{2}{\text{CO}_{2}}}{\text{H}}$$
 2-methylbutane-1-carboxylic acid 
$$\overset{2}{\text{CH}_{3}} \cdot \overset{2}{\text{CH}_{3}} \cdot \overset{2}{\text{CH}_{3}$$

General methods of preparation. 1. Oxidation of alcohols, aldehydes or ketones with acid dichromate yields acids:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{R} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH} & \xrightarrow{[O]} \text{R} \cdot \text{CHO} \xrightarrow{[O]} \text{R} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} & (g.-v.g.) \\ \text{R}_2\text{CHOH} & \xrightarrow{[O]} \text{R}_2\text{CO} \xrightarrow{[O]} \text{R} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{R}' \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} & (g.) \end{array}$$

In certain cases the ester, and not the acid, is obtained by the oxidation of alcohols (see p. 190).

2. A very good synthetic method is the hydrolysis of cyanides with acid

or alkali:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-C} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \left[ \text{R-C} \xrightarrow{\text{OH}} \right] \longrightarrow \text{R-C} \xrightarrow{\text{NH}_2} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \\ \text{R-CO}_2\text{H} + \text{NH}_3 \quad (g.\text{-v.g.}) \end{array}$$

The amide,  $R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2$ , may be isolated if suitable precautions are taken (p. 203).

3. By the reaction between a Grignard reagent and carbon dioxide:

$$RMgX + CO_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2MgX \xrightarrow{H_4O} R \cdot CO_2H$$

4. Many fatty acids may be conveniently synthesised from alkyl halides and ethyl malonate or acetoacetic ester. These syntheses will be discussed

in detail later (pp. 229, 233).

5. A number of higher fatty acids may be obtained by the hydrolysis of natural fats, but it is usually difficult to obtain the acids pure from these sources. On the other hand, higher fatty acids may be prepared by the electrolysis of a methanolic solution of a mixture of a monocarboxylic acid and a half-ester of a dicarboxylic acid (Linstead *et al.*, 1950; *cf.* p. 52):

$$R \cdot CO_2H + CO_2H \cdot (CH_2)_n \cdot CO_2CH_3 \longrightarrow H_2 + 2CO_2 + R \cdot (CH_2)_n \cdot CO_2CH_3$$

6. The sodium salt of a fatty acid may be obtained by heating a sodium alkoxide with carbon monoxide under pressure:

It has also been found that the acid may be obtained by heating the alcoho with carbon monoxide at 125–180°, under a pressure of 500 atmospheres, in the presence of a catalyst of boron trifluoride and a little water:

$$ROH + CO \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2H$$

The sodium salts of acetic and propionic acids are formed by the interaction of methylsodium or ethylsodium, respectively, and carbon dioxide, e.g.,

$$C_2\bar{H}_5N_a^+ + CO_2 \longrightarrow C_2H_5 \cdot CO_2Na$$

A recent method of preparing fatty acids is by the catalytic oxidation of long-chain hydrocarbons. The hydrocarbons are obtained from the wax fraction of the Fischer-Tropsch synthesis of hydrocarbons (p. 60), which are oxidised by the passage of air at 120° in the presence of manganous stearate as catalyst; or by oxidising with air in aluminium vessels, the aluminium acting as catalyst. A mixture of fatty acids is obtained, and this has been used for making fats. The actual composition of the mixture of acids has not yet been ascertained.

Another recent method for manufacturing fatty acids is to heat an olefin with carbon monoxide and steam under pressure at 300-400° in the presence

of a catalyst, e.g., phosphoric acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\!\!=\!\!\text{CH}_2 + \text{CO} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{`CH}_2\text{`CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{`CH}\!\!=\!\!\text{CH}_2 + \text{CO} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow (\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}\text{`CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$$

General properties of the fatty acids. The first three fatty acids are colourless, pungent-smelling liquids; the acids from butyric, C4H8O2, to nonoic, C9H18O2, are oils which smell like goats' butter; and those higher than decoic acid, C10H20O2, are odourless solids.

The lower members are far less volatile than is to be expected from their molecular weight. Nash et al. (1957) have reported that formic, acetic, propionic, and n-butyric acid exist as dimers in aqueous solution. The existence of these dimers can be explained by hydrogen bonding, and electron

R—CO—H—O C—R diffraction studies (Pauling, 1934) have shown that an eight-membered ring is present. On the other hand, crystalline formic acid (Holtzberg et al., 1953) and acetic acid (Jones et al., 1958)

exist as infinite chains in the extended form, whereas the long-chain fatty

acids (von Sydow, 1956) consist of cyclic dimers.

The melting points of the n-fatty acids show alternation or oscillation from one member to the next, the melting point of an "even" acid being higher than that of the "odd" acid immediately below and above it in the series (see the physical constants of the individuals). A number of homologous series follow this oscillation or "saw-tooth" rule; some authors believe this to be connected with the zig-zag nature of the carbon

The first four members are very soluble in water, and the solubility

decreases as the molecular weight increases.

General reactions of the fatty acids. I. The fatty acids are acted upon by the strongly electropositive metals with the liberation of hydrogen and formation of a salt:

$$R \cdot CO_2H + Na \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2Na + \frac{1}{2}H_2$$

Salts are also formed by the reaction between an acid and an alkali:

$$R \cdot CO_2H + NaOH \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2Na + H_2O$$

2. Fatty acids react with alcohols to form esters:

$$R \cdot CO_2H + R'OH \Longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2R' + H_2O$$

3. Phosphorus trichloride, phosphorus pentachloride or thionyl chloride act upon the fatty acids to form acid chlorides:

$$3R \cdot CO_2H + PCl_3 \longrightarrow 3R \cdot COCl + H_3PO_3$$
  
 $R \cdot CO_2H + PCl_5 \longrightarrow R \cdot COCl + HCl + POCl_3$   
 $R \cdot CO_2H + SOCl_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot COCl + HCl + SO_2$ 

The acid series may be "stepped up" via the acid chloride, but since the process involves many steps, the yield of the higher acid homologue is usually only f.-f.g.:

(a) 
$$R \cdot CO_2H \xrightarrow{PCl_5} R \cdot COCl \xrightarrow{H_2} R \cdot CHO \xrightarrow{H_2} R \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{PBr_5}$$

$$R \cdot CH_2Br \xrightarrow{KCN} R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CN \xrightarrow{H_2O} R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$$
(b)  $R \cdot CO_2H \xrightarrow{PCl_5} R \cdot COCl \xrightarrow{KCN} R \cdot CO \cdot CN \xrightarrow{H_2O} R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$ 

$$R \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H \xrightarrow{reduction} R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$$

Although method (b) involves fewer steps than (a), the final yield of acid by route (a) is higher than that by (b), since the yields in each step of (b) are generally low.

4. When the ammonium salts of the fatty acids are strongly heated, the

acid amide is formed by the elimination of water:

$$R \cdot CO_2NH_4 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 + H_2O$$

5. When the anhydrous sodium salt of a fatty acid is heated with sodalime, a paraffin and other products are formed (p. 50).

The mechanism of this decarboxylation is uncertain, but there is much evidence to show that salts decompose by an SEI reaction:

$$\begin{array}{c} \stackrel{\leftarrow}{R} \stackrel{\leftarrow}{-} \stackrel{\leftarrow}{C} \stackrel{\leftarrow}{O} \stackrel{\rightarrow}{\longrightarrow} \stackrel{\rightarrow}{R} : + \stackrel{\leftarrow}{C} \stackrel{\leftarrow}{O} \\ \stackrel{\rightarrow}{R} : + \stackrel{\rightarrow}{H} \stackrel{\rightarrow}{\longrightarrow} \stackrel{\rightarrow}{R} - H \end{array}$$

The decarboxylation of free acids may be:

$$R-C \xrightarrow{\tilde{O}-H} \longrightarrow \mathring{H} + \overset{\tilde{\Gamma}}{R} - \overset{\tilde{\Gamma}}{C} \xrightarrow{\tilde{O}^-} \longrightarrow \mathring{H} + \overset{\tilde{\Gamma}}{R} : + CO_2 \longrightarrow R-H + CO_2$$

The fatty acids may be "stepped down" by heating the calcium salt of the acid with calcium acetate (see p. 147), and the methyl ketone produced is oxidised with acid dichromate:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CH}_2\text{-CO}_2\text{Ca}/_2 + \text{CH}_3\text{-CO}_2\text{-Ca}/_2 \longrightarrow \text{R-CH}_2\text{-CO-CH}_3 \xrightarrow{[O]} \\ \text{R-CO}_2\text{H} + \text{CH}_3\text{--CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$$

It should be noted that the second step is based on the general rule that when an unsymmetrical ketone is oxidised, the carbonyl group remains chiefly with the smaller alkyl group.

Since very few fatty acids containing an odd number of carbon atoms occur naturally, this method of descending the series affords a useful means

of obtaining "odd" acids from "even".

When a mixture of the calcium salt (or any of the others mentioned above) and calcium formate is heated, an aldehyde is obtained:

$$R \cdot CO_2Ca/_2 + H \cdot CO_2Ca/_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CHO + CaCO_3$$

Metallic salts, particularly the silver salts, are converted by bromine into the alkyl bromide. This reaction may also be used to "step down" the acid series (p. 105).

6. When a concentrated aqueous solution of the sodium or potassium

salt of a fatty acid is electrolysed, a paraffin is obtained:

$$2R \cdot CO_2K + 2H_2O \longrightarrow R - R + 2CO_2 + 2KOH + H_2$$

7. Fatty acids react slowly with chlorine or bromine in the cold, but at higher temperatures and in the presence of a small amount of phosphorus, reaction proceeds smoothly to give  $\alpha$ -halogeno-acids (see also p. 210); e.g.,

$$\text{R-CH}_2\text{-CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{P/Br}_2} \text{R-CHBr-CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{P/Br}_2} \text{R-CBr}_2\text{-CO}_2\text{H}$$

8. All the fatty acids, except formic acid, are extremely resistant to oxidation, but prolonged heating with oxidising agents ultimately produces carbon dioxide and water.

9. All the fatty acids are resistant to reduction, but prolonged heating under pressure with concentrated hydriodic acid and a small amount of red phosphorus produces a paraffin. Paraffins are also produced when a fatty acid is heated with hydrogen at high temperature and under pressure; in the presence of a nickel catalyst.

$$R \cdot CO_2H + 3H_2 \xrightarrow{Ni} R \cdot CH_3 + 2H_2O$$

If the hydrogenation is carried out in the presence of a ruthenium or copper—chromium oxide catalyst, carboxylic acids are converted into primary alcohols (Guyer *et al.*, 1955). Lithium aluminium hydride also reduces acids to alcohols.

10. The fatty acids undergo the Schmidt reaction (p. 156) to form a primary amine:

$$\text{R-CO}_2\text{H} + \text{HN}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{H_4SO}_4} \text{R-NH}_2 + \text{CO}_2 + \text{N}_2$$

Schmidt's reaction with acids is a modification of the Curtius reaction (p. 209). Since sulphuric acid accelerates the decomposition of the acid azide, this implies that the conjugate acid of the azide decomposes more readily than the azide itself. The following mechanism has been proposed (cf. p. 156):

The rearrangement (1,2-shift) has been shown to be intramolecular, e.g., Kenyon et al. (1939) showed retention of optical activity when  $\alpha$ -phenylpropionic acid underwent the Schmidt reaction:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CH(CH_3)\cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH(CH_3)\cdot NH_6$$

This mechanism has been proposed for those acids which require warming to complete the reaction. Newman *et al.* (1948) showed that mesitoic acid underwent the Schmidt reaction at room temperature, whereas benzoic acid required heating at 25°. Mesitoic acid is a sterically hindered acid, and for such acids the reaction is believed to proceed through the acylium cation:

Formic acid (methanoic acid), H·CO<sub>2</sub>H, is prepared industrially by heating sodium hydroxide with carbon monoxide at 210°, and at a pressure of 6–10 atmospheres:

$$NaOH + CO \longrightarrow H \cdot CO_2Na$$

An aqueous solution of formic acid is obtained by distilling the sodium salt with dilute sulphuric acid:

$$_2\text{H}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{Na} + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 \longrightarrow _2\text{H}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$$

Anhydrous formic acid is obtained by warming the sodium salt with concentrated sulphuric acid to which has been added some anhydrous formic acid. Concentrated sulphuric acid dehydrates formic acid to carbon monoxide:

$$\text{H} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \xrightarrow[\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4]{-\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4} \text{CO}$$

On the other hand, concentrated sulphuric acid diluted with formic acid

shows very little tendency to dehydrate formic acid.

Formic acid may be prepared in the laboratory in several ways. One method is to pass methanol vapour or formaldehyde mixed with air over a platinum-black catalyst:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{OH} + \text{O}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Pt}} \text{H} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \\ \text{H} \cdot \text{CHO} + \frac{1}{2}\text{O}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Pt}} \text{H} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$$

Another method, which is mainly of academic interest, is the hydrolysis of hydrogen cyanide:

$$\text{HCN} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{acid}} \text{H} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{NH}_3$$

Carbon dioxide, when passed into an ethereal solution of lithium borohydride at o°, is reduced to formic acid (Burr et al., 1950):

$$2\text{CO}_2 + 2\text{LiBH}_4 \longrightarrow 2\text{H} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{Li} + \text{B}_2\text{H}_6 \quad (69-88\%)$$

The most convenient laboratory preparation of formic acid is to heat glycerol with oxalic acid at 100-110°. Glyceryl monoxalate is produced, and decomposes into glyceryl monoformate (monoformin) and carbon

dioxide. When the evolution of carbon dioxide ceases, more oxalic acid is added, whereupon formic acid is produced:

The distillate contains formic acid and water. The aqueous formic acid solution cannot be fractionated to give anhydrous formic acid because the boiling point of the acid is 100.5°. The procedure adopted is to neutralise the aqueous acid solution with lead carbonate, and concentrate the solution until lead formate crystallises out. The precipitate is then recrystallised, dried, and heated at 100° in a current of hydrogen sulphide:

$$(H \cdot CO_2)_2 Pb + H_2 S \longrightarrow 2H \cdot CO_2 H + PbS$$

The anhydrous formic acid which distils over contains a small amount of hydrogen sulphide, and may be freed from the latter by adding some dry lead formate and redistilling.

The above procedure for obtaining the anhydrous acid from its aqueous

solution can only be used for volatile acids.

Formic acid is a pungent corrosive liquid, m.p. 8.4°, b.p. 100.5°, miscible in all proportions with water, ethanol and ether. It forms salts which, except for the lead and silver salts, are readily soluble in water (see p. 176). Formic acid is a stronger acid than any of its homologues (see Table III).

TABLE IH

Acid					Dissociation Constant, k (at 25°)	
Formic .		Bone .				2.4 × 10-4
Acetic .		200				1.845 × 10-8
Propionic .		1	-			1.22 × 10-5
n-Butyric .						1.5 × 10-5
<i>iso</i> Butyric			1500			1.4 × 10-5
n-Valeric .		P. Service	1			1.56 × 10-6
soValeric.	4					- 1.68 × 10-8
Trimethylacetic						9.6 × 10-8
Caproic .	4		110	3.7		1.4 × 10-4
n-Heptoic						1.3 × 10-8
	-	-			-	.3 ~ 10
Chloroacetic		1000				1.22 × 10-8
Bromoacetic						1.38 × 10-8
lodoacetic		- V		-		7.3 × 10-4
Dichloroacetic		100				5.14 × 10-2
Trichloroacetic	-	100	1			1.2

Formic acid is dehydrated to carbon monoxide by concentrated sulphuric acid (see above). When heated under pressure at 160°, formic acid is decomposed into carbon dioxide and hydrogen:

The same decomposition takes place at room temperature in the presence of a catalyst such as iridium, rhodium, etc.

When metallic formates are heated with an alkali, hydrogen is evolved.

$$\text{H-CO}_2\text{Na} + \text{NaOH} \longrightarrow \text{H}_2 + \text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$$

When calcium or zinc formate is strongly heated, formaldehyde is produced:

$$(H \cdot CO_2)_2 Ca \longrightarrow H \cdot CHO + CaCO_3$$

When sodium or potassium formate is rapidly heated to 360°, hydrogen is evolved and the oxalate is formed:

$$_2\text{H}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{Na} \longrightarrow (\text{COONa})_2 + \text{H}_2$$

Formic acid forms esters, but since it is a relatively strong acid it is not necessary to use a catalyst; refluxing 90 per cent. formic acid with the alcohol is usually sufficient.

Formic acid differs from the rest of the members of the fatty acid series in being a powerful reducing agent; it reduces ammoniacal silver nitrate and the salts of many of the heavy metals, e.g., it converts mercuric chloride

into mercurous chloride.

Structure of formic acid. Analysis and molecular-weight determinations show that the molecular formula of formic acid is  $CH_2O_2$ . Assuming that carbon is quadrivalent, oxygen bivalent and hydrogen univalent, two structures are possible:

$$H-C$$
 $O-H$ 
 $H$ 
 $C$ 
 $O$ 
 $H$ 
 $C$ 
 $O$ 

Only one of the two hydrogen atoms in formic acid is replaceable by a metal. This suggests that the two hydrogen atoms are not in the same state of combination. Moreover, since hydrogen is evolved when formic acid is treated with sodium, the implication is that a hydroxyl group is present. Structure (I), but not (II), satisfies the above observations, and also indicates the relationship of formic acid to aldehydes, thus accounting for its reducing properties (see also acetic acid, below).

Acetic acid (ethanoic acid), CH<sub>3</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, is prepared industrially by the oxidation of acetaldehyde with air in the presence of manganous acetate as

catalyst:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-CHO} + \frac{1}{2}\text{O}_2 \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{-CO}_2\text{H}$$

The function of the catalyst appears to be to prevent the formation of peracetic acid (q.v.). Acetic acid is also manufactured by the oxidation of natural gas.

One of the earliest methods for preparing acetic acid was by the destructive distillation of wood to give pyroligneous acid. This contains about 10 per cent. acetic acid, and was originally treated by neutralising with lime and then distilling off the volatile compounds (these are mainly methanol and acetone). On distillation with dilute sulphuric acid, the residue gives dilute acetic acid. More recently, the acetic acid is extracted by means of solvents, e.g., isopropyl ether.

Vinegar, which is a 6-10 per cent. aqueous solution of acetic acid, may be made in several ways. Malt vinegar is prepared by the oxidation of wort (p. 135) by means of the bacteria Mycoderma aceti:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2OH + O_2 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO_2H + H_2O$$

In the "quick vinegar process", beech shavings, contained in barrels, are moistened with strong vinegar containing the bacteria. A 10 per cent. aqueous solution of ethanol containing phosphates and inorganic salts (which are necessary for the fermentation) is then poured through the barrels, and the ethanol is thereby oxidised to acetic acid. A plentiful supply of air is necessary, otherwise the oxidation is incomplete and acetaldehyde is produced.

It is only recently that vinegar has been used as a source of acetic acid, and this is entirely due to the introduction of highly efficient methods of

fractionation.

Acetic acid is a pungent corrosive liquid, m.p. 16.6°, b.p. 118°, miscible in all proportions with water, ethanol and ether (see also p. 176). It is stable towards oxidising agents, and so is a useful solvent for chromium trioxide oxidations. Acetic acid is commonly used as a solvent, and in the preparation of acetates, acetone, acetic anhydride, etc.

Most of the normal acetates are soluble in water, whereas most of the basic acetates are insoluble. Calcium and manganese acetates are used in the preparation of acetone. Lead tetra-acetate is a very useful oxidising agent for 1:2 glycols. Aluminium acetate, which is known only in solution, is used for water-proofing cloth, and as a mordant.

A solution of a neutral acetate gives a red coloration when treated with ferric chloride. The same coloration is also produced by neutral formates, but acetates and formates may be readily distinguished from one another by the fact that the

latter are powerful reducing agents.

Structure of acetic acid. Analysis and molecular-weight determinations show that the molecular formula of acetic acid is  $C_2H_4O_2$ . The presence of a methyl group in acetic acid is indicated by the following considerations:

(i) Treatment of boiling acetic acid with chlorine gives halogen substituted acids. The highest halogenated acid that can be produced is trichloroacetic acid, C<sub>2</sub>HO<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>3</sub>. Of the four hydrogen atoms in the acetic acid molecule, three have been replaced by chlorine and are, therefore, in a different state of combination from the fourth. This suggests that acetic acid contains a

methyl group.

(ii) Methyl chloride may be converted into methyl cyanide, which, on hydrolysis, gives acetic acid. Methyl chloride contains a methyl group, and when it is converted into methyl cyanide the chlorine atom is replaced by the cyano-group. Since there is no reason to suppose that the methyl group in methyl chloride is affected by the substitution, it follows that methyl cyanide contains a methyl group. Similarly, since the hydrolysis of a cyanide affects the cyano-group only, when methyl cyanide is hydrolysed to acetic acid, the methyl group remains intact. Thus the above reactions may be formulated:

$$\mathbf{CH_3} \mathbf{-\!Cl} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{KCN}} \mathbf{CH_3} \mathbf{-\!CN} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_4O}} \mathbf{CH_3} \mathbf{-\!CO_2H}$$

When acetic acid is treated with phosphorus pentachloride, acetyl chloride, CH<sub>3</sub>—COCl, is formed and hydrogen chloride is evolved. This indicates the presence of a hydroxyl group. Thus acetic acid contains a methyl group and a hydroxyl group. Assuming the quadrivalency of carbon, the bivalency of oxygen and univalency of hydrogen, only one structural formula

is possible for acetic acid, viz., CH<sub>3</sub>—C—OH. The presence of the carbonyl group is supported by the fact that acetyl chloride may be catalytically reduced to acetaldehyde, which has been shown to contain a carbonyl group (p. 167).

Kolbe's synthesis of acetic acid (1845) is interesting in connection with the vital force theory (p. 1). Carbon and sulphur were heated together, and the carbon disulphide produced chlorinated:

$$C + 2S \xrightarrow{Cl_2} CS_2$$

$$CS_2 \xrightarrow{Cl_2} CCl_4$$

The carbon tetrachloride was then passed through a red-hot tube, whereupon chlorine and tetrachloroethylene were formed and these, on cooling, combined to form hexachloroethane; but in the presence of a little water and under the influence of direct sunlight, some of the tetrachloroethylene was converted into trichloroacetic acid:

$$CCl_2$$
= $CCl_2 + Cl_2 + 2H_2O \longrightarrow CCl_3 \cdot CO_2H + 3HCl_3$ 

Treatment of the trichloroacetic acid in aqueous solution with potassium amalgam, or the electrolysis of the aqueous solution of the trichloroacetic acid between electrodes of amalgamated zinc plates, produced acetic acid:

$$CCl_3 \cdot CO_2H + 6[H] \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO_2H + 3HCl$$

The structure of the carboxyl group is still not known with certainty. If

its structure were —COH, then the acid strength should be greater than

that of alcohols, due to the inductive effect of the carbonyl group which tends to facilitate the release of a proton:

The acid strength of the fatty acids is greater than that of alcohols, but it seems unlikely that the inductive effect alone would account for the large difference. It has therefore been suggested that the carboxyl group is a resonance hybrid:

Owing to the positive charge on the oxygen atom of the hydroxyl group, the electron pair of the O—H bond is displaced towards the oxygen atom, thereby facilitating the release of a proton. When the proton is released, the two equivalent resonating structures contribute to the carboxylate ion formed, and so the resonance energy of the ion will be greater than that of the undissociated acid. Thus the driving force for the dissociation is this tendency to achieve greater stabilisation. Since resonance is not possible in alcohols, proton release is much more difficult than in carboxylic acids.

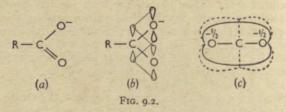
If acids are resonance hybrids, the C=O bond will have some single-bond character, and its length should therefore be longer than that of a "pure" C=O double bond; similarly, the C=OH bond will have some double-bond character, and should be shorter than a "pure" C=OH single bond. Electron diffraction experiments (Schomaker and O'Gorman, 1947) have shown that the C=O bond length in formic acid monomer is a trifle greater than normal, and that the C=OH bond is considerably less than normal. These results are in keeping with a resonating structure of the carboxyl group.

The treatment of the carboxyl group and the carboxylate ion from the M.O. point of view also leads to the same results as those obtained by the V.B. method,

the increased stability now being due to delocalisation (cf. p. 88). Let us first consider the undissociated carboxylic acid (Fig. 1a). The carbon atom is linked to the hydroxyl group by a  $\sigma$ -bond, and to the oxygen of the carbonyl group by one  $\sigma$ - and one  $\pi$ -bond. This is shown in (b). If the oxygen atom of the hydroxyl group has  $sp^2$  hybridisation, this would leave a p orbital perpendicular to the

plane of the carboxyl group, and it would contain a pair of electrons (c). This orbital could now overlap with both the p orbital of the carbon atom and that of the oxygen atom of the carbonyl group. The combination of these three orbitals would give rise to M.O.s embracing three nuclei (Fig. d). Since four electrons are involved, they must be accommodated, in the ground state, in the lowest two M.O.s. The M.O. with the lowest energy level has one node (Fig. e), and the next energy level has two nodes (Fig. f). Thus (g) represents the ground state of the undissociated carboxyl group. Because of delocalisation, this group has become more stable. Since a hydroxyl group is more electron-attracting than an oxygen atom, the delocalisation of the pair of electrons in the p orbital is not very large, i.e., although this lone pair embraces three nuclei, this pair is far more likely to be found in the region of the donor atom than anywhere else. Since the oxygen atom of the hydroxyl group has lost "full-control" of this lone pair, it will acquire a small positive charge, and since the oxygen atom of the CO group has acquired a small share of this lone pair, this oxygen atom acquires a small negative charge (actually this oxygen atom already has a small negative charge due to the inductive effect). The greater electron-attracting power of oxygen in a hydroxyl group over that of an oxygen atom alone is due to the hydrogen atom sharing one pair of electrons in forming the bond, and thereby decreasing, to some extent, the electron density on that oxygen atom.

Now let us consider the *carboxylate ion* (Fig. 2a). The oxygen atom of the original hydroxyl group retains the  $\sigma$ -electrons when the hydrogen atom is removed as a proton. As in the case of the *carboxyl group*, one lone pair enters



into conjugation with the  $\pi$ -bond of the C=O group (Fig. b). In the latter case, however, delocalisation is complete, *i.e.*, the lone pair is now likely to be found equally well on either oxygen atom (each atom will have a charge of  $-\frac{1}{2}$ ). Since delocalisation is complete, the resonance (delocalisation) energy is much greater than in the case of the undissociated carboxyl group.

In Figs. 1 and 2, the orbitals drawn in thicker type indicate that the atoms

concerned contain two electrons in these orbitals. This scheme has been used throughout the book.

Peracetic acid, CH<sub>3</sub>·COOH, may be prepared by treating acetic anhydride

with concentrated hydrogen peroxide, and then distilling under reduced pressure. It may also be prepared by adding 90 per cent. hydrogen peroxide to cooled glacial acetic acid in the presence of a small amount of sulphuric acid. Anhydrous peracetic acid may be prepared by autoxidation of acetaldehyde at oo in the presence of cobaltous ion (Phillips et al., 1957):

$$^{2}\text{CH}_{3}\text{^{\circ}}\text{CHO} \xrightarrow{O_{1}} \text{CH}_{3}\text{^{\circ}}\text{C} \xrightarrow{O} \text{CH}_{3}\text{^{\circ}}\text{CH}_{3} \xrightarrow{70^{\circ}} \text{CH}_{3}\text{^{\circ}}\text{CO} \cdot \text{O}_{2}\text{H} + \text{CH}_{3}\text{^{\circ}}\text{CHO}$$

Peracetic acid is an unpleasant-smelling liquid, f.p. +0.1°, soluble in water, ethanol and ether. It explodes violently when heated above 110°. It is a powerful oxidising agent; it oxidises the olefinic bond to the oxide.

It also oxidises primary aromatic amines to nitroso-compounds, e.g., aniline is converted into nitrosobenzene:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + 2CH_3\cdot CO\cdot O_2H \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NO + 2CH_3\cdot CO_2H + H_2O$$

Infrared absorption spectra measurements of per-acids show that these acids exist in solution very largely in the monomeric, intramolecularly hydrogenbonded form (inter alia, Minkoff, 1954).

Propionic acid (propanoic acid), CH3·CH2·CO2H, is prepared industrially by the oxidation of *n*-propanol:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{[O]} CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$$

It is a colourless liquid with an acrid odour, m.p.  $-22^{\circ}$ , b.p. 141°, miscible with water, ethanol and ether in all proportions.

Butyric acids, C4H8O2. There are two isomers possible, and both are

known.

n-Butyric acid, CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, occurs as the glyceryl ester in butter, and as the free acid in perspiration. It is prepared industrially by the oxidation of n-butanol, and by the butyric fermentation of carbohydrates by means of the micro-organism Bacillus butyricus.

n-Butyric acid is a viscous unpleasant-smelling liquid, m.p. -4.7°, b.p. 162°, miscible with water, ethanol and ether. It is the liberation of free

n-butyric acid that gives stale butter its rancid odour.

isoButyric acid, (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH·CO<sub>2</sub>H, occurs in the free state and as its esters in many plants. It is prepared industrially by the oxidation of isobutanol:

$$(CH_3)_2CH\cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{[O]} (CH_3)_2CH\cdot CO_2H$$

It may be prepared synthetically as follows:

$$(\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CHOH} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{PBr_3}} (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CHBr} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{KCN}} (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH} \cdot \mathrm{CN} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_3O}} (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH} \cdot \mathrm{CO}_2\mathrm{H}$$

isoButyric acid is a liquid, m.p. -47°, b.p. 154°. Its calcium salt is more soluble in hot water than in cold, whereas calcium butyrate is more soluble in cold water than in hot.

Valeric acids,  $C_5H_{10}O_2$ . There are four isomers possible, and all are known:

n-Valeric acid, CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, m.p. -34·5°, b.p. 187°. isoValeric acid, (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, m.p. -51°, b.p. 175°.

Ethylmethylacetic acid or active valeric acid, CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)·CO<sub>2</sub>H,

b.p. 175°.

Trimethylacetic acid or pivalic acid, (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>C·CO<sub>2</sub>H, m.p. 35·5°, b.p. 164°.

The higher fatty acids which occur in nature usually have straight chains, and usually contain an even number of carbon atoms. Caproic (hexoic),  $C_8H_{12}O_2$  (m.p.  $-9.5^{\circ}$ , b.p.  $205^{\circ}$ ), caprylic (octoic),  $C_8H_{16}O_2$  (m.p.  $16^{\circ}$ , b.p.  $237^{\circ}$ ), and capric (decoic) acid,  $C_{10}H_{20}O_2$  (m.p.  $31.5^{\circ}$ , b.p.  $270^{\circ}$ ), are present as glyceryl esters in goats' butter. Lauric (dodecoic),  $C_{12}H_{24}O_2$  (m.p.  $44^{\circ}$ ), and myristic (tetradecoic) acid,  $C_{14}H_{28}O_2$  (m.p.  $58^{\circ}$ ), occur as their glyceryl esters in certain vegetable oils. The most important higher fatty acids are palmitic (hexadecoic),  $C_{16}H_{32}O_2$  (m.p.  $64^{\circ}$ ), and stearic (octadecoic),  $C_{18}H_{36}O_2$  (m.p.  $72^{\circ}$ ), which are very widely distributed as their glyceryl esters (together with oleic acid) in most animal and vegetable oils and fats. The sodium and potassium salts of palmitic and stearic acids are the constituents of ordinary soaps.

Hansen et al. (1952, 1956) have shown the presence of branched-chain acids in a number of animal fats, e.g., 13-methyltetradecanoic acid in butter fat, and 14-methylpentadecanoic acid (isopalmitic acid) in hydrogenated

sheep fat.

Some still higher acids are found in waxes: arachidic (eicosoic),  $C_{20}H_{40}O_2$  (m.p. 77°), behenic (docosoic),  $C_{22}H_{44}O_2$  (m.p. 82°), lignoceric (tetracosoic),  $C_{24}H_{48}O_2$  (m.p. 83·5°), cerotic (hexacosoic),  $C_{26}H_{52}O_2$  (m.p. 87·7°), and melissic acid (tri-

acontoic), C30H60O2 (m.p. 90°).

The odd fatty acids may be obtained by degrading an even acid (see below). Two odd acids which may be prepared readily are n-heptoic or cenanthylic acid,  $C_7H_{14}O_2$  (m.p.  $-10^\circ$ , b.p.  $223\cdot5^\circ$ ), and nonoic or pelargonic acid,  $C_9H_{18}O_2$  (m.p.  $12^\circ$ , b.p.  $254^\circ$ ). n-Heptoic acid is prepared by the oxidation of n-heptaldehyde, which is obtained by destructively distilling castor oil which contains ricinoleic acid (g.v.):

$$CH_3 \cdot (CH_2)_5 \cdot CHO + [O] \frac{KMnO_4}{H_5O_4} \cdot CH_3 \cdot (CH_2)_5 \cdot CO_2H$$
 (68–70%)

Nonoic acid is obtained by the oxidation of oleic acid (q.v.).

Margaric acid (heptadecanoic acid), C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>33</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, m.p. 61°, is prepared by heating a mixture of the calcium salts of stearic and acetic acids, and then oxidising the heptadecyl methyl ketone so produced.

$$C_{17}H_{35} \cdot CO_2ca + CH_3 \cdot CO_2ca \longrightarrow CaCO_3 + C_{17}H_{35} \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{[O]} C_{18}H_{33} \cdot CO_2H$$

Margaric acid has been used as a source of artificial fats for diabetics. Until recently, margaric acid was considered to be a synthetic compound. In 1954, however, Hansen  $et\ al.$  isolated n-heptadecanoic and n-pentadecanoic acids from mutton fat, and n-pentadecanoic and n-tridecanoic acids from butter fat, and in 1955 showed the presence of n-undecanoic acid in butter fat. Hansen  $et\ al.$  (1954) have also shown that ox perenephric fat contains the consecutive series of acids  $C_2$  to  $C_{10}$ .

## ESTERS

Esters are compounds which are formed when the hydroxylic hydrogen atom in oxygen acids is replaced by an alkyl group; the acid may be organic or inorganic. The most important esters are derived from the carboxylic acids. The general formula of the carboxylic esters is  $C_nH_{2n}O_2$ , which is

the same as that of the carboxylic acids. The structural formula of the esters is RC-OR', and they are named as the alkyl salts of the acid, e.g.,

> CH<sub>3</sub>·COOC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> ethyl acetate (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH·COOCH(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub> isopropyl isobutyrate CH3.COOC2H5

Carboxylic esters are formed by the action of the acid on an alcohol:

The reaction is reversible, the forward reaction being known as esterification,

and the backward reaction as hydrolysis.

General methods of preparation of the carboxylic esters. 1. The usual method is esterification. The reaction is always slow, but is speeded up by the presence of small amounts of inorganic acids as catalysts, e.g., when the acid is refluxed with the alcohol in the presence of 5-10 per cent. concentrated sulphuric acid:

$$R \cdot COOH + R'OH \xrightarrow{H_2SO_4 \setminus} R \cdot COOR' + H_2O \quad (v.g.)$$

Alternatively, hydrogen chloride is passed into the mixture of alcohol and acid until there is a 3 per cent. increase in weight, and the mixture is refluxed (the yields are very good). This is known as the *Fischer-Speier method* (1895), and is more satisfactory for secondary and tertiary alcohols than the sulphuric acid method, which tends to dehydrate the alcohol to olefin. Klosa (1956) has shown that phosphoryl chloride is a good catalyst in the

esterification of acids with alcohols.

Esterification without the use of catalysts, and starting with one molecule of acid and one molecule of alcohol, gives rise to about 3 molecule of ester. The yield of ester may be increased by using excess acid or alcohol, the cheaper usually being the one in excess. Increased yields may also be effected by dehydrating agents, e.g., concentrated sulphuric acid behaves both as a catalyst and a dehydrating agent. The same effect may be obtained by removing the water or ester from the reaction mixture by distillation, which is particularly useful for high-boiling acids and alcohols. On the other hand, the water may be removed from the reaction mixture by the addition of benzene or carbon tetrachloride, each of which forms a binary mixture with water (and may form a ternary mixture with water and the alcohol), the azeotropic mixtures boiling at a lower temperature than any of the components.

The first point about esterification of a carboxylic acid is that it may be

The second point is that esterification is usually carried out in the presence of an acid catalyst (sulphuric or hydrochloric acid), and hence it is the conjugate acid of the carboxylic acid that is the substrate. The structure of this conjugate acid has been formulated in two ways:

Since carboxylic acids are resonance hybrids, it would appear more likely that protonation occurs on the carbonyl oxygen:

$$R-C \bigvee_{OH}^{O} \longleftrightarrow R-C \bigvee_{OH}^{\bar{O}} \xrightarrow{H^{+}} R-C \bigvee_{OH}^{OH}$$

This is supported by the work of Fraenkel (1961), who examined the nuclear magnetic resonance spectrum of methyl formate in, e.g., 100 per cent. sulphuric acid, and concluded from his results that the ester is protonated chiefly on the carbonyl oxygen.

Ingold (1941) has introduced the following notation: the letter A represents the substrate in the conjugate acid of the carboxylic acid, and the subscripts acid and AL respectively denote acyl and alkyl bond heterolysis. The numbers I and 2 represent the molecularity of the rate-determining step.

So far three different esterification mechanisms have been observed:

The most common esterification mechanism is  $A_{AO}^2$ , i.e., bimolecular acid esterification with acyl-oxygen heterolysis. It has long been known that the rates of hydrolysis of many esters are first-order both in ester and in hydrogenion concentration, i.e.,

rate 
$$\infty$$
 [ester] [H<sup>+</sup>]

Since acid-catalysed hydrolysis of esters and esterification are the reverse of each other (and reversible), then according to the principle of microscopic reversibility (p. 32), the mechanism of acid-catalysed esterification will be that of acid-catalysed hydrolysis, but in reverse.

Evidence for acyl-oxygen fission in acid-catalysed esterification has been obtained in several ways, e.g., Roberts et al. (1938) esterified benzoic acid with methanol enriched with <sup>18</sup>O and obtained water not enriched with <sup>18</sup>O. Therefore the oxygen in the water must have come from the benzoic acid; thus:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CO \xrightarrow{O}OH + CH_3O \xrightarrow{*}H \xrightarrow{*} C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot OCH_3 + H_2O$$

According to Ingold et al. (1939), the mechanism is:

However, if we assume that the carbonyl oxygen is protonated, then the mechanism is:

$$\begin{array}{c} H-\overset{+}{\text{OR}'}\\ R-\overset{-}{\text{C}}-\text{OH} & \overset{+}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\text{H-ist}}} & R-\overset{+}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\text{C}}}-\text{OH} & \overset{+}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\text{OR}'}}\\ \text{OH} & \text{OH} & \text{OR}' & \text{OR}'\\ R-\overset{+}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\text{C}}}-\overset{+}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\text{OH}}} & \overset{+}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\text{Ast}}} & H_2\text{O} + R-\overset{+}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\text{C}}} & \overset{+}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\text{Ast}}} & R-\overset{+}{\underset{\longrightarrow}{\text{C}}} & + H^+\\ \text{OH} & \text{OH} & \text{OH} & \text{OH} & \text{OH} & \text{OH} \\ \end{array}$$

Since, in these mechanisms, the carbon atom which was originally joined to three groups becomes joined to four (hybridisation changes from sp2 to sp3), then one might anticipate steric retardation is possible in certain acids. The following results of Newman et al. (1952), who examined the relative rates of esterification of various acids with methanol, showed steric retardation was operating: e.g.,

Now let us consider unimolecular acid-catalysed esterification with alkyloxygen heterolysis ( $A_{AL}$ I mechanism). Definite evidence for this mechanism was obtained by Hughes, Ingold, et al. (1939), who showed that the esterification of acetic acid with optically active octan-2-ol in the presence of sulphuric acid gave a large amount of racemised ester. Thus a carbonium ion is produced which then racemises. The mechanism may therefore be formulated:

The  $A_{AL}$ I mechanism is common for t-alcohols, and it is probably this type of mechanism which operates for halogen acids:

$$ROH + HX \rightleftharpoons ROH_2^+ + X^- \rightleftharpoons H_2O + R^+ + X^- \rightleftharpoons RX$$

This is in keeping with the fact that the rate of reaction is t-alcohol>s-> primary,

since this is the order in which the OH group is removed (see p. 129).

Unimolecular acid-catalysed esterification with acyl-oxygen fission ( $A_{AOI}$  mechanism) occurs with highly sterically hindered acids, e.g., mesitoic acid. Hammett et al. (1937) showed that when mesitoic acid is dissolved in concentrated sulphuric acid, the van't Hoff factor i is 4. When this solution is poured into methanol, methyl mesitoate is formed (Newman, 1941). A mechanism consistent with these facts is that the reaction proceeds via an acylium ion:

$$R - \stackrel{\bullet}{C} - OH + H_2SO_4 \Longrightarrow R - \stackrel{+}{C} \stackrel{OH}{OH} + HSO_4 - \\ R - \stackrel{+}{C} \stackrel{OH}{OH} + H_2SO_4 \Longrightarrow R - \stackrel{+}{C} = O + H_3O^+ + HSO_4 - \\ R - \stackrel{+}{C} = O + MeOH \longrightarrow R - \stackrel{\bullet}{C} \stackrel{O}{OMe} + H^+$$

Many primary alcohols, on oxidation with chromic acid, form esters in addition to acids, e.g., n-butanol gives n-butyl n-butyrate:

$$2C_3H_7\cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{Na_3Cr_4O_7} C_3H_7\cdot CO_2C_4H_9$$
 (41-47%)

Several mechanisms have been proposed for this reaction, e.g., the direct esterification of unchanged alcohol with acid formed on oxidation, or hemiacetal formation followed by oxidation to ester. Mosher et al. (1953) have obtained evidence for the latter:

$$\text{R-CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{[O]} \text{R-CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{R-CH}_2\text{OH}} \text{R-CH} \xrightarrow{\text{OO}} \text{R-CO}_2\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{R}$$

2. Acid chlorides or anhydrides react rapidly with alcohols to form esters:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-COCl} + \text{R'OH} \longrightarrow \text{R-CO}_2\text{R'} + \text{HCl} & (v.g.-ex.) \\ (\text{R-CO})_2\text{O} + \text{R'OH} \longrightarrow \text{R-CO}_2\text{R'} + \text{R-CO}_2\text{H} & (v.g.-ex.) \end{array}$$

The reaction with tertiary alcohols is very slow, and is often accompanied by the dehydration of the alcohol to olefin. When the acid chloride is used, there is also a tendency for a tertiary alcohol to form a tertiary alkyl chloride (p. 130). Esters of tertiary alcohols may be conveniently prepared by means of a Grignard reagent (see p. 356).

3. Esters may be prepared by refluxing the silver salt of an acid with an

alkyl halide in ethanolic solution:

$$R \cdot CO_2Ag + R'Br \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2R' + AgBr \quad (v.g.-ex.)$$

This method is useful where direct esterification is difficult (cf. 2 above).

4. Esters are formed when a mixture of the vapours of an acid and an alcohol is passed over a metallic oxide catalyst at 300°.

$$R \cdot CO_2H + R'OH \xrightarrow{ThO_3} R \cdot CO_2R' + H_2O$$

5. Methyl esters are very conveniently prepared by treating an acid with an ethereal solution of diazomethane (q.v.):

$$R \cdot CO_2H + CH_2N_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2CH_3 + N_2$$
 (ex.)

6. Esters are readily obtained when an acid is treated with an olefin in the presence of boron trifluoride as catalyst (Nieuwland et al., 1934):

$$R \cdot CO_2H + C_2H_4 \xrightarrow{BF_3} R \cdot CO_2C_2H_5$$

It has been found that the complex  $(CH_3 \cdot CO_2H)_2 \cdot BF_3$  is a very efficient catalyst in the preparation of esters from acids and alcohols (Smith et al., 1940). Another example of the use of boron trifluoride as a catalyst in organic chemistry is the formation of esters by the interaction between an ether and carbon monoxide at 125–180°, under 500 atmospheres pressure, in the presence of boron trifluoride plus a little water:

$$R_2O + CO \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2R$$

General properties of the esters. The carboxylic esters are pleasant-smelling liquids or solids. The boiling points of the straight-chain isomers are higher than those of the branched-chain isomers. The boiling points of the methyl and ethyl esters are lower than those of the corresponding acid, and this is probably due to the fact that the esters are not associated since they cannot form intermolecular hydrogen bonds. The esters of low molecular weight are fairly soluble in water—hydrogen bonding between ester and water is possible—and the solubility decreases as the series is ascended; all esters are soluble in most organic solvents.

The structure of the esters is usually written as R—C—OR', but, as in the case of the acids from which they are derived, there is a certain amount of evidence to show that esters are resonance hybrids (or conjugated, p. 184):

$$\begin{array}{c} O & \bar{O} \\ R - C - OR' \longleftrightarrow R - C = \stackrel{\scriptscriptstyle \leftarrow}{O}R \end{array}$$

General reactions of the esters. I. Esters are hydrolysed by acids or alkalis:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R*CO}_2\text{R'} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{acid}} \text{R*CO}_2\text{H} + \text{R'OH} \\ \text{R*CO}_2\text{R'} + \text{NaOH} \longrightarrow \text{R*CO}_2\text{Na} + \text{R'OH} \end{array}$$

When hydrolysis is carried out with alkali, the salt of the acid is obtained, and since the alkali salts of the higher acids are soaps, alkaline hydrolysis is known as *saponification* (derived from Latin word meaning soap); saponifica-

tion is far more rapid than acid hydrolysis.

Hydrolysis of secondary and particularly tertiary halides is accompanied by the formation of olefin (p. 108). In many cases a better yield of alcohol can be obtained by first converting the alkyl halide into the acetate ester by heating with silver acetate in ethanolic solution, and then saponifying the acetate ester:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO_2Ag + RX \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO_2R \xrightarrow{NaOH} CH_3 \cdot CO_2Na + ROH$$

Under the above conditions, secondary and tertiary halides show far less

tendency to form olefin than when hydrolysed directly by alkali.

In the case of hydrolysis of esters, not only can we have acid-catalysed reactions (as for esterification), but hydrolysis may be effected in alkaline solution (i.e., saponification). Hydrolysis may also be effected in neutral solution, but since this is slow, it is not used. Using the symbols A, AO, AL, I, and 2 as for esterification (p. 188) for the protonated ester (in acid solution), and using B for the unprotonated ester (in alkaline or neutral solution), then there are eight possible mechanisms ( $B_{AC}I$ ,  $B_{AC}I$ ,  $B_{AC}I$ ,  $B_{AL}I$ ,  $B_{AL}I$ ,  $A_{AC}I$ ,  $A_{AC}I$ ,  $A_{AC}I$ ,  $A_{AL}I$ ,  $A_{AL}I$ ). All except two, the first and last, have been observed.

The  $B_{AO^2}$  mechanism is a common one. Alkaline hydrolysis of esters has long been known to be a second-order reaction, i.e., rate  $\infty$  [ester][OH<sup>-</sup>]. Evidence for acyl-oxygen fission has been obtained in several ways, e.g., Polanyi et al. (1934) showed that the alkaline hydrolysis of n-pentyl acetate in water enriched with <sup>18</sup>O gave n-pentyl alcohol containing no <sup>18</sup>O. Therefore acyl-oxygen fission must have occurred:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \xrightarrow{OC_5H_{11}} + \overset{*}{OH}^- \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot COOH + C_5H_{11}O \xrightarrow{H_1O} C_5H_{11}OH$$

If the alcohol group R' is optically active, then if acyl-oxygen fission occurs, the ion R'O will be liberated and will retain its optical activity, since the bond R'-O is never broken. Various examples of retention are known when the reaction is bimolecular. A mechanism consistent with these facts is:

$$HO \xrightarrow{OD}_{R} HO \xrightarrow{O}_{R} HO \xrightarrow{O}_{R} HO \xrightarrow{O}_{R} + R'O \xrightarrow{O}_{R} + R'OH$$

The  $A_{AC}^2$  mechanism is also a common one for the hydrolysis of esters; this is the reverse of the  $A_{AC}^2$  mechanism for esterification (p. 188). The order has been shown to be first in both ester and hydrogen-ion concentration, and evidence for acyl-oxygen heterolysis has been demonstrated in several ways, e.g., Ingold et al. (1939) showed that the acid-catalysed hydrolysis of methyl hydrogen succinate in water enriched with 18O gave methanol with no extra 18O; therefore acyl-oxygen fission must have occurred:

$$\text{HO}_2\text{C-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-CO}\overset{*}{\longrightarrow} \text{HO}_2\text{C-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-CO}\overset{*}{\mapsto} + \text{MeOH}$$

A mechanism consistent with the facts is:

$$\begin{array}{c} R \cdot C \stackrel{O}{\nearrow} C + H^{+} \rightleftharpoons R \cdot C \stackrel{O}{\nearrow} C \stackrel{H,O}{\longrightarrow} R - C - OR' \rightleftharpoons \\ & H - O^{+} - H \\ \hline \\ OH & C - OH \\ \hline \\ OH & OH \\ \end{array}$$

Ingold's mechanism is the reverse of the one given for esterification on p. 188. The  $A_{\rm AL}$ I mechanism for the acid-catalysed hydrolysis of esters is the reverse of that for the A<sub>AL</sub>I mechanism for acid-catalysed esterification (p. 189). Evidence for alkyl-oxygen fission has been provided by, e.g., Bunton et al. (1951), who hydrolysed t-butyl acetate with water enriched with <sup>18</sup>O and obtained t-butanol containing 18O.

$$MeCO \stackrel{\star}{O} - Bu^t + H_2^* \longrightarrow MeCO_2H + Bu^*OH$$

The  $A_{AO}$ I mechanism for the acid-catalysed hydrolysis of esters is the reverse

of that for esterification (p. 189). The  $B_{\rm AL}$ 1 mechanism for the base-catalysed hydrolysis of esters has been shown to occur when the alkyl group of the alcohol is strongly electron-releasing, the solvent has a high dipole moment, and the hydroxide-ion concentration is very low. The mechanism is:

$$\begin{array}{c} R \cdot CO \cdot \stackrel{\checkmark}{O} - R' & \rightleftharpoons R \cdot CO_2^- + R'^+ \\ R'^+ + H_2O & \rightleftharpoons R'OH_2^+ \\ R \cdot CO_2^- + R'OH_2^+ \longrightarrow R'OH + R \cdot CO_2H \end{array}$$

E.g., Kenyon et al. (1936) showed that the  $B_{AL}I$  mechanism was operating when optically active r-phenylethyl hydrogen phthalate was hydrolysed in faintly alkaline solution. The alcohol obtained, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CHOH·CH<sub>3</sub>, was racemised, and this is in keeping with the intermediate formation of a carbonium ion.

The  $B_{\rm AL2}$  mechanism for the base-catalysed hydrolysis of esters is rare. Bunnett et al. (1951) have shown that dimethyl ether is formed when methyl

benzoate is treated with methanolic sodium methoxide:

$$\mathrm{MeO}^{\frown}\mathrm{Me}\overset{\frown}{\bigcirc}\cdot\mathrm{CO}\cdot\mathrm{C}_{6}\mathrm{H}_{5}\longrightarrow\mathrm{Me}_{2}\mathrm{O}\,+\,\mathrm{C}_{6}\mathrm{H}_{5}\cdot\mathrm{CO}_{2}^{-}$$

2. Esters are converted into alcohols by the Bouveault-Blanc reduction:

$$R \cdot CO_2R' + 4[H] \xrightarrow{C_2H_4OH/Na} R \cdot CH_2OH + R'OH$$
 (g.)

The yield of alcohol from the acid portion of the ester increases with the molecular weight of the alkyl radical R', e.g., the amyl ester gives a higher vield of alcohol R.CH2OH than does the ethyl ester. Esters which are difficult to reduce at the boiling point of ethanol are usually satisfactorily reduced in n-butanol, which has a higher boiling point than ethanol, and so permits the reduction to be carried out at a higher temperature. Lithium aluminium hydride also reduces esters to alcohols.

Esters may also be reduced by molecular hydrogen at 100-300 atmospheres in the presence of a copper chromite catalyst at 200-300° (the yields are

almost quantitative).

The formation of esters affords a convenient method of converting an acid into its corresponding alcohol, and stepping up the acid series:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R*CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{R'OH}} \text{R*CO}_2\text{R'} \xrightarrow{\text{[H]}} \text{R*CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{PBr}_2} \text{R*CH}_2\text{Br} \xrightarrow{\text{KCN}} \\ & \text{R*CH}_2\text{*CN} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{R*CH}_2\text{*CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$$

3. Esters react with ammonia to form amides. This reaction is an example of ammonolysis (which means, literally, splitting by ammonia):

$$R \cdot COOR' + NH_3 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 + R'OH$$
 (g.)

A possible mechanism for this reaction is:

With hydrazine, esters form acid hydrazides:

$$R \cdot COOR' + H_2N \cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot NH_2 + R'OH$$

4. By means of alcoholysis (splitting by alcohol), an alcohol residue in an ester can be replaced by another alcohol residue. Alcoholysis is carried out by refluxing the ester with a large excess of alcohol, preferably in the presence of a small amount of acid or sodium alkoxide as catalyst. Alcoholysis is usually effective in replacing a higher alcohol by a lower one, e.g.,

$$\mathsf{CH_3 \cdot CO_2C_4H_9} + \mathsf{C_2H_5OH} \xrightarrow{\mathsf{C_5H_4ONa}} \mathsf{CH_3 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5} + \mathsf{C_4H_9OH}$$

Alcoholysis of esters is known as transesterification.

In acidolysis, the acid residue is displaced from its ester by another acid residue, e.g.,

$$CH_3 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + C_5H_{11} \cdot CO_2H \Longrightarrow C_5H_{11} \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + CH_3 \cdot CO_2H$$

Acidolysis is a useful reaction for converting the neutral ester of a dibasic

acid into its acid ester.

5. When an ester—preferably the methyl or ethyl ester—is treated with sodium in an inert solvent, e.g., ether, benzene or toluene, and subsequently with acid, an acyloin is formed (50-70 per cent. yield). It is important that the reaction be carried out in the absence of any free alcohol. Acyloins are αβ-keto-alcohols, and the mechanism of their formation is obscure. According to Kharasch and his co-workers (1939), the formation of acyloins takes place via a free-radical mechanism, e.g., propionin from ethyl propionate:

6. Carboxylic esters which contain α-hydrogen atoms react with sodamide in liquid ammonia solution to form the acid amide and a condensation product involving two molecules of the ester, e.g., ethyl acetate gives acetamide and acetoacetic ester (see also p. 224):

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5} + \mathrm{NaNH_2} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot NH_2} + \mathrm{C_2 H_5 ONa} \\ \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5} + \mathrm{NaNH_2} \longrightarrow \mathrm{NH_3} + [\dot{\mathrm{CH_2 \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5}}] - \mathrm{Na^+} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO_3 C_2 H_5}} \\ \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5} + \mathrm{C_2 H_5 OH} \end{array}$$

Of particular interest is the carbonation of esters, i.e., the introduction of the carboxyl group. The ester is treated with sodamide in liquid ammonia solution, the solvent is evaporated off, ether is added, and then solid carbon dioxide:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R·CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{R'} + \text{NaNH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{liquid NH}_3} \\ \text{NH}_3 + [\text{R·CH·CO}_2 \text{R'}]^- \text{Na}^+ \xrightarrow{\text{cO}_3} \\ \text{CO}_2 \text{Na} \end{array}$$

The yields of these malonic acid derivatives are 54-60 per cent. with acetates, and become progressively lower as the molecular weight of the acid increases.

Esters are used as solvents for cellulose, oils, gums, resins, etc., and as plasticisers. They are also used for making artificial flavours and essences,

e.g., isoamyl acetate—banana oil; amyl butyrate—apricot; isoamyl isovalerate—apple; methyl butyrate—pineapple; etc.

Ortho-esters are compounds of the type R·C(OR')<sub>3</sub>. They are derived from the ortho-acids, R·C(OH)<sub>3</sub>, which have not yet been isolated, but which are possibly present in aqueous solution (cf. ethylidene glycol, p. 168):

$$R-C \bigcirc O + H_2O \Longrightarrow R \cdot C(OH)_3$$

The most important ortho-esters are the orthoformic esters, particularly ethyl orthoformate. Ethyl orthoformate may be prepared by running ethanol and chloroform into sodium covered with ether:

$$_2$$
CHCl<sub>3</sub> +  $_3$ CQH<sub>5</sub>OH +  $_4$ ONa  $\longrightarrow$  2H·C(OC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>3</sub> +  $_4$ ONaCl +  $_3$ H<sub>2</sub> (70%)

Another method is to pass dry hydrogen chloride into a solution of hydrogen cyanide and ethanol in ether:

$$\text{H-C} = \text{N} + \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 \text{OH} + \text{HCl} \longrightarrow \text{H-C} \xrightarrow{\text{NH-HCl}} \text{OC}_2 \text{H}_5$$

The formidic ester hydrochloride is then allowed to stand in ethanol, whereupon ethyl orthoformate is produced:

$$\text{H-C} \underbrace{\text{NH-HCl}}_{\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5} + _2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} \longrightarrow \text{H-C}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_3 + \text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$$

Ethyl orthoformate may be used for preparing ketals (p. 163), and for preparing aldehydes by means of a Grignard reagent (p. 355).

# Esters of the Inorganic Acids

Alkyl halides, which can be prepared by the action of a halogen acid on an alcohol, may be regarded as esters, but are exceptional in that they do

not contain oxygen.

Alkyl sulphates, (RO)<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>. Only methanol and ethanol give a good yield of the alkyl sulphate by reaction with concentrated sulphuric acid; the higher alcohols give mainly olefins and ethers. On the other hand, all the alcohols give a fair yield of alkyl hydrogen sulphate when a mixture of alcohol and concentrated sulphuric acid is heated on a steam bath.

According to Barkenbus and Owen (1934), the most useful method for preparing alkyl sulphates is by the action of an alkyl chlorosulphonate on an alkyl sulphite:

$$\begin{array}{l} (\rm RO)_2SO + \rm CISO_2 \cdot OR \longrightarrow (\rm RO)_2SO_2 + \rm HCl + SO_2 + R' \cdot CH \Longrightarrow \rm CH_2 \\ (\rm RO)_2SO + \rm CISO_2 \cdot OR \longrightarrow (\rm RO)_2SO_2 + SO_2 + RCl \end{array}$$

Methyl sulphate may be prepared:

(i) By heating methyl iodide with silver sulphate:

$$2CH_3I + Ag_2SO_4 \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2SO_4 + 2AgI$$

(ii) By heating methanol with concentrated sulphuric acid, and then distilling the methyl hydrogen sulphate under reduced pressure:

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_3OH} + \mathrm{H_2SO_4} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_3HSO_4} + \mathrm{H_2O} \\ \mathrm{2CH_3HSO_4} \longrightarrow \mathrm{(CH_3)_2SO_4} + \mathrm{H_2SO_4} \end{array}$$

(iii) By treating methanol with sulphur trioxide at low temperatures:

$$2SO_3 + 2CH_3OH \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2SO_4 + H_2SO_4$$

(ii) and (iii) are industrial methods.

Ethyl sulphate may be prepared by the same methods as methyl sulphate, but in addition, there is the industrial preparation by passing ethylene in excess into cold concentrated sulphuric acid:

$$_2C_2H_4 + H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow (C_2H_5)_2SO_4$$

Methyl sulphate, b.p. 188°, and ethyl sulphate, b.p. 208°, are heavy poisonous liquids. They are largely used as alkylating agents since the alkyl group will replace the hydrogen atom of the groups —OH, ·NH· or —SH. The alkylation may be carried out by treating the compound with the alkyl sulphate in sodium hydroxide solution. Usually only one of the

alkyl groups takes part in the reaction, e.g., methylation of a primary amine:

$$R \cdot NH_2 + (CH_3)_2SO_4 + NaOH \longrightarrow R \cdot NH \cdot CH_3 + CH_3NaSO_4 + H_2O$$

The methyl and ethyl esters of the carboxylic acids may be conveniently prepared by treating the sodium salt of the acid with respectively methyl or ethyl sulphate:

$$R \cdot CO_2Na + (C_2H_5)_2SO_4 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + C_2H_5NaSO_4$$

The sodium alkyl sulphates of the higher alcohols are used as detergents,

e.g., sodium lauryl sulphate:

Alkyl nitrates, R·O·NO<sub>2</sub>. The only important alkyl nitrate is ethyl nitrate, C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·O·NO<sub>2</sub>. This may be prepared by heating ethyl iodide with silver nitrate in ethanolic solution:

$$C_2H_5I + AgNO_3 \longrightarrow C_2H_5 \cdot O \cdot NO_2 + AgI$$

When concentrated nitric acid is added to ethanol, the reaction is usually violent; part of the ethanol is oxidised, and some of the nitric acid is reduced to nitrous acid. Apparently it is the presence of the nitrous acid which produces the violent oxidation of the alcohol by the nitric acid. This danger may be avoided by first boiling the nitric acid with urea, which destroys any nitrous acid present, and then adding this mixture to cool ethanol, any nitrous acid produced being immediately destroyed by the urea:

$$CO(NH_2)_2 + 2HNO_2 \longrightarrow CO_2 + 2N_2 + 3H_2O$$

Ethyl nitrate is a pleasant-smelling liquid, b.p. 87.5°. When reduced with tin and hydrochloric acid, it forms hydroxylamine and ethanol:

$$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{·O·NO}_2 + 6\text{[H]} \xrightarrow{\text{Sn/HCI}} \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} + \text{NH}_2\text{·OH} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

Alkyl nitrites, R·O·NO. Alkyl nitrites are isomeric with the nitroparaffins (p. 301). The only important alkyl nitrites are the ethyl and amyl nitrites; the latter is actually mainly isoamyl nitrite, since the amyl alcohol used is the isopentanol from fusel oil (p. 135). Ethyl and amyl nitrites are prepared by adding, concentrated hydrochloric acid or sulphuric acid to aqueous sodium nitrite and the alcohol, e.g.,

$$C_5H_{11}OH + HNO_2 \longrightarrow C_5H_{11} \cdot O \cdot NO + H_2O$$
 (75-85%)

Ethyl nitrite, b.p. 17°, and amyl nitrite, b.p. 99°, are pleasant-smelling liquids, and are used as a means of preparing nitrous acid in anhydrous media; e.g., an ethanolic solution of nitrous acid may be prepared by passing dry hydrogen chloride into amyl nitrite dissolved in ethanol.

Trialkyl phosphates, (RO)3PO, may be prepared by refluxing an alcohol

with phosphoryl chloride in the presence of pyridine:

$$3ROH + POCl_3 + 3C_5H_5N \longrightarrow (RO)_3PO + 3C_5H_5N \cdot HCl$$
 (g.)

Triethyl phosphate, tributyl phosphate and tricresyl phosphate are widely used as plasticisers.

Trialkyl borates, (RO)<sub>3</sub>B, may be prepared by fractionally distilling a mixture of an alcohol and boric acid (Thomas, 1946):

$$3ROH + H_3BO_3 \longrightarrow (RO)_3B + 3H_2O$$
 (ex.)

Trialkyl borates may be conveniently prepared in good yield by transesterification (alcoholysis) of methyl borate (which is readily available) with the appropriate alcohol (Brown *et al.*, 1956).

$$4(CH_3O)_3B + 3ROH \longrightarrow (RO)_3B + 3[CH_3OH,(CH_3O)_3B].$$

These authors have also shown that the following reaction readily occurs with primary and secondary alcohols:

$$3ROH + NaBH_4 + CH_3 \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow (RO)_3B + CH_3 \cdot CO_2Na + 4H_2$$
  
With tertiary alcohols the reaction is:

$$2ROH + NaBH_4 + CH_3 \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow (RO)_2BH + CH_3 \cdot CO_2Na + 3H_2$$
  
Tributyl borate is mainly used as a plasticiser.

## ACID OR ACYL CHLORIDES

The general formula of the acyl radicals is R—C—. Acid chlorides, which may be prepared by the replacement of the hydroxyl in the carboxyl group by chlorine, are also known as acyl chlorides because they contain the

Nomenclature. According to the I.U.P.A.C. system the class suffix of the acyl chlorides is -oyl, and the names may be illustrated by the following examples:

This system is rarely used for naming the acyl chlorides. The more common names are formed by changing the suffix -ic of the trivial name of the acid into -yl, e.g.,

If the carboxyl group is considered as a substituent, then according to the I.U.P.A.C. system, the nomenclature of all substances containing acyl radicals is in all cases based on the name "carbonyl" for the CO group, e.g.,

When naming amides (see below), the "yl" is elided before the suffix amide, e.g.,

General methods of preparation. I. The acid is heated with phosphorus trichloride or pentachloride, e.g.,

$$3R \cdot COOH + PCl_3 \longrightarrow 3R \cdot COCl + H_3PO_3$$
 (g.)  
 $R \cdot COOH + PCl_5 \longrightarrow R \cdot COCl + HCl + POCl_3$  (v.g.)

The reaction with phosphorus trichloride is accompanied by the formation of small amounts of volatile phosphorus compounds, e.g.,

$$R \cdot CO_2H + PCl_3 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2PCl_2 + HCl$$

In some cases the acid anhydride is also formed due to the following reaction:

$$R \cdot CO_2H + R \cdot COCl \Longrightarrow (R \cdot CO)_2O + HCl$$

Thionyl chloride may be used instead of the phosphorus chlorides:

$$R \cdot CO_2H + SOCl_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot COCl + SO_2 + HCl \quad (v.g.)$$

The inorganic chloride is chosen according to the boiling point of the acyl chloride formed. Phosphorous acid decomposes at 200°; the boiling point of phosphoryl chloride is 107°, and that of thionyl chloride is 76°. Since acetyl chloride boils at 52°, any of the three inorganic halides may be used, but it is difficult to separate acetyl chloride from thionyl chloride (which is generally used in excess) by fractionation. *n*-Butyryl chloride boils at 102°, and so phosphorus pentachloride cannot be used. Usually thionyl chloride is the most convenient, but although it may be used with all the monocarboxylic acids, it is not satisfactory for all dicarboxylic acids (p. 377).

2. By distilling the salt of the acid with either phosphorus trichloride, phosphoryl chloride or sulphuryl chloride, e.g.,

$$3CH_3 \cdot CO_2Na + PCl_3 \longrightarrow 3CH_3 \cdot COCl + Na_3PO_3$$
  
 $2CH_3 \cdot CO_2Na + POCl_3 \longrightarrow 2CH_3 \cdot COCl + NaCl + NaPO_3$   
 $(CH_3 \cdot CO_2)_2Ca + SO_2Cl_2 \longrightarrow 2CH_3 \cdot COCl + CaSO_4$ 

This method is used industrially since the salts are cheaper than the acid.

Acyl bromides may be prepared by the action of phosphorus tribromide or pentabromide (red phosphorus and bromine) on the acid, or by the action of excess hydrogen bromide on the acyl chloride:

$$R \cdot COCl + HBr \longrightarrow R \cdot COBr + HCl$$

Acyl iodides are prepared in the same way as the bromides. Acyl fluorides are also known, and may be prepared by the action of hydrogen fluoride on acid anhydrides:

$$(R \cdot CO)_2O + HF \longrightarrow R \cdot COF + R \cdot CO_2H$$

General properties and reactions of the acyl chlorides. The lower acyl chlorides are colourless liquids with irritating odours; the higher members are colourless solids. The chlorine atom is very reactive and so the acid chlorides are important reagents.

I. The acyl chlorides are readily hydrolysed by water, the lower members

reacting vigorously:

$$R \cdot COCl + H_2O \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2H + HCl$$

Acyl chlorides usually react rapidly with compounds containing "active" hydrogen atoms, *i.e.*, hydrogen attached to oxygen, nitrogen or sulphur; *e.g.*, esters are formed with alcohols:

$$R \cdot COC1 + R'OH \longrightarrow R \cdot COOR' + HC1$$

Amides are formed with ammonia, and N-substituted amides with primary and secondary amines:

$$R \cdot COCl + 2NH_3 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 + NH_4Cl$$
  
 $R \cdot COCl + R' \cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot R' + HCl$ 

Hydrazides are formed with hydrazine, and hydroxamic acids with hydroxylamine:

$$R \cdot COCl + H_2N \cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot NH_2 + HCl$$
  
 $R \cdot COCl + NH_2 \cdot OH \longrightarrow R \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot OH + HCl$ 

The mechanisms of all of these reactions are uncertain. Alcoholysis of acid chlorides has been studied in some detail, and some mechanisms that have been suggested are (i) and (ii), which differ in the nature of the intermediate (I) and the transition state (II).

(i) 
$$R-C-Cl+R'OH \stackrel{slow}{\rightleftharpoons} R-C-Cl$$

$$(I) H-O-R' \stackrel{fast}{\rightleftharpoons} R-C+HCl$$

$$(ii) R-COCl+R'OH \stackrel{slow}{\rightleftharpoons} R'O-C-Cl$$

$$(II) H R$$

According to Hudson et al. (1955), the transition state is best represented as intermediate between (I) and (II), and is stabilised by solvation. It is possible that the other reactions—hydrolysis, ammonolysis, etc.—follow similar paths.

2. Acyl chlorides may be reduced catalytically to aldehydes or to alcohols:

$$R \cdot COCl \xrightarrow{H_2} R \cdot CHO \xrightarrow{H_2} R \cdot CH_2OH$$

Acid chlorides are reduced to esters of an enediol by sodium amalgam in an inert solvent, e.g., ether (cf. esters, p. 194):

$$_{4}\text{R}\cdot\text{COCl} + _{4}\text{Na} \longrightarrow \underset{R\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{O}}{\overset{R}{\longrightarrow}} \text{C=C} \overset{R}{\bigcirc} \text{C-CO}\cdot\text{R} + _{4}\text{NaCl}$$

Under suitable conditions, small yields of α-diketones have been obtained. Acid chlorides are reduced to alcohols by lithium aluminium hydride or sodium borohydride, and to aldehydes by lithium hydride or lithium tri-t-butoxy-aluminium hydride (p. 148).

3. Acyl chlorides react with the sodium salt of the fatty acids to form acid anhydrides (q.v.):

4. Acyl chlorides may be used in the Friedel-Crafts reaction to produce an aromatic ketone; e.g., acetyl chloride reacts with benzene in the presence of anhydrous aluminium chloride to form acetophenone:

$$C_6H_6 + CH_3 \cdot COC1 \xrightarrow{AlCl_9} C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + HC1$$

5. Acyl chlorides react with Grignard reagents to produce ketones or tertiary alcohols, according to the conditions (see p. 355); e.g., acetyl chloride forms butanone with ethylmagnesium iodide:

$$\mathrm{CH_3\text{-}COCl} + \mathrm{C_2H_5\text{-}Mg\text{-}I} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_3\text{-}CO\text{-}C_2H_5} + \mathrm{Mg\text{-}CII}$$

6. Acyl chlorides react with carboxylic acids as follows:

$$R \cdot COCl + R' \cdot CO_2H \Longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2H + R' \cdot COCl$$

If the acyl chloride, R'•COCl, has the lowest boiling point, and the apparatus is arranged so as to allow only this to distil, all of R•COCl will be converted into R'•COCl. This reaction may therefore be used to prepare a volatile acyl chloride.

A small amount of acid anhydride is formed as a by-product, due to the

reaction:

$$R \cdot COCl + R' \cdot CO_2H \iff R \cdot CO \cdot O \cdot CO \cdot R' + HCl$$

There will also be present the anhydrides (R·CO)<sub>2</sub>O and (R'·CO)<sub>2</sub>O.

7. Acyl chlorides are readily halogenated in the α-position (see p. 210).
8. Acyl chlorides form esters (and other products) when heated with an ether in the presence of anhydrous zinc chloride as catalyst:

$$R \cdot COCl + R'_2O \xrightarrow{ZnCl_3} R \cdot CO_2R' + R'Cl$$

9. Acyl chlorides add on to the double bond of an olefin in the presence of a catalyst, e.g., zinc chloride or aluminium chloride, to form a chloroketone which, on heating, eliminates a molecule of hydrogen chloride to form an unsaturated ketone:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 - \text{C} = \text{CH}_2 + \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{COCl} \xrightarrow{\text{ZnCl}_3} \text{CH}_3 - \text{C} + \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \\ \text{Cl} \\ \text{CH}_3 - \text{C} = \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 + \text{HCl} \end{array}$$

Formyl chloride, H·COCl, and formyl fluoride, H·COF, are said to exist at low temperatures (-80°). There is no evidence of their existence at ordinary temperature, but a mixture of carbon monoxide and hydrogen chloride behaves as if it were formyl chloride in the Gattermann-Koch

aldehyde synthesis (p. 646).

Acetyl chloride, CH<sub>3</sub>·COCl, is the most important acyl halide. It is a colourless fuming liquid, b.p. 52°, and is soluble in ether and chloroform. It is largely used as an acetylating agent, i.e., as a means of introducing the acetyl group, into compounds containing "active" hydrogen atoms. It is also used to detect the presence of hydroxyl groups in organic compounds, and to estimate their number.

Acetyl chloride readily acetylates primary and secondary alcohols, but it tends to replace the hydroxyl group of a tertiary alcohol by chlorine (p. 130):

$$R_3COH + CH_3 \cdot COCl \longrightarrow R_3CCl + CH_3 \cdot CO_2H$$

The acetate of a tertiary alcohol may, however, be obtained by carrying out the reaction in the presence of pyridine:

The accepted abbreviation for the acetyl group is Ac; e.g., AcOH is acetic acid; Ac<sub>2</sub>O, acetic anhydride; AcCl, acetyl chloride; C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·NH·Ac, acetanilide; etc.

#### ACID ANHYDRIDES

The acid anhydrides may be regarded theoretically as being derived from an acid by the removal of one molecule of water from two molecules of the acid:

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
R - C & O \\
\hline
O & R - C
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
O \\
O \\
O
\end{array}$$

It is possible in practice to prepare many acid anhydrides by the direct dehydration as indicated above, but this method is usually confined to the anhydrides of the higher members of the acid series (see below).

Nomenclature. The acid anhydrides are named as the anhydride of the acid radicals present, the *trivial* name of the acid being used, e.g.,

The most important acid anhydride is acetic anhydride, but propionic anhydride is increasing in importance due to its use in preparing cellulose propionate. Formic anhydride is unknown, but mixed anhydrides containing the formic acid radical have been prepared, e.g., acetic formic anhydride, H·CO·O·CO·CH<sub>2</sub>.

Acetic anhydride, (CH<sub>3</sub>·CO)<sub>2</sub>O, may be conveniently prepared by distilling a mixture of anhydrous sodium acetate and acetyl chloride:

Acetic anhydride is prepared industrially:

(i) By heating anhydrous sodium acetate with sufficient inorganic chloride—phosphoryl chloride, thionyl chloride or sulphuryl chloride—to convert half of the sodium salt into the acid chloride, which then reacts with unchanged sodium acetate to form acetic anhydride.

(ii) By passing chlorine into a mixture of sodium acetate and sulphur

dichloride, and distilling:

$$8\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{Na} + \text{SCl}_2 + 2\text{Cl}_2 \longrightarrow 4(\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO})_2 \text{O} + 6\text{NaCl} + \text{Na}_2 \text{SO}_4$$

(iii) By passing acetylene into glacial acetic acid in the presence of mercuric ions as catalyst, and distilling the resulting ethylidene acetate:

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm C_2H_2} + 2{\rm CH_3 \cdot CO_2H} \xrightarrow{{\rm Hg^{3+}}} {\rm CH_3 \cdot CH(O \cdot CO \cdot CH_3)_2} \xrightarrow{\rm heat} \\ {\rm (CH_3 \cdot CO)_2O} + {\rm CH_3 \cdot CHO} \end{array}$$

(iv) By passing keten into glacial acetic acid:

$$CH_2 = C = O + CH_3 \cdot CO_2 H \longrightarrow (CH_3 \cdot CO)_2 O$$

(v) By passing acetic acid vapour over a catalyst consisting of a mixture of sodium ammonium hydrogen phosphate and boron phosphate, at 600-620°:

$$_{2}\text{CH}_{3}\text{-CO}_{2}\text{H} \xrightarrow{-\text{H}_{4}\text{O}} (\text{CH}_{3}\text{-CO})_{2}\text{O}$$

Anhydrides of the higher acids may be prepared by heating, and then fractionating, a mixture of the acid and acetic anhydride:

$$_{2}\text{R}\cdot\text{CO}_{2}\text{H} + (\text{CH}_{3}\cdot\text{CO})_{2}\text{O} \Longrightarrow (\text{R}\cdot\text{CO})_{2}\text{O} + _{2}\text{CH}_{3}\cdot\text{CO}_{2}\text{H}$$

This method is only satisfactory for anhydrides which have higher boiling points than acetic acid. A much better method of preparation is to treat the acid chloride with pyridine and benzene, add the acid, and then heat:

$$R \cdot COC1 + R \cdot CO_2H + C_5H_5N \longrightarrow (R \cdot CO)_2O + C_5H_5N \cdot HC1$$
 (g.-ex.)

On the other hand, acid anhydrides may be prepared in very high yield by the action of thionyl chloride on an ethereal solution of a mixture of acid and pyridine (Gerrard *et al.*, 1952):

$$2R \cdot CO_2H + SOCl_2 + 2C_5H_5N \longrightarrow (R \cdot CO)_2O + C_5H_5N \cdot HCl + C_5H_5NH \cdot O \cdot SOCl$$

**Properties of acetic anhydride.** Acetic anhydride is a colourless liquid, b.p. 139.5°, with an irritating smell. It is neutral when pure, and is slighty soluble in water, but readily soluble in ether and benzene. It is hydrolysed slowly in water, but rapidly by alkali:

$$(CH_3 \cdot CO)_2O + H_2O \longrightarrow 2CH_3 \cdot CO_2H$$

It undergoes reactions similar to those of acetyl chloride, but with less vigour: only half of the acetic anhydride molecule is used in acetylation, the other half being converted into acetic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} (\mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO})_2\mathrm{O} + \mathrm{C_2H_5OH} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5} + \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO_2H} \\ (\mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO})_2\mathrm{O} + \mathrm{NH_3} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot NH_2} + \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO_2H} \end{array}$$

Acetylation with acetic anhydride is usually best carried out in the presence of a small amount of sodium acetate or concentrated sulphuric acid as catalyst. Acetic anhydride reacts with dry hydrogen chloride to form acetyl chloride:

$$(CH_3 \cdot CO)_2O + HCl \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot COCl + CH_3 \cdot CO_2H$$

It is readily halogenated, and may be used in the Friedel-Crafts reaction. It reacts with aldehydes to form alkylidene acetates; e.g., with acetaldehyde it forms ethylidene acetate:

$$(CH_3 \cdot CO)_2O + CH_3 \cdot CHO \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CH(O \cdot CO \cdot CH_3)_2$$

Acetic anhydride reacts with nitrogen pentoxide to form acetyl nitrate, CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·O·NO<sub>2</sub>. This is a colourless fuming liquid, b.p. 22°/70 mm., which explodes violently if heated suddenly. It is hydrolysed by water to acetic and nitric acid:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot O \cdot NO_2 + H_2O \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO_2H + HNO_3$$

Acetyl nitrate is very useful for preparing certain aromatic nitro-compounds, but it is dangerous to handle (see p. 553).

Acetyl peroxide, CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·O·CO·CH<sub>5</sub>, may be prepared by the action of barium peroxide on acetic anhydride. It is colourless, pungent-smelling liquid, b.p. 63°/21 mm., and tends to explode on warming. It is a powerful oxidising agent.

#### ACID AMIDES

Acid amides are compounds in which the hydroxyl of the carboxyl group has been replaced by the amino-group, 'NH2, to form the amido-group:



There are three classes of amides: primary,  $R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2$ ; secondary,  $(R \cdot CO)_2NH$ ; and tertiary,  $(R \cdot CO)_3N$ . Only the primary amides are important, and it can be seen from their formulæ that all three classes may be regarded as the acyl derivatives of ammonia.

Nomenclature. According to the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature, the suffix -oic of the parent acid is replaced by amide (see also acid chlorides,

above):

H·CO·NH<sub>2</sub> methanamide CH.·CO·NH. ethanamide or methylcarbonamide

The amides, however, are commonly named by replacing the suffix -ic of the trivial name of the parent acid by amide, e.g.,

> H·CO·NH. formamide CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·NH<sub>3</sub> acetamide

General methods of preparation of the amides. I. By heating the ammonium salt of the acid:

$$R \cdot COONH_4 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 + H_2O \quad (g.-v.g.)$$

Since the ammonium salts tend to dissociate on heating, the reaction is best carried out in the presence of some free acid R·CO, H which represses the hydrolysis and the dissociation of the ammonium salt.

Amides may also be prepared by heating an acid with urea (Cherbuliez

et al., 1946):

$$R \cdot CO_2H + CO(NH_2)_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CONH_2 + CO_2 + NH_3 \quad (g.-v.g.)$$

2. By ammonolysis, i.e., the action of concentrated ammonia solution on acid chlorides, acid anhydrides or esters:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{R} \cdot \text{COCl} + 2 \text{NH}_3 &\longrightarrow \text{R} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH}_2 + \text{NH}_4 \text{Cl} & (v.g.) \\ (\text{R} \cdot \text{CO})_2 \text{O} + 2 \text{NH}_3 &\longrightarrow \text{R} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH}_2 + \text{R} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{NH}_4 & (v.g.) \\ \text{R} \cdot \text{COOR}' + \text{NH}_3 &\longrightarrow \text{R} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH}_2 + \text{R}' \text{OH} & (g.) \end{array}$$

N-Substituted amides may be prepared by using primary or secondary amines instead of ammonia, e.g.,

$$R \cdot COCl + R' \cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot R' + HCl$$

Philbrook (1954) has shown that amides may be readily prepared by adding a benzene solution of an acid chloride dropwise to benzene through which is passed a current of ammonia; for the lower aliphatic amides the yield is 65-

95 per cent.

Meyer (1906) found that ammonolysis of esters occurs most readily with esters of strong acids and least readily with esters of weak acids or sterically hindered acids. It has been found that ammonia and aliphatic amines react, in general, more readily than aromatic amines. Stern (1956) has shown that acyl arylamides may be readily prepared as follows (Ar = aryl radical):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Ar·NH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Na or}} \text{Ar·NHNa} \\ \text{R·CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{Ar·NHNa} \longrightarrow \text{R·CO·NH·Ar} + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{ONa} \end{array}$$

3. By the graded hydrolysis of alkyl cyanides. The hydrolysis must be carried out carefully, since if taken too far, the acid is produced. The hydrolysis may be carried out satisfactorily by dissolving the alkyl cyanide in concentrated sulphuric acid and then pouring the solution into cold water, or by shaking the alkyl cyanide with cold concentrated hydrochloric acid:

$$R \cdot C \equiv N + H_2O \longrightarrow R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2$$
 (g.)

A possible mechanism for this hydrolysis is:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-C} = \text{N:} + \overset{+}{\text{H}} \longrightarrow \text{R-C} = \overset{+}{\text{N}} - \text{H} \longleftrightarrow \text{R-C} = \overset{-}{\text{N-H}} - \overset{\text{H_2O}}{\longrightarrow} \\ \overset{\circ}{\text{OH}}_2 & \text{OH} & \overset{\circ}{\text{OH}} \\ \text{R-C} = \overset{-}{\text{N-H}} - \overset{-}{\text{H+}} + \text{R-C} = \overset{\circ}{\text{NH}} \Longleftrightarrow \text{R-C} - \text{NH}_2 \end{array}$$

Sometimes the conversion of an alkyl cyanide into the amide may be effected by means of alkaline hydrogen peroxide:

$$R \cdot CN + 2H_2O_2 \xrightarrow{NaOH} R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 + O_2 + H_2O$$

General properties and reactions of the amides. Except for formamide, which is a liquid, all the amides are colourless crystalline solids, and those of low molecular weight are soluble in water (with which they can form hydrogen bonds). The lower amides have much higher melting points and boiling points than are to be expected from their molecular weights; this indicates association (through hydrogen bonding):

Infra-red spectroscopic studies indicate that in dilute solution (dioxan and chloroform) amides are monomeric; in concentrated solution (chloroform) and in the liquid state there is some association, and in the solid state association is complete. Furthermore, the spectroscopic evidence appears to indicate that amides are resonance hybrids (Richards and Thomson, 1947):

$$R-C$$
 $NH_2$ 
 $\leftrightarrow$ 
 $R-C$ 
 $NH_2$ 

1. Amides are hydrolysed slowly by water, rapidly by acids, and far more rapidly by alkalis:

$$R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 + H_2O \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2H + NH_3$$

Possible mechanisms are:

Base hydrolysis

$$H\bar{O} + C - NH_2 \Longrightarrow HO - C - NH_2 \Longrightarrow HO - C + NH_2 \longrightarrow \bar{O} - C + NH_3$$

Acid hydrolysis

O

C

NH<sub>2</sub> + H

C

NH<sub>3</sub> 
$$\stackrel{+}{\rightleftharpoons}$$
 C

NH<sub>3</sub>  $\stackrel{+}{\rightleftharpoons}$  C

NH<sub>3</sub>  $\stackrel{-}{\rightleftharpoons}$  H<sub>2</sub>O

C

NH<sub>3</sub>  $\stackrel{-}{\rightleftharpoons}$  C

NH<sub>4</sub>

R

O

H<sub>2</sub>O

C

NH<sub>3</sub>  $\stackrel{-}{\rightleftharpoons}$  HO

C

NH<sub>4</sub>

R

2. Amides are very feebly basic and form unstable salts with strong inorganic acids, e.g., R·CO·NH<sub>2</sub>·HCl. The structure of these salts may be I or II:

$$\begin{bmatrix} R-C & O-H \\ NH_2 \end{bmatrix}^+ Cl^- \qquad \begin{bmatrix} R-C & NH_3 \end{bmatrix}^+ Cl^-$$

In the case of formamide (R=H), infra-red measurements have shown that II is the actual state. Addition of a proton to the NH<sub>2</sub> group inhibits resonance and consequently decreases stability, *i.e.*, the amide is more stable than the protonated molecule. Hence the weak basic properties of amides.

3. Amides are also feebly acidic; e.g., they dissolve mercuric oxide to form covalent mercury compounds in which the mercury is probably linked to the nitrogen:

$$2R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 + HgO \longrightarrow (R \cdot CO \cdot NH)_2 Hg + H_2O$$

When amides are treated with sodium or sodamide in ethereal solution, the sodium salt, [R•CO•NH]-Na+, is formed, and the structure of these salts may be I or II:

$$\begin{bmatrix} O \\ R - C - NH \end{bmatrix} Na^{+} \qquad \begin{bmatrix} O^{-} \\ R - C = NH \end{bmatrix} Na^{+}$$
(II)

When the dry sodium salt is heated with an alkyl iodide, the N-alkyl derivative is obtained; this corresponds to I. When, however, the silver salt is used, the O-alkyl derivative is obtained; this corresponds to II. It is possible that I and II are resonating structures.

4. Amides are reduced by sodium and ethanol, catalytically, or by lithium aluminium hydride to a primary amine:

$$\text{R-CO-NH}_2 + 4\text{[H]} \xrightarrow{\text{Na/C}_2\text{H}_2\text{OH}} \text{R-CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

5. When heated with phosphorus pentoxide, amides are dehydrated to alkyl cyanides:

$$R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 \xrightarrow{P_3O_5} R \cdot C!N$$

Alkyl cyanides are also formed when the amides of the higher fatty acids are heated to a high temperature:

$$2R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CN + R \cdot CO_2H + NH_3$$

If this reaction is carried out in the presence of excess of ammonia, then all the amide is converted into alkyl cyanide:

$$R \cdot CO_2H + NH_3 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2NH_4 \xrightarrow{-H_1O} R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 \xrightarrow{-H_2O} R \cdot CN$$

Amides may also be converted into cyanides by phosphorus pentachloride, and according to Wallach (1877), the reaction proceeds via the amido-chloride I and then the imido-chloride (imino-chloride) II.

According to Kirsanov (1954), however, the reaction proceeds as follows, the intermediate III being decomposed by heat or by hydrogen chloride.

$$R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 + PCl_5 \longrightarrow 2HCl + R \cdot CO \cdot N = PCl_5 \longrightarrow R \cdot CN + POCl_5$$
(III)

Alkyl cyanides may be obtained from amides by treating the amide with the boron trifluoride-amide complex in the presence of a small amount of a carboxylic acid (Nieuwland, 1937), e.g.,

$$\text{CH}_3\text{*CONH}_2\text{*BF}_3 + \text{CH}_3\text{*CO*NH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3\text{*CO}_2\text{H}} \text{CH}_3\text{*CN} + \text{CH}_3\text{*CO}_2\text{H} + \text{NH}_3\text{*BF}_3$$

It is also interesting to note that the complex  $CH_3^*CO^*NH_2^*BF_3$  has been found to be an effective acetylating agent for alcohols and phenols:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 \cdot BF_3 + ROH \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO_2R + NH_3 \cdot BF_3$$

6. When amides are treated with nitrous acid, nitrogen is evolved and the acid is formed:

$$R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 + HNO_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2H + N_2 + H_2O$$

7. Hofmann reaction or Hofmann degradation (1881). The Hofmann reaction is the conversion of an amide into a primary amine with one carbon atom less by means of bromine (or chlorine) and alkali. The overall equation for the reaction may be written:

$$R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 + Br_2 + 4KOH \longrightarrow R \cdot NH_2 + 2KBr + K_2CO_3 + 2H_2O$$

The mechanism of the Hofmann reaction has been the subject of a great deal of work. A number of intermediates have been isolated: N-bromamides, R•CO•NHBr; salts of these bromamides, [R•CO•NBr]-K+; isocyanates, R•NCO. On this basis, a possible mechanism is the following, which is an example of the L2-shift:

The uncertainty of this mechanism lies mainly in the formation of (I). Hauser et al. (1937) have shown that electron-releasing groups in the para-position of a migrating aryl group accelerate the reaction and electron-withdrawing groups

retard the reaction. This supports the formation of a bridged ion (a phenonium ion), (Ia), certainly when the migrating group is aromatic. Whether a bridged ion, (Ib), is produced when the migrating group is an alkyl group, is uncertain (cf. p. 171). Furthermore, there is much recent work to show that the rearrangement is intramolecular, e.g., Wallis et al. (1931), using the amide of optically active α-benzylpropionic acid, found that there was retention of configuration in the product, while: thus the migrating group is never free.

α-benzylethylamine; thus the migrating group is never free:

### C6H5·CH2·CHMe·CO·NH2 -> C6H5·CH2·CHMe·NH2

The Hofmann reaction can be carried out on all monocarboxylic acids, and the yields are 70–90 per cent. for amides containing up to seven carbon atoms; amides with more than seven carbon atoms in the chain give mainly alkyl cyanide:

R.CH. CO.NH. Bra/KOH R.CN

The alkyl cyanide, however, may readily be reduced to the primary amine R\*CH2\*NH2.

It is possible to obtain the amine in good yield from the long-chain amides by modifying the procedure as follows. Bromine is added rapidly to a methanolic solution of the amide containing sodium methoxide:

$$\text{R-CO-NH}_2 + 2\text{CH}_3\text{ONa} + \text{Br}_2 \longrightarrow \text{R-NH-CO}_2\text{CH}_3 + 2\text{NaBr} + \text{CH}_3\text{OH}$$

The N-alkyl-urethan, on hydrolysis with alkali, gives the amine:

$$R \cdot NH \cdot CO_2CH_3 + 2NaOH \longrightarrow R \cdot NH_2 + Na_2CO_3 + CH_3OH$$

The Hofmann reaction offers an excellent method of preparing primary amines free from secondary and tertiary amines; it also affords a means of descending a series. A further interesting point about this reaction is that if the amide contains an electronegative group, the product is a bromide, e.g., heptafluorobutyramide gives bromoheptafluoropropane (Haszeldine et al., 1956):

$$C_3F_7$$
·CO·NH<sub>2</sub>  $\xrightarrow{Br_3}$   $C_3F_7Br$  (85%)

#### HYDROXAMIC ACIDS

The hydroxamic acids exhibit tautomerism; the keto form I is known as the hydroxamic form, and the enol form II as the hydroximic form:

$$(I) \begin{array}{c} O \\ \parallel \\ R-C-NH\cdot OH \end{array} \Longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} OH \\ \parallel \\ R-C=N\cdot OH \end{array} \hspace{0.5cm} (II)$$

Hydroxamic acids may be prepared by the action of hydroxylamine on esters or acid chlorides:

$$\begin{array}{c} R-C \nearrow O \\ OC_2H_5 \end{array} + NH_2 \cdot OH \longrightarrow R-C \nearrow NH \cdot OH + C_2H_5OH \\ R \cdot COCI + NH_2 \cdot OH \longrightarrow R-C \nearrow NH \cdot OH + HCI \end{array}$$

Hydroxamic acids give a red coloration with ferric chloride solution, a reaction which is characteristic of enols. When treated with a strong inorganic acid, hydroxamic acids undergo the Lossen rearrangement (1875), which results in the formation of a primary amine. The mechanism of the Lossen rearrangement is closely related to that of the Hofmann reaction, and so may be formulated:

$$\begin{array}{c} H \\ \downarrow \\ N - OH \\ \downarrow \\ O \end{array} \xrightarrow{HCI} \begin{array}{c} H \\ \downarrow \\ N - OH_2^+ \\ -H_4O \end{array} \xrightarrow{R} \begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ N - H \\ -H^+ \end{array} \xrightarrow{H_4O} \begin{array}{c} RNH_2 + CO_2 \end{array}$$

This rearrangement (1,2-shift) has been shown to be intramolecular, and electronreleasing groups in a migrating aryl group accelerate the reaction, thereby supporting the formation of a phenonium ion.

The amides of the hydroxamic acids are known as amidoximes. These are tautomeric substances:

$$R \cdot C_{N \cdot OH}^{NH_2} \implies R \cdot C_{NH \cdot OH}^{NH}$$

Aliphatic amidoximes are best obtained by the action of hydroxylamine on an alkyl cyanide:

$${\rm R\text{-}CN} \, + \, {\rm NH_2\text{-}OH} \longrightarrow {\rm R\text{-}C} \underset{\rm N\text{-}OH}{\overset{\rm NH_2}{\longrightarrow}}$$

#### IMIDIC ESTERS AND AMIDINES

Imidic esters, which are also known as *imino-ethers*, are best prepared by passing dry hydrogen chloride into a solution of an alkyl cyanide in anhydrous alcohol; the imidic ester hydrochloride is slowly deposited (Pinner, 1877):

$$R \cdot C: N + R'OH + HCl \longrightarrow R \cdot C \nearrow NH \cdot HCl$$

$$(g.-v.g.)$$

This reaction is believed to be analogous to the hydrolysis of cyanides to amides:

$$R \cdot C; N + H_2O \longrightarrow \left[R - C \bigvee_{OH}^{NH}\right] \longrightarrow R - C \bigvee_{O}^{NH_2}$$

There is, however, no evidence for the existence of the enol form in unsubstituted amides.

Imidic esters form ortho-esters when allowed to stand in an alcohol:

$$R \cdot C$$
 $OR'$ 
 $+ 2R'OH \longrightarrow R \cdot C(OR')_3 + NH_4CI$ 

Imidic esters are readily hydrolysed to esters:

$$R \cdot C \stackrel{\text{NH} \cdot \text{HCl}}{\circ} + H_2O \longrightarrow R - C \stackrel{\text{O}}{\circ} + NH_4Cl$$

When an ethereal solution of an imidic ester hydrochloride is treated with potassium carbonate, the free ester  $R \cdot \mathbb{C} \stackrel{NH}{\bigcirc} NH$  is obtained. When treated with an ethanolic solution of ammonia, the imidic ester hydrochloride forms the amidine:

$$R \cdot C \bigvee_{\mathrm{OR'}}^{\mathrm{NH} \cdot \mathrm{HCl}} + 2\mathrm{NH_3} \longrightarrow R \cdot C \bigvee_{\mathrm{NH_2}}^{\mathrm{NH}} + \mathrm{NH_4Cl}$$

Formamidine acetate and acetamidine acetate may be prepared from ortho esters (R = H or Me) as follows (Taylor *et al.*, 1960):

$$R \cdot C(OEt)_3 + NH_3 + CH_3 \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow H_2N \cdot CR = NH_2 + CH_3 \cdot CO_2$$

These acetates are better precursors of their respective amidines than are the corresponding hydrochlorides.

Amidines are strong monoacid bases, forming salts with strong acids. Their basic strength may be explained by resonance. In the amidine, two different resonating structures contribute to the actual state of the molecule:

$$R-C {NH \atop NH_2} \longleftrightarrow R-C {NH \atop NH_2}$$

In the amidine ion, the resonating structures are equivalent, and hence the resonance energy is a maximum; the ion will therefore be stable:

$$R-C$$
 $NH_2$ 
 $NH_2$ 
 $R-C$ 
 $NH_3$ 
 $NH_4$ 

Amidines are readily hydrolysed to amides:

$$R-C$$
 $NH_{2}$ 
 $+H_{2}O \longrightarrow R-C$ 
 $NH_{2}$ 
 $+NH_{3}$ 

Amidines or their salts may be reduced to aldehydes by sodium and ethanol in liquid ammonia, or by sodium and ethanol, but in the latter case the yields are lower (Birch et al., 1954).

#### ACID HYDRAZIDES AND ACID AZIDES

Acid hydrazides may be prepared by the action of hydrazine on esters or acyl chlorides:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R•COOC}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{N}_2\text{H}_4 \longrightarrow \text{R•CO•NH•NH}_2 + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} \\ \text{R•COCl} + \text{N}_2\text{H}_4 \longrightarrow \text{R•CO•NH•NH}_2 + \text{HCl} \end{array}$$

Girard's reagent "T" (p. 154) is trimethylaminoacetohydrazide, which may be prepared by interaction between trimethylamine, ethyl chloroacetate and hydrazine:

$$(\mathrm{CH_3})_3\mathrm{N} + \mathrm{CICH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5} + \mathrm{N_2H_4} \longrightarrow \\ [(\mathrm{CH_3})_3\mathrm{N \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot NH_2}]^+\mathrm{Cl}^- + \mathrm{C_2H_5OH}$$

Girard's reagent "P" is formed in a similar manner, except that pyridine is used instead of trimethylamine.

The acid hydrazides resemble the acid amides, but differ in the following ways:

(i) They are much more readily hydrolysed than the amides:

$$R \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot NH_2 + H_2O \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2H + N_2H_4$$

(ii) They are reducing agents—hydrazine is a powerful reducing agent.

(iii) They form acid azides when treated with nitrous acid; no nitrogen is evolved:

Acid azides may also be prepared by the reaction between an acyl chloride and sodium azide:

$$R \cdot COC1 + NaN_3 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO \cdot N_3 + NaC1$$

The structure of the acid azides is best represented as a resonance hybrid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \stackrel{\scriptstyle \bullet}{\scriptstyle R-C-\dot{N}=\dot{\bar{N}}=\bar{\bar{N}}: \longleftrightarrow R-C-\dot{\bar{N}}=\dot{\bar{N}}=N:} \\ \end{array}$$

When boiled with an alcohol, acid azides undergo rearrangement to form N-alkyl-substituted urethans:

$$R \cdot CO \cdot N_2 + R'OH \longrightarrow R \cdot NH \cdot CO_2R' + N_2$$
 (v.g.-ex.)

The mechanism of this rearrangement—the Curtius rearrangement (1894)—is similar to that of the Hofmann and Lossen rearrangements (see above), and so may be formulated:

This mechanism is supported by the fact that when the terminal nitrogen atom is <sup>15</sup>N in 3:5-dinitrobenzazide, all of this tracer is found in the nitrogen eliminated in the reaction (Bothner—By et al., 1951).

The Curtius reaction may be used to step down a series (cf. the Hofmann

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{OH}} \text{R} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{N}_3\text{H}_4} \text{R} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{HNO}_2} \\ & \text{R} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{N}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_4\text{OH}} \text{R} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \text{R} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \end{array}$$

The Curtius reactions offers a very good method for preparing primary amines free from secondary and tertiary amines, and may also be used for preparing

isocyanates and urethans; e.g., when heated in benzene or chloroform solution, an acid azide rearranges to the alkyl isocyanate which can be isolated. If the isocyanate is warmed with an alcohol, an N-substituted urethan is formed:

$$R \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{N}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{benzene}} R \cdot \text{NCO} \xrightarrow{R' \text{OH}} R \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO}_2 R'$$

#### HALOGEN DERIVATIVES OF THE FATTY ACIDS

The halogen derivatives of the fatty acids are compounds in which one or more hydrogen atoms in the *carbon chain* have been replaced by halogen.

Nomenclature. The usual method of naming the halogenated fatty acids is to use the trivial names of the acids, and to indicate the positions of the halogens atoms by Greek letters, e.g.,

 $\begin{array}{lll} \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}\text{·CO}_2\text{H} & \text{monochloroacetic acid} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{·CHCl}\text{·CO}_2\text{H} & \alpha\text{-chloropropionic acid} \\ \text{(CH}_3)_2\text{CCl}\text{·CHBr}\text{·CO}_2\text{H} & \alpha\text{-bromo-}\beta\text{-chloro}isovaleric acid} \end{array}$ 

Preparation of the halogenated acids. There are no general methods of preparing the various types of halogenated acids, *i.e.*, the  $\alpha$ -,  $\beta$ -,  $\gamma$ -, etc., halogeno-acids; the method depends on the position of the halogen atom.

 $\alpha$ -Halogeno-acids. Although the fatty acids themselves are not readily halogenated, their acid chlorides and anhydrides may be halogenated very easily. Bromination takes place only at the  $\alpha$ -position, but chlorination, although it occurs mainly at the  $\alpha$ -position, may also take place further in the chain; e.g., chlorination of propionic acid results in the formation of the  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -chloro-derivatives:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{Cl}_2} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CHCl-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{CH}_2\text{Cl-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$$

Fluorination of the fatty acids has not yet been studied in great detail, but the work done so far seems to indicate that fluorine enters the chain somewhat indiscriminately; e.g., fluorination of butyric acid in carbon tetrachloride solution gives the  $\beta$ - and  $\gamma$ -fluoro-derivatives (Bockemüller, 1933).

Iodo-derivatives are prepared from the chloro- or bromo-compound by the action of potassium iodide in methanolic or acetone solution (cf. alkyl

iodides, p. 105).

The usual method for preparing  $\alpha$ -chloro- or bromo-acids is by the Hell-Volhard-Zelinsky reaction (H.V.Z. reaction), which is carried out by treating the acid with chlorine or bromine in the presence of a small amount of red phosphorus. The reaction possibly takes place as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \xrightarrow{P + \text{Br}_2} \text{R} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COBr} \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_2} \text{R} \cdot \text{CHBr} \cdot \text{COBr} \\ \text{R} \cdot \text{CHBr} \cdot \text{COBr} + \text{R} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \Longrightarrow \text{R} \cdot \text{CHBr} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} + \text{R} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COBr} \\ \text{R} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COBr} \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_2} \text{R} \cdot \text{CHBr} \cdot \text{COBr}, \text{ etc.} \end{array}$$

The second  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atom may be replaced by chlorine or bromine by using excess of the halogen, but whereas bromination ceases when both  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms have been replaced, chlorination proceeds further in the chain (see above). Since the H.V.Z. reaction with bromine is specific for  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms, it can be used to detect the presence of  $\alpha$ -hydrogen in an acid; e.g., trimethylacetic acid does not undergo the H.V.Z. reaction with bromine.

The H.V.Z. reaction with bromine is applicable to dibasic and polybasic acids, all the  $\alpha$ -positions being substituted if sufficient bromine is used.

Sulphuryl chloride, in the presence of a small amount of iodine, chlorinates aliphatic acids in the  $\alpha$ -position; but in the presence of organic peroxides,

the  $\alpha$ -,  $\beta$ -,  $\gamma$ -, etc., positions are substituted.

Another convenient method of preparing  $\alpha$ -bromo-acids is by brominating an alkyl-malonic acid and heating the bromo-acid, whereupon it is decarboxylated to the monobasic acid:

$$\text{R-CH(CO}_2\text{H)}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_9} \text{R-CBr(CO}_2\text{H)}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \text{R-CHBr-CO}_2\text{H} + \text{CO}_2$$

 $\beta$ -Halogeno-acids may be prepared by treating an  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated acid with halogen acid; e.g., acrylic acid forms  $\beta$ -bromopropionic acid when treated with hydrogen bromide in acetic acid solution:

$$CH_2 = CH \cdot CO_2H + HBr \longrightarrow CH_2Br \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$$

This addition takes place contrary to Markownikoff's rule, and may be

explained by the inductive effect of the carboxyl group (see p. 282).

 $\beta$ -Halogeno-acids may also be prepared by treating an  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated aldehyde with halogen acid, and oxidising the  $\beta$ -chloroaldehyde produced; e.g., acraldehyde gives  $\beta$ -chloropropionic acid when treated with concentrated hydrochloric acid, and the product then oxidised with concentrated nitric acid:

$$CH_2 = CH \cdot CHO + HCl \longrightarrow CH_2Cl \cdot CH_2 \cdot CHO \xrightarrow{[O]} CH_2Cl \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \quad (60-65\%)$$

The addition of all the halogen acids to  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compounds takes place very readily, and in a direction contrary to Markownikoff's rule.

When an olefin cyanohydrin is refluxed with 40 per cent. hydrobromic acid, the  $\beta$ -bromoacid is obtained; e.g., ethylene cyanohydrin gives  $\beta$ -bromopropionic acid:

$$\label{eq:ch2} \text{CH}_2\text{(OH)-CH}_2\text{-CN} + 2\text{HBr} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{Br-CH}_2\text{-CO}_2\text{H} + \underset{(82-83\%)}{\text{NH}_4\text{Br}}$$

Alternatively, when an olefin halohydrin is oxidised with concentrated nitric acid, the halogeno-acid is produced; e.g., trimethylene chlorohydrin gives β-chloropropionic acid:

$$CH_2Cl \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{[O]} CH_2Cl \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \quad (78-79\%)$$

 $\gamma$ -Halogeno-acids may be prepared by the addition of halogen acid to a  $\beta\gamma$ -unsaturated acid; the addition occurs contrary to Markownikoff's rule (cf. above); e.g., pent-3-enoic acid gives  $\gamma$ -bromo-n-valeric acid when treated with hydrobromic acid:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH} = \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{HBr} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CHBr}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$$

 $\gamma$ -Halogeno-acids may also be prepared by heating a  $\gamma$ -hydroxyacid with concentrated halogen acid solution; e.g.,  $\gamma$ -hydroxybutyric acid gives  $\gamma$ -chlorobutyric acid when treated with concentrated hydrochloric acid:

$$CH_2OH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H + HCl \longrightarrow CH_2Cl \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H + H_2O$$

δ-Halogeno-acids, etc., are prepared by methods which are usually specific for the particular acid.

Properties of the halogeno-acids. The α-halogeno-acids undergo most of the reactions of the alkyl halides, but the halogen atom in the acid is far more reactive than that in the alkyl halide; the enhanced reactivity is due to the adjacent carbonyl group. The reactions of the carboxyl group are unchanged. β-, γ- and δ-Halogeno-acids undergo some of the reactions of the alkyl halides, but tend to eliminate a molecule of hydrogen halide to form an unsaturated acid or a lactone (p. 396). They do not form Grignard reagents, but the halogeno-acid esters react with Grignard reagents to form halogen-substituted tertiary alcohols. The halogeno-acids are reduced to the corresponding fatty acids by sodium amalgam, but the reduction of acids of the type RR'CCl·CO<sub>2</sub>H with lithium aluminium hydride gives chlorohydrins (I), alcohols (II), aldehydes (III) and glycols (IV).

The amount of each depends on the nature of R and R', e.g., very little glycol is obtained unless at least one of these radicals is phenyl (Eliel et al., 1956).

The behaviour of an halogeno-acid with alkali depends on the position

of the halogen atom relative to the carboxyl group.

(a)  $\alpha$ -Halogeno-acids are converted into the corresponding  $\alpha$ -hydroxy-acid:

$$\text{R-CHX-CO}_2\text{H} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \text{R-CH(OH)-CO}_2\text{H}$$

On the other hand, if the  $\alpha$ -halogeno-acid ester is heated with a tertiary amine, the  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated acid ester is formed by the elimination of a molecule of hydrogen halide; e.g., ethyl  $\alpha$ -bromobutyrate gives ethyl crotonate when heated with dimethylaniline,  $C_6H_5\cdot N(CH_3)_2$ :

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CHBr}\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{-\text{HBr}} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH} = \text{CH}\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$$

(b) β-Halogeno-acids are converted into the corresponding β-hydroxyacid, which, on continued reflux with alkali, eliminates a molecule of water to form the αβ-unsaturated acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CHBr-CH}_2\text{-CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \text{R-CH(OH)-CH}_2\text{-CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \\ & \text{R-CH=-CH-CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$$

(c)  $\gamma$ - and  $\delta$ -Halogeno-acids are converted into lactones; e.g.,  $\gamma$ -chloro-butyric acid gives  $\gamma$ -butyrolactone:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{Cl-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow[-\text{Hcl}]{\text{NaOH}} \text{CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-CO} \end{array}$$

(d) ε-Halogeno-acids, etc., give the corresponding hydroxyacid; e.g., ε-bromocaproic acid gives ε-hydroxycaproic acid:

$$\text{CH}_2\text{Br-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \text{CH}_2\text{OH-CH}_2\text{$$

The most characteristic reaction of the α-halogeno-acid esters is the

Reformatsky reaction (p. 363).

The halogeno-acids are all stronger acids than the parent acid (see Table III, p. 180), and for a group of isomeric acids, the further the halogen is removed from the carboxyl group the weaker is the acid. The increase in acid strength may be explained by the high electron-affinity of the

halogen atom which exerts a strong inductive effect, thereby facilitating the release of proton from the carboxyl group.

The larger the number of halogen atoms on the α-carbon atom, the stronger is the inductive effect, and consequently the stronger is the acid; also, the further removed the halogen atom is from the carboxyl group, the weaker is the inductive effect at the carboxyl group, and consequently the weaker is the acid. In the same way, since an alkyl group is electron-repelling, increasing their number on the  $\alpha$ -carbon atom should decrease the strength of the acid since release of the proton will be hindered (see Table III). This explanation, based on the purely inductive effect through the chain of atoms, appears to be too simple. Work by Grob et al. (1955) has led them to conclude that the direct (or field) effect (p. 16) is the decisive factor in determining the strengths of the carboxylic acids.

Chloroacetic acid, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl·CO<sub>2</sub>H, may be prepared by the H.V.Z. reaction; the reaction can be carried out in direct sunlight, and in the absence of phosphorus. Chloroacetic acid is prepared industrially: (i) by agitating trichloroethylene with 90 per cent. sulphuric acid:

$$\text{CHCl} = \text{CCl}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_5\text{SO}_4} \text{CH}_2\text{Cl} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} + 2\text{HCl}$$

(ii) By the oxidation of ethylene chlorohydrin with nitric acid:

$$CH_2Cl\cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{HNO_3} CH_2Cl\cdot CO_2H$$
 (84%)

Chloroacetic acid is a deliquescent solid, m.p. 61°, soluble in water and ethanol. It finds many uses in organic syntheses, and is used in the industrial preparation of indigotin (q.v.).

Ethyl chloroacetate is converted into chloroacetamide when shaken with

aqueous ammonia:

$$\mathrm{CH_{2}Cl\text{-}COOC_{2}H_{5} + NH_{3} \longrightarrow CH_{2}Cl\text{-}CO\text{-}NH_{2} + C_{2}H_{5}OH} \quad \text{(78-84\%)}$$

Dichloroacetic acid, CHCl2·CO2H, may be prepared in the laboratory and industrially by adding calcium carbonate to a warm aqueous solution of chloral hydrate, then adding an aqueous solution of sodium cyanide, and finally heating the mixture:

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm 2CCl_3 \cdot CH(OH)_2 + 2CaCO_3} \xrightarrow{\rm NacN} ({\rm CHCl_2 \cdot CO_2})_2{\rm Ca} + 2{\rm CO_2} + {\rm CaCl_2} + 2{\rm H_2O} \\ \xrightarrow{\rm HCl} {\rm CHCl_2 \cdot CO_2H} \quad (88-92\%) \end{array}$$

The action of the sodium cyanide is not understood.

Dichloroacetic acid is a liquid, b.p. 194°. When carefully hydrolysed with dilute alkali, it gives glyoxylic acid (q.v.):

$$CHCl_2 \cdot CO_2H + H_2O \xrightarrow{NaOH} CHO \cdot CO_2H + 2HCl$$

Vigorous hydrolysis with concentrated alkali gives oxalate and glycollate, due to the glyoxylic acid undergoing the Cannizzaro reaction (p. 160):

$$_2$$
CHO·CO<sub>2</sub>H +  $_3$ NaOH  $\longrightarrow$  (CO<sub>2</sub>Na)<sub>2</sub> + CH<sub>2</sub>(OH)·CO<sub>2</sub>Na +  $_2$ H<sub>2</sub>O

Trichloroacetic acid, CCl<sub>3</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, is best prepared by oxidising chloral hydrate with concentrated nitric acid:

$$CCl_3 \cdot CH(OH)_2 + [O] \xrightarrow{HNO_3} CCl_3 \cdot CO_2H + H_2O$$

Trichloroacetic acid is a deliquescent solid, m.p. 58°, and is one of the

strongest organic acids.

The presence of three chlorine atoms on a carbon atom adjacent to a carbonyl group causes the C-C bond to break very easily. Thus when trichloroacetic acid is boiled with dilute sodium hydroxide, or even water, chloroform is obtained:

$$CCl_3 \cdot CO_2 H \longrightarrow CHCl_3 + CO_2$$

The ready fission of the C-Cl bond may be attributed to the strong inductive effect of the chlorine atoms, and a possible mechanism is:

$$Cl \xrightarrow{C} CO_2 \xrightarrow{} CO_2 + CCl_3 \xrightarrow{H^+} CHCl_3$$

$$\downarrow Cl$$

When boiled with concentrated alkali, formates are produced, due to the hydrolysis of the chloroform which is formed first (see p. 117).

Trifluoroacetic acid, CF<sub>3</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, is conveniently prepared by the oxidation of p-trifluoromethyltoluidine with chromic acid:

$$\text{CF}_3 \hspace{-2pt} \hspace{-2pt} \longrightarrow \text{NH}_2 \xrightarrow{[O]} \text{CF}_3 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H}$$

Trifluoroacetic acid is a liquid that fumes in the air, and is one of the strongest organic acids known. It does not form fluoroform when heated with alkali, and is reduced to trifluoroacetaldehyde by lithium aluminium hydride. Peroxytrifluoroacetic acid, CF<sub>3</sub>·CO<sub>3</sub>H, is a useful oxidising agent (Emmons, 1954; cf. peracetic acid).

Fluoroacetic acid may be prepared by heating a mixture of carbon mon-

oxide, hydrogen fluoride and formaldehyde under pressure.

$$CO + HF + H \cdot CHO \longrightarrow CH_2F \cdot CO_2H$$

The simplest chloro-acid would be chloroformic acid, Cl-CO<sub>2</sub>H, but it is unknown; chlorination of formic acid results in the formation of hydrogen chloride and carbon dioxide:

$$\text{H} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{Cl}_2} 2 \text{HCl} + \text{CO}_2$$

On the other hand, esters of chloroformic acid are known, and they may be prepared by the action of carbonyl chloride on an alcohol in the cold, e.g., ethyl chloroformate from carbonyl chloride and ethanol:

$$COCl_2 + C_2H_5OH \longrightarrow Cl \cdot COOC_2H_5 + HCl$$

#### **OUESTIONS**

1. Write out the structures and the names of the isomeric acids having the molecular

formula C6H12O2.

2. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when AcOH is treated with: (a) EtOH, (b) PCl<sub>3</sub>, (c) PCl<sub>5</sub>, (d) SOCl<sub>2</sub>, (e) Br<sub>2</sub>, (f) SO<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, (g) KMnO<sub>4</sub>, (h) Hl/red P, (i) LiAlH<sub>4</sub>, (j) H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>, (k) CH<sub>2</sub>N<sub>2</sub>, (l) C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>4</sub>, (m) HN<sub>3</sub>, (n) AcCl.

3. How would you determine the structures of n- and isobutyric acids?

4. Suggest a synthesis of each of the valeric acids, starting with compounds con-

taining not more than three carbon atoms.

5. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when EtOAc, AcCl and Ac<sub>2</sub>O, respectively, are treated with:— (a) H<sub>2</sub>O, (b) NaOH, (c) HCl, (d) nascent hydrogen, (e) molecular hydrogen, (f) NH<sub>3</sub>, (g) n-BuOH, (h) PCl<sub>5</sub>, (i) Br<sub>2</sub>, (j) NaNH<sub>2</sub>, (k) Na, (l) NH<sub>2</sub>\*OH, (m) N<sub>2</sub>H<sub>4</sub>, (o) benzene, (p) Et<sub>2</sub>O, (q) isobutene.

6. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when

CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·NH<sub>2</sub> is treated with:—(a) NaOH, (b) HCl, (c) Na, (d) nascent hydrogen, (e) molecular hydrogen, (f) P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>, (g) PCl<sub>5</sub>, (h) HNO<sub>2</sub>, (i) BF<sub>3</sub>, (j) Br<sub>2</sub>/KOH.

7. Define and give examples of:—(a) acetylation, (b) esterification, (c) saponification, (d) ammonolysis, (e) alcoholysis, (f) acidolysis, (g) acyloin condensation, (h) alkylation, (i) Hofmann degradation, (j) Curtius reaction, (h) Lossen rearrangement, (l) H.V.Z. reaction reaction, (m) Rosenmund's reduction.

8. Describe the industrial preparations of:—(a) HCO<sub>2</sub>H, (b) AcOH, (c) EtOAc, (d) AcCl, (e) Ac<sub>2</sub>O, (f) Me<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, (g) Et<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, (h) CH<sub>2</sub>Cl·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (i) CHCl<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (j) CCl<sub>3</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H.

9. Show by means of equations how you would convert acetic acid into propionic

acid and vice-versa.

10. Show how you would distinguish between:—(a) CH2Cl·CO2H, CH3·COCl and CH2Cl·COCl; (b) paraffin, olefin, alkyl halide, alcohol, ether, carboxylic acid, carboxylic ester, Ac<sub>2</sub>O, AcCl and AcNH<sub>2</sub>.

11. Discuss the mechanism of:—(a) esterification and hydrolysis, (b) the Hofmann, Curtius and Lossen rearrangements, (c) ammonolysis of esters and acid chlorides, (d)

hydrolysis of cyanides and amides.

12. Discuss the methods of preparation and the properties of the halogeno-acids.

#### READING REFERENCES

Greenspan, Oxidation Reactions with Aliphatic Peracids, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1947, 39, 847.
Bell, The Use of the Terms "Acid" and "Base", Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1947,

I, 113. Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. IV (1948), Ch. 4. Acyloins. Richards and Thomson, Spectroscopic Studies of the Amide Linkage, J.C.S., 1947, 1248. Vol. III (1946). Organic Reactions, Wiley.

(i) Ch. 7. (ii) Ch. 8. The Hofmann Reaction. The Schmidt Reaction. (iii) Ch. 9. The Curtius Reaction.

Sidgwick, The Organic Chemistry of Nitrogen, Oxford Press. (Revised Edition by Taylor and Baker, 1937.)

Ch. I. Esters of Nitrous and Nitric Acids.

Ch. V. Amides, etc.

Brown, The Mechanism of Thermal Decarboxylation, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.),

1951, 5, 131.
Sonntag, The Reactions of Aliphatic Acid Chlorides, Chem. Reviews, 1953, 52, 237. Davies and Kenyon, Alkyl-Oxygen Heterolysis in Carboxylic Esters and Related

Compounds, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1955, 9, 203.
Gunstone, Recent Developments in the Preparation of Natural and Synthetic Straight-

Chain Fatty Acids, *ibid.*, 1953, 7, 175. Gensler, Recent Developments in the Synthesis of Fatty Acids, *Chem. Reviews*, 1957, 57, 191.

Bender, Mechanisms of Catalysis of Nucleophilic Reactions of Carboxylic Acid Derivatives, Chem. Reviews, 1960, 60, 53.

#### CHAPTER X

#### TAUTOMERISM

Acetoacetic ester or ethyl acetoacetate (E.A.A.) is the ethyl ester of acetoacetic acid,  $CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$ , a β-ketonic acid. Acetoacetic ester was first discovered by Geuther (1863), who prepared it by the action of sodium on ethyl acetate, and suggested the formula,  $CH_3 \cdot C(OH) \cdot CH \cdot CO_2C_2H_5$  (β-hydroxycrotonic ester). In 1865, Frankland and Duppa, who, independently of Geuther, also prepared acetoacetic ester by the action of sodium on ethyl acetate, proposed the formula  $CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5$  (β-ketobutyric ester). These two formulæ immediately gave rise to two schools of thought, one upholding the Geuther formula, and the other the Frankland–Duppa formula, each school bringing forward evidence to prove its own claim, e.g.,

Evidence in favour of the Geuther formula (reactions of an unsaturated alcohol). (i) When acetoacetic ester is treated with sodium, hydrogen is evolved and the sodium derivative is formed. This indicates the presence

of a hydroxyl group.

(ii) When acetoacetic ester is treated with an ethanolic solution of bromine, the colour of the latter is immediately discharged. This indicates the presence of an olefinic double bond.

(iii) When acetoacetic ester is treated with ferric chloride, a reddishviolet colour is produced. This is characteristic of compounds containing

the group -C(OH):C < (cf. phenols).

Evidence in favour of the Frankland-Duppa formula (reactions of a ketone).

(i) Acetoacetic ester forms a bisulphite compound with sodium hydrogen sulphite.

(ii) Acetoacetic ester forms a cyanohydrin with hydrogen cyanide.(iii) Acetoacetic ester forms a phenylhydrazone with phenylhydrazine.

Thus the remarkable position arose where it was possible to show that a given compound had two different formulæ, each of which was based on a number of particular reactions. The controversy continued until about 1910, when chemists were coming to the conclusion that both formulæ were correct, and that the two compounds existed together in equilibrium in solution (or in the liquid state):

 $\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 & \Longrightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} = \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 \end{array}$ 

When a reagent which reacts with ketones is added to acetoacetic ester, the ketone form is removed. This upsets the equilibrium, and in order to restore the equilibrium mixture, the hydroxy-form of acetoacetic ester changes into the ketone form. Thus, provided sufficient reagent is added, acetoacetic ester reacts completely as the ketone form. Similarly, when a reagent which reacts with olefins or with hydroxy-compounds is added in sufficient quantity, acetoacetic ester reacts completely as the hydroxy-form.

The problem was finally settled by Knorr (1911), who succeeded in isolating both forms. He cooled a solution of acetoacetic ester in light petrol to  $-78^{\circ}$ , and obtained crystals which melted at  $-39^{\circ}$ . This substance gave no coloration with ferric chloride and did not combine with bromine, and was therefore the pure ketone form corresponding to the Frankland–Duppa formula. Knorr then suspended the sodium derivative of acetoacetic ester in light petrol cooled to  $-78^{\circ}$ , and treated this suspension with just enough hydrogen chloride to decompose the sodium salt. He now obtained

a product which did not crystallise, but set to a glassy solid when cooled. This substance gave an intense coloration with ferric chloride, and was therefore the pure hydroxy-form corresponding to the Geuther formula.

Thus acetoacetic ester is a substance that does the duty of two structural isomers, each isomer being capable of changing rapidly into the other when the equilibrium is disturbed, e.g., by the addition of certain reagents. This is a case of dynamic isomerism, and the name tautomerism (Greek: same parts) was given to this phenomenon by Laar (1885). The two forms are known as tautomers or tautomerides, the ketone isomer being called the keto form, and the hydroxy isomer the enol form. Hence this type of tautomerism is known as keto-enol tautomerism. (In the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature the suffix -en indicates the presence of a double bond, and the suffix -ol, a hydroxyl group. The word enol is a combination of these suffixes and indicates the structure of this form.)

A simplified version for the occurrence of tautomerism is as follows. Every structure has a certain amount of internal energy, and when dealing with two structural isomers, a definite amount of energy must be supplied in order to overcome the energy of transformation. If this amount of energy is small, then each isomer will change *spontaneously* into the other, resulting in an equilibrium mixture of the two forms. Calculations of the energy content of keto and enol tautomers on the basis of bond energies, show that the keto form is the more stable one. Thus, when the equilibrium mixture contains relatively large amounts of the enol form, then there must be present some stabilising factor for the enol form, e.g., hydrogen bonding and resonance (see p. 223).

When one tautomer is more stable than the other under ordinary conditions, the former is known as the *stable* form, and the latter as the *labile* form. In practice, it is generally difficult to say which is the labile form, since very often a slight change in the conditions, *e.g.*, temperature, solvent, shifts the equilibrium from keto to enol or vice-versa (see below). Tautomerism in the solid state is rare, and hence, in the solid state, one or other tautomer is normally stable, but in the liquid or gaseous state, or in solution,

the two forms usually exist as an equilibrium mixture.

It has been found that the enol form is more volatile than the keto, and that the change from enol to keto is extremely sensitive to catalysts. Meyer et al. (1920, 1921) found that traces of basic compounds were very effective catalysts. Thus they found that soft glass vessels were unsuitable for the separation of the keto and enol forms, since, when fractionated, the more volatile enol form rapidly changed into the original keto-enol mixture under the catalytic influence of the walls of the containing vessel. Meyer, however, succeeded in separating the enol form from the keto by carrying out the fractional distillation under reduced pressure in silica apparatus which had been thoroughly cleaned (freed from dust, moisture, etc.) Distillation under these conditions is known as aseptic distillation.

The greater volatility of the enol form is unexpected in view of the fact that alcohols are less volatile than ketones containing the same number of carbon atoms. This anomalous CH<sub>3</sub>—C

the same number of carbon atoms. This anomalous behaviour of the enol form may be explained by assuming that chelation takes place through hydrogen bonding. This is supported by various facts, e.g., (i) the enol form is more soluble in cyclohexane, and less soluble in water, than the keto form. The presence of the hydroxyl group should have made the enol form less

soluble in cyclohexane, and more soluble in water, than the keto (cf. alcohols). (ii) The formation of the hydrogen bond intramolecularly prevents the formation of the hydrogen bond intermolecularly, i.e., prevents association which would have raised the boiling point of the enol form.

The vibrational spectrum of liquid ethyl acetoacetate shows intermolecular bonding between the enol and keto forms. In solvents such as carbon tetrachloride, and in dilute solution, intramolecular hydrogen bonding occurs in the enolic form, and the tautomeric equilibrium is displaced in the direction of the enol form (Shigorin, 1950).

In tautomerism in general there may be an equilibrium between two or more forms. One may predominate, or all may be present to about the same extent, the concentration of each form depending on the temperature and the solvent (if in solution). Although it may not be possible to separate tautomers owing to the ease and rapidity of their interconversion or, as in many cases, due to one form being almost completely absent, the presence of more than one compound may be shown by special properties of each isomer. The refractive index of the mixture may be observed directly, and the value obtained compared with those calculated for the various tautomeric structures. Spectral analysis may show the presence of more than one substance, since each structure will have its own characteristic absorption bands. Furthermore, the intensities of the bands change as the temperature changes, thus showing the displacement of the equilibrium. The Raman effect may also be used to show the presence of tautomers; e.g., the equilibrium mixture of acetoacetic esters shows Raman shifts due to both the C=C and C=O groups. Experiments using deuterium exchange reactions have also shown the presence of keto-enol mixtures, e.g., Klar (1934) showed that hydrogen is exchanged slowly by deuterium when acetaldehyde is dissolved in D2O. Since the C-H bond in paraffins is stable under these conditions, the inference is that a hydroxyl group is present in acetaldehyde, i.e., some enol form is present. Acetone was found to undergo this exchange more rapidly.

The methods used for the quantitative estimation of each form in any tautomeric equilibrium mixture, of which the keto-enol system is only one example, fall into two distinct groups, physical and chemical. Obviously, whatever the method used, it should be one that does not disturb the

equilibrium of the mixture during the estimation.

**Physical methods.** Physical methods do not disturb the equilibrium, for they do not depend on the removal of one form, and they should therefore be used wherever possible.

(i) The refractive index of the equilibrium mixture is determined experimentally. The refractive indices of both the keto and enol forms are calculated (from a table of atomic refractions), and from these figures it is then possible to calculate the amount of each form present in the equilibrium mixture. In some cases the refractive index of each form may be obtained directly by isolating it, e.g., acetoacetic ester.

(ii) If one form is an electrolyte, the electrical conductivity of the mixture is determined experimentally, and the amount of this form present may be

calculated from the results, e.g., nitromethane (p. 304).

(iii) The composition of the equilibrium mixture may be determined by means of optical rotation measurements (cf. mutarotation, p. 451).

(iv) Joshi and Tuli (1951) have introduced a new physical constant which they have named the *refrachor*, and have used it to determine the percentage of tautomers in an equilibrium mixture, e.g., they found that ethyl acetoacetate contains 7.7% enol, and acetylacetone 72.4% enol.

(v) Jarrett et al. (1953) have determined keto-enol equilibria in two β-diketones

by measurement of proton resonance.

Chemical methods. Since chemical methods cause the removal of one form, it is necessary to use a reagent that reacts with this form faster than

the rate of interconversion of the tautomers. Meyer (1911, 1912) found that in the case of keto-enol tautomerism, bromine reacts instantaneously with the enol form, and so slowly with the keto form in comparison with the enol, that the keto reaction may be ignored. Meyer introduced two procedures, the *direct* and the *indirect* method. In the *direct* method a weighed sample of the keto-enol mixture dissolved in ethanol is *rapidly* titrated with a dilute ethanolic solution of bromine at 0° (to slow down the interconversion of the tautomers). The first appearance of excess bromine indicates the end point (see also the bromination of acetone, p. 154).

The titration must be carried out rapidly; otherwise the keto form changes into the enol during the time taken for the titration. In any case, it has been found impossible to carry out the titration sufficiently rapidly to avoid the conversion of some keto into enol, and so this method always

results in too high a value for the enol form.

More reliable results may be obtained by the *indirect* method. An *excess* of dilute ethanolic solution of bromine is added rapidly to the weighed sample dissolved in ethanol, and then an excess of 2-naphthol dissolved in ethanol is added *immediately*. By this means, the excess bromine is removed almost instantaneously, and so the keto-enol equilibrium is not given time to be disturbed. Potassium iodide solution and hydrochloric acid are now added, and the liberated iodine is titrated with standard thiosulphate:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{KI} + \text{HCl} \longrightarrow \text{KCl} + \text{HI} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CHBr} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 + \text{KI} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CHI} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 + \text{KBr} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CHI} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 + \text{HI} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 + \text{I}_2 \end{array}$$

Cooper and Barnes (1938) have suggested an improved indirect method using methanol instead of ethanol, and di-isobutene instead of 2-naphthol (di-isobutene is a mixture of 2:4:4-trimethylpent-1-ene and 2:4:4-trimethylpent-2-ene).

Schwarzenbach and Wittwer (1947) have introduced a new technique, the *flow-method*, for the estimation of the enol content. The solution of the keto-enol mixture and an acidified bromide-bromate solution are simultaneously mixed and diluted in a mixing chamber, and the mixture made to flow past a platinum electrode. The relative amounts of the two solutions are adjusted so that the potential measured at the platinum electrode shows a sharp rise—this corresponds to the end-point in the titration of the enol form by the bromine. This method gives good results of enol contents as low as  $10^{-5}$  per cent.; e.g., the enol content of acetone in aqueous solution was found to be  $2.5 \times 10^{-4}$  per cent.

TABLE IV

Compound		Per cent. enol (in ethanol)
CH <sub>3</sub> ·CO·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CO <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>3</sub>		4.8
CH <sub>3</sub> ·CO·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CO <sub>2</sub> C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub>		7.5
CH3·CO·CH2·CO·CH3		76
CH, CO·CH(CH3)·CO·CH3 .		31
C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> ·CO·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CO·C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub>		96
$CH_{a}(CO_{a}C_{a}H_{a})_{a}$		trace
Aldehydes of type R.CH. CHO		trace
Ketones of type R·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CO·CH <sub>2</sub> ·R		trace

The enol content in keto-enol mixtures (in dipropyl ether) has been determined by means of lithium aluminium hydride; the hydrogen liberated is estimated (Höfling et al., 1952). The values obtained are about 10 per cent. higher than those obtained by the bromine titration or by physical methods.

Enolisation. The phenomenon of enolisation is exhibited by compounds containing either a methylene group,  ${}^{\circ}\text{CH}_2$ , or a methyne group,  ${}^{\circ}\text{CH}_{-}$ , adjacent to a carbonyl group. The presence of one carbonyl group does not always give rise to an appreciable amount of enol form, e.g., acetaldehyde, acetone (see Table IV, above). If the compound contains a methylene or methyne group attached to two carbonyl groups the percentage of enol form is usually high, e.g., acetylacetone,  $\text{CH}_3\text{-CO}\text{-CH}_2\text{-CO}\text{-CH}_3$ . When a methyne group is attached to three carbonyl groups, the compound may exist almost completely as the enol form, e.g., triacetylmethane,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{-CO})_3\text{CH}$ .

When the methylene or methyne group is attached to two or three carbonyl groups, the hydrogen atom might migrate equally well to one or other carbonyl group. This is not found to be so in practice for unsymmetrical compounds, one enol form being present exclusively, or largely predominating; e.g., in acetoacetic ester the hydrogen atom migrates exclusively to the acetyl carbonyl group (see also below). When two or more enol forms are theoretically possible, ozonolysis may be used to ascertain the structure of the form present; e.g., in hexane-2:4-dione, CH<sub>3</sub>\*CO·CH<sub>2</sub>\*CO·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>3</sub>,

the two possible enols are:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} & \text{OH} \\ \vdash \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} = \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3 & \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH} = \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{(II)} & \text{(II)} \end{array}$$

Ozonolysis of I will give CH<sub>3</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H and CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO·CHO; II will give CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·CHO and CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H. Identification of these compounds will

decide whether the enol is I or II, or both.

The type of tautomerism discussed above is known as the keto-enol triad system. In this system a hydrogen atom migrates from atom I (oxygen) to atom 3 (carbon):

$$>$$
cH $-c=0$  $\Longrightarrow>c=c-0$ H

Enols resemble phenols in a number of ways; e.g., both form soluble sodium salts; both give characteristic colorations with ferric chloride; and both couple with diazonium salts.

The keto-enol type of tautomerism is only one example of a triad system. The triad system is the most important class of tautomeric systems, and the following, which are exemplified in the text, are the commonest:

(i) Three-carbon systems:

$$CH-C=C \iff C=C-CH$$

(ii) Nitro-acinitro (pseudonitro) system:

(iii) Nitroso-oximino system:

(iv) Amidine system:

$$NH-C=N \Longrightarrow N=C-NH$$

(v) Amido-imidol system:

$$NH-C=O \Longrightarrow N=C-OH$$

(vi) Azo-hydrazone system:

(vii) Diazo-amino (triazen) system:

$$N=N-NH \Longrightarrow NH-N=N$$

(viii) Diazo-nitrosamine system:

$$Ar-N=N\cdot OH \Longrightarrow Ar-NH-N=O$$

In addition to the "open" systems of tautomerism, there are also, e.g., ringchain tautomerism (see, e.g., aldol, p. 237; carbohydrates, p. 451, succinyl

chloride, p. 377); and valence tautomerism (see p. 485).

Modern theories of tautomerism. Ingold (1927) suggested the name cationotropy for all those cases of tautomerism which involve the separation of a cation; and the name anionotropy for those cases which involve the separation of an anion. Lowry (1923) suggested the name prototropy for those cases in which a proton separates, and called such systems prototropic systems. Using Ingold's generalised classification of tautomeric systems, it can be seen that prototropy is a special case of cationotropy. Braude and Jones (1944) have proposed the term oxotropy for anionotropic rearrangements involving only the migration of a hydroxyl group (see allylic rearrangement, p. 272).

Laar (1885) attempted to account for keto-enol tautomerism by postulating that the hydrogen atom occupied a mean position with respect to the final positions it would occupy in the keto and enol forms, and that by a lateral movement in either direction the hydrogen atom formed the keto or enol form. Baly

and Desch (1904) extended this theory into the oscillation theory (isorropesis), according to which the hydrogen atom oscillated continuously between the two positions as shown. This theory soon became untenable, since it did not agree

with many of the experimental observations (see below).

Jacobson (1887) objected to the use of the word tautomerism to describe the above phenomenon because it involved the view that tautomers have no definite structure, but are continually changing. Jacobson thought that both forms were present, and that the change from one into the other was caused by the presence of certain reagents. He therefore proposed the name desmotropy or desmotropism (Greek: change of bonds). Hantzsch and Hermann (1887) suggested that both the terms tautomerism and desmotropism should be used, the former to denote that a compound exhibited a dual nature, and the latter to indicate those cases of tautomerism where the two forms exist in different physical forms (i.e., those cases of tautomerism in which both forms have been isolated).

Knorr (1896) introduced the term allelotropic mixture for equilibrium mixtures whose composition varied with changes in temperature, i.e., an allelotropic mixture is a tautomeric mixture in the liquid state or in solution; a mixture of

solid tautomers is not an allelotropic mixture.

The term pseudomerism has also been used for those cases of tautomerism in which only one form, the keto or enol, may be shown to be present.

The actual steps involved in keto-enol tautomerism are still the subject of much discussion. According to Hughes and Ingold, base-catalysed enolisation of a ketone proceeds through an enolate anion I whose formation is controlled largely by the inductive effects of the alkyl groups.

$$B + R_2CH \cdot CO \cdot R \longrightarrow BH^+ + R_2C = C \cdot R$$
(I)

Acid-catalysed enolisation involves the removal of a proton from the con-Jugate acid of the ketone, II, and this process is dependent mainly on the hyperconjugation (p. 270) by the alkyl groups in the transition state for the formation of the carbon-carbon double bond.

Evidence for these mechanisms is that alkyl groups depress base-catalysed reaction rates.

The mechanisms described above are step-wise mechanisms, and they appear to operate in certain cases. On the other hand, there is evidence that in other cases, acid and base catalysis of enolisation take place by a concerted or push-pull mechanism, i.e., the molecule undergoing change is attacked simultaneously at two places. Thus the enolisation of, e.g., acetone, proceeds by the simultaneous removal of a proton from an  $\alpha$ -carbon and the addition of a proton to the oxygen of the carbonyl group. This may be represented as follows (B is a general base, and HA is a general acid):

In this type of mechanism, the solvent water molecules are believed to be involved, one acting as a proton acceptor and the other as a proton donor. Furthermore, the above mechanism is termolecular, and Swain (1950) has presented evidence to show that both the acid- and base-catalysed enolisation of acetone are termolecular reactions. Emmons et al. (1956) have obtained evidence supporting Swain's termolecular mechanism for ketone

enolisation, but propose that the transition state for both acid- and base-catalysed enolisation may be re-

R•CH<sub>2</sub>

R•CH<sub>2</sub>

R•CH<sub>2</sub>

Rightarrow (III)

Rightarrow (III)

Down Had presented by III.

Under these conditions in either acid- or base-catalysed reactions, the transition state will be very close to the enol and hence will be stabilised by hyperconjugation. In the acid-catalysed reaction, bond b is relatively tight and bond a is relatively loose. Hence in acid-catalysed enolisation, steric hindrance around bond a catalysed enolisation, steric hindrance around bond a light and bond a light an

is not observed in most cases, and hyperconjugation is therefore a dominating factor in the enolisation of a ketone. In the base-catalysed reaction, bond a is relatively tight and bond b is relatively loose. Under these conditions a steric factor becomes important and is probably the reason why alkyl groups depress base-catalysed reaction rates.

The tremendous increase in speed by acid and base catalysts is well illustrated by the fact that the pure keto and enol forms of ethyl acetoacetate change very slowly into the equilibrium mixture (several weeks), whereas the latter is obtained rapidly (several minutes) by the addition of acid or base catalysts (Lowry et al., 1924).

It has been shown that in keto-enol equilibrium mixtures, the enol form reacts extremely rapidly with halogens, is acidic and produces an anion which is reactive both at the oxygen and  $\alpha$ -carbon (to the hydroxyl group).

It has been pointed out above (see also Table IV, p. 219) that in keto-enol tautomerism the enol content of the equilibrium mixture varies from compound to compound; but the reason for this is still an open question. It appears to be quite certain that the solvent plays a part, but the nature of the other factors is uncertain. Some authors believe that resonance and hydrogen bonding are involved; e.g., it has been suggested that the enol form of acetylacetone is stabilised by chelation through hydrogen bonding:

Hydrogen bond formation is not possible in acetaldehyde, acetone, etc., and therefore the enol forms of these compounds cannot be stabilised this way.

Now let us consider the case of ethyl acetoacetate:

$$\begin{array}{c} O & O & O \\ & & O \\ CH_3 \cdot C - CH_2 - C - OC_2H_5 \\ & & CH_3 \cdot C = CH - C - OC_2H_5 \end{array}$$

The enol form is stabilised by chelation; but ethyl acetoacetate contains 54 per cent. enol form in the vapour state, whereas acetylacetone contains 92 per cent. If chelation were the only factor involved, one might have expected that the enol content of the two compounds would have been about the same. A possible explanation for this difference may be due to the resonating structure of the carbethoxy group:

$$\begin{array}{c} O \\ \parallel \\ -C - OC_2H_5 \longleftrightarrow -C \stackrel{+}{=} OC_2H_5 \end{array}$$

This effect will tend to stabilise the keto form, thereby reducing the tendency to enolise. The large part played by the resonance effect of the carbethoxy group in reducing the enol content may be inferred by considering ethyl malonate. This compound contains only a trace of the enol form. Its structure is IV, and its enol structure will be V.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} & O & O & O \\ \hline C_2H_5O-C-CH_2-C-OC_2H_5 & C_2H_5O-C=CH-C-OC_2H_5 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

If both carbethoxy groups are affected by resonance, the keto form will be

stabilised, i.e., there will be very little tendency to enolise.

It was pointed out above that the nature of the solvent also affects the position of equilibrium in keto-enol tautomerism. If we assume (as we have above) that the enol form is, where possible, stabilised by chelation, then solvents that prevent chelation will reduce the enol content. Thus hydroxylic solvents such as water, methanol, ethanol, acetic acid, etc., in which the hydrogen atom of the hydroxyl group can form a hydrogen bond with the oxygen atom of the carbonyl group of the keto form, will tend to reduce the enol content; e.g., ethyl acetoacetate contains 54 per cent. enol in the vapour phase; in ethanol, the enol content is 7.5 per cent. On the other hand, where hydrogen bond formation with the solvent is not possible e.g. in hexane, benzene, etc., the enol content will be large.

possible, e.g., in hexane, benzene, etc., the enol content will be large.

According to Arndt et al. (1946), the effect of the solvent on enol content is to be explained as follows. Hydrophilic solvents favour the keto form, whereas hydrophobic and lipophilic solvents favour the enol form. The

above authors have shown that the more the hydrophobic groups predominate in a molecule of a tautomeric substance of a given structure, the greater is the enol content in the equilibrium mixture. Thus they found that the enol content of the esters of acetoacetic acid increased in the order methyl, ethyl, propyl, butyl, 2-octyl and benzyl; this is the order in which

the whole molecule (ester) becomes more hydrophobic.

The preparation of ethyl acetoacetate. In the preparation of ethyl acetoacetate, condensation is effected between two molecules of the same ester. This is one example of the Claisen condensation (1887), in which a ketoester is formed by the reaction between two molecules of an ester containing α-hydrogen atoms. In certain cases the second ester does not contain an α-hydrogen atom, e.g., ethyl formate, ethyl benzoate and ethyl oxalate (see text for examples of their use). The Claisen condensation may also take place between an ester and a ketone to form a 1:3-diketone. The condensation is brought about by sodium ethoxide, sodamide, triphenylmethylsodium, etc. Sodium ethoxide is the reagent usually employed in the preparation of ethyl acetoacetate.

If sodium is added to ethyl acetate which has been very carefully freed from ethanol, very little action takes place. When a small amount of ethanol is added, a vigorous reaction sets in. This seems to indicate that it is probably sodium ethoxide, and not sodium, which is the effective reagent for the condensation (Snell and McElvain, 1931). The product is the sodium enolate of ethyl acetoacetate and this, on treatment with acid, liberates ethyl acetoacetate, which may be purified by distillation in

vacuo.

Many mechanisms have been proposed for the formation of ethyl acetoacetate. The one most widely accepted at the moment is (cf. aldol condensation).

$$EtO^{\frown}H^{\frown}CH_{2}\cdot CO_{2}Et \Longrightarrow EtOH + \bar{C}H_{2}\cdot CO_{2}Et$$

$$Me\cdot C \xrightarrow{C}CH_{2}\cdot CO_{2}Et \Longrightarrow Me\cdot C \xrightarrow{C}CH_{2}\cdot CO_{2}Et \Longrightarrow$$

$$OEt \xrightarrow{ONa^{+}}$$

$$Me\cdot C \xrightarrow{C}CH\cdot CO_{2}Et + EtO^{-} \Longrightarrow EtOH + Me\cdot C \xrightarrow{C}CH\cdot CO_{2}Et \xrightarrow{Me\cdot CO_{2}H}$$

$$OH \xrightarrow{OH} \xrightarrow{O}$$

$$Me\cdot C \xrightarrow{C}CH\cdot CO_{2}Et \Longrightarrow Me\cdot C\cdot CH_{2}\cdot CO_{2}Et \quad (28-29\%)$$

Ethyl acetoacetate is now also being prepared industrially by polymerising keten in acetone solution to diketen, which is then treated with ethanol.

$${}_{2\text{CH}_{2}}\!\!\!=\!\!\text{C}\!\!=\!\!\text{O} \longrightarrow \begin{matrix} \text{CH}_{2}\!\!\!=\!\!\text{C} \\ \text{CH}_{2}\!\!\!-\!\!\text{C}\!\!\!=\!\!\text{O} \end{matrix} \xrightarrow{\text{C}_{i}\!\text{H}_{i}\!\text{OH}} \text{CH}_{3}\!\!\cdot\!\!\text{CO}\!\cdot\!\text{CH}_{2}\!\!\cdot\!\!\text{CO}_{2}\!\text{C}_{2}\!\text{H}_{5} \end{matrix}$$

In "mixed ethyl acetoacetate condensations" between two different esters, a mixture of all four possible products is usually obtained; e.g., with ethyl acetate and ethyl propionate:

(i) 
$$CH_3 \cdot CO OC_2H_5 + H$$
  $-CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{C_1H_4ON_3}$   $CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + C_2H_5OH$ 

These reactions clearly show that only a-hydrogen atoms are involved in the Claisen condensation.

Properties of ethyl acetoacetate. Ethyl acetoacetate is a colourless, pleasant-smelling liquid, b.p. 181° (with slight decomposition), sparingly soluble in water, but miscible with most organic solvents. It is readily reduced by sodium amalgam, or catalytically to β-hydroxybutyric ester:

$$\mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5} + 2[\mathrm{H}] \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5}$$

Lithium aluminium hydride reduces ethyl acetoacetate to butane-1:3diol (Buchta et al., 1951).

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{LiAiH_4} CH_3 \cdot CHOH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2OH$$
 (30%)

On the other hand, ethyl acetoacetate may be reduced to ethyl butyrate by treating it with methyl mercaptan in the presence of zinc chloride and sodium sulphate, and then reducing the thioketal with Raney nickel in ethanolic

solution (Newman et al., 1950; cf. p. 334).

Ethyl acetoacetate is neutral to litmus, but is soluble in dilute sodium hydroxide solution: it is the enol form which dissolves to form the sodium salt. When ethyl acetoacetate is hydrolysed in the cold with dilute sodium hydroxide, the solution then acidified, extracted with ether and the ether removed in the cold under reduced pressure, free acetoacetic acid is obtained. Krueger (1952) has prepared acetoacetic acid as a crystalline solid, m.p. 36-37°. As prepared in the usual way it is unstable, readily decomposing into acetone and carbon dioxide:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + CO_2$$

All β-ketonic acids readily decompose in this manner, but it is interesting to note that trifluoroacetoacetic acid, CF3 CO·CH2 CO2H, is quite stable and can be distilled without much decomposition. Ethyl acetoacetate forms α-oximinoacetoacetate when treated with nitrous acid:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{HNO}_3} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO-}\text{C} (= \text{NOH})\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$$

On the other hand, monosubstituted derivatives of ethyl acetoacetate are split by nitrous acid; the nitroso-compound is formed first and then rearranges to the oximino form with fission of the molecule.

$$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CHR} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{HNO}_3} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CR} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 \longrightarrow \text{R} \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5$$

$$\text{NO} \qquad \qquad \text{NOH}$$

Ethyl acetoacetate forms a green copper compound which is soluble in organic solvents. This indicates that the copper compound is not an ionic but a chelate compound, and its structure is possibly:

Acetoacetic ester reacts with ammonia (and with primary amines), but the structure of the compound produced is uncertain, there being two possibilities, the *imine* form I, and the *amine* form II:

Most of the experimental work favours II. It is possible that the reaction takes places through the enol form:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} = \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{NH}_3 \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} \text{OH} & \text{H} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} & \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{bmatrix} \\ \text{NH}_2 \\ \xrightarrow{-\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} = \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$$

Monoalkyl derivatives of acetoacetic ester,  $\mathrm{CH_3}\text{-}\mathrm{CO}\text{-}\mathrm{CHR}\text{-}\mathrm{CO}_2\mathrm{C}_2\mathrm{H}_5$ , react with ammonia in a similar manner but the dialkyl derivatives,  $\mathrm{CH}_3\text{-}\mathrm{CO}\text{-}\mathrm{CR}_2\text{-}\mathrm{CO}_2\mathrm{C}_2\mathrm{H}_5$ , form the amide  $\mathrm{CH}_3\text{-}\mathrm{CO}\text{-}\mathrm{CR}_2\text{-}\mathrm{CO}\text{-}\mathrm{NH}_2$ . This supports the mechanism given above, since the monoalkyl derivatives can enolise, whereas the dialkyl derivatives cannot. Ethyl acetoacetate also reacts with hydroxylamine to form an *iso*-oxazolone.

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5} + \mathrm{NH_2OH} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot C \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5} \\ \mathrm{NOH} \\ \longrightarrow \\ \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot C} \longrightarrow \\ \mathrm{CO} \\ \mathrm{CO} \\ \end{array} + \mathrm{C_2 H_5 OH} \\ \end{array}$$

With phenylhydrazine, ethyl acetoacetate forms a pyrazolone (p. 755). Acetoacetic ester undergoes the Knoevenagel reaction due to the presence of an "active" methylene group (p. 155), and also couples with diazonium salts. It reacts with Grignard reagents to form the hydrocarbon, which indicates that it reacts in the enol form, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} OH & OMgI \\ CH_3 \cdot C = CH \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + CH_3 \cdot Mg \cdot I \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot C = CH \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + CH_4 \end{array}$$

When acetoacetic ester is heated under reflux with a trace of sodium hydrogen carbonate, ethanol is eliminated and dehydroacetic acid, m.p. 180°, is obtained:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_3-C & O & H & C_2H_5O \\ \hline \\ HC & CH & CO & CH_3 \\ \hline \\ C & O & CH_3OH \\ \hline \\ CH & CO & CH_3 \\ \hline \\ CH & C$$

Dehydroacetic acid may also be prepared by the polymerisation of diketen:

$$\begin{array}{c} {}_{2\text{CH}_{2}}\text{=-C} \longrightarrow \\ {}_{\text{CH}_{2}}\text{--C} \longrightarrow \\ {}_{\text{CH}_{3}}\text{--C} \longrightarrow \\ {}_{\text{CH}_{3}}\text{--C} \longrightarrow \\ {}_{\text{CH}_{4}}\text{--C} \longrightarrow \\ {}_{\text{CH}_{5}}\text{--C} \longrightarrow \\ {}_{\text{CH}_{5}$$

## THE USE OF ACETOACETIC ESTER IN THE SYNTHESIS OF KETONES AND FATTY ACIDS

The synthetic use of acetoacetic ester depends on two chemical properties: i. (a) When treated with sodium ethoxide, acetoacetic ester forms sodioacetoacetic ester, i.e., the sodium derivative of the enolic form:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C:CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{ONa} \longrightarrow \\ \begin{bmatrix} \text{O}^- \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C:CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{bmatrix} \text{N}_a^+ + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} \quad (ex.) \end{array}$$

(b) Sodioacetoacetic ester readily reacts with primary and secondary alkyl halides (vinyl and aryl halides do not react) to produce alkyl derivatives of acetoacetic ester in which the alkyl group is attached to carbon. This fact has given rise to considerable speculation regarding the mechanism of the alkylation process. The problem is still not settled, but a highly favoured theory is that the negative ion is a resonance hybrid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{O-} & \text{O} \\ | & \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C:} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 \\ \text{(II)} \end{array} \\ \leftarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C--} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 \\ \text{(II)} \end{array}$$

Thus in the actual state both the oxygen and carbon atoms have a negative charge; but since a negatively charged carbon atom is more reactive than a negatively charged oxygen atom, it is the carbon atom that is the point of attack. As the actual state of the molecule cannot be represented by a single formula, the process of alkylation may be regarded as involving structure II, *i.e.*, a carbanion. There is also evidence to show that the alkylation occurs by an  $S_{\rm N^2}$  process. Thus:

For the sake of simplicity the alkylation of sodioacetoacetic ester will, in future, be represented as:

$$[\mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5}]^-\mathrm{Na^+} + \mathrm{RX} \underset{\mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CHR \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5}}{\longrightarrow} + \mathrm{NaX} \quad (v.g.)$$

After one alkyl group has been introduced, the whole process may then be repeated to give the dialkyl derivative of acetoacetic ester:

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CHR \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5} \xrightarrow{C_9 H_6 \mathrm{ONa}} \mathrm{[CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CR \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5]^- Na^+} \xrightarrow{R'X} \\ \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CRR' \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5} & (g.-v.g.) \end{array}$$

Until recently, it was not considered possible to prepare disubstituted derivatives of acetoacetic ester in one step. Sandberg (1957), however, has now carried out this one-step reaction in the preparation of ethyl β-acetotricarballylate from acetoacetic ester (0.5 mole), ethyl bromoacetate (1.2 mole) and sodium hydride (1.2 mole) in benzene solution.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 + 2 \text{CH}_2 \text{Br} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{2 \text{NaH}} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{C} \xrightarrow{\text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5} \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 \end{array} (77\%) \end{array}$$

Potassium tert.-butoxide is usually best for preparing the metallo-acetoacetic ester compounds, and generally alkyl iodides react faster than alkyl bromides (Renfrow and Renfrow, 1946).

- 2. Acetoacetic ester and its alkyl derivatives can undergo two types of hydrolysis with potassium hydroxide:
- (a) Ketonic hydrolysis. Ketonic hydrolysis, so called because a ketone is the chief product, is carried out by boiling with dilute aqueous or ethanolic potassium hydroxide solution, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-CO-CH}_2\text{-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 + 2\text{KOH} \longrightarrow\\ \text{CH}_3\text{-CO-CH}_3 + \text{K}_2\text{CO}_3 + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} \ (g.) \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-CO-CHR-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 + 2\text{KOH} {\longrightarrow} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{-CO-CH}_2\text{R} + \text{K}_2\text{CO}_3 + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} \end{array} (g.)$$

The ketone obtained is acetone or its derivatives, and the latter always

contain the group CH3.CO-.

Dehn and Jackson (1933) found that 85 per cent. phosphoric acid was a very good catalyst for the ketonic hydrolysis of acetoacetic ester and its alkyl derivatives, the yield of ketone reaching of per cent.

The mechanism of ketonic hydrolysis is uncertain; a possibility is:

$$CH_3 - C - CH_2 - C - CH_2 - C - CH_3 - C - CH_2 - C - CH_2 - C - CH_3 -$$

It is the electron-attracting property of the carbonyl group that facilitates the elimination of carbon dioxide.

(b) Acid hydrolysis. Acid hydrolysis, so called because an acid is the chief product, is carried out by boiling with concentrated ethanolic potassium hydroxide solution, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5} + 2\mathrm{KOH} \longrightarrow \\ \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO_2 K} + \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO_2 K} + \mathrm{C_2 H_5 OH} \quad \textit{(f.g.)} \\ \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CR_2 \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5} + 2\mathrm{KOH} \longrightarrow \\ \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO_2 K} + \mathrm{R_2 CH \cdot CO_2 K} + \mathrm{C_2 H_5 OH} \quad \textit{(f.g.)} \end{array}$$

The acid obtained is acetic acid or its derivatives as the potassium salt. From this the free acid is readily obtained by treatment with inorganic acid.

The mechanism of acid hydrolysis is possibly a reversal of the Claisen condensation. Only the ester of acetic acid undergoes condensation, and when the condensation is reversed, the ester is converted into the potassium salt which cannot recondense; hence the equilibrium is forced in the reverse direction to that of condensation.

Examples of the synthesis of ketones. The formula of the ketone is written down, and provided it contains the group CH<sub>3</sub>·CO—, the ketone can be synthesised via acetoacetic ester as follows. The acetone nucleus is picked out, and the alkyl groups attached to it are then introduced into acetoacetic ester one at a time; this is followed by ketonic hydrolysis. It is usually better to introduce the larger group before the smaller (steric effect):

Examples of the synthesis of fatty acids. The approach is similar to that for ketones except that the acetic acid nucleus is picked out, and the acetoacetic ester derivative is subjected to acid hydrolysis. The acetoacetic ester acid synthesis is usually confined to the preparation of straight-chain acids or branched-chain acids where the branching occurs on the α-carbon atom:

(i) n-Butyric acid. 
$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot \overline{CH_2 \cdot CO_2H}$$

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{C_3H_3ONa} [CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH \cdot CO_2C_2H_5] - Na^+ \xrightarrow{C_4H_5I}$$

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH(C_2H_5) \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{acid} CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot$$

It has been found that ketonic hydrolysis and acid hydrolysis of acetoacetic ester always take place simultaneously, but one or the other can be made to predominate by adjusting the concentration of the potassium hydroxide. Thus, in the preparation of acids, there will always be some ketone formed as by-product; and vice-versa. For this reason it is better to use ethyl malonate to synthesise acids since the yields are greater.

Ritter et al. (1962) have improved the preparation of acids via E.A.A. by heating the mono-alkyl derivatives with catalytic amounts of alkoxide in

excess of absolute ethanol:

MeCO·CHR·CO<sub>2</sub>Et + EtOH 
$$\xrightarrow{\text{OEt-}}$$
  $\xrightarrow{\text{MeCO}_2\text{Et}}$  + R·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>Et (70–90%)

In addition to the acetoacetic ester ketone synthesis, ketones may be prepared

in a somewhat analogous method as follows:

(i) From simpler ketones; e.g., acetone in ether solution is treated with sodamide and the sodioacetone then treated with methyl iodide, whereupon ethyl methyl ketone is produced:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-CO-CH}_3 \xrightarrow[\text{ether}]{\text{NaNH}_2} [\text{CH}_3\text{-CO-CH}_2]^-\text{Na}^+ \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3\text{-}} \text{CH}_3\text{-CO-CH}_2\text{-CH}_3$$

Repetition of the process on ethyl methyl ketone gives a mixture of methyl isopropyl ketone and diethyl ketone, which can be separated by fractional distillation. By repeating the process hexamethylacetone (di-tert.-butyl ketone),  $(CH_3)_3C^*CO^*C(CH_3)_3$ , can finally be obtained.

This synthesis has been modified to prepare *tert*.-carboxylic acids, aceto-phenone being the ketone used as starting material (Haller *et al.*, 1914). The yields are good for the simpler members of the series (Carter *et al.*, 1946).

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_{3}\text{-CO} \cdot \text{C}_{6}\text{H}_{5} \xrightarrow{\text{(ii) NaNH}_{2}} \text{R} \cdot \text{CH}_{2} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{C}_{6}\text{H}_{5} \xrightarrow{\text{(ii) NaNH}_{2}} \text{R} \\ \\ \xrightarrow{\text{(ii) NaNH}_{4}} \text{R} \xrightarrow{\text{R}'} \text{C} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{C}_{6}\text{H}_{5} \xrightarrow{\text{NaNH}_{2}} \text{R} \\ \\ \xrightarrow{\text{(ii) R'I}} \text{R''} \xrightarrow{\text{R'}} \text{C} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{C}_{6}\text{H}_{5} \xrightarrow{\text{NaNH}_{2}} \text{R} \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{R} \\ \text{R''} \\ \end{array} \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{C}_{6}\text{H}_{5} \xrightarrow{\text{NaNH}_{2}} \text{R'} \\ \\ \text{R''} \end{array}$$

(ii) Ketones may also be prepared from certain esters. It has been found that esters of the type  $R_2CH^*CO_2C_2H_5$  do not undergo the normal Claisen condensation with sodium ethoxide. In the presence of triphenylmethylsodium,  $(C_6H_5)_3C^-Na^+$ , however, they readily form the sodio-salt (Schlenk *et al.*, 1931). These sodium salts react with acid chlorides, and the resulting compounds, which are  $\beta$ -keto-esters, yield ketones on ketonic hydrolysis:

(iii) β-Keto-acids, R•CO•CHR'•CO<sub>2</sub>H, can be prepared by α-carboxylation of ketones, R•CO•CH<sub>2</sub>R', with magnesium methyl carbonate. The intermediate magnesium salt can be alkylated *in situ* and then decarboxylated to give ketones, R•CO•CHR'R" (Stiles *et al.*, 1959).

Sodioacetoacetic ester reacts with many other halogen compounds besides alkyl halides, and so may be used to synthesise a variety of compounds.

(i) I:3-Diketones. In the synthesis of I:3-diketones the halogen compound used is an acid chloride. Since acid chlorides react with ethanol, the reaction cannot be carried out in this solvent in the usual way. The reaction, however, may conveniently be carried out by treating acetoacetic ester in benzene solution with magnesium and the acid chloride; e.g.,

pentane-2: 4-dione may be obtained by the ketonic hydrolysis of the intermediate product ethyl diacetylacetate:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{COCl} \xrightarrow{\text{Mg}} (\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO})_2\text{CH}\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5} \\ \xrightarrow{\text{ketonic}} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}\text{-}\text{CH}_3 \end{array}$$

If sodioacetoacetic ester or acetoacetic ester itself is treated with acetyl chloride in pyridine as solvent, the *O-acetyl* derivative of acetoacetic ester, acetoxycrotonic ester, is obtained, and not the carbon-linked compound (as above):

$$[\mathrm{CH_3^{+}CO^{+}CH^{+}CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5}]^{-}Na^{+}} + \mathrm{CH_3^{+}COCl} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{pyridine}} \mathrm{CH_3^{+}C^{+}CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5}} + \mathrm{NaCl}$$

The reason for this unusual reaction is obscure.

(ii) Dicarboxylic acids. Dicarboxylic acids may be prepared by interaction of sodioacetoacetic ester and a halogen derivative of an ester, e.g., succinic acid from ethyl chloroacetate:

$$\begin{array}{c} [\mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5}] - \mathrm{Na^+} + \mathrm{ClCH_2 \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5} \longrightarrow \\ \mathrm{CH_2 \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5} & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{acid}} & \mathrm{CH_2 \cdot CO_2 H_5} \\ \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5} & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{acid}} & \mathrm{CH_2 \cdot CO_2 H_5} \end{array}$$

Ketonic hydrolysis of this acetoacetic ester derivative gives the  $\gamma$ -keto-acid ester (ethyl ester of lævulic acid):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \downarrow \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow[\text{hydrolysis}]{\text{ketonic}} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$$

(iii) Long-chain fatty acids. An ingenious method of synthesising long-chain fatty acids via acetoacetic ester involves a combination of methods (i) and (ii) described above (Mrs. Robinson, 1930):

$$[CH_{3} \cdot CO \cdot CH \cdot CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5}]^{-}Na^{+} \xrightarrow{Br \cdot (CH_{3})x \cdot CO_{4}C_{2}H_{5}} CH_{3} \cdot CO \cdot CH \cdot CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5}$$

$$\xrightarrow{\text{(i) } C_{1}H_{5}ONa} CH_{3} \cdot CO \cdot C \cdot CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5} \xrightarrow{\text{graded}} CO(CH_{2})y \cdot CH_{3}$$

$$CO(CH_{2})y \cdot CH_{3} \xrightarrow{\text{CO} \cdot CH_{2} \cdot (CH_{2})x \cdot CO_{2}H_{5}} CH_{3} \cdot (CH_{2})y \cdot CO \cdot CH_{2} \cdot (CH_{2})x \cdot CO_{2}H_{5}$$

These keto-acids are readily reduced to the corresponding fatty acid by means of the Clemmensen reduction (p. 150). Improved modifications of this method have now been developed (see p. 363).

(iv) Ring compounds. (a) When sodioacetoacetic ester is treated with certain dihalogen derivatives of the paraffins, carbocyclic compounds are obtained (see p. 470).

(b) Acetoacetic ester may be used to prepare a number of heterocyclic compounds (see Ch. XXX).

#### MALONIC ESTER SYNTHESES

Malonic ester,  $CH_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$ , which is the diethyl ester of malonic acid  $CH_2(CO_2H)_2$ , is prepared by dissolving potassium cyanoacetate in ethanol, adding concentrated hydrochloric acid, and warming the mixture on the water-bath:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{NC-CH}_2\text{---}\text{CO}_2\text{K} + 2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} + 2\text{HCl} \longrightarrow \\ \text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 + \text{KCl} + \text{NH}_4\text{Cl} \quad (v.g.) \end{array}$$

Malonic ester may be prepared (yield 82-84 per cent.) by refluxing cyanoacetic acid in ethanol in the presence of chlorosulphonic acid (Dvornik et al., 1953).

It is a pleasant-smelling liquid, b.p. 199°. Its use as a synthetic reagent

depends on two chemical properties.

r. With sodium ethoxide it forms a sodium derivative, sodiomalonic ester, which reacts with compounds containing a reactive halogen atom, e.g., alkyl halides, acid chlorides, halogen-substituted esters, etc. (cf. aceto-acetic ester). In all cases the yields are g.-v.g. The anion of the sodium salt is probably a resonance hybrid, and when it reacts with a halogen reagent, the entering radical becomes attached to the carbon atom:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_2H_5O-C-CH_2-C-OC_2H_5 \Longrightarrow C_2H_5O-C=CH-C-OC_2H_5 \xrightarrow{C_2H_5ONa} \\ \\ \begin{bmatrix} \bar{O} & O \\ C_2H_5O-C=CH-C-OC_2H_5 \end{bmatrix} Na^+ \longleftrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} O & O \\ C_2H_5O-C-\bar{C}H-C-OC_2H_5 \end{bmatrix} Na^+ \\ \\ & \stackrel{RX}{\longrightarrow} C_2H_5O-C-C+R-C-OC_2H_5 + NaX \end{array}$$

The process may then be repeated to produce the disubstituted derivative of malonic ester:

$$R \cdot CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 \xrightarrow{C_2H_5ONa} [R \cdot C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2] - Na^+ \xrightarrow{R'X} RR'C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2$$

These disubstituted derivatives of malonic ester can readily be prepared in *one* step by treating the ester with *two* equivalents of sodium ethoxide and then with *two* equivalents of alkyl halide. This procedure is only used if it is required to introduce two identical alkyl groups. The mechanism of this reaction is obscure; it will be represented as follows:

$$CH_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 \xrightarrow{2C_2H_5ONa} [C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2]^{2-2}Na^+ \xrightarrow{2RX} R_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 + 2NaX$$

2. Malonic acid and its derivatives eliminate a molecule of carbon dioxide when heated just above the melting point of the acid (usually between 150° and 200°) to form acetic acid or its derivatives (the yields are v.g.-ex.):

$$CO_2H \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO_2H + CO_2$$
  
 $CO_2H \cdot CHR \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H + CO_2$ 

Decarboxylation may also be effected by refluxing malonic acid or its

derivatives in sulphuric acid solution.

In a number of cases ethyl cyanoacetate (b.p. 207°) may be used instead of malonic ester in many syntheses. The cyano-group is readily converted into the carboxyl group on hydrolysis.

Synthesis of fatty acids. Malonic ester is preferable to acetoacetic ester in synthesising acids, and should be used wherever possible. The structural formula of the acid required is written down, the acetic acid nucleus picked out, and the required alkyl groups introduced into sodiomalonic ester. The substituted ester is then refluxed with potassium hydroxide solution, acidified with hydrochloric acid, and the precipitated acid dried and then heated just above its melting point. Alternatively, the potassium salt may be refluxed with sulphuric acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{(i)} \ \ \text{n-}Valeric\ acid.} \quad \text{CH}_3\text{·CH}_2\text{·CH}_2\text{·CH}_2\text{·CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{ONa}} \text{[CH(CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2]^-\text{Na}^+} \xrightarrow{\text{C}_3\text{H}_7\text{·CH(CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2} \xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} \\ \text{C}_3\text{H}_7\text{·CH(CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{KOH}} \text{C}_3\text{H}_7\text{·CH(CO}_2\text{K})_2 \xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} \\ \text{C}_3\text{H}_7\text{·CH(CO}_2\text{H})_2 \xrightarrow{\text{150-200}^\circ} \text{CH}_3\text{·CH}_2\text{·CH}_2\text{·CH}_2\text{·CH}_2\text{·CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{(ii)} \ \ Dimethylacetic\ acid.} \quad \text{CH}_3\text{·} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}^*\text{CH}_2\text{·CO}_2\text{H}} \\ \text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{C}_2\text{H}_8\text{ONa}} \text{[CH(CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2]^-\text{Na}^+} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3\text{I}} \text{CH}_3\text{·CH(CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{KOH}} \\ \text{C}_3\text{H}_3\text{·C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} \text{CH}_3\text{·C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{ISO}^-\text{200}^\circ} \text{(CH}_3)_2\text{C(CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2} \xrightarrow{\text{ISO}^-\text{200}^\circ} \text{(CH}_3)_2\text{C(CO}_2\text{H})_2 \xrightarrow{\text{ISO}^-\text{200}^\circ} \text{(CH}_3)_2\text{CH}^*\text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{C}_3\text{C}_3\text{CO}_3\text{CO}_3\text{C}_3\text{CO}_3\text{$$

Since two methyl groups are required for this synthesis, their introduction can be carried out in one step (see above):

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2} \xrightarrow{_{2C_3\mathrm{H_2ONa}}} \mathrm{[C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2]^{2-2}Na^{+}} \xrightarrow{_{\mathrm{CCH_3I}}} \\ \mathrm{(CH_3)_2C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2} \xrightarrow{_{\mathrm{KOH,\,etc.}}} \mathrm{(CH_3)_2CH^{+}CO_2H} \end{array}$$

Synthesis of dicarboxylic acids. Dicarboxylic acids of the type RR'C(CO<sub>2</sub>H)<sub>2</sub> are readily prepared from malonic ester as shown above. They are important only in so far as they are intermediates in the preparation of fatty acids.

Dicarboxylic acids of the type  $CO_2H \cdot (CH_2)_n \cdot CO_2H$  are very important, and the malonic ester synthesis is particularly useful for their preparation. The actual procedure depends mainly on the value of n, and the following examples illustrate this point:

# (i) Adipic acid. CO2H·CH2·CH2·CH2·CH2·CO2H

The acetic acid is blocked off at one end, and the remaining fragment is considered from the point of view of accessibility. In this example the fragment required is  $\gamma$ -bromobutyric ester. This is not readily accessible, and so the procedure now is to block off the acetic acid nucleus at the other end of the adipic acid molecule, and then to use two molecules of malonic ester and the  $\alpha\omega$ -dihalide of the polymethylene fragment that joins together the two acetic acid nuclei. In this case it is ethylene bromide, and since this is readily accessible, the synthesis of adipic acid may be carried out as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} -[(C_{2}H_{5}O_{2}C)_{2}CH]^{-}Na^{+} + BrCH_{2}\cdot CH_{2}Br + Na^{+}[CH(CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5})_{2}]^{-} \longrightarrow \\ (C_{2}H_{5}O_{2}C)_{2}CH\cdot CH_{2}\cdot CH_{2}\cdot CH(CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5})_{2} \xrightarrow{\text{(i) KOH}} \longrightarrow \\ (HO_{2}C)_{2}CH\cdot CH_{2}\cdot CH_{2}\cdot CH(CO_{2}H)_{2} \xrightarrow{\text{150-200}^{\circ}} CO_{2}H\cdot CH_{2}\cdot CH_{2}\cdot$$

Should the fragments required by either route be inaccessible, then a method not involving the use of malonic ester may be more satisfactory (see p. 379).

If one acetic acid nucleus is blocked off, the fragment required is ethyl chloroacetate. This is readily accessible and hence succinic acid may be synthesised from one molecule of malonic ester as follows:

$$\begin{split} [\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2]^-\text{Na}^+ + \text{CICH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 &\longrightarrow (\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ &\xrightarrow{\text{(i) KOH}} \rightarrow (\text{HO}_2\text{C})_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{150-200}^\circ} \rightarrow \text{CO}_2\text{H} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{split}$$

If the *other* acetic acid nucleus in succinic acid is blocked off, there is no intervening fragment left. Hence if two moelcules of malonic ester could be united *directly*, this would offer an alternative route for the synthesis of succinic acid. Actually, the union of two malonic ester molecules may be effected by means of iodine. Thus:

$$\begin{split} &[(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CH]^-Na^+ + I_2 + Na^+[CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2] \xrightarrow{\quad (i) \text{ KOH} \quad} (C_2H_5O_2C)_2CH \cdot CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 \xrightarrow{\quad (i) \text{ KOH} \quad} (HO_2C)_2CH \cdot CH(CO_2H)_2 \\ &\xrightarrow{\quad (ij) \text{ HCI} \quad} CO_2H \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H_2 \cdot CO_2H$$

Synthesis of ketones. Bowman *et al.* (1952) have introduced the following general synthesis of ketones and  $\beta$ -keto-esters (R' = tetrahydropyran-2-ol):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{R}')_2 \xrightarrow[\text{(ii) R''} \cdot \text{COCI}]{} \rightarrow \text{R''} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CR}(\text{CO}_2\text{R'})_2 \xrightarrow[\text{reflux}]{} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{R} \\ & \text{R''} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{R} \end{array} (50 - 92 \%) \end{array}$$

Johnson et al. (1952) have used text.-butyl esters of malonic acid (R' = text-butyl):

Synthesis of higher ketonic acids. Sodiomalonic ester is treated with the acid chloride-ester derivative of a dibasic acid, e.g., ε-ketoheptoic acid:

$$\begin{split} &[(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CH]^-Na^+ + COCl\cdot(CH_2)_4\cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \longrightarrow \\ &(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CH\cdot CO(CH_2)_4\cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{(i) \ KOH} + (HO_2C)_2CH\cdot CO(CH_2)_4\cdot CO_2H \\ &\xrightarrow{150-200^\circ} \to [CO_2H\cdot CH_2\cdot CO\cdot(CH_2)_4\cdot CO_2H] \longrightarrow CH_3\cdot CO\cdot(CH_2)_4\cdot CO_2H \end{split}$$

The intermediate  $\beta$ -keto-dicarboxylic acid is unstable and is readily decarboxylated. This might have been anticipated, since it may be regarded as a derivative of acetoacetic acid, which is readily decarboxylated on warming.

Synthesis of polybasic acids. It has been pointed out previously (p. 211) that the monoalkyl derivatives of malonic acid are readily brominated, and that these bromo-derivatives give  $\alpha$ -bromo-fatty acids on decarboxylation.

Malonic ester is also readily brominated, and this monobromo-derivative may be used to synthesise polybasic acids, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_{2}(CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5})_{2} \xrightarrow{Br_{2}} CHBr(CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5})_{2} \\ CHBr(CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5})_{2} + [CH(CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5})_{2}]^{-}Na^{+} \longrightarrow \\ NaBr + (C_{2}H_{5}O_{2}C)_{2}CH \cdot CH(CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5})_{2} \xrightarrow{Br_{2}} \\ (C_{2}H_{5}O_{2}C)_{2}C \xrightarrow{-Br} \xrightarrow{2[CH(CO_{4}C_{4}H_{5})_{2}]^{-}Na^{+}} & (C_{2}H_{5}O_{2}C)_{2}C \xrightarrow{-CH(CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5})_{2}} \\ (C_{2}H_{5}O_{2}C)_{2}C \xrightarrow{-Br} & (C_{2}H_{5}O_{2}C)_{2}C \xrightarrow{-CH(CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5})_{2}} \end{array}$$

Malonic ester may also be used for the preparation of unsaturated acids (Knoevenagel reaction, p. 280), alicyclic compounds (p. 469), and heterocyclic compounds (p. 386).

#### HYDROXYALDEHYDES AND HYDROXYKETONES

When naming a compound which contains more than one functional group, it is necessary to choose one as the principal function. The compound is then named by using the suffix of the principal function and the prefixes of the other functions. The carboxylic and the sulphuric acid group are always chosen as principal functions, and the usual order for choosing the principal function is:

Carboxylic, sulphonic, acid halide, amide, imide, aldehyde, cyanide,

isocyanide, ketone, alcohol, phenol, thioalcohol, amine, imine.

Examples. Acetoacetic acid contains a ketonic group and a carboxyl group, and since the latter is the principal function, acetoacetic acid is named as a ketone acid, viz., β-ketobutyric acid. Acetoacetic acid may also be named propan-2-one-1-carboxylic acid—each functional group is indicated by its appropriate suffix.

TABLE V

Func	tion				Prefix	Suffix
Acid					carboxy	carboxylic or -oic
A 1 - 1 1			5.61		hydroxy	ol
Aldehyde				18.00	oxo, aldo (for	al
					aldehydic O) or formyl (for CHO)	
Amine					amino	amine
Azo-derivative				3.	azo	
Azoxy-derivative .		- 14			azoxy	
Carbonitrile (nitrile)					cyano	carbonitrile
Double bond .			3 .		DESCRIPTION OF THE PARTY OF THE	ene
Ether.					alkoxy	-
Ethylene oxide, etc.		-		1	epoxy	0.10
Halogenide (halide)					halogeno (halo)	
Hydrazine		- 91			hydrazino	hydrazine
Ketone					oxo or keto	one
Mercaptan	1			200	mercapto	thiol
Nitro-derivative .					nitro	
Nitroso-derivative		*	4 3		nitroso	
"Quinquevalent" nit	rogon		-			onium, inium
Sulphide			100		alkylthio	
Sulphinic derivative			1 7 8		sulphino	sulphinic
Sulphinic derivative		21			sulphonyl	
Sulphone		1			sulpho	sulphonic
Sulphonic derivative				*	sulphinyl	-
Sulphoxide .					Surpinity	vne
Triple bond .		1	1	7 1	ureido	urea
Urea					ureido	urca

CH<sub>2</sub>OH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CHO. This is both an alcohol and an aldehyde, so that, bearing in mind the order of preference, the name of the compound will be β-hydroxypropionaldehyde.

Table V indicates the prefixes and suffixes used for designating the

functions (in alphabetical order).

The simplest hydroxyaldehyde is glycolaldehyde (hydroxyethanal), CH<sub>2</sub>OH·CHO. It may be prepared by the oxidation of glycol with Fenton's reagent (hydrogen peroxide and ferrous sulphate):

$$\mathrm{CH_2OH}\text{-}\mathrm{CH_2OH} + \mathrm{H_2O_2} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{FeSO_4}} \rightarrow \mathrm{CH_2OH}\text{-}\mathrm{CHO} + 2\mathrm{H_2O}$$

It may also be prepared by ozonolysis of allyl alcohol:

$$CH_2:CH\cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{O_3} \begin{matrix} CH_2-O-CH\cdot CH_2OH \\ O & \end{matrix} \xrightarrow{H_2O} CHO\cdot CH_2OH$$

The most convenient means of preparing glycolaldehyde, however, is by heating dihydroxymaleic acid, which is obtained from the oxidation of tartaric acid (q.v.):

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{HO_2C-C-OH} \\ \mathrm{HO_2C-C-OH} \\ \end{array} \longrightarrow \mathrm{2CO_2} + \begin{bmatrix} \mathrm{H-C-OH} \\ \mathrm{H} \\ \mathrm{H-C-OH} \end{bmatrix} \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} \mathrm{CHO} \\ \mathrm{CH_2OH} \\ \end{array}$$

Glycolaldehyde exists in the solid form as the dimer, m.p. 96°; but in aqueous solution it exists as the monomer which forms the stable hydrate, CH(OH)<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH (cf. chloral, p. 168). Careful oxidation of glycolaldehyde with bromine water produces glycollic acid:

$$CH_2OH \cdot CHO + [O] \longrightarrow CH_2OH \cdot CO_2H$$

Glycolaldehyde is a powerful reducing agent, reducing ammoniacal silver nitrate and Fehling's solution at room temperature. With phenylhydrazine CH:N·NH·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub> it forms the osazone. This osazone is identical with that formed from glyoxal, and the mechanism of its formation is still an open question (see carbohydrates, p. 443).

presence of alkali; with sodium hydroxide solution a tetrose sugar is formed,

and with sodium carbonate solution, a hexose sugar:

$${}^{2}\text{CH}_{2}\text{OH} \cdot \text{CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{Na}_{2}\text{CO}_{2}} \rightarrow \text{CH}_{2}\text{OH} \cdot \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{C$$

Glycolaldehyde is formed in small amounts when formaldehyde is allowed to stand in the presence of calcium carbonate:

Glycolaldehyde is a useful starting material in a number of organic syntheses, but since it readily polymerises, the ethyl ether is used in synthetic work. The ethyl ether may be prepared by catalytically dehydrogenating ethyl cellosolve:

$$C_2H_5O \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{Cu} C_2H_5O \cdot CH_2 \cdot CHO + H_2$$
 (43%)

The ethyl group is easily eliminated when necessary by means of concentrated hydriodic acid or hydrobromic acid (p. 142).

Aldol (acetaldol, β-hydroxybutyraldehyde, 3- hydroxybutanal), CH<sub>3</sub>·CHOH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CHO, may be prepared by the aldol condensation of acetaldehyde (p. 157):

It is a colourless syrupy liquid, b.p. 83°/20 mm., miscible with water and ethanol. When heated, it is dehydrated to crotonaldehyde:

There is some doubt about the structure of aldol. Recent work suggests it is an equilibrium mixture of  $\beta$ -hydroxybutyraldehyde and the cyclic hemiacetal:

$$\mathsf{CH_{3}\text{-}CHOH\text{-}CH_{2}\text{-}CHO} \Longrightarrow \mathsf{CH_{3}\text{-}CH\text{-}CH_{2}\text{-}CHOH}$$

This is an example of ring-chain tautomerism.

The simplest hydroxyketone is hydroxyacetone (acetol, pyruvic alcohol), CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·CH<sub>2</sub>OH. The best method of preparation is by heating bromoacetone with potassium hydroxide in methanolic solution, and adding ethyl formate:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{KOH} \longrightarrow \text{H} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{K} + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{Br} + \text{H} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{K} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{OOC} \cdot \text{H} + \text{KBr} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{OOC} \cdot \text{H} + \text{CH}_3\text{OH} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH} + \text{H} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3 (54-58\%) \end{array}$$

This is an example of alcoholysis, hydroxyacetone being replaced by methanol.

Hydroxyacetone is a colourless liquid, b.p. 145°, soluble in water, ethanol and ether. It reduces ammoniacal silver nitrate, thereby being oxidised to DL-lactic acid, and reduces Fehling's solution, thereby being oxidised to a mixture of formic and acetic acids. Although ketones do not normally reduce ammoniacal silver nitrate and Fehling's solution,  $\alpha$ -hydroxyketones are exceptions. Similarly, ketones form phenylhydrazones with phenylhydrazine, but  $\alpha$ -hydroxyketones form osazones; thus hydroxyacetone gives the same osazone as methylglyoxal (cf. glycolaldehyde):

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \mathrm{CH_3} & \mathrm{CH_3} \\ \downarrow & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{CO} & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{C_6H_6\cdot\mathrm{NH\cdot\mathrm{NH_2}}}} & \mathrm{C:N\cdot\mathrm{NH\cdot\mathrm{C_6H_5}}} \\ \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\ \mathrm{CH_6\mathrm{OH}} & \mathrm{CH:N\cdot\mathrm{NH\cdot\mathrm{C_6H_5}}} \end{array}$$

Hydroxyacetone appears to exist as an equilibrium mixture of hydroxy-ketone and cyclic hemiacetal forms:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-CO-CH}_2\text{OH} \Longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{-C} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2} \text{CH}_2$$

The structure of this cyclic hemiacetal is related to that of ethylene oxide (p. 250), which has the property of reducing ammoniacal silver nitrate. It is therefore possible that the reducing properties of  $\alpha$ -hydroxyketones are due to the presence of the oxide-ring form. This is an example of ring-chain tautomerism.

Diacetone alcohol (4-hydroxy-4-methylpentan-2-one),

(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C(OH)·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO·CH<sub>3</sub>, may be prepared by the condensation of acetone in the presence of barium hydroxide:

$$2CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{Ba(OH)_2} (CH_3)_2 C(OH) \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$$

Diacetone alcohol is a colourless liquid, b.p. 164°. When heated with a trace of acid or iodine, it eliminates a molecule of water to form mesityl oxide:

$$(\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{C}(\mathrm{OH})\text{-}\mathrm{CH_2}\text{-}\mathrm{CO}\text{-}\mathrm{CH_3} \xrightarrow{-1_3} (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{C} = \mathrm{CH}\text{-}\mathrm{CO}\text{-}\mathrm{CH_3} + \mathrm{H_2O}$$

Diacetone alcohol is oxidised by sodium hypobromite to β-hydroxyisovaleric acid (cf. haloform reaction):

$$(CH_3)_2C(OH)\cdot CH_2\cdot CO\cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{[O]} (CH_3)_2C(OH)\cdot CH_2\cdot CO_2H$$

Diacetone alcohol is a very good solvent for cellulose esters.

#### DIALDEHYDES AND DIKETONES

**Dialdehydes.** The simplest dialdehyde is glyoxal (oxaldehyde, ethanedial), CHO·CHO. It may be obtained by the oxidation of ethanol, acetaldehyde or glycol with nitric acid, but the yields of glyoxal are poor. It is most conveniently prepared, as the bisulphite compound, by refluxing a mixture of paraldehyde, 50 per cent. aqueous acetic acid, dioxan, and selenious acid (yield 72–74 per cent. on the selenious acid):

$$(\text{CH}_3\text{-CHO})_3 + 3\text{H}_2\text{SeO}_3 \longrightarrow 3\text{CHO-CHO} + 3\text{Se} + 6\text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{NaHSO}_3} \rightarrow \\ \text{CHO-CHO-2NaHSO}_3\text{-H}_2\text{O}$$

Glyoxal is manufactured by the vapour-phase oxidation of glycol with air

at 250-300° in the presence of copper as catalyst.

Glyoxal exists as a colourless polymer giving, on distillation, the monomer. This is a green vapour, which condenses to yellow crystals (m.p. 15°) which polymerise on standing to a colourless solid of unknown molecular weight. Glyoxal exists in aqueous solution as the dihydrate, CH(OH)<sub>2</sub>·CH(OH)<sub>2</sub>, which has been isolated (cf. chloral hydrate, p. 168).

Glyoxal undergoes many of the reactions of a dialdehyde; e.g., it reduces ammoniacal silver nitrate, and forms addition compounds with two molecules of hydrogen cyanide and sodium hydrogen sulphite. It does not reduce Fehling's solution. Since it has no  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atom, glyoxal undergoes the Cannizzaro reaction in the presence of alkali to form glycollic acid, one half of the molecule undergoing disproportionation at the expense of the other half:

With phenylhydrazine, glyoxal forms the osazone (this is identical with that from glycolaldehyde, see p. 236):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CHO} \\ | \\ | \\ \text{CHO} \end{array} + 2 \text{C}_6 \text{H}_5 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH:N} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6 \text{H}_5 \\ | \\ \text{CH:N} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6 \text{H}_5 \end{array} + 2 \text{H}_2 \text{O}$$

It also combines with o-phenylenediamines to form quinoxalines (heterocyclic compounds); e.g., with o-phenylenediamine it forms quinoxaline itself:

$$NH_{2} + O = CH \longrightarrow N CH + 2H_{2}O$$

$$NH_{2} + O = CH \longrightarrow N CH$$

It combines with ammonia to form the heterocyclic compound glyoxaline (iminazole). The mechanism of this reaction is uncertain; one suggestion is that one molecule of glyoxal breaks down into formic acid and formaldehyde, and the latter reacts as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CHO} & \text{NH}_3 \\ \mid & + \\ \text{CHO} & \text{H$^{\circ}$CHO} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{HC} \\ \mid & \mid \\ \text{HC} & \text{NH} \end{array} + 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$$

Glyoxal is one of the simplest coloured organic compounds, and when

reduced it forms the colourless compound glycol (see Ch. XXXI).

Methylglyoxal (pyruvaldehyde), CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·CHO, may be prepared by the oxidation of hydroxyacetone or by the hydrolysis of oximinoacetone:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO-}\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{[0]} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO-}\text{CHO} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO-}\text{CH:}\text{NOH} \xrightarrow{\text{acid}} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO-}\text{CHO} \end{array}$$

It is manufactured by the vapour-phase oxidation of propylene glycol with air at 250-300° in the presence of copper as catalyst:

$$CH_3$$
·CHOH·CH<sub>2</sub>OH  $\xrightarrow{O_4}$   $CH_3$ ·CO·CHO +  $_2H_2O$ 

It is a yellow oil with a pungent odour, and begins to boil at 72° to give a light green vapour. The liquid form of methylglyoxal is the dimer, and this slowly polymerises at room temperature to form a glassy mass of unknown molecular weight (cf. glyoxal).

Succinaldehyde (succindialdehyde, butanedial), CHO·CH2·CH2·CHO, may

be prepared by the ozonolysis of hexa-1: 5-diene:

$$\mathsf{CH}_2\text{:}\mathsf{CH}\text{:}\mathsf{CH}_2\text{:}\mathsf{CH}_2\text{:}\mathsf{CH}_2\text{:}\mathsf{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\mathsf{ozonolysis}} \mathsf{CHO}\text{:}\mathsf{CH}_2\text{:}\mathsf{CH}_2$$

Another method of preparation is to allow pyrrole and hydroxylamine to interact, and to treat the succinaldoxime so formed with aqueous nitrous acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH=CH} \\ \mid \\ \text{CH=CH} \end{array} \\ \text{NH} \xrightarrow[]{\text{NH}_{2} \cdot \text{OH}} \xrightarrow[]{\text{CH}_{2} \cdot \text{CH} : \text{N} \cdot \text{OH}} \xrightarrow[]{\text{HNO}_{2}} \xrightarrow[]{\text{CH}_{2} \cdot \text{CHO}} \xrightarrow[]{\text{CH}_{2} \cdot \text{CHO}}$$

Succinaldehyde is a colourless oil, b.p. 170°, which readily polymerises. It undergoes the usual reactions of a (di)aldehyde; e.g., it reduces ammoniacal silver nitrate and Fehling's solution, forms addition compounds with two equivalents of hydrogen cyanide and sodium hydrogen sulphite; etc. When treated with phosphorus pentoxide, ammonia and phosphorus pentasulphide, it gives respectively furan, pyrrole and thiophen:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_{2}\text{-CHO} \\ \text{CH}_{2}\text{-CHO} \\ \text{CH}_{2}\text{-CHO} \\ \end{array} \stackrel{\text{CH}=\text{CHOH}}{\rightleftharpoons} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}=\text{CH} \\ \text{CH}=\text{CH} \\ \text{CH}=\text{CH} \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}=\text{CH} \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}=\text{CH} \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}=\text{CH} \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}=\text{CH} \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}=\text{CH} \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}=\text{CH} \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}=\text{CH} \\ \end{array} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\$$

Diketones. These are classified as  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ ,  $\gamma$  . . . diketones according as the two carbonyl groups are in the 1:2, 1:3, 1:4, ... positions respectively.

Butane-2: 3-dione, dimethylglyoxal (diacetyl), CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·CO·CH<sub>3</sub>, is the simplest α-diketone. It may be prepared:

(i) By the hydrolysis of oximinobutan-2-one formed by the action of nitrous acid on the ketone:

$$\mathrm{CH_3\text{-}CO\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH_3} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{HNO_2}} \mathrm{CH_3\text{-}CO\text{-}C(:NOH)\text{-}CH_3} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{HCl}} \mathrm{CH_3\text{-}CO\text{-}CO\text{-}CH_3}$$

(ii) By the oxidation of butan-2-one with selenium dioxide:

$$\mathrm{CH_3\text{-}CO\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH_3} + \mathrm{SeO_2} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_3\text{-}CO\text{-}CO\text{-}CH_3} + \mathrm{Se} + \mathrm{H_2O}$$

(iii) By the catalytic dehydrogenation of acetoin:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{Cu} CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + H_2$$

Acetoin may be readily oxidised by bismuth oxide in acetic acid; the yield of dimethylglyoxal is almost quantitative (Rigby, 1951). Air may be used as the oxidising agent, with a small amount of bismuth oxide as catalyst (Rigby et al.,

Butane-2: 3-dione is a yellow oil, b.p. 88°. It gives the usual reactions of a diketone; e.g., it forms the monoxime and di-oxime with hydroxylamine, the bisulphite compound with sodium hydrogen sulphite, etc. It is oxidised by hydrogen peroxide to acetic acid:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{H_2O_2} 2CH_3 \cdot CO_2H$$

This reaction is unexpected since hydrogen peroxide does not usually break a carbon-carbon bond. Reduction with lithium aluminium hydride produces the corresponding diol.

Butane-2: 3-dione forms a glyoxaline derivative with ammonia, and a

quinoxaline derivative with o-phenylenediamine (cf. glyoxal, p. 238).

The dioxime of butane-2: 3-dione, i.e., dimethylglyoxime, CH<sub>3</sub>·C(:NOH)·C(:NOH)·CH<sub>3</sub>, forms chelate compounds with many metals, and is used to estimate nickel, whose salts produce a red precipitate when treated with dimethylglyoxime. According to Brady et al. (1930), the structure of bisdimethylglyoxime nickel is I. The planar configuration round the nickel ion has been demonstrated (Sugden et al., 1935), and confirmed by X-ray analysis (Rundle et al., 1953).

Pentane-2: 4-dione, acetylacetone, CH3·CO·CH2·CO·CH3, is the simplest β-diketone. It may be prepared:

(i) By means of the Claisen condensation between ethyl acetate and acetone (yield 38-45 per cent. on the acetone):

$$CH_3 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{C_3H_4ONa} CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$$

(ii) By the ketonic hydrolysis of the acetyl derivative of acetoacetic ester:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{COCl}} \\ \text{Mg} \xrightarrow{\text{ketonic}} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \\ \xrightarrow{\text{hydrolysis}} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \\ \end{array}$$

(iii) By the condensation of acetic anhydride with acetone in the presence of boron trifluoride as catalyst (yield 80-85 per cent. on the acetone):

$$\mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3} + (\mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO})_2\mathrm{O} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{BF_3}} \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3} + \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO_2 H}$$

Hauser et al. (1956) have prepared β-diketones as follows:

$$\text{R-CO-CH}_3 + \text{NaNH}_2 \longrightarrow \text{NH}_3 + \text{R-CO-CH}_2\text{Na} \xrightarrow{\text{R'-COCI}} \text{R-CO-CH}_2\text{-CO-R'}$$

Pentane-2: 4-dione is a colourless liquid, b.p. 139°/746 mm. It exhibits tautomerism, e.g., gives a red coloration with ferric chloride (cf. acetoacetic ester):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \vdash \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 & \rightleftharpoons \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH} = \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$$

It is readily oxidised to acetic acid, and is converted into a mixture of acetone and acetic acid when heated with potassium hydroxide solution (cf. acid hydrolysis of acetoacetic ester, p. 228). It forms pyrazoles when treated with hydrazine or its derivatives; e.g., with phenylhydrazine it forms 3:5-dimethyl-I-phenylpyrazole:

Pentane-2: 4-dione forms chelated compounds with various metals, e.g., iron, aluminium, copper, etc.:

Hexane-2:5-dione, acetonylacetone, CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO·CH<sub>3</sub>, is the simplest γ-diketone. It may be prepared by means of the acetoacetic ester synthesis:

$$[\mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH \cdot CO_2C_2H_5}] - \mathrm{Na^+} + \mathrm{BrCH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3} \longrightarrow \\ \mathrm{CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3} \\ \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH \cdot CO_2C_2H_5} \xrightarrow[\mathrm{hydrolysis}]{\mathrm{ketonic}} + \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3}$$

An alternative and more convenient acetoacetic ester synthesis is as follows:

$$2[\text{CH}_3\text{·CO·CH·CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5]^-\text{Na}^+ \xrightarrow{\text{I}_4} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{·CO·CH·CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \text{CH}_3\text{·CO·CH·CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \end{array}$$

$$\xrightarrow{\text{(i) KOH}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{·CO·CH·CO}_2\text{H} & \text{heat} \\ \text{(ii) HCI} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3\text{·CO·CH·CO}_2\text{H}} \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{·CO·CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_3\text{·CO·CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$$

Hexane-2:5-dione is a colourless liquid, b.p. 192-194°. It exhibits tautomerism:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} & \text{OH} \\ \leftarrow \text{CH}_3 \text{-}\text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 & \rightleftharpoons \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} = \text{CH} - \text{CH} = \text{C} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$$

It readily forms five-membered rings: with phosphorus pentoxide, 2:5-dimethylfuran; with ammonia, 2:5-dimethylpyrrole; and with phosphorus pentasulphide, 2:5-dimethylthiophen (cf. succinaldehyde, p. 239):

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_3 \\ CH=C \\ CH=C \\ CH_3 \\ CH_2 \cdot CO \\ CH_3 \cdot CO \\ CH_3 \cdot CO \\ CH_3 \cdot CH=C - OH \\ CH_3 \cdot CH=C \\ CH_3 \cdot CH=$$

#### ALDEHYDIC AND KETONIC ACIDS

Gloxylic acid (glyoxalic acid, oxoethanoic acid), CHO·CO<sub>2</sub>H, is the simplest aldehydic acid. It occurs in unripe fruits, e.g., gooseberries, and disappears during ripening; it also occurs in animal tissues and fluids. It may be prepared by the oxidation of ethanol, glycol or glycollic acid with nitric acid (yields are poor). It may also be prepared by the reduction of oxalic acid either electrolytically or by means of magnesium and sulphuric acid, but it is most conveniently prepared by the hydrolysis of dichloroacetic acid with water:

# $CHCl_2 \cdot CO_2H + H_2O \longrightarrow CHO \cdot CO_2H + 2HCl$

Glyoxylic acid crystallises from water with one molecule of water which is combined as water of constitution, CH(OH)<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, *i.e.*, dihydroxy-acetic acid (cf. chloral hydrate). The anhydrous acid may be obtained as a thick syrup by evaporating the aqueous solution over phosphorus pentoxide in vacuo.

Glyoxylic acid gives all the reactions of an aldehyde and an acid; e.g., it reduces ammoniacal silver nitrate, forms a bisulphite compound, etc. Since it has no  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms, glyoxylic acid undergoes the Cannizzaro reaction to form glycollic and oxalic acids:

2CHO•CO<sub>2</sub>H 
$$\xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}}$$
 CH<sub>2</sub>OH•CO<sub>2</sub>Na + (CO<sub>2</sub>Na)<sub>2</sub>

When glyoxylic acid is reduced by means of metal and acid, tartaric acid is obtained as well as glycollic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CHO+CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{[\text{H}]} \rightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{OH+CO}_2\text{H} + \left. \begin{array}{c} \text{CH(OH)+CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH(OH)+CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} \right. \end{array}$$

In this respect glyoxylic acid resembles acetone which also gives a bimolecular reduction product, pinacol (see p. 163).

Higher homologues of glyoxylic acid are known, but they are not important.

Pyruvic acid (acetylformic acid, pyroracemic acid, α-ketopropionic acid, 2-oxopropanoic acid), CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·CO<sub>2</sub>H, is the simplest keto-acid. It may be prepared:

(i) By heating tartaric acid alone, or better, with potassium hydrogen sulphate at 210-220°. The reaction is believed to take place via the formation of hydroxymaleic acid, I, which rearranges to oxalacetic acid, II:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH(OH) \cdot CO}_2\text{H} \\ | \\ \text{CH(OH) \cdot CO}_2\text{H} \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{-\text{H}_2\text{O}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH \cdot CO}_2\text{H} \\ | \\ \text{C(OH) \cdot CO}_2\text{H} \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{(II)}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CO \cdot CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{(II)} \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{(II)}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CO \cdot CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CO \cdot CO}_2\text{H} \\ \end{array}$$

This is the best method for preparing pyruvic acid, and it was this method which gave rise to the name pyroracemic acid.

(ii) By the oxidation of lactic acid with silver oxide suspended in water, or with Fenton's reagent:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CO_2H + [O] \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H + H_2O$$

(iii) By the hydrolysis of α: α-dibromopropionic acid with water:

$$CH_3 \cdot CBr_2 \cdot CO_2H + H_2O \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H + 2HBr$$

(iv) By the hydrolysis of acetyl cyanide formed by the action of potassium cyanide on acetyl chloride:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{COCl} \xrightarrow{\text{KCN}} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO}\text{-}\text{CN} \xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO}\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$$

A general method for preparing  $\alpha$ -keto-acids is to reflux a mixture of oxalic ester, fatty acid ester and sodium ethoxide in ether for 16 hours, and then boil the oxalo-ester with 10 per cent. sulphuric acid for 6 hours (Adickes and Andresen, 1943):

$$\begin{array}{c}
R \\
COOC_2H_5 + H_2C \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{C_2H_5ONa} CO \cdot CH \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{H_2SO_4} \begin{bmatrix} R \\
COOC_2H_5 \\
COOC_2H_5 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
COOC_2H_5 \\
COOC_2H_5
\end{array}$$

Shreiber (1954) has prepared α-keto-acids as follows:

$$R \cdot CH_{2} \cdot CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5} \xrightarrow{(C_{6}H_{8})_{2}CNa} R \cdot CHNa \cdot CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5} \xrightarrow{(CO_{4}C_{2}H_{6})_{2}} \begin{bmatrix} R \cdot CH \cdot CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5} \\ OC_{2}H_{5} \end{bmatrix} Na^{+}$$

$$\longrightarrow C_{2}H_{5}ONa + CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5} \cdot CHR \cdot CO \cdot CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5}$$

 $\xrightarrow{\text{hydrolysis}} 2C_2H_5OH + R\cdot CH_2\cdot CO\cdot CO_2H$ 

Another general method for preparing α-keto-esters is by the action of acetic anhydride on a glycidic ester (p. 159), followed by hydrolysis (Vogel et al., 1950):

Pyruvic acid is a colourless liquid, b.p. 165° (with slight decomposition), and smells like acetic acid. It is miscible in all proportions with water, ethanol and ether. It behaves as a ketone and as an acid; it forms an oxime, hydrazone, etc. It is reduced by sodium amalgam to lactic acid and dimethyltartaric acid (cf. glyoxylic acid, above):

$${}_{3\text{CH}_{3}\text{\cdot}\text{CO}\text{\cdot}\text{CO}_{2}\text{H}} \xrightarrow{[\text{H}]} {}_{\text{CH}_{3}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{\cdot}\text{CO}_{2}\text{H}} + \\ {}_{\text{CH}_{3}\text{\cdot}\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{\cdot}\text{CO}_{2}\text{H}}$$

Pyruvic acid reduces ammoniacal silver nitrate, itself being oxidised to acetic acid:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H + [O] \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO_2H + CO_2$$

It is oxidised by warm nitric acid to oxalic acid:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H + 4[O] \longrightarrow (CO_2H)_2 + CO_2 + H_2O$$

Pyruvic acid is easily decarboxylated with warm dilute sulphuric acid to give acetaldehyde:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CHO + CO_2$$

On the other hand, when warmed with concentrated sulphuric acid, pyruvic acid eliminates a molecule of carbon monoxide to form acetic acid:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO_2H + CO$$

Both of these reactions with sulphuric acid are characteristic of  $\alpha$ -ketoacids. The methyl group is made reactive by the adjacent carbonyl group, and so pyruvic acid undergoes many condensation reactions characteristic of a compound containing an active methylene group; e.g., in the presence of dry hydrogen chloride, pyruvic acid forms  $\alpha$ -keto- $\gamma$ -valerolactone- $\gamma$ -carboxylic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{-C}\text{=-O} + \text{CH}_3\text{-CO}\text{-CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{HCI}} \begin{bmatrix} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{-C}\text{--CH}_2\text{--CO}\text{-CO}_2\text{H} \end{bmatrix} \\ \text{OH} \\ \xrightarrow{-\text{H}_3\text{O}} \text{CH}_3\text{-C}\text{--CH}_2\text{--CO}\text{-CO} \\ \text{O} \end{array}$$

Pyruvic acid is a very important substance biologically, since it is an intermediate product in the metabolism of carbohydrates and proteins.

Lævulic acid (β-acetylpropionic acid, γ-ketovaleric acid, butan-3-one-1-carboxylic acid), CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, is the simplest γ-keto-acid. It may be prepared via acetoacetic ester as follows:

$$[\operatorname{CH_3^{\text{\circ}}CO^{\text{\circ}}CH^{\text{\circ}}CO_2C_2H_5}]^{-}\operatorname{Na^{+}} + \operatorname{ClCH_2^{\text{\circ}}CO_2C_2H_5} \longrightarrow \\ \operatorname{CH_2^{\text{\circ}}CO_2C_2H_5} \\ \operatorname{NaCl} + \operatorname{CH_3^{\text{\circ}}CO^{\text{\circ}}CH^{\text{\circ}}CO_2C_2H_5} \xrightarrow{\text{ketonic}} \operatorname{CH_3^{\text{\circ}}CO^{\text{\circ}}CH_2^{\text{\circ}}CH_2^{\text{\circ}}CO_2H_2}$$

It may also be prepared by heating a hexose sugar, particularly lævulose, with concentrated hydrochloric acid:

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H + H \cdot CO_2H + H_2O$$

In practice it is customary to use cane-sugar as the starting material:

$$C_{12}H_{22}O_{11} \longrightarrow 2CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H + 2H \cdot CO_2H + H_2O \quad (2I-22\%)$$

By heating dilute solutions of sucrose under pressure with hydrochloric acid,

the yield is increased to 50 per cent.

Lævulic acid is a crystalline solid; m.p. 34°, very soluble in water, ethanol and ether. It behaves as a ketone (forms oxime, etc.) and as an acid (forms esters, etc.). On the other hand, many of the reactions of lævulic acid indicate that it exists in the lactol form, i.e., hydroxy-lactone (this is an example of ring-chain tautomerism):

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CO}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_3 & \rightleftharpoons & \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{C}(\text{OH})\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_3 \\ > \text{O} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} \end{array}$$

When heated for some time, lævulic acid is converted into α- and βangelica lactones:

$$\begin{array}{cccc} CH=C-CH_3 & CH-CH-CH_3 \\ | & > O \\ CH_2-CO & CH-CO \\ \alpha- & \beta- \end{array}$$

It should be noted that  $\alpha$ - and  $\gamma$ -keto-acids differ from  $\beta$ -keto-acids in that their esters do not form sodio-derivatives, and the acids are not readily decomposed by moderate heating (cf. acetoacetic acid).

A general method for preparing  $\gamma$ -keto-acids is to treat a ketone with lithium amide and lithium bromoacetate; the ketone undergoes  $\alpha$ -carboxymethylation (Puterbaugh et al., 1959):

$$R*CO*CH_2R' \xrightarrow{LiNH_3} R*CO*CHR'*CH_2*CO_2H$$

#### QUESTIONS

- 1. Show by means of equations how you would synthesise:—(a) hexane-2:5-dione, (b) methyl n-amyl ketone, (c) methyl isopropyl ketone, (d) α-methylsuccinic acid, (e) α:β-dimethylbutyric acid, (f) Et<sub>2</sub>CH·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (g) Me·CO·Pr, (h) CH<sub>3</sub>·CH(CO<sub>2</sub>H)·CH(Me)·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (i) CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·CH(Me)·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (j) CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH(Me)·CO·NH<sub>2</sub>, (k) CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (l) CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (m) CH<sub>3</sub>·CH(CO<sub>2</sub>H)·CH(CO<sub>2</sub>H)·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (n) CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>4</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (n) CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>4</sub>·CH<sub>4</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>4</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (n) Me<sub>3</sub>·CH·CO·CHMe<sub>3</sub>, (q) Me<sub>3</sub>·EH·CO<sub>2</sub>H.

2. Starting with compounds containing three or less carbon atoms, how would you synthesise:—(a) CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·CH<sub>2</sub>·CHO, (b) CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO·CO<sub>2</sub>Et, (c) CHO·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>Et, (d) CH<sub>3</sub>·CHOH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, (e) CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>3</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (f) Me<sub>2</sub>CH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (h) Me<sub>2</sub>CB·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H; (g) CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CHCl·Cl·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (h) Me<sub>2</sub>CB·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H?

3. Define and give examples of:—(a) tautomerism, (b) isomerism, (c) desmotropism, (d) resonance, (e) enolisation, (f) cationotropy, (g) anionotropy, (h) prototropy, (i) the Claisen condensation, (f) chelate compounds, (k) water of constitution.

4. Discuss the methods for determining the composition of keto-enol mixtures, and

discuss the relation between structure and enol content.

source the relation between structure and end content.

5. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when E.A.A. is treated with:—(a) NaOH, (b) H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>, (c) HNO<sub>2</sub>, (d) CuSO<sub>4</sub>, (e) NH<sub>3</sub>, (f) MeNH<sub>2</sub>, (g) MeMgI, (h) CH<sub>3</sub>·CHO, (i) AcCl, (j) ArN<sub>2</sub>Cl, (k) O<sub>3</sub>, (l) heated under reflux.

6. Give one convenient method for preparing:—(a) glycolaldehyde, (b) aldol, (c) acetol, (d) glyoxal, (e) methylglyoxal, (f) dimethylglyoxal, (g) succinaldehyde, (h) acetylacetone, (i) acetonylacetone, (i) glycyylic acid, (b) remytic acid, (l) layulic acid.

acetone, (i) acetonylacetone, (j) glyoxylic acid, (k) pyruvic acid, (l) lævulic acid.

7. Which of the compounds in question 6 react with:—(a) NaHSO<sub>3</sub>, (b) C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·NH·NH<sub>2</sub>, (c) P2O5, (d) NH3, (e) P2S5? Name the compounds and state under what conditions they are formed.

#### READING REFERENCES

Organic Reactions, Wiley, Vol. I (1942), Ch. 9. The Acetoacetic Ester Condensation and Certain Related Reactions.

Cooper and Barnes, An Improved Kurt Meyer Titration, Ind. Eng. Chem. (Anal. Ed.),

1938. 10. 379.

Schwarzenbach and Wittwer, The Bromometric Estimation of Enol Content by Means of a Flow Apparatus, Helv. Chim. Acta, 1947, 60, 657, 653, 663, 669. Barnes and co-workers, Direction of Enolisation, J. Amer. Chem. Soc., 1945, 37, 132,

134. Zuffanti, Enolisation, J. Chem. Educ., 1945, 22, 230.

Baker, Tautomerism, Routledge & Sons (1934).
Braude, Anionotropy, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1950, 4, 404.
Feigl and Suter, The Inner Complex Salts of Dimethylglyoxime, J.C.S., 1948, 378.
Joshi and Tuli, Refrachor: A New Physical Constant, ibid., 1951, 837.
Organic Reactions, Wiley, Vol. VIII (1954), Ch. 3. The Acylation of Ketones to form β-Diketones or β-Ketoaldehydes. Vol. IX (1957), Ch. 1. The Cleavage of Nonenolisable Ketones with Sodium Amide. Ch. 4. The Alkylation of Esters and Nitriba.

Gunstone, Recent Developments in the Preparation of Natural and Synthetic Straight-

Chain Fatty Acids, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1953, 7, 175. Emmons and Hawthorne, Primary and Secondary Isotope Effects in the Enolisation of Ketones, J. Amer. Chem. Soc., 1956, 78, 5593.

#### CHAPTER XI

#### POLYHYDRIC ALCOHOLS

## DIHYDRIC ALCOHOLS OR GLYCOLS

DIHYDRIC alcohols are compounds containing two hydroxyl groups. They are classified as  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ ,  $\gamma$  . . . glycols, according to the relative positions of the two hydroxyl groups: α is the I:2 glycol; β, I:3; γ, I:4... Although it is unusual to find a compound with two hydroxyl groups attached to the same carbon atom, ether derivatives of these I:I glycols are stable, e.g., acetals (p. 161). The commonest glycols are the α-glycols.

Nomenclature. The common names of the α-glycols are derived from the

corresponding olefin from which they may be prepared by direct hydroxyl-

ation, e.g.,

ethylene glycol CH,OH.CH,OH CH2.CHOH.CH2OH propylene glycol (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CHOH·CH<sub>2</sub>OH isobutylene glycol

 $\beta$ -,  $\gamma$ - . . . Glycols are named as the corresponding polymethylene glycols,

CH2OH·CH2·CH2OH CH<sub>2</sub>OH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH

trimethylene glycol pentamethylene glycol

According to the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature, the class suffix is -diol, and numbers are used to indicate the positions of side-chains and the two hydroxyl groups, e.g.,

CH<sub>3</sub>·CHOH·CH<sub>2</sub>OH

propane-1: 2-diol

CH<sub>3</sub> CH<sub>3</sub>

CH,OH.CH,CH.CH,CH.CH,OH 2: 4-dimethylhexane-1: 6-diol

Ethylene glycol, glycol, (ethane-1: 2-diol), CH2OH·CH2OH, is the simplest glycol, and may be prepared as follows:

(i) By passing ethylene into cold dilute alkaline permanganate solution:

$$\mathrm{CH_2:CH_2} + \mathrm{[O]} + \mathrm{H_2O} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_2OH\cdot CH_2OH}$$

(ii) By passing ethylene into hypochlorous acid, and then hydrolysing the ethylene chlorohydrin by boiling with aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate:

 $CH_2:CH_2 + HOCl \longrightarrow CH_2Cl\cdot CH_2OH$  $\mathrm{CH_2Cl}\cdot\mathrm{CH_2OH} + \mathrm{NaHCO_3} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_2OH}\cdot\mathrm{CH_2OH} + \mathrm{NaCl} + \mathrm{CO_2}$ 

(iii) By boiling ethylene bromide with aqueous sodium carbonate:

 $CH_2Br \cdot CH_2Br + Na_2CO_3 + H_2O \longrightarrow$ CH2OH·CH2OH + 2NaBr + CO2 (50%)

The low yield in this reaction is due to the conversion of some ethylene bromide into vinyl bromide:

 $\mathrm{CH_2Br}\cdot\mathrm{CH_2Br} + \mathrm{Na_2CO_3} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_2}\cdot\mathrm{CHBr} + \mathrm{NaBr} + \mathrm{NaHCO_3}$ 

If aqueous sodium hydroxide is used instead of sodium carbonate, vinyl bromide is again obtained as a by-product. The best yield of glycol from ethylene bromide is obtained by heating ethylene bromide with potassium acetate in glacial acetic acid, and subsequently hydrolysing the glycol diacetate with hydrogen chloride in methanolic solution:

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_2Br}\text{-}\mathrm{CH_2Br} + 2\mathrm{CH_3}\text{-}\mathrm{CO_2K} \longrightarrow \\ \mathrm{CH_2}\text{-}\mathrm{(O}\text{-}\mathrm{CO}\text{-}\mathrm{CH_3})\text{-}\mathrm{CH_2}\mathrm{(O}\text{-}\mathrm{CO}\text{-}\mathrm{CH_3}) + 2\mathrm{KBr} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{HCl}} \mathrm{CH_2OH}\text{-}\mathrm{CH_2OH} \\ \mathrm{(90\%)} \end{array}$$

(iv) By treating ethylene oxide with dilute hydrochloric acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ \mid \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{O} + \text{H}_2 \text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} \text{CH}_2 \text{OH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \text{OH}$$

(v) By the reduction of any of the following compounds:

Glycol is prepared industrially by methods (ii) and (iv), and by the catalytic reduction of methyl glycollate which is produced synthetically (see p. 207)

Glycol is a colourless viscous liquid, b.p. 197°, and has a sweet taste (the prefix glyc- indicates that the compound has a sweet taste: Greek glukus, sweet). It is miscible in all proportions with water and ethanol, but is insoluble in ether. It is widely used as a solvent and as an antifreeze agent.

The chemical reactions of glycol are those which might have been expected of a monohydric primary alcohol. One hydroxyl group, however, is almost always completely attacked before the other reacts. This is probably due to the fact that the primary alcoholic group is more reactive in glycol itself than in a compound of structure, e.g., R·O·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH. Thus one group can be made to undergo one type of reaction and the other group another type of reaction, to give complex products.

(i) When glycol is treated with sodium at 50°, only one alcoholic group is attacked. To obtain the disodium derivative the temperature must be

raised to 160°:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow[50^o]{\text{Na}} \xrightarrow[\text{CH}_2\text{ONa}]{\text{CH}_2\text{ONa}} \xrightarrow[160^o]{\text{Na}} \xrightarrow[\text{CH}_2\text{ONa}]{\text{CH}_2\text{ONa}} \end{array}$$

(ii) Hydrogen chloride converts glycol into ethylene chlorohydrin at 160°. To obtain ethylene chloride it is necessary to raise the temperature to 200°:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH$_2$OH} \xrightarrow[160^o]{\text{HCl}} \xrightarrow[200^o]{\text{CH$_2$Cl}} \xrightarrow[200^o]{\text{HCl}} \xrightarrow[200^o]{\text{CH$_2$Cl}} \\ \text{CH$_2$OH} \xrightarrow[200^o]{\text{CH$_2$Cl}} \xrightarrow[200^o]{\text{CH$_2$Cl}} \end{array}$$

Ethylene chlorohydrin ( $\beta$ -chloroethyl alcohol, 2-chloroethanol) is a colourless liquid, b.p. 128.8°. It is very useful in organic syntheses since it contains two different reactive groups; e.g., by heating with aqueous sodium cyanide it may be converted into ethylene cyanohydrin, which, on hydrolysis, gives  $\beta$ -hydroxypropionic acid (p. 407):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{Cl} + \text{NaCl} & \longrightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CN} + \text{NaCl} & (79-80\%) \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CN} & \xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} \text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$$

(iii) When glycol is treated with phosphorus trichloride or phosphorus tribromide, the corresponding ethylene halide is obtained:

$$(H_2OH \xrightarrow{PBr_s} (H_2Br \\ CH_2OH \xrightarrow{PBr_s} (H_2Br$$

Phosphorus tri-iodide, however, produces ethylene. Ethylene iodide is formed as an intermediate, but readily eliminates iodine to form the corresponding olefin (see p. 116):

$$\begin{matrix} \text{CH}_2\text{OH} & \text{PI}_9 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH} & \end{matrix} \begin{matrix} \text{CH}_2\text{I} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{I} \end{matrix} \end{matrix} \longrightarrow \textbf{I}_2 + \begin{matrix} \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{matrix}$$

(iv) When glycol is treated with organic acids or inorganic oxygen acids, the mono- or di-esters are obtained, depending on the relative amounts of glycol and acid; e.g., glycol diacetate is obtained by heating glycol with acetic acid in the presence of a small amount of sulphuric acid as catalyst:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \end{array} + 2\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4} \begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \end{array} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \end{array}$$

When glycol is heated with dibasic acids, condensation polymers are obtained:

$$\begin{split} \text{HOCH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{O}\boxed{\text{H} + \text{HO}}\text{OC}\text{-}(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{-}\text{CO}\boxed{\text{OH} + \text{H}}\text{OCH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{O}\boxed{\text{H}} \\ + \boxed{\text{HO}}\text{OC}\text{-}(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{-}\text{CO}\boxed{\text{OH} + ---} \longrightarrow \\ \text{HOCH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{O}\text{-}\text{CO}\text{-}(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{-}\text{CO}\text{-}\text{O}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{O}\text{-}\text{CO}\text{-}(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{-}\text{CO}\text{-}----} \end{split}$$

(v) Glycol condenses with aldehydes or ketones in the presence of acid to yield respectively cyclic acetals or cyclic ketals (1: 3-dioxolanes):

$$\begin{matrix} \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \end{matrix} + \text{O=C} \begin{matrix} \text{R} \\ \text{R'} \end{matrix} \longrightarrow \begin{matrix} \text{CH}_2\text{O} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2\text{O} \end{matrix} \bigcirc \begin{matrix} \text{R} \\ \text{R'} \end{matrix} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

Compounds of this type are useful in sugar chemistry (see p. 440).

(vi) When glycol is oxidised with nitric acid, glycollic and oxalic acids may be readily isolated. All theoretically possible oxidation products have been isolated, but since, except for glycollic and oxalic acids, they are more readily oxidised than glycol itself, they have only been obtained in very poor yields.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{OH} & \xrightarrow{[O]} & \text{CHO} & \xrightarrow{[O]} & \text{CO}_2\text{H} & \xrightarrow{[O]} & \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH} & \xrightarrow{[O]} & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} & \xrightarrow{[O]} & \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ & \downarrow^{[O]} & \downarrow^{[O]} & \downarrow^{[O]} & \text{CHO} \end{array}$$

Oxidation of glycol with acid permanganate, acid dichromate, lead tetraacetate or periodic acid results in fission of the carbon-carbon bond (see P. 72).

(vii) Glycol is converted in acetaldehyde when heated with dehydrating agents, e.g.,

 $CH_2OH \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{ZnCl_2} CH_3 \cdot CHO + H_2O$ 

On the other hand, when glycol is heated with a dehydrating agent such as phosphoric acid, *polyethylene glycols* are obtained, *e.g.*, diethylene glycol:

$${}_{2\text{CH}_{2}\text{OH}\text{-}\text{CH}_{2}\text{OH}} \xrightarrow{-\text{H}_{2}\text{O}} \text{CH}_{2}\text{OH}\text{-}\text{CH}_{2}\text{-}\text{O}\text{-}\text{CH}_{2}\text{-}\text{CH}_{2}\text{OH}$$

By varying the amount of phosphoric acid and the temperature, the polyethylene glycols up to decaethylene glycol can be obtained. These condensation polymers contain both the alcohol and ether functional groups: they are soluble in water (alcohol function) and are very good solvents (ether function). They are widely used as solvents for gums, resins, cellulose esters, etc.

Ethylene oxide, CH<sub>2</sub>—CH<sub>2</sub>. According to the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature, an oxygen atom linked to two of the carbon atoms in a carbon chain is denoted by the prefix *epoxy* in all cases other than those in which a substance is named as a cyclic compound; thus ethylene oxide is *epoxyethane*. Epoxy-compounds contain the *oxiran* (*oxirane*) ring, and ethylene oxide is also known as *oxiran* (*oxirane*). Oxiran compounds are also referred to as *cyclic ethers* or *alkylene oxides*.

$$CH_2OH \cdot CH_2Cl + KOH \longrightarrow CH_2 - CH_2 + KCl + H_2O$$

The mechanism is possibly:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{HO} \xrightarrow{} \text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{O}} \text{CH}_2 \text{-CH}_2 \text{CI} \xrightarrow{\text{fast}} \text{H}_2 \text{O} + \overset{\text{O}}{\text{CH}_2} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2} \text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Slow}} \overset{\text{O}}{\text{CH}_2} \text{-CH}_2 + \text{CI} \xrightarrow{\text{CI}} \xrightarrow{\text{Slow}} \overset{\text{O}}{\text{CH}_2} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2} \text{-CH}_2 + \text{CI} \xrightarrow{\text{CI}} \xrightarrow{\text{Slow}} \overset{\text{O}}{\text{CH}_2} \xrightarrow{\text{CI}} \overset{\text{Slow}}{\text{CH}_2} \xrightarrow{\text{CI}} \overset{\text{Slow}}{\text{CI}} \xrightarrow{\text{CI}} \overset{\text{Slow}}{\text{CI}} \xrightarrow{\text{CI}} \overset{\text{Slow}}{\text{CI}} \xrightarrow{\text{CI}} \overset{\text{Slow}}{\text{CI}} \xrightarrow{\text{CI}} \xrightarrow{\text{CI}} \overset{\text{Slow}}{\text{CI}} \xrightarrow{\text{CI}} \xrightarrow{\text{CI}} \overset{\text{CI}}{\text{CI}} \xrightarrow{\text{CI}} \xrightarrow{\text{CI}} \overset{\text{CI}}{\text{CI}} \xrightarrow{\text{CI}} \xrightarrow{\text{C$$

This is an example of neighbouring group participation.

This method is used industrially, but the potassium hydroxide is replaced by calcium hydroxide. A recent industrial preparation of ethylene oxide is to pass ethylene and air under pressure over a silver catalyst at 200–400°:

$$\mathrm{C_2H_4} + \tfrac{1}{2}\mathrm{O_2} \longrightarrow \overset{\mathrm{O}}{\mathrm{CH_2}} \overset{\mathrm{O}}{-} \mathrm{CH_2}$$

Ethylene oxide is a colourless gas, b.p. 10.7°, soluble in water, ethanol and ether.

Ethylene oxide undergoes molecular rearrangement on heating to form acetaldehyde:

$$CH_2$$
— $CH_3$ - $CHO$ 

It reduces ammoniacal silver nitrate solution, and is reduced to ethanol by sodium amalgam.

Epoxides are reduced by lithium aluminium hydride to alcohols, unsymmetrical epoxides giving as main product the more highly substituted alcohol; thus I and III are the main products:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CH-CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{LiaiH}_4} \text{R-CHOH-CH}_3 + \text{R-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \text{(I)} & \text{(II)} \\ \\ \text{R}_2\text{C-CHR} \xrightarrow{\text{LiaiH}_4} \text{R}_2\text{C(OH)-CH}_2\text{-R} + \text{R}_2\text{CH-CHOH-R} \\ \text{(III)} & \text{(IV)} \\ \end{array}$$

Eliel et al. (1956), however, have shown that the reverse takes place if the reduction with lithium aluminium hydride is carried out in the presence of aluminium chloride or bromide, i.e., II and IV are now the main products.

Ethylene oxide is used as an insecticide and in many laboratory syntheses. Ethylene oxide is converted into ethylene glycol in dilute acid solution and into ethylene halogenohydrins with concentrated halogen acid solutions. Ethylene oxide also forms mono-ethers with alcohols in the presence of a small amount of acid as catalyst. The mechanisms of these reactions in acid media probably follow the same pattern, e.g., with dilute acid (with alcohols, replace H<sub>2</sub>O by ROH):

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \\ CH_2 \end{array} O + H_3O^+ \Longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \\ CH_2 \end{array} O + H_2O \\ \end{array}$$

Evidence from kinetic studies on solutions of epoxides under high pressure strongly suggests that acid-catalysed hydrolysis is a bimolecular substitution of the conjugate acid (Whalley *et al.*, 1959).

With concentrated halogen acid:

$$CI^{2} \xrightarrow{CH_{2}} OH \longrightarrow CH_{2}CI$$

$$CH_{2}OH$$

Ethylene oxide also reacts with alcohols under the influence of basic catalysts. A possible mechanism is:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{EtO}^{-1} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{OEt}} \xrightarrow{\text{EtO}^{-1}\text{CH}_2\text{OEt}} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{OEt}} \xrightarrow{\text{EtO}^{-1}} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{OEt}} \xrightarrow{\text{EtO}^{-1}\text{CH}_2\text{OEt}} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{OEt}} \xrightarrow{\text{CH$$

Of particular interest is the addition of hydrogen cyanide to form ethylene cyanohydrin:

$$\stackrel{\text{O}}{\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2} + \text{HCN} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CN}$$

Sekino (1950) has obtained ethylene cyanohydrin (yield: 95–96 per cent.) by reaction between liquefied ethylene oxide and liquefied hydrogen cyanide in the presence of a catalyst such as an alkali-earth oxide.

The structure of ethylene oxide is uncertain; it may contain "bent" bonds (see cyclopropane, p. 488).

When ethylene oxide is heated with methanol under pressure, the monomethyl ether of glycol is formed:

$$CH_2$$
— $CH_3$  +  $CH_3$ OH  $\longrightarrow$   $CH_2$ OH· $CH_2$ ·O· $CH_3$ 

This is known as *methyl cellosolve*; the corresponding ethyl ether is known as *ethyl cellosolve*. Cellosolves are very useful as solvents since they contain both the alcohol and ether functional groups (cf. polyethylene glycols, above).

Ethyl cellosolve may be used to prepare the ethyl ether of glycolaldehyde.

The vapour of ethyl cellosolve is dehydrogenated by passing it over copper heated at about 250°:

$$C_2H_5O \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{Cu} C_2H_5O \cdot CH_2 \cdot CHO + H_2$$

This ethyl ether derivative does not polymerise so readily as glycolaldehyde, and so may be used instead of the latter in certain syntheses. The ethyl group is finally removed by means of concentrated hydrogen bromide.

The further action of ethylene oxide on cellosolves produces carbitols,

e.g.,

$$\overset{\circ,\circ}{\operatorname{CH_2OH}\text{-}\operatorname{CH_2}\text{-}\operatorname{O}\text{-}\operatorname{CH_3}} + \overset{\circ}{\operatorname{CH_2}\text{-}\operatorname{CH_2}} \longrightarrow \operatorname{CH_2OH}\text{-}\operatorname{CH_2}\text{-}\operatorname{O}\text{-}\operatorname{CH_2}\text{-}\operatorname{CH_2}\text{-}\operatorname{O}\text{-}\operatorname{CH_3}$$

When glycol is treated with ethylene oxide, diethylene glycol is formed:

$$CH_2OH \cdot CH_2OH + CH_2 - CH_2 - CH_2OH \cdot CH_2 \cdot O \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2OH$$

Ethylene oxide reacts with ammonia to form a mixture of three aminoalcohols which are usually referred to as the *ethanolamines*:

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm C_2H_4O + NH_3 \longrightarrow CH_2OH \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH_2 \xrightarrow{C_2H_4O} \longrightarrow} \\ {\rm (CH_2OH \cdot CH_2)_2NH \xrightarrow{C_2H_4O} \rightarrow (CH_2OH \cdot CH_2)_3N} \end{array}$$

The ethanolamines are widely used as emulsifying agents.

The mechanism of these reactions is possibly:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{H}_3\dot{\text{N}} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2} \text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{H}_3\dot{\text{N}} - \text{CH}_2} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{O}^-} \xrightarrow{\text{H}^+ + \text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{OH}} \\ \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{O}^-} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{O}^-} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{OH}} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2$$

In the presence of excess of ethylene oxide, the reaction proceeds with the ethanolamine now being the amino reagent, etc.

Dioxan (I: 4-dioxan, diethylene dioxide) may be prepared:

(i) By distilling glycol with a little sulphuric acid or concentrated phosphoric acid:

$$2CH_2OH \cdot CH_2OH \longrightarrow O \xrightarrow{CH_2-CH_2} O + 2H_2O$$

(ii) By heating 2:2'-dichlorodiethyl ether with aqueous potassium hydroxide:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{Cl-CH}_2\text{-O-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{Cl} + 2\text{KOH} \longrightarrow \\ \text{O} & \text{CH}_2\text{-CH}_2 \\ \text{O} + 2\text{KCl} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \end{array}$$

(iii) Dioxan is prepared industrially by distilling glycol with phosphoric acid (method i), and by dimerising ethylene oxide with 4 per cent. sulphuric acid:

$${}_{2}C_{2}H_{4}O \longrightarrow O \xrightarrow{CH_{2}-CH_{2}} O$$

Dioxan is a colourless liquid, b.p. 101.5°, miscible in all proportions with water and most organic solvents. It is a useful solvent for cryoscopic and ebullioscopic work.

## General Methods of Preparation of 1:2 Glycols Other than Glycol itself

1. By the reduction of ketones with magnesium amalgam, e.g., pinacol may be prepared by adding mercuric chloride in acetone to a mixture of magnesium and benzene, refluxing the mixture, and then adding water to decompose the magnesium "pinacolate" (the yield is 43-50 per cent. based on the magnesium):

$$2\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 + \text{Mg} \longrightarrow (\text{CH}_3)_2 \subset \text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{H}_3\text{O}}$$

$$\text{Mg}$$

$$(\text{CH}_3)_2 \text{C}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{C}(\text{OH})(\text{CH}_3)_2 + \text{Mg}(\text{OH})_5$$

2. By the action of a Grignard reagent on α-diketones, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{·CO·CO·CH}_3 \xrightarrow{2\text{RMgX}} \text{CH}_3\text{·C} \xrightarrow{\text{C}} \text{CH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{H}_3\text{O}} \text{CH}_3\text{·C} \xrightarrow{\text{C}} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{XMgO} \quad \text{OMgX} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_5\text{O}} \begin{array}{c} \text{R} & \text{R} \\ \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\ \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\ \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\ \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\ \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\ \end{array}$$

3. By the action of a Grignard reagent on α-ketonic esters, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{\cdot}\text{CO}\text{\cdot}\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{3\text{RMgX}} \text{CH}_3\text{\cdot}\text{C} \xrightarrow{\text{C}}\text{C}\text{R} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_3\text{O}} \text{CH}_3\text{\cdot}\text{C} \xrightarrow{\text{C}}\text{C}\text{R} \\ \text{XMgO} \quad \text{OMgX} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{R} \quad \text{R} \quad$$

4. By the catalytic reduction of acyloins:

$$R \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CO \cdot R \xrightarrow{H_3} R \cdot CH(OH) \cdot CH(OH) \cdot R$$

5. By hydroxylation of unsaturated compounds (see p. 72).

Pinacol (tetramethylethylene glycol, 2:3-dimethylbutane-2:3-diol), (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C(OH)·C(OH)(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, is most conveniently prepared by reducing acetone with magnesium amalgam (see above). It crystallises out of solution as the hexahydrate. The most important reaction of pinacol is the rearrangement it undergoes when distilled with dilute sulphuric acid:

$$(CH_3)_2C(OH)\cdot C(OH)(CH_3)_2 \xrightarrow{H_3SO_4} CH_3\cdot CO\cdot C(CH_3)_3 + H_2O$$

The pinacol-pinacolone rearrangement (p. 171) is general for pinacols (ditertiary alcohols).

When sulphuric acid is used as the catalyst, some diene is formed as

by-product:

If pinacol is heated with 48 per cent. hydrobromic acid, 22-25 per cent. of pinacolone and 55-60 per cent. of diene are obtained. The yield of diene is further increased (79-86 per cent.) by passing pinacol over alumina at 420-470°.

Polymethylene Glycols

A general method of preparing polymethylene glycols is to reduce  $\alpha\omega$ -dicarboxylic esters with sodium and ethanol or lithium aluminium hydride, or

catalytically, e.g., (i) ethyl sebacate refluxed with sodium in ethanol gives decamethylene glycol:

$$C_2H_5O_2C \cdot (CH_2)_8 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{[H]} CH_2OH \cdot (CH_2)_8 \cdot CH_2OH$$
 (73–75%)

(ii) Ethyl adipate heated with hydrogen under pressure in the presence of copper chromite as catalyst gives hexamethylene glycol:

$$C_9H_5O_9C \cdot (CH_2)_4 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{H_2} CH_2OH \cdot (CH_2)_4 \cdot CH_2OH \quad (85-90\%)$$

Individual polymethylene glycols are usually prepared by special methods. Trimethylene glycol (propane-1: 3-diol), CH<sub>2</sub>OH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, b.p. 214° (with decomposition), may be prepared by the hydrolysis of trimethylene bromide, or by fermentation of glycerol by Schizomycetes (together with

n-butanol).

Tetramethylene glycol (butane-1: 4-diol), CH<sub>2</sub>OH·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, b.p. 230°, and hexamethylene glycol (hexane-1: 6-diol), CH<sub>2</sub>OH·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, m.p. 42°, are most conveniently prepared by reducing the corresponding αω-dicarboxylic esters (succinic and adipic, respectively). Tetramethylene glycol is prepared industrially by hydrogenating butynediol. It is used for preparing butadiene, γ-butyrolactone and tetrahydrofuran.

Pentamethylene glycol (pentane-1: 5-diol), CH<sub>2</sub>OH·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, b.p. 239°, can be obtained from pentamethylene bromide, which is obtained

from piperidine by the von Braun reaction (p. 762).

The pentamethylene bromide is converted into the corresponding glycol by heating with potassium acetate in glacial acetic acid, and subsequently hydrolysing the diacetate with alkali (cf. glycol):

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_{2}Br} \cdot (\mathrm{CH_{2}})_{3} \cdot \mathrm{CH_{2}Br} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{CH_{3} \cdot CO_{2}K}} \to \begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_{3} \cdot CO} \cdot \mathrm{O} \cdot \mathrm{CH_{2} \cdot (CH_{2})_{3} \cdot CH_{2} \cdot O} \cdot \mathrm{OC} \cdot \mathrm{CH_{3}} \\ \xrightarrow{\mathrm{NaOH}} \to \mathrm{CH_{2}OH} \cdot (\mathrm{CH_{2}})_{3} \cdot \mathrm{CH_{2}OH} \end{array} \quad (v.g.) \end{array}$$

The four α: ω-diols C22, C24, C26, and C28 have been isolated from carnauba wax (Murray et al., 1955). These authors have also isolated seven ω-hydroxyacids from the same source: C<sub>18</sub>, C<sub>20</sub>, C<sub>22</sub>, C<sub>24</sub>, C<sub>26</sub>, C<sub>28</sub>, C<sub>30</sub>.

The polymethylene glycols are readily converted into the corresponding mono- or di-halogen derivative by halogen acid, according to the amount of halogen acid used. These polymethylene halides are useful reagents in organic syntheses since they contain two reactive halogen atoms, one or both of which may be made to undergo reaction. If the synthesis requires reaction with one halogen atom only, the most satisfactory procedure is to "protect" the other halogen atom by ether formation and subsequently decompose the ether with concentrated hydrobromic acid, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{ONa} + \text{BrCH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_$$

#### TRIHYDRIC ALCOHOLS

The only important trihydric alcohol is glycerol (propane-1: 2: 3-triol), CHOH-CHOH-CHOH. It occurs in almost all animal and vegetable oils and fats as the glyceryl esters of mainly palmitic, stearic and oleic acids

Glycerol is obtained in large quantities as a by-product in the manufacture

of soap, and this is still a commercial source of glycerol (see below). Another method of preparing glycerol is the fermentation of glucose to which sodium sulphite has been added (the yield is 20–25 per cent.). Glycerol is now also prepared synthetically as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{\cdot}\text{CH}\text{:}\text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Cl}_2} \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}\text{:}\text{CH}\text{:}\text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{aq. Na}_2\text{CO}_3} \text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}\text{:}\text{CH}_2 \\ & \text{allyl chloride} \xrightarrow{\text{150}^\circ\text{. 12 atm.}} \text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}\text{:}\text{CH}_2 \\ & \xrightarrow{\text{HOCl}} \rightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{\cdot}\text{CHCl}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \rightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{\cdot}\text{CHOH}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ & \text{glycerol }\beta\text{-monochlorohydrin} \end{array}$$

An alternative route that is used is:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}\text{:}\text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{HoCl}} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}\text{\cdot}\text{CHOH}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}} \xrightarrow{\text{CaO}} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}\text{\cdot}\text{CHCl}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{OH}} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{\cdot}\text{CHOH}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{OH}} \xrightarrow{\text{Painting for the principles of the princi$$

A new process is to add osmium tetroxide and hydrogen peroxide to acraldehyde; this produces glyceraldehyde which is then catalytically hydrogenated to glycerol.

$$\text{CH}_2\text{-CH}\cdot\text{CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}_2} \text{CH}_2\text{OH}\cdot\text{CHOH}\cdot\text{CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2} \text{CH}_2\text{OH}\cdot\text{CHOH}\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$$

Glycerol is a colourless, syrupy liquid, b.p. 290° (with some decomposition). It is miscible with water and ethanol in all proportions, but is almost insoluble in ether. It is used as an antifreeze, for making explosives, and, because of its hygroscopic properties, as a moistening agent for tobacco, shaving soaps, etc.

Glycerol contains one secondary and two primary alcoholic groups, and it undergoes many of the reactions to be expected of these types of alcohols.

The carbon atoms in glycerol are indicated as shown:  $\overset{\alpha}{\text{CH}_2}\text{OH} \cdot \overset{\beta}{\text{CHOH}} \cdot \overset{\alpha}{\text{CH}_2}\text{OH}$ . (i) When glycerol is treated with sodium, one  $\alpha$ -hydroxyl group is readily attacked, and the other  $\alpha$ -group less readily; the  $\beta$ -hydroxyl group is not attacked at all:

$$\text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{-}\text{CHOH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{Na}} \text{CH}_2\text{ONa}\text{-}\text{CHOH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{Na}} \text{CH}_2\text{ONa}\text{-}\text{CHOH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{ONa}$$

(ii) On passing hydrogen chloride into glycerol at 110° until there is the theoretical increase in weight corresponding to the esterification of one hydroxyl group, both α- and β-glycerol monochlorohydrin are formed, the former predominating (66 per cent.). Continued action of hydrogen chloride at 110°, using 25 per cent. of acid in excess required by theory for the esterification of two hydroxyl groups, produces glycerol α: α'-dichlorohydrin (α-dichlorohydrin) and glycerol α: β-dichlorohydrin (β-dichlorohydrin), the former predominating (55–57 per cent.); some other products are also formed:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}\text{-}\text{CHOH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{OH} + \text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{-}\text{CHCl}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}\text{-}\text{CHOH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{Cl} + \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}\text{-}\text{CHCl}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \end{array}$$

When either of these dichlorohydrins or glycerol itself is treated with phosphorus pentachloride, glycerol trichlorohydrin (1:2:3-trichloro-

propane) is obtained. This is a liquid, b.p. 156-158°, which smells like

chloroform.

When glycerol a: a'-dichlorohydrin is oxidised with sodium dichromatesulphuric acid mixture, s-dichloroacetone (1:3-dichloropropan-2-one) is obtained:

$$CH_2Cl \cdot CHOH \cdot CH_2Cl \xrightarrow{[O]} CH_2Cl \cdot CO \cdot CH_2Cl \quad (68-75\%)$$

It is a solid, m.p. 45°, and is a useful starting material in many syntheses. When glycerol a: a'-dichlorohydrin is treated with powdered sodium hydroxide in ether solution, epichlorohydrin (3-chloro-1: 2-epoxypropane) is obtained (see p. 250 for the mechanism):

$$\label{eq:ch2choh} \text{CH$_2$Cl$-$CH$_0$H} \xrightarrow{\text{O}} \text{CH$_2$Cl$-$CH$_2$} + \text{NaCl} + \text{H$_2$O} \quad (76-81\%)$$

Epichlorohydrin is also obtained by distilling an alkaline solution of the α-dichlorohydrin under reduced pressure (yield: 90 per cent.). It is a

liquid, b.p. 117°, and smells like chloroform.

Hydrogen bromide and the phosphorus bromides react with glycerol in the same way as the corresponding chlorine compounds, but the analogous iodine compounds behave differently, the products depending on the amount of reagent used. When glycerol is heated with a small amount of hydrogen iodide or phosphorus tri-iodide, allyl iodide is the main product:

$$\text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{\cdot}\text{CHOH}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{OH}\xrightarrow{\text{PI}_3} \left[\text{CH}_2\text{I}\text{\cdot}\text{CHI}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{I}\right] \longrightarrow \text{I}_2 + \text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CH}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{I}$$

When a large amount of phosphorus tri-iodide is used, the main product is isopropyl iodide, which is formed by the following sequence of reactions from the allyl iodide first formed:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{:CH}\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{I} \xrightarrow{\text{HI}} \left[\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{CHI}\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{I}\right] \xrightarrow{-\text{I}_2} \\ \text{CH}_3\cdot\text{CH}:\text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{HI}} \cdot\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{CHI}\cdot\text{CH}_3 \end{array} \tag{80\%}$$

(iii) When glycerol is treated with monocarboxylic acids, esters are obtained which may be mono-, di- or tri-esters, according to the amount of acid used; high temperature and an excess of acid favour the formation of the tri-ester (see the glycerides, below).

Nitroglycerine is manufactured by adding glycerol in a thin stream to a

cold mixture of concentrated nitric and sulphuric acids:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{OH} & \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{NO}_2 \\ \text{CHOH} + 3 \text{HNO}_3 \longrightarrow \text{CH} \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{NO}_2 + 3 \text{H}_2 \text{O} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH} & \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{NO}_2 \end{array}$$

Nitroglycerine is an ester, not a nitro-compound; it is glyceryl trinitrate. The incorrect name appears to have been introduced due to the use of "mixed acid" which is normally used for nitration (see p. 553).

Nitroglycerine is a poisonous, colourless, oily liquid, insoluble in water. It usually burns quietly when ignited, but when heated, rapidly struck or detonated, it explodes violently. Nobel (1867) found that nitroglycerine could be stabilised by absorbing it in kieselguhr. This was dynamite, which is now, however, usually manufactured by using sawdust as the absorbent, and adding solid ammonium nitrate. Blasting gelatin or gelignite is made by mixing nitroglycerine with gun-cotton (cellulose nitrate). The smokeless powder, *cordite*, is a mixture of nitroglycerine, gun-cotton and vaseline.

When heated with formic acid or oxalic acid at 260°, glycerol is converted into allyl alcohol (p. 267). With dibasic acids, glycerol forms condensation polymers known as *alkyd resins*, the commonest of which is glyptal, formed by heating glycerol with phthalic anhydride.

When boric acid is added to an aqueous solution of glycerol, a complex is produced which has a higher electrical conductivity than boric acid itself, *i.e.*, is a stronger acid. This complex is believed to be a borospiranic acid in which the two rings attached to the boron atom are perpendicular to each other (hence name spiran):

Glycol does not increase the conductivity of boric acid. It is therefore believed that the two hydroxyl groups in glycol are in the *trans*-position, whereas the hydroxyl groups in glycerol are in the *cis*-position.

(iv) Glycerol can theoretically give rise to a large variety of oxidation products. The actual product obtained in practice depends on the nature of the oxidising agent used:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{OH} & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} & \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH} & \text{CHOH} \longrightarrow \text{CHOH} \longrightarrow \text{CHOH} \\ \text{CHO} & \text{CO}_2\text{H} & \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH} & \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\$$

Dilute nitric acid converts glycerol into glyceric and tartronic acids; concentrated nitric acid oxidises it to mainly glyceric acid (80 per cent.); bismuth nitrate produces mainly mesoxalic acid. Bromine water, sodium hypobromite and Fenton's reagent (hydrogen peroxide and ferrous sulphate) oxidise glycerol to a mixture of glyceraldehyde (predominantly) and dihydroxyacetone; this mixture is known as glycerose. These two compounds are interconvertible in the presence of anhydrous pyridine, this being known as the Lobry de Bruyn-van Ekenstein rearrangement (see also p. 450):

CHO
$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CHOH} \\ \text{CHOH} \\ \rightleftharpoons \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \rightleftharpoons \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \rightleftharpoons \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \end{array}$$

(v) When heated with potassium hydrogen sulphate, glycerol is dehydrated to acraldehyde:

$$CH_2OH \cdot CHOH \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{KHSO_4} CH_2 \cdot CH \cdot CHO + 2H_2O$$

(vi) The mixed ethers of glycerol may be conveniently prepared by the action of sodium alkoxide on a glycerol chlorohydrin, e.g., triethylin, the

triethyl ether of glycerol, is prepared by heating I:2:3-trichloropropane with sodium ethoxide:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{Cl} & \text{CH}_2\text{·O·C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \text{CHCl} + 3\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{ONa} \longrightarrow & \text{CH·O·C}_2\text{H}_5 + 3\text{NaCl} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{Cl} & \text{CH}_2\text{·O·C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$$

Helferich and co-workers (1923) found that triphenylmethyl chloride (trityl chloride), ( $C_6H_5$ )<sub>3</sub>CCl, usually formed ethers only with primary alcoholic groups. Thus the  $\alpha$ -mono- and the  $\alpha$ :  $\alpha'$ -di-triphenylmethyl (trityl) ethers of glycerol can be prepared, the latter offering a means of preparing  $\beta$ -esters of glycerol, e.g.,

A better means of obtaining the  $\beta$ -ester is to protect the  $\alpha\alpha'$ -hydroxyl groups by cyclic ether formation with benzaldehyde (Bergmann and Carter 1930). This acetal-like compound is formed when glycerol and benzaldehyde are heated together, or the cool mixture treated with hydrogen chloride:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid \text{CHOH} + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{\cdot}\text{CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CHO}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{O} \\ \mid \text{CH}_2\text{O} \end{array}$$

(vii) Glycerol can be fermented to produce a variety of compounds, e.g., propionic acid, succinic acid, acetic acid, n-butanol, trimethylene glycol, lactic acid, n-butyric acid, etc. Fermentation by means of a particular micro-organism usually produces more than one compound, e.g., propionic acid bacteria produce propionic acid, succinic acid and acetic acid.

Structure of glycerol. All the chemical reactions of glycerol indicate that its structure is CH<sub>2</sub>OH·CHOH·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, and this is supported by many syntheses, e.g.,

(i) From propylene (see above).(ii) The following absolute synthesis:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CaC}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{H}_1\text{O}} \text{C}_2\text{H}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{O}_4} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{distil Ca}} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \\ \xrightarrow{[\text{H}]} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{Al}_4\text{O}_3} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_4/\text{CO}_4} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHBr} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{Br} \\ \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_4/\text{Fe}} \rightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{Br} \cdot \text{CHBr} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{Br} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{K}} \rightarrow \text{CH} \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \rightarrow \text{CHOH} \\ \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{OH}} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{OH}} \rightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \end{array}$$

## Polyhydric Alcohols

Tetrahydric alcohols. Erythritol, CH<sub>2</sub>OH•CHOH•CHOH•CH<sub>2</sub>OH, exists in three forms: dextrorotatory erythritol, m.p. 88°; lævorotatory erythritol, m.p.

88°; meso-erythritol, m.p. 121.5°. The meso-form occurs in certain lichens and seaweeds. All three forms may be oxidised to tartaric acid,

## CO,H.CHOH.CHOH.CO,H

Pentaerythritol, C(CH<sub>2</sub>OH)<sub>4</sub>, is prepared by the condensation of formaldehyde

with acetaldehyde (see p. 166).

Pentahydric alcohols (pentitols). There are four pentitols with the structure CH<sub>2</sub>OH•(CHOH)<sub>3</sub>•CH<sub>2</sub>OH, which may be prepared by reducing the corresponding aldopentoses (see p. 437). Two are optically active, forming a pair of enantiomorphs—D- and L-arabitol—and the other two are optically inactive existing as meso forms—adonitol and xylitol.

Aldopentose	Pentitol
D- and L-ribose	adonitol (ribitol)
D- and L-xylose	xylitol
p-arabinose)	D-arabitol (D-lyxitol)
D-lyxose 5	
L-arabinose)	L-arabitol (L-lyxitol)
T-lyvose	

Adonitol and D-arabitol occur naturally.

D-Rhamnitol, CH3 (CHOH)4 CH2OH, may be prepared by reducing the

corresponding deoxyhexose, D-rhamnose.

Hexahydric Alcohols (hexitols). There are ten hexitols with the structure CH2OH (CHOH)4 CH2OH, which may be prepared by reducing the corresponding aldohexoses (see p. 438). Eight exist as four pairs of enantiomorphs, and the remaining two as meso forms.

Aldohexose	Hexitol
D-glucose and L-gulose	D-sorbitol (D-glucitol)
L-glucose and D-gulose	L-sorbitol (L-glucitol)
p-mannose	D-mannitol
L-mannose	L-mannitol
p-idose	p-iditol
L-idose	L-iditol
D-talose and D-altrose	p-talitol
L-talose and L-altrose	L-talitol
D- and L-galactose	dulcitol
p- and L-allose	allodulcitol (allitol)

D-Sorbitol, D-mannitol and dulcitol occur naturally.

Rhamnohexitol, CH3 (CHOH)5 CH2OH, is prepared by reducing the corre-

sponding aldose, rhamnohexose.

The polyhydric alcohols chemically resemble glycerol in many ways. When heated with concentrated hydriodic acid or with a mixture of red phosphorus, iodine and water, they are converted into the corresponding 2-iodoparaffin and paraffin; e.g., any hexitol gives a mixture of 2-iodohexane and n-hexane when heated with hydriodic acid (see also the sugars, p. 438):

 $\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \cdot (\text{CHOH})_4 \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{HI}} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CHI} \cdot \text{CH}_3 + \text{CH}_3 \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_4 \cdot \text{CH}_3$ 

## OILS, FATS AND WAXES

Oils and fats are compounds of glycerol and various organic acids, i.e., they are glyceryl esters or glycerides. Oils, which are liquids at ordinary temperatures, contain a larger proportion of unsaturated acids than do the fats, which are solids at ordinary temperatures. The acids present in the glycerides are almost exclusively straight-chain acids, and almost always contain an even number of carbon atoms. The chief saturated acids are lauric, myristic, palmitic and stearic (see p. 186). The chief unsaturated acids are oleic, linoleic and linolenic (see p. 285). Palmitic acid is the most abundant of the saturated acids, and acids containing less than eighteen carbon atoms are usually present only as minor constituents, but

sometimes they are present in appreciable amounts in insect waxes and marine fats.

Glycerides are named according to the nature of the acids present, the suffix -ic of the common name of the acid being changed into -in. Glycerides are said to be "simple" when all the acids are the same, and "mixed" when the acids are different:

It is still not certain whether simple glycerides occur naturally; if they

do, they are definitely not as common as the mixed glycerides.

According to Desnuelle et al. (1959), the structure of natural glycerides is not random; the position of the acid residue depends on the chain-length of the unsaturated acids and on the degree of their unsaturation. In vegetable oils the saturated acids occur mainly at the 1- and 3-positions and unsaturated acids at the 2-position. In animal fats the distribution is not so rigid.

Synthesis of glycerides. Simple triglycerides are readily prepared from glycero! and an excess of acyl chloride, or from 1:2:3-tribromopropane and the silver or potassium salts of the fatty acids.

Mixed triglycerides are far more difficult to prepare. A number of methods

have been developed, e.g.,

(i) The sodium salt of an acid is heated with glycerol monochlorohydrin, and the monoester so formed is acylated:

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{CH_2Cl} & \operatorname{CH_2\cdot O\cdot CO\cdot R} & \operatorname{CH_2\cdot O\cdot CO\cdot R} \\ \vdash & \vdash & \vdash & \operatorname{CHOH} & \xrightarrow{\operatorname{R'\cdot COCl}} & \operatorname{CH\cdot O\cdot CO\cdot R'} \\ \vdash & \vdash & \vdash & \operatorname{CH_2OH} & \operatorname{CH_2\cdot O\cdot CO\cdot R'} \end{array}$$

The preparation of 1-monoglycerides has been improved by Hartman (1960). The 2- and 3-positions in glycerol are protected by the formation of the *iso* propylidene derivative (cf. (ii) below; see also p. 440), and the protecting group is removed by boric acid in hot 2-methoxyethanol.

(ii) 1:3-Benzylidene-glycerol is treated with an acid chloride, the benzaldehyde residue is removed by hydrolysis, and the monoester so formed is then further acylated:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{O} \\ \text{CHOH} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{O} \\$$

In both methods (i) and (ii) there is, however, still difficulty in knowing with certainty the position of the acyl group introduced first, since the acyl group tends to migrate in the monoester, producing the following equilibrium:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \operatorname{CH}_2\text{·O·CO·R} & \operatorname{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ | & & | \\ \operatorname{CHOH} & \rightleftharpoons \operatorname{CH·O·CO·R} \\ | & & | \\ \operatorname{CH}_2\text{OH} & & \operatorname{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \end{array}$$

This isomerisation has been shown to be intramolecular. When 2palmitin was isomerised to the 1-isomer in alcohol containing glycerol labelled with 14C, no 14C was found in the ester (Doerschuk, 1952). Martin (1953) has shown that perchloric acid rapidly catalyses the change of I- or 2-monoglycerides to the equilibrium mixture containing 90-92 per cent. of the 1-isomer. Isomerisation of aliphatic 2-monoglycerides to the corresponding r-isomer may even occur slowly in the solid state (Brokaw et al.,

An interesting difference between the 1- and 2-isomers is that the former form urea inclusion compounds (p. 387) whereas the latter do not (Aylward

et al., 1956).

Analysis of oils and fats. Oils and fats are characterised by means of physical as well as chemical tests. The usual physical constants that are determined are melting point, solidifying point, specific gravity and refractive index.

The chemical tests give an indication of the type of fatty acids present in the

oil or fat.

The acid value, which is the number of milligrams of potassium hydroxide required to neutralise I gram of the oil or fat, indicates the amount of free acid

The saponification value is the number of milligrams of potassium hydroxide required to neutralise the fatty acids resulting from the complete hydrolysis of

I gram of the oil or fat.

The iodine value, which is the number of grams of iodine that combine with 100 grams of oil or fat, gives the degree of unsaturation of the acids in the substance. Several methods are used for determining the iodine value. In Hubl's method, a carbon tetrachloride solution of the substance is treated with a solution of iodine and mercuric chloride in ethanol; in Wijs' method, iodine monochloride in glacial acetic acid is used. Another method is to use a solution of glacial acetic acid containing pyridine, bromine and concentrated sulphuric acid (Dam's solution).

The Reichert-Meissl value, which is the number of ml. of o.IN-potassium hydroxide required to neutralise the distillate of 5 grams of hydrolysed fat, indicates the amount of steam-volatile fatty acids (i.e., acids up to lauric) present

in the substance.

The acetyl value, which is the number of milligrams of potassium hydroxide required to neutralise the acetic acid obtained when I gram of an acetylated oil or fat is hydrolysed, indicates the number of free hydroxyl groups present in the substance.

Preparation of glycerol from oils and fats. When an oil or fat is hydrolysed by superheated steam, glycerol and the free fatty acids are obtained:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{CH}_2\text{-O}\text{-CO}\text{-R} & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ & & \text{CH}\text{-O}\text{-CO}\text{-R} + 3\text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow & \text{CHOH} + 3\text{R}\text{-CO}_2\text{H} \\ & & \text{CH}_2\text{-O}\text{-CO}\text{-R} & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \end{array}$$

Alternatively, the hydrolysis may be carried out by means of very dilute sulphuric acid in the presence of a catalyst, e.g., 2-(β-sulphonaphthyl)-CH<sub>3</sub>·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>15</sub>·CH·CO<sub>2</sub>H stearic acid. This method is rapidly gaining industrial importance. The free fatty acids are used in the manufacture of candles.

SO<sub>3</sub>H

If an oil or fat is saponified, *i.e.*, hydrolysed with alkali, soaps are obtained. Any metallic salt of a fatty acid is a soap, but the term soap is usually

applied to the water-soluble salts since only these have detergent properties. The saturated fats give hard soaps whereas the unsaturated fats, *i.e.*, the oils, give soft soaps. Ordinary soap is a mixture of the sodium salts of the even fatty acids from octoic to stearic. The sodium salts of a given oil or fat are harder and less soluble than the corresponding potassium salts. Thus soft soaps are usually the potassium salts, particularly when they are derived from oils.

The preparation of soaps and glycerol is carried out by saponifying the oil or fat with sodium hydroxide solution, and then adding sodium chloride to "salt out" the soap, i.e., help the soap to separate out by causing it to rise to the top of the liquid. The lower aqueous layer is run off and glycerol is obtained from it. The soap is again heated with sodium hydroxide solution to ensure complete saponification, and allowed to separate out to the top. The lower layer is run off, and the soap is then boiled with water and allowed to set.

Glycerol is obtained from the aqueous layer by neutralising the excess of sodium hydroxide with sulphuric acid, and evaporating *in vacuo* until the liquid contains about 50 per cent. glycerol. Sodium chloride (which was added for salting out the soap) is precipitated. The liquid is filtered and the sodium chloride is used again. The filtrate is concentrated further by evaporation *in vacuo* until the glycerol content is about 85 per cent. Glycerol is then obtained in over 99 per cent. purity by steam distillation *in vacuo*. A more recent method of purification of crude glycerol is by means of ion-exchange resins.

Hardening of oils. Glycerides of the unsaturated acids are liquid at room temperature and so are unsuitable for edible fats. By converting the unsaturated acids into saturated acids, oils are changed into fats. This introduction of hydrogen is known as the hydrogenation or hardening of oils, and is carried out by the Sabatier-Senderens reduction (p. 38). The oil is heated to 150-200° and hydrogen is passed in, under pressure, in the presence of a finely divided nickel catalyst. The nickel is recovered by filtration. In the hydrogenation process only a proportion of the unsaturated acids are converted into the saturated acids, otherwise a fat as hard as tallow would be obtained; the hydrogenation is carried out until a fat of the desired consistency is obtained.

Synthetic fats. Truly synthetic fats would be those prepared from synthetic glycerol and synthetic fatty acids. The cost of synthetic glycerol is so high that synthetic fats are not, so far, prepared industrially since they cannot compete, in price, with natural fats. During the war (1939–1945), however, synthetic fats were prepared in Germany by three methods:

(i) Glycerol and fatty acids, both of which are obtained as by-products from natural fats, were recombined.

(ii) Fatty acids were esterified with alcohols other than glycerol, e.g., ethanol. These ethyl esters hydrolyse fairly easily, giving rise to an unpleasant taste.

(iii) Acids, obtained by the oxidation of hydrocarbons (p. 175), were esterified with glycerol in the presence of tin or zinc, and under reduced pressure; under these conditions the excess glycerol and the water formed during the reaction were removed.

Phosphatides (phospholipids). These occur in all animal and vegetable cells, and are glycerides in which one organic acid residue, the  $\alpha$ - or  $\beta$ -, is replaced by a group containing phosphoric acid and a base. When the base is cholamine, CH2.OH.CH2.NH2, the phosphatide is known as a kephalin; when the base is choline, CH,OH·CH,·N(CH3)3}OH, the phosphatide is known as a lecithin, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{-O-CO-R} \\ \\ \text{CH-O-CO-R} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-O} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-O} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-O} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-O-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-NH}_2 \\ \text{OH} \\ \\ \text{\alpha-kephalin} \\ \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{-O-CO-R} \\ \text{CH-O-P-O-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-N}(\text{CH}_3)_3\}\text{OH} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-O-CO-R} \\ \text{OH} \\ \\ \text{\alpha-kephalin} \\ \end{array}$$

It is quite likely that both kephalins and lecithins have a betaine structure

(see p. 325).

Only a few monocarboxylic acids have been isolated from phosphatides: stearic, oleic, linoleic and arachidonic from kephalins, and palmitic, stearic, oleic, linoleic, linolenic and arachidonic from lecithins. Enzymic studies of phospholipids have shown that saturated acids predominate at the 1-position and

unsaturated acids at the 2-position (Hanahan et al., 1960).

Drying oils. These are oils which, on exposure to air, change into hard solids, e.g., linseed oil. All drying oils contain a large proportion of the unsaturated acids linoleic and linolenic, and it is this "drying" property which makes these oils valuable in the paint industry. The mechanism of drying is not known. It appears to be a complicated process involving oxidation, polymerisation and colloidal gel formation, and it has been found to be catalysed by various metallic oxides, particularly lead monoxide.

Waxes. These are esters of the higher homologues of both the fatty acids and

monohydric alcohols, e.g.,

C15H31.CO2C30H61 myricyl palmitate beeswax C<sub>15</sub>H<sub>31</sub>•CO<sub>2</sub>C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>33</sub> cetyl palmitate spermaceti C25H51\*CO2C30H61 carnauba wax myricyl cerotate

Some waxes are also esters of cholesterol, e.g., cholesteryl esters occur in woolwax.

## QUESTIONS

1. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when glycol is treated with:—(a) Na, (b) HBr, (c) PCl<sub>5</sub>, (d) PI<sub>3</sub>, (e) AcCl, (f) CH<sub>3</sub>·CHO, (g) CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·CH<sub>3</sub>, (h) H<sub>3</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>, (i) HNO<sub>3</sub>, (j) KMnO<sub>4</sub>, (k) ZnCl<sub>2</sub>, (l) C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·NCO.

2. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when glycerol is treated with:—(a) Na, (b) HCl, (c) PCl<sub>5</sub>, (d) PI<sub>3</sub>, (e) Ac<sub>2</sub>O, (f) HNO<sub>3</sub>, (g) H·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (h) (CO<sub>2</sub>H)<sub>2</sub>, (i) H<sub>3</sub>BO<sub>3</sub>, (j) Br<sub>2</sub>, (k) KHSO<sub>4</sub>, (l) C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CHO.

3. How are glycol and glycerol prepared (i) in the laboratory; (ii) industrially?

4. By means of equations show how you would convert glycerol into:—(a) n-PrOH, (b) dihydroxyacetone, (c) diallyl ether, (d) epichlorohydrin, (e) β-ketoglutaric acid.

5. Show by means of equations how you would prepare:—(a) CH<sub>2</sub>OH·CH<sub>2</sub>·OMe, (b) CH<sub>2</sub>·(OEt)·CH<sub>2</sub>·OEt, (c) CH<sub>2</sub>·(OAc)·CH<sub>2</sub>·O·CO·C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, (d) C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>4</sub>O,

 $CH_2$ — $CH_2$  O, (g)  $Et_2C(OH)\cdot C(OH)Et_2$ , (h) CH<sub>2</sub>OH·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, where n = 1, 2, 3 and 4, respectively, (i) CH<sub>2</sub>OH·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (j) CH<sub>2</sub>OMe·CHOMe·CH<sub>2</sub>OMe, (h) CH<sub>2</sub>OH·CHOAc·CH<sub>2</sub>OH.

6. Define and give examples of:—(a) oils, fats and waxes, (b) acid value, (c) saponification value, (d) iodine value, (e) Reichert-Meissl value, (f) acetyl value, (g) soap, (h) hardening of oils, (i) kephalins, (j) lecithins, (k) drying oils.

7. Show how you would distinguish between: (a) a mineral oil and a vegetable oil;

(b) triolein and tristearin.

#### READING REFERENCES

Davidson, Glycol Ethers, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1926, 18, 669. Snell, Synthetic Detergents and Surface Activity, J. Chem. Educ., 1947, 24, 505. The Structure of Cyclopropane and Ethylene Oxide.

Walsh, Nature, 1947, 159, 165, 712. Robinson, ibid., 1947, 159, 400; 1947, 160, 162.

Linnett, ibid., 1947, 160, 162.

Levey, Synthetic Glycerol, Ind. Eng. Chem. (News Ed.), 1938, 16, 326.

Eoff, Linder and Beyer, Glycerol from Sugar Fermentation, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1919, 11,

Snell, Soap and Glycerol, J. Chem. Educ., 1942, 19, 172. Wurster, Hydrogenation of Fats, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1940, 32, 1193.

Drying Oils.

Bradley, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1937, 29, 440; 1942, 34, 237.

Frilette, ibid., 1946, 38, 493.

Hilditch, Chemical Constitution of Natural Fats, Wiley (1947, 2nd ed.).

Elderfield (Editor), Heterocyclic Compounds, Wiley, Vol. I. (1949). Ch. 1. Ethylene and Trimethylene Oxides.

Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1953). Vol. III, Ch. 3. Lipids. Hartman, Advances in the Synthesis of Glycerides of Fatty Acids, Chem. Reviews, 1958, 58, 845.

Parker and Isaacs, Mechanisms of Epoxide Reactions, Chem. Reviews, 1959, 59, 737.

#### CHAPTER XII

# UNSATURATED ALCOHOLS, ETHERS, CARBONYL COMPOUNDS AND ACIDS

#### UNSATURATED ALCOHOLS

The simplest unsaturated alcohol is vinyl alcohol, CH<sub>2</sub>:CHOH. This is, however, unknown; all attempts to prepare it result in the formation of acetaldehyde (together with a small amount of ethylene oxide), e.g., vinyl bromide on treatment with silver oxide in boiling water gives acetaldehyde:

$$CH_2$$
:CHBr + "AgOH"  $\longrightarrow$  AgBr + [CH<sub>2</sub>:CHOH]  $\longrightarrow$  CH<sub>3</sub>:CHO

It thus appears that the group —CH:CHOH is unstable. It should, however, be noted that this group is unstable only when the CHOH group is at the end of a chain; when it occurs in the chain, *i.e.*, as —CH:C(OH)—, it is stable (cf. keto-enol tautomerism, p. 220).

Although vinyl alcohol itself is unknown, many of its derivatives have been prepared, and are quite stable. These derivatives may be prepared by the interaction between acetylene and the other reactant in the presence of a suitable catalyst (see also p. 93); e.g., vinyl chloride:

C<sub>9</sub>H<sub>9</sub> + HCl 
$$\xrightarrow{\text{Hg}^{2+}}$$
 CH<sub>2</sub>:CHCl

Vinyl chloride may also be prepared directly by the action of concentrated hydrochloric acid on calcium carbide in the presence of mercuric ions as catalyst:

CaC<sub>2</sub> HCl CH<sub>2</sub>:CHCl

Vinyl chloride is manufactured by the thermal decomposition of ethylene chloride at 600-650°:

Vinyl chloride and bromide are conveniently prepared in the laboratory by heating ethylene chloride and bromide, respectively, with ethanolic potassium hydroxide:

$$CH_2Br\cdot CH_2Br + KOH \xrightarrow{ethanol} CH_2:CHBr + KBr + H_2O$$

Many of the vinyl compounds are used to make plastics. Vinyon, which is a thermoplastic, is a copolymer of vinyl chloride and vinyl acetate. Its main use at the moment is the manufacture of industrial filter cloth which is very resistant to the action of acids and alkalis, and which has great

strength both wet and dry.

Vinyl cyanide (acrylonitrile) is very useful for introducing the cyanoethyl group, \*CH<sub>2</sub>\*CH<sub>2</sub>\*CN, by reaction with compounds containing an active methylene group. The best catalyst for cyanoethylation is benzyltrimethyl-

ammonium hydroxide, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>OH<sup>-</sup>, but in many cases an aqueous or ethanolic solution of alkalis is effective (Bruson, 1942, 1943), e.g.,

$$CH_{3} \cdot CO \cdot CH_{2} \cdot CH_{3} + 2CH_{2} \cdot CH \cdot CN \longrightarrow CH_{3} \cdot CO \cdot C \cdot CH_{3}$$

$$CH_{2} \cdot CH_{2} \cdot CH_{3} + 2CH_{2} \cdot CH \cdot CN \longrightarrow CH_{3} \cdot CO \cdot C \cdot CH_{3}$$

$$CH_{2} \cdot CH_{2} \cdot CH_{3} \cdot CN$$

This type of reaction offers a means of preparing a variety of compounds. Vinyl cyanide normally causes di- or tri-cyanoethylation of compounds which have an active methylene or methyl group respectively, but Campbell et. al. (1956) have described conditions for monocyanoethylation. In addition to active methylene and methyl groups, compounds such as primary and secondary amines, alcohols, phenols, etc., can also undergo cyanoethylation.

The halogen atom in vinyl halides is not reactive; vinyl halides do not undergo the usual double decomposition reactions of the alkyl halides. Vinyl chlorides and bromides readily form Grignard reagents in tetrahydrofuran as solvent (Normant, 1954, 1957), and they react with lithium to form lithium compounds which undergo the usual reactions (Braude, 1950-1952; see p. 362), e.g.,

$$R_2C = CHBr \xrightarrow{Li} R_2C = CHLi \xrightarrow{R' \cdot CHO} R_2C = CH \cdot CHOH \cdot R'$$

The reason for the unreactivity of the halogen atom is not clear. Some believe it to be due to resonance through which the halogen atom acquires some double-bond character, and is thereby more strongly bound to the carbon atom due to the shortening of the C-Cl bond (p. 19):

$$CH_2$$
= $CH$ - $Ci$ :  $\longleftrightarrow$   $CH_2$ - $CH$ = $Ci$ :

At the same time, resonance also stabilises the compound, and so the chlorine atom will not be so reactive.

An alternative explanation is that due to Walsh (1947). As we have seen (p. 96), an sp2 hydridised carbon atom attracts electrons more than does an sp3 hydridised carbon atom. Thus the Cl atom in the C-Cl group is more tightly bound in C=C-Cl than in C-C-Cl.

The non-reactivity of the chlorine atom in vinyl chloride may be explained from the M.O. point of view as follows. If the chlorine atom has sp2 hybridisation, the C—Cl bond will be a σ-bond and the two lone pairs of electrons would occupy the other two  $sp^2$  orbitals. This would leave a p orbital containing a lone pair, and this orbital could now conjugate with the  $\pi$ -bond of the ethylenic link (Fig. 1).

Thus two M.O.s will be required to accommodate these four  $\pi$ -electrons found in the vicinity of the chlorine atom. Nevertheless, the chlorine

accommodate these four 
$$\pi$$
-electrons (cf. the carboxyl group, p. 184). Furthermore, since chlorine is far more electron-attracting than carbon, the electrons will tend to be found in the vicinity of the chlorine

atom has now lost "full control" of the lone pair, and so acquires a small positive charge (or alternatively, it is less negative than it would have been had there been no conjugation). Since two carbon atoms have acquired a share in the lone pair, each carbon atom acquires a small negative charge. Hence, owing to de-localisation of bonds (through conjugation), the vinyl chloride molecule has an increased stability. Before the chlorine atom can be displaced by some other group, the lone pair must be localised again on the chlorine atom. This requires energy, and so the chlorine is more "firmly bound" than had no conjugation occurred.

Allyl alcohol (prop-2-en-1-ol), CH2:CH·CH2OH, may be prepared as follows:

(i) By boiling allyl chloride with dilute sodium hydroxide solution under pressure (this is a commercial method).

$$CH_2 = CH \cdot CH_2CI + NaOH \xrightarrow{r_{50}^{\circ}} CH_2 = CH \cdot CH_2OH + NaCI$$

UNSATURATED ALCOHOLS, ETHERS, CARBONYL COMPOUNDS AND ACIDS 267 Another commercial method is the isomerisation of propylene oxide in the presence of lithium phosphate as catalyst (cf. p. 169).

(ii) By the controlled catalytic reduction of propargyl alcohol:

$$\text{CH$:$C$:$CH$_2OH} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_9} \text{CH$_2$:$CH$:$CH$_2OH}$$

(iii) By heating glycerol with formic acid or oxalic acid at 260°:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ | & \text{COOH} \\ | & \text{CHOH} + | \\ | & \text{COOH} \\ | & \text{CHOH} + | \\ | & \text{CHOH} \\ | & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ | & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ | & \text{glycervl} \\ | & \text{monoxalate} \\ | & \text{plyceryl} \\ | & \text{monoformate} \\ | & \text{CH}_2\text{O} \cdot \text{CO} \\ | & \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{CO} \\ | & \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \\ |$$

In practice it is better to use formic acid since this gives a higher yield

(45–47 per cent.).
Allyl alcohol is a colourless, pungent-smelling liquid, b.p. 97°, miscible with water in all proportions. The presence of the allyl group produces a pungent smell in compounds containing it, e.g., mustard oils contain allyl isothiocyanate; onions and garlic, allyl sulphide.

Allyl alcohol has the properties of an unsaturated compound and a primary alcohol. It is oxidised to glycerol by dilute alkaline permanganate:

$$CH_2:CH\cdot CH_2OH + H_2O + [O] \longrightarrow CH_2OH\cdot CHOH\cdot CH_2OH$$

Allyl alcohol (and other α, β-unsaturated primary and secondary alcohols) may be conveniently oxidised to the corresponding oxo compound with manganese dioxide at room temperature (Morton et al., 1948):

$$CH_2 = CH \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{MnO_2} CH_2 = CH \cdot CHO$$

In general, oxidising agents attack the double bond in allyl alcohol as well as the alcoholic group. Oxidation, however, may be carried out by "protecting" the double bond by bromination and then oxidising and debrominating with zinc dust in methanolic solution, e.g.,

Allyl alcohol adds on chlorine or bromine to form the corresponding 2:3dihalogeno-propan-1-ol. Allyl alcohol also adds on halogen acids and hypohalous acids, but the addition takes place contrary to Markownikoff's rule, e.g., glycerol β-monochlorohydrin is formed with hypochlorous acid:

This may be due to the presence of the oxygen atom which exerts a strong inductive effect causing the electromeric effect to take place towards the oxygen atom, i.e.,

$$CH_2 \xrightarrow{\Upsilon} CH \rightarrow CH_2 \rightarrow OH$$

The allyl halides form an interesting group of compounds because of the

high reactivity of the halogen atom.

Allyl chloride (3-chloropropene), b.p. 45°, is prepared industrially by the chlorination of propylene at high temperature. It may be conveniently prepared in the laboratory by warming allyl alcohol with hydrochloric acid:

$$CH_2:CH\cdot CH_2OH + HCl \longrightarrow CH_2:CH\cdot CH_2Cl + H_2O$$

It is now important as a chemical raw material for the production of drugs,

plastics, etc.

Allyl bromide (3-bromopropene), b.p. 70°, is best prepared in the laboratory by distilling aqueous allyl alcohol with 48 per cent. hydrobromic acid in the presence of sulphuric acid:

$$CH_2:CH\cdot CH_2OH + HBr \longrightarrow CH_2:CH\cdot CH_2Br + H_2O$$
 (92-96%)

Allyl iodide (3-iodopropene), b.p. 103.1°, may be prepared by heating

glycerol with a small amount of hydriodic acid (p. 256).

The halogen atom in the allyl halides is very reactive, and it has been found experimentally that the position of the double bond with respect to the halogen atom determines the reactivity of the halogen atom. In compounds of the type C.C.—X, the halogen atom X is unreactive (see vinyl halides, above). In C.C.C.—X, X is more reactive than in the alkyl halides. When the halogen atom in an unsaturated compound is further removed from the double bond than in the allyl position, it behaves similarly to the halogen atom in alkyl halides; e.g., 4-chlorobut-r-ene, CH<sub>2</sub>·CH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>CI, undergoes the usual reactions of the alkyl halides with reagents that do not affect the double bond.

The high reactivity of the allyl halides may be explained by the fact that when the halogen atom ionises, the allyl carbonium ion produced is a reson-

ance hybrid, and consequently it is stabilised (see also p. 271):

$$\mathrm{CH_2}\!\!=\!\!\mathrm{CH}\!\!-\!\!\mathrm{CH}_2^+\!\!\longleftrightarrow\!\overset{+}{\mathrm{CH}_2}\!\!-\!\!\mathrm{CH}\!\!=\!\!\mathrm{CH}_2$$

The more stable the ion produced, the more easily it is formed. Alkyl carbonium ions cannot be stabilised by resonance, and hence the alkyl halides are not so reactive as the allyl halides.

The allyl halides add on the halogen acids to form a mixture of the 1:2-and 1:3-dihalides. The addition of hydrogen bromide to allyl bromide has been studied in great detail (Kharasch, 1933):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{:}\text{CH}\text{:}\text{CH}_2\text{Br} + \text{HBr} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{Br}\text{:}\text{CH}_2\text{:}\text{CH}_2\text{Br} + \text{CH}_3\text{:}\text{CHBr}\text{:}\text{CH}_2\text{Br} \\ \text{1:3-dibromide} \end{array}$$

In the presence of peroxides, the I:3-dibromide is obtained in 90 per cent. yield. In the absence of peroxides, the I:2-dibromide is obtained in 90 per cent. yield. When allyl bromide, which has not been carefully purified, is treated with hydrogen bromide, without special precautions being taken to exclude all traces of air, a mixture of the I:2- and I:3-dibromides is obtained.

The explanation for these results is as follows. The 1:3-dibromide is formed by a free-radical mechanism, the peroxides producing atomic

UNSATURATED ALCOHOLS, ETHERS, CARBONYL COMPOUNDS AND ACIDS 269

bromine from the hydrogen bromide, thereby setting up a free-radical chain reaction (cf. p. 68):

Mayo (1940) has suggested that the bromine atom adds to the terminal carbon to give a secondary free radical which is more stable than a primary free radical. Evidence for this free-radical mechanism is that it takes place in the presence of peroxides; the formation of the I: 3-dibromo compound is very largely suppressed in the presence of antioxidants (which destroy peroxides); and its formation is catalysed by light (which is known to produce free radicals).

The mechanism for the formation of the I: 2-dibromide is *polar* (which gives "normal" addition; see p. 68). At first sight, however, the polar mechanism would be expected to produce the I: 3-dibromide because of the

inductive effect of the bromine atom, i.e.

$$\overset{\frown}{\text{CH}_2\text{--CH}_2} \longrightarrow \text{Br} + \text{HBr} \longrightarrow \overset{+}{\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \text{Br}} + \text{Br} \longrightarrow \overset{+}{\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \text{Br}} + \text{Br} \longrightarrow \overset{+}{\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \text{Br}}$$

Baker and Nathan (1953), however, have explained the r:2-addition by what is often referred to as the Baker-Nathan effect. As we have seen, the general inductive effect of alkyl groups is  $Me_3C > Me_2CH > MeCH_2 > Me$ . This inductive order has been used satisfactorily to explain various physical data, etc. In some reactions, however, the inductive order is reversed, e.g., Baker and Nathan (1935) examined kinetically the reaction between p-substituted benzyl bromides and pyridine. The reaction was carried out in acetone, and was shown to be entirely  $S_N2$ . Thus the reaction may be formulated:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{alated:} \\ \text{R} \xrightarrow{\searrow} \text{CH}_2^{\swarrow} : \text{N} \longrightarrow \text{R} \xrightarrow{-} \text{CH}_2^{-+} \text{N} \longrightarrow \right\} \text{Br}^-$$

The greater the +I effect of the R group, the faster should be the reaction, but it was found that the rate order for the R groups was

$$Me > Et > isoPr \sim t$$
-Bu

Thus the order of electron release is almost exactly the *reverse* of that given above. Therefore alkyl groups must possess some mechanism of electron-release in which the order is

$$Me > Et > isoPr > t-Bu$$

Further work showed that in all cases where the general inductive order of alkyl groups was reversed, the alkyl group was attached to an aromatic nucleus. This led Baker and Nathan (1935, 1939) to suggest that when the H—C bond is attached to an unsaturated carbon atom, the σ-electrons of the H—C bond become less localised by entering into partial conjugation with the attached unsaturated system, i.e.,

Thus there is conjugation between electrons of single and those of multiple bonds. This type of conjugation is known as hyperconjugation, and is a

permanent effect (this name was given by Mulliken, 1941).

There are various ways of looking at the hyperconjugative effect. A widely used one is to regard the H-C bond as possessing partial ionic character due to resonance, e.g., propylene may be written as a resonance hybrid as follows:

From this point of view, hyperconjugation may be regarded as " no bond resonance". The hydrogen atoms are not free; the effect is to increase the ionic character of the C—H bond, the electrons of which become partially delocalised through conjugation.

Various physical data have been explained by hyperconjugation, e.g.,

bond lengths:

$$CH_3$$
— $CH_3$   $CH_3$ — $C\equiv CH$   $I \cdot 46A$ 

Because of hyperconjugation, the CH<sub>3</sub>—C bond has some partial double

bond character and consequently is shortened.

Also, since hyperconjugation stabilises a molecule (through resonance), propylene, for example, should be more stable than "expected". This has been found to be so; the observed heat of hydrogenation of propylene is less than the calculated value.

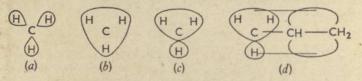
Using this scheme of hyperconjugation, we are now in a position to explain the formation of the 1:2-dibromide from allyl bromide and hydrogen bromide

by the polar mechanism.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{H} & \text{H}^{+} \\ \text{CH}_{2}\!\!=\!\!\text{CH}\!\!-\!\!\text{CHBr} \longleftrightarrow \text{CH}_{2}\!\!=\!\!\text{CH}\!\!-\!\!\!\text{CHBr} \longleftrightarrow \\ \overline{\text{CH}_{2}}\!\!-\!\!\text{CH}\!\!=\!\!\!\text{CHBr} \xrightarrow{\text{HBr}} \text{CH}_{3}\!\!\cdot\!\!\text{CHBr}\!\cdot\!\!\text{CH}_{2}\!\!\text{Br} \end{array}$$

The inductive effect of the bromine atom would tend to give the I: 3-dibromide (see above). If, however, the hyperconjugative effect is operating, andisstronger than the -I effect of the bromine atom, then the I: 2-dibromide will be formed.

An interesting point here is that with allyl alcohol, the -I effect of the hydroxyl group is stronger than hyperconjugative effect (p. 519).



From the M.O. point of view, hyperconjugation may be explained as follows: π-Orbitals can overlap with other π-orbitals to produce conjugation (p. 88).  $\pi$ -Orbitals, however, can also overlap to a certain extent with adjacent  $\sigma$ -orbitals to form extended orbitals. When this occurs we have hyperconjugation, and this phenomenon is exhibited mainly by the hydrogen bonds in a methyl group when

this group is attached to an unsaturated carbon atom. The question is: how does this overlapping occur? Coulson (1942) treats the methyl group (Fig. 2a) as a "compound" atom to form a "group" orbital (Fig. b). An alternative "group" orbital may also be formed as in (c). In this arrangement, the methyl group behaves as a group with a  $\pi$ -orbital, and this can conjugate with an adjacent  $\pi$ -bond in, e.g., propylene (Fig. d). Hence, owing to partial delocalisation of bonds ( $\sigma$  and  $\pi$ ) in this way, the propylene molecule is more stable than "expected".

The unusual reactivity of the halogen atom in allyl halides may be explained as follows. If the chlorine were to ionise, the carbon atom to which it was attached now has a positive charge and has only six electrons. Hence the  $\pi$ -bond covering the other two carbon atoms can extend to embrace this third carbon atom. The net result is an M.O. covering three carbon atoms, and so the delocalisation energy will be increased, i.e., the new arrangement is stabilised,

and behaves as if the chlorine atom is ionic (Fig. 3).

$$CH_2 - CH - CH_2 - CI \rightarrow CH_2 - CH - CH_2 + CI - CH_2 - CH - CH_2 + CI - CH_2$$

FIG. 12.3.

There is now, however, a certain amount of doubt that dipole moment data are evidence for hyperconjugation. Since the electronegativity of a carbon atom depends on its state of hybridisation, there will be a bond moment when two differently hybridised carbon atoms are linked together. Petro (1958) has calculated bond moments for several types of carbon carbon single bonds:

 Bond
 Bond moment

  $C(sp^5)^+$ — $C(sp^2)^-$  0.68D

  $C(sp^2)^+$ — $C(sp)^-$  1.15D

  $C(sp^3)^+$ — $C(sp)^-$  1.48D

Ferreira (1960) has calculated the dipole moments of various molecules, e.g., toluene, propylene, etc., on these principles, and has shown that the calculated values agree well with the experimental values. Thus it appears that dipole moment evidence for hyperconjugation is not valid.

It has also been found experimentally that all C—C single bonds are not the

same length, e.g.,

This shortening has been attributed to hyperconjugation, but it can also be explained in terms of different electronegativities of the two carbon atoms.

It is quite possible, however, since bond moment (and bond lengths) is a ground-state property, that hyperconjugation exists in excited states and in transition states of molecules, and therefore is important for the interpretation of reactivity of molecules.

Mulliken (1959) has concluded that the explanation offered above is partly right, but does not believe the  $\pi$ -delocalisation shortenings are negligible. He has made some calculations and has attributed 40 per cent. of observed shortenings to  $\pi$ -electron resonance and 60 per cent. to hybridisation differences.

Crotyl alcohol (crotonyl alcohol, but-2-en-1-ol), CH<sub>3</sub>·CH:CH·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, may be prepared by the reduction of crotonaldehyde with aluminium isopropoxide (p. 150);

CH<sub>3</sub>·CH:CH·CHO -[(CH<sub>3</sub>),CHO],Al CH<sub>3</sub>·CH:CH·CH<sub>2</sub>OH (85-90%)

Crotyl alcohol is a colourless liquid, b.p. 118°, fairly soluble in water. When treated with hydrogen bromide, crotyl alcohol produces a mixture of crotyl and methylvinylcarbinyl bromide:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH:CH-CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{HBr}} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH:CH-CH}_2\text{Br} + \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CHBr-CH:CH}_2$$

The formation of the rearranged product is an example of anionotropy, and the most widely studied example is the three-carbon system, *i.e.*, the allylic system. Nucleophilic substitution reactions of allylic halides may occur by the  $S_N^2$  mechanism, and when this is operating, substitution proceeds normally (see below). When, however, nucleophilic substitution reactions are carried out under conditions which favour the unimolecular mechanism, then the product may be a mixture of two isomers, the rearranged product being an example of the *allylic rearrangement*. The mechanism by which this rearrangement occurs is known as  $S_N^{I}$ , and the steps involved are believed to be as follows, via a resonance hybrid cation:

There is much evidence to support this  $S_N \mathbf{1}'$  mechanism, e.g., Hughes et al. (1948) examined the conversion of  $\alpha$ -methylallyl and crotyl chloride into  $\alpha$ -methylallyl and crotyl ethyl ether by reaction with ethanolic sodium ethoxide. The concentration of the sodium ethoxide was made so small as to give first-order kinetics, or so large as to give second-order kinetics. The results were:

With second-order substitution, each chloride gives its own unrearranged ether (thus the  $S_N2$  mechanism). With first-order substitution, however, each chloride gives the same mixture of isomeric ethers. This latter result may be explained by assuming that two mechanisms are operating  $S_N I$  (without rearrangement) and  $S_N I'$  (with rearrangement), both proceeding through a common intermediate cation.

An interesting point about this reaction is the predominance of the crotyl ether whichever chloride is used as starting material. A possible answer is hyperconjugation, which can stabilise the crotyl cation but not the  $\alpha$ -methylallyl cation:

In addition to the  $S_N I'$  mechanism, there is also the  $S_N 2'$ , i.e., a bimolecular nucleophilic substitution with allylic rearrangement. This has been difficult

to demonstrate, but a good example of it has been given by de la Mare et al. (1953). These authors have suppressed the  $S_{\rm N}2$  reaction by steric factors and reduced the  $S_{\rm N}1$  reaction by means of a reagent of high nucleophilic activity and a solvent of low ionising power. They found that the reaction between  $\alpha$ :  $\alpha$ -dimethylallyl chloride and sodium thiophenoxide in ethanol gives 62 per cent. of rearranged product by a second-order reaction (i.e.,  $S_{\rm N}2'$ ):

One other problem that will be discussed here is the case of ion pairs in the allylic rearrangement (see also p. 109). Young et al. (1951) have shown that  $\alpha$ :  $\alpha$ -dimethylallyl chloride in acetic acid undergoes acetolysis accompanied by rearrangement to  $\gamma$ :  $\gamma$ -dimethylallyl chloride:

The rate of the isomerisation was shown to be proportional to the concentration of the starting chloride only. Thus a possible mechanism is the  $S_N \mathbf{I}'$ . If this were so, then the rate of isomerisation would be affected by addition of chloride ions (since the first step is ionisation). Experiment showed that the rate was unaffected by added chloride ions, and it was also shown that when an excess of radioactive chloride ion was added, the rate of isomerisation was far greater than the incorporation of  $Cl^*-$ . It thus appears that the chloride ion is set free during the isomerisation and is mainly the "first ion" to recombine, even though the solution contains a large excess of  $Cl^*-$  ions. Young et al. explained this result by assuming that the starting chloride undergoes ionisation to form an ion-pair, and this is followed by internal return:

Nevertheless, some ion-pairs escape from the solvent cage, and these "free" carbonium ions are capable of undergoing acetolysis and combination with Cl\*-.

A number of unsaturated alcohols occur in essential oils. The essential oils are volatile oils with pleasant odours, and are obtained from various plants to which they impart their characteristic odours. They are widely used in the perfume industry. Citronellol occurs in citronella oil, rose oil, etc. It appears to be a mixture of the two structural isomers I and II:

Geraniol and nerol are *cis-trans* isomers of the following structure (and possibly of the structure corresponding to II above):

Geraniol is a constituent of geranium oil, rose oil, etc. Nerol occurs in neroli oil, etc. Linalool, which is an isomer of geraniol and nerol, occurs in linaloe oil, lavender oil, coriander oil, etc.:

These alcohols are the oxygen derivatives of the group of compounds known as the open-chain terpenes. It appears that all of these alcohols are mixtures of

structural isomers (see citronellol, above). It is possible, however, that the two structures form a three-carbon tautomeric system:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_3 & CH_3 \\ CH_3 - C - CH - CH_2 - C - CH_2 - CH_3 - CH_$$

Farnesol, a sesquiterpene alcohol, occurs in rose oil, the oil from ambrette seeds, etc., and, like the terpene alcohols, is a mixture of two forms, one of which is:

Phytol is an unsaturated alcohol which occurs in chlorophyll (the green colouring matter of leaves and other parts of a plant). Its structure is:

$$(\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH}\boldsymbol{\cdot} (\mathrm{CH_2})_3\boldsymbol{\cdot} \mathrm{CH}\boldsymbol{\cdot} (\mathrm{CH_2})_3\boldsymbol{\cdot} \mathrm{CH}\boldsymbol{\cdot} (\mathrm{CH_2})_3\boldsymbol{\cdot} \mathrm{C}\boldsymbol{\cdot} \mathrm{CH}\boldsymbol{\cdot} \mathrm{CH_2} \mathrm{OH}$$

The simplest acetylenic alcohol is **propargyl alcohol** (prop-2-yn-I-ol), CH:C·CH<sub>2</sub>OH. This may be prepared from I:2:3-tribromopropane by the following series of reactions, which clearly show the difference in reactivity of the bromine atoms, and at the same time illustrate the use of aqueous and ethanolic solutions of potassium hydroxide:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH$_2$Br$•$CH$_2$Br} \xrightarrow{\text{ethanolic}} \text{CH$_2$:$CBr$•$CH$_2$Br} \xrightarrow{\text{aqueous}} \xrightarrow{\text{KOH}} \\ \text{CH$_2$:$CBr$•$CH$_2$OH} \xrightarrow{\text{ethanolic}} \text{CH$:$C$•$CH$_2$OH} \end{array}$$

Propargyl alcohol (together with butyne-diol) is prepared by the interaction of acetylene and formaldehyde in the presence of silver or cuprous acetylide as catalyst:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{$C_2$H}_2 + \text{$H$ \cdot $C$HO} \xrightarrow{\text{$Ag_2C_2$}} \text{$C$H$ : $C$ \cdot $C$H}_2\text{OH} \\ \text{$C_2$H}_2 + 2\text{$H$ \cdot $C$HO} \xrightarrow{\text{$Ag_2C_2$}} \text{$C$H}_2\text{OH} \cdot \text{$C$ : $C$ \cdot $C$H}_2\text{OH} \end{array}$$

Propargyl alcohol is a colourless liquid, b.p. 114°. It behaves in many ways like acetylene, e.g., it adds on two or four bromine atoms, and forms the silver or cuprous compounds when treated with an ammoniacal solution of silver nitrate or cuprous chloride. It may be catalytically reduced to allyl and n-propyl alcohols; it is now being used to prepare these two compounds commercially.

### UNSATURATED ETHERS

The simplest unsaturated ether is methyl vinyl ether, CH<sub>3</sub>·O·CH:CH<sub>2</sub>, which is prepared industrially by passing acetylene into methanol at 160-200° in the presence of 1-2 per cent. potassium methoxide, and under pressure sufficient to prevent boiling:

The acetylene is diluted with nitrogen to prevent explosions.

Methyl vinyl ether is a very reactive gas, b.p. 5-6°. It is hydrolysed rapidly by dilute acid at room temperature to give methanol and acetaldehyde (cf. the ethers).

$$CH_3 \cdot O \cdot CH : CH_2 + H_2O \longrightarrow CH_3OH + CH_3 \cdot CHO$$

This is a potential industrial method for preparing acetaldehyde. Methyl vinyl ether is stable in alkaline solution. It undergoes many addition reactions at the double bond, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{:}\text{CH}\text{:}\text{O}\text{:}\text{CH}_3 + \text{HCl} \xrightarrow{\circ^\circ} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{:}\text{CHCl}\text{:}\text{O}\text{:}\text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{:}\text{CH}\text{:}\text{O}\text{:}\text{CH}_3 + \text{CH}_3\text{OH} \xrightarrow{25^\circ} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{:}\text{CH(OCH}_3)_2 \end{array}$$

It readily polymerises, and is used for making polyvinyl ether plastics.

Divinyl ether (vinyl ether), CH<sub>2</sub>·CH·O·CH·CH<sub>2</sub>, may be prepared by heating ethylene chlorohydrin with sulphuric acid, and then passing the product, 2:2'-dichlorodiethyl ether, over potassium hydroxide at 200–240°:

$$2\text{ClCH}_2\text{·CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4} \text{ClCH}_2\text{·CH}_2\text{$$

Divinyl ether is a colourless liquid, b.p. 39°. It is used as an anæsthetic, being better for this purpose than diethyl ether.

#### UNSATURATED ALDEHYDES

The simplest unsaturated aldehyde is acraldehyde (acrolein, prop-2-en-1-al), CH<sub>2</sub>:CH·CHO. This is conveniently prepared by heating glycerol with potassium hydrogen sulphate, which is the most satisfactory dehyrating agent for this reaction:

$$CH_2OH \cdot CHOH \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{-2H_4O} CH_2 \cdot CH \cdot CHO$$
 (33-48%)

Acraldehyde may also be readily prepared by the oxidation of allyl alcohol with manganese dioxide (p. 267).

Acraldehyde is prepared industrially in many ways, e.g.,

(i) by passing a mixture of acetaldehyde and formaldehyde vapour over sodium silicate as catalyst:

$$CH_3 \cdot CHO + CH_2O \longrightarrow CH_2 = CH \cdot CHO + H_2O$$

(ii) By the direct oxidation of propylene over copper oxide:

$$CH_2 = CH \cdot CH_3 + O_2 \longrightarrow CH_2 = CH \cdot CHO + H_2O.$$

(iii) By the pyrolysis of diallyl ether:

$$(CH_2=CH\cdot CH_2=)_2O \longrightarrow CH_2=CH\cdot CHO + CH_3\cdot CH=CH_2 + H_2$$

Acraldehyde is a colourless liquid, b.p. 52°, with a pungent irritating odour. It is unstable, readily polymerising to a white solid. It is an αβ-unsaturated aldehyde, and undergoes many of the usual reactions of an olefin and an aldehyde, e.g., it adds on two halogen atoms or a molecule of halogen acid (contrary to Markownikoff's rule; cf. allyl alcohol):

$$\text{CH}_2\text{:CH} \cdot \text{CHO} + \text{Br}_2 \longrightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{Br} \cdot \text{CHBr} \cdot \text{CHO}$$
 $\text{CH}_2\text{:CH} \cdot \text{CHO} + \text{HCl} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{Cl} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CHO}$ 

The addition of hydrogen bromide is unaffected by the presence of peroxides. Acraldehyde reduces ammoniacal silver nitrate, forms a cyanohydrin with hydrogen cyanide, and a phenylhydrazone with phenylhydrazine:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{:CH}\text{-}\text{CHO} + [O] \xrightarrow{\text{AgNO}_5} \rightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{:CH}\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{:CH}\text{-}\text{CHO} + \text{HCN} &\longrightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{:CH}\text{-}\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{-}\text{CN} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{:CH}\text{-}\text{CHO} + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{-}\text{NH}\text{-}\text{NH}_2 &\longrightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{:CH}\text{-}\text{CH}\text{:N}\text{-}\text{NH}\text{-}\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \\ \end{array}$$

Acraldehyde undergoes the Tischenko reaction (p. 161) to form allylacrylate:

2CH2:CH-CHO (C,H,O),AI CH2:CH-CO2CH2-CH:CH2

It does not, however, undergo the normal aldol condensation; instead, in the presence of alkali, cleavage of the molecule takes place:

$$CH_2$$
: $CH$ · $CHO + H_2O \stackrel{NaOH}{\smile} H$ · $CHO + CH_3$ · $CHO$ 

This reaction is actually the reversal of the aldol condensation, and is

characteristic of αβ-unsaturated aldehydes.

When acraldehyde is reduced with metal and acid, there are obtained an unsaturated alcohol, a saturated alcohol, a saturated alcohol, and a compound formed by bimolecular reduction:

A good yield of the bimolecular product is obtained by reducing acraldehyde with magnesium amalgam (cf. pinacol, p. 253). Acraldehyde is reduced by sodium amalgam to n-propanol and by aluminium isopropoxide (Meerwein-Ponndorf-Verley reduction, p. 150) to allyl alcohol. It should be noted that metal and acid do not usually reduce a double bond; it is only when the double bond is in the αβ-position with respect to a carbonyl group that it is reduced in this way (see also below). \( \alpha \beta-\text{Unsaturated aldehydes} \) may be catalytically reduced to unsaturated alcohols by means of a platinum catalyst in the presence of traces of ferrous sulphate and zinc acetate; the former promotes reduction of the aldehyde group and the latter inhibits reduction of the double bond (Adams et al., 1927). When Raney nickel is used as catalyst at fairly low temperatures and pressures, the product is a saturated aldehyde, but at higher temperatures and pressures the product is a saturated alcohol. Broadbent et al. (1959) have shown that both rhenium heptaselenide and heptasulphide are good catalysts for hydrogenation. Both are resistant to poisoning, but the former saturates the carbon-oxygen double bond more easily than the carbon-carbon double bond.

αβ-Unsaturated aldehydes (and ketones) may be reduced to the un-

saturated alcohols by lithium aluminium hydride, e.g.,

$$CH_3$$
· $CH$ = $CH$ · $CHO$   $\xrightarrow{LiAlH_4}$   $CH_3$ · $CH$ = $CH$ · $CH_2OH$ 

If, however, a phenyl group is attached to the  $\beta$ -carbon atom, the double bond is also reduced (see cinnamic acid, p. 690).

Acraldehyde adds on to butadiene to form a cyclic compound (see the

Diels-Alder reaction, p. 472):

Crotonaldehyde (but-2-en-1-al), CH<sub>3</sub>·CH·CHO, may be prepared by heating aldol alone, or better, with a dehydrating agent, e.g., zinc chloride. The best yield is obtained by distilling aldol with acetic acid as catalyst:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CHOH-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CHO} \xrightarrow{-\text{H}_4\text{O}} \text{-CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH:}\text{CH-}\text{CHO}$$

Crotonaldehyde is a colourless liquid, b.p. 104°. It closely resembles acraldehyde in its chemical properties. It exists, however, in two geometrical isomeric forms, cis and trans:

Catalytic reduction (Raney nickel) of crotonaldehyde in the presence of chloroform gives butyraldehyde; in the absence of chloroform, butanol is formed (Cornubert et al., 1950).

A number of unsaturated aldehydes occur naturally in the essential oils, many accompanying the corresponding unsaturated alcohol, e.g., citral or geranial, neral, citronellal.

The simplest acetylenic aldehyde is propargylaldehyde (propiolaldehyde, propynal), CH:C•CHO. This may be prepared from acraldehyde, the aldehyde group of which must be "protected" by acetal formation:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{:CH·CHO} + 2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} & \stackrel{\text{HCl}}{\Longrightarrow} \text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{CH}_2\text{:CH·CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_9} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{Br·CHBr·CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2 & \stackrel{\text{ethanolic}}{\Longrightarrow} \text{CH:C·CH}(\text{OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{dilute}} \text{CH:C·CHO} \end{array}$$

It may also be obtained by the controlled oxidation of propargyl alcohol. Propargylaldehyde is a liquid, b.p. 60°, which undergoes cleavage when treated with sodium hydroxide (cf. acraldehyde, above):

#### UNSATURATED KETONES

The simplest unsaturated ketone is methyl vinyl ketone (but-3-en-2-one), CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·CH·CH<sub>2</sub>. This may be prepared by means of an aldol condensation between formaldehyde and acetone, the product being dehydrated by heat.

$$\text{H-CHO} + \text{CH}_3 \text{-CO-CH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \text{CH}_2 \text{OH-CH}_2 \text{-CO-CH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{-H}_3 \text{O}} \text{CH}_2 \text{-CH-CO-CH}_3$$

It may also be prepared by the action of acetic anhydride on ethylene in the presence of zinc chloride as catalyst:

$$CH_2:CH_2 + (CH_3:CO)_2O \xrightarrow{ZnCl_3} CH_2:CH:CO:CH_3 + CH_3:CO_2H$$

Methyl vinyl ketone may also be prepared by the action of acetic anhydride on vinylmagnesium bromide in tetrahydrofuran at  $-60^{\circ}$  to  $-70^{\circ}$  (Martin, 1957); this is a general method for preparing vinyl ketones:

$$2CH_2 = CH \cdot MgBr + 2(CH_3 \cdot CO)_2O \longrightarrow$$

$$2CH_2 = CH \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + MgBr_2 + (CH_3 \cdot CO_2)_2Mg \quad (60-80\%)$$

It is manufactured by hydrating vinylacetylene in the presence of dilute sulphuric acid and mercuric sulphate (cf. acetaldehyde, p. 166):

Methyl vinyl ketone is a liquid, b.p. 79°, which polymerises on standing. It is used commercially as the starting material for plastics.

Reduction of vinyl ketones with zinc or magnesium produces 1:6-diketones (Kossanyi, 1960):

Mesityl oxide (4-methylpent-3-en-2-one), (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C:CH·CO·CH<sub>3</sub>, may be prepared by distilling diacetone alcohol (q.v.) with a trace of iodine:

$$(CH_3)_2C(OH)\cdot CH_2\cdot CO\cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{-H_3O} (CH_3)_2C\cdot CH\cdot CO\cdot CH_3$$
 (90%)

Stross et al. (1947) have shown that mesityl oxide prepared this way is a mixture of mesityl oxide and isomesityl oxide, CH<sub>2</sub>·C(CH<sub>3</sub>)·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO·CH<sub>3</sub>.

Mesityl oxide may also be prepared as follows:

$$(CH_3)_2C:CH_2 + CH_3 \cdot COCI \xrightarrow{ZnCl_4} (CH_8)_2CCl \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{-HCl} (CH_3)_2C:CH \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$$

Mesityl oxide is a liquid, b.p. 130°, with a peppermint smell. It is used

as a solvent for oils, gums, etc.

Phorone (2: 6-dimethylhepta-2: 5-dien-4-one), (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C:CH·CO·CH:C(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, may be prepared by the action of hydrochloric acid on acetone:

$$_{\rm 3CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3} \xrightarrow{\rm HCl} (\rm CH_3)_2 \rm C: \rm CH \cdot \rm CO \cdot \rm CH: \rm C(\rm CH_3)_2 + 2 \rm H_2O$$

Phorone is a yellow, crystalline solid, m.p. 28°, b.p. 198°.

 $\alpha\beta$ -Unsaturated ketones show very marked additive properties at the olefinic double bond. They may be reduced catalytically (platinum or nickel catalyst) to saturated ketones, since the olefinic linkage is more rapidly reduced than the keto group. If the hydrogenation is carried further, saturated alcohols are produced:

$$\text{R-CH:CH-CO-R'} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2} \text{R-CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO-R'} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2} \text{R-CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CHOH-R'}$$

Cornubert et al. (1954) have shown that the double bond may be selectively reduced by catalytic hydrogenation (Raney nickel) if the reaction is carried out in ethylene chloride solution.

Reduction with metal and acid, or better, with magnesium amalgam, gives

bimolecular products (cf. acraldehyde, above):

$${\scriptstyle 2(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{C:CH-CO-CH}_3 \xrightarrow{\quad \text{Mg/Hg} \quad} \begin{pmatrix} \text{CH}_3)_2\text{C-CH}_2\text{-CO-CH}_3 \\ \\ \text{(CH}_3)_2\text{C-CH}_2\text{-CO-CH}_3 \end{pmatrix}}$$

Reduction of  $\alpha$ :  $\beta$ -unsaturated ketones with a mixture of lithium aluminium hydride and aluminium chloride reduces the carbonyl group to a methylene

group.

The addition of halogen to  $\alpha$ :  $\beta$ -unsaturated ketones occurs by the normal electrophilic mechanism across the 3:4-positions. The addition of halogen acids, however, occurs by nucleophilic attack by the 1:4-mechanism (see below).

The  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated ketones add on ammonia, primary amines and secondary amines to form  $\beta$ -amino compounds; with ammonia, mesityl oxide forms diacetonamine, and phorone forms triacetonamine:

$$(CH_3)_2C:CH\cdot CO\cdot CH_3 + NH_3 \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2C\cdot CH_2\cdot CO\cdot CH_3$$
 
$$(CH_3)_2C:CH\cdot CO\cdot CH:C(CH_3)_2 + 2NH_3 \longrightarrow \\ \begin{bmatrix} (CH_3)_2C\cdot CH_2\cdot CO\cdot CH_2\cdot C(CH_3)_2 \\ NH_2 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{-NH_3} CO \xrightarrow{CH_2-C(CH_3)_2} NH_2$$

All the evidence is in favour of a 1:4-addition mechanism when the addendum is of the type H—Z, the product being an enol which then tautomerises to the stable keto form, the overall result being 3:4-addition, e.g.,

With halogen acid, the mechanism will be:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} & \text{OH} & \text{OH} \\ \text{R-CH-CH-CR'} & \xrightarrow{\text{HX}} & \text{R-CH-CH-CR'} & \xrightarrow{\text{X-}} & \text{R-CHX-CH-CR'} & \rightarrow \\ \text{R-CHX-CH}_2 \cdot & \text{COR'} & \rightarrow \end{array}$$

One of the most important reactions that  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated ketones undergo is the Michael condensation (1887). This is the addition reaction between an  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated keto-compound and a compound with an active methylene group, e.g., malonic ester, acetoacetic ester, etc. The condensation is carried out in the presence of a base, e.g., sodium ethoxide, or secondary

amines.

$$(i) \ \ (CH_3)_2C:CH \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + \ CH_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 \xrightarrow{C_4H_{10}NH} \ \ (CH_3)_2C \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$$

(ii) 
$$(CH_3)_2C:CH*CO*CH_3 + CH_3*CO*CH_2*CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{C_4H_{19}NH} (CH_3)_2C*CH_2*CO*CH_3$$
  
 $CH_3*CO*CH*CO_2C_2H_5$ 

By this means it is possible to synthesise a variety of compounds. The description of the Michael condensation given above is a limited one. The term now includes a large variety of addenda and acceptors; the  $\alpha$ :  $\beta$ -unsaturated compounds may be ketones, esters, cyanides, etc., and the addenda may be malonic ester, E.A.A., cyanoacetic ester, nitroalkanes, etc.

The mechanism of the reaction is believed to be as follows (cf. the aldol and Claisen condensations); e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{Et})_2 + \text{EtO}^- \Longrightarrow \overline{\text{CH}}(\text{CO}_2\text{Et})_2 + \text{EtOH} \\ \\ \text{Me}_2\text{C} \longrightarrow \text{CH} \longrightarrow \text{CMe} + \overline{\text{CH}}(\text{CO}_2\text{Et})_2 \Longrightarrow \\ \\ \text{O} \longrightarrow \text{H} \\ \\ \text{Me}_2\text{C} \longrightarrow \text{CH} \longrightarrow \text{CMe} \\ \\ \text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{Et})_2 & \text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{Et})_2 \\ \\ \longrightarrow & \text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{Et})_2 \\ \end{array}$$

# UNSATURATED MONOCARBOXYLIC ACIDS

Nomenclature. The longest carbon chain with the carboxyl group and the double bond is chosen, and the position of the double bond with respect to the carboxyl group is indicated by number, e.g.,

CH3-CH:CH-CH2-CO2H pent-3-enoic acid

Alternatively, the acid is named as a substitution product of the olefin, e.g.,

## CH3 CH:CH CO2H prop-1-ene-1-carboxylic acid

In practice the unsaturated acids are usually known by their common

names (see text below).

Many methods are available for preparing unsaturated monocarboxylic acids, but each one depends on the position of the double bond in the acid. A general method for preparing  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated acids is by the **Knoevenagel reaction** (1898). This is the reaction between aldehydes and compounds with active methylene groups in the presence of an organic base. The reaction may take place in one of two ways:

(i) R·CHO + CH<sub>2</sub>(CO<sub>2</sub>C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub> 
$$\xrightarrow{\text{base}}$$
 R·CH:C(CO<sub>2</sub>C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub> + H<sub>2</sub>O  
(ii) R·CHO + 2CH<sub>2</sub>(CO<sub>2</sub>C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub>  $\xrightarrow{\text{base}}$  R·CH  $\xrightarrow{\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2}$  + H<sub>2</sub>O

Reaction (i) is favoured by using equivalent amounts of aldehyde and ethyl malonate in the presence of pyridine (Doebner, 1900). Reaction (ii) is favoured by using excess ethyl malonate in the presence of piperidine, and when the aldehyde is aliphatic. Furthermore, it appears that the term Knoevenagel reaction is taken to mean the condensation when unsaturated compounds are produced. Obviously then, to prepare  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated acids, (i) must be used, followed by hydrolysis and heating.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CHO} + \text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{pyridine'}} \text{R-CH:C(CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{(i) KOH}} \\ \\ \text{R-CH:C(CO}_2\text{H})_2 \xrightarrow{\tilde{1}50-200^\circ} \text{R-CH:CH-CO}_2\text{H} + \text{CO}_2 \end{array}$$

In practice, it is usually sufficient to treat the aldehyde with malonic acid in the presence of pyridine; e.g., acetaldehyde gives crotonic acid:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-CHO} + \text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2 \xrightarrow{\text{pyridine}} \text{CH}_3\text{-CH}^*\text{-CH}^*\text{-CO}_2\text{H} + \text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \quad (60\%)$$

The mechanism of this reaction has been the subject of much discussion. When a *tertiary* base, *e.g.*, pyridine, is used as catalyst, then the mechanism is believed to be similar to that of the aldol condensation (p. 157):

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 + B \Longrightarrow : \bar{C}H(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 + BH^+ \\ \hline CO \\ R-C + : \bar{C}H(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 \Longrightarrow R-C - CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 \Longrightarrow \\ H & OH & H \\ B+R-C-CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 \longrightarrow R\cdot CH: C(CO_2C_2H_6)_2 \end{array}$$

According to Zabicky (1961), the last stage proceeds as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CHOH-CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \Longrightarrow \text{R-CHOH-C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 + \text{H}^+ \longrightarrow \\ \text{R-CH-C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 + \text{OH}^- \end{array}$$

When a primary or secondary base is used as catalyst, the mechanism may still possibly be as given above, but a complication arises from the fact that carbonyl compounds can form addition products with such bases, and these addition products may therefore be intermediates in the reaction.

Ethyl malonate condenses with aldehydes only. On the other hand, ethyl cyanoacetate condenses with ketones in the presence of acetamide in glacial acetic acid solution, provided the water formed is removed continually by distillation; e.g., acetone forms isopropylidenecyanoacetic ester:

$$(\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CO} + \mathrm{CH_2}(\mathrm{CN}) \cdot \mathrm{CO_2C_2H_5} \xrightarrow{-\mathrm{H_4O}} (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CC} \stackrel{\mathrm{CN}}{\underset{\mathrm{CO_2C_2H_5}}{\longleftarrow}}$$

Since cyano-compounds are readily hydrolysed to the corresponding acid, the above condensation may be used to prepare αβ-unsaturated acids of the

type R<sub>2</sub>C:CH·CO<sub>2</sub>H.

It can be seen from the foregoing that although the methylene group in ethyl malonate will react with aldehydes, it is not sufficiently "active" to react with ketones. Replacement of one carbethoxy group by a cyanogroup makes the methylene group (in the cyano-ester) active enough, i.e., increases the tendency for proton release, to react with ketones. Thus the cyano-group is more strongly electron-attracting than the carbethoxy group. Groups with a -I effect are usually known as negative groups. It is the presence of a negative group that is the common feature in compounds which tend to undergo condensation reactions, exhibit tautomerism, and show increased strength as an acid and decreased strength as a base.

Many negative groups are characterised by the presence of multiple bonds, e.g., NO<sub>2</sub>, CN, CO, etc., and it is these negative groups which give rise to an active methylene group, and to tautomerism. On the other hand, negative groups which do not contain multiple bonds, e.g., F, Cl, Br, I, OCH<sub>3</sub>, do not give rise to an active methylene group, or to tautomerism. All the negative groups, however, increase the strength of an acid and decrease the strength of a base (examples of these phenomena will be found

in the text).

 $\alpha\beta$ -Unsaturated acids may also be prepared by heating  $\alpha$ -bromo-acids with ethanolic potassium hydroxide, or better still, with potassium *tert.*-butoxide (Cason *et al.*, 1953); or by heating  $\beta$ -hydroxy-acids with aqueous sodium hydroxide:

R·CH<sub>2</sub>·CHBr·CO<sub>2</sub>H + KOH 
$$\xrightarrow{\text{ethanol}}$$
 R·CH:CH·CO<sub>2</sub>H + KBr + H<sub>2</sub>O  
R·CHOH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H  $\xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}}$  R·CH:CH·CO<sub>2</sub>H + H<sub>2</sub>O

 $\beta\gamma$ -Unsaturated acids may be prepared by heating an aldehyde with sodium succinate and acetic anhydride at 100°. The product is a  $\gamma$ -alkyl-paraconic acid, and when this is heated at 150°, it eliminates carbon dioxide to form the  $\beta\gamma$ -unsaturated acid (Fittig et al., 1885):

R·CHO + 
$$CH_2 \cdot CO_2 Na$$
  $CH_3 \cdot CO)_2 O$   $CH_2 \cdot CO_2 H$   $CO_2 \cdot CO_2 H$   $CO_2 \cdot CO_2 H$ 

This reaction is really an extension of the Perkin reaction (see p. 651).

Unsaturated alcohols may be oxidised to the corresponding unsaturated acid, provided the double bond is protected, e.g., acrylic acid from allyl

alcohol (see p. 267).

Oxidation of unsaturated aldehydes produces unsaturated acids. The oxidation, however, cannot be carried out with the usual oxidising agents, such as acid or alkaline permanganate, acid dichromate, etc., since these will attack the double bond. A useful oxidising agent for unsaturated aldehydes is ammoniacal silver nitrate (see p. 160); e.g., crotonaldehyde is oxidised to crotonic acid:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH \cdot CH \cdot CHO + [O] \xrightarrow{\text{ammoniacal}} CH_3 \cdot CH \cdot CH \cdot CO_2H$$

Unsaturated methyl ketones may be oxidised to unsaturated acids by sodium hypochlorite (cf. the haloform reaction), e.g.,

$$R \cdot CH : CH \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{NaOCl} R \cdot CH : CH \cdot CO_2H$$

General reactions of the unsaturated acids. The esters of  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated acids undergo the same addition reactions (including the Michael condensation) at the double bond as the ab-unsaturated ketones. When reduced by the Bouveault-Blanc method, αβ-unsaturated esters are converted into the corresponding saturated alcohol:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH:CH-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{[H]}} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$$

Lithium aluminium hydride, however, generally, reduces these esters to the

corresponding unsaturated alcohols (cf. p. 125).

Esters in which the double bond is further removed from the ester group are reduced to the corresponding unsaturated alcohol (cf. acraldehyde, above); e.g., butyl oleate is reduced to oleyl alcohol:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_7 \cdot \text{CH:CH} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_7 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_4\text{H}_9 \xrightarrow{\text{Na/C}_4\text{H}_9\text{OH}} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_7 \cdot \text{CH:CH} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_7 \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \end{array} \tag{82-84\%}$$

All the unsaturated acids may be reduced catalytically to saturated acids. αβ- and βy-Unsaturated acids add on halogen acid, the halogen atom becoming attached to the unsaturated carbon atom which is further from the carboxyl group:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{:}\text{CH}\text{:}\text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{HCl} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}\text{:}\text{CH}_2\text{:}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{:}\text{CH}\text{:}\text{CH}\text{:}\text{CH}_2\text{:}\text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{HBr} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{:}\text{CHBr}\text{:}\text{CH}_2\text{:}\text{CH}_2\text{:}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$$

This mode of addition (which may be contrary to Markownikoff's rule, as in the case of acrylic acid) may be ascribed to the inductive effect of the carboxyl group (cf. allyl alcohol, etc.). On the other hand, addition of halogen acid to γδ-unsaturated acids of the type CH<sub>2</sub>·CH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H takes place in accordance with Markownikoff's rule. This must be due to the fact that the inductive effect of the carboxyl group ceases to be felt beyond the β-carbon atom.

When unsaturated acids are boiled with alkali, the double bond tends to

move so as to form the  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated acid:

# $\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}\text{:}\text{CH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}\text{:}\text{CH}\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$

An interesting example of this migration of the double bond is the hydrolysis of allyl cyanide with boiling alkali to produce crotonic acid. But-3-enoic acid is probably formed first, and this then rearranges to crotonic acid:

$$\text{CH}_2\text{:CH-CH}_2\text{:CN} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} [\text{CH}_2\text{:CH-CH}_2\text{:CO}_2\text{H}] \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \text{CH}_3\text{:CH:CH-CO}_2\text{H}$$

The movement of a double bond to the  $\alpha$ :  $\beta$ -position shows that the latter acid is thermodynamically more stable, e.g., Linstead et al. (1934) showed that the migration is reversible and that the equilibrium between the sodium salts of vinylacetic acid and crotonic acid is 98 per cent. on the side of the latter:

The mechanism of this shift is believed to be:

$$\label{eq:ch2} \begin{split} \text{CH}_2 \!\!=\!\! \text{CH} \cdot \! \text{CH}_2 \cdot \! \text{CO}_2 ^- \!\! \stackrel{\text{OH}^-; -\text{H}^+}{\longleftarrow} \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \! \text{CH} \!\!=\!\! \text{CH} \cdot \! \text{CO}_2 ^- \!\! \stackrel{\text{H}^+}{\longleftarrow} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \! \text{CH} \!\!=\!\! \text{CH} \cdot \! \text{CO}_2 ^- \!\! \stackrel{\text{H}^+}{\longleftarrow} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \! \text{CH} \!\!=\!\! \text{CH} \cdot \! \text{CO}_2 ^- \!\! \stackrel{\text{H}^+}{\longleftarrow} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \! \text{CH} \!\!=\!\! \text{CH} \cdot \! \text{CO}_2 ^- \!\! \stackrel{\text{H}^+}{\longleftarrow} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \! \text{CH} \!\!=\!\! \text{CH} \cdot \! \text{CO}_2 ^- \!\! \stackrel{\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}}{\longleftarrow} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \! \text{CH} \!\!=\!\! \text{CH}_3 \cdot \! \text{CH} \!\!=\!\! \text{CH}_3 \cdot \! \text{CH}_3$$

This is supported by the fact that sodium vinylacetate exchanges H for D in sodium hydroxide solution containing  $D_2O$  (Ives *et al.*, 1935); sodium crotonate also exchanges, but much more slowly (Ives, 1938).

When unsaturated acids are fused with alkali, cleavage of the chain takes place with the formation of two acids, one of which is always acetic acid. This again indicates the migration of the double bond to the  $\alpha\beta$ -position; e.g., oleic acid gives acetic and palmitic acids:

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_{3}}\text{`}(\mathrm{CH_{2}})_{7}\text{`}\mathrm{CH:}\mathrm{CH:}(\mathrm{CH_{2}})_{7}\text{`}\mathrm{CO}_{2}\mathrm{H} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{KOH}} [\mathrm{CH_{3}}\text{`}(\mathrm{CH_{2}})_{14}\text{`}\mathrm{CH:}\mathrm{CH:}\mathrm{CH}_{2}\mathrm{CO}_{2}\mathrm{H}] \\ \xrightarrow{\mathrm{KOH}} \mathrm{CH_{3}}\text{`}(\mathrm{CH_{2}})_{14}\text{`}\mathrm{CO}_{2}\mathrm{H} + \mathrm{CH_{3}}\text{`}\mathrm{CO}_{2}\mathrm{H} \end{array}$$

It is therefore obvious that fusion of an unsaturated acid with alkali cannot be used to determine the position of the double bond. If, however, the unsaturated acid is treated with cold dilute alkaline permanganate, or hydrogen peroxide in acetic acid (or formic acid), the double bond is hydroxylated, and the glycol formed under these conditions, *i.e.*, without migration of the double bond, may now be oxidised in the usual way (see p. 73). Alternatively, the position of the double bond may be ascertained by ozonolysis (p. 74). In view of this shift of the double bond to the  $\alpha$ :  $\beta$ -position, it therefore follows that the  $\alpha$ :  $\beta$ -unsaturated acid is thermodynamically more stable than any of the other isomeric unsaturated acids.

αβ-Unsaturated esters add on aliphatic diazo-compounds to form *pyrazoline* derivatives; *e.g.*, acrylic ester reacts with diazomethane to give pyrazoline-5-carboxylic ester:

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_2\text{-}CH \cdot CO_2C_3H_5} + \mathrm{CH_2N_2} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_2\text{-}CH \cdot CO_2C_2H_5} \\ \\ \mathrm{HC} \end{array} \end{array}$$

 $\alpha\beta$ -Unsaturated acids may be degraded by the Hofmann method (p. 206) using a modified procedure. The  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated acid amide in methanol is treated with an alkaline solution of sodium hypochlorite, the urethan produced being hydrolysed in acid solution to give the *aldehyde* in good yield:

$$R\text{-}CH\text{-}CH\text{-}CO\text{-}NH_2 \xrightarrow{NaOCI/NaOH} R\text{-}CH\text{-}CH\text{-}NH\text{-}CO_2CH_3 \xrightarrow{HCI} R\text{-}CHO$$

In this case, two carbon atoms are eliminated from the acid. On the other hand,  $\beta\gamma$ - and  $\gamma\delta$ -unsaturated acid amides eliminate one carbon atom to produce the corresponding unsaturated primary amine, but in poor yield:

Acrylic acid (prop-2-enoic acid), CH2:CH-CO2H, may be prepared:

(i) By the oxidation of allyl alcohol or acraldehyde (see p. 267).

(ii) By heating β-hydroxypropionic acid with aqueous sodium hydroxide:

$$\text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CH}\text{\cdot}\text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

Alternatively, ethylene cyanohydrin may be heated with sulphuric acid:

$$\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CN} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_4\text{SO}_4} \rightarrow \left[\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}\right] \xrightarrow{\text{-H}_4\text{O}} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}$$

Vinyl cyanide also gives acrylic acid on hydrolysis:

$$CH_2:CH\cdot CN \xrightarrow{H_2O} CH_2:CH\cdot CO_2H$$

It is therefore possible that the intermediate in the hydrolysis of ethylene cyanohydrin may be vinyl cyanide or  $\beta$ -hydroxypropionic acid, or both. Acrylic acid is prepared industrially with ethylene cyanohydrin (prepared from ethylene oxide and hydrogen cyanide, p. 251) as the starting material.

(iii) A new industrial preparation is by the interaction of acetylene, carbon monoxide and water in the presence of nickel salts as catalyst:

$$CH:CH + CO + H_2O \longrightarrow CH_2:CH\cdot CO_2H$$

If an alcohol is used instead of water, the corresponding acrylic ester is obtained, e.g.,

$$CH:CH + CO + CH_3OH \longrightarrow CH_2:CH \cdot CO_2CH_3$$

Another industrial method is by the pyrolysis of an alkyl acetyl-lactate, e.g.,

$$\mathsf{CH_3\text{-}CH}(\mathsf{O\text{-}CO\text{-}CH_3})\text{-}\mathsf{CO}_2\mathsf{CH}_3 \longrightarrow \mathsf{CH}_2 \text{=-}\mathsf{CH\text{-}CO}_2\mathsf{CH}_3 + \mathsf{CH}_3\text{-}\mathsf{CO}_2\mathsf{H}$$

Acrylic acid is a colourless liquid, b.p. 141°, which is miscible with water

in all proportions. On standing it slowly polymerises to a solid.

Methacrylic acid (2-methylprop-2-enoic acid), CH<sub>2</sub>·C(CH<sub>3</sub>)·CO<sub>2</sub>H, exists as colourless prisms, m.p. 15°. It may be prepared by removing a molecule of hydrogen bromide from α-bromoisobutyric acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 & \text{CH}_3 \\ \vdash \\ \text{CH}_3\text{\cdot}\text{CBr}\text{\cdot}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{ethanolic KOH}} & \text{CH}_2\text{:}\text{C}\text{\cdot}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$$

Methyl methacrylate is very important commercially, since it polymerises to polymethyl methacrylate under the influence of heat. This polymer is tough, transparent, and can be moulded; one of its trade names is <code>perspex</code>. One industrial method of preparing methyl methacrylate is as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_{3} \\ \text{CH}_{3} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_{3} \\ \text{CH}_{2} \\ \text{CO}_{2} \\ \text{CH}_{3} \end{array} + \text{NH}_{4} \\ \text{HSO}_{4} \end{array}$$

Methyl acrylate, which may be prepared by heating ethylene cyanohydrin with methanol and sulphuric acid, also polymerises, but this polymer is softer than that from the methacrylate.

Crotonic acid and isocrotonic acid both have the same structure

UNSATURATED ALCOHOLS, ETHERS, CARBONYL COMPOUNDS AND ACIDS 285

CH3 CH:CH CO2H (but-2-enoic acid), but are geometrical isomers, crotonic acid being the trans isomer, and isocrotonic the cis:

The more stable form is crotonic acid, m.p. 72°. isoCrotonic acid, m.p.

15°, slowly changes into crotonic acid when heated at 100°.

Crotonic acid (trans-but-2-enoic acid) may be prepared by oxidising crotonaldehyde with ammoniacal silver nitrate; by heating β-hydroxy-butyric acid with sodium hydroxide; or by the Knoevenagel reaction (see p. 280):

$$CH_3 \cdot CHO + CH_2(CO_2H)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{pyridine}} CH_3 \cdot CH \cdot CO_2H + CO_2 + H_2O \quad (60\%)$$

isoCrotonic acid (cis-but-2-enoic acid) may be prepared by the action of sodium amalgam on β-chloroisocrotonic ester which is obtained from acetoacetic ester by reaction with phosphorus pentachloride:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{·CO·CH}_2\text{·CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{PCI}_5} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{·CCI:CH·CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{Na/Hg}} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{·CCI:CH·CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{Na/Hg}} \\ \end{array}$$

The action of sodium amalgam is particularly interesting, since it normally reduces a double bond in the αβ-position.

Angelic and tiglic acids are geometrical isomers with the structure

CH3 · CH: C(CH3) · CO2H (2-methylbut-2-enoic acid):

Both acids are found in nature as esters.

Undecylenic acid (dec-9-ene-1-carboxylic acid), CH2:CH•(CH2)8•CO2H, may be obtained by the destructive distillation of ricinoleic acid (11-hydroxyheptadec-8ene-1-carboxylic acid), which occurs as the glyceride ester in castor-oil. Heptanal is the other product, 10 per cent. yield of each being obtained:

$$\text{CH}_{3}\text{`}(\text{CH}_{2})_{5}\text{`}\text{CHOH}\text{`}\text{CH}_{2}\text{`}\text{CH'.}\text{CH'.}\text{(CH}_{2})_{7}\text{`}\text{CO}_{2}\text{H} \longrightarrow \\ \text{CH}_{3}\text{`}(\text{CH}_{2})_{5}\text{`}\text{CHO} + \text{CH}_{2}\text{.}\text{'}\text{CH}\text{`}(\text{CH}_{2})_{8}\text{`}\text{CO}_{2}\text{H}$$

Undecylenic acid is a solid, m.p. 24.5°, and is said to be a preventive and a cure for athlete's foot.

When ricinoleic acid is heated with sodium hydroxide in air, octan-2-ol and sebacic acid are obtained:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_5 \cdot \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_7 \cdot \text{CO}_2 H \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_5 \cdot \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CH}_3 + \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_8 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \end{array}$$

When ricinoleic acid (castor oil) is treated with concentrated sulphuric acid, it gives a complex mixture consisting of the hydrogen sulphate of ricinoleic acid in which the hydroxyl group is esterified, and a compound in which the sulphuric acid has added to the double bond: esterification and addition do not occur together in the same molecule of ricinoleic acid. The product, which is known as Turkey-red oil, is used as a wetting agent.

Oleic acid (cis-heptadec-8-ene-I-carboxylic acid) occurs as the glyceryl ester in oils and fats. It is a colourless oil, m.p. 16°, which is insoluble in water, but soluble in ethanol and ether. Catalytic reduction converts it into stearic acid. Cold dilute alkaline permanganate, or hydrogen peroxide in acetic acid, converts oleic acid into 9: 10-dihydroxystearic acid, which, on oxidation with, e.g., acid permanganate, gives nonoic acid and azelaic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_3}\text{\cdot}(\mathrm{CH_2})_7\text{\cdot}\mathrm{CH}\text{:}\mathrm{CH}\text{\cdot}(\mathrm{CH_2})_7\text{\cdot}\mathrm{CO_2H} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2O_2}} \\ \\ \mathrm{CH_3}\text{\cdot}(\mathrm{CH_2})_7\text{\cdot}\mathrm{CHOH}\text{\cdot}\mathrm{CHOH}\text{\cdot}(\mathrm{CH_2})_7\text{\cdot}\mathrm{CO_2H} \\ \\ \xrightarrow{\mathrm{acid}} & \mathrm{CH_3}\text{\cdot}(\mathrm{CH_2})_7\text{\cdot}\mathrm{CO_2H} + \mathrm{CO_2H}\text{\cdot}(\mathrm{CH_2})_7\text{\cdot}\mathrm{CO_2H} \end{array}$$

This shows that the double bond in oleic acid is in the g: 10 position (carboxyl group being 1), and this is confirmed by ozonolysis.

Oleic acid is the cis form. The trans form is elaidic acid. m.p. 51°, which may be obtained by the action of nitrous acid on oleic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{H}-\mathrm{C}-(\mathrm{CH}_2)_{\mathbf{7}}\cdot\mathrm{CH}_3 & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{HNO}_2} \mathrm{CH}_3\cdot(\mathrm{CH}_2)_{\mathbf{7}}\cdot\mathrm{C}-\mathrm{H} \\ \mathrm{H}-\mathrm{C}-(\mathrm{CH}_2)_{\mathbf{7}}\cdot\mathrm{CO}_2\mathrm{H} & \mathrm{H}-\mathrm{C}-(\mathrm{CH}_2)_{\mathbf{7}}\cdot\mathrm{CO}_2\mathrm{H} \end{array}$$

Linoleic acid (heptadeca-8: II-diene-I-carboxylic acid) CH<sub>3</sub>·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>·CH·CH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH·CH·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>7</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, b.p. 228°/14 mm., occurs as the glyceryl ester in linseed oil, hemp oil, etc.; it has been synthesised by Raphael et al. (1950).

Linolenic acid (heptadeca-8: II: 14-triene-I-carboxylic acid),

CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH·CH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH·CH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH·CH·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>7</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, is a liquid which occurs as the glyceryl ester in, e.g., poppy-seed oil. Oils containing linoleic and linolenic acids are drying oils (p. 263). Linolenic acid is the most abundant and wide-spread triene acid in Nature; it has been synthesised by Weedon et al. (1956).

Erucic acid, m.p. 34°, is the cis form of heneicos-I2-ene-I-carboxylic acid, CH<sub>3</sub>·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>7</sub>·CH·CH·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>11</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H. It occurs as the glyceryl ester in various oils, e.g., rape oil, cod-liver oil, etc. It is converted into the trans isomer brassidic acid, m.p. 61·5°, by the action of nitrous acid (cf. oleic acid, above):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{H--C-(CH_2)_7 \cdot CH_3} \\ \parallel \\ \text{H--C-(CH_2)_{11} \cdot CO_2H} \end{array} \xrightarrow[]{\text{HNO}_2} \xrightarrow[]{\text{CH}_3 \cdot (CH_2)_7 - C - H} \\ \parallel \\ \text{H--C-(CH_2)_{11} \cdot CO_2H} \end{array}$$

Nervonic acid (tricos-14-ene-1-carboxylic acid), CH3 (CH2)7 CH. CH (CH2)13 CO2H, occurs in human brain-tissue and in fish oils. Both the cis and trans forms are

known, but it appears to be the cis acid, m.p. 43°, which occurs naturally.

Propiolic acid (propargylic acid, prop-2-ynoic acid), CH:C·CO<sub>2</sub>H, is the simplest acetylenic carboxylic acid. It is conveniently prepared by the action of dry carbon dioxide on sodium acetylide:

$$\text{CH}\text{:}\text{CNa} \xrightarrow{\text{CO}_2} \text{CH}\text{:}\text{C}\text{:}\text{CO}_2\text{Na} \xrightarrow[\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4]{\text{dilute}} \text{CH}\text{:}\text{C}\text{:}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$$

It is a colourless liquid, m.p. 9°, which smells like acetic acid; it is reduced by sodium amalgam to propionic acid; it adds on halogen acid to give the β-halogeno-acrylic acid. It forms the silver or cuprous salt when treated with an ammoniacal solution of silver nitrate or cuprous chloride, respectively. When exposed to sunlight, it polymerises to trimesic acid (benzene 1:3:5-tricarboxylic acid; cf. acetylene):

$$_{3}$$
CH;C·CO<sub>2</sub>H  $\longrightarrow$   $_{HO_{2}}$ CO<sub>2</sub>H

αβ-Acetylenic acids are stronger acids than their ethylenic and saturated analogues due to the acetylene bond exerting a strong electron-attracting effect (cf. p. 96).

#### THE PRINCIPLE OF VINYLOGY

According to Fuson (1935), the principle of vinylogy may be described as follows: If  $E_1$  and  $E_2$  represent non-metallic elements, then in the compound of the type  $A-E_1=E_2$  or  $A-E_1=E_2$ , if a structural unit of the type  $A-E_1=E_2$  is

interposed between A and  $E_1$ , the function of  $E_2$  remains qualitatively unchanged, but that of  $E_1$  may be usurped by the carbon atom attached to A. Thus

form vinylogous series. This may be illustrated by the compounds ethyl acetate and ethyl crotonate. These are vinylogues (n being equal to 1):

A is equivalent to 
$$CH_3$$
 and  $E_1 = E_2$  to  $-C = O$   $C_2H_1$ 

Ethyl acetate condenses with ethyl oxalate to form oxalacetic ester (this, of course, is an example of the Claisen condensation):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OOC}\text{-}\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{Na}} \\ \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OOC}\text{-}\text{CO}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} \end{array}$$

In the same way, ethyl crotonate also condenses with ethyl oxalate:

$$C_2H_5OOC \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH = CH \cdot COOC_2H_5 + C_2H_5OH$$

Several other examples of the application of vinylogy will be found in the text.

## KETENS (KETENES)

Ketens are compounds which are characterised by the presence of the grouping >C=C=O. If the compound is of the type R·CH:C:O, it is known as an aldoketen; and if R<sub>2</sub>C:C:O, then a ketoketen.

The most general method of preparing a keten is by debrominating an  $\alpha$ -bromoacyl bromide with zinc, e.g., dimethylketen from  $\alpha$ -bromoisobutyryl bromide:

$$(CH_3)_2CBr\cdot COBr + Zn \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2C:C:O + ZnBr_2$$

The simplest member of the keten series is keten (ketene), CH<sub>2</sub>:C:O. Keten may be prepared by debrominating bromoacetyl bromide with zinc:

$$CH_2Br \cdot COBr + Zn \longrightarrow CH_2 : C:O + ZnBr_2$$

It is, however, usually prepared by the thermal decomposition of acetone (ethyl acetate or acetic anhydride may also be used as the starting material):

In practice, acetone vapour is passed over an electrically heated metal filament at 700-750°; the filament is made of chromel wire (an alloy of 80 per cent. nickel and 20 per cent. chromium). The yield of keten is high, being usually between 90 and 95 per cent. An alternative procedure,

which gives a much lower yield (25-29 per cent.), is to pass acetone vapour through a long combustion tube filled with broken porcelain heated to redness.

The thermal decomposition of acetone has been shown to be a free-radical chain reaction. The exact details are not known with certainty; Rice and Walters (1941) have suggested the following:

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_3^{\bullet}CO^{\bullet}CH_3} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_3^{\bullet}} + \mathrm{CH_3^{\bullet}CO^{\bullet}} \longrightarrow 2\mathrm{CH_3^{\bullet}} + \mathrm{CO} \\ \mathrm{CH_3^{\bullet}CO^{\bullet}CH_3} + \mathrm{CH_3^{\bullet}} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_3^{\bullet}CO^{\bullet}CH_2^{\bullet}} + \mathrm{CH_4} \\ \mathrm{CH_3^{\bullet}CO^{\bullet}CH_2^{\bullet}} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_2^{\bullet}C^{\bullet}O} + \mathrm{CH_3^{\bullet}}, \text{ etc.} \end{array}$$

Keten is prepared industrially by passing acetone vapour through a copper tube at 700-850°, and by the decomposition of acetic acid in the presence of phosphoric acid or ethyl phosphate as catalyst:

$$CH_3 \cdot CO_2H \xrightarrow{700^\circ} CH_2 = C = O + H_2O$$

Keten is a colourless, poisonous, pungent gas, b.p.  $-41^{\circ}$ , which oxidises in air to the unstable peroxide, the structure of which may be as shown.

CH<sub>2</sub>—C=0

Keten is a very reactive compound, and so is important as a synthetic reagent. It rapidly polymerises to diketen, and because of this tendency to polymerise, keten is usually used immediately when prepared.

The reactions of keten are generally those of an acid anhydride; it acetylates most compounds with an active hydrogen atom (p. 198), provided the compound can be dissolved in some solvent inert to the action of keten. The yield of acetyl derivative is almost 100 per cent. (based on keten). The following reactions clearly show the acetylating property of keten:

(i) When keten is passed into water, acetic acid is formed slowly:

$$CH_2:CO + H_2O \longrightarrow CH_3:CO_2H$$

(ii) When keten is passed into glacial acetic acid, acetic anhydride is formed:

$$CH_2:CO + CH_3:CO_2H \longrightarrow (CH_3:CO)_2O$$

By means of this reaction a mixed anhydride may be obtained, one radical of which, of course, must be the acetyl group:

$$R \cdot CO_2H + CH_2:CO \longrightarrow R \cdot CO \cdot O \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$$

(iii) Keten reacts with aliphatic or aromatic hydroxy-compounds:

$$CH_2 = CO + ROH \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO_9R$$

The reaction, however, is best carried out in the presence of a catalyst, e.g., sulphuric acid.

It also acetylates enolisable compounds, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{·CO·CH}_2\text{·CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3\text{-CO}} \text{CH}_3\text{·C} = \text{CH·CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 + \\ \\ \text{O·CO·CH}_3 \\ \\ \text{CH}_2 = \text{C·CH}_2\text{·CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \\ \text{O·CO·CH}_9 \end{array}$$

(iv) Keten reacts with ammonia to form acetamide, and with primary or secondary amines to form N-alkyl-acetamides:

$$CH_2:CO + NH_3 \longrightarrow CH_3:CO:NH_2$$
  
 $CH_2:CO + R:NH_2 \longrightarrow CH_3:CO:NH:R$ 

Primary amino-groups are acetylated extremely readily, and hence it is possible to acetylate this group selectively in compounds containing both an amino and hydroxyl group, e.g., p-aminophenol:

$$HO$$
  $NH_2 + CH_2 = CO \longrightarrow HO$   $NH \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$ 

A particularly useful reaction of this type is the acetylation of amino-acids:

$$R \cdot CH(NH_2) \cdot CO_2H + CH_2 \cdot CO \longrightarrow R \cdot CH(NH \cdot CO \cdot CH_3) \cdot CO_2H$$

Amides are also acetylated by keten in the presence of sulphuric acid, but at elevated temperatures (in the absence of sulphuric acid) the cyanide is formed.

$$R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 + CH_2 = CO \longrightarrow R \cdot CN + CH_3 \cdot CO_2H$$

(v) Thiols are acetylated (preferably in the presence of sulphuric acid as catalyst):

$$R \cdot SH + CH_2 = CO \longrightarrow R \cdot S \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$$

(vi) Keten reacts with Grignard reagents to form methyl ketones:

$$RMgX + CH_2 = CO \longrightarrow R \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$$

In addition to behaving as an acetylating reagent, keten behaves as an unsaturated compound, the carbonyl group showing no reactivity, e.g.,

(i) Keten adds on bromine to form bromoacetyl bromide:

$$CH_2:CO + Br_2 \longrightarrow CH_2Br \cdot COBr$$

The halogeno-acetyl halide is also formed by the interaction of keten and phosphorus pentahalides:

(ii) Keten adds on halogen acid to form the acetyl halide:

Alkyl halides also react with the keten in the presence of charcoal at 100° to form acid chlorides:

$$RX + CH_2 = CO \longrightarrow R \cdot CH_2 \cdot COX$$

This offers a means of stepping up a series.

(iii) A particularly interesting addition reaction of keten is that with aldehydes to form β-lactones; e.g., with formaldehyde, β-propiolactone is formed:

$$CH_2:CO + H\cdot CHO \longrightarrow CH_2\cdot CH_2\cdot CO$$

Diketen is readily formed by passing keten into acetone cooled in solid carbon dioxide (yield: 50-55 per cent.). Diketen is a pungent-smelling liquid, b.p. 127°, which, when strongly heated (550-600°), is depolymerised to keten.

The structure of diketen is still uncertain. Various structures have been suggested, e.g.,

According to Whiffen and Thompson (1946), based on their work of infra-red measurements, the structure of diketen is most likely III or IV, or a mixture of both. These authors also point out that the evidence seems to favour III. This formula is also favoured by Blomquist and Baldwin (1948), who treated diketen with N-bromosuccimide and showed that the resulting products agree with structure III (and not with IV). Structure III is also supported by mass spectra studies of Long et al. (1953). Structure I has been excluded by work with isotope <sup>14</sup>C (Roberts et al., 1949). It is interesting to note, however, that the structure of dimethylketen dimer is 2:2:4:4-tetramethylcyclobuta-1:3-dione (i.e., it corresponds to I), and the ring is planar (Robertson et al., 1956).

Diketen may be further polymerised to dehydroacetic acid (p. 227).

Diketen reacts with alcohols to form esters of acetoacetic acid, and this reaction is now being used to prepare acetoacetic ester industrially (see p. 224). It also reacts with primary amines to form N-substituted acetoacetamides, e.g., with aniline:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \!\!=\!\!\! \text{C} \!\!-\!\!\! \text{O} + \text{C}_6 \text{H}_5 \!\!\cdot\!\! \text{NH}_2 \!\longrightarrow \text{CH}_3 \!\!\cdot\!\! \text{CO} \!\!\cdot\!\! \text{CH}_2 \!\!\cdot\!\! \text{CO} \!\!\cdot\! \text{NH} \!\!\cdot\! \text{C}_6 \text{H}_5 \\ \text{CH}_2 \!\!-\!\! \text{CO} \end{array}$$

Diketen also undergoes the Friedel-Crafts reaction with benzene to form benzoylacetone:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \hspace{-0.1cm} = \hspace{-0.1cm} \text{C} \\ \text{CH}_2 \hspace{-0.1cm} - \hspace{-0.1cm} \text{CO} + \hspace{-0.1cm} \begin{array}{c} \hspace{-0.1cm} \text{AlCl}_{\text{a}} \end{array} \\ \end{array} \hspace{-0.1cm} \begin{array}{c} \hspace{-0.1cm} \text{CO} \cdot \hspace{-0.1cm} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \hspace{-0.1cm} \text{CO} \cdot \hspace{-0.1cm} \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$$

#### QUESTIONS

1. Using acetone or glycerol as the starting material, show how you would prepare:— (a) 3-methylbut-2-enoic acid, (b)  $\beta:\beta$ -dimethylacrylic acid, (c)  $\beta$ -hydroxypropionic acid, (d)  $\alpha:\alpha$ -dimethylauccinic acid, (e)  $\alpha:\beta$ -dibromopropionic acid, (f) glyceraldehyde. 2. Name the following compounds and suggest one synthesis for each:

3. How would you distinguish between allyl alcohol and propargyl alcohol?

4. Describe the preparation and the more important properties of:—(a) allyl alcohol,
(b) allyl halides, (c) crotyl alcohol, (d) propargyl alcohol, (e) methyl vinyl ether, (f)
divinyl ether, (g) crotonaldehyde, (h) propargylaldehyde, (i) methyl vinyl ketone,
(j) crotonic acid, (k) propiolic acid.

5. How may acraldehyde, mesityl oxide, phorone and acrylic acid be prepared? Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when the above substances, respectively, are treated with:—(a) Br<sub>2</sub>, (b) HBr, (c) HCN, (d) NaOH, (e) NH<sub>3</sub>, (f) H<sub>2</sub>, (g) NaHSO<sub>3</sub>, (h) NH<sub>2</sub>·OH, (i) CH<sub>2</sub>(CO<sub>2</sub>Et)<sub>2</sub>, (j) E.A.A., (k) CH<sub>2</sub>N<sub>2</sub>.

6. Define and give examples of:—(a) hyperconjugation, (b) the allylic rearrangement, (b) the allylic rearrangement,

(c) the I: 4 mechanism, (d) Michael condensation, (e) Knoevenagel reaction, (f) negative groups, (g) geometrical isomerism, (h) vinylogy, (i) halochromic salt, (j) cyanoethylation.

7. Discuss the general methods of preparation and the more important properties of the unsaturated monocarboxylic acids. Give an account of the methods that can be used for determining the position of the double bond in an unsaturated acid.

8. Write an account of the preparation and properties of keten and diketen, including

in your answer a discussion of the structure of diketen.

9. Write an account of the reduction of  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compounds.

#### READING REFERENCES

Walsh, Remarks on the Strengths of Bonds, Trans. Faraday Soc., 1947, 46, 60, 158, 342. Bent, Distribution of Atomic s Character in Molecules and its Chemical Implications, J. Chem. Educ., 1960, 37, 616.
Chem. Educ., 1960, 37, 616.
Vol. V. (1949), Ch. 2. Cyanoethylation. Vol. X (1959).

Organic Reactions, Wiley.

Unsaturated Acids, Ann. Reports, 1940, 37, 211.

Boxer and Linstead, The Knoevenagel Reaction, J.C.S., 1931, 740.

Fuson, The Principle of Vinylogy, Chem. Reviews, 1935, 16, 1.
Crawford, Hyperconjugation, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1949, 3, 226.

Baker, Hyperconjugation, Oxford Press (1952).

Rao, Is Hyperconjugation Necessary? Nature, 1960, 187, 913.

Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. III (1946), Ch. 3. Preparation of Ketenes and Ketene Dimers.

Advances in Organic Chemistry, Vol. 2 (1960). Lacey, Ketene in Organic Syntheses,

p. 217. Johnson, Lecture on Some Applications of Acetylenic Compounds in Organic Synthesis, Royal Institute of Chemistry (1948).
Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1942, 2nd ed.).

(i) Vol. I, Ch. 7. Unsaturation and Conjugation.
 (ii) Vol. I, Ch. 9. Catalytic Hydrogenation and Hydrogenolysis.

Raphael, Acetylenic Compounds in Organic Synthesis, Butterworth (1955). Gunstone, Recent Developments in the Preparation of Natural Straight-Chain Fatty

Acids, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1953, 7, 175. DeWolfe and Young, Substitution and Rearrangement Reactions of Allylic Compounds,

Chem. Reviews, 1956, 56, 753.
Friedlander and Robertson, The Crystal Structure of Dimethylketen Dimer, J.C.S.,

1956, 3083. Evans, Oxidations by Manganese Dioxide in Neutral Media, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1959, 13, 61.

#### CHAPTER XIII

## NITROGEN COMPOUNDS

Some compounds containing nitrogen have been described in Chapter IX, since these were regarded primarily as acid derivatives. It is now proposed to deal with many other nitrogen compounds, most of which may be regarded as alkyl nitrogen compounds.

Hydrocyanic acid, hydrogen cyanide (prussic acid), HCN, was discovered by Scheele (1782), who obtained it from bitter almonds which contain the glycoside amygdalin. Amygdalin, on hydrolysis with dilute acid, yields

hydrogen cyanide, benzaldehyde and glucose:

$$C_{20}H_{27}O_{11}N + 2H_2O \xrightarrow{acid} HCN + C_6H_5 \cdot CHO + 2C_6H_{12}O_6$$

Hydrogen cyanide also occurs in the leaves of certain plants, e.g., laurel. It may be prepared by heating sodium cyanide with concentrated sulphuric acid, the gas being dried over calcium chloride:

$$NaCN + H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow HCN + NaHSO_4$$
 (93-97%)

Hydrogen cyanide is prepared industrially:

(i) By passing a mixture of ammonia, air and methane over a platinum-rhodium gauze catalyst at 1000°:

$$2NH_3 + 3O_2 + 2CH_4 \longrightarrow 2HCN + 6H_2O$$

(ii) By passing a mixture of carbon monoxide and ammonia over an alumina catalyst at 500-700°:

$$CO + NH_3 \longrightarrow HCN + H_2O$$

Hydrogen cyanide is a colourless, poisonous liquid, b.p. 26°. It is a very weak acid, and is miscible in all proportions with water, ethanol and ether. It hydrolyses slowly in aqueous solution, and more rapidly in the presence of inorganic acids to form first formamide, and then ammonium formate:

$$\text{HCN} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_{2}\text{O}} \text{H} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH}_{2} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_{2}\text{O}} \text{H} \cdot \text{CO}_{2} \text{NH}_{4}$$

Hydrogen cyanide is reduced by nascent hydrogen to methylamine:

$$HCN + 4[H] \xrightarrow{Zn/HCI} CH_3 \cdot NH_2$$

It is a useful reagent for certain syntheses, e.g., cyanohydrins by combination with carbonyl compounds (p. 151), and in the Gattermann aldehyde synthesis (p. 647).

Structure of hydrogen cyanide. Hydrogen cyanide is believed to exist in two forms because it gives rise to two kinds of alkyl derivatives: the alkyl cyanides, R·CN, which are derivatives of hydrogen cyanide, HCN; and the alkyl isocyanides, R·NC, which are derivatives of hydrogen isocyanide, HNC.

alkyl isocyanides, R·NC, which are derivatives of hydrogen isocyanide, HNC. The structures of HCN and R·CN, respectively, were originally believed to be H·C:N and R·C:N, but recent determinations of the dipole moments of the alkyl cyanides indicate that they are resonance hybrids of structures I and II, the contribution of II being about 57 per cent.:

$$R-C\equiv N: \longleftrightarrow R-\overset{\dagger}{C}=\overset{\overline{N}}{N}:$$

On the other hand, infra-red studies strongly favour I.

The structures of HNC and R·NC proved more difficult to elucidate. Originally, the formula of the alkyl isocyanides was written  $R-N \equiv C$  (nitrogen with a valency of five and carbon, four). This, however, was inconsistent with the chemical properties of isocyanides, and was soon considered unlikely. It is now known, according to the electronic theory of valency, that four bonds between nitrogen and carbon is impossible on theoretical grounds.

Normally, on addition to unsaturated compounds, the addendum adds to each atom joined by the double bond; this does not occur with isocyanides,

the addendum adding only to the carbon atom:

$$R \cdot NCS \stackrel{S}{\longleftarrow} R \cdot NC \xrightarrow{Br_2} R \cdot NCBr_2$$

These facts led Nef (1891–1892) to suggest that isocyanides did not contain quadrivalent carbon but bivalent carbon. He therefore wrote their formula as R—N=C<, with two "free" valencies by means of which isocyanides add on the addendum to the carbon atom alone (as shown in the above

examples).

Study of the dipole moments and Raman spectra of isocyanides indicated that bivalent carbon did not represent the true state of affairs, and led to the suggestion that the bond between the nitrogen and carbon atoms was a triple bond. If we use the electronic formula of Nef's structure, we can introduce a triple bond between the nitrogen and carbon atoms by rearranging the lone pair of the nitrogen atom to act as a donor to the carbon atom, i.e.,

$$\stackrel{\textstyle ?}{R-N=C} : \longrightarrow R-N \stackrel{\textstyle >}{=} C$$

Raman spectra of cyanides and *iso*cyanides show the presence of the C $\equiv$ N group. This is satisfied by the N $\cong$ C group. On the other hand, more recent work indicates that alkyl *iso*cyanides are resonance hybrids of III and IV:

$$R = \stackrel{\cdot \cdot}{N} = C : \longleftrightarrow R = \stackrel{\dagger}{N} = \overline{C}$$

Furthermore, the value of the C—N—C valency bond angle has been found to be 180°, i.e., these three atoms form a linear arrangement, which shows that IV makes a very large contribution to the actual state (see Ch. 11).

Thus, in view of the existence of alkyl cyanides and isocyanides, hydrogen cyanide is believed to be tautomeric, giving rise to the nitrile-isonitrile diad system:

 $H-C\equiv N \Longrightarrow C \preceq N-H$ 

The position, however, cannot be regarded as being completely satisfactory. It appears that only one form of acid is known, viz., hydrogen cyanide; all its reaction indicate the structure H—C=N, e.g., its hydrolysis to formic acid.

# ALKYL CYANIDES

These are also known as nitriles or carbonitriles.

Nomenclature. This group of compounds is usually named either as the alkyl cyanides (i.e., the alkyl derivatives of hydrogen cyanide), or as the nitrile of the acid which is produced on hydrolysis, the suffix -ic of the trivial

name being replaced by -onitrile. The following examples illustrate both systems of nomenclature:

> HCN hydrogen cyanide or formonitrile CH<sub>3</sub>·CN methyl cyanide or acetonitrile (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH·CN isopropyl cyanide or isobutyronitrile

General methods of preparation. 1. By the dehydration of acid amides with phosphorus pentoxide:

$$R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 \xrightarrow{P_2O_\delta} R \cdot CN$$
 (g.)

Amides may also be converted into cyanides by heating with phosphorus pentachloride or thionyl chloride. Dehydration of the amide to cyanide is also very conveniently effected by heating with sulphamic acid (Kirsanov et al., 1950).

$$\text{R-CO-NH}_2 + \text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{SO}_3 \text{H} \longrightarrow \text{R-CN} + \text{NH}_4 \text{HSO}_4$$

Stephens et al. (1955) have shown that p-toluenesulphonyl chloride in pyridine readily dehydrates amides to cyanides (yield: 58-76 per cent).

High molecular weight acid amides are dehydrated to the corresponding cyanide by heat alone (p. 205).

An acid amide may be converted into the cyanide by heating it with the amideboron trifluoride complex in the presence of a small amount of carboxylic acid (Nieuwland, 1937), e.g.,

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO-}\text{NH}_2\text{-}\text{BF}_3 + \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO-}\text{NH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO}_3\text{+}\text{H}} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CN} + \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{H}_3\text{N-}\text{BF}_3$$

Cyanides are prepared industrially by passing a mixture of carboxylic acid and ammonia over alumina at 500°. This reaction probably occurs as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R} \boldsymbol{\cdot} \text{CO}_2 \text{H} + \text{NH}_3 \longrightarrow \text{R} \boldsymbol{\cdot} \text{CO}_2 \text{NH}_4 \xrightarrow{\text{Al}_2 \text{O}_3} \\ \text{H}_2 \text{O} + \text{R} \boldsymbol{\cdot} \text{CO} \boldsymbol{\cdot} \text{NH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Al}_2 \text{O}_3} \text{H}_2 \text{O} + \text{R} \boldsymbol{\cdot} \text{CN} \end{array}$$

2. By the dehydration of aldoximes with phosphorus pentoxide, or better, with acetic anhydride:

$$R \cdot CH: N \cdot OH \xrightarrow{(CH_aCO)_aO} R \cdot CN \quad (g.)$$

3. The most convenient method is to heat an alkyl iodide with potassium cyanide in aqueous ethanolic solution; a small amount of isocyanide is also obtained:

$$RI + KCN \longrightarrow R \cdot CN + KI$$
 (g.)

This method is satisfactory only if R is a primary or secondary alkyl radical. If it is a tertiary radical, very little cyanide is obtained, the tertiary iodide being converted into the corresponding olefin (cf. p. 108). Tertiary alkyl cyanides are best prepared by method 4 below.

Many cyanides, particularly the lower members, may be readily prepared by warming the potassium alkyl sulphate with potassium cyanide (some

isocyanide is also obtained):

$$RO \cdot SO_2 \cdot OK + KCN \longrightarrow R \cdot CN + K_2SO_4$$
 (g.-v.g.)

The cyanide may be freed from isocyanide by shaking with dilute hydrochloric acid, which hydrolyses the latter, but does not affect the former:

$$R \cdot NC + 2H_2O \xrightarrow{HCI} R \cdot NH_2 + H \cdot CO_2H$$

Tosylates, i.e., p-toluenesulphonates (see p. 612), are also useful for cyanide preparation:

$$p\text{-CH}_3 \cdot \text{C}_6 \text{H}_4 \text{SO}_3 \text{R} + \text{KCN} \longrightarrow \text{R} \cdot \text{CN} + p\text{-CH}_3 \cdot \text{C}_6 \text{H}_4 \text{SO}_3 \text{K}$$

4. By the interaction of a Grignard reagent and cyanogen chloride:

This is the best method of preparing tertiary alkyl cyanides.

Methyl cyanide may be formed by passing a mixture of acetylene and ammonia over zirconia at 400-500°, the yield reaching as high as 99 per cent. (Amiel and Nomine, 1947.)

General properties. The alkyl cyanides are stable neutral substances with fairly pleasant smells, and are not as poisonous as hydrogen cyanide. The lower members are liquids which are soluble in water (with which they can form hydrogen bonds), but the solubility diminishes as the molecular weight increases. They are all readily soluble in organic solvents.

Reactions. I. The alkyl cyanides are hydrolysed by acids or alkalis to

the corresponding acid via the intermediate formation of an amide (see

also p. 204):

$$\text{R-C} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \left[ \text{R-C} \xrightarrow{\text{OH}} \right] \longrightarrow \text{R-CO-NH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{R-CO}_2\text{H} + \text{NH}_3 \left( g. -v.g. \right)$$

When a solution of alkyl cyanide in an alcohol is heated with concentrated sulphuric acid or hydrochloric acid, the ester is obtained:

$$R \cdot CN + R'OH + H_2O \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2R' + NH_3$$

On the other hand, if dry hydrogen chloride is passed into the solution of an alkyl cyanide in anhydrous alcohol, the imidic ester hydrochloride is formed:

$$R \cdot CN + R'OH + HCl \longrightarrow R \cdot C \stackrel{NH \cdot HCl}{\bigcirc}{OR'}$$

When an alkyl cyanide is treated with dry hydrogen chloride, the imidochloride is formed:

$$R \cdot C = N + 2HCl \longrightarrow R \cdot C \xrightarrow{\text{NH} \cdot \text{HCl}}$$

2. Alkyl cyanides combine with dry ammonia to form amidines:

$$R \cdot CN + NH_3 \longrightarrow R \cdot C \stackrel{NH}{\nearrow}_{NH_2}$$

3. Alkyl cyanides combine with acid anhydrides on heating to form tertiary acid amides:

$$R \cdot CN + (R \cdot CO)_2O \longrightarrow (R \cdot CO)_3N$$

4. Alkyl cyanides may be converted into aldehydes; e.g.,

$$R \cdot CN \xrightarrow{(i) \text{SnCl}_i - HCl} R \cdot CHO$$

This, as we have seen (p. 148), is a general method for preparing aldehydes.

5. Alkyl cyanides are reduced by nascent hydrogen (sodium and ethanol) to give primary amines (the Mendius reaction, 1862):

$$R \cdot CN + 4[H] \xrightarrow{Na/C_2H_4OH} R \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH_2$$

Some secondary amine, (R·CH2)2NH, is also formed. Catalytic reduction of an alkyl cyanide also produces a primary amine accompanied by the secondary amine, but in this case the amount of the latter is greater than when the reduction is carried out with nascent hydrogen. Von Braun and co-workers (1933) suggested that the mechanism of the formation of secondary amine is:

Support for this mechanism is to be found in the fact that the formation of secondary amine is prevented if the reduction is carried out with a Raney nickel

catalyst in the presence of ammonia.

Alternatively, the formation of secondary amine may be prevented by carrying out the reduction in acetic anhydride solution, using the Adams' platinum catalyst (p. 65). Under these conditions, the primary amine formed is acetylated; this acetyl derivative cannot react with the imine, R\*CH.NH. Reduction of alkyl cyanides with lithium aluminium hydride produces primary amine only.

It should be noted that the above reactions I to 5 clearly indicate that the alkyl group in alkyl cyanides is attached to the carbon atom of the CN

6. Alkyl cyanides (except methyl cyanide) react with Grignard reagents

to form ketones:

$$\begin{array}{c} R' \\ \downarrow \\ R \cdot C : N + R' M g X \longrightarrow R - C = N \cdot M g X \xrightarrow{H_{i}O} R \cdot CO \cdot R' \end{array}$$

7. Alkyl cyanides undergo condensation reactions in the presence of sodium, only the α-hydrogen atoms being involved. These condensations are to be expected in view of the fact that the cyano-group is a very strong negative group (p. 281). When the reaction is carried out in a solvent, e.g., ether, two molecules of cyanide condense (cf. Thorpe's reaction, p. 471):

If, however, the reaction is carried out at 150° in the absence of a solvent, three molecules condense to form a heterocyclic compound (a pyrimidine derivative):

On the other hand, alkyl cyanides with a-hydrogen atoms can condense with esters if the reaction is carried out in ether solution in the presence of sodamide (Levine and Hauser, 1946); e.g., methyl cyanide condenses with ethyl propionate to form propionylmethyl cyanide:

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CN} + \mathrm{NaNH_2} \longrightarrow [\overline{\cdot} \mathrm{CH_2 \cdot CN}] \mathrm{Na^+} + \mathrm{NH_3} \\ \\ \underline{\phantom{C}^{\mathrm{CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5}}} \rightarrow \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CN} + \mathrm{C_2 H_5 OH} \quad \text{(40\%)} \end{array}$$

#### ALKYL isoCYANIDES

These are also known as isonitriles or carbylamines.

General methods of preparation. 1. By heating an alkyl iodide with silver cyanide in aqueous ethanolic solution: a small amount of cyanide is also formed:

$$RI + AgCN \longrightarrow R \cdot NC + AgI$$

2. By heating a mixture of a primary amine and chloroform with ethanolic potassium hydroxide:

$$R \cdot NH_2 + CHCl_3 + 3KOH \longrightarrow R \cdot NC + 3KCl + 3H_2O$$

It has been argued that by analogy with this reaction, replacement of a primary amine by ammonia would lead to the formation of hydrogen isocyanide:

$$H-NH_2 + CHCl_3 + 3KOH \longrightarrow H-NC + KCl + 3H_2O$$

The mechanism of the isocyanide reaction is not certain. Robinson (1961) has suggested that the reaction proceeds via the intermediate formation of dichloromethylene, which is produced from the chloroform in alkaline solution (p. 117):

$$\overrightarrow{R \cdot NH_2} \overset{\frown}{:} \overrightarrow{CCl_2} \longrightarrow \overrightarrow{R \cdot NH_2 \cdot CCl_2} \overset{-H^+}{\longrightarrow} \overrightarrow{R \cdot NH \cdot CCl_2} \overset{-Cl^-}{\xrightarrow{-H^+}} \overrightarrow{R \cdot N} \overset{-}{\Longrightarrow} \overrightarrow{CCl} \overset{-Cl^-}{\longrightarrow} \overrightarrow{R \cdot N} \overset{-}{\Longrightarrow} C$$

General properties. The alkyl isocyanides are poisonous, most unpleasantsmelling liquids, with lower boiling points than the isomeric cyanides. They are not very soluble in water, the nitrogen atom not having a lone pair of electrons available for hydrogen bonding.

Reactions. I. Alkyl isocyanides are hydrolysed to an amine and formic

acid by dilute acids, but are not hydrolysed by alkalis:

$$R\cdot NC + 2H_2O \xrightarrow{acid} R\cdot NH_2 + H\cdot CO_2H$$

2. Alkyl isocyanides are reduced to secondary amines either by nascent hydrogen or by catalytic reduction:

$$R \cdot NC + 4[H] \longrightarrow R \cdot NH \cdot CH_3$$

Both reactions I and 2 clearly indicate that the alkyl group in alkyl isocyanides is attached to the nitrogen atom of the CN group (cf. cyanides, above).

3. Alkyl isocyanides add on halogen to form alkyliminocarbonyl halides, sulphur to form alkyl isothiocyanates, and are readily oxidised by mercuric oxide to alkyl isocyanates:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R·NC} + \text{X}_2 \longrightarrow \text{R·NCX}_2 \\ \text{R·NC} + \text{S} \longrightarrow \text{R·NCS} \\ \text{R·NC} + \text{HgO} \longrightarrow \text{R·NCO} + \text{Hg} \end{array}$$

4. When alkyl isocyanides are heated for a long time, they rearrange to the cyanide:  $R \cdot NC \longrightarrow R \cdot CN$ 

Cyanogen (ethanedinitrile),  $C_2N_2$ , may be prepared by heating the cyanides of mercury or silver:

$$Hg(CN_2) \longrightarrow C_2N_2 + Hg$$

It may also be prepared by adding sodium cyanide to copper sulphate solution and heating. The cupric cyanide first formed is unstable, decomposing into cuprous cyanide and cyanogen:

$$2CuSO_4 + 4NaCN \longrightarrow 2CuCN + C_2N_2 + 2Na_2SO_4$$

When heated with phosphorus pentoxide, oxamide is dehydrated to cyanogen:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO·NH}_2 & \xrightarrow{P_2O_5} & \text{CN} \\ \mid & & \mid \\ \text{CO·NH}_2 & \xrightarrow{-2\text{H}_2\text{O}} & \text{CN} \end{array}$$

Cyanogen is a poisonous, colourless gas, b.p.  $-21^{\circ}$ , very soluble in water. It burns with a violet flame to give carbon dioxide and nitrogen:

$$C_2N_2 + 2O_2 \longrightarrow 2CO_2 + N_2$$

Its aqueous solution slowly decomposes to give a brown precipitate of azulmic acid,  $C_4H_5ON_5$ , and the solution contains ammonium oxalate, hydrogen cyanide, formic acid and urea. When cyanogen is heated at 400°, it polymerises to paracyanogen, which, at 800°, regenerates cyanogen. The structure of cyanogen is probably best represented as a resonance hybrid, I being the most important:

$$: N = \stackrel{\cdot}{=} C - \stackrel{\cdot}{=} N : \longleftrightarrow : \stackrel{\cdot}{N} = \stackrel{\cdot}{C} = \stackrel{\cdot}{N} : \longleftrightarrow : \stackrel{\cdot}{N} = \stackrel{\cdot}{C} = \stackrel{\cdot}{C} = \stackrel{\cdot}{N} :$$

Cyanogen chloride, ClCN, may be prepared by passing chlorine into a cooled solution of sodium cyanide:

$$NaCN + Cl_2 \longrightarrow CICN + NaCl$$

It is a poisonous, colourless gas, b.p. 12°, which is very soluble in water, ethanol and ether. It readily polymerises to *cyanuric chloride*, Cl<sub>3</sub>C<sub>3</sub>N<sub>3</sub>. This is a crystalline solid, m.p. 154°, which is decomposed by heating with water under pressure at 125° to give *cyanuric acid*:

$$Cl_3C_3N_3 + 3H_2O \longrightarrow H_3O_3C_3N_3 + 3HCl$$

Cyanogen bromide, BrCN, may be prepared by adding sodium cyanide to well-cooled bromine water:

$$NaCN + Br_2 \longrightarrow BrCN + NaBr (73-85\%)$$

It is a colourless, crystalline solid, m.p. 52°, which polymerises to *cyanuric bromide*, Br<sub>3</sub>C<sub>3</sub>N<sub>3</sub>. Cyanogen bromide is a useful reagent for converting tertiary amines into secondary amines (see p. 318).

Cyanic acid, HOCN. Urea, on dry distillation, gives cyanuric acid:

$$3CO(NH_2)_2 \longrightarrow H_3O_3C_3N_3 + 3NH_3$$

The yield is improved by heating urea with zinc chloride. Cyanuric acid is a colourless, crystalline solid, not very soluble in water, and is strongly acid, reacting as a mono-, di- and tribasic acid. It has a cyclic structure (a triazine derivative) and is believed to be tautomeric (amido-imidol triad system):

On the other hand, X-ray analysis of cyanuric acid in the solid state indicates that the acid is best represented as a resonance hybrid of the carbonyl form (amido-form). Furthermore, absorption spectra studies in neutral solution show that the same forms are present as in the solid state (Koltz and Askounis, 1947).

When cyanuric acid is heated, it does not melt but decomposes into cyanic acid vapour which, when condensed below oo, gives a colourless

condensate:

$$H_3O_3C_3N_3 \longrightarrow 3HOCN$$

Cyanic acid is a colourless, volatile, strongly acid liquid which, above o°, readily polymerises to cyanuric acid and *cyamelide*, which is a white solid isomeric with cyanuric acid. The structure of cyamelide is believed to be

Aqueous solutions of cyanic acid rapidly hydrolyse to give carbon dioxide and ammonia:

 $HOCN + H_2O \longrightarrow CO_2 + NH_3$ 

Cyanic acid was believed to be a tautomeric mixture of cyanic acid, IV, and isocyanic acid, V (amido-imidol triad system):

$$H-O-C \equiv N \Longrightarrow O=C=N-H$$
(V)

Infra-red studies, however, have indicated that cyanic acid is V; only

derivatives of V are known, e.g., alkyl isocyanates, R.NCO.

When a solution of potassium isocyanate (usually called potassium cyanate) and ammonium sulphate is evaporated to dryness, urea and potassium sulphate are obtained, the urea being formed by the molecular rearrangement of the intermediate product ammonium isocyanate:

$$NH_4NCO \longrightarrow CO(NH_2)_2$$

Cyanic acid reacts with alcohols to form *urethans*; excess of cyanic acid converts urethans into *allophanates*, which are esters of the unknown acid, *allophanic acid*, NH<sub>2</sub>·CO·NH·CO<sub>2</sub>H:

$$ROH + HNCO \longrightarrow NH_2 \cdot CO_2 R \xrightarrow{HNCO} NH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot CO_2 R$$

According to Close *et al.* (1953), the formation of urethan is, if it is truly the intermediate step, not the important one in the usual preparation of allophanates. These authors suggest that allophanate formation occurs via a concerted attack of two molecules of cyanic acid to form a chelate intermediate.

N-substituted urethans are formed by the reaction between alkyl or aryl isocyanates and an alcohol. These are well-defined crystalline solids, and so are used to characterise alcohols, phenyl and I-naphthyl isocyanates being the isocyanates used for this purpose:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NCO + ROH \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot CO_2R$$

Phenyl isocyanate is also used to characterise primary and secondary amines, with which it forms substituted ureas (see p. 315).

Phenyl isocyanate is usually prepared by the action of carbonyl chloride

on aniline:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + COCl_2 \longrightarrow HCl + C_2H_5\cdot NH\cdot COCl \xrightarrow{heat} HCl + C_6H_5\cdot NCO$$

This is a general method for preparing isocyanates; another general method is the Curtius reaction (p. 209).

Di-isocyanates, e.g., hexamethylene di-isocyanate, OCN-(CH2)6-NCO, are used to prepare polyurethan plastics by reaction with di- and polyhydroxyalcohols, e.g., tetramethylene glycol:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{HO} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_4 \cdot \text{OH} + \text{OCN} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_6 \cdot \text{NCO} + \text{HO} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_4 \cdot \text{OH} + \ldots \longrightarrow \\ & \text{HO} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_4 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_6 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{O} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_4 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \ldots \end{array}$$

Fulminic acid. HO·N⇒C, may be prepared by decomposition of its salts with acid. Mercury fulminate, [(CNO)<sub>2</sub>Hg]<sub>2</sub>H<sub>2</sub>O, which is used as a detonator, may be prepared by dissolving mercury in mitric acid, and then adding ethanol. Free fulminic acid is unstable. It is soluble in ether, the ethereal solution also being unstable, the acid readily polymerising.

Cyanamide, NH2 CN, may be prepared by the action of ammonia on cyanogen

chloride:

It may also be prepared by heating urea with thionyl chloride:

$$CO(NH_2)_2 + SOCl_2 \longrightarrow NH_2 \cdot CN + SO_2 + 2HCl$$

It is also readily prepared by the action of water and carbon dioxide on

calcium cyanamide (see below).

Cyanamide is a colourless, crystalline solid, m.p. 42°, very soluble in water, ethanol and ether. It is converted into guanidine (q.v.) by ammonia, and into thiourea (q.v.) by hydrogen sulphide. When cyanamide is melted it forms the dimer dicyanodiamide (NH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C.N·CN, and the trimer melamine, which is a cyclic compound (and tautomeric):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{NH}_2 \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{NH} \\ \text{NH}_2 \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{NH} \\ \text{HN} \\ \text{NH} \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{NH} \\ \text{NH} \\ \end{array}$$

Melamine is used for making melamine-formaldehyde plastics.

Cyanamide itself is a tautomeric compound (amidine system), and Raman spectra investigations have shown that two forms are present in equilibrium in the solid or fused state, or in solution:

$$H_2N-C\equiv N \Longrightarrow HN=C=NH$$

Cyanamide forms salts, the most important of which is the calcium salt. This is manufactured by heating calcium carbide mixed with 10 per cent. its weight of calcium chloride in a stream of nitrogen at 800°:

$$CaC_2 + N_2 \longrightarrow CaN \cdot CN + C$$

The calcium cyanamide-carbon mixture is used as a fertiliser; it is hydrolysed in the soil to cyanamide, which is then hydrolysed to urea, which, in turn, is converted into ammonium carbonate by bacteria in the soil:

$$\begin{split} \text{CaN•CN} &+ 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{NH}_2\text{•CN} + \text{Ca(OH)}_2 \\ \text{NH}_2\text{•CN} &+ \text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{CO(NH}_2)_2 \\ \text{CO(NH}_2)_2 &+ 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{(NH}_4)_2\text{CO}_3 \end{split}$$

Calcium cyanamide is also used to prepare urea industrially.

#### NITROPARAFFINS

Nomenclature. The nitroparaffins are named as the nitro-derivative of the corresponding paraffin, the positions of the nitro-groups being indicated by numbers, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot NO_2} & & \mathrm{nitromethane} \\ \mathrm{NO_2} & & \\ \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CH \cdot CH_3} & & \mathbf{2\text{-}nitropropane} \\ \mathrm{NO_2} & \mathrm{NO_2} & \\ \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3} & \mathbf{2} : \mathbf{4\text{-}dinitrohexane} \end{array}$$

The nitroparaffins, the structure of which is R·NO2, are isomeric with the alkyl nitrites, R.O.NO. The evidence that may be adduced for these respective formulæ is to be found in the study of the reactions of these two groups of compounds. The reactions of the nitrites have already been described (p. 196), and those of the nitroparaffins are described below. It is, however, worth while at this stage to mention the reaction which most clearly indicates their respective structures, viz., reduction. When alkyl nitrites are reduced by nascent hydrogen, an alcohol and ammonia or hydroxylamine are formed. This shows that the alkyl group in nitrites is attached to an oxygen atom:

$$R-0.NO \xrightarrow{[H]} ROH + NH_3 + H_2O$$

On the other hand, when nitroparaffins are reduced, a primary amine is formed. This shows that the alkyl group is attached to the nitrogen atom, since the structure of a primary amine it known to be R-NH2 from its method of preparation (see below):

$$R \cdot NO_2 \xrightarrow{[H]} R \cdot NH_2 + 2H_2O$$
The structure of the nitro-compounds was originally written  $R - NO_2$ .

but work on the dipole moments indicates that they are resonance hybrids:

$$R-N \stackrel{O}{\longleftrightarrow} R-N \stackrel{O}{\longleftrightarrow} or R-N \stackrel{+}{\o} \stackrel{O}{\longleftrightarrow} R-N \stackrel{-}{\o} \stackrel{O}{\longleftrightarrow} 0$$

For most purposes, however, the original formula R-N or the non-committal formula R·NO<sub>2</sub>, is satisfactory.

From the M.O. point of view, the nitro-group is conjugated (Fig. 1), and delocalisation of bonds increases its stability (the two oxygen atoms are equivalent; cf. the carboxylate ion, p. 184).

General methods of preparation. 1. By heating an alkyl halide with silver nitrite in aqueous ethanolic solution:

$$RX + AgONO \longrightarrow R \cdot NO_2 + RONO + AgX$$

This method is only useful for the preparation of primary nitroparaffins. With sec.-halides the yield is about 15 per cent., and with tert.-halides 0-5 per cent.; the yield of nitrite increases from primary to tertiary halides (Kornblum et al., 1954, 1955). Kornblum et al. (1956) have now described a simple new synthesis of primary and secondary nitro-compounds. These authors have shown that, contrary to general opinion, sodium nitrite reacts with alkyl halides to give good yields of nitroparaffin (55-62 per cent.) together with alkyl nitrites (25-33 per cent.). The success of the reaction depends on the use of dimethylformamide as solvent, and the addition of urea increases the solubility of sodium nitrite. Alkyl bromides and iodides are most satisfactory; the chlorides react too slowly to be useful.

2. Nitromethane may be prepared by boiling an aqueous solution of sodium

nitrite with a halogeno-acetic acid, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_2Cl}\text{-}\mathrm{CO_2Na} + \mathrm{NaNO_2} \longrightarrow \mathrm{NaCl} + [\mathrm{CH_2(NO_2)}\text{-}\mathrm{CO_2H}] \longrightarrow \\ \mathrm{CH_3}\text{-}\mathrm{NO_2} + \mathrm{CO_2} \end{array} \\ (35\text{-}38\%) \end{array}$$

This method has no value for preparing higher nitroparaffins (Treibs et al., 1954).

The ready decarboxylation of the intermediate nitroacetic acid may be explained on the assumption that the electron-attracting nitro-group facilitates the loss of carbon dioxide (cf. p. 177):

3. Until fairly recently, the preparation of nitro-compounds by direct nitration was of academic interest only, but mainly from the work of Hass and his co-workers direct nitration is now an important industrial process. Two techniques have been evolved: liquid-phase nitration and vapour-phase nitration.

In liquid-phase nitration, the hydrocarbon is heated with concentrated nitric acid under pressure at 140°. Nitration under these conditions is always slow, and a large amount of polynitro-compounds is produced. It

is interesting to note that a mixture of nitric and sulphuric acids is not

suitable for nitrating paraffins (cf. aromatic hydrocarbons, p. 553).

In vapour-phase nitration, the hydrocarbon is heated with nitric acid (or with oxides of nitrogen) at 150-475°; each hydrocarbon has its optimum temperature, e.g.,

$$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3 \xrightarrow[400^\circ]{\text{HNO}_3} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NO}_2 + \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{NO}_2) \cdot \text{CH}_3 + \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NO}_2 + \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{NO}_2$$

Vapour-phase nitration is more satisfactory than liquid-phase nitration.

Hass and Shechter (1947) have formulated general rules of vapour-phase nitration of paraffins (and cycloparaffins).

(i) Polynitro-compounds are formed only from paraffins of fairly high molecular

(ii) Any hydrogen atom in the hydrocarbon is capable of replacement by a nitro-group, and the ease of replacement is tertiary hydrogen > secondary > primary. As the temperature rises, however, the ease of replacement tends to become equal.

(iii) Any alkyl group present in the paraffin can be replaced by a nitro-group, i.e., chain fission takes place; e.g., isopentane yields nine nitroparaffins. The fission reaction increases as the temperature rises.

- (iv) Oxidation always accompanies nitration, resulting in the formation of nitro-compounds and a mixture of acids, aldehydes, ketones, alcohols, nitrites, nitroso-compounds, nitro-olefins, polymers, carbon monoxide and carbon dioxide. Catalysts such as copper, iron, platinum oxide, etc., accelerate oxidation rather than nitration.
- 4. Another recent method for preparing nitro-compounds is the hydrolysis of α-nitro-olefins with water, acid or alkali; e.g., 2-methyl-1-nitroprop-1ene gives acetone and nitromethane in almost quantitative yield (Levy and Scaife, 1947):

$$(CH_3)_2C:CH\cdot NO_2 + H_2O \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2CO + CH_3\cdot NO_2$$

5. Kornblum et al. (1956) have introduced a practical synthesis of tert.nitro-compounds by the oxidation of tert.-carbinamines with potassium permanganate:

$$R_3C\cdot NH_2 \xrightarrow{KMnO_4} R_3C\cdot NO_2$$
 (70–80%)

General properties. The nitroparaffins are colourless (when pure), pleasant-smelling liquids which are sparingly soluble in water. Most of

them can be distilled at atmospheric pressure.

The nitroparaffins in commercial use at the moment are the lowest four members of the series: nitromethane, nitroethane and 1- and 2-nitropropanes. These are prepared by the vapour-phase nitration of propane, and are used as solvents for oils, fats, cellulose esters, resins and dyes.

Reactions. 1. Nitroparaffins are reduced in acid solution to primary

amines:

$$R \cdot NO_2 + 6[H] \xrightarrow{\text{metal/acid}} R \cdot NH_2 + 2H_2O$$

Catalytic reduction also produces a primary amine, the yield with a Raney nickel catalyst being 90-100 per cent. When the reduction is carried out in neutral solution, e.g., with zinc dust and ammonium chloride solution, nitro-compounds are converted into hydroxylamine derivatives:

$$\text{R+NO}_2 + 4\text{[H]} \xrightarrow{\text{Zn/NH}_4\text{Cl}} \text{R+NH+OH} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

When stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid are used as the reducing agent, nitro-compounds are converted into a mixture of hydroxylamine derivative and oxime:

$$\text{R-CH}_2\text{-NO}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{SnCl}_2/\text{HCl}} \text{R-CH}_2\text{-NH-OH} + \text{R-CH:N-OH}$$

Since hydroxylamine can give rise to two types of derivatives, e.g., R.NHOH and NH2 OR, it is necessary to distinguish one from the other. A common method is to name the former as the N-alkylhydroxylamine, and the latter as the O-alkylhydroxylamine, the capital letters N and O, respectively, indicating where the alkyl group is attached in the molecule.

2. Primary nitro-compounds are hydrolysed by boiling hydrochloric acid or by 85 per cent. sulphuric acid to a carboxylic acid and hydroxyl-

amine:

$$\text{R-CH}_2\text{-NO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} \text{R-CO}_2\text{H} + \text{NH}_2\text{-OH}$$

This reaction is now used for manufacturing hydroxylamine, and may become a commercial source of propionic acid (using 1-nitropropane).

Secondary nitro-compounds are hydrolysed by boiling hydrochloric acid

to ketones and nitrous oxide:

$$2R_2CH\cdot NO_2 \xrightarrow{HCI} 2R_2CO + N_2O + H_2O$$

Tertiary nitro-compounds are generally unaffected by hydrochloric acid. 3. Primary and secondary nitro-compounds, i.e., those containing ahydrogen atoms, are acidic in character due to tautomerism (the nitro-group is a very strong negative group and contains multiple bonds):

$$R \cdot CH_2 \cdot N \bigvee_{O}^{O} \rightleftharpoons R \cdot CH = N \bigvee_{O}^{OH}$$

The nitro-form I is often called the pseudo-acid form; II is known as the aci-form or nitronic acid. This is an example of a triad system, the nitroacinitro system; the equilibrium is almost completely on the left, and this may be due to the nitro-form being stabilised by resonance (of the nitro-

These nitronic acids do not dissolve in aqueous sodium carbonate, but do in aqueous sodium hydroxide, which disturbs the nitro-acinitro equilibrium by removing the latter form. Thus nitro-compounds behave as acids in the presence of strong alkalis, but not in their absence; hence they are said

to be pseudo-acids:

R<sub>2</sub>CH·NO<sub>2</sub> 
$$\Longrightarrow$$
 R<sub>2</sub>C:NO<sub>2</sub>H  $\xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}}$  R<sub>2</sub>C:NO<sub>2</sub>Na

These sodium compounds are true salts, i.e., they exist as ions:  $[R_2C:NO_2]^-Na^+$ . When the sodium salt is acidified at low temperature, there is not always an immediate separation of oily drops (of the nitro-form). On standing, however, the acidified solution slowly deposits oily drops due to the slow tautomeric change of the nitronic acid into the nitro-compound. Furthermore, when the sodium salt is carefully neutralised with hydrochloric acid, the resulting solution has a conductivity which is greater than that calculated for the sodium chloride content. Hence, in addition to the sodium and chloride ions, there must be present other ions which must be those from the nitronic acid. Thus the following changes probably take place:

$$[R_2C:NO_2]^-Na^+ + HCl \longrightarrow Na^+Cl^- + [R_2C:NO_2]^-H^+ \longrightarrow R_2C:NO_2H \Longrightarrow R_2CH\cdot NO_2$$

This is evidence for the existence of the nitronic acid; actually Hantzsch and Schultze (1896) isolated both forms of phenylnitromethane, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·NO<sub>2</sub>, thus confirming the existence of the nitro-acinitro tautomeric system.

When the sodium salt solution of the nitronic acid is acidified with 50 per cent. sulphuric acid at room temperature, an aldehyde (from a primary nitro-compound) and a ketone (from a secondary nitro-compound) is obtained, e.g., (R' is either an alkyl radical or a hydrogen atom):

$$2RR'C.NO_2Na + 2H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow 2RR'CO + N_2O + 2NaHSO_4 + H_2O$$
 (85%)

When treated with stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid, the sodium salt of the nitronic acid is reduced to the aldoxime or ketoxime:

These oximes are readily converted into the parent carbonyl compound by steam distillation or by direct hydrolysis with acid.

4. Primary and secondary nitro-compounds are readily halogenated in alkaline solution in the  $\alpha$ -position only:

$$R_2 \text{C:NO}_2 \text{Na} + \text{Br}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} R_2 \text{CBr·NO}_2 + \text{NaBr}$$

Primary nitro-compounds can form the mono- and dibromo-derivatives, whereas secondary form only the monobromo-derivative: nitromethane is exceptional in that it can form the tribromo-derivative. *Chloropicrin* (p. 117) is manufactured by the reaction between nitromethane, chlorine and sodium hydroxide.

When liquid or gaseous nitro-compounds are treated with halogen in the absence of alkali, indiscriminate substitution takes place resulting in the formation of the  $\alpha$ -,  $\beta$ -,  $\gamma$ -, halogeno-compounds, e.g.,

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{NO}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Cl}_2} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CHCl}\text{-}\text{NO}_2 + \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{NO}_2$$

5. Nitro-compounds react with nitrous acid, the product formed depending on the nature of the alkyl group.

Primary nitro-compounds form nitrolic acids; these are crystalline substances which dissolve in sodium hydroxide to give red solutions:

$$R-C$$
 $H$ 
 $+O$ 
 $=NOH$ 
 $\longrightarrow R-C$ 
 $NO_2$ 
 $+H_2O$ 

Secondary nitro-compounds form *pseudonitroles* (ψ-nitroles); these are colourless crystalline substances which dissolve in sodium hydroxide to give blue solutions (the blue colour is probably due to the presence of the nitroso-group; see below):

$$R_2C$$
 $NO_2$ 
 $NO_2$ 
 $NO_2$ 
 $NO_2$ 

Tertiary nitro-compounds do not react with nitrous acid since they have no α-hydrogen atom.

These reactions with nitrous acid are the basis of the "red, white and blue" test for the nature of monohydric alcohols (Victor Meyer et al., 1874). The alcohol under investigation is treated as follows:

$$ROH \xrightarrow{PBr_*} RBr \xrightarrow{AgONO} R \cdot NO_2$$

The nitro-compound is now treated with an alkaline solution of sodium nitrite, acidified with hydrochloric acid, and finally made alkaline with sodium hydroxide. The development of a red colour indicates a primary alcohol, blue colour a secondary, and the solution remaining colourless ("white"), a tertiary alcohol. This test is now only historically important.

6. Owing to the presence of active  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms, primary and secondary nitro-compounds undergo condensation with aldehydes; e.g., (i) nitro-methane condenses with benzaldehyde in the presence of ethanolic potassium hydroxide to form  $\omega$ -nitrostryrene:

ini nydroxide to form &-mirostryrene.

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHO +  $CH_3$ ·NO<sub>2</sub>  $\xrightarrow{KOH}$   $C_6H_5$ ·CH:CH·NO<sub>2</sub> +  $H_2O$ 

(ii) Nitroethane condenses with formaldehyde in the presence of aqueous potassium hydrogen carbonate to form the bishydroxymethyl compound, 2-methyl-2-nitropropane-1: 3-diol (cf. p. 165).

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{NO}_2 + 2\text{HCHO} \xrightarrow{\text{KHCO}_6} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$$

These condensations are similar to the aldol condensations, the active methylene or methyne group being produced by the adjacent nitro-group.

The sodium salts of the nitronic acids condense with  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated ketones (p. 279); e.g., with mesityl oxide nitromethane forms 4: 4-dimethyl-5-nitropentan-2-one:

$$(CH_3)_2C:CH\cdot CO\cdot CH_3 + CH_2:NO_2Na \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2C-CH_2\cdot CO\cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{HCI} (CH_3)_2C-CH_2\cdot CO\cdot CH_3$$

$$CH:NO_2Na \xrightarrow{CH_2\cdot NO_2} (CH_3\cdot NO_2)$$

Primary and secondary nitro-compounds also undergo the Mannich reaction (1917). This is the condensation between formaldehyde, ammonia or a primary or secondary amine (preferably as the hydrochloride), and a compound containing at least one active hydrogen atom. In this reaction, the active hydrogen atom is replaced by an aminomethyl group or substituted aminomethyl group:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{NO}_2 \\ \text{R}_2\text{CH-NO}_2 + \text{H-CHO} + \text{NH}_4\text{Cl} \longrightarrow \text{R}_2\text{C--CH}_2\text{·NH}_2\text{·HCl} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \end{array}$$

The Mannich reaction offers a means of preparing a large variety of compounds, e.g., nitro-amines, diamines, etc.

## NITROSO-PARAFFINS

The nitroso-paraffins contain a nitroso-group, —N=O, directly attached to a carbon atom. They are named as the nitroso-derivatives of the corresponding paraffin, e.g.,

(CH3)3C.NO 2-methyl-2-nitrosopropane

General methods of preparation. 1. By the addition of "nitrous fumes" to olefins. The compound formed depends on the nature of the olefin; usually a mixture is obtained, e.g., Michael and Carlson (1940) treated isobutene with

dinitrogen tetroxide under various conditions, and believed that the following compounds were formed (see also p. 71):

$$\begin{bmatrix} (CH_3)_2C & CH_2 \\ O \cdot NO_2 & NO \end{bmatrix}_2 & \begin{bmatrix} (CH_3)_2C & CH_2 \\ O \cdot NO & NO \end{bmatrix}_2 \\ \text{nitrosate} & \text{nitrosite} \\ (CH_3)_2C & CH_2 \\ NO_2 & NO_2 \\ \text{dinitro-compound} & \text{nitro-compound} \\ \end{bmatrix}$$

2. By the addition of nitrosyl chloride or bromide to olefins, whereby olefin nitrosohalides are formed (p. 71):

$$\text{CH}_2\text{--CH}_2 + \text{NOCl} \longrightarrow \left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{--CH}_2 \\ \mid & \mid \\ \text{NO} \quad \text{Cl} \end{array} \right]_2 \xrightarrow{\text{nolecules}} \left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{--CH}_2 \\ \mid & \mid \\ \text{NO} \quad \text{Cl} \end{array} \right]_2$$

Thorne (1956) has shown that, in general, structures which increase the availability of electrons at the double bond favour the formation of nitrosochlorides and nitrosates. Thus it was found that a carboxyl group fairly close to the double bond prevents formation of adducts, e.g., 4-phenylbut-3-enoic and 5-phenylpent-4-enoic acid do not form nitrosochlorides or nitrosates; oleic acid, however, forms a nitrosochloride. Furthermore, the position of a double bond in an olefin determines whether an adduct is formed, e.g., hex-1-ene does not form a nitrosochloride whereas hex-2-ene does.

3. By the action of nitrous acid on certain types of compounds, e.g., secondary

nitro-paraffins (see p. 305).

4. By the oxidation of primary amines containing a tertiary alkyl group with e.g., Caro's acid (peroxy(mono)sulphuric acid):

$$R_3C\cdot NH_2 + 2[O] \xrightarrow{H_2SO_8} R_3C\cdot NO + H_2O$$

On the other hand, Emmons (1957) has prepared primary, secondary, and tertiary nitroso compounds by oxidation of amines with neutralised peracetic acid in methylene dichloride (yield: 33-80 per cent.).

5. Gowenlock et al. (1956) have prepared nitrosoparaffins  $(C_1 - C_4)$  by the pyrolysis of alkyl nitrites, and have proposed the following mechanism (e.g., for ethyl nitrite):

$$\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{O}\text{-}\text{NO} \longrightarrow \text{NO} + \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{O}\text{-} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{NO} + \text{CH}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{NO} + \text{CH}_2\text{O}$$

General properties. Nitroso-compounds, which are usually blue or green liquids, tend to associate to give colourless solids (smelling like camphor) which are dimers. These bimolecular solids regenerate the monomer when fused or when dissolved in solution. Chilton et al. (1955) and Gowenlock et al. (1955) have examined the absorption spectrum of the two solid forms of nitrosomethane, and have concluded that they are geometrical isomers (N.B., a double-bond is

necessary for this molecule to exhibit geometrical isomerism).

Nitroso-compounds exist as such only when the nitroso-group is attached to a carbon atom not joined to hydrogen, i.e., to a tertiary carbon atom. If the nitroso-group is attached to a primary or secondary carbon atom, the nitrosocompound is generally unstable, tending to rearrange to the oxime:

R<sub>2</sub>CH—NO 
$$\longrightarrow$$
 R<sub>2</sub>C.N·OH  
blue and  
unstable colourless and  
stable

This is known as the nitroso-oximino triad system. This system is potentially tautomeric, but no example is known of the isomerisation of the oxime directly to the nitroso-compound. On the other hand, when an aldoxime is treated with bromine, the bromonitroso compound is formed; this, on fusion, is converted into the isomeric bromo-oxime:

$$R\text{-}CH\text{:}N\text{-}OH \xrightarrow{Br_2} R\text{-}C \xrightarrow{NO} \xrightarrow{fuse} R\text{-}CBr\text{:}N\text{-}OH$$

It has also been found that the bimolecular nitroso-chlorides rearrange, if possible, to the oxime when treated with sodium hydroxide:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \text{CH}_2\text{Cl} \\ | & \text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{NO} \end{bmatrix}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} 2 \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}}$$

$$\xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{NO}} 2 \xrightarrow{\text{CH}:\text{N}\cdot\text{OH}}$$

The so-called isonitroso-compounds (oximino-compounds) are actually the oximes, e.g., isonitrosoacetone,  $CH_3$ ·CO·CH.N·OH, formed by the action of nitrous acid on acetone, is really the half oxime of methylglyoxal (q.v.).

Nitroso-compounds may be oxidised to the nitro-compound by nitric acid, and

reduced to the primary amine by, e.g., tin and hydrochloric acid:

$$R_3C\text{-NO}_2 \xleftarrow{\text{HNO}_3} R_3C\text{-NO} \xrightarrow{\text{Sn/HCl}} R_3C\text{-NH}_2$$

#### MONOAMINES

Amines are derivatives of ammonia in which one or more hydrogen atoms have been replaced by alkyl groups. The amines are classified as primary, secondary or tertiary amines according as one, two or three hydrogen atoms in the ammonia molecule have been replaced by alkyl groups. Thus the general formulæ of primary, secondary and tertiary amines may be written R·NH<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>NH and R<sub>3</sub>N, and each is characterised by the presence of the amino-group—NH<sub>2</sub>, the imino-group NH, and the tertiary nitrogen atom N—, respectively.

In addition to the amines the tetra-alkyl derivatives of ammonium hydroxide, [R<sub>4</sub>N]+OH-, are known; these are called the quaternary am-

monium hydroxides.

Nomenclature. The suffix of the series is amine, and each member is named according to the alkyl groups attached to the nitrogen atom, e.g.,

CH<sub>3</sub>·NH<sub>2</sub> (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NH (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>N methylamine dimethylamine trimethylamine (C2H5)2N·CH(CH3)2 diethylisopropylamine

The amines are said to be "simple" when all the alkyl groups are the same, and "mixed" when the alkyl groups are different.

The method of naming a quaternary ammonium hydroxide is illustrated by the following examples:

 $(CH_3)_4NOH$  tetramethylammonium hydroxide  $(CH_3)_3N\cdot C_2H_5\}OH$  ethyltrimethylammonium hydroxide

General methods of preparation. Many methods are available for preparing amines, but it is instructive to consider them in the following groups: Methods for the three classes of amines. 1. Hofmann's method (1850). This is by means of ammonolysis, an alkyl halide and an ethanolic solution of ammonia being heated in a sealed tube at 100°. A mixture of all three classes of amines is obtained, together with some quaternary ammonium compound (see p. 314 for the structure of amine salts):

$$\begin{array}{l} {\rm RX + NH_3 \longrightarrow \dot{R} \cdot NH_2 + HX \longrightarrow \dot{R} \cdot NH_2 \cdot HX} \\ {\rm R\cdot NH_2 \cdot HX + NH_3 \Longrightarrow \dot{R} \cdot NH_2 + NH_4 X} \\ {\rm R\cdot NH_2 + RX \longrightarrow \dot{R}_2 NH + HX \longrightarrow \dot{R}_2 NH \cdot HX} \\ {\rm R_2 NH + RX \longrightarrow \dot{R}_3 N + HX \longrightarrow \dot{R}_3 N \cdot HX} \\ {\rm R_2 NH + \dot{R} X \longrightarrow \dot{[R_4 N]^+ X^-}} \end{array}$$

In many cases a good yield of primary amine may be obtained by using a large excess of ammonia, and a good yield of tertiary amine by using alkyl halide in slight excess required by the equation:

$$3RX + NH_3 \longrightarrow R_3N + 3HX$$

Carrying out the reaction in liquid ammonia (in excess) gives a better yield of primary amine than by using aqueous or ethanolic ammonia; e.g., Watt and Otto (1947) found that ammonolysis of ethyl iodide by liquid ammonia in excess at oo was complete in less than 15 minutes, and gave 46 per cent. ethylamine, 31 per cent. diethylamine and 17 per cent. triethylamine.

The order of reactivity of the alkyl halides in ammonolysis is alkyl iodide>bromide>chloride, and the method is limited to primary alkyl halides and the secondary halide, isopropyl bromide. All other secondary halides and tertiary halides eliminate a molecule of halogen acid to form the olefin and no amine when heated with ethanolic ammonia. Amines of the type R<sub>3</sub>C·NH<sub>2</sub> are best prepared by means of a Grignard reagent (p. 357).

2. A mixture of the three types of amines may be prepared by the ammonolysis of alcohols; the alcohol and ammonia are heated under pressure in the presence of a catalyst, e.g., copper chromite or alumina:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{ROH} + \text{NH}_3 \longrightarrow \text{R} \cdot \text{NH}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \\ \text{R} \cdot \text{NH}_2 + \text{ROH} \longrightarrow \text{R}_2\text{NH} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \\ \text{R}_2\text{NH} + \text{ROH} \longrightarrow \text{R}_3\text{N} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \end{array}$$

The primary amine may be obtained as the main product by using a large

excess of ammonia (cf. method 1).

Separation of amine mixtures. When the mixture contains the three amine salts and the quaternary salt, it is distilled with potassium hydroxide solution. The three amines distil, leaving the quaternary salt unchanged in solution, e.g.,

$$R_2NH\cdot HX + KOH \longrightarrow R_2NH + KX + H_2O$$

The distillate of mixed amines may now be separated into the individual amines as follows:

Fractional distillation. This is the most satisfactory method and is now used industrially, its success being due to the high efficiency of industrial

fractionation apparatus.

Hinsberg's method (1890). The mixture of amines is treated with an aromatic sulphonyl chloride. Benzenesulphonyl chloride, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·SO<sub>2</sub>Cl, was used originally, but has now been replaced by p-toluenesulphonyl chloride, CH<sub>3</sub>·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·SO<sub>2</sub>Cl. After treatment with this acid chloride, the solution is made alkaline with potassium hydroxide. Primary amines form the alkyl sulphonamide, e.g., ethylamine forms ethyl p-toluenesulphonamide:

$$CH_3 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot SO_2Cl + C_2H_5 \cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot SO_2 \cdot NH \cdot C_2H_5 + HCl$$

These sulphonamides are soluble in potassium hydroxide solution, possibly due to the formation of the soluble potassium salt of the enol form of the sulphonamide:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_3 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot S - N - C_2H_5 \Longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot S = N \cdot C_2H_5 \stackrel{\bar{O}K^+}{\Longrightarrow} CH_3 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot S = N \cdot C_2H_5 \\ 0 \\ \end{array}$$

Secondary amines form dialkyl sulphonamides, which are insoluble in potassium hydroxide solution because these sulphonamides are incapable of tautomerism (there is no α-hydrogen atom adjacent to the negative group); e.g., diethylamine forms diethyl p-toluenesulphonamide:

$$\mathrm{CH_3 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot SO_2Cl} + (\mathrm{C_2H_5})_2\mathrm{NH} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot SO_2 \cdot N(C_2H_5)_2} + \mathrm{HCl}$$

Tertiary amines do not react with p-toluenesulphonyl chloride.

The alkaline solution is distilled, and the tertiary amine thereupon distils off. The residual liquid is filtered: the filtrate contains the primary amine derivative which, on acidification, gives the alkyl sulphonamide; the residual solid is the dialkyl sulphonamide. The amines are regenerated from the sulphonamides by refluxing with 70 per cent. sulphuric acid or 25 per cent. hydrochloric acid.

Preparation of primary amines. 1. By the reduction of nitro-compounds with metal and acid, or with hydrogen and a nickel catalyst:

$$R \cdot NO_2 + 3H_2 \xrightarrow{Ni} R \cdot NH_2 + 2H_2O$$
 (ex.)

This method is becoming increasingly important since more aliphatic nitrocompounds are becoming available and is particularly useful for preparing amino-alcohols from the starting materials obtained by the condensation between formaldehyde and nitro-compounds (see p. 306).

2. (i) By the reduction of alkyl cyanides:

$$\text{R-CN} + 4[\text{H}] \xrightarrow{\text{Na/C}_2\text{H}_4\text{OH}} \text{R-CH}_2\text{·NH}_2$$

This method is particularly useful for the preparation of high molecular weight amines, since the cyanides are readily prepared from the long-chain

(ii) By the reduction of oximes with sodium and ethanol, or catalytically:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CH:N-OH} + 4[\text{H}] \longrightarrow \text{R-CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH}_2 + \text{H}_2 \text{O} \quad (g.) \\ \text{R}_2 \text{C:N-OH} + 4[\text{H}] \longrightarrow \text{R}_2 \text{CH-NH}_2 + \text{H}_2 \text{O} \quad (g.) \end{array}$$

(iii) By the reduction of amides with sodium and ethanol, or catalytically:

$$R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 + 4[H] \longrightarrow R \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH_2 + H_2O$$
 (f.g.-g.)

In all cases there are also obtained varying amounts of secondary amine as by-products, which increase in quantity when the reduction is carried out catalytically (see alkyl cyanides, p. 296). Reeve et al. (1956), however, have found that Raney cobalt (and Raney nickel) generally gives a primary amine in high purity by the reduction of nickel) generally gives a primary amine in high purity by the reduction of oximes. On the other hand, nitrocompounds, cyanides, oximes and amides may be reduced by lithium aluminium hydride to primary amines unaccompanied by secondary amines.

3. By passing a mixture of aldehyde or ketone and a large excess of ammonia and hydrogen under pressure (20-150 atm.) over Raney nickel at 40-150°. The reaction may also be carried out at 3 atmospheres in the presence of excess ammonium chloride and Adams' platinum catalyst:

$$R \cdot CO \cdot R' + NH_3 + H_2 \longrightarrow RR'CH \cdot NH_2 + H_2O$$

Small amounts of secondary and tertiary amines are obtained as by-products. This process of introducing alkyl groups into ammonia or primary or secondary amines by means of an aldehyde or ketone in the presence of a reducing agent is known as *reductive alkylation*.

4. By the Leuckart reaction (p. 156):

$$R \cdot CO \cdot R' + 2H \cdot CO_2 NH_4 \longrightarrow$$

$$RR'CH\cdot NH\cdot CHO + 2H_2O + CO_2 + NH_3 \xrightarrow{acid} RR'CH\cdot NH_2$$

5. By the hydrolysis of alkyl isocyanates with boiling alkali (Wurtz, 1849):

$$R \cdot NCO + 2KOH \longrightarrow R \cdot NH_2 + K_2CO_3$$

This method is not very useful in practice owing to the inaccessibility of the isocyanates. It is, however, historically important because Wurtz discovered amines by this reaction. He at first thought he had obtained ammonia, but subsequently found the gas was inflammable.

6. By Hofmann's degradation method (p. 206):

$$R \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 + Br_2 + 4KOH \longrightarrow R \cdot NH_2 + 2KBr + K_2CO_3 + 2H_2O$$

This is generally the most convenient method of preparing primary amines.

7. By the Curtius reaction (p. 209):

$$\text{R-CO-N}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3\text{OH}} \text{R-NCO} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3\text{OH}} \text{R-NH-CO}_2\text{CH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \text{R-NH}_2$$

This method of preparing primary amines works well for all members of the series.

8. By the Lossen rearrangement (p. 207):

$$R \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot OH \xrightarrow{acid} H_2O + R \cdot NCO \xrightarrow{acid} R \cdot NH_2$$

This has very little importance as a practical method.

9. The Schmidt reaction (1923). This reaction is carried out by shaking a solution of a carboxylic acid in concentrated sulphuric acid with a chloroform solution of hydrazoic acid (cf. p. 178).

$$R \cdot CO_2H + HN_3 \xrightarrow{H_3SO_4} R \cdot NH_2 + CO_2$$
 (v.g.)

This method generally gives better yields of primary amines than the Hofmann or Curtius reaction, but it is somewhat dangerous because of the

explosive and poisonous character of the hydrazoic acid.

10. Gabriel's phthalimide synthesis (1887). In this method phthalimide is converted, by means of ethanolic potassium hydroxide, into its salt potassiophthalimide, which, on heating with an alkyl halide, gives the N-alkylphthalimide. This is then hydrolysed to phthalic acid and a primary amine by heating with 20 per cent. hydrochloric acid under pressure, or by refluxing with potassium hydroxide solution:

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} CO \\ CO \end{array} \text{NH} \xrightarrow{\text{ROH}} \begin{array}{c} CO \\ CO \end{array} \text{NK} \xrightarrow{\text{RI}} \begin{array}{c} CO \\ CO \end{array} \text{N-R} \xrightarrow{\text{H_{\bullet}O}} \\ \begin{array}{c} CO_2H \\ CO_2H \end{array} + \text{R-NH}_2 \end{array}$$

When hydrolysis is difficult, the alkylphthalimide can be treated with hydrazine to give the amine (Ing, 1926):

Gabriel's synthesis is a very useful method since it gives a pure primary amine.

11. Decarboxylation of amino-acids. This is carried out by distilling the amino-acid with barium hydroxide; e.g., glycine gives methylamine:

$$CH_2(NH_2) \cdot CO_2H \xrightarrow{Ba(OH)_2} CH_3 \cdot NH_2 + CO_2$$

Decarboxylation of amino-acids may also be effected by bacteria, especially putrefying bacteria (many of which occur in the intestines).

12. By means of a Grignard reagent and chloramine. The product is pure:

$$RMgX + CINH_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot NH_2 + MgXCl$$

Alternatively, a primary amine may be prepared by interaction of a Grignard

reagent and O-methylhydroxylamine (see p. 357).

13. A good method for preparing primary amines containing a *tert*.-alkyl group is to add a *tert*.-alcohol (or an alkene) to acetic acid in which is dissolved sodium cyanide, and then add sulphuric acid (Ritter *et al.*, 1948):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R}_3\text{COH} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4} \rightarrow \text{R}_3\text{C} \cdot \text{OSO}_3\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{HCN}} \text{R}_3\text{C} \cdot \text{N} = \text{CH} \cdot \text{OSO}_3\text{H} \\ \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \rightarrow \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 + \text{R}_3\text{C} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \rightarrow \text{R}_3\text{C} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \end{array} \tag{40\%}$$

The N-alkylformamide produced is hydrolysed with sodium hydroxide.

Preparation of secondary amines. I. By the reduction of an alkyl iso-

cyanide:

$$R \cdot NC + 4[H] \longrightarrow R \cdot NH \cdot CH_3$$

The amine produced always contains a methyl group as one radical; the method is of academic interest only.

2. By heating a primary amine with the calculated quantity of alkyl halide:

$$R \cdot NH_2 + R'X \longrightarrow R \cdot NH \cdot R' + HX$$

3. Aniline is heated with an allkyl halide, and the product, dialkylaniline, is treated with nitrous acid; the p-nitroso-dialkylaniline so formed is then boiled with sodium hydroxide solution. A pure secondary amine and p-nitrosophenol are produced:

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
NH_2 & NR_2 & OH \\
\hline
 & NR_2 & OH \\
\hline
 & NAOH & NO \\
\hline
 & NO & NO \\
\end{array}$$

This is one of the best methods of preparing pure secondary amines.

4. By the catalytic reduction of a Schiff's base, which is formed by interaction of a primary amine and an aldehyde (Henze and Humphreys, 1942).

$$R \cdot NH_2 + R' \cdot CHO \longrightarrow H_2O + R \cdot N \cdot CH \cdot R' \xrightarrow{Raney Ni} R \cdot NH \cdot CH_2 \cdot R'$$

Secondary amines prepared this way usually contain an aromatic group as one of the radicals (R is generally the phenyl radical,  $C_6H_5$ \*).

5. By the hydrolysis of a dialkyl cyanamide with acid or alkali:

$$\text{CaN-CN} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \text{Na_2N-CN} \xrightarrow{\text{RX}} \text{R_2N-CN} \xrightarrow{\text{H_2O}} \text{R_2NH} + \text{CO}_2 + \text{NH}_3$$

Preparation of tertiary amines. 1. The best method of preparation is to heat an ethanolic solution of ammonia with alkyl halide which is used in slight excess required by the equation:

$$3RX + NH_3 \longrightarrow R_3N + 2HX$$

When the reaction mixture is made alkaline and distilled, the tertiary amine is obtained. The residual quaternary compound may be distilled in vacuo to yield more tertiary amine (see quaternary compounds, p. 318).

2. By the reduction of a carbonyl compound (in excess) in the presence of hydrogen, ammonia or a primary or secondary amine, with Raney nickel as catalyst (cf. primary amines, method 3), e.g.,

$$R_2NH + R' \cdot CHO + H_2 \xrightarrow{Ni} R_2N \cdot CH_2 \cdot R' + H_2O$$

Preparation of quaternary compounds. There is only one satisfactory method of preparing quaternary compounds, viz., by heating ammonia with a very large excess of alkyl halide; a primary, secondary or tertiary amine may be used instead of ammonia. The starting materials will depend on the nature of the desired quaternary compound, e.g., ethyltrimethylammonium iodide may be prepared by heating trimethylamine with ethyl iodide:

 $(CH_3)_3N + C_2H_5I \longrightarrow [(CH_3)_3N \cdot C_2H_5]^+I^-$ 

General properties of the amines. The lower members are gases, soluble in water (with which they can form hydrogen bonds). These are followed by members which are liquids, and finally by members which are solids. The solubility in water decreases as their molecular weight increases. All the volatile members have a powerful fishy smell, and are combustible.

The reactions of an amine depend very largely on the class of that amine. Reactions given by all three classes of amines. I. All the amines are basic, and they are stronger bases than ammonia.

$$RNH_2 + H_2O \Longrightarrow RNH_3^+ + OH^-$$

One factor that controls the basicity of amines will be the availability of the lone pair for protonation. At first sight, it would appear that as the number of alkyl groups increases, then because of their + I effect, the lone pair will become more available, thereby increasing the basicity of the amine. This, however, is not the case, as can be seen from the following order of basicity:

$$\mathrm{NH_3} < \mathrm{Me_3N} < \mathrm{MeNH_2} < \mathrm{Me_2NH}$$

The reason for this order is not clear. It has been suggested that a steric factor operates. Addition of the proton increases crowding and so sets up strain, which will be greatest in the tertiary amine, and consequently the stability of this molecule is decreased, *i.e.*, its basicity is reduced. However, when we consider that the three bonding pairs and the lone pair all occupy  $sp^3$  orbitals, and that a lone pair causes crowding of bonding pairs (p. 29), it would seem that protonation should *relieve* crowding by transforming the lone pair into a bonding pair.

All the 'onium ions carry a positive charge and so are solvated. The greater the ion, the less will be the solvation and so the less stabilised is the ion. It seems possible that in going from Me<sub>2</sub>NH to Me<sub>3</sub>N, although the availability of the lone pair is increased, the ion has now grown sufficiently in size at this stage to become less solvated and so the stabilisation lost due to this decrease in solvation is greater than the inductive effect making the lone pair available for protonation,

2. All the amines combine with acids to form salts, e.g., methylamine. combines with hydrochloric acid to form methylammonium chloride:

$$CH_3 \cdot NH_2 + HCl \longrightarrow [CH_3 \cdot NH_3] + Cl$$

The nitrogen is quadricovalent unielectrovalent in amine salts; but to show their relationship to the amines, their salts are often written as, e.g., CH<sub>3</sub>·NH<sub>2</sub>·HCl, methylamine hydrochloride; [(C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NH]<sub>2</sub>·H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, diethylamine sulphate.

Amine salts of certain complex acids, particularly chloroplatinic acid, are used for the determination of the molecular weights of amines (see

3. All the amines combine with alkyl halides to form alkyl-substituted

ammonium halides with more alkyl groups than the amine used.

4. When an amine salt is heated at high temperature, a molecule of alkyl halide is eliminated (i.e., reverse of reaction 3, above):

$$R_3N \cdot HCl \longrightarrow RCl + R_2NH \xrightarrow{HCl} RCl + R \cdot NH_2 \xrightarrow{HCl} RCl + NH_4Cl$$

If the tertiary amine is a mixed amine, it is the smallest alkyl group that is eliminated first:

$$(C_2H_5)_2N\cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{HCl} (C_2H_5)_2NH + CH_3Cl$$

This is the basis of estimating the methylimino-group, N·CH3, in natural

substances such as alkaloids.

When the methyl ether of a high boiling hydroxy compound is heated with concentrated hydriodic acid at 100°, methyl iodide is formed (cf. p. 142):

Ar-O-CH<sub>3</sub> + HI -roo- ArOH + CH<sub>3</sub>I

This is the **Zeisel method** for the quantitative estimation of methoxyl groups (p. 637).

When the temperature is raised to 150°, N-methyl groups are converted

into methyl iodide:

Ar·NH·CH<sub>3</sub> + HI 
$$\xrightarrow{150^{\circ}}$$
 Ar·NH<sub>2</sub> + CH<sub>3</sub>I

This is the Herzig-Meyer method for the quantitative estimation of methylimino-groups. Thus methoxyl and methylimino-groups can be estimated separately when both are present in the same compound.

Reactions given by primary and secondary amines. 1. Primary and secondary amines react with acid chlorides or anhydrides to form the N-alkyl

acid amide, e.g.,

$$R\cdot NH_2 + (CH_3\cdot CO)_2O \longrightarrow CH_3\cdot CO\cdot NH\cdot R + CH_3\cdot CO_2H$$

These monoacetyl derivatives are easily prepared and, since they are usually well-defined crystalline solids, are used to characterise primary amines.

It is difficult to prepare the diacetyl derivative; excess of the acetylating agent and high temperature, however, often yields the diacetyl derivative:

$$R\cdot NH\cdot CO\cdot CH_3 + (CH_3\cdot CO)_2O \longrightarrow R\cdot N(CO\cdot CH_3)_2 + CH_3\cdot CO_2H$$

Secondary amines, obviously, can form only the monoacyl derivative:

$$R_2NH + CH_3 \cdot COCl \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot NR_2 + HCl$$

The acetylated amines are neutral substances which do not form salts with inorganic acids. It is the presence of the acetyl group, a negative group, which decreases the basic strength of the amine (see p. 569).

Sulphonyl chlorides also react with primary and secondary amines to

form N-alkyl sulphonamides (see the Hinsberg separation, above).

2. Halogens, in the presence of alkali, react with primary and secondary amines to form halogeno-amines. Primary amines form the mono- or dihalogeno-derivative according to the amount of halogen used:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R*NH}_2 \xrightarrow{X_2/\text{NaOH}} & \text{R*NHX} + \text{R*NX}_2 \\ \text{R}_2\text{NH} \xrightarrow{X_2/\text{NaOH}} & \text{R}_2\text{NX} \end{array}$$

3. Primary amines react with nitrosyl chloride to form an alkyl chloride: secondary amines are converted into a nitrosamine:

$$R\cdot NH_2 + NOCl \longrightarrow RCl + N_2 + H_2O$$
  
 $R_2NH + NOCl \longrightarrow R_2N\cdot NO + HCl$ 

4. Primary and secondary amines form sodium salts when heated with sodium:

$$R \cdot NH_2 + Na \longrightarrow [R \cdot NH]^-Na^+ + \frac{1}{2}H_2$$
  
 $R \cdot NH + Na \longrightarrow [R_2N]^-Na^+ + \frac{1}{2}H_2$ 

5. Primary amines react in two stages with Grignard reagents, the first stage taking place at room temperature, the second only at high temperature:

$$\begin{array}{l} {\rm R\cdot NH_2 + CH_3\cdot Mg\cdot I} \longrightarrow {\rm CH_4 + R\cdot NH\cdot MgI} \\ {\rm R\cdot NH\cdot MgI + CH_3\cdot Mg\cdot I} \longrightarrow {\rm CH_4 + R\cdot N(MgI)_2} \end{array}$$

Secondary amines, since they contain only one active hydrogen atom, can only react with one molecule of a Grignard reagent:

$$R_2NH + CH_3 \cdot Mg \cdot I \longrightarrow CH_4 + R_2N \cdot MgI$$

6. Primary and secondary amines form substituted ureas with phenyl isocyanate, and may be characterised by these derivatives:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{R·NH}_2 + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{·NCO} \longrightarrow \text{R·NH·CO·NH·C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \text{R}_2\text{NH} + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{·NCO} \longrightarrow \text{R}_2\text{N·CO·NH·C}_6\text{H}_5 \end{array}$$

7. Primary and secondary amines can participate in the Mannich reaction (p. 306), e.g.,

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + H \cdot CHO + R \cdot NH_2 \cdot HCl \xrightarrow{\phantom{A}} C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot NHR \cdot HCl + H_2O$$

Reactions given by primary amines. 1. Primary amines form isocyanides when heated with chloroform and ethanolic potassium hydroxide:

$$R \cdot NH_2 + CHCl_3 + 3KOH \longrightarrow R \cdot NC + 3KCl + 3H_2O$$

This reaction is used as a test for primary amines (or for chloroform).

2. When warmed with carbon disulphide, primary amines form a dithiocarbanic acid, which is decomposed by mercuric chloride to the alkyl isothiocyanate:

anate:
$$R \cdot NH_2 + CS_2 \longrightarrow S = C \xrightarrow{NH \cdot R} \frac{HgCl_s}{SH} R \cdot NCS + HgS + 2HCI$$

This is known as the Hofmann mustard oil reaction, and may be used as a test for primary amines.

3. Primary amines combine with aromatic aldehydes to form Schiff bases:

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHO + R·NH<sub>2</sub>  $\longrightarrow$   $C_6H_5$ ·CH:NR + H<sub>2</sub>O

4. Primary amines react with nitrous acid with the evolution of nitrogen. The equation is usually written:

$$R \cdot NH_2 + HNO_2 \longrightarrow ROH + N_2 + H_2O$$

The reaction, however, is far more complicated than this equation indicates. According to Whitmore (1941), methylamine does not form any methanol at all when treated with nitrous acid; dimethyl ether is produced. Ethylamine gives 60 per cent. of ethanol, and n-propylamine 7 per cent. of n-propanol, 32 per cent. of isopropanol and 28 per cent. of propylene. Linnemann (1868) had claimed to have obtained methanol in 50 per cent. yield from methylamine. Austin (1960) has examined the deamination of methylamine in detail and showed (using no excess of inorganic acid) that the following compounds are formed: methanol, methyl nitrite (major product), methyl chloride, nitromethane, and methylnitrolic acid (NO<sub>2</sub>·CH=NOH). Austin has shown that nitrous acid, as such, is not a participant in the initial interaction with the amine; the effective nitrosating reagent is dinitrogen trioxide (or NOX; X=Cl, Br, I); thus:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R.NH}_2 + \text{N}_2\text{O}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{slow}} \text{R.NH}_2\text{.NO} \longrightarrow \\ \text{R.NH.NO} \longrightarrow \text{R.N} = \text{NOH} \longrightarrow \text{R.N}_2^+ + \text{OH}^- \longrightarrow \text{R}^+ + \text{N}_2 \end{array}$$

The products from n-propylamine may thus be explained as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2^+ \\ \text{isom.} & \downarrow & \downarrow -\text{H}^+ \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CH}_3 & \leftarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH} = \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \text{OH} \end{array}$$

Whatever are the products formed by the action of nitrous acid on a primary amine, nitrogen is always evolved. Thus this reaction may be used as a test for primary amines, since none of the other classes of amines liberates nitrogen.

Primary amines may be converted into the corresponding alcohols in good yields by means of the von Braun method (see also p. 762):

$$R \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH_2 \xrightarrow{C_6H_5 \cdot COCl} R \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5 \xrightarrow{PCl_6}$$

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CN + POCl_3 + R \cdot CH_2Cl \xrightarrow{NaOH} R \cdot CH_2OH$$
Thite (1954) has intered.

White (1954) has introduced a new method for the deamination of aliphatic amines:

$$R \cdot NH_{2} \xrightarrow{R' \cdot COCl} R \cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot R' \xrightarrow{N_{2}O_{4}} R \cdot N(NO) \cdot CO \cdot R' \xrightarrow{heat}$$

$$N_{2} + R \cdot O \cdot CO \cdot R' \xrightarrow{NaOH} ROH \quad (v.g.)$$
5. Oxidation of primary assistance.

5. Oxidation of primary amines. The products obtained depend on the oxidising agent used, and on the nature of the alkyl group, e.g., (i) with potassium permanganate:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{[O]}} \text{R} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{NH} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_3\text{O}} \text{R} \cdot \text{CHO} + \text{NH}_3 \\ \\ \text{R}_2 \text{CH} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{[O]}} \text{R}_2 \text{C} \cdot \text{NH} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_3\text{O}} \text{R}_2 \text{CO} + \text{NH}_3 \\ \\ \text{ketimine} \end{array}$$

$$R \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH_2 \xrightarrow{[O]} R \cdot CH_2 - NH \cdot OH + R \cdot CH \cdot N \cdot OH + R \cdot C$$

$$N \cdot OH$$

$$N \cdot Alkyl \quad Aldoxime \quad hydroxamic \quad Az \cdot CH \cdot NH_2 \xrightarrow{[O]} R_2C \cdot NOH$$

$$R_2C \cdot NH_2 \xrightarrow{[O]} R_2C \cdot NO$$

Reactions given by secondary amines. I. Secondary amines react with nitrous acid to form insoluble oily nitrosamines; nitrogen is not evolved:

$$R_2NH + HNO_2 \longrightarrow R_2N \cdot NO + H_2O$$

Nitrosamines are yellow neutral oils which are steam-volatile. When warmed with a crystal of phenol and a few drops of concentrated sulphuric acid, nitrosamines form a green solution which, when made alkaline with aqueous sodium hydroxide, turns deep blue. This procedure may be used as a test for secondary amines; it is known as *Liebermann's nitroso reaction*.

Nitrosamines are readily hydrolysed to the amine by boiling with dilute hydrochloric acid:

$$R_2N\cdot NO + H_2O \xrightarrow{HCI} R_2NH + HNO_2$$

Peroxytrifluoroacetic acid converts secondary nitrosamines into nitramines (Emmons, 1954):

$$R_2N\cdot NO \xrightarrow{CF_3\cdot CO_9H} R_2N\cdot NO_2$$
 (73-95%)

2. When warmed with carbon disulphide, secondary amines form a dithiocarbamic acid, which is not decomposed by mercuric chloride to the alkyl isothiocyanate (cf. primary amines):

3. Secondary amines may be oxidised, the product depending on the oxidising agent used, e.g.,

Reactions given by tertiary amines. I. Tertiary amines dissolve in cold nitrous acid to form the nitrite salt, R<sub>3</sub>N·HNO<sub>2</sub> or [R<sub>3</sub>NH]<sup>+</sup>NO<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup>. When this solution is warmed, the nitrite decomposes to form a nitrosamine and alcohol:

$$[R_3NH]^+NO_2^- \longrightarrow R_2N^-NO + ROH$$

Tertiary amines are not affected by potassium permanganate, but are oxidised to the amine oxide by Caro's acid or by hydrogen peroxide:

$$R_3N + [O] \longrightarrow R_3N \rightarrow O$$

These amine oxides are basic and exist as [R<sub>3</sub>N·OH]<sup>+</sup>OH<sup>-</sup> in solution. When the solution is evaporated to dryness, the dihydrate, R<sub>2</sub>NO.2H<sub>2</sub>O, is obtained as crystals. These, when carefully heated *in vacuo*, are converted into the anhydrous amine oxide, R<sub>3</sub>NO. Amine oxides form addition compounds with gaseous hydrogen halide, e.g., [R<sub>2</sub>N·OH]<sup>+</sup>Cl<sup>-</sup>, and with alkyl halides, e.g., [R<sub>3</sub>N·OR]<sup>+</sup>Cl<sup>-</sup>.

3. Tertiary amines react with cyanogen bromide to form a dialkyl cyanamide:

 $R_3N + BrCN \longrightarrow [R_3N \cdot CN]^+ Br^- \longrightarrow R_2N \cdot CN + RBr$ 

The dialkyl cyanamides are readily hydrolysed by acid or alkali to a secondary amine:

$$R_2N \cdot CN \xrightarrow{H_2O} R_2N \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow R_2NH + CO_2$$

This method therefore offers a means of converting a tertiary amine into a secondary, but is mainly used to open the ring of a cyclic amine containing a tertiary nitrogen atom (see p. 762).

## QUATERNARY AMMONIUM COMPOUNDS

The quaternary ammonium salts are white crystalline solids, soluble in water, and completely dissociated in solution (the nitrogen is quadricovalent unielectrovalent). When a quaternary ammonium halide is heated *in vacuo*, it gives the tertiary amine:

$$[R_4N]^+X^- \longrightarrow R_3N + RX \quad (g.-v.g.)$$

When a quaternary ammonium halide is treated with moist silver oxide, the quaternary ammonium hydroxide is produced:

$$[R_4N]^+X^- + 'AgOH' \longrightarrow [R_4N]^+OH^- + AgX$$

This change may also be effected by treating the quaternary ammonium halide with a methanolic solution of potassium hydroxide. Potassium halide, which is precipitated, is removed by filtration, and the solvent then evaporated from the filtrate. It is important to note that the quaternary ammonium hydroxide is not liberated by aqueous potassium hydroxide.

The quaternary ammonium hydroxides are white deliquescent crystalline solids which are as strongly basic as sodium and potassium hydroxides (all exist as ions in the solid state). Their solutions absorb carbon dioxide,

and will liberate ammonia from its salts.

The thermal decomposition of quaternary ammonium hydroxides is a very important reaction. Only tetramethylammonium hydroxide decomposes to give an alcohol:

$$[(CH_3)_4N]^+OH^- \longrightarrow (CH_3)_3N + CH_3OH$$

All other quaternary ammonium hydroxides give an olefin and water, e.g.,

$$[(C_2H_5)_4N]^+OH^- \longrightarrow (C_2H_5)_3N + C_2H_4 + H_2O$$

If the quaternary ammonium hydroxide contains different alkyl groups of which one is methyl, then the methyl group is always retained by the nitrogen, and an olefin and water are formed. Furthermore, if the ethyl group is one of the radicals, then ethylene is formed preferentially to any other olefin (Hofmann's rule). Water is always eliminated by the combination of the hydroxyl ion with a  $\beta$ -hydrogen atom of one of the alkyl groups (preferably ethyl):

$$[(\mathrm{CH_3})_2(\mathrm{C_3H_7})\mathrm{N} \cdot \overset{\alpha}{\mathrm{CH_2}} \cdot \overset{\beta}{\mathrm{CH_3}}]^+\mathrm{OH}^- \longrightarrow (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{C_3H_7} + \mathrm{C_2H_4} + \mathrm{H_2O}$$

If there is no β-hydrogen in the quaternary hydroxide, e.g., tetramethylammonium hydroxide, then no olefin is formed.

The above reaction is the basis of the Hofmann exhaustive methylation method (1851). In certain cases it is used to prepare unsaturated compounds

of known structure, e.g., benzene (see p. 506), but it is generally used to ascertain the nature of the carbon skeleton of cyclic compounds containing a nitrogen atom in the ring (see p. 762).

According to Ingold et al. (1927, 1933) the reaction proceeds by a bimolecular elimination (E2) mechanism:

$$_{\mathrm{HO}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H}} _{\mathrm{CH}_{2}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{CH}_{2}} _{\mathrm{NR}_{3}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H}_{2}\mathrm{O}} + \mathrm{CH}_{2} = \mathrm{CH}_{2} + \mathrm{NR}_{3}$$

The reason for the preferential elimination of ethylene has been explained as follows (Ingold *et al.*, 1927). The positive charge on the nitrogen atom produces an inductive effect which causes positive charges to be produced on neighbouring carbon atoms. This weakens the C—H bonds sufficiently for a  $\beta$ -proton to be eliminated by the E2 mechanism.

$$\begin{array}{c} H \\ CH_3 \rightarrow CH \rightarrow CH_2 \rightarrow \stackrel{+}{N} \rightarrow CH_2 \stackrel{C}{\longleftarrow} \stackrel{OH^-}{\longleftarrow} \\ CH_3 \stackrel{+}{\longleftarrow} CH_3 \stackrel{+}{\longleftarrow} CH_2 \stackrel{+}{\longleftarrow} CH_2 \stackrel{+}{\longrightarrow} N(CH_3)_2 + CH_2 \stackrel{-}{\longleftarrow} CH_2 + H_2O \end{array}$$

Since the terminal methyl group of the n-propyl radical is electron-releasing, the positive charge induced on the  $\beta$ -carbon atom (of the propyl group) is partially neutralised. This "tightens" the bonding of these  $\beta$ -hydrogen atoms, and so a less tightly bound  $\beta$ -hydrogen atom in the ethyl radical is eliminated preferentially with the formation of ethylene.

As can be seen from the foregoing account, the formation of ethylene (and, in general, the least branched olefin) is attributed to the polar factor. Brown et al. (1956), however, have concluded from their work that the Hofmann type of elimination must be attributed to the large steric requirements of the group undergoing elimination and not to the positive charge on the 'onium group (cf. Saytzeff's rule, p. 111).

Another interesting application of the method of exhaustive methylation is the preparation of methyl esters of acids which are difficult to esterify by the usual methods. The acid is converted into the quaternary methylammonium salt by titration with tetramethylammonium hydroxide in methanolic solution; the salt, on heating at 200–300°, is decomposed into the methyl ester and trimethylamine (Prelog and Piantanida, 1936):

$$[(CH_3)_4N]^+[O\cdot CO\cdot R]^- \longrightarrow R\cdot CO_2CH_3 + (CH_3)_3N \quad (v.g.)$$

Methylamine, dimethylamine and trimethylamine may be prepared by any of the general methods, but are conveniently prepared by special methods.

Methylamine: By heating ammonium chloride with two equivalents of

Methylamine: By heating ammonium chloride with two equivalents of formaldehyde (in formalin soln); the yield is 45-51 per cent. based on the ammonium chloride:

It is prepared industrially by passing a mixture of methanol and ammonia over a catalyst, and separating the mixture by fractional distillation (see p. 309).

Methylamine is a gas, b.p.  $-7.6^{\circ}$ , which is used as a refrigerant. Dimethylamine: By heating ammonium chloride with about four equiva-

lents of formaldehyde (in formalin solution):

$$NH_4Cl + 4H\cdot CHO \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2NH\cdot HCl + 2H\cdot CO_2H$$

It is a gas, b.p. 7°.

Trimethylamine: By heating a solid mixture of ammonium chloride and paraformaldehyde:

$$_{2}\text{NH}_{4}\text{Cl} + _{9}\text{H}\cdot\text{CHO} \longrightarrow _{2}(\text{CH}_{3})_{3}\text{N}\cdot\text{HCl} + _{3}\text{CO}_{2}$$
 (89%)

It is a gas, b.p. 3.5°. It occurs in sugar residues, and is used as a source of methyl chloride:

$$(CH_3)_3N + 4HCl \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} 3CH_3Cl + NH_4Cl$$

N-methylation of primary and secondary amines can readily be effected by formaldehyde (formalin solution); the mechanism may be:

$$>$$
NH + CH<sub>2</sub>O  $\longrightarrow >$ N·CH<sub>2</sub>OH  $\xrightarrow{2[H]} >$ N·CH<sub>3</sub> + H<sub>2</sub>O

The 2[H] is produced according to the following reactions:

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm 2CH_2O} + {\rm H_2O} \longrightarrow {\rm CH_3OH} + {\rm H\cdot CO_2H} \\ {\rm H\cdot CO_2H} \longrightarrow {\rm CO_2} + {\rm 2[H]} \end{array}$$

Carbon dioxide is always evolved in these reactions.

The long-chain amines, prepared by the catalytic reduction of alkyl cyanides (from fatty acids and ammonia), are used as antioxidants, sterilising agents and flotation agents.

#### DIAMINES

Diamines may be prepared by methods similar to those for the monoamines, using polymethylene halides instead of alkyl halides.

Ethylenediamine. NH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·NH<sub>2</sub>, may be prepared by heating, under pressure, ethylene bromide with a large excess of ammonia:

$$\label{eq:ch2br-ch2br} \text{CH$_2$Br+C$H$_2$Br} + 2\text{NH$_3$} \longrightarrow \text{NH$_2$+C$H$_2$+C$H$_2$+N$H$_2$+ 2HBr}$$

It is a colourless liquid, b.p. 118°, soluble in water. It forms piperazine when its hydrochloride is heated:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{HCl·NH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{HCl} \\ + \\ \text{HCl·NH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{HCl} \end{array} \\ \rightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{HCl·HN} & \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{HCl} \end{array}$$

Ethylenediamine forms chelate compounds with many metals, e.g., cobalt.

Putrescine, tetramethylenediamine, NH<sub>2</sub>•(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>•NH<sub>2</sub>, is formed by the putrefaction of proteins (in flesh). It may be prepared as follows:

$$CH_2Br \cdot CH_2Br \xrightarrow{KCN} NC \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CN \xrightarrow{Na/C_2H_4OH} NH_2 \cdot (CH_2)_4 \cdot NH_2$$

It is a poisonous solid, m.p. 27°, with a disagreeable odour, and is soluble in water. When its hydrochloride is heated, *pyrrolidine* is formed:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{NH}_2\text{-}\text{HCl} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{NH}_2\text{-}\text{HCl} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2 \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{NH}\cdot\text{HCl} + \text{NH}_4\text{Cl} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2 \end{array}$$

Cadaverine, pentamethylenediamine,  $NH_2 \cdot (CH_2)_5 \cdot NH_2$ , is formed by the putrefaction of proteins (in flesh). It may be prepared by an analogous method to that used for putrescine:

$$\text{Br}^{\bullet}(\text{CH}_2)_3 \cdot \text{Br} \xrightarrow{\text{KCN}} \text{NC}^{\bullet}(\text{CH}_2)_3 \cdot \text{CN} \xrightarrow{\text{Na}/\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{OH}} \text{NH}_2 \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_5 \cdot \text{NH}_2$$

It is, however, prepared more conveniently by heating pentamethylene bromide with an excess of ammonia:

$$Br \cdot (CH_2)_5 \cdot Br + 2NH_3 \longrightarrow NH_2 \cdot (CH_2)_5 \cdot NH_2 + 2HBr$$

The starting material pentamethylene bromide is readily obtained from piperidine (see p. 762).

Cadaverine is a poisonous, syrupy, fuming liquid, b.p. 178-180°, with a disagreeable odour, and is soluble in water. When its hydrochloride is heated, piperidine is formed:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{NH}_2\text{-}\text{HCl} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{NH}_2\text{-}\text{HCl} \\ \end{array} \\ \rightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2 \\ \end{array} \\ \text{NH}\cdot\text{HCl} + \text{NH}_4\text{Cl} \\ \end{array}$$

Hexamethylenediamine is manufactured by the catalytic hydrogenation of adiponitrile prepared from adipic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm CO_2H} \boldsymbol{\cdot} ({\rm CH_2})_4 \boldsymbol{\cdot} {\rm CO_2H} \xrightarrow{\rm NH_5} \boldsymbol{\cdot} {\rm CN} \boldsymbol{\cdot} ({\rm CH_2})_4 \boldsymbol{\cdot} {\rm CN} \xrightarrow{\rm H_3} \\ {\rm NH_2} \boldsymbol{\cdot} ({\rm CH_2})_6 \boldsymbol{\cdot} {\rm NH_2} \end{array}$$

It is a colourless crystalline solid, m.p. 39°, and is used in the manufacture of nylon (p. 379).

Spermine, a deliquescent crystalline solid which is isolated from human sperm,

is a tetramine: NH<sub>2</sub>•(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>•NH•(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>•NH•(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>•NH<sub>2</sub>.

Diamines with two amino-groups attached to the same carbon atom are unknown (cf. the group C(OH)2, p. 168). On the other hand, N-substituted derivatives have been prepared, e.g., tetraethylmethylenediamine:

$$(C_2H_5)_2NH + CH_2O + NH(C_2H_5)_2 \longrightarrow (C_2H_5)_2N \cdot CH_2 \cdot N(C_2H_5)_2 + H_2O$$

#### UNSATURATED AMINES

The simplest unsaturated amine would be vinylamine (ethenylamine) if it existed. All attempts to prepare it result in the formation of the cyclic compound ethyleneimine (aziridine), and a good method is to treat 2-aminoethanol with sulphuric acid and then to heat the product with aqueous sodium hydroxide.

$$\text{NH}_{2}\text{-}\text{CH}_{2}\text{-}\text{CH}_{2}\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_{2}\text{SO}_{4}} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_{3}\text{-}\text{CH}_{2}\text{-}\text{CH}_{2}\text{OSO}_{3}} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \xrightarrow{\text{NH}} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_{2}\text{-}\text{CH}_{2}}$$

Thus this compound is a three-membered heterocyclic ring. Ethyleneimine is a syrupy liquid, b.p. 56°, with a strong ammoniacal odour; it is miscible with water, and is strongly basic. It combines with sulphurous acid to form taurine (2-aminoethanesulphonic acid), which occurs in human bile:

Neurine (trimethylvinylammonium hydroxide), [(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>N·CH:CH<sub>2</sub>]+OH-, is found in the brain. It may be prepared:

(i) By boiling choline with barium hydroxide solution:

[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>N·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH]<sup>+</sup>OH<sup>-</sup>
$$\xrightarrow{\text{Ba}(\text{OH})_2}$$
 [(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>N·CH:CH<sub>2</sub>]<sup>+</sup>OH<sup>-</sup> + H<sub>2</sub>O

(ii) By heating trimethylamine and ethylene bromide (one molecule of each), and subsequently heating the product with silver oxide in water:

(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>N + BrCH<sub>2</sub>•CH<sub>2</sub>Br 
$$\longrightarrow$$
 [(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>N•CH<sub>2</sub>•CH<sub>2</sub>Br]<sup>+</sup>Br<sup>-</sup> $\xrightarrow{\text{(AgOH ")}}$  [(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>N•CH<sub>1</sub>•CH<sub>2</sub>]<sup>+</sup>OH<sup>-</sup>

(iii) A very interesting synthesis is by the interaction of acetylene and trimethylamine under pressure, in the presence of water at 60°:

the under pressure, in the pressure, 
$$C_2H_2 + (CH_3)_3N + H_2O \longrightarrow [(CH_3)_3N \cdot CH \cdot CH_2]^+OH^-$$

Neurine is a very poisonous syrupy liquid.

Allylamine (2-propenylamine), CH2.CH.CH2.NH2, may be prepared by heating allyl iodide with ammonia:

$$CH_2$$
: $CH$ - $CH_2$ I +  $NH_3$   $\longrightarrow$   $CH_2$ : $CH$ - $CH_2$ · $NH_2$  +  $HI$ 

It is more conveniently prepared by boiling allyl isothiocyanate with dilute hydrochloric acid:

CH<sub>2</sub>·CH·CH<sub>2</sub>·NCS + H<sub>2</sub>O  $\xrightarrow{\text{HCl}}$  CH<sub>2</sub>·CH·CH<sub>2</sub>·NH<sub>2</sub> + COS (70–73%)
It is a colourless liquid, b.p. 53°, with an ammoniacal smell, and is miscible with water.

#### AMINOALCOHOLS

The simplest aminoalcohol is 2-aminoethanol, NH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH (cholamine, ethanolamine, 2-hydroxyethylamine). It occurs in kephalins (p. 263), and is best prepared by the action of ethylene oxide on excess of ammonia.

$$CH_2$$
  $-CH_2$  +  $NH_3$   $\longrightarrow$   $NH_2$   $\cdot CH_2$   $\cdot$ 

It is a viscous liquid, b.p. 171°, miscible with water, and is strongly basic.

Choline (2-hydroxyethyltrimethylammonium hydroxide) occurs in lecithins (p. 263); it is best prepared by the action of ethylene oxide on trimethylamine in aqueous solution:

$$CH_2$$
— $CH_2$  +  $(CH_3)_3$ N +  $H_2$ O  $\longrightarrow [(CH_3)_3$ N· $CH_2$ · $CH_2$ OH]+OH-

It is a colourless viscous liquid, soluble in water, and is strongly basic. It forms neurine when boiled with barium hydroxide solution (see above). It is present in the vitamin B complex; it is a growth factor in chicks.

#### AMINO-ACIDS

Amino-acids are derivatives of the carboxylic acids in which a hydrogen atom in the carbon chain has been replaced by an amino-group. The amino-group may occupy the  $\alpha$ - or  $\beta$ - or  $\gamma$ - . . . position; there may also be two or more amino-groups present in the chain.

The three basic classes of foods are: proteins, fats and carbohydrates. The proteins are nitrogenous substances which occur in most cells of the animal body; they also occur in plants. When hydrolysed by strong inorganic acids or by enzymes, proteins yield a mixture of amino-acids, all of which are  $\alpha$ -amino-acids. The number of amino-acids so far obtained appears to be about twenty-five, of which about ten are essential, *i.e.*, a deficiency in any one growth in young animals, and may even cause death.

The amino-acids are classified in several ways; Table VI shows a convenient classification; the letters g, l and e which follow the name of the acid indicate that the acid is respectively of general occurrence, lesser occurrence, and essential (in

In this book we shall consider in detail only the simplest amino-acid, glycine (aminoacetic acid, glycocoll),  $CH_2(NH_2) \cdot CO_2H$ . This acid is found in many proteins, and occurs in certain animal excretions, usually in combination, e.g., hippuric acid (in horses' urine),  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$ . hydroxide solution on chloroacetic acid:

$$CH_2Cl \cdot CO_2H + 2NH_3 \longrightarrow CH_2(NH_2) \cdot CO_2H + NH_4Cl$$
 (64-65%) It may also be prepared pure by Gabriel's phthalimide synthesis (p. 311):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \\ \text{CO} \\ \text{NK} + \text{CI} - \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \\ \end{array} \rightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \\ \text{CO} \\ \text{N} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \\ \end{array}$$

#### TABLE VI

Name	Formula
Neutral Amino-acids (one amino-group and one carboxyl group)	
1. Glycine (g) 2. Alanine (g) 3. Valine (g, e) 4. Leucine (g, e) 5. isoLeucine (g, e) 6. Norleucine (l) 7. Phenylalanine (g, e)	CH <sub>2</sub> (NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H CH <sub>3</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H (CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H (CH <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> CH·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H (C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> )(CH <sub>3</sub> )CH·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H CH <sub>3</sub> ·(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H CH <sub>3</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H HO CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H
8. Tyrosine (g) 9. Serine (g) 10. Cysteine (g) 11. Cystine (g) 12. Threonine (g, e) 13. Methionine (g, e)	HOCH <sub>2</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H HOCH <sub>2</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H HS·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H (—S·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H) <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>3</sub> ·CHOH·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H CH <sub>3</sub> ·S·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H
14. Di-iodotyrosine or iodogorgic acid (l)	HO CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H
15. Thyroxine (l)	HO CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H
16. Dibromotyrosine (l)	HO Er CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H
17. Tryptophan (g, e)	CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H
18. Proline (g)	CH <sub>2</sub> —CH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> —CH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> —CH·CO <sub>2</sub> H
19. Hydroxyproline (l)	NH HOCH—CH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> CH·CO <sub>2</sub> H
Acidic Amino-acids (one amino-group and two carboxyl groups)	
20. Aspartic acid (g) 21. Glutamic acid (g) 22. β-Hydroxyglutamic acid (l) <sup>1</sup>	CO <sub>2</sub> H·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H CO <sub>2</sub> H·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H CO <sub>2</sub> H·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CHOH·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H
Basic Amino-acids (two amino-groups and one carboxyl group)	
23. Ornithine *  24. Arginine (g, e)	NH <sub>2</sub> ·CH <sub>3</sub> ·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H NH <sub>3</sub> HN=C-NH·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H NH <sub>2</sub> ·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH <sub>2</sub> ·CH(NH <sub>2</sub> )·CO <sub>2</sub> H
<ul><li>25. Lysine (g, e)</li><li>26. Histidine (g, e)</li></ul>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{NH}_2\text{-CH}_2$

<sup>\*</sup> Ornithine is probably not present in proteins, but is formed by the hydrolysis of arginine.

1 Occurrence in proteins uncertain.

Glycine exists as white prisms which melt, with decomposition, at 289-292°. It has a sweet taste, and is soluble in water but insoluble in ethanol and ether. Since it contains an amino-group and a carboxyl group, it combines the properties of a base and an acid, i.e., it is amphoteric. The following reactions are typical of all α-amino-acids.

Reactions characteristic of the amino-group. I. Glycine forms salts with

strong inorganic acids, e.g., Cl{H<sub>3</sub>N·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H

2. Glycine reacts with acetyl chloride or acetic anhydride to give the acetyl derivative:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{H}_{2}\text{N}\cdot\text{CH}_{2}\cdot\text{CO}_{2}\text{H} + (\text{CH}_{3}\cdot\text{CO})_{2}\text{O} \longrightarrow \\ \text{CH}_{3}\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{CH}_{2}\cdot\text{CO}_{2}\text{H} + \text{CH}_{3}\cdot\text{CO}_{2}\text{H} \end{array}$$

Similarly, with benzoyl chloride, it forms benzoylglycine (hippuric acid; see above).

These acylated derivatives are acidic, the basic character of the aminogroup being effectively eliminated by the presence of the negative group attached to the nitrogen (see p. 569).

3. When glycine is treated with nitrous acid, nitrogen is evolved and

glycollic acid is formed:

$$CH_2(NH_2)\cdot CO_2H + HNO_2 \longrightarrow CH_2OH\cdot CO_2H + N_2 + H_2O$$

4. Nitrosyl chloride (or bromide) reacts with glycine to form chloro- (or bromo-) acetic acid:

$$CH_2(NH_2)\cdot CO_2H + NOCI \longrightarrow CH_2Cl\cdot CO_2H + N_2 + H_2O$$

Reactions characteristic of the carboxyl group. I. Glycine may be esterified by an alcohol in the presence of inorganic acid, e.g.,

$$\mathsf{CH_2(NH_2) \cdot CO_2H} + \mathsf{C_2H_5OH} \xrightarrow{\mathsf{HCl}} \mathsf{HCl} \cdot \mathsf{H_2N \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5} + \mathsf{H_2O}$$

The ester is liberated from its hydrochloride by alkali.

2. Glycine forms metallic salts when its aqueous solution is warmed with a metallic oxide or hydroxide. These salts are chelate compounds, e.g., the copper salt (deep blue needles) is:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} O = C - O & H_2N \cdot CH_2 \\ & Cu & \\ CH_2 \cdot NH_2 & O - C = O \end{array}$$

3. Amino-acids may be reduced to aminoalcohols by lithium aluminium hydride (Vogel et al., 1952).

$$R \cdot CH(NH_2) \cdot CO_2H \xrightarrow{LiAlH_1} \rightarrow R \cdot CH(NH_2) \cdot CH_2OH$$

Reactions due to both the amino- and carboxyl groups. I. When measured in aqueous solution, the dipole moment of glycine is found to have a large value. To account for this large value it has been suggested that glycine exists, in solution, as an inner salt:

$$H_2N \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H + H_2O \Longrightarrow H_3N \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2 - + H_2O$$

Such a double charged ion is known, in addition to an inner salt, as a zwitterion, ampholyte, or a dipolar ion. This dipolar ion structure also accounts for the absence of acidic and basic properties of an amino-acid (the carboxyl

and amino-groups of the same molecule neutralising each other to form a salt). The properties of crystalline glycine, e.g., its high melting point and its insolubility in hydrocarbon solvents, also indicate that it exists as the inner salt in the solid state.

Owing to its amphoteric character, glycine cannot be titrated directly with alkali. When formalin solution is added to glycine, methyleneglycine is

formed (reaction probably more complex):

$$H_2N\cdot CH_2\cdot CO_2H + H\cdot CHO \longrightarrow CH_2\cdot N\cdot CH_2\cdot CO_2H + H_2O$$

This is a strong acid (the basic character of the amino-group being now suppressed), and can be titrated with sodium hydroxide. This method is known as the Sörensen titration.

2. When heated, glycine forms diketopiperazine; glycine esters give a

better yield:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_2 \cdot CO \hline OC_2H_5 & H \\ \hline \\ HN \hline H & C_2H_5O \\ \hline \\ OC \cdot CH_2 \end{array} \longrightarrow NH \begin{array}{c} CH_2 - CO \\ \hline \\ CO - CH_2 \end{array} NH + 2C_2H_5OH \\ \hline \\ CO - CH_2 \end{array}$$

Betaines. These are the trialkyl derivatives of glycine, which exist as dipolar ions of formula R<sub>3</sub>N·CH<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>. Betaine itself is the trimethyl derivative, and may be prepared by heating glycine with methyl iodide in methanolic solution:

$$R_3$$
N·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub> + 3CH<sub>3</sub>I  $\longrightarrow$  (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>N·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub> + 3HI

It is more conveniently prepared by warming an aqueous solution of chloroacetic acid with trimethylamine:

$$(CH_3)_3N + CH_2Cl \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow (CH_3)_3 \stackrel{\circ}{N} \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2 + HCl$$

Betaine is a solid, m.p. 300° (with decomposition). It occurs in nature, especially in plant juices. It behaves as a base, e.g., with hydrochloric acid it forms the stable crystalline hydrochloride, Cl (CH3)3N·CH2·CO2H.

# ALIPHATIC DIAZO-COMPOUNDS

The aliphatic diazo-compounds are characterised by the presence of the

Diazomethane, CH2N2, may be prepared in various ways; the first is of

historical importance, and the others are very convenient methods.

Method of Von Pechmann (1894). Methylamine is treated with ethyl chloroformate to give N-methylurethan which, on treatment with nitrous acid in ethereal solution, forms N-methyl-N-nitrosourethan. This, on warming with methanolic potassium hydroxide, decomposes into diazomethane, which is collected on cooled ether:

CH<sub>3</sub>·NH<sub>2</sub> + Cl·CO<sub>2</sub>C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> 
$$\longrightarrow$$
 CH<sub>3</sub>·NH·CO<sub>2</sub>C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>  $\xrightarrow{\text{HNO}_5}$  CH<sub>3</sub>·N(NO)·CO<sub>2</sub>C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>  $\xrightarrow{\text{KOH}}$  CH<sub>2</sub>N<sub>2</sub> + CO<sub>2</sub> + C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>OH

Method of McKay (1948). Methylamine hydrochloride and nitroguanidine are allowed to react in potassium hydroxide solution, the product N-methyl-N'-nitroguanidine treated with nitrous acid, and the N-methyl-N-nitroso-N'-nitroguanidine so produced is then warmed with potassium hydroxide:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{NH} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{HCl} + \text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{NO}_2 + \text{KOH} \longrightarrow \\ \text{NH} \\ \text{NH}_3 + \text{KCl} + \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{NO}_2 \stackrel{\text{HNO}_2}{\longrightarrow} \\ \\ \text{NH} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{N(NO)} \cdot \text{C} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{NO}_2 \stackrel{\text{KOH}}{\longrightarrow} \text{CH}_2 \text{N}_2 \end{array}$$

Method of Backer et al. (1951). The nitroso-derivative of p-toluene-N-methylsulphonamide is distilled with ethanolic potassium hydroxide:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{-}\text{SO}_2\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)\text{-}\text{NO} + \text{KOH} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{N}_2 \\ + \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\text{-}\text{SO}_3\text{K} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \end{array} (80\text{-}90\%) \end{array}$$

Method of Müller et al. (1955). Nitrous oxide is passed into an ethereal solution of methyl-lithium, and the precipitate decomposed in ether with aqueous potassium hydroxide:

$$\begin{array}{c} N_2O + CH_3Li \longrightarrow CH_3\cdot N = N\cdot OLi \longrightarrow LiOH + CH_2N_2 \\ \xrightarrow{CH_9Li} CH_4 + CHN_2Li \xrightarrow{H_2O} LiOH + CH = N\cdot NH \xrightarrow{OH^-} CH_2N_2 \end{array}$$

Diazomethane is a yellow, poisonous gas; liquid diazomethane, b.p.  $-24^{\circ}$ , is explosive. The gas is soluble in ether, and since the ethereal solution is fairly safe to handle, reactions with diazomethane are usually carried out in ethereal solution. Diazomethane is neutral; it is reduced by sodium amalgam to methylhydrazine CH3\*NH•NH2.

Reactions. 1. Diazomethane is widely used as a methylating agent for hydroxyl groups. In these reactions nitrogen is always liberated.

It reacts with halogen acid to form a methyl halide, e.g.,

$$CH_2N_2 + HCl \longrightarrow CH_3Cl + N_2$$

Diazomethane methylates acidic hydroxyl groups very readily: carboxylic acids, sulphonic acids, phenols, and enols, e.g.,

$$R \cdot CO_2H + CH_2N_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2CH_3 + N_2$$

Alcohols can also be methylated by diazomethane in the presence of a suitable catalyst, e.g., an aluminium alkoxide.

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{ROH} + \mathrm{Al}(\mathrm{OR}')_3 & \Longrightarrow \\ \mathrm{H} & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Al}(\mathrm{OR}')_3} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{CH_3N_9}} \\ \mathrm{N_2} + & \underset{\mathrm{H_3C}}{\overset{\mathrm{C}}{\longrightarrow}} - \mathrm{\bar{A}l}(\mathrm{OR}')_3 & \Longrightarrow \mathrm{R} \cdot \mathrm{O} \cdot \mathrm{CH_3} + \mathrm{Al}(\mathrm{OR}')_3 \end{array}$$

Alcohols may, however, be attacked directly by certain diazo-compounds, e.g., diphenyldiazomethane:

$$(C_6H_5)_2CN_2 + C_2H_8OH \xrightarrow{boil} (C_6H_5)_2CH \cdot O \cdot C_2H_5$$

Diazomethane also reacts with aldehydes, converting them into methyl ketones; but in some cases the ethylene oxide derivative is formed, particularly when R is a negative group.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CHO} + \text{CH}_2\text{N}_2 \\ \longrightarrow \text{R-CH-CH}_2 \\ \text{O} \end{array}$$

Ketones also react in a similar manner, but only in the presence of water as catalyst; e.g., acetone forms both the higher ketone and the ethylene oxide derivative:

$$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{N}_2} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3 + (\text{CH}_3)_2 \overset{\text{O}}{\text{C}} \text{CH}_2$$

Certain cyclic ketones undergo ring expansion when treated with diazomethane (p. 479).

2. Diazomethane adds on to ethylenic compounds to form *pyrazoline* derivatives (cf. αβ-unsaturated esters, p. 283); with ethylene, *pyrazoline* is formed:

Diazomethane also adds on to acetylenic compounds, in this case to form pyrazole derivatives; with acetylene, pyrazole is formed:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH \\ \parallel \\ CH \end{array} + CH_2N_2 \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CH-CH \\ \parallel \\ CH \end{array} \\ NH \end{array}$$

3. Diazomethane is used in the Arndt-Eistert synthesis (1935). This is a means of converting an acid (aliphatic, aromatic, alicyclic, or heterocyclic) into the next higher homologue. The acid chloride is treated with diazomethane (2 molecules), and the resulting diazoketone is warmed with water in the presence of silver oxide as catalyst:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-COCl} + 2\text{CH}_2\text{N}_2 \longrightarrow \text{R-CO-CHN}_2 + \text{CH}_3\text{Cl} + \text{N}_2 \\ \text{R-CO-CHN}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{AgsO}} \text{R-CH}_2\text{-CO}_2\text{H} + \text{N}_2 \end{array} \tag{50-80\%}$$

This rearrangement of the diazoketone is usually referred to as the Wolff rearrangement (1912).

Diazoketones react with alcohols and ammonia in the presence of silver oxide as catalyst to form esters and amides, respectively:

$$R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2R' \stackrel{R'OH}{\longleftarrow} R \cdot CO \cdot CHN_2 \stackrel{NH_2}{\longrightarrow} R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CONH_2$$

In the absence of a catalyst and in the presence of water and formic acid, diazoketones form hydroxymethyl ketones:

$$\text{R-CO-CHN}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{H-CO}_2\text{H}} \text{R-CO-CH}_2\text{OH} + \text{N}_2$$

The mechanism of the Wolff rearrangement is uncertain; a possibility is one involving a 1,2-shift:

$$O = C - CH - N = N: \xrightarrow{-N_2} O = C - CH \longrightarrow O = C - CHR$$

$$O = C - CHR \xrightarrow{OH^-} O = C - CHR$$

$$O = C - CH_2R$$
aldoketen acid

Now ketens react with water to form acids, with alcohols to form esters, and with ammonia to form amides (p. 289). This mechanism via a keten is supported by the fact that ketens have actually been isolated during this rearrangement (e.g., by Staudinger et al., 1916). Further support is given by the experiments of Huggett et al. (1942) who showed by means of isotope <sup>13</sup>C that the CO group of the diazoketone is converted into the acid group:

$$\begin{split} \mathbf{C_6H_5MgBr} + \overset{*}{\mathbf{CO}_2} &\longrightarrow \mathbf{C_6H_5 \cdot \overset{*}{\mathbf{CO}_2}H} \xrightarrow{\text{(i) SOCI}_9} \mathbf{C_6H_5 \cdot \overset{*}{\mathbf{CO}} \cdot \text{CHN}_2} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{Ag}_2O} \\ &\qquad \qquad \mathbf{C_6H_5 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \overset{*}{\mathbf{CO}_2}H} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{CuCr}_2O_4} \mathbf{C_6H}_5 \cdot \mathbf{CO}_2\mathbf{H} \ + \overset{*}{\mathbf{CO}_2} \end{split}$$

The intramolecular character of the rearrangement has also been demonstrated by Lane *et al.* (1941), who used an optically active R group and showed that the configuration was retained during the rearrangement.

4. A particularly interesting reaction is the formation of the  $\beta$ -lactam of N-phenyl- $\beta$ -alanine when diazomethane reacts with phenyl *iso*cyanate (Sheehan and Izzo, 1948):

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm C_6H_5 \cdot NCO + 2CH_2N_2} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} {\rm C_6H_5 \cdot N - - CO} \\ {\rm CH_2 - CH_2} \end{array} + 2{\rm N_2} \end{array}$$

Structure of diazomethane. Curtius (1889), working with diazoacetic ester (see below), proposed the ring structure of diazomethane would be  $CH_2$ . Angeli (1907) suggested that the

structure of diazomethane was linear, and proposed the formula  $CH_2 = N = N$ . This contains a quinquecovalent nitrogen atom, and therefore, if it is going to be accepted, requires modification. Three modifications are possible:

CH<sub>2</sub>=N=N:, CH<sub>2</sub>-N=N:, and CH<sub>2</sub>-N=N:. Chemical evidence, however, is insufficient to show whether one of these formulæ or the cyclic formula of Curtius is correct. Measurement of the dipole moment of diazomethane shows that its value is small; each linear structure should have a large dipole moment. It would therefore appear that the linear formula is untenable. On the other hand, Boersch (1935) showed by electron diffraction studies that the diazomethane molecule is linear; this is supported by infrared spectra measurements. If we assume that diazomethane is a resonance hybrid of all three linear structures, we can then account for the small dipole moment, i.e., diazomethane is best represented as a resonance hybrid:

$$CH_2 = \stackrel{\scriptscriptstyle +}{N} = \stackrel{\scriptscriptstyle -}{N} : \longleftrightarrow \stackrel{\scriptscriptstyle -}{C}H_2 - \stackrel{\scriptscriptstyle +}{N} = \stackrel{\scriptscriptstyle +}{N} : \longleftrightarrow \stackrel{\scriptscriptstyle +}{C}H_2 - \stackrel{\scriptscriptstyle +}{N} = \stackrel{\scriptscriptstyle -}{N} :$$

The first two forms make the greatest contribution, but Huisgen (1955) believes that the following two resonance structures also contribute to some extent:

$$\dot{\ddot{C}H}_2$$
 $\dot{\ddot{N}}=\dot{\ddot{N}}:\longleftrightarrow CH_2=\dot{\ddot{N}}-\dot{\ddot{N}}:$ 

The interesting point here is that the first of these two structures could behave as an electrophilic reagent at the terminal nitrogen atom. There is some evidence to support this, e.g., diazoacetophenone reacts with aqueous potassium cyanide solution as follows (Wolff, 1902):

$$PhCO \cdot \overrightarrow{CH} - \overrightarrow{N} = \overrightarrow{N} : \xrightarrow{(i) \text{ KCN}} PhCO \cdot CH = N \cdot NH \cdot CN$$

Diazoacetic ester (ethyl diazoacetate), CHN2·CO2C2H5, may be readily prepared by treating a cooled solution of the hydrochloride of ethyl glycine ester with cold sodium nitrite solution:

It is a yellow oil, b.p. 141°/720 mm., insoluble in water, soluble in ethanol and ether.

The reactions of diazoacetic ester are similar to those of diazomethane. It is reduced by zinc dust and acetic acid to ammonia and glycine. When boiled with dilute halogen acid, it eliminates nitrogen to form glycollic ester:

$$CHN_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + H_2O \longrightarrow CH_2OH \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + N_2$$

When, however, diazoacetic ester is warmed with concentrated halogen acid, ethyl halogeno-acetate is formed, e.g.,

$$\mathrm{CHN_2\text{-}CO_2C_2H_5} + \mathrm{HCl} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_2Cl\text{-}CO_2C_2H_5} + \mathrm{N_2}$$

Diazoacetic ester reacts with compounds containing an active hydrogen atom, e.g., it forms acetylglycollic ester with acetic acid, and the ethyl ether of glycollic ester with ethanol:

$$\begin{array}{l} \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO_2H} + \mathrm{CHN_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot O \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5} + \mathrm{N_2} \\ \mathrm{C_2H_5OH} + \mathrm{CHN_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_2(OC_2H_5) \cdot CO_2C_2H_5} + \mathrm{N_2} \end{array}$$

It reacts with ethylenic compounds to form pyrazoline derivatives, e.g., with ethylene it forms pyrazoline-3-carboxylic ester:

$$\overset{\mathrm{CH_2}}{\underset{\mathrm{CH_2}}{\parallel}} + \underset{\mathrm{CH_2}}{\mathrm{CHN_2 \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5}} \overset{\mathrm{CH_2 - C \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5}}{\underset{\mathrm{CH_2}}{\parallel}}$$

With acetylenic compounds it forms pyrazole derivatives, e.g., with acetylene, it gives pyrazole-3-carboxylic ester:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH \\ \parallel \\ CH \end{array} + CHN_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CH - C \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \\ \parallel \\ CH \end{array}$$

#### QUESTIONS

1. Draw up an analytical table to show how you would distinguish between aqueous solutions of AcNH2·HCl, MeNH2·HCl, Me2NH·HCl, Me3N·HCl, Me4NCl.

2. Write out the structures and names of the isomeric amines of formula C4H11N. 3. Discuss the problem of hydrogen cyanide as a tautomeric mixture, including in

your answer an account of the structures of the alkyl cyanides and isocyanides.

4. Describe the methods for preparing MeCN. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when MeCN is treated with: (a) NaOH, (b) HCl, (c) ROH + HCl, (d) NH<sub>3</sub>, (e) Ac<sub>2</sub>O, (f) SnCl<sub>2</sub>, (g) H, (h) RMgBr, (i) Na, (j) AcOEt.

5. Write an account of the preparation and properties of cyanic acid and its related

compounds.

6. How may EtNO2 be prepared? Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when MeNO2 is treated with:—(a) H, (b) HCl, (c) NaOH, (d) NaOH followed by  $H_2SO_4$ , (e) NaOH followed by  $SnCl_2/HCl$ , (f)  $Br_2$ , (g)  $HNO_2$ , (h) H-CHO, (i)  $C_6H_5$ -CHO, (j)  $CH_2$ -CH-CO-CH $_3$ .

7. Suggest as many methods as you can:—(a) for separating the three classes of

amines, (b) for distinguishing between the three classes of nitro-compounds.

8. Discuss the various methods whereby:—(a) a primary amine may be converted into a secondary, and vice-versa, (b) a secondary amine into a tertiary, and vice-versa,

(c) EtOH into n-PrOH, and vice-versa.

9. Write an account of the general methods for preparing amines. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when Et·NH<sub>2</sub>, Et<sub>2</sub>NH Et<sub>3</sub>N, respectively, are treated with:—(a) H<sub>2</sub>O, (b) H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, (c) MeI, (d) AcCl, (e) Br<sub>2</sub>, (f) NOCl, (g) Na, (h) MeMgI, (i) C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·NCO, (j) CS<sub>2</sub>, (k) C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CHO, (l) HNO<sub>2</sub>, (m) KMnO<sub>4</sub>, (n) H2SO5, (o) BrCN.

10. Write an account of the preparation and properties of the quaternary ammonium

hydroxides.

II. Describe the preparation and properties of:—(a) ethylenediamine, (b) putrescine,

(c) cadaverine, (d) aziridine, (e) neurine, (f) allylamine, (g) cholamine, (h) choline.

12. Suggest one synthesis for each of the following:—(a) CH<sub>3</sub>·CH(NH<sub>2</sub>)·CH<sub>2</sub>·NH<sub>2</sub>,
(b) Me<sub>2</sub>C(NH<sub>2</sub>)·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, (c) NH<sub>2</sub>·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>·CHOH·CH<sub>3</sub>, (d) Me<sub>2</sub>N·NH<sub>2</sub>, (e) Me<sub>2</sub>N·OH, (f) spermine.

13. Describe the preparation and properties of glycine. What are betaines?

14. Describe the preparation of:—(a) CH<sub>2</sub>N<sub>2</sub>, (b) CHN<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>Et. Discuss their structures. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are structures. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when  $CH_2N_2$  and  $CHN_2 \cdot CO_2Et$ , respectively, are treated with:—(a) HBr, (b) AcOH, (c)  $Et \cdot SO_3H$ , (d) EtOH, (e)  $Et \cdot NH_2$ , (f)  $AcNH_2$ , (g)  $CH_3 \cdot CHO$ , (h)  $Me_2CO$ , (i)  $C_2H_4$ , (f)  $C_2H_2$ , (h)  $EtO_2C \cdot CH = CH \cdot CO_2Et$ .

15. Define and give examples of:—(a) tautomerism, (b) pseudo-acids, (c) Mannich reaction, (d) Schmidt's reaction, (e) Gabriel's synthesis, (f) Zeisel method, (g) Herzig—Meyer method, (h) Liebermann's aritress reaction, (i) Hafmann's archaestics with vectors

Meyer method, (h) Liebermann's nitroso-reaction, (i) Hofmann's exhaustive methylation method, (j) Sörensen titration, (k) Arndt-Eistert synthesis, (l) reductive alkylation.

## READING REFERENCES

Sidgwick, The Organic Chemistry of Nitrogen (New Edition by Taylor and Baker, 1937), Oxford Press.

Mowry, The Preparation of Nitriles, Chem. Reviews, 1948, 42, 189.

Levy and Rose, The Aliphatic Nitro-Compounds, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1948, I, 358.

Hass and Shechter, The Vapour-Phase Nitration of Saturated Hydrocarbons, Ind.

Eng. Chem., 1947, 39, 817.

Austin, The Action of Nitrous Acid on Aliphatic Amines, Nature, 1960, 188, 1086.

Austin, The Action of Nitrous Acid on Aliphatic Amines, Nature, 1960, 188, 1086.

Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. I (1942), Ch. 10. The Mannich Reaction.

ibid., Vol. I (1942), Ch. 2. The Arndt-Eistert Synthesis.

ibid., Vol. III (1946), Ch. 8. The Schmidt Reaction.

ibid., Vol. IV (1948), Ch. 3. The Preparation of Amines by Reductive Alkylation.

ibid., Vol. VII (1953), Ch. 3. Carbon-Carbon Alkylations with Amines and

Ammonium salts, Ch. 6. The Nitrosation of Aliphatic Carbon Atoms.

ibid., Vol. VII (1954), Ch. 8. The Reaction of Diazomethane and its Derivatives with Aldehydes and Ketones. with Aldehydes and Ketones.

ibid., Vol. XI (1960), Ch. 5. Olefins from Amines: The Hofmann Elimination Reaction and Amine Oxide Pyrolysis.

Smith, Aliphatic Diazo-Compounds, Chem. Reviews, 1938, 23, 193.

Huisgen, Altes und Neues über aliphatische Diazoverbindungen, Angew. Chem., 1955.

Thorne, The Formation of Nitrosochlorides and Nitrosates, J.C.S., 1956, 4271.

Gowenlock and Lüttke, Structure and Properties of C-Nitroso-compounds, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1958, 12, 321.

Kornblum et al., The Mechanism of the Reaction of Silver Nitrite with Alkyl Halides,

J. Amer. Chem. Soc., 1955, 77, 6269.

Kornblum et al., A New Method for the Synthesis of Aliphatic Nitro Compounds, ibid.,

1956, 78, 1497.
Finar, Organic Chemistry, Vol. II, Longmans, Green (1956). Ch. XIII. Amino-Acids and Proteins.

#### CHAPTER XIV

## ALIPHATIC COMPOUNDS OF SULPHUR, PHOSPHORUS, ARSENIC AND SILICON

#### SULPHUR COMPOUNDS

Mercaptans or thioalcohols, RSH. These compounds occur in petroleum

and give rise to "sour petrol".

Nomenclature. One method is to name them as alkyl mercaptans, the -SH group being known as the mercapto or sulph-hydryl group. On the other hand, according to the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature, the -SH group is known as the thiol group, and the suffix of the series is thiol. This method of naming the mercaptans arises from the fact that they are the sulphur analogues of the alcohols, the usual procedure of showing that an oxygen atom has been replaced by a sulphur atom being indicated by the prefix thio.

General methods of preparation. One method is to heat an alkyl halide with potassium hydrogen sulphide in ethanolic solution:

$$RX + KSH \longrightarrow RSH + KX$$
 (g.)

Alternatively, a potassium alkyl sulphate may be distilled with potassium hydrogen sulphide (the yield of thioalcohol is variable):

$$RO \cdot SO_2 \cdot OK + KSH \longrightarrow RSH + K_2SO_4$$

Tosylates may also be used instead of the alkyl sulphates (cf. the alkyl cyanides, p. 295).

Another method depends on the direct replacement of oxygen in an alcohol by sulphur. This may be carried out by heating the alcohol with phosphorus

$$5ROH + P_2S_5 \longrightarrow 5RSH + P_2O_5$$
 (p.)

A more satisfactory method of replacing the oxygen by sulphur is to pass a mixture of alcohol vapour and hydrogen sulphide over a thoria catalyst

$$ROH + H_2S \xrightarrow{ThO_4} RSH + H_2O \quad (f.-g.)$$

The best method for preparing thioalcohols is to decompose an S-alkylisothiouronium salt with alkali; these salts may be prepared by interaction of an alkyl halide (preferably the bromide or iodide) and thiourea:

$$RBr + S = C \xrightarrow{NH_2} \longrightarrow R - S - C \xrightarrow{NH} \cdot HBr \xrightarrow{NaOH} RSH \quad (80-90\%)$$

On the other hand, Frank and Smith (1946) have found that the S-alkylisothiouronium salt may be prepared by heating an alcohol and thiourea with 48 per cent. hydrobromic acid (for 7 hours):

$$ROH + S = C(NH_2)_2 + HBr \longrightarrow R - S - C \xrightarrow{NH} \cdot HBr + H_2O$$

The yields are as good as those when the alkyl bromide is used, and so

eliminate the step of converting the alcohol into the alkyl bromide.

General properties. The thiols, except methanethiol, which is a gas, are colourless volatile liquids with disagreeable smells. Their boiling points are lower than those of the corresponding alcohols; this is probably due to the fact that they are very little associated, hydrogen bonding not readily taking place between hydrogen and sulphur. The thiols are also less soluble in water than the corresponding alcohols, again, no doubt, due to their inability to form hydrogen bonds with water. They are more strongly acidic than the alcohols; this is to be expected, since the thiols are the alkyl derivatives of hydrogen sulphide, which is a stronger acid than water, of which the alcohols may be regarded as alkyl derivatives.

Reactions. The thioalcohols resemble the alcohols in many ways (sulphur and oxygen occur in the same periodic group); the main difference is their

behaviour towards oxidising agents.

I. Thiols form mercaptides with the evolution of hydrogen when treated with alkali metals:

These alkali mercaptides are salts: [RS]-Na+, and are decomposed by water:

This reaction is reversible for the low-molecular-weight thiols, since these dissolve in aqueous alkali, e.g.,

$$C_2H_5SH + NaOH \longrightarrow C_2H_5SNa + H_2O$$

2. Thiols precipitate mercaptides when treated with an aqueous solution of the salt of a heavy metal, e.g.,

$$2RSH + (CH_3 \cdot CO_2)_2 Pb \longrightarrow (RS)_2 Pb + 2CH_3 \cdot CO_2 H$$

Thiols also attack mercuric oxide in aqueous solution to form the mercury mercaptide:

 $2RSH + HgO \longrightarrow (RS)_2Hg + H_2O$ 

It is this reaction which is the origin of the name mercaptans (mercurius, mercury; captans, seizing). These heavy metals mercaptides are covalent compounds.

An aqueous solution of cupric chloride or an alkaline solution of sodium plumbite containing sulphur ("doctor solution") converts thiols into

disulphides:

$$2RSH + 2CuCl_2 \longrightarrow R - S - S - R + 2CuCl + 2HCl \\ 2RSH + Na_2PbO_2 + S \longrightarrow R - S - S - R + PbS + 2NaOH$$

3. Thiols react with carboxylic acids, preferably in the presence of inorganic acid, to form a thiolester:

$$R \cdot CO_2H + R'SH \stackrel{H^+}{\Longrightarrow} R \cdot CO \cdot SR' + H_2O$$

4. Thiols may be oxidised, the nature of the product depending on the oxidising agent used. Mild oxidation with, e.g., air, hydrogen peroxide, cupric chloride or sodium hypochlorite results in the formation of dialkyldisulphides:

 $2RSH + H_2O_2 \longrightarrow R-S-S-R + 2H_2O$ 

Dialkyl-disulphides may also be prepared by the action of iodine on sodium mercaptides: 2RSNa + I2 -- R2S2 + 2NaI

Field et al. (1958) have shown that lead tetra-acetate oxidises thiols to disulphides:

$$2RSH + (AcO)_4Pb \longrightarrow R_2S_2 + (AcO)_2Pb + 2AcOH$$

These disulphides have an unpleasant smell (not as unpleasant as that of thiols), and their formation by the oxidation of thiols is known as "sweetening" (p. 58). Allyl disulphide,  $(CH_2, CH_2 - )_2S_2$ , occurs in garlic. Disulphides are reduced to thiols by lithium aluminium hydride.

When oxidised with vigorous oxidising agents, e.g., nitric acid, thiols are converted into sulphonic acids:

$$RSH + 3[O] \xrightarrow{HNO_8} R \cdot SO_3H$$

5. Thiols readily combine with aldehydes and ketones, in the presence of hydrochloric acid, to form *mercaptals* and *mercaptals* respectively; *e.g.*, ethanethiol forms diethylmethyl mercaptal with acetaldehyde, and diethyldimethyl mercaptal with acetone (see also sulphones, below):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-CHO} + 2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SH} \xrightarrow{\text{HCI}} \text{CH}_3\text{-CH}(\text{SC}_2\text{H}_5)_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \\ \text{(CH}_3)_2\text{CO} + 2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SH} \xrightarrow{\text{HCI}} \text{(CH}_3)_2\text{C}(\text{SC}_2\text{H}_5)_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \end{array}$$

Refluxing mercaptals (and mercaptols) with ethanol in the presence of freshly prepared Raney nickel replaces the thiol group by hydrogen (Wolfrom et al., 1944):

 $>C(SR)_2 + 4[H] \longrightarrow >CH_2 + 2RSH$ 

Thus a carbonyl group can be converted into a methylene group (cf. the Clemmensen and Wolff-Kishner reductions).

The aldehyde group may be "protected" in acid solution by conversion into a mercaptal, and can be regenerated by treatment of the latter with mercuric chloride in the presence of cadmium carbonate (cf. acetals, p. 161).

Thioethers or alkyl sulphides, R<sub>2</sub>S. These are the sulphur analogues of the ethers, from which they differ considerably in a number of ways.

General methods of preparation. I. By heating potassium sulphide with an alkyl halide or a potassium alkyl sulphate:

$$2RX + K_2S \longrightarrow R_2S + 2KX \qquad (f.g.-g.)$$
$$2RO \cdot SO_2 \cdot OK + K_2S \longrightarrow R_2S + 2K_2SO_4 \qquad (g.)$$

Tosylates may also be used instead of the alkyl sulphates.

2. Heating an ether with phosphorus pentasulphide:

$$5R_2O + P_2S_5 \longrightarrow 5R_2S + P_2O_5$$
 (p.)

3. By heating an alkyl halide with a sodium mercaptide (cf. Williamson's synthesis, p. 141):

$$RX + R'SNa \longrightarrow R - S - R' + NaX \quad (g.-v.g.)$$

4. By passing a thiol over a mixture of alumina and zinc sulphide at

 $2RSH \longrightarrow R_2S + H_2S$ 

5. By the addition of a thiol to an olefin in the presence of peroxides; in the absence of the latter very little reaction occurs (Kharasch et al., 1939):

$$R \cdot CH = CH_2 + R'SH \longrightarrow R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot SR'$$

This reaction probably occurs by a free-radical mechanism:

$$\begin{split} &(\text{R} \cdot \text{CO}_2)_2 \longrightarrow 2\text{R} \cdot + 2\text{CO}_2 \\ &\text{R} \cdot + \text{R}'\text{SH} \longrightarrow \text{RH} + \text{R}'\text{S} \cdot \\ &\text{R}'' \cdot \text{CH} = \text{CH}_2 + \text{R}'\text{S} \cdot \longrightarrow \text{R}'' \cdot \text{CH}_2 \text{SR}' \xrightarrow{\text{R}'\text{SH}} \text{R}'' \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{SR}' + \text{R}'\text{S} \cdot ; \text{ etc.} \end{split}$$

General properties and reactions. The thioethers are unpleasant-smelling oils, insoluble in water but soluble in organic solvents. Chemically they are comparatively inert. They may be oxidised to sulphoxides which, on further oxidation, are converted into sulphones: e.g., ethyl sulphide, on oxidation with hydrogen peroxide in glacial acetic acid, gives first diethyl sulphoxide and then diethyl sulphone:

$$(C_2H_5)_2S \xrightarrow{H_2O_2} (C_2H_5)_2S = O \xrightarrow{H_2O_2} (C_2H_5)_2S \bigcirc O$$

Other oxidising agents which bring about the same changes are potassium permanganate, nitric acid, perbenzoic acid, etc.

Originally, sulphur was thought to be quadrivalent in sulphoxides and sexavalent in sulphones. Then, to conform with the "octet" theory, the valencies were changed to 3 and 4, respectively, the oxygen atoms now being linked by co-ordinate bonds. More recently, however, bond length measurements of the S—O bond in sulphoxides and sulphones indicate that these bonds are almost all double bonds. M.O. calculations have also shown that the S-O bond is largely double in character and that the 3d orbitals of the sulphur atom are involved in

the formation of this bond (Moffitt, 1950).

The valency shell of sulphur is  $(3s)^2(3p)^4$ . Also the nature of hybridisation used is decided by the number of  $\sigma$ -electrons and lone pairs in the atom in the bonded state (p. 28). Unless one wishes to consider multiple bonds as "bent" bonds, electrons in a bond (dechard or consider multiple bonds as "bent" bonds, electrons in  $\pi$ -bonds (double or triple) are not counted when deciding the type of hybridisation. In sulphides, each R group supplies one electron, and since the S atom has 6 valency electrons, the bond orbitals are  $sp^3$ , two being occupied by bonding pairs, and two by lone pairs, i.e., R2S. In sulphonium salts, the halide ion takes its bonding pair, and the R group uses one of the lone pairs of the sulphur atom, i.e., R3S+X-. In sulphoxides, R2S=0, the orbitals are still  $sp^3$ , but here the R groups are joined by  $\sigma$ -bonds, the oxygen atom by a  $\sigma$  and  $\pi_{d-p}$  bond (one of the sulphur electrons has been promoted to 3d), and a

lone pair remains in the fourth  $sp^3$  orbital. In sulphones,  $R_2S$ , there are

four  $\sigma$ -bonds and two  $\pi_{d-p}$  bonds (one to each oxygen atom).

The alkyl sulphides form various addition products, e.g., with bromine the alkyl sulphide dibromide is formed, R2SBr2. Alkyl sulphides also combine with a molecule of alkyl halide to form sulphonium salts, in which the sulphur is tercovalent unielectrovalent, e.g., the formula of triethyl-

sulphonium iodide is (C2H5)3S: I. When a sulphonium salt is heated, it decomposes into alkyl sulphide and alkyl halide (cf. quaternary ammonium salts, p. 318):  $[R_3S]^+I^- \longrightarrow R_2S + RI$ 

When they are treated with moist silver oxide, the sulphonium hydroxide is formed:

 $[R_3S]^+I^- + \text{``AgOH''} \longrightarrow [R_3S]^+OH^- + AgI$ 

Sulphonium hydroxides are strongly basic, and on heating form alkyl sulphide and olefin, e.g.,

$$[(C_2H_5)_3S]^+OH^- \longrightarrow (C_2H_5)_2S + C_2H_4 + H_2O$$

This is believed to occur by an E2 mechanism (cf. p. 319):

$$HO^{-}H$$
  $CH_2$   $CH_2$   $S(C_2H_5)_2$   $\longrightarrow$   $H_2O + CH_2$   $CH_2 + (C_2H_5)_2S$ 

This reaction can also occur by the E1 mechanism provided the alkyl groups are of a suitable type, e.g., t-butyldimethylsulphonium chloride in alkaline solution decomposes by the E1 mechanism:

$$Me_3C$$
  $\xrightarrow{+}$   $Me_2C$   $\longrightarrow$   $Me_2C$   $\longrightarrow$   $Me_2C$   $\longrightarrow$   $H^+$ 

Challenger et al. (1948) have isolated dimethyl- $\beta$ -carboxyethylsulphonium chloride, [(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub> $\dot{S}$ ·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H] $\dot{C}$ l, from natural sources.

Mustard gas, 2:2'-dichlorodiethyl sulphide, bis(2-chloroethyl) sulphide, (ClCH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>-)<sub>2</sub>S, may be prepared by the action of sulphur monochloride on ethylene:  $2C_2H_4 + S_2Cl_2 \longrightarrow (ClCH_2 \cdot CH_2 -)_2S + S$ 

t may also be prepared in a present to the last of the

It may also be prepared, in a purer state, by heating ethylene chlorohydrin with sodium sulphide, and treating the product with hydrochloric acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{2HOCH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 - \text{Na}_2 \text{S} & \longrightarrow \text{2NaCl} + (\text{HOCH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 - \text{)}_2 \text{S} \\ & \xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} (\text{ClCH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 - \text{)}_2 \text{S} \end{array}$$

Mustard gas is an oily liquid, b.p. 215-217°, with a mustard-like smell. It is almost insoluble in water, but soluble in most organic solvents. It is a poison, and a vesicant.

Thiocyanic acid, isothiocyanic acid and their derivatives. Thiocyanic acid appears to be a tautomeric substance, the equilibrium mixture of thiocyanic acid, HSCN, and isothiocyanic acid, HNCS. Spectroscopic studies of thiocyanic acid indicate the structure HNCS (Beard et al., 1947):

$$H-S-C\equiv N \Longrightarrow S=C=N-H$$

Salts and esters of both forms are known (cf. cyanic acid, p. 299).

Thiocyanic acid may be prepared by heating a mixture of potassium thiocyanate and potassium hydrogen sulphate:

$$KSCN + KHSO_4 \longrightarrow HSCN + K_2SO_4$$

Thiocyanic acid distils over as a colourless liquid, m.p. 5°. It is soluble in water, ethanol and ether in all proportions. Its dilute aqueous solutions are fairly stable, the concentrated solutions decomposing to form carbonyl sulphide and ammonia:

$$HSCN + H_2O \longrightarrow COS + NH_3$$

Alkyl thiocyanates, R. SCN, may be prepared by heating potassium thiocyanate with an alkyl halide (or tosyl ester, p. 612):

$$RI + KSCN \longrightarrow R \cdot SCN + KI$$

They may also be prepared by the action of cyanogen chloride on a lead mercaptide:

$$(RS)_2Pb + 2ClCN \longrightarrow 2R \cdot SCN + PbCl_2$$

The alkyl thiocyanates are fairly stable volatile oils, with a slight odour of garlic. They are oxidised to sulphonic acids by concentrated nitric acid, and reduced to thiols by, e.g., zinc and sulphuric acid; both of these re-

ALIPHATIC COMPOUNDS OF SULPHUR, PHOSPHORUS, ARSENIC, SILICON 337 actions show that the alkyl radical in alkyl thiocyanates is directly attached to sulphur:

$$R \cdot SO_3H \xleftarrow{HNO_9} R \cdot SCN \xrightarrow{Zn/H_9SO_4} RSH$$

They are converted into sulphonyl chlorides by chlorine water.

$$R \cdot SCN + Cl_2 \xrightarrow{H_2O} R \cdot SO_2Cl + ClCN$$

When heated at 180°, alkyl thiocyanates rearrange to the alkyl isothiocyanate:

Alkyl isothiocyanates or mustard oils, R·NCS, may be prepared by heating alkyl thiocyanates at 180°, but a much more satisfactory method is the Hofmann mustard-oil reaction (1868), which is carried out by heating a mixture of a primary amine, carbon disulphide and mercuric chloride. The mechanism is uncertain; it may be via the formation of a dithiocarbamic acid salt (see p. 390 for further details):

$$R \cdot NH_2 + S = C = S \longrightarrow S = C \xrightarrow{NH \cdot R} \xrightarrow{HgCl_2} R \cdot NCS + HgS + 2HCI$$

Another convenient method is to add an aqueous solution of a primary amine to carbon disulphide in sodium hydroxide solution, and then ethyl chloroformate:

$$\begin{array}{l} {\rm R\cdot NH_2 + CS_2 + NaOH \longrightarrow R\cdot NH\cdot CS_2Na + H_2O} \xrightarrow{{\rm C\cdot CO_3C_2H_4}} \\ {\rm NaCl + R\cdot NH\cdot CS_2CO_2C_2H_5 \longrightarrow R\cdot NCS + COS + C_2H_5OH} \end{array} \tag{60-70\%}$$

The alkyl isothiocyanates are liquids with a powerful mustard smell; they are lachrymatory and vesicatory. They are hydrolysed to primary amines when heated with hydrochloric acid, and reduced to primary amines and thioformaldehyde by, e.g., zinc and sulphuric acid; both of these reactions show that the alkyl radical in alkyl isothiocyanates is directly attached to nitrogen:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R·NCS} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} \text{R·NH}_2 + \text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{S} \\ \text{R·NCS} + 4\text{[H]} \xrightarrow{\text{Zn/H}_2\text{SO}_4} \text{R·NH}_2 + \text{H·CHS} \end{array}$$

Allyl isothiocyanate (allyl mustard oil), CH<sub>2</sub>:CH·CH<sub>2</sub>·NCS, occurs in mustard seed as the glucoside sinigrin, which, on hydrolysis by acid or by the enzyme myrosin (which is found in mustard seeds), gives allyl isothiocyanate, glucose and potassium hydrogen sulphate. Allyl isothiocyanate is a colourless oil, b.p. 151°, and is the substance which gives mustard its characteristic odour and taste. It is lachrymatory and vesicatory, and is a convenient starting material for the preparation of allylamine.

Gmelin et al. (1955) have isolated CH<sub>3</sub>·S·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>·NCS and CH<sub>3</sub>·S·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>·NCS from natural sources.

Thiocyanogen, (—SCN)<sub>2</sub>, may be prepared by treating lead thiocyanate with bromine in ethereal solution at o°.

$$Pb(SCN)_2 + Br_2 \longrightarrow (-SCN)_2 + PbBr_2$$

Thiocyanogen is a gas and resembles the halogens in that it adds on to double bonds (thiocyanation).

Alkyl sulphoxides, R2S=O, may be prepared by oxidising alkyl sulphides with the theoretical amount of hydrogen peroxide (in acetic acid) or with dilute nitric

 $R_sS + [0] \longrightarrow R_sS = 0$ 

The state of oxidation depends largely on the conditions, and usually a mixture of sulphoxide and sulphone is obtained. Chromium trioxide in acetic acid appears to be specific for oxidation to sulphoxide (Knoll, 1926), and Edwards et al. (1954) have shown that saturated (and unsaturated) aliphatic sulphides may be oxidised to sulphoxides by chromium trioxide in pyridine or with manganese dioxide in light petroleum (yield: 49-74 per cent.). Alkyl sulphides are also readily oxidised by liquid dinitrogen tetroxide to sulphoxides, and there is no further oxidation to sulphone (yield: 90 per cent.; Addison et al., 1956).

The sulphoxides are odourless, relatively unstable solids, soluble in water, ethanol and ether, and are feebly basic, e.g., they form salts with hydrochloric acid. The structure of these salts is uncertain; it may be [R<sub>2</sub>S—OH]<sup>+</sup>Cl<sup>-</sup>. Sulphoxides

are reduced to sulphides by zinc and acetic acid:

$$R_2SO + 2[H] \xrightarrow{Zn/CH_3 \cdot CO_2H} R_2S + H_2O$$

Dimethyl sulphoxide may be used as an oxidising agent for certain compounds, e.g., phenacyl bromide (see p. 661).

Alkyl sulphones, R<sub>2</sub>S, may be prepared by oxidising alkyl sulphides with hydrogen peroxide in excess (in acetic acid) or with concentrated nitric acid:

$$R_2S + 2[O] \longrightarrow R_2SO_2$$

They are colourless, odourless, very stable solids, soluble in water; they are very resistant to reduction, but some sulphones (and sulphoxides) are reduced to sulphide by lithium aluminium hydride. Many sulphones produce sulphinic acids when fused with potassium hydroxide at 200°, e.g.,

$$(C_2H_5)_2SO_2 + KOH \longrightarrow C_2H_4 + C_2H_5 \cdot SO_2K + H_2O$$
 (60%)

This reaction may be used to prepare aliphatic sulphinic acids.

A very important sulphone is sulphonal [2:2-bis(ethylsulphonyl)-propane], which may be prepared by the oxidation of dimethyldiethyl mercaptol with potassium permanganate:

$$(CH_3)_2C(SC_2H_5)_2 + 4[O] \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2C(SO_2 \cdot C_2H_5)_2$$

Sulphonal is a colourless solid, m.p. 126°, stable to acids and alkalis. It has been

used as an hypnotic.

Sulphur dioxide adds on to unsaturated compounds to form long linear polymers known as polysulphones, the valency of the sulphur changing from 4 to 6:

$$>$$
C=C $<$  + SO<sub>2</sub>  $\longrightarrow$   $\left( \begin{vmatrix} - \\ - \\ - \end{vmatrix} - \begin{vmatrix} 0 \\ - \\ - \end{vmatrix} \right)$ 

The reaction takes place in the liquid phase at room temperature under the influence of light, or in the presence of a catalyst such as silver nitrate or peracetic acid. The properties of the polysulphones depend on the nature of the olefin used; all polysulphones, however, are thermoplastic, resinous substances which are insoluble in water, acids and most organic solvents.

Sulphonic acids, R.SO3H. The aliphatic sulphonic acids are named either as alkylsulphonic acids or as alkanesulphonic acids; in the latter case the sulphonic acid group is considered as a substituent group, e.g.,

methylsulphonic acid or methanesulphonic acid CH.SO.H CH3·CH2·CH2·SO3H n-propylsulphonic acid or propane-1-sulphonic acid isopropylsulphonic acid or propane-2-sulphonic acid (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH·SO<sub>3</sub>H

General methods of preparation. I. By the action of fuming sulphuric acid or chlorosulphonic acid on a paraffin. The sulphonic acid group enters the chain, probably at the second carbon atom, e.g.,

$$\mathrm{CH_{3}\textnormal{-}(CH_{2})_{4}\textnormal{-}CH_{3}} + \mathrm{SO_{3}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_{2}SO_{4}}} \mathrm{CH_{3}\textnormal{-}(CH_{2})_{3}\textnormal{-}CH(SO_{3}H)\textnormal{-}CH_{3}}$$

Sulphuric acid itself has no action; it is the free sulphur trioxide that is the

sulphonating reagent.

2. By the action of sulphuryl chloride on a hydrocarbon in the presence of light and a catalyst, e.g., pyridine, at 40-60°. The sulphonyl chloride is obtained, often in high yield; the sulphonyl chloride group appears to enter mainly at the second carbon atom, but varying amounts of product with this group at the first carbon are also obtained:

$$RH + SO_2Cl_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot SO_2Cl + HCl$$

3. By the oxidation of a lead mercaptide with concentrated nitric acid, the lead sulphonate produced being converted into the free acid by hydrogen sulphide:

 $(RS)_2 Pb + 6[O] \xrightarrow{HNO_3} (R \cdot SO_3)_2 Pb \xrightarrow{H_3 S} 2R \cdot SO_3 H$  (g.)

In practice it is usually more convenient to use a thiol or a thiocyanate as the starting material, e.g.,

RSH + 
$$3[O] \xrightarrow{\text{HNO}_3} \text{R·SO}_3\text{H}$$
 (g.-v.g.)

This method is most satisfactory, in that the position of the sulphonic acid group is known with certainty (the position of the mercapto or thiocyanate group being determined by the nature of the alkyl halide used in the preparation of the thiol or thiocyanate).

4. The Strecker reaction (1868). This reaction is carried out by heating

an alkyl halide with sodium sulphite; the sodium salt of the sulphonic acid

is produced:

$$RX + Na_2SO_3 \longrightarrow R \cdot SO_3Na + NaX \quad (g.-v.g.)$$

5. Sodium hydrogen sulphite adds on to olefins in the presence of peroxides to form sulphonic acids (Kharasch et al., 1939).

$$\text{R-CH=\!CH}_2 + \text{NaHSO}_3 \longrightarrow \text{R-CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{SO}_3 \text{Na}$$

6. By the oxidation of S-alkylisothiouronium salts (p. 390). General properties and reactions. The sulphonic acids are generally thick liquids, soluble in water. They are isomeric with the alkyl hydrogen sulphites:

alkylsulphonic acid

alkyl hydrogen sulphite

The alkyl hydrogen sulphites are esters readily hydrolysed by alkali; the sulphonic acids are not hydrolysed, but form salts with alkali. Many of the reactions of the sulphonic acids and their methods of preparation show that in these acids the sulphur is directly attached to the alkyl group.

The sulphonic acids are strong acids, forming salts with metallic hydroxides or carbonates; the lead and barium salts are very soluble in water. They form the acid chloride, the sulphonyl chloride, when treated with phosphorus pentachloride (see p. 610):

$$R \cdot SO_3H + PCl_5 \longrightarrow R \cdot SO_2Cl + HCl + POCl_3$$

These sulphonyl chlorides are only very slowly hydrolysed by water (cf. acyl chlorides); they react readily with concentrated aqueous ammonia to form sulphonamides:

$$\text{R}\text{-}\text{SO}_2\text{Cl} + 2\text{NH}_3 \longrightarrow \text{R}\text{-}\text{SO}_2\text{-}\text{NH}_2 + \text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$$

Sulphonyl chlorides also react with alcohols to form esters:

$$R \cdot SO_2Cl + R'OH \longrightarrow R \cdot SO_3R' + HCl$$

Alkyl sulphonates cannot be produced by heating a mixture of sulphonic acid and alcohol; no esterification takes place. Sulphonyl chlorides are reduced by lithium aluminium hydride to thiols (Marvel et al., 1950).

The sulphonic acids undergo many double-decomposition reactions (see the aromatic sulphonic acids, p. 608). There are, however, two important differences between aliphatic and aromatic sulphonic acids. In the former, the sulphonic acid group (a) is not eliminated by heating with hydrochloric acid, and (b) is hardly replaced, if at all, by hydroxyl when fused with alkali.

Thioaldehydes and thioketones. These readily polymerise to the trimer and the isolation of the monomer is difficult, and impossible in some cases, e.g., thioformaldehyde.

Thioaldehydes and thioketones may be prepared by the action of hydrogen sulphide on an aldehyde or ketone in the presence of hydrochloric acid, e.g., (R' = H or alkyl):

$$\text{R-CO-R'} + \text{H}_2\text{S} \xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} \text{H}_2\text{O} + [\text{R-CS-R'}] \xrightarrow{\text{polymerises}} [\text{R-CS-R'}]_3$$

These trimers are cyclic compounds (1:3:5-trithians), and many of those of the thioaldehydes have been isolated in two forms. Baumann and Fromm (1891) suggested that the two forms were geometrical isomers, the cis form being the one with the three hydrogen atoms all on the same side of the plane:

Schönberg and Barakat (1947), however, believe that the ring is not planar, but puckered, and that the two forms are related to each other as "chair" and boat" forms (cf. cyclohexane, p. 488). Hassell and Viervoll (1947) have shown by electron diffraction studies that the ring is puckered and that it is of the "chair" type. If this is so, then the existence of the two forms can be explained by cis-trans isomerism.

Thioacids, R.CO.SH, may be prepared by the action of phosphorus pentasulphide on a carboxylic acid:

$$5R \cdot CO_2H + P_2S_5 \longrightarrow 5R \cdot CO \cdot SH + P_2O_5$$

The thioacids have a most disagreeable odour, and slowly decompose in air. They have lower boiling points and are less soluble in water than the corresponding oxygen compounds; they are soluble in most organic solvents. In most of their reactions, the thioacids and their salts behave as if they

contained the mercapto-group, but in a few reactions they behave as if they contained a hydroxyl group. This may be accounted for by tautomerism for the acid and resonance for the salts:

The existence of the acid as a tautomeric mixture is supported by the preparation of both the O- and S-esters.

Nomenclature. The methods of nomenclature are illustrated by the following example:

CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·SH CH<sub>3</sub>·CS·OH (II)

According to the trivial system of nomenclature, both I and II are named as thio-acetic acid. According to the I.U.P.A.C. rules, the suffix -oic of the corresponding oxygen acid is changed to thioic. Thus both I and II are named either as ethanethioic acid or methanecarbothioic acid. On the other hand, the suffix -thiolic is used if it is certain that the oxygen of the hydroxyl group is replaced by sulphur, and the suffix thionic if it is the oxygen of the carbonyl group. Thus I is ethanethiolic acid or methanecarbothiolic acid, and II is ethanethionic or methanecarbothionic acid.

The most characteristic reaction of the thioacids is their extreme readiness to acylate alcohols and amines:

$$R \cdot CO \cdot SH + R'OH \longrightarrow R \cdot COOR' + H_2S$$
  
 $R \cdot CO \cdot SH + R' \cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot R' + H_2S$ 

Dithioacids, R\*CS<sub>2</sub>H, may be prepared by the action of a Grignard reagent on carbon disulphide:

$$RMgX + C \xrightarrow{S} R - C \xrightarrow{S \xrightarrow{acid}} R \cdot CS_2H$$

Nomenclature. The methods of nomenclature are illustrated by the following example:

CH3 CS2H is named as dithioacetic acid, ethanethionthiolic acid or methane-

carbodithioic acid.

A very important dithioacid is dithiocarbonic acid, HO·CS<sub>2</sub>H. The free acid is unknown, but many of its derivatives have been prepared, e.g., potassium xanthate may be prepared by the reaction between potassium hydroxide, ethanol and carbon disulphide:

$$KOH + CS_2 + C_2H_5OH \longrightarrow C_2H_5O \cdot CS_2K + H_2O$$

The name xanthate is derived from the property of these compounds, giving a yellow precipitate of copper xanthate with copper salt (Greek: xanthos, yellow).

Vulcanisation of rubber. This process is carried out by heating crude rubber with 4-5 per cent. sulphur and certain organic compounds which accelerate the reaction between the rubber and sulphur. These organic compounds are known as accelerators, and all contain sulphur or nitrogen, or both. Vulcanising rubber causes the rubber to lose its stickiness, makes it no longer sensitive to temperature changes, causes it to retain its elasticity over a wide temperature range, and increases its tensile strength. The function of the sulphur appears to be to cross-link the long hydrocarbon chains in crude rubber.

## PHOSPHORUS COMPOUNDS

Alkyl-phosphines. All three classes of phosphines are known, the tertiary phosphines being the commonest; the quaternary phosphonium compounds are also known.

**General methods of preparation.** I. Primary and secondary phosphines are produced when phosphonium iodide is heated with alkyl halide in the presence of zinc oxide, e.g., ethyl and diethylphosphine:

$$\begin{array}{l} \mathrm{2PH_4I} + \mathrm{2C_2H_5I} + \mathrm{ZnO} {\longrightarrow} \mathrm{2C_2H_5 \cdot PH_2 \cdot HI} + \mathrm{ZnI_2} + \mathrm{H_2O} \\ \mathrm{PH_4I} + \mathrm{2C_2H_5I} + \mathrm{ZnO} {\longrightarrow} (\mathrm{C_2H_5})_2 \mathrm{PH \cdot HI} + \mathrm{ZnI_2} + \mathrm{H_2O} \end{array}$$

If the reaction is carried out in the absence of zinc oxide, the tertiary phosphines and quaternary phosphonium compounds are produced, e.g., triethylphosphine and tetraethylphosphonium iodide:

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{PH_4I} + 3\mathrm{C_2H_5I} \longrightarrow (\mathrm{C_2H_5})_3\mathrm{P}\text{*HI} + 3\mathrm{HI} \\ (\mathrm{C_2H_5})_3\mathrm{P} + \mathrm{C_2H_5I} \longrightarrow [\mathrm{C_2H_5})_4\mathrm{P}]\text{*I}^- \end{array}$$

Secondary phosphines may be prepared by heating a primary phosphine with the calculated amount of alkyl halide:

$$R \cdot PH_2 + R'I \longrightarrow RR'PH \cdot HI$$

Tertiary phosphines may be prepared from secondary in a similar manner:

$$R_2PH' + R'I \longrightarrow R_2R'P'HI$$

2. A mixture of tertiary phosphine and quaternary phosphonium compound is produced when phosphonium iodide is heated with one of the lower alcohols or lower ethers, e.g.,

$$PH_4I + CH_3OH \longrightarrow PH_3 + CH_3I + H_2O$$
  
 $PH_4I + 3CH_3I \longrightarrow (CH_3)_3P \cdot HI + 3HI \quad (v.p.)$   
 $(CH_3)_3P + CH_3I \longrightarrow [(CH_3)_4P]^+I^- \quad (v.p.)$ 

A small amount of tertiary phosphine is produced when a metallic phosphide is heated with alkyl halide, e.g.,

$$\rm Ca_3P_2 + 6C_2H_5Br {\longrightarrow} 2(C_2H_5)_3P + 3CaBr_2$$

A very small amount of quaternary phosphonium compound is produced when phosphorus is heated with an alkyl halide or an alcohol.

3. Tertiary phosphines are prepared most conveniently by the action of excess Grignard reagent on phosphorus trihalide:

$$_3$$
R·MgBr + PCl $_3$   $\longrightarrow$  R $_3$ P +  $_3$ MgClBr (g.- $v$ .g.)

General properties and reactions. Except for methylphosphine (a gas), all the alkyl-phosphines are colourless, unpleasant-smelling liquids. They resemble the corresponding nitrogen compounds in many ways, but differ in being less basic and more easily oxidised, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} C_2H_5 \cdot PH_2 + 3[O] \xrightarrow{HNO_s} C_2H_5 \cdot P(OH)_2 \\ & \text{ethylphosphonic acid} \\ (C_2H_5)_2PH + 2[O] \xrightarrow{HNO_s} (C_2H_5)_2P \cdot OH \\ & \text{diethylphosphonic acid} \\ (C_2H_5)_3P + [O] \xrightarrow{HNO_s} (C_2H_5)_3P = O \\ & \text{triethylphosphonoxide} \end{array}$$

In naming organic acids and oxides derived from phosphorus, arsenic or antimony, the syllable -on denotes the quinquevalent and -in the tervalent state of the central atom (*British Chemical Abstracts*, 1948).

When quaternary phosphonium halides are treated with moist silver

oxide, the quaternary phosphonium hydroxide is produced:

$$[(C_2H_5)_4P]^+I^- + \text{`AgOH'} \longrightarrow [(C_2H_5)_4P]^+OH^- + \text{AgI}$$

The quaternary phosphonium hydroxides are strongly basic, comparable in strength with the quaternary ammonium hydroxides and sodium hydroxide. When heated they form the trialkyl-phosphonoxide and a hydrocarbon (cf. R<sub>4</sub>NOH, p. 318).

$$[R_4P]^+OH^- \longrightarrow R_3P = O + RH$$

Phosphorus differs from nitrogen in being able to expand its valency shell to form a decet; compounds of the type  $R_3PX_2$  have been prepared (cf. phosphorus pentahalides). Arsenic also forms compounds of this type. Wittig et al. (1948) have prepared pentaphenylphosphorus,  $(C_6H_5)_5P$ .

Triphenylphosphine (which is now obtainable commercially) is used to prepare triphenylphosphine methylene, which is used in the Wittig reaction (p. 64):

$$(C_6H_5)_3P + CH_3Br \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_3PCH_3^+Br^- \xrightarrow{C_6H_6Di} (C_6H_5)_3P = CH_2$$

#### ARSENIC COMPOUNDS

Alkyl-arsines. There are primary, secondary and tertiary arsines, and quaternary arsonium compounds. Primary arsines may be prepared by the action of dialkyl-mercury on arsenic trichloride and reducing the product, alkyl-dichloroarsine, with zinc and sulphuric acid:

$$AsCl_3 + R_2Hg \longrightarrow RHgCl + R\cdot AsCl_2 \xrightarrow{Zn/H_2SO_4} R\cdot AsH_2$$

Alternatively, they may be prepared by reducing an alkyl-arsonic acid with zinc and sulphuric acid:

$$R \cdot AsO_3H \xrightarrow{Zn/H_2SO_4} R \cdot AsH_2$$

Secondary arsines may be prepared by the reduction of dialkyl-chloroarsine:

$$R_2AsCl \xrightarrow{Zn/H_2SO_4} R_2AsH$$

Tertiary arsines may be prepared by the action of excess Grignard reagent on arsenic tribromide:

$$_{3}R \cdot MgX + AsBr_{3} \longrightarrow R_{3}As + _{3}MgClX$$

Quaternary arsonium halides may be prepared by the addition of alkyl halide to a tertiary atsine:

$$R_3As + R'I \longrightarrow [R_3R'As]^+I^-$$

General properties and reactions. Except for methylarsine (a gas), the alkyl-arsines are colourless poisonous liquids with a garlic smell. They

have practically no basic properties, and do not form salts with inorganic acids. They are readily oxidised when exposed to air:

Quaternary arsonium halides form the corresponding hydroxide when treated with moist silver oxide. These hydroxides are strongly basic and, on heating, decompose into the trialkyl-arsonoxide and hydrocarbon (cf. R<sub>4</sub>POH):

 $[R_4As]^+OH^- \longrightarrow R_3AS = O + RH$ 

Cacodyl oxide (dimethylarsinoxide), (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>As—O—As(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>. Cadet (1760) distilled a mixture of equal parts of arsenious oxide and potassium acetate, and obtained a vile-smelling, spontaneously inflammable oil, which subsequently became known as Cadet's liquid:

$$As_4O_6 + 8CH_3 \cdot CO_2K \longrightarrow 2[(CH_3)_2As -]_2O + 4K_2CO_3 + 4CO_2$$
 (17%)

This reaction was later investigated by Bunsen (1837-1843), who showed that Cadet's liquid was a mixture of cacodyl oxide and cacodyl, (CH3)2As-As(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>. It was Berzelius who proposed the name cacodyl (Greek: kakodes, stinking).

A better method for preparing cacodyl oxide is to pass a mixture of the vapours of arsenious oxide and acetic acid over an alkali metal acetate catalyst at 300-400° (yield: 66 per cent., Fuson and Shive, 1947).

Cacodyl oxide is an extremely poisonous liquid, b.p. 150°, insoluble in ethanol and ether. It is not spontaneously inflammable when pure; its inflammability is due to the presence of cacodyl. Cacodyl oxide is feebly basic, reacting with hydrochloric acid to form cacodyl chloride (dimethylchloroarsine), b.p. 109°:

$$[(CH_3)_2As-]_2O + 2HCl \longrightarrow 2(CH_3)_2AsCl + H_2O$$

Pure cacodyl oxide may be prepared by heating cacodyl chloride with potassium hydroxide:

$$2(CH_3)_2AsCl + 2KOH \longrightarrow [(CH_3)_2As]_2O + 2KCl + H_2O$$

Cacodyl (tetramethyldiarsine), [(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>As—]<sub>2</sub>, may be prepared by heating cacodyl chloride with zinc in an atmosphere of carbon dioxide (cf. Wurtz reaction):

$$2(CH_3)_2AsCl + Zn \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2As-As(CH_3)_2 + ZnCl_2$$

It is a colourless poisonous liquid, b.p. 170°, spontaneously inflammable in air, giving carbon dioxide, water and arsenious oxide.

Cacodylic acid (dimethylarsonic acid), (CH3)2AsO·(OH), is formed when cacodyl oxide is oxidised with moist mercuric oxide:

$$[(CH3)2As-]2O + 2HgO + H2O \longrightarrow 2(CH3)2AsO(OH) + 2Hg$$

It is a crystalline odourless substance, m.p. 200°, soluble in water, the aqueous solution being acid to phenolphthalein. Cacodylic acid reacts with hydrogen sulphide to form cacodyl sulphide, [(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>As—]<sub>2</sub>S.

Lewisite (dichloro-β-chlorovinylarsine), ClCH.CH.AsCl2, may be prepared by passing acetylene into arsenic trichloride in the presence of anhydrous aluminium chloride:

Continued action of acetylene produces bis(\(\beta\)-chlorovinyl)chloroarsine and finally tris(β-chlorovinyl)arsine:

$$CICH:CH-AsCl_2 \xrightarrow{C_2H_3} (CICH:CH-)_2AsCl \xrightarrow{C_2H_3} (CICH:CH-)_3As$$

Lewisite is a liquid, b.p. 190° (with decomposition), and is a powerful vesicant. Antimony compounds. Antimony forms only tertiary stibines and quaternary stibinium compounds. Tertiary stibines may be prepared by the action of a Grignard reagent on antimony trichloride, e.g., trimethylstibine:

$$_3$$
CH<sub>3</sub>·MgI + SbCl<sub>3</sub>  $\longrightarrow$  (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>Sb + 3MgCII

Trimethylstibine slowly adds on methyl iodide to form tetramethylstibonium iodide, [(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub>Sb]+I<sup>-</sup>, which, on treatment with moist silver oxide, forms tetramethylstibonium hydroxide, [(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub>Sb]<sup>+</sup>OH<sup>-</sup>. The quaternary stibonium com-

pounds closely resemble the corresponding arsenic compounds.

Bismuth compounds. The organo-bismuth compounds resemble the organo-compounds of mercury, lead and tin in reactivity, i.e., they are true organo-metallic compounds (p. 348). Only tertiary bismuthines are known, and these are best prepared by the action of a Grignard reagent on bismuth trichloride:

$$3R \cdot MgX + BiCl_3 \longrightarrow R_3Bi + 3MgClX$$

Tertiary bismuthines do not add on a molecule of alkyl halide; generally, they react to form an alkyl-halogeno-bismuthine, e.g., trimethylbismuthine, when heated with methyl iodide at 200°, forms methyl-di-iodo-bismuthine and ethane:

$$(CH_3)_3Bi + 2CH_3I \xrightarrow{200^\circ} CH_3BiI_2 + 2C_2H_6$$

Pentaphenylbismuth, (CaH5)5Bi, has now been prepared by Wittig et al. (1952); it is an unstable solid.

#### SILICON COMPOUNDS

The organo compounds of silicon have come into prominence in recent years due to the discovery that resins could be prepared from them.

Alkyl-silanes. These are silicon hydrides (silanes) in which one or more hydrogen atoms have been replaced by an alkyl group, e.g., C2H5SiH3, ethylsilane; (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub>Si, tetramethylsilane.

General methods of preparation. 1. By the action of a dialkyl-zinc on

silicon tetrachloride (Friedel and Crafts, 1863):

$$2\text{SiCl}_4 + 2(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{Zn} \longrightarrow 2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SiCl}_3 + \text{ZnCl}_2$$
  
ethyltrichlorosilane

$$SiCl_4 + 2(CH_3)_2Zn \longrightarrow (CH_3)_4Si + 2ZnCl_2$$

2. By the action of a Grignard reagent on silicon tetrachloride (Kipping, 1904):

$$SiCl_4 + 2CH_3 \cdot MgI \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2 SiCl_2 + 2MgCII$$
dimethyldichlorosilane

$$SiCl_4 + 4CH_3 \cdot MgI \longrightarrow (CH_3)_4 Si + 4MgCII$$
  
3. By heating a mixture of silicon tetrachloride and alkyl bromide with sodium (cf. Wurtz reaction):

$$SiCl_4 + 4C_2H_5Br + 8Na \longrightarrow (C_2H_5)_4Si + 4NaCl + 4NaBr$$

4. By passing alkyl halide vapour over a mixture of silicon and copper at 350° (Patnode and Rochow, 1945); e.g., methyl chloride gives a mixture of methyltrichlorosilane, dimethyldichlorosilane, trimethylchlorosilane and methyldichlorosilane, of which the first two predominate. This reaction has been shown to take place via the formation of methylcopper, which then undergoes homolytic fission to give a methyl free radical (Hurd and Rochow, 1945):

2Cu + CH<sub>3</sub>Cl --- Cu-CH<sub>3</sub> + CuCl Cu— $CH_3$   $\longrightarrow$  Cu +  $CH_3$ . CuCl + Si  $\longrightarrow$   $\equiv$  SiCl + Cu $\equiv$ SiCl + 3CH<sub>3</sub>·  $\longrightarrow$  (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>SiCl

5. By passing a mixture of alkyl halide vapour and silicon tetrachloride over an aluminium or zinc catalyst at 400°. The same mixture is obtained as in method 4; and probably the mechanism is the same.

Methods 1, 4 and 5 are used on a large scale for preparing the intermediates

required for the preparation of silicones (see below).

General properties and reactions. The alkylsilanes are colourless oils, stable in air, and are not affected by acids or alkalis. The alkyl groups in tetra-alkylsilanes may be chlorinated, and these chlorinated compounds undergo many of the reactions characteristic of the alkyl halides, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} (C_2H_5)_4\mathrm{Si} + Cl_2 \longrightarrow (C_2H_5)_3\mathrm{Si}\text{-}C_2H_4\mathrm{Cl} + \mathrm{HCl} \\ (C_2H_5)_3\mathrm{Si}\text{-}C_2H_4\mathrm{Cl} + \mathrm{RONa} \longrightarrow (C_2H_5)_3\mathrm{Si}\text{-}C_2H_4\text{-}\mathrm{OR} + \mathrm{NaCl} \end{array}$$

Alkyl-halogenosilanes may be prepared by any of the above methods (1-5). They are usually colourless oily liquids that fume in the air due to their ready hydrolysis to silanols.

Silanols. Hydrolysis of trialkyl-chlorosilanes, dialkyldichlorosilanes and alkyl-trichlorosilanes gives the silanols, R3SiOH, silanediols, R2Si(OH)2,

and silanetriols, RSi(OH)3, respectively.

Trialkyl silanols are colourless stable liquids, many of which have a camphorlike odour. On the other hand, the silanediols and silanetriols are unstable, eliminating water to form polymers. Hydrolysis is carried out by dissolving the alkyl-chlorosilane in a solvent, and mixing with another solvent containing water. Under these conditions hydrolysis is slow: rapid hydrolysis leads to gel formation. The hydroxy-compounds are polymerised by heating.

Hydrolysis of dimethyldichlorosilane produces cyclic polymers containing 3-9

oxygen atoms in the ring, e.g., the trimer,  $(CH_3)_2Si$  O— $Si(CH_3)_2$  O— $Si(CH_3)_3$ polymers,  $HOSi(CH_3)_2 \cdot [OSi(CH_3)_2]_n \cdot OH$ , are also obtained, and the value of nmay be increased by treating with sulphuric acid, resulting in higher polymers which are viscous liquids or soft plastics. Hydrolysis of methyltrichlorosilane results in the formation of amorphous powders or hard brittle solids. These polymers consist of linear, cyclic and cross-linked structures, depending on the conditions of the hydrolysis; e.g., the end product of the dehydration process is

$$\cdots O - Si(CH_3) - O - Si(CH_3) - O - Si(CH_3) - O \cdots$$

$$\cdots O - Si(CH_3) - O - Si(CH_3) - O - Si(CH_3) - O \cdots$$

Thus by controlling the conditions of hydrolysis, and using mixtures of intermediates, polymers with different properties can be obtained. These polymers are known as the silicones. Silicones may be roughly classified as follows:

(i) Silicone fluids: used in high-temperature baths and diffusion pumps, as hydraulic fluids, and form water-repellent surfaces.

(ii) Silicone rubbers: used as electrical insulators.

(iii) Silicone greases: used as lubricants at high and low temperatures.

(iv) Silicone resins: used as electrical insulators.

## QUESTIONS

1. How may EtSH be prepared? Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when EtSH is treated with:-(a) Na, (b) KOH, (c) (AcO)<sub>2</sub>Pb, (d) HgO, (e) Na<sub>2</sub>PbO<sub>2</sub>, (f) AcOH, (g) H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>, (h) NaOCl, (i) HNO<sub>3</sub>, (f) CH<sub>3</sub>·CHO,

2. Describe the preparation and properties of:—(a) Et<sub>2</sub>S, (b) (ClCH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>—)<sub>2</sub>S, (c) Me·SCN, (d) CH<sub>2</sub>·CH·CH<sub>2</sub>·NCS, (e) Et<sub>2</sub>SO, (f) Me<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>, (g) Me<sub>2</sub>C(SO<sub>2</sub>Et)<sub>2</sub>.
3. Discuss the structures of the sulphoxides, sulphones, sulphonium salts, trimeric

thioaldehydes and thioacids.

4. Suggest one synthesis for each of the following:—(a) Me·NH·CS·OEt, (b) Me·NH·CS·NH·Et, (c) Et·NH·CS<sub>2</sub>Me. What would each of these give on vigorous hydrolysis?

5. Compare and contrast the methods of preparation and the properties of the

onium compounds of N, S, P and As.

6. How may Et·SO<sub>3</sub>H be prepared? How may this be distinguished from EtO·SO<sub>2</sub>H? How may Et·SO<sub>3</sub>H be converted into:—(a) Et·SO<sub>2</sub>Cl, (b) Et·SO<sub>3</sub>Na, (c) (Et·SO<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>Pb, (d) Et·SO<sub>3</sub>Et, (e) Et·SO<sub>2</sub>·NH<sub>2</sub>, (f) Et·SO<sub>2</sub>·NH·Et?
7. Compare and contrast the methods of preparation and the properties of the

phosphines and arsines.

8. Write an account of the preparation and properties of the cacodyl compounds, and discuss the part played by these compounds in the history of organic chemistry. 9. Write an account of the preparation and properties of the tetra-alkyl-silanes and

the alkyl-chlorosilanes, and discuss the use of organo-silicon compounds in industry.

#### READING REFERENCES

Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1942, 2nd ed.). Vol. I, Ch. 10. Organic Sulphur Compounds.

Schönberg and Barakat, The Stereochemistry of Trimeric Thioaldehydes, J.C.S., 1947, 693.

Snell, Surface Active Agents, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1943, 35, 107.

Ann. Reports, 1930, 27, 143. The Decomposition of the Quaternary Compounds of Nitrogen and Phosphorus.

ibid., 1945, 42, 103. Phosphorylation.

ibid., 1948, 45, 198. Recent Work on the Reactions of Organic Sulphur Compounds. Newton Friend's Inorganic Chemistry:

(i) Vol. XI, Part I (1928), pp. 246-291. Silicon Compounds.
(ii) Vol. XI, Part II (1930), pp. 3-61. Arsenic Compounds.
(iii) Vol. XI, Part III (1930), pp. 3-46. Phosphorus Compounds.
Gilman and Yale, Organo Bismuth Compounds, Chem. Reviews, 1942, 30, 281.
Emblem and Sos, Silicon Organic Compounds, Chem. and Ind., 1946, 51, 450.

Burkhard et al., The Present State of Organo-Silicon Chemistry, Chem. Reviews, 1947,

41, 97 Hardy and Megson, The Chemistry of Silicon Polymers, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.),

1948, 2, 25. Jeffes, Some Aspects of the Industrial Development of Silicones, Chem. and Ind.,

1954, 498. Atherton, Some Aspects of the Organic Chemistry of Derivatives of Phosphorus

Oxyacids, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1949, 3, 146.
Abrahams, The Stereochemistry of Sub-group VIB of the Periodic Table, ibid., 1956,

10, 407

MacDiarmid, Silyl Compounds, ibid., 1956, 10, 208. Wittenberg and Gilman, Organosilylmetallic Compounds, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1959, 13, 116.

#### CHAPTER XV

### ORGANO-METALLIC COMPOUNDS

GENERALLY speaking, organo-metallic compounds are those organic compounds in which a metal is directly joined to carbon (see, however, alkali metals, p. 361). The most widely studied and the most useful are the magnesium compounds, but in recent years the organo-compounds of sodium and lithium have been studied in great detail; the lithium compounds in particular are becoming increasingly important in synthetic work.

## THE GRIGNARD REAGENTS

The alkyl-magnesium halides, R-Mg-X, or Grignard reagents, introduced by Grignard in 1900, are extremely valuable in laboratory organic syntheses, and recently are being used on a large scale (cf. silicon compounds, p. 345). A Grignard reagent is generally prepared by reaction between magnesium (I atom) and alkyl halide (I molecule) in dry, alcohol-free ether.

$$RX + Mg \longrightarrow RMgX \quad (v.g.-ex.)$$

The mechanism of the formation of a Grignard reagent is still not clear. A free radical mechanism has been suggested (Gomberg and Bachmann, 1927; cf. triphenylmethyl bromide, p. 702). The reaction starts by the formation of a trace of magnesium halide (Wurtz reaction) and then proceeds as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm 2RX + Mg} \longrightarrow {\rm R-R} + {\rm MgX_2} \\ {\rm Mg} + {\rm MgX_2} \Longrightarrow {\rm 2^{\bullet}MgX} \\ {\rm RX} + {\rm ^{\bullet}MgX} \longrightarrow {\rm MgX_2} + {\rm R^{\bullet}} \\ {\rm R^{\bullet}} + {\rm ^{\bullet}MgX} \longrightarrow {\rm RMgX} \end{array}$$

The ethereal solution of the Grignard reagent is generally used in all reactions. Other solvents besides ether may be used, e.g., tertiary amines, tetrahydrofuran and the dimethyl ether of ethylene glycol. Tetrahydrofuran is being used increasingly as a solvent, since it has been found that it increases the reactivity of organic halides towards magnesium. Dimethyl sulphate also reacts readily with magnesium in tetrahydrofuran to give CH<sub>3</sub>Mg·SO<sub>4</sub>CH<sub>3</sub> (Normant *et al.*, 1957). The reactions of this new reagent appear to be similar to those of CH<sub>3</sub>MgX.

The ease with which an alkyl halide forms a Grignard reagent depends on a number of factors. It has been found that for a given alkyl radical the ease of formation is alkyl iodide>bromide>chloride. It has also been found that the formation of a Grignard reagent becomes increasingly difficult as the number of carbon atoms in the alkyl group increases, i.e., the ease of formation is  $CH_3X > C_2H_5X > C_3H_7X > \cdots$ . Since tertiary alkyl iodides readily eliminate hydrogen iodide with the formation of an olefin, tertiary alkyl chlorides are used.

Normant (1953, 1957) has shown that Grignard reagents can be prepared from vinyl and aryl halides if tetrahydrofuran is used as solvent.

Structure of Grignard reagents. The structure of the Grignard reagent in ethereal solution has been the subject of much research. Grignard et al. (1901), in their attempt to isolate the Grignard reagent, showed that the compound contained ether (which they called "ether of crystallisation"). Since this time many formulæ have been proposed, among which is the one by Jolibois (1912), who suggested that the Grignard reagent was the loose molecular complex On the other hand, Schlenk et al. (1929) suggested the following R<sub>2</sub>Mg·MgX<sub>2</sub>. equilibrium:

 $_{2}RMgX \rightleftharpoons R_{2}Mg + MgX_{2}$ 

These authors found that a mixture of equivalent amounts of dialkylmagnesium and magnesium halide behaved exactly as a Grignard reagent. This, however, can be explained by the dissociation of the Jolibois complex:

$$R_2Mg \cdot MgX_2 \Longrightarrow R_2Mg + MgX_2$$

Ubbelohde et al. (1955) have confirmed that RMgX is dimerised and solvated in ether. Thus the following equilibria are possible:

$$R_2 Mg \cdot Mg X_2 \overset{\underline{A}}{\longleftarrow} R_2 Mg + Mg X_2 \overset{\underline{B}}{\longleftarrow} 2RMg X$$

These equilibria have been examined by Dessy et al. (1957). Since an equimolecular mixture of diethylmagnesium and magnesium bromide in ether shows the same kinetics towards 1-hexyne as the ordinarily prepared Grignard solution, it seems reasonable to suppose that both involve the same or similar complexes. When <sup>28</sup>MgBr<sub>2</sub> was mixed with R<sub>2</sub>Mg, and subsequently the MgBr<sub>2</sub> precipitated with dioxan, 95 per cent. recovery of the <sup>28</sup>Mg was obtained. If equilibrium B were involved, then a 50 per cent. recovery would have been expected. Thus a better formulation of the Grignard reagent appears to be R<sub>2</sub>Mg·MgX<sub>2</sub> and equilibrium A.

In this book, the formula RMgX will be used to designate a Grignard reagent.

Reactions of the Grignard reagents. When working with Grignard reagents, it is usual to add the other reactant (often in ethereal solution) slowly to the Grignard solution or vice-versa, and after a short time, decompose the magnesium complex with water or dilute acid; the yields are usually g.-v.g.

The majority of Grignard reactions fall into two groups.

(i) Addition of the Grignard reagent to a compound containing any of the following groups (containing multiple bonds):

In each case the alkyl group of RMgX adds on to the atom with the lower electron-affinity, and the fragment MgX to the atom with the higher. It is important to note that a Grignard reagent does *not* add on to two carbon atoms joined by a double or triple bond.

The addition of a Grignard reagent to an *iso*cyanide is exceptional in that both R and MgX add on to some extent to the carbon atom:

$$R-N \xrightarrow{} C \xrightarrow{RMgX} R-N \xrightarrow{} C-R + R-N=C \xrightarrow{R} MgX$$

In the case of the azo-group, —N=N—, the fragment MgX adds on to each nitrogen atom and the alkyl group, R or  $C_nH_{2n+1}$ —, is eliminated as R—R,  $C_nH_{2n}$  and  $C_nH_{2n+2}$ .

The most important group is the carbonyl group. The mechanism of addition of Grignard reagents to this group has been the subject of much discussion, and it cannot be said that the mechanism is settled. A favoured theory is the cyclic-addition mechanism (Swain et al., 1951):

One molecule of the Grignard reagent co-ordinates with the carbonyl compound at the oxygen atom, thereby increasing the polarity of the C=O bond, and then a second molecule of Grignard reagent donates its R group to the carbonyl carbon atom.

Kharasch et al. (1941, 1944) have shown that in the presence of a small amount of cobaltous chloride the Grignard reaction takes place by a free-radical mechanism. It appears that traces of metal impurities may bring about a free-radical mechanism and thereby lead to an abnormal reaction of the Grignard reagent; even a trace of free magnesium may be sufficient (see diphenyl, p. 698).

(ii) Double decomposition with compounds containing an active hydrogen atom or a reactive halogen atom. We shall consider only the former at this stage (see p. 354 for an example of the latter). As we have seen, an active hydrogen atom is one joined to oxygen, nitrogen or sulphur. When such compounds react with a Grignard reagent, the alkyl group is converted into the paraffin, e.g.,

 $RMgX + H_2O \longrightarrow RH + Mg(OH) \cdot Br$   $RMgX + R'OH \longrightarrow RH + Mg(OR') \cdot X$  $RMgX + NH_3 \longrightarrow RH + Mg(NH_2) \cdot X$ 

All reactions with compounds containing an active hydrogen atom result in the quantitative yield of hydrocarbon. Thus this type of reaction is valuable for the determination of the number of active hydrogen atoms in a compound. The procedure is known as the **Zerewitinoff active hydrogen determination** (1907), and methylmagnesium iodide is normally used as the Grignard reagent. The methane which is liberated is measured (by volume), one molecule of methane being equivalent to one active hydrogen atom, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{l} {\rm R\cdot NH_2 + CH_3MgI \longrightarrow CH_4 + R\cdot NH\cdot MgI} \\ {\rm R_2NH + CH_3MgI \longrightarrow CH_4 + R_2N\cdot MgI} \end{array}$$

Only one hydrogen atom in a primary amine reacts at room temperature. At a sufficiently high temperature, the active hydrogen atom in the magnesium derivative of the primary amine will react with a further molecule of methylmagnesium iodide:

$$R \cdot NH \cdot MgI + CH_3MgI \longrightarrow CH_4 + R \cdot N(MgI)_2$$

It is therefore possible to estimate the number of amino- and imino-groups in compounds containing both. It is not possible to get a high enough temperature for the second reaction with ether; a satisfactory solvent for the complete Zerewitinoff determination is pyridine (Lehman and Basch, 1945).

The Zerewitinoff determination can be used to distinguish between primary, secondary and tertiary amines:

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{R} \cdot \text{NH}_2 + \text{CH}_3 \text{MgI} \xrightarrow{\text{room temperature}} \text{CH}_4 + \text{R} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{MgI} \\ & \text{R} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{MgI} + \text{CH}_3 \text{MgI} \xrightarrow{\text{high temperature}} \text{CH}_4 + \text{R} \cdot \text{N} (\text{MgI})_2 \\ & \text{R}_2 \text{NH} + \text{CH}_3 \text{MgI} \xrightarrow{\text{room temperature}} \text{CH}_4 + \text{R}_2 \text{N} \cdot \text{MgI} \end{aligned}$$

Thus a primary amine ultimately gives two molecules of methane, a secondary one, and a tertiary none (no reaction).

Lithium aluminium hydride also reacts with compounds containing active hydrogen, and so may be used for analytical determinations, e.g.,

$$\begin{split} \text{LiAlH}_4 + 4\text{ROH} &\longrightarrow (\text{RO})_4 \text{LiAl} + 4\text{H}_2 \\ \text{LiAlH}_4 + 4\text{R·NH}_2 &\longrightarrow 4\text{H}_2 + (\text{R·NH})_4 \text{LiAl} \\ &\xrightarrow{\text{LiAlH}_4} 2(\text{R·N})_2 \text{LiAl} + 4\text{H}_2 \end{split}$$

The enolic form of a compound, since it contains an active hydrogen atom, reacts with a Grignard reagent, e.g., acetoacetic ester and nitroethane:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{·CO·CH}_2\text{·CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 & \Longrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{·C} = \text{CH·CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_4\text{MgI}} \\ \text{OMgI} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{·C} = \text{CH·CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{CH}_4 \end{array}$$

 $\text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{NO}_2 \Longleftrightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}\text{:}\text{NO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3\text{MgI}} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}\text{:}\text{NO}_2\text{MgI} + \text{CH}_4$ 

In both cases the methane will not be liberated immediately, but at a rate

depending on the speed of the conversion of keto into enol.

The hydrogen atom in the  $\equiv$ CH group is also active with respect to a Grignard reagent (to be expected, since it is acidic, p. 96). Thus, when acetylene is passed through an ether solution of ethylmagnesium bromide, ethynylenebis(magnesium bromide) is formed:

hynylenebis(magnesium bromide) is formed:
$$C_2H_5MgBr + C_2H_2 \longrightarrow HC \equiv CMgBr + C_2H_6 \xrightarrow{C_2H_4MgBr} BrMgC \equiv CMgBr$$

The second step can be avoided by adding the Grignard solution to tetra-

hydrofuran saturated with acetylene (Jones et al., 1956).

Order of reactivity of functional groups. In most cases of syntheses in which a Grignard reagent is used, the other compound has only one functional group, and consequently the reaction takes place in one direction only. Occasionally it is necessary to carry out a synthesis with a compound containing two (or possibly more) functional groups. If an excess of Grignard reagent is used, then both groups react as would be expected. It has been found experimentally that the reactivity of different groups is not equal, and hence when one equivalent of Grignard reagent is added, two competitive reactions take place simultaneously, but at different rates, resulting in two products in unequal amounts. Experiments have shown that an active hydrogen reacts very much faster than any other group; so much so, in fact, that a compound containing an active hydrogen and another group, reacts with one equivalent of a Grignard reagent as if it had only one reactive group, the active hydrogen.

Experiments have also shown that the reactivity of the carbonyl group in aldehydes is somewhat greater than in ketones. The carbonyl group in both aldehydes and ketones, however, is much more reactive than in acyl chlorides and esters, the latter being less reactive than the former. Finally, the carbonyl group in all the types of compounds named above is more reactive than a halogen atom of the alkyl halide type (which is not to be confused with the halogen in an acyl chloride; see p. 355). The foregoing

general rules may be illustrated with the compound:

# CH2OH·CH2·CO·CH2·CH2·CO2C2H5

One molecule of RMgX would react exclusively with the hydroxyl group; a second molecule of RMgX with the keto-group; and a third molecule with the carbethoxy group.

# SYNTHETIC USES OF THE GRIGNARD REAGENTS

Hydrocarbons. When a Grignard reagent is treated with any compound containing active hydrogen, a hydrocarbon is produced; in practice, water or dilute acid is used:

$$R-Mg-Br + H_2O \longrightarrow RH + Mg(OH) \cdot Br$$

Since alkyl halides are readily prepared from alcohols, it becomes a relatively simple matter to convert an alcohol (saturated or unsaturated) into the corresponding hydrocarbon.

The alkyl group of a Grignard reagent may also be converted into the parent paraffin by reducing the Grignard reagent catalytically:

$$2RMgX + 2H_2 \xrightarrow{Ni} 2RH + MgH_2 + MgX_2$$

Hydrocarbons containing more carbon atoms than the Grignard reagent may be prepared by treating the latter with an alkyl halide. This is an example of the reaction between a Grignard reagent and a compound containing a reactive halogen atom:

$$RMgI + R'I \longrightarrow R - R' + MgI_2$$

The yield of R-R' is very good only if R' is allyl or t-alkyl radical. On the other hand, a good yield of R-R', where R' is any alkyl radical, may be obtained by using p-toluenesulphonic esters as the alkylating agent:

When R' is either a methyl or ethyl group, methyl or ethyl sulphate, respectively, may be used:

$$RMgBr + 2(CH_3)_2SO_4 \longrightarrow R-CH_3 + CH_3Br + (CH_3 \cdot O \cdot SO_2 \cdot O -)_2Mg$$

**Primary alcohols.** A Grignard reagent may be used to synthesise an alcohol by treating it with dry oxygen and decomposing the product with water:

$$\text{RMgX} \xrightarrow{\text{O}_{2}} \text{RO}_{2}\text{MgX} \xrightarrow{\text{RMgX}} 2\text{ROMgX} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_{2}\text{O}} 2\text{ROH} \quad (g.-v.g.)$$

This method (which can be used for all three classes of alcohols) is little used in practice since an alkyl halide may be converted into the corresponding alcohol by simpler means (p. 106). The method, however, is useful for converting aryl halides into phenols.

Walling et al. (1955) have isolated peroxides (yield: 30–90 per cent.) by the slow addition of a Grignard reagent to oxygen-saturated solvents at  $-70^{\circ}$ . This supports the above mechanism (suggested by Porter et al., 1920). Peroxides have not been isolated from aromatic Grignard reagents, but their presence has, however, been detected.

When a Grignard reagent (in ethereal solution) is treated with formal-dehyde gas, or when a Grignard reagent in, e.g., di-n-butyl ether (b.p. 141°), is refluxed with paraformaldehyde, a primary alcohol is obtained by decomposing the magnesium complex with dilute acid:

$$\label{eq:H2C=O} \text{H}_2\text{C} \xrightarrow{\text{OMgI}} \text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{R} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \quad (g.)$$

On the other hand, a primary alcohol containing two carbon atoms more than the Grignard alkyl radical can be prepared by adding one molecule of ethylene chlorohydrin to two molecules of Grignard reagent.

Two molecules of Grignard reagent are not necessary if ethylene oxide is used instead of ethylene chlorohydrin. Ethylene oxide is added to the well-cooled Grignard solution, the mixture allowed to stand for several hours, the ether then distilled off and the residue treated with ice-cold water:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ \mid \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{O} + \text{RMgX} \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} \text{CH}_2 \\ \mid \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{bmatrix} \overset{+}{\underset{\text{MgX}}{\mid}} \overset{R}{\underset{\text{H}_2\text{O}}{\mid}} \\ \text{R} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{OMgX} \end{array}$$

Care must be taken in carrying out this reaction since, when all the ether has been distilled, a vigorous reaction often occurs apparently due to the rearrangement of the intermediate complex (an oxonium salt). This vigorous reaction may be avoided by distilling off some of the ether, adding benzene, and then distilling until the temperature of the vapour reaches 65°.

Secondary alcohols. When a Grignard reagent is treated with any

aldehyde other than formaldehyde, a secondary alcohol is formed:

$$R \cdot CHO + R'MgX \longrightarrow R \cdot CH \xrightarrow{OMgX} \xrightarrow{H_0O} R \cdot CHOH \cdot R' \quad (f \cdot g \cdot -g \cdot)$$

It can be seen that the secondary alcohol R·CHOH·R', is obtained whether we start with R·CHO and R'MgX, or R'·CHO and RMgX. Which pair we

use is generally a matter of their relative accessibility.

Secondary alcohols may also be prepared by interaction of a Grignard reagent (2 molecules) and ethyl formate (1 molecule). The mechanism of the reaction is still not certain; one which is widely accepted is that an aldehyde is formed as an intermediate product, and subsequently reacts with another molecule of Grignard reagent to form the secondary alcohol (see aldehydes, below):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{H-C} \bigcirc \text{O} \\ \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{RMgX} \longrightarrow \left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{H-C} \bigcirc \text{OMgX} \\ \text{R} \\ \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array} \right] \longrightarrow \\ \\ \text{Mg(OC}_2\text{H}_5) \cdot \text{X} + \text{R} \cdot \text{CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{RMgX}} \text{R} \cdot \text{CH} \bigcirc \xrightarrow{\text{R}} \text{R} \cdot \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{R} \end{array} \tag{g.}$$

Tertiary alcohols. A tertiary alcohol may be prepared by the action of a Grignard reagent on a ketone:

$$\begin{array}{c} R \\ C = O + R''MgX \longrightarrow \begin{matrix} R \\ R'' \end{matrix} \xrightarrow{R} \begin{matrix} OMgX \\ R'' \end{matrix} \xrightarrow{H_{\bullet}O} \begin{matrix} R \\ R'' \end{matrix} \xrightarrow{R} \begin{matrix} OH \\ R'' \end{matrix} \qquad (g.)$$

By this means a tertiary alcohol with three different alkyl groups may be prepared, and the starting materials may be any of the following pairs of compounds: R•CO•R' and R'MgX; R•CO•R' and R'MgX, or R'•CO•R' and RMgX (cf. secondary alcohols).

Tertiary alcohols containing at least two identical alkyl groups may be

prepared by the reaction between a Grignard reagent (2 molecules) and any ester (1 molecule) other than formic ester (cf. secondary alcohols):

Similar results may be achieved by using an acid and a slight excess of Grignard reagent, i.e., more than three molecules (Huston et al., 1946);

$$R - C \xrightarrow{\text{CMgI}} R'H + R \cdot C \xrightarrow{\text{OMgI}} \xrightarrow{\text{R'MgI}} R \cdot C \xrightarrow{\text{R'MgI}} R \cdot C \xrightarrow{\text{R'}} R' \xrightarrow{\text{H_2O}} RR'_2 \text{COH}$$

Tertiary alcohols containing three identical alkyl groups may be prepared by the reaction between a Grignard reagent (3 molecules) and ethyl carbonate (1 molecule):

$$3RMgX + (C_2H_5O)_2CO \longrightarrow R_3COMgX + 2Mg(OC_2H_5)\cdot X$$

$$\xrightarrow{H_5O} R_3COH \quad (f.g.-g.)$$

Ethers. The preparation of an ether using a Grignard reagent is another example of the reaction between the latter and a compound containing a reactive halogen atom (ef. hydrocarbons); the method consists in adding an  $\alpha$ -monochloroether to a Grignard reagent, e.g.,

$$R \cdot O \cdot CH_2CI + R'MgX \longrightarrow R \cdot O \cdot CH_2 \cdot R' + MgCIX$$
 (g.)

Chloroethers of the type R•O•CH<sub>2</sub>Cl are readily prepared by passing hydrogen chloride into a cooled mixture of formalin solution and an alcohol:

$$ROH + H \cdot CHO + HCl \longrightarrow R \cdot O \cdot CH_2Cl + H_2O \quad (v.g.)$$

A particularly useful chloroether is monochlorodimethyl ether, by means of which it is possible to ascend both the ether and alcohol series.

The following equations illustrate how it may be used:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{OH} + \text{H} \cdot \text{CHO} + \text{HCl} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{Cl} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \\ \text{ROH} + \text{HBr} \longrightarrow \text{RBr} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \\ \text{RBr} + \text{Mg} \longrightarrow \text{RMgBr} \\ \text{RMgBr} + \text{CH}_2\text{Cl} \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \longrightarrow \text{R} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{CH}_3 + \text{MgClBr} \end{array}$$

When refluxed with constant-boiling hydrobromic acid, this ether gives the alkyl bromide R•CH<sub>2</sub>Br and methyl bromide (see p. 142). The alkyl bromide may be hydrolysed to the corresponding alcohol, R•CH<sub>2</sub>OH, or may be converted into the ether R•CH<sub>2</sub>•CH<sub>2</sub>•O•CH<sub>3</sub>:

$$R \cdot CH_2Br \xrightarrow{Mg} R \cdot CH_2MgBr \xrightarrow{CICH_2 \cdot O \cdot CH_3} R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot O \cdot CH_3$$

Aldehydes. An aldehyde may be prepared by the reaction between a Grignard reagent (I molecule) and ethyl formate (I molecule). If the

Grignard reagent is in excess, a secondary alcohol is formed (see above). Hence, to avoid this as much as possible, the Grignard reagent is added to the ester:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{H-C} & \text{O} \\ \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{RMgX} \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} \text{H-C} & \text{OMgX} \\ \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5 \end{bmatrix} \longrightarrow \text{R·CHO} + \\ \text{Mg(OC}_2\text{H}_5) \cdot \text{X} \end{array}$$

Isolation of the aldehyde supports the mechanism given for the formation of a secondary alcohol when the Grignard reagent is in excess (see secondary

alcohols).

In the preparation of an aldehyde by this method it is impossible to avoid the formation of some secondary alcohol as well. If, however, ethyl orthoformate is used instead of ethyl formate, a better yield of aldehyde is obtained, since the formation of secondary alcohol is prevented by the formation of an acetal:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{H-C(OC}_2\text{H}_5)_3 \, + \, \text{RMgX} \longrightarrow \text{R-CH(OC}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \, + \, \text{Mg(OC}_2\text{H}_5)\text{-X} \xrightarrow{\text{acid}} \\ \text{R-CHO} \, + \, \text{2C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} \end{array}$$

Aldehydes may also be prepared by the reaction between a Grignard reagent and hydrogen cyanide or formamide (see ketones, below).

Ketones. Ketones cannot be prepared by the reaction between a Grignard reagent (1 molecule) and any ester (1 molecule) other than formic ester, since it is rarely possible to stop the reaction at the first stage (as can be done for the preparation of an aldehyde using ethyl formate). It is possible, however, to prepare a ketone (as its ketal) by using any orthoester other than orthoformic ester (cf. aldehydes):

$$R \cdot C(OC_2H_5)_3 + R'MgX \longrightarrow RR'C(OC_2H_5)_2 + Mg(OC_2H_5) \cdot X \xrightarrow{acid} R \cdot CO \cdot R'$$

Ketones may be prepared by adding an alkyl cyanide to a Grignard reagent, and decomposing the complex with dilute acid; methyl cyanide is the only alkyl cyanide which does not form a ketone:

$$R \cdot C \equiv N + R'MgX \longrightarrow R - C = N \cdot MgX \xrightarrow{H_4O} R \cdot CO \cdot R' + NH_3$$

$$RR'C = NH \xrightarrow{H_4O} R \cdot CO \cdot R' + NH_3$$
ketimine

The starting materials may be either R·CN and R'MgX, or R'·CN and RMgX. If hydrogen cyanide is used instead of an alkyl cyanide (R=H), an aldehyde is formed.

Acyl chlorides (I molecule) react rapidly with Grignard reagents (I

molecule) to form ketones:

$$R \cdot COC1 + R'MgX \longrightarrow R \cdot CO \cdot R' + MgCIX$$
 (f.g.)

Tertiary alcohol is also formed, due to the action of the Grignard reagent on the ketone produced. The best conditions for the preparation of straight-chain ketones is the addition of one molecule of Grignard reagent to one or more molecules of acyl chloride at  $-65^{\circ}$  in the presence of a small amount of ferric chloride. For branched-chain ketones the temperature can be about  $5^{\circ}$  (Percival *et al.*, 1953).

The mechanism of the reaction is not certain, but it appears to be additive and not double decomposition, since the reactivity of acyl halides with a Grignard reagent is acyl fluoride>chloride>bromide>iodide (Entemann and

Johnson, 1933); this order is opposite to that of the reactivity of the halogen atom in acyl halides. Thus the reaction may be formulated:

$$R-C \begin{picture}(200,0) \put(0,0){\line(1,0){100}} \put(0,0){\line(1,0$$

On the other hand, Morrison et al. (1954) propose the following mechanism, a second molecule attacking the Grignard-acyl halide complex (cf. p. 349):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Cl} \\ \text{R} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{Cl} \\ \text{R} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{Cl} \\ \text{R} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{Mg} \\ \text{R} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{R} \\ \text{R} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c$$

Acid anhydrides also form ketones, the reaction being best carried out at about  $-70^{\circ}$ :

$$(\text{R}^{\bullet}\text{CO})_{2}\text{O} + \text{R}'\text{MgX} \xrightarrow{-70^{\circ}} \text{R}^{\bullet}\text{CO}^{\bullet}\text{R}' + \text{R}^{\bullet}\text{CO}_{2}\text{MgX} \quad (g.-v.g.)$$

Amides and N-substituted amides react with Grignard reagents to form ketones:

etones:
$$R-C \bigvee_{NH_{2}}^{O} + R'MgX \longrightarrow R'H + R-C \bigvee_{NH\cdot MgX}^{O} \xrightarrow{R^{M}gX}$$

$$R-C \bigvee_{N'}^{OMgX} \xrightarrow{H_{2}O} R\cdot CO\cdot R' + 2Mg(OH)\cdot X + NH_{3}$$
his reaction

This reaction necessitates the use of two molecules of Grignard reagent, and is therefore of very little practical importance. Formamide gives rise to the formation of an aldehyde.

Acids. When a Grignard reagent is treated with solid carbon dioxide and the complex decomposed with dilute acid, a monocarboxylic acid is obtained:

$$RMgX + C \xrightarrow{O} \rightarrow R - C \xrightarrow{O} \xrightarrow{H_2O} R \cdot CO_2H \quad (f.g.-g.)$$

Solid carbon dioxide is used in order to attain a low temperature  $(-70^{\circ})$ ; if the reaction is carried out with carbon dioxide at room temperature, the product is mainly a mixture of ketone and tertiary alcohol. High yields of acid are also obtained by the addition of the Grignard reagent to powdered yield of acid may also be obtained by passing carbon dioxide into the Grignard solution cooled to  $0^{\circ}$ .

The above method is particularly useful for preparing acids of the type R<sub>3</sub>C·CO<sub>2</sub>H, which usually cannot be prepared by the cyanide synthesis using a tertiary alkyl halide (p. 294). It may also be noted that this method offers a means of ascending the acid series.

Esters. When a Grignard reagent (1 molecule) reacts with ethyl chloroformate (1 molecule) an ester is formed. Since chloroformic ester is the half-acid chloride of carbonic acid, the reaction probably takes place by an additive mechanism (see ketones):

$$O = C - Cl + RMgX \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} Cl \\ XMgO - C - R \\ OC_2H_5 \end{bmatrix} \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + MgClX$$

To avoid as far as possible reaction of the Grignard reagent with the carbethoxy group of the carboxylic ester produced, the ethyl chloroformate is kept in excess by adding to it the Grignard reagent.

Chloroformic ester is an acid chloride; ethyl chloroacetate is not. When the latter is treated with a Grignard reagent (2 molecules), a chloro-tertiary alcohol is produced, the carbonyl group of the carbethoxy being more reactive than the chlorine atom of the alkyl halide type:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CICH}_2 \cdot \text{C} \overset{\text{O}}{\swarrow} + 2 \text{RMgX} \longrightarrow \\ \\ \text{CICH}_2 \cdot \text{C} \overset{\text{O}}{\swarrow} \\ \\ \text{R} \end{array} + \text{Mg(OC}_2 \text{H}_5) \cdot \text{X} \overset{\text{H}_4 \text{O}}{\longrightarrow} \text{R}_2 \text{C} \overset{\text{OH}}{\searrow} \\ \\ \text{CH}_2 \text{CI} \end{array}$$

A very useful method for preparing esters of tertiary alcohols is to treat the tertiary alcohol with a Grignard reagent, and then add an acyl chloride, which reacts with the alkoxy-magnesium halide left in the solution:

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm ROH} + {\rm CH_3MgI} \longrightarrow {\rm CH_4} + {\rm ROMgI} \\ {\rm R'\cdot COCl} + {\rm ROMgI} \longrightarrow {\rm R'\cdot CO_2R} + {\rm MgCII} \end{array}$$

Alkyl cyanides. Cyanogen (I molecule) reacts with a Grignard reagent (I molecule) to form an alkyl cyanide:

$$RMgX + C_2N_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot CN + Mg(CN) \cdot X$$

Alkyl cyanides are also formed, together with alkyl chloride, when a Grignard reagent (I molecule) is added to an ethereal solution of cyanogen chloride (I molecule); the latter should always be in excess, since the alkyl cyanide produced tends to react with the Grignard reagent (cf. aldehydes and esters):

$$\begin{array}{l} RMgCl + ClCN \longrightarrow R \cdot CN + MgCl_2 \\ RMgCl + ClCN \longrightarrow RCl + Mg(CN) \cdot Cl \end{array}$$

This reaction is probably the best method for preparing tertiary alkyl cyanides.

Only cyanogen chloride reacts to form an alkyl cyanide, and the best yield is obtained when the halogen atom in the Grignard reagent is chlorine. Cyanogen bromide and iodide react with Grignard reagents to form the alkyl bromide and iodide, respectively; no alkyl cyanide is formed at all (Coleman et al., 1928, 1929).

Primary amines. A primary amine is formed by the reaction between a Grignard reagent and chloramine:

$$RMgX + CINH_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot NH_2 + MgCIX$$

This is one of the best methods for preparing primary amines containing a tertiary alkyl group. The yields are usually low. This is not unexpected when we consider the very great reactivity of active hydrogen; in fact, it is surprising that we get any amine at all.

A much more satisfactory method for preparing pure primary amines is the reaction between O-methylhydroxylamine and a Grignard reagent

which may be either the alkyl-magnesium chloride or bromide, but not iodide (Brown and Jones, 1946):

$$2 \text{RMgCl} + \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \longrightarrow \text{R} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{MgCl} + \text{RH} + \text{Mg(OCH}_3) \cdot \text{Cl}$$
 
$$\xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} \text{R} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \quad (40-90\%)$$

This reaction is also applicable to the preparation of certain diamines (see also p. 360), e.g., cadaverine:

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{BrCH_2}\text{\cdot}(\operatorname{CH_2})_3\text{\cdot}\operatorname{CH_2Br} \xrightarrow{^{2\operatorname{Mg}}} \operatorname{BrMgCH_2}\text{\cdot}(\operatorname{CH_2})_3\text{\cdot}\operatorname{CH_2MgBr} \xrightarrow{^{(i)}\operatorname{CH_2}\cdot\operatorname{O·NH_2}} \\ \\ \operatorname{NH_2}\text{\cdot}\operatorname{CH_2}\text{\cdot}(\operatorname{CH_2})_3\text{\cdot}\operatorname{CH_2}\text{\cdot}\operatorname{NH_2} \end{array}$$

Primary amines may also be prepared by reducing the adducts formed between cyanides and Grignard reagents with lithium aluminium hydride (Pohland et al., 1953).

$$R \cdot CN + R'MgX \longrightarrow RR'C = NMgX \xrightarrow{\text{(i) LiAlH}_4} RR'CH \cdot NH_2 \quad (g.)$$

Organic-metallic and organo non-metallic compounds. These compounds may be prepared by interaction of a Grignard reagent and an inorganic halide, the former acting as an alkylating reagent. Some examples have already been mentioned, e.g., the alkyl-phosphines, arsines, and silanes; these are regarded as organic compounds of non-metallic elements. Examples of the formation of organo-metallic compounds are diethylmercury (from mercuric chloride) and the ethyl-tin compounds (from stannic bromide):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{HgCl}_2 + 2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{MgI} \longrightarrow (\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{Hg} + 2\text{MgCII} \\ \text{SnBr}_4 \xrightarrow{\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{MgI}} \rightarrow \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SnBr}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{C}_4\text{H}_5\text{MgI}} \rightarrow (\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{SnBr}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{C}_5\text{H}_5\text{MgI}} \rightarrow (\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_3\text{SnBr} \xrightarrow{\text{C}_5\text{H}_5\text{MgI}} \rightarrow (\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_4\text{Sn} \\ \text{A particularly interesting example is the factor of the first of the following states of the following states of the factor of$$

A particularly interesting example is the formation of tetraethyl-lead from lead dichloride:

$${}_{2}\mathrm{PbCl_{2}}+{}_{4}\mathrm{C_{2}H_{5}MgI}\longrightarrow (\mathrm{C_{2}H_{5})_{4}Pb}+\mathrm{Pb}+{}_{4}\mathrm{MgCII}$$

Alkyl iodides. Alkyl iodides are formed when a Grignard reagent—the alkyl-magnesium chloride or bromide—is treated with iodine:

$$RMgX + I_2 \longrightarrow RI + MgXI$$

This reaction provides a good method for preparing alkyl iodides from the corresponding chloride or bromide.

Thioalcohols. These may be prepared by the action of sulphur on a Grignard reagent:

$$RMgX + S \longrightarrow RSMgX \xrightarrow{H_0O} RSH$$

Sulphinic acids. When sulphur dioxide is passed into a well-cooled Grignard solution, a sulphinic acid (as its magnesium complex) is formed:

$$RMgX + S \bigcirc \longrightarrow R - S \bigcirc \longrightarrow R \cdot SO_2H$$

Dithioic acids. These may be prepared by the action of carbon disulphide on a Grignard reagent (cf. carboxylic and sulphinic acids):

Union of radicals. Some examples of joining two alkyl radicals together have been considered when dealing with the synthesis of hydrocarbons (p. 352). It has already been pointed out (p. 350) that the addition of a small amount of cobaltous chloride changes the reaction from ionic to free radical, and thereby leads to an abnormal reaction. This abnormal reaction, however, may be used with advantage to join together identical alkyl (or aryl) groups. Many metallic halides may be used, e.g., those of Cu, Ag, Co, Ni, Fe, etc. (see pp. 480, 698).

# ABNORMAL BEHAVIOUR OF GRIGNARD REAGENTS

In certain cases a Grignard reagent does not react with compounds containing a functional group which is normally capable of reaction. Generally, branching of the carbon chain near the functional group prevents reaction; the cause is probably the steric effect, e.g., methylmagnesium bromide or iodide does not react with hexamethylacetone, (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>C·CO·C(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>. It has also been found that if the Grignard reagent contains large alkyl groups, reaction may be prevented; e.g., methyl isopropyl ketone reacts with methylmagnesium iodide but not with tert.-butylmagnesium chloride. In other cases, abnormal reaction may take place, e.g., when isopropylmagnesium bromide is added to di-isopropyl ketone, the expected tertiary alcohol is not formed; instead, the secondary alcohol, di-isopropylcarbinol, is obtained, resulting from the reduction of the ketone:

$$(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{(CH}_3)_2\text{CHMgBr}} \rightarrow \\ (\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2 + \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2$$

This abnormal reaction of a Grignard reagent may be explained by a free-radical mechanism; we have seen (p.51) that one of the properties of a free radical is disproportionation. The reaction may therefore be formulated:

$$\begin{array}{c} [(\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH} -]_2\mathrm{C} = \mathrm{O} \, + \, (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CHMgBr} \longrightarrow \\ \\ [(\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH} -]_2\dot{\mathrm{C}} - \mathrm{OMgBr} \, + \, (\mathrm{CH_3})_2\dot{\mathrm{CH}} \longrightarrow \\ \\ [(\mathrm{CH_3})_2\mathrm{CH} -]_2\mathrm{CHOMgBr} \, + \, \mathrm{CH_3}\cdot\mathrm{CH}\dot{\mathrm{CH_2}} \end{array}$$

From the foregoing it can be seen that it is not possible to prepare a tertiary alcohol with more than two branched-chain alkyl groups by means of a Grignard reagent. On the other hand, tertiary alcohols containing three branched-chain alkyl groups may be prepared by means of alkyllithium compounds (Vavou and Colin, 1946), e.g.,

$$(CH_3)_2CH \cdot CO \cdot CH(CH_3)_2 + (CH_3)_2CHLi \longrightarrow [(CH_3)_2CH -]_3COLi \xrightarrow{H_4O} [(CH_3)_2CH -]_3COH + LiOH (53\%)$$

 $\alpha\beta\text{-}Unsaturated carbonyl compounds react with a Grignard reagent in the 1:2- or 1:4-positions (cf. p. 278):$ 

The 1:2-addition takes place by the carbonyl group undergoing the electromeric effect in the usual way:

$$-CH = CH - C \longrightarrow -CH = CH - CH = C \longrightarrow -CH = CH - CH = C \longrightarrow -CH = -CH = C \longrightarrow -CH = C \longrightarrow -CH = -CH = C \longrightarrow -CH = -CH = -C \longrightarrow -CH = -C \longrightarrow -CH = -CH = -C \longrightarrow -CH =$$

If R' is a hydrogen atom, then this compound rearranges to the aldehyde RR"CH—CH<sub>2</sub>·CHO (cf. vinyl alcohol). The 1:4-addition occurs due to the electromeric effect taking place in the conjugated chain:

$$-cH = cH - cH - cH = c - \bar{o}$$

Experiments have shown that the addition which takes place depends on the nature of the groups R, R' and R''. If R' = H, it appears that the addition is always 1:2- except when R'' is a t-alkyl group; in this case both 1:2- and 1:4-addition occur (Stevens, 1935). When R' is R or Ar, then either 1:2- or 1:4-addition occurs, or both may occur.

Vinyl halides form Grignard reagents when tetrahydrofuran is used as solvent. On the other hand, halides with halogen in the allyl position are very reactive, so much so, that coupling usually takes place; e.g., when allyl bromide is treated with magnesium in the presence of ether (the usual procedure for preparing a Grignard reagent), the main product is diallyl (hexat: 5-diene):

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm CH_2:CH\cdot CH_2Br+Mg\longrightarrow CH_2:CH\cdot CH_2MgBr}\\ {\rm CH_2:CH\cdot CH_2MgBr+CH_2:CH\cdot CH_2Br\longrightarrow}\\ {\rm CH_2:CH\cdot CH_2\cdot CH_2\cdot$$

It is possible, however, to prepare allylmagnesium bromide (in 95 per cent. yield) by adding a *very dilute* ethereal solution of allyl bromide to magnesium turnings.

If the halogen atom and the double bond are in positions other than the vinyl or allyl, the halide reacts normally to form the Grignard reagent.

In dihalides of the type  $XCH_2 \cdot (CH_2)_n \cdot CH_2 \times$ , if n = 0 (i.e., I:2-dihalide) and n = 1 (i.e., I:3-dihalide), no Grignard reagent is formed when treated with magnesium; instead, an "internal" Wurtz reaction takes place, e.g., ethylene bromide gives ethylene, and trimethylene bromide cyclopropane:

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm CH_2Br}\text{-}{\rm CH_2Br} + {\rm Mg} \longrightarrow {\rm CH_2}\text{-}{\rm CH_2} + {\rm MgBr_2} \\ {\rm CH_2Br}\text{-}{\rm CH_2}\text{-}{\rm CH_2Br} + {\rm Mg} \longrightarrow {\rm CH_2}\text{-}{\rm CH_2} + {\rm MgBr_2} \\ {\rm CH_2} \end{array}$$

If n=2 or more, the di-magnesium compound is obtained, but the yields are usually of the order of about 30 per cent., e.g., n=3:

$$BrCH_{2}\text{•}(CH_{2})_{3}\text{•}CH_{2}Br + 2Mg \longrightarrow BrMgCH_{2}\text{•}(CH_{2})_{3}\text{•}CH_{2}MgBr$$

# ALKYL-METALLIC COMPOUNDS

Alkyl derivatives of practically all the metals have been prepared. The organo-metallic compounds are named as the alkyl metal, e.g., (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>Hg,

dimethylmercury; (C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>4</sub>Pb, tetraethyl-lead. They are not generally isolated, but are used directly as intermediates, and their preparation is usually carried out in an atmosphere of nitrogen.

General methods of preparation. 1. By heating an alkyl halide with an

alloy, e.g., diethylmercury from ethyl iodide and sodium amalgam:

$$2C_2H_5I + Na_2/Hg \longrightarrow (C_2H_5)_2Hg + 2NaI$$

2. By the reaction between a Grignard reagent and a metallic halide, e.g.,

 $SnCl_4 + 4RMgX \longrightarrow R_4Sn + 4MgClX$ 

This method may be used to prepare the organo-compounds of those metals which have a lower electrode potential than magnesium. Generally, an organo-metallic compound may be prepared by the reaction between a dialkyl-metal of *higher* electrode potential and the chloride of a metal of *lower* electrode potential.

3. A metal of higher electrode potential generally reacts with the dialkyl-

metal of lower electrode potential, e.g.,

$$(C_2H_5)_2Hg + 2Na \longrightarrow 2C_2\overline{H}_5Na + Hg$$

Alkali group of metals. The organo-alkali compounds are generally best prepared by the action of the alkali metal on a dialkyl-mercury or zinc compound (method 3, above), e.g.,

$$(CH_3)_2Zn + 2K \longrightarrow 2C\overset{-}{H_3}\overset{+}{K} + Zn$$

Lithium compounds, however, are best prepared by heating an alkyl halide with lithium (Ziegler, 1930):

$$RX + 2Li \longrightarrow RLi + LiX$$

Alkyl chlorides are generally the most satisfactory; the iodides usually undergo the Wurtz reaction. On the other hand, aryl bromides and iodides give good yields of the lithium compound. Many organo-lithium compounds, however, cannot be prepared by this method, but may readily be prepared by the following exchange reaction ("indirect metalation"):

$$RLi + R'X \longrightarrow R'Li + RX$$

The most satisfactory radical (R) for this purpose is n-butyl. Another

important method is by metalation (see p. 539).

The alkyl sodium and potassium compounds are insoluble, colourless, highly reactive solids. They are electrovalent compounds, *i.e.*, salts. The lithium compounds are colourless liquids or readily fusible solids, and are covalent, *e.g.*, CH<sub>3</sub>·Li, but, according to the nature of the alkyl group, they may have partial ionic character, *e.g.*, *n*-butyl-lithium. Owing to their covalent nature, lithium compounds are more stable and less reactive than those of sodium and potassium.

An important organo-sodium compound is triphenylmethylsodium,  $(C_6H_5)_3C$ Na, which may be prepared by the action of sodamide on triphenylmethane in liquid ammonia solution:

$$(C_6H_5)_3CH + NaNH_2 \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_3\bar{C}\}Na + NH_3$$

It is a very good reagent for bringing about condensation reactions (see, e.g., p. 230).

From the practical point of view, lithium compounds are the most satisfactory to use in organic synthesis, since they are very easily prepared and, being covalent, dissolve in organic solvents. Generally speaking the lithium compounds (and those of sodium and potassium) behave like the Grignard reagents, but the lithium compounds are usually more reactive; e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} C_2H_5Li+H_2O \longrightarrow C_2H_6+LiOH \\ 3CH_3Li+AuBr_3 \longrightarrow (CH_3)_3Au+3LiBr \end{array}$$

With carbon dioxide a good yield of ketone is obtained:

$$RLi + CO_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot C \xrightarrow{O}_{OLi} \xrightarrow{RLi} R_2 C \xrightarrow{OLi} \xrightarrow{H_2O} R_2 CO$$

A ketone is also the main product when a carboxylic acid is used as starting material:

$$R \cdot C \bigvee_{OH}^{O} \xrightarrow{R'Li} R \cdot C \bigvee_{OLi}^{O} \xrightarrow{R'Li} R \cdot C \bigvee_{OLi}^{OLi} \xrightarrow{H_{\bullet}O} R \cdot CO \cdot R'$$

Lithium compounds also react with aldehydes and ketones to give alcohols in better yields than with Grignard reagents.

According to Swain et al. (1950), the addition of organolithium compounds to carbonyl compounds proceeds as follows:

$$R_2C\!\!=\!\!O+Li\!\!-\!\!R\longrightarrow R_2C\!\!-\!\!O\!\!-\!\!Li\longrightarrow R_2C\!\!-\!\!O\!\!-\!\!Li$$

Some authors believe that Grignard reagents also behave in this way (cf. p. 349).

The main difference between lithium compounds and Grignard reagents is that the former can add on to the C=C grouping, e.g., Ziegler et al. (1950) have shown that n-butyl-lithium adds on to ethylene under high pressure, and that after the addition of formaldehyde a mixture of alcohols ( $C_7$ — $C_{13}$ ) is obtained, e.g.,

This offers a means of stepping up a series.

It should also be noted that lithium forms lithium alkenyls with various vinyl halides. This offers a means of preparing unsaturated compounds such as alcohols, ketones and acids. Lithium acetylides may also be prepared and used in synthetic work.

Copper group of metals (copper, silver and gold). The alkyl derivatives of the copper group are best prepared by the reaction between a Grignard reagent and the metal halide, e.g.,

$$RMgX + CuI \longrightarrow R-Cu + MgXI$$

Their most characteristic reaction is their ready decomposition, which possibly takes place via the formation of free radicals, e.g.,

$$CH_3$$
— $Cu \longrightarrow CH_3$  +  $Cu$   
 $2CH_3$  ·  $\longrightarrow C_2H_6$ 

Organo-zinc compounds. The dialkyl-zinc compounds were the first organo-metallic compounds to be prepared; they were discovered by Frankland (1849) in an attempt to prepare the ethyl radical by removing iodine from ethyl iodide by means of zinc. The alkyl iodide is heated with zinc in an atmosphere of carbon dioxide, and the product, alkyl-zinc iodide, is distilled in an atmosphere of carbon dioxide:

$$RI + Zn \longrightarrow R - Zn - I$$

$${}_{2}RZnI \longrightarrow R_{2}Zn + ZnI_{2}$$

The yield of dialkyl-zinc may be increased by carrying out the distillation in vacuo (50–90 per cent.). Krug et al. (1954) have shown that the dialkylzincs are best prepared by reaction between an alkyl bromide or iodide and a zinc-copper couple prepared by heating a mixture of zinc dust and cupric acetate.

The alkyl-zinc compounds are volatile liquids, spontaneously inflammable in air (hence the necessity to use an atmosphere of carbon dioxide in their preparation). They have an unpleasant smell, and burn the skin. The alkyl-zinc compounds have been used in various synthetic reactions (they behave like the Grignard reagents), but owing to the difficulty in handling them, and because better synthetic reagents are known, e.g., the Grignard reagent, the use of the alkyl-zinc compounds is restricted to three synthetic preparations:

(i) Preparation of hydrocarbons containing a quaternary carbon atom; e.g., neopentane may be prepared by the action of dimethylzinc on tert.-butyl chloride:

$$(CH_3)_3CC1 + (CH_3)_2Zn \longrightarrow (CH_3)_4C + CH_3ZnC1$$
 (25-51%)

Apparently dialkyl-zinc compounds do not react with primary or secondary alkyl halides.

(ii) Preparation of ketones. Alkyl-zinc compounds react with acyl chlorides to form ketones:

$$R \cdot COCl + R_2'Zn \longrightarrow R \cdot CO \cdot R' + R'ZnCl \quad (g.-v.g.)$$

The success of this method depends on the fact that the ketone can be isolated in good yield because dialkyl-zinc compounds react very slowly with ketones (cf. Grignard reagent, p. 355). Even so, the dialkyl cadmium compounds are replacing the zinc compounds in the preparation of ketones (see below). An alkyl-zinc chloride may be prepared by reaction between a Grignard reagent and zinc chloride:

$$RMgX + ZnCl_2 \longrightarrow RZnCl + MgClX$$

Jones (1947) used these compounds to prepare long-chain fatty acids (cf. p. 231). He prepared a keto-ester by reaction between an alkyl-zinc chloride and the acid chloride-ester derivative of a dicarboxylic acid, and reduced the keto-ester by the Clemmensen method:

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_{3}}\text{`}(\mathrm{CH_{2}})_{x}\mathrm{ZnCl} + \mathrm{Cl}\text{`}\mathrm{CO}\text{`}(\mathrm{CH_{2}})_{y}\text{`}\mathrm{CO}_{2}\mathrm{C}_{2}\mathrm{H}_{5} \longrightarrow \\ \mathrm{CH_{3}}\text{`}(\mathrm{CH_{2}})_{x}\text{`}\mathrm{CO}\text{`}(\mathrm{CH_{2}})_{y}\text{`}\mathrm{CO}_{2}\mathrm{C}_{2}\mathrm{H}_{5} + \mathrm{ZnCl_{2}} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Zn/Hg}} \\ \mathrm{CH_{3}}\text{`}(\mathrm{CH_{2}})_{x}\text{`}\mathrm{CH_{2}}\text{`}(\mathrm{CH_{2}})_{y}\text{`}\mathrm{CO}_{2}\mathrm{C}_{2}\mathrm{H}_{5} \end{array} (76-92\%)$$

(iii) The Reformatsky reaction (1887). The Reformatsky reaction is the reaction between an  $\alpha$ -bromoacid ester and a carbonyl compound (aldehyde, ketone or ester) in the presence of zinc to form a  $\beta$ -hydroxy-ester. The

reaction is best carried out by adding zinc to a mixture of bromoacid ester and carbonyl compound, and then warming. According to Dippy et al. (1951), the Reformatsky reaction proceeds as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R}\cdot\text{CHBr}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{Zn} \Longrightarrow \text{Br}\cdot\text{Zn}\cdot\text{CHR}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5} \\ \text{(i)} \ \ R'_2\text{C} = \text{O} + \text{Br}\cdot\text{Zn}\cdot\text{CHR}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \longrightarrow R'_2\text{C}(\text{OZnBr})\cdot\text{CHR}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5} \\ \xrightarrow{\text{dilute}} \ \ R'_2\text{C}(\text{OH})\cdot\text{CHR}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{ZnBrX} \\ \beta\text{-hydroxy-ester} \\ \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5 & \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \text{(ii)} \ \ \text{Br}\cdot\text{Zn}\cdot\text{CHR}\cdot\text{C} + \text{Br}\cdot\text{Zn}\cdot\text{CHR}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \longrightarrow \text{Br}\cdot\text{Zn}\cdot\text{CHR}\cdot\text{C}\cdot\text{C}\cdot\text{CHR}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5} \\ \xrightarrow{\text{OZnBr}} & \text{OZnBr} \\ \xrightarrow{\text{dilute}} \ \ \ \text{R}\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{CHR}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH} + 2\text{ZnBrX} \\ \end{array}$$

Which of the two reactions predominates depends on the structure of the carbonyl compound. If this is a ketone and the two R' groups are very large, i.e., the carbonyl group is sterically hindered, the main reaction proceeds via (ii). When the carbonyl compound is an aldehyde (one R'=H), the main reaction proceeds via (i).

A few cases of β-haloesters undergoing the Reformatsky reaction are

known, but the yields are low.

The preparation of a Grignard reagent from a bromoacid ester is not practical, since the organo-magnesium compound formed immediately reacts with the ester group of a second molecule.

Organo-cadmium compounds. Dialkyl-cadmium compounds may be

prepared by the action of a Grignard reagent on cadmium chloride:

$$2RMgX + CdCl_2 \longrightarrow R_2Cd + 2MgClX$$

These compounds may be used to prepare simple ketones or polyfunctional compounds containing a keto-group. The reaction is carried out by treating an acyl chloride with dialkyl-cadmium, the yield being as high as 98 per cent. (better than with dialkyl-zinc). The high yields of ketone are due to the fact that dialkyl-cadmium compounds show very little tendency to react with a carbonyl group (but see below):

$$2R \cdot COCl + R'_2Cd \longrightarrow 2R \cdot CO \cdot R' + CdCl_2$$

This ketone synthesis may be used to synthesise long-chain fatty acids as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R} \boldsymbol{\cdot} (\text{CH}_2)_x \text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{(ii) MBr}} [\text{R} \boldsymbol{\cdot} (\text{CH}_2)_x]_2 \text{Cd} \xrightarrow{\text{COCI-(CH}_2)_y \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5} \\ \\ \text{R} \boldsymbol{\cdot} (\text{CH}_2)_x \boldsymbol{\cdot} \text{CO} \boldsymbol{\cdot} (\text{CH}_2)_y \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{Zn/Hg}} \text{R} \boldsymbol{\cdot} (\text{CH}_2)_x \boldsymbol{\cdot} \text{CH}_2 \boldsymbol{\cdot} (\text{CH}_2)_y \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \end{array}$$

Syntheses with organocadmium compounds have always been carried out with the cadmium compounds prepared in situ (see above). Kollonitsch (1960) has shown that pure dimethylcadmium does not react with benzoyl chloride. This author believes that the successful use of organocadmium compounds requires a "salt effect", and has shown that magnesium salts generated in the preparation of the organocadmium compounds had this effect. It was also shown that organocadmium compounds react with aldehydes in the presence of magnesium salts to give secondary alcohols.

Organo-mercury compounds. Dialkyl-mercury compounds are best prepared by the reaction between a Grignard reagent and mercuric chloride:

$$2RMgX + HgCl_2 \longrightarrow R_2Hg + 2MgClX$$

They are poisonous liquids, not spontaneously inflammable in air; they are not decomposed by water, but are by dilute acids (cf. magnesium and

zinc compounds).

An important reaction involving the use of mercury is mercuration. This process is the introduction of a mercuri-acid group, of which the commonest is the acetoxy-mercuri group, —HgO·CO·CH<sub>3</sub>. Mercuration has some interesting applications in aromatic chemistry, and will be discussed later (p. 539).

Organo-lead compounds. The only organo-lead compound which is important is tetraethyl-lead. This is prepared industrially by heating

ethyl chloride with a sodium alloy under pressure:

$$4C_2H_5Cl + 4Na/Pb \longrightarrow (C_2H_5)_4Pb + 3Pb + 4NaCl$$

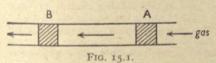
Tetraethyl-lead is a liquid, b.p. about 200°, insoluble in water but soluble in ether. It is used for raising the octane number of petrol (see p. 57). To prevent lead being deposited in the cylinder head when such "doped" petrol is used (r part tetraethyl-lead per thousand parts petrol), a small amount of ethylene bromide is added. The lead is thereby converted into lead dibromide, which is sufficiently volatile to be removed with the exhaust gases.

Tetramethyl- and tetraethyl-lead have been used by Paneth and his co-workers (1929, 1931) to prepare free methyl and ethyl radicals. The vapour of the tetra-alkyl-lead in a stream of hydrogen or nitrogen, under reduced pressure (1-2 mm.), was carried through a tube (gas velocity about

10-15 metres per sec.) heated at a point A (Fig. 1) to 600-800°:

$$R_4Pb \longrightarrow 4R^{\bullet} + Pb$$

The decomposition into lead was shown by the deposition of a lead mirror at point A. The presence of free methyl or ethyl radicals was shown by



the disappearance of a lead mirror previously deposited at a point B farther along the tube and kept at room temperature; hydrocarbons do not attack lead. If the distance between A and B was greater than

32 cm., the mirror at B did not disappear. This showed that the free alkyl radicals have a very short life; calculations based on experiment have shown that their half life period is about 0.006 sec.

Free radicals. There are two types of free radicals, long-life and short-life free radicals. The former are stabilised by resonance (see p. 703), whereas the latter exist only as reactive intermediates in reactions.

The removal of metallic mirrors is now a well-established technique for the detection and identification of free radicals produced in the decomposition of organic compounds. The rate of removal of the mirrors is usually followed photometrically, the opacity of the mirror being matched against that of a standard. This procedure has been modified by measuring the electrical conductivity of the mirror (Whittingham, 1947).

Thermal decomposition is a general method for producing free radicals in the gaseous phase. Another general method (for producing free radicals in the gaseous phase or in solution) is photochemical decomposition. Thus photolysis of tetramethyl-lead, dimethylmercury, and dimethylzinc gives

rise to free methyl radicals; e.g., Leighton and Mortensen (1936) showed that a mirror of radioactive lead was attacked by a stream of tetramethyllead vapour which had been irradiated. Photolysis of alkyl iodides produces free alkyl radicals and iodine atoms, e.g., West (1935) showed that the photochemical decomposition products of methyl iodide converted para hydrogen (the two nuclei have opposite spins) into ortho hydrogen (parallel spins). Free radicals can often be detected by the conversion of para hydrogen into ortho. They may also often be detected by combination with nitric oxide (see p. 703). The method of paramagnetic resonance is also being used to detect and measure free-radical concentrations (inter alia, Ingram et al., 1954).

When the light-irradiation time is extremely short, and examination of the reactive free radicals is rapidly carried out before they have a chance to disappear, the process is known as flash photolysis. An alternative method is to carry out the experiment under conditions where the free radicals have a long life-time. In this case, the radicals are known frozen free radicals, and one method of preparation is in solution in a rigid unreactive medium at low temperature; under these conditions the free radicals cannot diffuse together and react. A widely used medium is a mixture of ether, ethanol, and isopentane cooled in liquid nitrogen.

Other methods for preparing free radicals (in the gaseous phase or in solution) are by the action of a metal on a halide (see, e.g., p. 703), or the catalytic effect of certain compounds, notably organic peroxides (see, e.g., p. 68). Free radicals may also be formed in solution during electrolysis (p. 52); their formation has been used to explain the course of electrolysis in many cases.

The reactions of free radicals may be classified into three groups:

(i) Inter-radical reactions in which the radicals combine or undergo disproportionation, e.g.,

$$C_4H_{10} \longleftarrow 2C_2H_5 \stackrel{\bullet}{\longrightarrow} C_2H_6 + C_2H_4$$

(ii) Radical decomposition, e.g.,

$$CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot + CH_2 = CH_2$$

The tendency for a free radical to decompose into a smaller radical increases with increase in chain-length. The free methyl radical is stable up to 1000°. The free ethyl radical is not so stable, and radicals higher than ethyl readily decompose into methyl or ethyl radicals and an olefin.

(iii) Radical-molecule reactions. Examples of this type are: (a) displacement

reactions, e.g.,

$$R^{\bullet} + HBr \longrightarrow RH + Br^{\bullet}$$

(b) Radical induced polymerisations; these are chain reactions and involve addition to a multiple bond (see p. 78).

The configuration of alkyl free-radicals is not certain. Herzberg et al. (1956) have examined the spectra of CH3 and CD3, and have concluded that in the ground state the radical deviates slightly from a planar configuration, whereas it is planar in all observed excited states.

## QUESTIONS

1. Write an account of the preparation of Grignard reagents and discuss their structure.

2. Give examples of the use of a Grignard reagent in preparing: -(a) a saturated hydrocarbon, (b) an unsaturated hydrocarbon, (c) a primary alcohol, (d) a secondary alcohol, (e) a tertiary alcohol, (f) an ether, (g) an aldehyde, (h) a ketone, (i) a carboxylic acid, (j) an ester, (k) a cyanide, (l) a primary amine, (m) an organo-metallic compound.

3. Show, by means of equations, how you would convert n-BuOH into:—(a) n-AmOH,

(b) hexan-2-ol, (c) heptan-1-ol, (d) di-n-Bu carbinol, (e) 3-methylheptan-3-ol.

4. Suggest a synthesis for each of the following:—(a) Me<sub>2</sub>CBr·CH<sub>2</sub>Br, (b) Et<sub>2</sub>CCl·Me, (c) Me<sub>2</sub>·CH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>3</sub>, (d) CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CHBr·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>3</sub>, (e) Me<sub>2</sub>CH·CHOH·CH<sub>2</sub>·Me, (f) MeEtisoPrCOH, (g) (Me<sub>2</sub>CH)<sub>3</sub>COH.

5. Starting with AcOH, MeOH and EtOH and any inorganic material you think

necessary, show how you would synthesise:—(a) Me<sub>2</sub>CH·C(OH)Me<sub>2</sub>,

(b) EtCHMe·CHBr·Me, (c) Me<sub>3</sub>C·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (d) Et<sub>2</sub>C(OH)·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, (e) CH<sub>3</sub>·CHOH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>Et, (f) CH<sub>2</sub>Cl·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO·CH<sub>3</sub>.

6. Describe the preparation and properties of:—(a) EtNa, (b) (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>3</sub>CNa, (c) EtLi, (d) Me<sub>2</sub>Zn, (e) Et<sub>2</sub>Cd, (f) Me<sub>2</sub>Hg, (g) Et<sub>4</sub>Pb.
7. Define and give examples of:—(a) The Zerewitinoff active hydrogen determination,

(b) the steric effect, (c) the Reformatsky reaction, (d) mercuration.

8. Write an account of the preparation and properties of the free alkyl radicals.

### READING REFERENCES

Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1942, 2nd ed.). Vol. I, Ch. 5. Organometallic Compounds.

Lehman and Basch, The Determination of Active Hydrogen, Ind. Eng. Chem. (Anal.

Ed.), 1945, 17, 428.

Organic Reactions, Wiley (i) Vol. I (1942), Ch. 1. The Reformatsky Reaction.

(ii) Vol. VI (1951), Ch. 7. The Halogen-Metal Interconversion with Organolithium Compounds.

(iii) Vol. VIII (1954), Ch. 2. The Synthesis of Ketones from Acid Halides and Organo-metallic Compounds of Magnesium, Zinc, and Cadmium.

(iv) Vol. VIII (1954), Ch. 6. The Metalation Reaction with Organo-lithium Compounds.

Cook (Ed.), Progress in Organic Chemistry, Butterworth. Vol. III (1955), Ch. 4. Organic Compounds of Lithium.

Benkeser, Foster, and Sauve, Metalations with Organosodium Compounds, Chem. Reviews, 1957, 57, 867.

Kollonitsch, True Reactivity of Organocadmium Compounds, Nature, 1960, 188, 140. Dippy and Parkins, An Investigation of the Course of the Reformatsky Reaction,

ibid., 1951, 1570. Kharasch and Reinmuth, Grignard Reactions of Non-metallic Substances, Constable (1954).

Coates, Organo-Metallic Compounds, Methuen (2nd ed. 1960).

Leeper, Organo-Lead Compounds, *Chem. Reviews*, 1954, 54, 101.

Millar and Heaney, Grignard and Organolithium Reagents Derived from Dihalogen

Compounds, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1957, 11, 109.

Long, The Fate of Methyl Radicals in the Mechanism of Thermal Decomposition of

Metal Alkyls, J.C.S., 1956, 3410.
Rochow, Hurd, and Lewis, The Chemistry of Organometallic Compounds, Wiley (1957).

Zeiss (Ed.), Organometallic Chemistry, Reinhold (1960).

Advances in Inorganic Chemistry and Radiochemistry, Vol. 2 (1960). Eisch and Gilman,

Organometallic Compounds, p. 61.

Advances in Organic Chemistry, Vol. 2 (1960), Normant, Alkenylmagnesium Halides, p. 1.

Waters, The Chemistry of the Free Radicals, Oxford Press (1946).

Bawn, The Structure and Reactivity of Free Radicals, J.C.S., 1949, 1042.

Walling, Free Radicals in Solution, Wiley (1957).
Warhurst, The Sodium "Flame" Reactions, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1951, 5, 44.
Trotman-Dickenson, The Reactions of Methyl Radicals, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.),

1953, 7, 198.
Whiffen, Electron Resonance Spectroscopy of Free Radicals, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1958, 12, 250.

Tedder, The Interaction of Free Radicals with Saturated Aliphatic Compounds, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1960, 14, 336.

## SATURATED DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS

THE general formula of the saturated dicarboxylic acids is  $C_nH_{2n}(CO_2H)_2$ (n = o for oxalic acid), and the best-known examples are those which have the two carboxyl groups at the opposite ends of the carbon chain.

Nomenclature. The dicarboxylic acids are commonly known by names which indicate their source, e.g., CO2H·CO2H oxalic acid; this occurs in plants of the oxalis group (for further examples, see the individual acids).

In this trivial system of nomenclature, the positions of side-chains or

substituents are indicated by Greek letters, e.g., CO<sub>2</sub>H·CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CHCl·CO<sub>2</sub>H α-chloro-α'-methyladipic acid.

According to the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature, the class suffix is -dioic, e.g.,

CO<sub>2</sub>H·CO<sub>2</sub>H ethanedioic acid CO2H·CH2·CO2H propanedioic acid CO<sub>2</sub>H·CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)·CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H 2: 3-dimethylpentanedioic acid

When this method leads to cumbrous names, the alternative scheme is to regard the carboxyl group as a substituent, and the name of the acid is then obtained by adding the suffix carboxylic acid, e.g.,

> CO2H·CH2·CH2·CO2H I: 2-ethanedicarboxylic acid or ethane-I: 2dicarboxylic acid

General methods of preparation. 1. By the oxidation of diprimary glycols, e.g., ethylene glycol gives oxalic acid:

$$CH_2OH \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{[O]} CO_2H \cdot CO_2H$$

This method is not important, since the higher polymethylene glycols are inaccessible; in fact they are usually prepared from dicarboxylic acids (see p. 254).

2. By treating halogen derivatives of monocarboxylic acid esters with

silver or zinc, e.g., ethyl bromoacetate gives ethyl succinate:

dibromide:

 $2CH_2Br \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + 2Ag \longrightarrow C_2H_5O_2C \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + 2AgBr \quad (p.)$ 3. The cyanide synthesis of dicarboxylic acids is a very useful method; the starting material may be either a halogeno-acid or a polymethylene

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \text{(i)} & \operatorname{CH_2Cl \cdot CO_2H} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{KCN}} \operatorname{CH_2CN \cdot CO_2H} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{H_4O}} \operatorname{CH_2(CO_2H)_2} \\ \text{(ii)} & \operatorname{CH_2Br} & \xrightarrow{\operatorname{KCN}} & \xrightarrow{\operatorname{CH_2 \cdot CN}} & \xrightarrow{\operatorname{H_4O}} & \operatorname{CH_2 \cdot CO_2H} \\ & \operatorname{CH_2Br} & \xrightarrow{\operatorname{CH_2 \cdot CN}} & \xrightarrow{\operatorname{CH_2 \cdot CO_2H}} & \end{array}$$

4. The Crum-Brown and Walker electrolytic method (1891, 1893). This is the electrolysis of an aqueous solution of the potassium alkyl esters of the dicarboxylic acids (cf. Kolbe's method):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{K} - \text{O}_2\text{C} - \text{(CH}_2)_n - \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \text{K} - \text{O}_2\text{C} - \text{(CH}_2)_n - \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ & \text{(CH}_2)_n \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ & \text{(CH}_2)_n \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ & \text{(CH}_2)_n \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array} + 2\text{CO}_2 + 2\text{KOH} + \text{H}_2 \quad (\textit{f.g.-g.}) \end{array}$$

It is obvious that this method can be used to prepare only *even* homologues.

5. Dicarboxylic acids may be prepared by the acetoacetic ester synthesis

(p. 231) and better, by the malonic ester synthesis (p. 233).

6. Several dicarboxylic acids may be prepared by the oxidation of unsaturated acids which occur in natural oils and fats, e.g., oleic acid gives nonoic and azelaic acids:

$$\text{CH}_3 \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_{\textbf{7}} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_{\textbf{7}} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{HNO}_3} \text{CH}_3 \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_{\textbf{7}} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} + \\ \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_{\textbf{7}} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H}$$

7. Cyclic ketones may be oxidised to dicarboxylic acids, e.g., cyclo-hexanone gives adipic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{H}_2\text{C} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2} \text{CO} \xrightarrow{\text{HNO}_3} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_4 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$$

8. The preparation of higher homologues from lower homologues may be carried out in several ways; which method is used depends on the homologue desired. Many *even* higher homologues can be prepared by the Crum-Brown and Walker method (method 4). Any dicarboxylic acid can be "stepped up" by two carbon atoms as follows:

$$(\operatorname{CH}_2)_n(\operatorname{CO}_2\operatorname{C}_2\operatorname{H}_5)_2 \xrightarrow{\operatorname{Na/C}_2\operatorname{H}_6\operatorname{OH}} (\operatorname{CH}_2)_n(\operatorname{CH}_2\operatorname{OH})_2 \xrightarrow{\operatorname{HBr}} \\ (\operatorname{CH}_2)_n(\operatorname{CH}_2\operatorname{Br})_2 \xrightarrow{\operatorname{KCN}} (\operatorname{CH}_2)_n(\operatorname{CH}_2\text{-}\operatorname{CN})_2 \xrightarrow{\operatorname{H}_2\operatorname{O}} (\operatorname{CH}_2)_n(\operatorname{CH}_2\text{-}\operatorname{CO}_2\operatorname{H})_2$$

By using malonic ester instead of potassium cyanide, the acid may be "stepped up" by four carbon atoms:

$$\begin{array}{c} (\mathrm{CH_2})_n (\mathrm{CH_2Br})_2 + 2[\mathrm{CH}(\mathrm{CO_2C_2H_5})_2]^{-}\mathrm{Na}^{+} \longrightarrow \\ 2\mathrm{NaBr} + (\mathrm{CH_2})_n [\mathrm{CH_2\cdot CH}(\mathrm{CO_2C_2H_5})_2]_2 \xrightarrow{\text{(i) KOH}} \\ (\mathrm{CH_2})_n [\mathrm{CH_2\cdot CH}(\mathrm{CO_2H})_2]_2 \xrightarrow{150^{-}200^{\circ}} \to (\mathrm{CH_2})_n (\mathrm{CH_2\cdot CH_2\cdot CO_2H})_2 + 2\mathrm{CO_2} \end{array}$$

Alkylation of t-butyl esters of acetic acid with various organic mono- and dihalides has been effected with lithium or sodium amide in liquid ammonia. Hydrolysis gives the mono- or dicarboxylic acid (Sisido et al., 1959), e.g.,

$$CH_{2}Br \cdot CH_{2}Br + 2CH_{3} \cdot CO_{2}C_{4}H_{9} \xrightarrow{LiNH_{4}}$$

$$(CH_{2})_{4}(CO_{2}C_{4}H_{9})_{2} \xrightarrow{hydrolysis} CO_{2}H \cdot (CH_{2})_{4} \cdot CO_{2}H \quad (33\%)$$

These higher homologues are used to prepare large carbon-ring compounds

General properties. All the dicarboxylic acids are crystalline solids, the lower members being soluble in water, the solubility decreasing with increase in molecular weight; the odd acids are more soluble than the even. None is steam volatile, and the solubility in ether increases with increase in molecular weight. Except for oxalic acid, the dicarboxylic acids are stable towards oxidising agents. Their melting points follow the oscillation rule (p. 176), the even acids having higher melting points than the odd. They dissociate in two steps, the dissociation constant of the first being much greater than that of the second. Furthermore, the acid strength of the dicarboxylic acids decreases as the series is ascended.

The reactions of the dicarboxylic acids depend, to a large extent, on the length of the carbon chain. The dicarboxylic acids, therefore, will be

described individually.

Oxalic acid (ethanedioic acid), CO<sub>2</sub>H·CO<sub>2</sub>H, is one of the most important dicarboxylic acids. It occurs in rhubarb, in sorrel and other plants of the oxalis group (hence its name). Oxalic acid is one of the final products of oxidation of many organic compounds, e.g., sugars, starch, etc., give oxalic

acid when oxidised with concentrated nitric acid.

Preparation. (i) An industrial method which is now almost obsolete is to heat saw-dust with a mixture of sodium and potassium hydroxides in iron pans at 200–220° in air. On cooling, the mass is extracted with water and the aqueous solution treated with a calcium hydroxide solution. The calcium oxalate, which is precipitated, is collected by filtration and then decomposed by the calculated quantity of dilute sulphuric acid. The precipitated calcium sulphate is filtered off, and the filtrate evaporated to crystallisation; oxalic acid dihydrate crystallises out.

(ii) Oxalic acid is now prepared industrially by heating sodium formate

rapidly to 360.°

$$_2\text{H-CO}_2\text{Na} \longrightarrow (\text{CO}_2\text{Na})_2 + \text{H}_2$$

The free acid is obtained from its sodium salt by the procedure described in method (i)

in method (i).

(iii) The usual laboratory method for preparing oxalic acid is to oxidise sucrose with concentrated nitric acid in the presence of vanadium pentoxide as catalyst:

$$C_{12}H_{22}O_{11} + 18[O] \xrightarrow{HNO_3} 6(CO_2H)_2 + 5H_2O$$
 (25%)

(iv) Oxalic acid may be prepared by the hydrolysis of cyanogen, the hydrolysis being best carried out with concentrated hydrochloric acid:

$$\mathrm{C_2N_2} + _4\mathrm{H_2O} + _2\mathrm{HCl} \longrightarrow (\mathrm{CO_2H})_2 + _2\mathrm{NH_4Cl}$$

(v) An interesting synthesis of oxalic acid is to heat sodium in a stream of carbon dioxide at 360°:

 $2CO_2 + 2Na \longrightarrow (CO_2Na)_2$ 

Properties and reactions. Oxalic acid crystallises from water as colourless crystals with two molecules of water of crystallisation; the melting point of the hydrate is 101.5°; that of the anhydrous acid is 189.5°. Oxalic acid is poisonous, soluble in water and ethanol but almost insoluble in ether. The dihydrate loses water when heated at 100–105°, and when heated at about 200°, oxalic acid decomposes into carbon dioxide, carbon monoxide, formic acid and water:

$$\begin{array}{l} (\mathrm{CO_2H})_2 \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2} + \mathrm{H}\text{\cdot}\mathrm{CO_2H} \\ (\mathrm{CO_2H})_2 \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2} + \mathrm{CO} + \mathrm{H_2O} \end{array}$$

The anhydrous acid is conveniently obtained by heating the hydrate with carbon tetrachloride.

When heated with concentrated sulphuric acid at 90°, oxalic acid is decomposed:

$$(CO_2H)_2 \xrightarrow{H_1SO_4} CO + CO_2 + H_2O$$

It is oxidised by permanganate to carbon dioxide:

$$(CO_2H)_2 + [O] \longrightarrow 2CO_2 + H_2O$$

It is only very slowly oxidised by concentrated nitric acid. When fused with potassium hydroxide, it evolves hydrogen:

$$(CO_2K)_2 + 2KOH \longrightarrow 2K_2CO_3 + H_2$$

The anhydride of oxalic acid is unknown. When anhydrous oxalic acid is refluxed with ethanol, ethyl oxalate is formed:

$$(CO_2H)_2 + 2C_2H_5OH \longrightarrow (CO_2C_2H_5)_2 + 2H_2O$$
 (80-90%)

A more general method for preparing diesters is to heat a mixture of the dicarboxylic acid, alcohol, toluene and concentrated sulphuric acid. Sulphuric acid is the catalyst, and the toluene removes the water by forming a ternary azeotrope of alcohol, water and toluene; the yield of diester is 94–98 per cent. from oxalic to sebacic acid. The esterification may be carried out in the absence of toluene; a larger amount of sulphuric acid is required and the yields are lower (70–90 per cent.).

The ethyl and propyl esters of oxalic acid are liquid; the methyl ester is solid, and hence has been used to prepare pure methanol by hydrolysis with sodium hydroxide solution. Ethyl oxalate undergoes the Claisen condensation with esters containing two α-hydrogen atoms to form keto-esters,

e.g., with ethyl acetate, oxalacetic ester is formed:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_2H_5O_2C \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + CH_3 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{C_2H_5ONa \text{ in} \atop \text{ethanol}} \\ CH \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 & CH_3 \cdot CO_2H \atop ||C(ONa) \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 & CO \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \\ CO \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 & CO \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \end{array} \tag{60-70\%}$$

When oxalic acid is heated with ethylene glycol, the cyclic compound, ethylene oxalate, is obtained:

$$\text{HOCH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \text{OH} + \text{HO}_2 \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \longrightarrow \text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2 - \text{CH}_2} \text{O} + 2 \text{H}_2 \text{O}$$

This reaction is characteristic of oxalic acid; the other dicarboxylic acids usually react with glycol to form polyesters (see p. 374). When oxalic acid is heated with glycerol, formic acid (p. 180) or allyl alcohol (p. 267) is obtained according to the conditions.

Oxalic acid forms the diamide, oxamide. This may be prepared by shaking

ethyl oxalate with concentrated ammonium hydroxide solution:

$$\mathrm{C_2H_5O_2C \cdot CO_2C_2H_5} + 2\mathrm{NH_3} \longrightarrow \mathrm{NH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CO \cdot NH_2} + 2\mathrm{C_2H_5OH}$$

It may also be prepared by passing cyanogen into cold concentrated hydrochloric acid:

$$C_0N_2 + 2H_2O \xrightarrow{HCI} (CO\cdot NH_2)_2$$
 (50%)

Oxamide exists as white needles, almost insoluble in water. In aqueous solution it slowly changes into ammonium oxalate, a change which is brought about rapidly by hydrochloric acid (on warming):

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm CO\cdot NH_2} \\ | \\ {\rm CO\cdot NH_2} \\ + \ 2{\rm H_2O} \\ \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} {\rm CO_2NH_4} \\ | \\ {\rm CO_2NH_4} \end{array}$$

When heated with phosphorus pentoxide, oxamide is dehydrated to cyanogen:

$$(\text{CO-NH}_2)_2 \xrightarrow{P_3O_3} C_2N_2 + 2H_2O$$

The monoamide of oxalic acid is also known. It is called oxamic acid; the suffix of the names of all the monoamides of the dicarboxylic acids is

-amic. Oxamic acid, m.p. 210°, may be prepared by the action of concentrated ammonium hydroxide solution on ethyl hydrogen oxalate, or by

heating ammonium hydrogen oxalate.

When reduced with zinc and sulphuric acid, oxalic acid forms glycollic acid, CH<sub>2</sub>OH·CO<sub>2</sub>H. Electrolytic reduction with a lead cathode gives glycollic and glyoxylic acids, the latter being obtained in better yield by reducing oxalic acid with magnesium and sulphuric acid.

When oxalic acid is treated with excess phosphorus pentachloride, oxalyl

chloride, b.p. 64°, is formed:

$$(CO_2H)_2 \xrightarrow{PCl_s} (COCI)_2 \quad (f.-g.)$$

If an excess of phosphorus pentachloride is not used, oxalic acid is decomposed, possibly via the intermediate formation of the half acid chloride:

$$(\mathrm{CO_2H})_2 \xrightarrow{\mathrm{PCl_s}} [\mathrm{CO_2H \cdot COCl}] \longrightarrow \mathrm{CO_2} + \mathrm{CO} + \mathrm{HCl}$$

Paraffins can be carboxylated by oxalyl chloride under the influence of light (Kharasch and Brown, 1942):

$$RH + (COCI)_2 \longrightarrow R \cdot COCI + CO + HCI$$

Oxalic acid forms two series of salts, the normal,  $(CO_2M)_2$ , and the acid,  $CO_2H \cdot CO_2M$  (M = univalent metal). Some acid salts crystallise with a molecule of free oxalic acid, e.g.,  $CO_2K \cdot CO_2H \cdot (CO_2H)_2 \cdot 2H_2O$ ; these are known as *tetroxalates*, and the potassium compound is used as a standard for bases and oxidising agents, since it can be prepared pure and does not deteriorate on standing. The heavy metal oxalates are insoluble in water but soluble in solutions of alkali oxalates due to the formation of complex compounds, e.g., potassium oxalo-chromate,  $[Cr(C_2O_4)_3]^{3-}H_3^{3+}$ . These complexes are chelate compounds, and are optically active.

Oxalic acid is used for the manufacture of ink and for bleaching straw.

Its antimony salts are used as mordants in printing and dyeing.

Malonic acid (propanedioic acid) CO<sub>2</sub>H·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, was first obtained by the oxidation of malic acid (hence its name):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_2\text{H}\text{-}\text{CHOH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} + [O] \xrightarrow{\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7/\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4} \\ \\ \text{CO}_2\text{H}\text{-}\text{CO}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{[O]} \\ \text{oxalacetic acid} \end{array} \rightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_2\text{H}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{CO}_2 \\ \end{array}$$

Malonic acid may be prepared by heating potassium chloroacetate with aqueous potassium cyanide and hydrolysing the product, potassium cyano-acetate, with hydrochloric acid:

$$CH_2Cl \cdot CO_2K \xrightarrow{KCN} CH_2CN \cdot CO_2K \xrightarrow{H_4O} CH_2(CO_2H)_2$$
 (84%)

Malonic acid is a crystalline solid, m.p. 135.6°, soluble in water and ethanol but only slightly soluble in ether. When heated to 140–150°, or when refluxed in sulphuric acid solution, it eliminates carbon dioxide:

$$CO_2H \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO_2H + CO_2$$

All dicarboxylic acids which have both carboxyl groups attached to the same carbon atom are decomposed in a similar manner. When malonic acid is heated with phosphorus pentoxide, a small amount of carbon suboxide is obtained:

$$CO_2H\cdot CH_2\cdot CO_2H \xrightarrow{P_1O_4} O:C:C:C:O + 2H_2O$$

Carbon suboxide, b.p. 7°, may be regarded as a diketen; it combines with water to form malonic acid. Malonic acid does not form a cyclic anhydride, but dimethylmalonic acid does (cf. p. 487).

When malonic acid is treated with nitrous acid and the product hydrolysed, mesoxalic acid (ketomalonic acid) is obtained:

$$(\mathrm{HO_2C})_2\mathrm{CH_2} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{HNO_2}} (\mathrm{HO_2C})_2\mathrm{C:N} \cdot \mathrm{OH} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2O}} \mathrm{CO_2H} \cdot \mathrm{CO} \cdot \mathrm{CO_2H}$$

Mesoxalic acid crystallises from water with one molecule of water which is held

firmly, and hence is believed to be water of constitution:

glyoxylic acid). Ethyl malonate may be oxidised directly to ethyl mesoxalate by selenium dioxide (yield: 23 per cent.).

Ethyl malonate is far more important than the acid because of its synthetic uses; the acid contains an active methylene group, the reactivity of which is more pronounced in the ester. Both the acid and ester may be readily brominated, e.g., monobromomalonic acid, CHBr(CO<sub>2</sub>H)<sub>2</sub>, is formed when a suspension of malonic acid in ether is treated with bromine; owing to the high reactivity of the methylene group, no red phosphorus is required as catalyst (cf. p. 211).

Ethyl malonate, curiously enough, does not form the diamide, malonamide, when shaken with concentrated ammonium hydroxide solution; the dimethyl ester, however, gives a good yield of malonamide. Ethyl malonate forms barbituric acid when heated with urea in the presence of sodium

ethoxide (see p. 386).

Succinic acid (butanedioic acid), CO<sub>2</sub>H·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, was originally obtained by the distillation of amber (Latin: succinum, amber). It is also formed during the fermentation of sugar and other substances. Succinic acid may be synthesised by the following methods:

(i) From ethylene bromide:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH$_2$Br} \xrightarrow[\text{CH$_2$-CN}]{\text{CH$_2$-CN}} \xrightarrow[\text{CH$_2$-CO$_2$H}]{\text{CH$_2$-CO$_2$H}} \\ \text{CH$_2$-Br} \xrightarrow[\text{CH$_2$-CN}]{\text{CH$_2$-CO$_2$H}} \end{array} \tag{80\%}$$

(ii) By the reaction between malonic ester (1 molecule) and ethyl chloro-acetate, or between malonic ester (2 molecules) and iodine (see p. 234).

Alkyl-substituted succinic acids may be prepared by using monoalkyl-malonic ester and  $\alpha$ -halogeno-acid esters or iodine. Alternatively, they may be prepared by the addition of hydrogen cyanide to  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated esters and hydrolysing the  $\beta$ -cyano-complex produced (see p. 279).

(iii) By heating malic acid, in a sealed tube, with constant boiling hydriodic acid and red phosphorus:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \mid \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} + 2\text{HI} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \mid \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} + \text{I}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \quad (60\%) \end{array}$$

Succinic acid is prepared industrially by the catalytic (or by the electrolytic) reduction of maleic acid:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \\ \parallel \\ \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \end{array} + \\ \text{H}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Ni}} \begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \end{array}$$

Succinic acid is a crystalline solid, m.p. 185°, moderately soluble in water and ethanol, but sparingly soluble in ether. When heated, a large amount

sublimes, the rest being converted into the inner anhydride, succinic anhydride:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \\ CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \cdot CO \\ CH_2 \cdot CO \end{array} O + H_2O$$

When heated with excess of glycol, succinic acid forms high-polymer esters (polyesters, which belong to the group known as the alkyd resins—see p. 257). These esters are acidic, the end groups being succinic acid residues:

$$\begin{split} \text{CO}_2\text{H}\cdot (\text{CH}_2)_2\cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} &+ \text{HOCH}_2\cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH} + \\ &+ \text{HO}_2\text{C}\cdot (\text{CH}_2)_2\text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{HOCH}_2\cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH} + \dots \\ &\longrightarrow \text{CO}_2\text{H}\cdot (\text{CH}_2)_2\cdot \text{CO} - [-\text{O}\cdot (\text{CH}_2)_2\cdot \text{O}\cdot \text{CO}\cdot (\text{CH}_2)_2\cdot \text{CO} - ] - \text{OH} \end{split}$$

The apparent molecular weight of this ester is about 3000 (Carothers, 1930). It has been found that the dicarboxylic acids from malonic to adipic acid form these polyesters with ethylene glycol. These esters are linear polymers, but if glycerol is used instead of glycol, three dimensional polymeric esters are obtained.

Succinic acid condenses with aldehydes; if both methylene groups are involved, polyenes are obtained by elimination of carbon dioxide:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{R-CHO} \\ \text{R-CHO} \end{array} + \begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} \text{R-CH=C+CO}_2 \text{H} \\ \text{R-CH=C+CO}_2 \text{H} \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{-2\text{CO}_2} \begin{array}{l} \text{R-CH=CH} \\ \text{R-CH=CH} \end{array}$$

Polyenes have the general formula R·(CH:CH), R, and by using conjugated aldehydes the value of n can be made fairly large.

If only one methylene group in succinic acid reacts with the aldehyde, a paraconic acid is obtained:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CHO} + \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \end{array} \\ \rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} \text{R-CH--CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \\ \text{OH CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{-\text{H}_2 \text{O}} \begin{array}{c} \text{R-CH--CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \\ \text{O--CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array}$$

When these paraconic acids are heated, By-unsaturated acids are obtained (see p. 281).

Succinic anhydride (butanedioic anhydride) is obtained in excellent yield by distilling succinic acid with acetic anhydride, acetyl chloride, or phosphoryl chloride. The anhydride, and not the acid chloride, is obtained when succinic acid is heated with thionyl chloride (see later).

Succinic anhydride is a white crystalline solid, m.p. 119°, and when boiled with water or alkalis, is converted into succinic acid:

$$(\operatorname{CH_2 \cdot CO}_2) \circ + \operatorname{H_2O} \longrightarrow (\operatorname{CH_2 \cdot CO_2H}_2)$$

When reduced with sodium and ethanol, succinic anhydride is converted first into \( \gamma\)-butyrolactone, and finally into tetramethylene glycol:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{·CO} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{·CO} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{·CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{·CO} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{·CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{·CO} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{·CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{·CH}_2\text{OH} \end{array}$$

If the reduction is carried out with sodium amalgam in acid solution, the lactone is obtained in good yield; some butyric acid is also formed.

Succinic anhydride is very useful for preparing the "half-derivatives" of succinic acid, e.g., with alcohols it forms the acid-ester:

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \\
\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 R \\
\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_3 H
\end{array}$$

Succinimide (butanimide) is formed when succinic anhydride is heated in a current of dry ammonia:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{·CO} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2\text{·CO} \end{array} \text{O} + \text{NH}_3 \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{·CO} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2\text{·CO} \end{array} \text{NH} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \quad (\textit{v.g.})$$

Succinamic acid (m.p. 157°), I, and succinamide (m.p. 243°), II, are both readily converted into succinimide when heated:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{·CO·NH}_2 & \xrightarrow{-\text{H}_2\text{O}} & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{·CO}} \text{NH} & \xrightarrow{-\text{NH}_3} & \text{NH}_2\text{·CO·CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{·CO}_2\text{H} & \xrightarrow{\text{(II)}} & \text{NH}_2\text{·CO·CH}_2 \end{array}$$

Succinimide is a white crystalline solid, m.p. 125°, readily soluble in water, and when boiled with water or alkalis is converted into succinic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \end{array} \text{NH} + 2 \text{H}_2 \text{O} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \end{array} + \text{NH}_3$$

When succinimide is distilled with zinc dust, pyrrole, (III), is obtained. When reduced with sodium and ethanol, succinimide forms pyrrolidine, (IV), and when reduced electrolytically, it forms pyrrolidone, (V):

Succinimide is acidic, e.g., it reacts with potassium hydroxide to form potassiosuccinimide, the formula of which may be (VI) or (VII):

Succinimide, however, is only very weakly acidic; the potassium salt is decomposed by carbon dioxide, the imide being regenerated.

A very important derivative of succinimide is N-bromosuccinimide, which may be prepared by the action of bromine on succinimide at o° in the presence of sodium hydroxide:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CO} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CO} \end{array} \text{NH} + \text{Br}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CO} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CO} \end{array} \text{NBr} + \text{HBr}$$

N-bromosuccinimide is a valuable reagent for brominating olefinic compounds in the allyl position (Ziegler, 1942).

$$-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2+\left|\begin{matrix}\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CO}\\\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CO}\end{matrix}\right\rangle \text{NBr}\longrightarrow -\text{CHBr}\cdot\text{CH}\cdot\text{CH}_2+\left|\begin{matrix}\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CO}\\\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CO}\end{matrix}\right\rangle \text{NH}$$

This reaction offers a means of splitting off *three* carbon atoms from a compound by oxidative degradation, provided the compound contains one double bond or can have one produced, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R•CH$_2$•CH$_2$•CH$_2$•CH$_2$OH} \xrightarrow{\text{Al$_2$O$}_3} \text{R•CH$_2$•CH$_2$•CH$:CH$_2} \xrightarrow{N\text{-bromosuccinimide}} \\ \\ \text{R•CH$_2$•CHBr•CH$:CH$_2} \xrightarrow{\text{KOH}} \text{R•CH}:\text{CH$_2$•CH$:CH$_2} \xrightarrow{\text{ozonolysis}} \rightarrow \text{R•CHO} \end{array}$$

This method has found great use in steroid chemistry.

Normally, N-bromosuccinimide substitutes olefins in the allyl position, and this reaction is believed to take place by a free-radical mechanism; it is catalysed by peroxides and is promoted by light (both are free-radical producing agents).

The details of the mechanism are uncertain. According to Goldfinger  $et\ al.$  (1953, 1956), the function of the N-bromosuccinimide is to supply a low concentration of molecular bromine:

$$\begin{array}{c} > \mathrm{NBr} + \mathrm{HBr} \longrightarrow > \mathrm{NH} + \mathrm{Br_2} \\ \mathrm{Br_2} & \rightleftharpoons 2\mathrm{Br}^{\bullet} \\ \mathrm{Br}^{\bullet} + > \mathrm{CH}^{\bullet}\mathrm{CH} = \mathrm{CH_2} \longrightarrow > \mathring{\mathrm{C}}^{\bullet}\mathrm{CH} = \mathrm{CH_2} + \mathrm{HBr} \\ \mathrm{Br_2} + > \mathring{\mathrm{C}}^{\bullet}\mathrm{CH} = \mathrm{CH_2} \longrightarrow > \mathrm{CBr}^{\bullet}\mathrm{CH} = \mathrm{CH_2} + \mathrm{Br}^{\bullet} \end{array}$$

Tedder et al. (1960, 1961) have obtained evidence to support this mechanism.

N-Bromosuccinimide also brominates unsaturated esters, e.g.,

$$CH_3 \cdot CH = CH \cdot CO_2CH_3 \xrightarrow{>N-Br} CH_2Br \cdot CH = CH \cdot CO_2CH_3$$

In addition to substitution, N-bromosuccinimide may also produce addition compounds, but these are usually formed only in small amount. Braude et al. (1952), however, have shown that the addition reaction is catalysed by tetra-alkylammonium salts, e.g., N-bromosuccinimide and cyclohexene give 3-bromocyclohexene (Ziegler et al., 1942), but in the presence of, e.g., tetraethylammonium bromide, I: 2-dibromocyclohexane is the main product.

The addition reaction probably involves heterolytic fission:

$$>\stackrel{\frown}{N-}Br+\stackrel{\frown}{|C|} \longrightarrow \stackrel{\frown}{N-}Br-\stackrel{\frown}{|C|} \longrightarrow \stackrel{\rightarrow}{|C|} \longrightarrow \stackrel{\rightarrow}{$$

N-Bromosuccinimide can also behave as an oxidising agent; it will oxidise primary alcohols (and primary amines) to aldehydes, and secondary alcohols to ketones (Barakat et al., 1952), e.g.,

$$C_2H_5OH + NBr \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CHO + NH + HBr$$
  
 $(CH_3)_2CHOH + NBr \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2CO + NH + HBr$ 

Succinyl chloride (butanedioyl chloride). When succinic acid is treated with a large excess of phosphorus pentachloride, a good yield of the symmetrical acid chloride, (CH<sub>2</sub>·COCl)<sub>2</sub>, is obtained. This is also obtained by heating succinic acid with thionyl chloride in the presence of a small amount of zinc chloride (cf. succinic anhydride). On the other hand, when succinic acid is heated with phosphorus pentachloride not in excess, a CH<sub>2</sub>·CCl<sub>2</sub> and is heated with phosphorus pentachloride not in excess, a small amount of the s-acid chloride is obtained; the main product is the as-acid chloride. The evidence for the structures of these acid chlorides is shown by the products formed by their reaction with benzene in the presence of anhydrous aluminium chloride. One (the s-) gives  $C_6H_5$ ·CO·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub> and the other (the as-), (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO. This acid chloride is an example of ring-chain tautomerism (p. 221).

Isomeric with succinic acid is methylmalonic acid or isosuccinic acid, CO<sub>2</sub>H·CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)·CO<sub>2</sub>H, m.p. 130°. It may be readily prepared from sodiomalonic ester and methyl iodide, or as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_3/P} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CHBr}\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{KCN}} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}(\text{CN})\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_3\text{O}} \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2 \end{array}$$

Oxalacetic ester,  $C_2H_5O_2C \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5$ , is the diethyl ester of ketosuccinic acid, and may be prepared by the Claisen condensation between ethyl oxalate and ethyl acetate (see p. 371). It is a colourless liquid which can be distilled under reduced pressure (b.p. 132°/24 mm.), but at atmospheric pressure it eliminates a molecule of carbon monoxide to form malonic ester:

$$C_2H_5O_2C \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \longrightarrow CH_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 + CO$$

Hydrogen of the methylene group adjacent to the carbonyl group may be replaced by alkyl groups by reactions similar to those used for acetoacetic ester, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} C_2H_5O_2C \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{C_8H_8ONa} [C_2H_5O_2C \cdot CO \cdot CH \cdot CO_2C_2H_5] - Na^+ \xrightarrow{CH_9I} \\ C_2H_5O_2C \cdot CO \cdot CH(CH_3) \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{(ii)} C_2H_5ONa \atop (iii)} C_2H_5O_2C \cdot CO \cdot C(CH_3)(C_2H_5) \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \end{array}$$

Oxalacetic ester and its alkyl derivatives undergo "acid hydrolysis" when boiled with alkalis, and "ketonic hydrolysis" when boiled with dilute sulphuric acid.

Acid hydrolysis

$$C_2H_5O_2C \cdot CO \cdot CHR \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{NaOH} (CO_2H)_2 + R \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H + 2C_2H_5OH$$

Ketonic hydrolysis

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{CHR}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{H}_5\text{O}_4} [\text{CO}_2\text{H}\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{CHR}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}] \xrightarrow{\text{CO}_2} + \text{R}\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$$

Oxalacetic ester may be used to prepare citric acid by means of the Reformatsky reaction (see p. 422).

Hydrolysis of oxalacetic ester with concentrated hydrochloric acid in the cold gives oxalacetic acid (ketosuccinic acid):

$$C_2H_5O_2C \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + 2H_2O \xrightarrow{HCI} CO_2H \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H + 2C_2H_5OH$$

A simpler preparation of oxalacetic acid is to oxidise maleic acid with Fenton's

Oxalacetic acid is a fairly stable substance, soluble in water, the aqueous solution giving a red coloration with ferric chloride, thus indicating the existence of an enolic form. Oxalacetic acid exists in two forms, one with m.p. 155° and

the other 184°. These two forms are actually hydroxymaleic acid, I, and hydroxyfumaric acid, II, respectively:

I is convertible into II by 30 per cent. sulphuric acid, and the salts of II give I on treatment with dilute acid. It is doubtful whether oxalacetic acid exists in the keto form.

Glutaric acid (pentanedioic acid), CO<sub>2</sub>H·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H (relationship to glutamic acid and tartaric acid gave rise to its name), may be prepared by a number of methods, e.g.,

(i) By refluxing trimethylene cyanide with concentrated hydrochloric

acid:

$$NC \cdot (CH_2)_3 \cdot CN + 4H_2O \xrightarrow{HCl} CO_2H \cdot (CH_2)_3 \cdot CO_2H + 2NH_3$$
 (83–85%)

(ii) By the action of methylene iodide on sodiomalonic ester:

$$\begin{split} & 2[\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2]^-\text{Na}^+ + \text{CH}_2\text{I}_2 \longrightarrow 2\text{NaI} + \text{CH}_2[\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2]_2} \\ & \xrightarrow{\text{(i) KOH}} + \text{CH}_2[\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2]_2 \xrightarrow{\text{150-200}^\circ} + \text{CO}_2\text{H} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_3 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} + 2\text{CO}_2 \end{split}$$

(iii) By condensing formaldehyde with malonic ester in the presence of diethylamine:

$$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CH_2 + O + CH_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 \xrightarrow[reflux]{(C_2H_5)_2NH} \rightarrow (C_2H_5O_2C)_2CH^*CH_2\cdot CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 \quad (61\%)$$

This tetracarboxylic ester may now be treated as in (ii), or may be converted into glutaric acid directly by refluxing with concentrated hydrochloric acid:

$$(C_2H_5O_2C)_2CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 \xrightarrow{HCI} CO_2H \cdot (CH_2)_3 \cdot CO_2H \quad (76-80\%)$$

Glutaric acid is a crystalline solid, m.p. 97°. When heated with acetic anhydride or thionyl chloride, it is converted into glutaric anhydride:

$$CH_{2} \xrightarrow{CH_{2} \cdot CO_{2}H} \longrightarrow CH_{2} \xrightarrow{CH_{2} - CO} O + H_{2}O$$

Succinic and glutaric acids differ from their higher homologues in that they readily form the cyclic anhydride when heated with acetic anhydride.

Adipic acid (hexanedioic acid), CO<sub>2</sub>H·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, received its name from the fact that it was first obtained by the oxidation of fats (Latin: adeps, fat). It may be synthesised from sodiomalonic ester and ethylene bromide (see p. 233), but is prepared industrially by the oxidation of cyclohexanol with concentrated nitric acid, preferably in the presence of ammonium vanadate as catalyst:

CHOH
$$H_{2}C \xrightarrow{CH_{2}} CH_{2} \xrightarrow{[O]} H_{2}C \xrightarrow{CH_{2}} CH_{2} \xrightarrow{[O]} CO_{2}H \cdot (CH_{2})_{4} \cdot CO_{2}H \quad (58-60\%)$$

$$CH_{2}C \xrightarrow{CH_{2}} CH_{2} CH_{2} \xrightarrow{CH_{2}} CH_{2} CH_{2} \xrightarrow{CH_{2}} CH_{2} CH$$

If selenium dioxide is used as catalyst instead of ammonium vanadate, the yield of adipic acid is 74 per cent. (Putnik, 1947). Succinic acid is also manufactured from benzene. This is reduced catalytically to cyclohexane, which is then oxidised in two stages (the first stage is a mixture of cyclohexanol and cyclohexanone).

A potential commercial source of adipic acid is the reaction between tetra-

hydrofuran, carbon monoxide and water:

$$(H_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H) \longrightarrow (CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H)$$

Adipic acid is a crystalline solid, m.p. 150°. When heated with acetic anhydride, it forms a linear polymeric anhydride:

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm CO_2H \cdot (CH_2)_4 \cdot CO_2H} + {\rm CO_2H \cdot (CH_2)_4 \cdot CO_2H} + \cdots \longrightarrow \\ {\rm CO_2H \cdot (CH_2)_4 \cdot C} \bigcirc \begin{bmatrix} {\rm O} & {\rm O} \\ {\rm -C} - ({\rm CH_2})_4 - {\rm C} - {\rm O} - \end{bmatrix}_s \bigcirc \\ {\rm -C} - ({\rm CH_2})_4 - {\rm CO_2H} \end{array}$$

When this polymer is distilled under reduced pressure, the monomeric adipic anhydride, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub> CO O, is obtained; this monomer very readily polymerises

on heating. If the polymeric anhydride is heated in a molecular still, a "super-polymer", i.e., a polymer of very high molecular weight, is obtained as the residue, the distillate being the cyclic monomer or dimer.

All the dicarboxylic acids,  $CO_2H \cdot (CH_2)_n \cdot CO_2H$ , where n has a value 4 to 12, behave as adipic acid (Hill and Carothers, 1933).

On the other hand, when adipic and pimelic acids are heated with acetic anhydride and the product distilled at 300°, a cyclic ketone is obtained in each case:

$$(CH_{2})_{4} \xrightarrow{CO_{2}H} \xrightarrow{300^{\circ}} CH_{2} \cdot CH_{2}$$

$$CO_{2}H \xrightarrow{300^{\circ}} CH_{2} \cdot CH_{2}$$

$$CH_{2} \cdot CH_{2}$$

$$CH_{2} - CH_{2}$$

Adipic acid is used for the preparation of resins (polyesters), and is an intermediate in the manufacture of *nylon*. Nylon is used as the generic name for all synthetic fibre-forming polymeric amides having a protein-like structure. Nylon yarns and fabrics are practically non-inflammable. The most important example of a polyamide is that formed from adipic acid and hexamethylenediamine.

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm CO_2H \cdot (CH_2)_4 \cdot CO_2H} \, + \, {\rm H_2N \cdot (CH_2)_6 \cdot NH_2} \, + \\ \qquad \qquad \qquad \qquad \qquad {\rm HO_2C \cdot (CH_2)_4 \cdot CO_2H} \, + \, {\rm H_2N - - - -} \\ {\rm CO_2H \cdot (CH_2)_4 \cdot CO - [-NH \cdot (CH_2)_6 \cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot (CH_2)_4 \cdot CO - ]_n - NH \cdot (CH_2)_6 \cdot NH_2} \end{array}$$

Pimelic acid (heptanedioic acid), CO<sub>2</sub>H·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>5</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, m.p. 104°, received its name from the fact that it was obtained originally from the oxidation of fats (Greek: pimele, fat). It may be prepared by the hydrolysis of pentamethylene cyanide (formed by the action of potassium cyanide on pentamethylene bromide), or by the malonic ester synthesis, using trimethylene bromide (cf. adipic acid). A most remarkable method of preparing pimelic acid is the reduction of salicylic

acid with sodium and *iso*pentanol, followed by the addition of water and then hydrochloric acid; the mechanism of this reaction is obscure (see p. 683):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} + \text{H}_2\text{O} + 4\text{[H]} \longrightarrow \text{CO}_2\text{H} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_5 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \quad (43-50\%) \end{array}$$

Suberic acid (octanedioic acid), CO<sub>2</sub>H·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>6</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, m.p. 144°, may be synthesised by the electrolysis of potassium ethyl glutarate (cf. p. 368). It is prepared industrially by the oxidation of cork (Latin: suber, cork) with concentrated nitric acid. A potential commercial source is the oxidation of cyclo-octane obtained by the catalytic reduction of cyclo-octatetraene (see p. 485).

Azelaic acid (nonanedioic acid), CO<sub>2</sub>H•(CH<sub>2</sub>), CO<sub>2</sub>H, m.p. 107°, may be synthesised from malonic ester and pentamethylene bromide. It may be obtained in the laboratory by refluxing castor oil with ethanolic potassium hydroxide, acidifying with sulphuric acid, and oxidising the crude ricinoleic acid so obtained with alkaline permanganate:

CH<sub>2</sub>·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>5</sub>·CHOH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH=CH·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>7</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H $\xrightarrow{[O]}$ CO<sub>2</sub>H·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>7</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H (32–36%)

Azelaic acid is prepared industrially by the oxidation of oleic acid with concentrated nitric acid (p. 286).

Sebacic acid (decanedioic acid), CO<sub>2</sub>H·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>8</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, m.p. 133°, is prepared industrially by heating castor oil with sodium hydroxide.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{`}(\text{CH}_2)_5\text{`}\text{CHOH}\text{`}\text{CH}_2\text{`}\text{CH}\text{=}\text{CH}\text{`}(\text{CH}_2)_7\text{`}\text{CO}_2\text{Na} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \\ \text{CO}_2\text{Na}\text{`}(\text{CH}_2)_8\text{`}\text{CO}_2\text{Na} + \text{C}_6\text{H}_{13}\text{`}\text{CHOH}\text{`}\text{CH}_3 \\ \end{array}$$

Many higher dicarboxylic acids are known.

The acid esters of the dicarboxylic acids may be prepared by refluxing a mixture of the acid with half its equivalent of the di-ester in the presence of concentrated hydrochloric acid. This is an example of acidolysis (p. 193). Alternatively, the acid ester may be obtained by the half saponification of the di-ester. In either case the di-ester is separated from the acid ester by fractional distillation.

When the calcium, barium, or better still, the thorium salts of the carboxylic acids from adipic to nonadecanedioic are distilled, varying yields of cyclic ketones are obtained; e.g., adipic acid gives cyclopentanone:

$$(CH_2)_4$$
 $CO_2$ 
 $Ca \longrightarrow CH_2$ 
 $CH_2$ 
 $CO_2$ 
 $Ca \longrightarrow CH_2$ 
 $CH_2$ 
 $CO_3$ 

The best yields of cyclic ketones are obtained for the five- and six-membered rings, *i.e.*, from adipic and pimelic acids respectively. This has some bearing on the problem of *Baeyer's Strain Theory* (p. 486).

Based on the experimental results of the ease of formation of cyclic anhydrides and cyclic ketones, is Blanc's rule (1905). Blanc found that dicarboxylic acids, on heating with acetic anhydride, and then distilling at 300° (or distilling directly at 300°), gave cyclic anhydrides or cyclic ketones according to the relative positions of the two carboxyl groups. 1:4- and 1:5- dicarboxylic acids gave cyclic anhydrides; 1:6- and 1:7- gave cyclic ketones: this is Blanc's rule. By using Blanc's rule it is possible to determine the size of rings. A double bond is introduced into the ring, and the ring opened by oxidation to the corresponding dicarboxylic acid. This is then heated with acetic anhydride and distilled. If a cyclic anhydride is obtained, the acid is either 1:4- or 1:5-; if a cyclic ketone, either 1:6- or 1:7-; if there is no change, the acid is 1:8- or more. In naturally occurring compounds the rings are usually five- or six-membered. Hence the formation of the anhydride is taken to mean a five-membered ring, and of the ketone a six-membered ring.

In certain cases, however, Blanc's rule is misleading, e.g., in the investigation of sterols, wrong information on the structure was obtained because of the abnormal Blanc reaction in these compounds. It has been found that substituents in the chain bring about ring closure much more easily; e.g., substituted adipic acids may give rise to the anhydride and not to the cyclic ketone. Hence in polynuclear compounds such as sterols (which have the skeleton shown), if ring B is opened, the resulting dicarboxylic acid is, in effect, a substituted adipic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} C & D \\ \hline A & B \\ \hline \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c|c} C & D \\ \hline \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c|c} C & D \\ \hline \end{array}$$

This, when distilled, gives the anhydride and not the expected ketone. Thus, in sterols, one of the rings (B) was thought to be five-membered when Blanc's rule was used. Further work showed it was six-membered. Blanc's rule is only satisfactory for simple cyclic compounds.

#### CARBONIC ACID AND ITS DERIVATIVES

Orthocarbonic acid, C(OH)<sub>4</sub>, is unknown in the free state, but its esters have been prepared. They may be obtained by the reaction between sodium alkoxide and nitrochloroform:

$$4RONa + CCl_3 \cdot NO_2 \longrightarrow C(OR)_4 + 3NaCl + NaNO_2$$

The alkyl orthocarbonates are ethereal smelling liquids.

Carbonic acid (metacarbonic acid), O.C(OH)<sub>2</sub>, is unknown in the free state, but its salts and esters have been prepared. Alkyl carbonates may be readily formed by heating alcohols with carbonyl chloride:

$$COCl_2 + 2ROH \longrightarrow CO(OR)_2 + 2HCl$$

They may also be prepared by heating silver carbonate with alkyl iodide:

$$Ag_2CO_3 + 2RI \longrightarrow CO(OR)_2 + 2AgI$$

The alkyl carbonates are ethereal smelling liquids, readily soluble in water. In recent years they have found various uses in organic synthesis, e.g.,

(i) They may be used to introduce the carbalkoxy group, CO<sub>2</sub>R, into ketones to produce β-ketoesters. The reaction is carried out by heating a ketone with sodium or sodium alkoxide in the presence of a large excess of alkyl carbonate:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R'`-CO-CH}_3 + (\text{RO})_2\text{CO} + \text{NaOR} \longrightarrow \\ \text{[R'`-CO-CH-CO}_2\text{R]}^-\text{Na}^+ + 2\text{ROH} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{R'`-CO-CH}_2\text{-CO}_2\text{R} \end{array}$$

(ii) Alkyl carbonates react with primary alkyl cyanides in the presence of sodium alkoxide to form  $\alpha$ -cyanoesters:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R'-CH}_2\text{-CN} + (\text{RO})_2\text{CO} + \text{NaOR} \longrightarrow \\ [\text{R'-C(CN)-CO}_2\text{R}]^-\text{Na}^+ + 2\text{ROH} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_4\text{O}} \text{R'-CH(CN)-CO}_2\text{R} \end{array}$$

(iii) Alkyl carbonates may be used to alkylate sodiomalonic esters:

$$[R'C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2]^-Na^+ + (RO)_2CO \longrightarrow RR'C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 + RO\cdot CO\cdot ONa$$

The acid chloride of carbonic acid is carbonyl chloride (phosgene), COCl<sub>2</sub>. It may be obtained by the action of chlorine on carbon monoxide under

the influence of sunlight, or in the presence of heated charcoal (200°) as catalyst; the latter is the commercial method. Carbonyl chloride may also be obtained by the action of oleum containing 45 per cent. free sulphur trioxide on carbon tetrachloride at 78°:

$$2SO_3 + CCl_4 \longrightarrow COCl_2 + S_2O_5Cl_2$$

pyrosulphury

chloride

Carbonyl chloride is a colourless liquid, b.p. 8°, and has been used as a toxic gas in warfare. It is used in various organic syntheses, behaving as an acid chloride. It is very slowly decomposed by water:

$$COCl_2 + H_2O \longrightarrow CO_2 + 2HCl$$

When treated with slight excess of one equivalent of alcohol in the cold, carbonyl chloride forms chloroformic esters:

$$COCl_2 + ROH \longrightarrow Cl \cdot CO_2R + + HCl$$

When treated with an excess of alcohol in the presence of pyridine, alkyl carbonates are formed:

$$COCl_2 + 2ROH \longrightarrow CO(OR)_2 + 2HCl$$

Carbonyl chloride reacts with ammonia to form urea:

$$COCl_2 + 2NH_3 \longrightarrow CO(NH_2)_2 + 2HCl$$

With primary or secondary amines, substituted ureas are formed, e.g.,

$$COCl_2 + 2R\cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow CO(NH\cdot R)_2 + 2HCl$$

Chloroformic acid (chlorocarbonic acid), Cl·CO<sub>2</sub>H, is not known in the free state, but its esters have been prepared. These may be readily obtained by treating carbonyl chloride with slight excess of one equivalent of alcohol in the cold (see above). Chloroformic esters are acid-chloride esters, and the chlorine atom reacts with compounds containing active hydrogen; thus ethyl chloroformate, b.p. 94°, reacts with water, alcohols, ammonia, primary and secondary amines; e.g., urethan is formed with ammonia:

$$\text{Cl-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{NH}_3 \longrightarrow \text{NH}_2\text{-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{HCl}$$

Ethyl chloroformate is useful for introducing the carbethoxy group on a nitrogen atom; e.g., ethyl-N-tricarboxylate is formed when ethyl chloroformate is added to a mixture of urethan, ether and sodium, this mixture having been previously heated:

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{NH_2 \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5} + 2 \mathrm{Cl \cdot CO_2 C_2 H_5} + 2 \mathrm{Na} \longrightarrow \\ \mathrm{N(CO_2 C_2 H_5)_3} + 2 \mathrm{NaCl} + \mathrm{H_2} \quad (51-57\%) \end{array}$$

Ethyl chloroformate may also be used to prepare ethyl esters by reaction with Grignard reagents (p. 356).

Amides of carbonic acid. Since carbonic acid is dibasic, two amides are possible: the mono- and diamide. These are known, respectively, as carbanic acid, (I), and urea, (II):

$$O = C \bigvee_{\text{OH}}^{\text{NH}_2} O = C \bigvee_{\text{NH}_2}^{\text{NH}_2}$$

Carbamic acid, NH2 CO2H, is not known in the free state, but its salts and esters have been prepared. Ammonium carbamate is formed when dry ammonia reacts with dry carbon dioxide:

$$2NH_3 + CO_2 \longrightarrow NH_2 \cdot CO \cdot ONH_4$$

It is a white crystalline solid, very soluble in water. When its aqueous solution is warmed to 60°, ammonium carbamate is hydrolysed to ammonium carbonate:

 $NH_{2}\cdot CO\cdot ONH_{4} + H_{2}O \longrightarrow CO(ONH_{4})_{2}$ 

Esters of carbamic acid are known as urethans. These may be prepared: (i) By treating a chloroformic ester with ammonia, e.g., ethyl chloroformate produces ethyl carbamate:

$$C1 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + NH_3 \longrightarrow NH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + HCI$$

(ii) By refluxing urea in an alcohol, e.g., n-butanol gives n-butyl carbamate when refluxed for 30 hours:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO(NH$_2$)$_2$} \longrightarrow \text{NH$_3$} + \text{HNCO} \\ \text{HNCO} + \text{CH$_2$} \cdot \text{CH$_2$} \cdot \text{CH$_2$} \cdot \text{CH$_2$} \cdot \text{CH$_2$} \cdot \text{CH$_2$} \cdot \text{CH$_3$} \cdot \text{CH$_3$} \\ \text{NH$_2$} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{CH$_2$} \cdot \text{CH$_2$} \cdot \text{CH$_3$} \cdot \text{CH$_3$} \end{array} \tag{75-76\%}$$

(iii) N-substituted urethans may be prepared by the Curtius reaction (p. 209). The acid azide is refluxed in benzene solution and then an alcohol is added:

$$R \cdot CO \cdot N_3 \longrightarrow N_2 + R \cdot NCO \xrightarrow{R'OH} R \cdot NH \cdot CO_2 R'$$

N-phenyl urethans may be prepared by reaction between phenyl isocyanate and alcohol:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NCO + ROH \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot CO_2R$$

These are crystalline solids and may be used to characterise the alcohols. Ethyl carbamate, usually known as urethan, is a crystalline solid, m.p. 50°. It reacts with ammonia to form urea:

$$NH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + NH_3 \longrightarrow CO(NH_2)_2 + C_2H_5OH$$

It is decomposed by aqueous sodium hydroxide on warming:

$$NH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + 2NaOH \longrightarrow Na_2CO_3 + NH_3 + C_2H_5OH$$

Ethyl carbamate has hypnotic properties; many urethans are valuable

hypnotics, e.g., aponal (tert.-amyl carbamate, tert.-amyl urethan),
NH<sub>2</sub>·COOC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>(C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)
Urea (carbamide), NH<sub>2</sub>·CO·NH<sub>2</sub>, is very important physiologically. It is the chief nitrogenous product of protein metabolism; adults excrete about 30 g. per day in the urine, from which it can be extracted by evaporating the urine to small bulk and adding nitric acid, whereupon the slightly soluble urea nitrate, CO(NH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>·HNO<sub>3</sub>, is precipitated. Urea is historically very important because Wöhler (1828) synthesised it by evaporating a solution containing potassium isocyanate and ammonium sulphate; ammonium isocyanate, which is formed first, undergoes molecular rearrangement:

NH4·NCO = CO(NH2)2

The reaction is reversible; the solution contains about 5 per cent. ammonium isocyanate.

The mechanism of this rearrangement is uncertain. One possibility is as follows (via dissociation):

$$\begin{array}{c} NH_4NCO \Longrightarrow NH_3 + HNCO \\ H-N=C=O + NH_3 \Longrightarrow H-N-C=O \Longrightarrow H_2N-C=O \\ +NH_3 & NH_2 \end{array}$$

Urea may be prepared in the laboratory by the action of ammonia on carbonyl chloride, alkyl carbonates, chloroformates or urethans, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm COCl_2 + 2NH_3} \longrightarrow {\rm CO(NH_2)_2 + 2HCl} \\ {\rm (C_2H_5O)_2CO + 2NH_3} \longrightarrow {\rm CO(NH_2)_2 + 2C_2H_5OH} \end{array} \ (f.)$$

Industrially, urea is prepared:

(i) By the partial hydrolysis of cyanamide in feebly acid solution:

$$H_2N\cdot CN + H_2O \longrightarrow CO(NH_2)_2$$

(ii) By allowing liquid carbon dioxide and liquid ammonia to interact, and heating the ammonium carbamate so formed to 130-150° under about 35 atm. pressure:

$${\rm 2NH_3 + CO_2} {\longrightarrow} {\rm NH_2 \cdot CO \cdot ONH_4} {\longrightarrow} {\rm CO(NH_2)_2 + H_2O}$$

Structure of urea. Although urea appears to be a simple molecule, it is only recently that its structure has been ascertained with any degree of certainty. The diamide structure,  $CO(NH_2)_2$ , seems to be indicated by its synthesis from carbonyl chloride and ammonia:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \\ \hline \text{Cl} + 2\text{NH}_3 \longrightarrow \text{CO} \\ \hline \text{NH}_2 + 2\text{HCl} \end{array}$$

In some respects urea appears to behave as a diamide, but not in others, e.g., it forms stable salts with strong inorganic acids—amides do not form stable salts. Furthermore, a peculiar feature of urea salts is that only one molecule of monobasic acid is present, e.g., CO(NH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>·HCl. This was explained by assuming that urea was tautomeric, (I) being the neutral amide (urea) and (II) the basic amidine (isourea):

$$0 \hspace{-0.1cm}=\hspace{-0.1cm} C \hspace{-0.1cm} \hspace{-0$$

The amidine structure is not possible with other amides; also amidines are much stronger bases than amides, and it was believed that it was the amidine form that produced the salts, e.g., (III). Still another structure was suggested by Werner (1913), viz., (IV).

(IV) was proposed to explain the ease with which urea loses ammonia to form cyanic acid:

$$HN = C \xrightarrow{NH^3} \rightarrow NH^2 + HNCO$$

At the same time this formula explained the addition of one molecule of hydrochloric acid, since it has the strongly basic imido group, =NH. Werner's formula contains quinquevalent nitrogen, but rewritten according to modern electronic theory, it will be (V). Thus there is now the possibility of the following equilibria:

$$O = C \xrightarrow{NH_2} HO - C \xrightarrow{NH_2} O = O - C \xrightarrow{NH_3} NH$$

$$(I) \qquad (II) \qquad (V)$$

On the other hand, experience shows that compounds containing the group  $C(OH)\cdot NH_2$  readily eliminate ammonia to form the carbonyl group (cf. the group  $C(OH)_2$ , p. 168). Thus structure (V) is unnecessary (although it is possible that the elimination of ammonia from (II) takes place through the intermediate formation of (V)). Hence structure (II) has been favoured by many, since it explained the "monoacidic" properties of urea and the elimination of ammonia.

Crystal structure studies have shown that in solid urea both nitrogen atoms are identical. This indicates structure (I), and not (II) or (V). Bond-length measurements in urea give the C—N distance as 1.37 A. In aliphatic amines the C—N bond length is 1.47 A. This indicates that the C—N bond in urea has some double bond character (about 28 per cent.); this can be explained by resonance:

$$\begin{array}{c} H_2N \\ C \\ \downarrow \\ O \end{array} \longleftrightarrow \begin{array}{c} H_2\overset{\dagger}{N} \\ C \\ \downarrow \\ O^- \end{array} \longleftrightarrow \begin{array}{c} H_2N \\ \downarrow \\ O^- \end{array}$$

Both the nitrogen atoms are identical in the hybrid molecule. Furthermore, the negatively charged oxygen atom is capable of co-ordinating with *one* proton (therefore urea will be a "monoacidic" base), and thus the salt may be formulated as a resonance hybrid:

$$\begin{array}{c} H_2 \overset{+}{N} H_2 & \xrightarrow{H_2 N} \overset{+}{OH} & \xrightarrow{H_2 N} & \xrightarrow{N H_2} \\ OH & OH & OH & & +OH \end{array}$$

Dipole moment work on urea also indicates that it is a resonance hybrid with charged forms contributing 20–30 per cent. Worsham et al. (1957) have also shown that the atoms in urea are coplanar; this is in keeping with all the bonds having double-bond character.

Properties and reactions of urea. Urea is a white crystalline solid, m.p. 132°, soluble in water and ethanol, but insoluble in ether. It is used for preparing formaldehyde-urea plastics, barbiturates, as a fertiliser, etc. A most recent use is for the manufacture of hydrazine; urea is treated with alkaline sodium hypochlorite (in effect, the Hofmann degradation is applied to urea):

o urea):  

$$NH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 + NaOCl + 2NaOH \longrightarrow N_2H_4 + NaCl + Na_2CO_3 + H_2O$$

(i) Urea behaves as a "monoacidic" base; the nitrate and oxalate are the most important, since neither is very soluble in water.

When urea nitrate is added to cold concentrated sulphuric acid, nitrourea is formed:

 $NH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 \cdot HNO_3 \xrightarrow{H_4SO_4} NH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot NO_2 + H_2O$  (70-87%)

(ii) Urea is hydrolysed by boiling with acids or alkalis:

$$CO(NH_2)_2 + H_2O \longrightarrow CO_2 + 2NH_3$$

The enzyme urease (which occurs in soyabeans) produces the same change. (iii) When gently heated, urea loses ammonia to form biuret:

$$2NH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow NH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 + NH_3$$

When an aqueous biuret solution is treated with sodium hydroxide solution and a drop of copper sulphate solution, a violet coloration is produced. This is known as the biuret reaction, which is characteristic of all compounds

containing the grouping —CO·NH—, e.g., proteins.

When urea is heated with thionyl chloride, biuret and triuret, CO(NH·CO·NH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, are obtained (Haworth and Mann, 1943). Thionyl chloride has no action on thiourea (q.v.). When heated rapidly, urea evolves ammonia and forms cyanic acid which rapidly polymerises to cyanuric acid (p. 298). When refluxed with alcohols, urea forms urethans (see above).

(iv) Nitrous acid reacts with urea with the liberation of nitrogen which,

however, is not evolved quantitatively:

$$CO(NH_2)_2 + 2HNO_2 \longrightarrow CO_2 + 3H_2O + 2N_2$$

Nitrogen is also evolved, again not quantitatively, when urea is treated with excess alkaline hypobromite:

$$CO(NH_2)_2 + 3NaOBr + 2NaOH \longrightarrow N_2 + Na_2CO_3 + 3NaBr + 3H_2O$$

(v) Acid chlorides and acid anhydrides react with urea to form ureides, e.g., acetyl chloride forms acetylurea:

$$\mathrm{CH_3 \cdot COCl} + \mathrm{NH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH_2} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot NH_2} + \mathrm{HCl}$$

Many of these ureides are useful drugs, particularly when the acid radical has a branched chain, e.g., bromural (α-bromoisovalerylurea), (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH·CHBr·CO·NH·CO·NH<sub>2</sub>.

Dicarboxylic acids react with urea in the presence of phosphoryl chloride to form cyclic ureides; e.g., oxalic acid forms parabanic acid (oxalylurea):

$$CO_2H$$
 +  $CO(NH_2)_2$   $\xrightarrow{POCl_3}$  +  $2H_2O$  +  $CO$   $CO$ 

Cyclic ureides may also be prepared by refluxing a diester with urea in ethanolic solution containing sodium ethoxide; e.g., malonic ester forms barbituric acid (malonylurea):

Barbituric acid and its 5- or 5:5-derivatives are used in medicine as hypnotics and sedatives, e.g., barbitone (5:5-diethylbarbituric acid), and phenobarbitone (5-phenyl-5-ethylbarbituric acid).

A very important group of cyclic diureides is the *purine* group, *e.g.*, uric acid, caffeine, etc.:

$$\begin{array}{c|ccccc} NH-CO & CH_3 \cdot N-CO \\ \hline CO & C-NH & CO & C-N \cdot CH_3 \\ \hline NH-C-NH & CH_3 \cdot N-C-N \\ \hline uric acid & CH_3 \cdot N-C-N \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Inclusion complexes. Several types of inclusion complexes are known, and in all of them molecules of one component are physically imprisoned in the cavities of the crystalline structure of the second component. Two important types of inclusion complexes are the *channel (canal) complexes* and the *clathrate (cage) complexes* (see p. 634 for a discussion of the latter).

Channel complexes are those cases where one component crystallises in a form with parallel, approximately cylindrical channels in which molecules of a second component are enclosed lengthwise. Urea normally forms a crystal structure which is closely packed, but in the presence of various straight-chain molecules, e.g., n-paraffins, n-alcohols, n-acids, n-esters, etc., the urea crystallises in a more open structure which contains long channels enclosing molecules of the second component. These channels contain a number of molecules of the second component and, in general, the number is inversely proportional to the length of the enclosed molecule. Branchedchain and cyclic structures cannot "fit" into these channels, and so this property affords a means of separating straight-chain from branched-chain compounds. The complexes are decomposed by melting or by dissolving away the urea with water. The formula of the channel complexes is usually  $A_n$  B (A is urea) where n, usually not a whole number, has values of 4 or more and increases as the length of B increases. Furthermore, since channel complexes are characterised by the fact that molecules of the second component bear some structural resemblance to each other, it is not possible to separate homologues by channel complexes. For each homologous series there is a certain minimum chain-length for channel complex formation, e.g., six carbons for paraffins, seven for alcohols, five for acids, etc.

Channel complex formation has been used to resolve racemic modifications

(p. 412).

Substituted ureas may be prepared by a reaction similar to Wöhler's synthesis of urea; the hydrochloride or sulphate of a primary or secondary amine is heated with potassium *iso*cyanate, *e.g.*, methylamine hydrochloride (I molecule) forms methylurea:

$$\mathrm{CH_{3}\text{`}NH_{2}\text{'}HCl} + \mathrm{KNCO} \longrightarrow \mathrm{KCl} + \mathrm{CH_{3}\text{`}NH_{2}\text{'}HNCO} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_{3}\text{`}NH\text{`}CO\text{`}NH_{2}}$$

If excess amine salt is used, s-disubstituted ureas are obtained, e.g., excess aniline hydrochloride forms s-diphenylurea:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5\text{\cdot}NH_2\text{\cdot}HCl + KNCO \longrightarrow KCl + C_6H_5\text{\cdot}NH_2\text{\cdot}HNCO \longrightarrow \\ C_6H_5\text{\cdot}NH\text{\cdot}CO\text{\cdot}NH_2 \xrightarrow{C_6H_5\text{\cdot}NH_2\text{\cdot}HCl} C_6H_5\text{\cdot}NH\text{\cdot}CO\text{\cdot}NH\text{\cdot}C_6H_5 + NH_4Cl \end{array}$$

Alternatively, s-diphenylurea may be obtained by refluxing an aqueous solution of aniline hydrochloride with urea:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5\cdot NH_2\cdot HCl + NH_2\cdot CO\cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot CO\cdot NH_2 + NH_4Cl \\ C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot CO\cdot NH_2 + C_6H_5\cdot NH_2\cdot HCl \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot CO\cdot NH\cdot C_6H_5 + NH_4Cl \end{array}$$

Both phenylurea (38–40 per cent.) and s-diphenylurea (52–55 per cent.) may be isolated.

s-Substituted ureas may be obtained by the action of carbonyl chloride on a primary or secondary amine:

$$COCl_2 + 2R \cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow CO(NH \cdot R)_2 + 2HCl$$

The reaction between phenyl isocyanate and a primary or secondary amine also produces an s-disubstituted urea, e.g., with ethylamine, s-ethylphenyl-urea is formed:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NCO + C_2H_5\cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot CO\cdot NH\cdot C_2H_5$$

This reaction is used to characterise amines.

A very convenient method of preparing alkyl-ureas is to evaporate an aqueous or ethanolic solution of an amine and nitrourea (see above); the latter decomposes into cyanic acid and nitroamide, NH<sub>2</sub>·NO<sub>2</sub>, which readily decomposes into nitrous oxide:

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{NH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot NO_2} \longrightarrow \mathrm{HNCO} + \mathrm{NH_2 \cdot NO_2} \\ \mathrm{HNCO} + \mathrm{R_2 NH} \longrightarrow \mathrm{R_2 N \cdot CO \cdot NH_2} \\ \mathrm{NH_2 \cdot NO_2} \longrightarrow \mathrm{N_2 O} + \mathrm{H_2 O} \end{array}$$

When urea is treated with methyl sulphate in faintly alkaline solution, methylisourea is obtained:

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{NH_2} & \operatorname{NH} & \operatorname{NH} \\ \operatorname{NH_2-C-O} & \Longrightarrow \operatorname{NH_2-C-OH} \xrightarrow{(\operatorname{CH_3})_2 \operatorname{SO_4}} \operatorname{NH_2-C-OCH_3} \end{array}$$

## COMPOUNDS RELATED TO UREA

Semicarbazide (aminourea), NH<sub>2</sub>·CO·NH·NH<sub>2</sub>, may be prepared by treating hydrazine sulphate with potassium cyanate:

It may also be prepared by heating urea with hydrazine hydrate.

$$\mathrm{NH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH_2} + \mathrm{N_2H_4, H_2O} \longrightarrow \mathrm{NH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot NH_2} + \mathrm{NH_3} + \mathrm{H_2O}$$

A more recent method is the electrolytic reduction of nitrourea in sulphuric acid solution using a lead anode:

$$NH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot NO_2 + 6[H] \longrightarrow NH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot NH_2 + 2H_2O$$
 (61-69%)

Semicarbazide is a white crystalline solid, m.p. 96°. It is an important reagent for the identification of carbonyl compounds, with which it forms semicarbazones; it is also used in the Wolff-Kishner reduction (p. 153).

Guanidine (aminomethanamidine), NH:C(NH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, is found in beet juice, and is one of the degradation products of the purines. It may be prepared:

(i) By heating cyanamide with ammonium chloride:

$$NH_2\cdot CN + NH_4Cl \longrightarrow (NH_2)_2C:NH\cdot HCl$$

(ii) By prolonged heating of ammonium thiocyanate at 180° (see also thiourea, below):

$$\mathrm{NH_{4}SCN} \longrightarrow \mathrm{S:C(NH_{2})_{2}} \xrightarrow{-\mathrm{H_{4}S}} \mathrm{NH_{2}\cdot CN} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{NH_{4}SCN}} \mathrm{(NH_{2})_{2}C:NH\cdot HSCN}$$

(iii) By heating ethyl orthocarbonate with ammonia at 160°:

$$C(OC_2H_5)_4 + 3NH_3 \longrightarrow (NH_2)_2C:NH + 4C_2H_5OH$$

Guanidine is a white hygroscopic crystalline solid, and is a strong "monoacid" base, even forming a carbonate. Its strength as a base may be explained by resonance.

Neutral molecule

$$Ion \begin{tabular}{ll} \hline NH_2 & & & \bar{N}H \\ NH_2 & & & & | & & \bar{N}H \\ NH_2 & & & & | & & \bar{N}H \\ NH_2 & & & & NH_2 - C = NH_2 \\ \hline & & & & NH_2 \\ NH_2 & & & & | & & NH_2 \\ \hline & & & & & NH_2 - C = NH_2 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

In the ion, the resonating structures are equivalent. Hence the ion is more stable than the neutral molecule. Thus the neutral molecule tends to form the ion, i.e., it is strongly basic (more so than urea, the ions of which are not all equivalent). X-Ray analysis of guanidinium iodide shows that the three nitrogen atoms are symmetrically placed round the carbon atom. Furthermore, the C-N distance has been found to be 1.18 A (Theilacker, 1935; cf. urea). These facts are in keeping with the assumption that the guanidinium ion is a resonance hybrid.

Careful hydrolysis with barium hydroxide solution converts guanidine

into urea:

$$(NH_2)_2C:NH + H_2O \longrightarrow (NH_2)_2C:O + NH_3$$

Guanidine nitrate may be prepared by heating dicyanodiamide with ammonium nitrate:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{NH} & \text{NH}_2 \\ \parallel & \parallel \\ \text{NH}_2 - \text{C-NH} \cdot \text{CN} + 2 \text{NH}_4 \text{NO}_3 \longrightarrow 2 \text{NH}_2 - \text{C:NH} \cdot \text{HNO}_3 \end{array} \tag{85\%}$$

When treated with concentrated sulphuric acid, guanidine nitrate is converted into nitroguanidine, NH2·C(:NH)·NH·NO2 (cf. urea nitrate, p. 385). Nitroguanidine is used for making flashless powders.

A number of derivatives of guanidine are important, e.g., creatine (N-methylguanidinoacetic acid), which is found in muscle fluids; creatinine, which is found in beef extract and human urine, and is the anhydride (lactam) of creatine; and arginine (α-amino-δ-guanidinovaleric acid), which is present in many proteins:

Thiourea (thiocarbamide), S:C(NH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, may be prepared by heating ammonium thiocyanate at 170° for some time:

$$NH_4SCN \longrightarrow S:C(NH_2)_2$$
 (14-16%)

It is a white crystalline solid, m.p. 180°, and behaves as a "monoacidic" base. Dipole moment studies show that thiourea is a resonance hybrid, and this is supported by the work of Truter et al. (1958), who have examined the crystal structure of thiourea by X-ray analysis. Thiourea, like urea, forms channel complexes. When heated with alkalis, thiourea is hydrolysed:

$$S:C(NH2)2 + 2H2O \xrightarrow{NaOH} CO2 + H2S + 2NH3$$

Oxidation with alkaline permanganate converts thiourea into urea:

$$S:C(NH_2)_2 + [O] \longrightarrow O:C(NH_2)_2 + S$$

On the other hand, oxidation with acid permanganate converts it into formamidine disulphide, NH<sub>2</sub>·C(:NH)·S·S·C(:NH)·NH<sub>2</sub>. This reaction is characteristic of all compounds containing the mercapto-group, and therefore suggests that in acid solution thiourea exists as

$$H_2N$$
 C—SH

Oxides of lead, silver or mercury remove a molecule of hydrogen sulphide from thiourea at room temperature to form cyanamide:

$$(NH_2)_2CS + HgO \longrightarrow NH_2 \cdot CN + HgS + H_2O$$

When treated with alkyl halide, thiourea forms S-alkyl-\psi-thiouronium salts (S-alkyl-isothiouronium salts):

$$\mathrm{CH_3I} + \mathrm{S:C(NH_2)_2} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_3:S\cdot C} \bigvee_{\mathrm{NH_2}}^{\mathrm{NH_2}} \mathrm{I^{-}}$$

These compounds are used to characterise sulphuric acids, with which they form insoluble salts. They may also be used to prepare thioalcohols (p. 332), and also to prepare sulphonyl chlorides by oxidation with chlorine-water.

$$\text{R+S+C} \xrightarrow{\text{NH}} \text{+HCl} \xrightarrow{\text{Cl}_2} \text{R+SO}_2\text{Cl}$$

Thiourea is used to protect furs and clothing against insects.

s-Diphenylthiourea or diphenylthiocarbanilide, (C6H5 NH)2CS, which is used as a rubber accelerator, may be prepared by heating aniline with carbon disulphide in

an ethanolic solution containing potassium hydroxide.

Dithiocarbamic acid, S.C(NH<sub>2</sub>)·SH, although unstable in the free state, gives rise to stable salts. These may be prepared by heating a primary or secondary amine with carbon disulphide. This reaction is complicated and the mechanism is uncertain. A possibility is via the formation of the unstable N-alkyldithio-carbamic acid which forms the stable dithiocarbamic acid salt with another

$$\text{R·NH}_2 + \text{CS}_2 \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} \text{S} \\ \text{R·NH} - \text{C-SH} \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{\text{R·NH}_5} \begin{bmatrix} \text{S} \\ \text{R·NH} - \text{C-S} \end{bmatrix}^{-} \text{R·NH}_3^{+}$$

The Hofmann mustard oil reaction (p. 337) is believed to take place via the formation of a dithiocarbamic acid salt, which is then decomposed by the mercuric chloride, possibly as follows:

$$\begin{bmatrix} S \\ R \cdot NH - C - S \end{bmatrix}^{-}R \cdot NH_{3}^{+} + HgCl_{2} \longrightarrow$$

$$[R \cdot NH_{3}]^{+}Cl^{-} + \begin{bmatrix} S \\ R \cdot NH - C - S - Hg \cdot Cl \end{bmatrix} \longrightarrow R \cdot NCS + HgS + HCl$$

On the other hand, when heated alone, dithiocarbamic acid salts form thioureas:

$$\begin{bmatrix} S \\ R \cdot NH \cdot C \cdot S \end{bmatrix}^{-} R \cdot NH_{3}^{+} \longrightarrow R \cdot NCS + R \cdot NH_{2} + H_{2}S$$

$$R \cdot NCS + R \cdot NH_{2} \longrightarrow R \cdot NH \cdot CS \cdot NH \cdot R$$

#### QUESTIONS

1. How may oxalic acid be prepared? Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when oxalic acid is treated with:—(a)  $H_2SO_4$ , (b) KOH, (c) KMnO<sub>4</sub>, (d) EtOH, (e) EtOAc, (f)  $(CH_2OH)_2$ , (g)  $H_2$ , (h)  $PCl_5$ , (i)  $CH_2OH \cdot CHOH \cdot CH_2OH$ , (j) when it is heated.

2. Describe the more important methods of preparing each of the following acids:-(a) malonic, (b) succinic, (c) glutaric, (d) adipic, (e) pimelic, (f) suberic, (g) azelaic,

(h) sebacic.

Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when the calcium salt of each of the above acids is heated, and when each is treated with:-

- (a) H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, (b) EtOH, (c) P<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>, (d) (CH<sub>2</sub>OH)<sub>2</sub>, (e) Ac<sub>2</sub>O.

  3. Describe the preparation and properties of the following compounds:—(a) mesoxalic acid, (b) oxamide, (c) oxamic acid, (d) malonamide, (e) Et<sub>2</sub> bromomalonate, (f) succinic anhydride, (g) succinamic acid, (h) succinimide, (i) succinamide, (j) succinyl chloride, (h) urethan, (l) carbonyl chloride, (m) acid ester of pimelic acid, (n) ethyl chloroformate, (o) nitrourea, (p) barbituric acid, (q) semicarbazide, (r) guanidine, (s) thiopres (s) thiourea.
  - 4. Suggest a complete synthesis for:—(a) succinic acid, (b) glutaric acid.

5. By means of equations show how you would synthesise:-

(b) Et·CH(CN)·CO, Et (a) Me·CH·CO<sub>2</sub>Et Et·CH·CO.Et (d) CH3·CH2·CO·CH2·CO2Et (e) Et·N(CO2Et)2 (c) Et·CH·CO,H CH2.CO2H

6. Show, by means of equations, how you would convert succinic acid into:—(a) glutaric acid, (b) adipic acid, (c) suberic acid, (d) malonic acid.

7. How could you prepare:—(a) N: N-dimethylurethan, (b) s-dimethylurea, (c) methylthiourea, (d) methylisothiourea, (e) barbitone?

8. Define and give examples of:—(a) The Crum-Brown and Walker electrolytic method, (b) oxidative degradation, (c) the Baeyer Strain Theory, (d) Blane's rule, (e) the biuret reaction. 9. Discuss the preparation and uses of:—(a) N-bromosuccinimide, (b) oxalacetic

ester, (c) ethyl carbonate.

10. Write an account of the preparation of urea and discuss its structure. Also give

an account of the methods for preparing substituted ureas.

Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when urea is treated with:—(a) H·CHO, (b) NaOCl, (c) HCl, (d) NaOH, (e) HNO<sub>2</sub>, (f) HNO<sub>3</sub> (g) gentle heating, (h) rapid heating, (i) SOCl<sub>2</sub>, (j) ROH, (k) AcCl, (l) (CO<sub>2</sub>H)<sub>2</sub>, (m), CH<sub>2</sub>(CO<sub>2</sub>Et)<sub>2</sub>, (n) Me<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, (o) C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·NH<sub>2</sub>·HCl.

### READING REFERENCES

Hill, Adipic Anhydride, J. Amer. Chem. Soc., 1930, 52, 4110. Hill and Carothers, Many-Membered Cyclic Anhydrides, ibid., 1933, 55, 5023.

Carothers, Polymerisation, Chem. Reviews, 1931, 8, 353.

Hoff, Nylon as a Textile Fibre, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1940, 32, 1560.

Bolton, Development of Nylon, ibid., 1942, 34, 53.

Wallingford et al., Alkyl Carbonates in Synthetic Chemistry, J. Amer. Chem. Soc., 1941,

63, 2252; 1942, 64, 576, 578, 580.
Sidgwick, The Organic Chemistry of Nitrogen. (New Edition by Taylor and Baker, 1937), Oxford Press. Ch. IX. Carbonic Acid Derivatives.

Haworth and Mann, Some Properties of Urea, Biuret and Triuret, J.C.S., 1943, 603. Linstead and Walpole, The Blanc Rule, ibid., 1939, 850.

Byrkit and Michalek, Hydrazine in Organic Chemistry, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1950, 42, 1862. Braude and Waight, Some Observations on the Course of the Reaction between Ethylenic Compounds and N-Bromosuccinimide, J.C.S., 1952, 1116.

Djerassi, Brominations with N-Bromosuccinimide and Related Compounds, Chem.

Reviews, 1948, 43, 271.

McGrath and Tedder, The Mechanism of Allylic Bromination by N-Bromosuccinimide, Proc. Chem. Soc., 1961, 80.

Weedon, Anodic Syntheses with Carboxylic Acids, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1952,

6, 380.

Diaper and Kuksis, Synthesis of Alkylated Alkanedioic Acids, Chem. Reviews, 1959, 59,

Schroeder, Thioureas, Chem. Reviews, 1955, 55, 181.

Truter, Sorting Molecules by Size and Shape, Research, 1953, 6, 320.

#### CHAPTER XVII

# HYDROXYACIDS. STEREOCHEMISTRY. UNSATURATED DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS

### MONOBASIC HYDROXYACIDS

Monobasic hydroxyacids are fatty acids which contain one or more hydroxyl

groups in the carbon chain.

Nomenclature. The usual method is to name the hydroxyacid as a derivative of the parent fatty acid (named according to the trivial system), the position of the hydroxyl group being indicated by a Greek letter, e.g.,

# CH<sub>3</sub>·CHOH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H β-hydroxybutyric acid

According to the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature, the position of the hydroxyl group is indicated by a number, e.g.,

CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CHOH·CO<sub>2</sub>H 2-hydroxybutanoic acid or 1-hydroxypropane-1-carboxylic acid

Many hydroxyacids which occur in nature are given special names indicating the source, e.g., CH<sub>3</sub>·CHOH·CO<sub>2</sub>H, lactic acid, occurs in sour milk (Latin: lac, milk).

General methods of preparation. 1. By the controlled oxidation of glycols using dilute nitric acid (the yields are usually poor); e.g., propylene glycol gives lactic acid:

$$CH_3$$
·CHOH·CH<sub>2</sub>OH + 2[O]  $\xrightarrow{HNO_3}$   $CH_3$ ·CHOH·CO<sub>2</sub>H + H<sub>2</sub>O

2. By the hydrolysis of halogeno-acids with moist silver oxide, sodium hydroxide, or sodium carbonate solution, e.g.,

$$CH_{2}Cl \cdot CO_{2}H + H_{2}O \longrightarrow CH_{2}OH \cdot CO_{2}H + HCl \quad (v.g.-ex.)$$

This is a very good method for  $\alpha$ -hydroxyacids, since the starting materials,  $\alpha$ -halogeno-acids, are readily prepared.

3. By the reduction of aldehydic, ketonic or dicarboxylic acids under

suitable conditions, e.g.,

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CO_2H + 2[H] \xrightarrow{Na/Hg} CH_3 \cdot CHOH \cdot CO_2H$$

In practice only the reduction of dicarboxylic acids is important, since aldehydic and ketonic acids are usually inaccessible:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_2\text{H}^{\bullet}(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{C}_a\text{H}_a\text{OH}} \\ \text{CO}_2\text{H}^{\bullet}(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{Na/C}_a\text{H}_a\text{OH}} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH}^{\bullet}(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$$

4. By the action of nitrous acid on aminoacids, e.g.,

$$NH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H + HNO_2 \longrightarrow CH_2OH \cdot CO_2H + N_2 + H_2O$$
 (g.)

This method is mainly confined to preparing  $\alpha$ -hydroxyacids, since naturally occurring aminoacids are  $\alpha$ -derivatives.

5. By hydrolysing the cyanohydrins formed from aldehydes or ketones and hydrogen cyanide, e.g.,

 $CH_3 \cdot CHO + HCN \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CHOH \cdot CN \xrightarrow{H_4O} CH_8 \cdot CHOH \cdot CO_2H \quad (g.-v.g.)$ 

6. β-Hydroxyacids may be prepared by the hydrolysis of cyanohydrins prepared from chlorohydrins, e.g.,

$$\text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{Cl} \xrightarrow{\text{KCN}} \text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CN} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \quad (g.)$$

7. β-Hydroxyacids may be prepared by the Reformatsky reaction (p. 363). 8. Weygand et al. (1955) have introduced the following method for synthesising α-hydroxyacids. A diazoketone is treated with a sulphenyl chloride and the product hydrolysed with sodium hydroxide or better, first treated with sodium acetate and the resulting compound then treated with sodium hydroxide.

$$\begin{array}{c} R \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{SOCl}_2} & R \cdot \text{COCl} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{N}_2} & R \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CHN}_2 \\ & \xrightarrow{\text{R'} \cdot \text{SCl}} & R \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CHCl} \cdot \text{SR'} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} & R \cdot \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ & \downarrow^{\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{Na}} & \uparrow^{\text{NaOH}} \\ & & R \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}(\text{O} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3) \cdot \text{SR'} \end{array}$$

General properties and reactions. Glycollic acid, the first member of the series, is a solid; the higher members are liquids. All are soluble in water, generally more so than are either the corresponding fatty acid or alcohol. This is to be expected, since hydroxyacids have two functional groups which

can form hydrogen bonds with water.

r. Hydroxyacids behave both as acids and alcohols; in many reactions the hydroxyl and carboxyl groups do not interfere with each other, particularly when they are far apart. Furthermore, by esterifying the carboxyl group, the ester then behaves predominantly as a hydroxy-compound, i.e., esterification masks, to a large extent, the presence of the carboxyl group. The carboxyl group may be converted into the ester, amide, nitrile, acyl chloride, etc. The hydroxyl group (when the carboxyl group has been esterified) may be converted into the ester, etc.; e.g., glycollic acid reacts with acetyl chloride to form acetylglycollic acid (behaving as a hydroxy-compound):

$$CH_2OH \cdot CO_2H + CH_3 \cdot COCl \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot O \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H + HCl$$

Glycollic acid reacts with phosphorus pentachloride to form chloroacetyl chloride (behaving both as an alcohol and an acid); the chloroacetyl chloride is readily hydrolysed by water to chloroacetic acid:

$$\text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{PCI}_4} \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}\text{-}\text{COCl} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_3\text{O}} \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H}$$

2. When hydroxyacids are oxidised under suitable conditions, a primary alcoholic group is converted into an aldehyde group, and a secondary into ketonic. The presence of a tertiary alcoholic group leads to the breakdown of the carbon chain (cf. alcohols, p. 132):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{[O]} \text{CHO} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{[O]} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{(CH}_3)_2\text{C(OH)} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{[O]} \text{(CH}_3)_2\text{CO} + \text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \end{array}$$

Various oxidising agents may be used, e.g., dilute nitric acid, Fenton's reagent, permanganate; which is used generally depends on the hydroxyacid involved.

395

3. When heated with dilute sulphuric acid or dilute permanganate,  $\alpha$ -hydroxyacids are converted into aldehydes or ketones:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CHOH-CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_9\text{SO}_4} \rightarrow \text{R-CHO} + \text{H-CO}_2\text{H} & (v.g.) \\ \text{R}_2\text{C(OH)-CO}_2\text{H} + [\text{O}] \xrightarrow{\text{KMnO}_4} \rightarrow \text{R}_2\text{CO} + \text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} & (v.g.) \end{array}$$

These reactions offer a very good means of stepping down the fatty acid series (via the H.V.Z. reaction), one carbon atom at a time.

4. When heated with concentrated hydriodic acid, hydroxyacids are reduced to the corresponding fatty acid:

$$CH_3 \cdot CHOH \cdot CO_2H + 2HI \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H + H_2O + I_2$$

5. When hydroxyacids are heated, the product formed depends on the

relative positions of the hydroxyl and carboxyl groups.

(i) α-Hydroxyacids form lactides; these are six-membered ring compounds formed by reaction between two molecules of the hydroxy-acid, and are named systematically as 3:6 dialkyl-1:4-dioxan-2:5-dione:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{R-CHO[H HO]OC} & \longrightarrow & \text{R-CH-O-CO} \\ | & & | & | & | \\ \text{CO[OH H]OCH-R} & \longrightarrow & \text{CO-O-CH-R} \end{array} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$$

The tendency to form lactides is very pronounced, in many cases the lactide being formed by allowing the α-hydroxyacid to stand in a desiccator over concentrated sulphuric acid. Lactides are readily hydrolysed to the acid by alkali.

The distillation of  $\alpha$ -hydroxyacids produces aldehydes via the lactide:

$$2R \cdot CHOH \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow R \cdot CH \cdot O \cdot CO \longrightarrow 2R \cdot CHO + 2CO$$

$$CO \cdot O \cdot CH \cdot R$$

When heated with a trace of zinc chloride, lactides are converted into linear polyesters, HO—(—CHR•COO—)<sub>n</sub>—H, which regenerate the lactide on distillation under reduced pressure.

(ii) When  $\beta$ -hydroxyacids are heated, they eliminate a molecule of water to form mainly the  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated acid and a very small amount of the  $\beta\gamma$ -unsaturated acid. The reaction is best carried out by refluxing the  $\beta$ -hydroxyacid with 10 per cent. sodium hydroxide solution:

$$R \cdot CHOH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow R \cdot CH \cdot CH \cdot CO_2H + H_2O$$

(iii) On heating,  $\gamma$ - and  $\delta$ -hydroxyacids readily form *internal* esters known as lactones:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \qquad \text{HO} \\ \text{R*CH*CH}_2\text{*CH}_2\text{*CO} \longrightarrow \text{R*CH*CH}_2\text{*CO} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \\ \text{$\gamma$-acid} \qquad \text{$\gamma$-lactone} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \qquad \text{HO} \\ \text{R*CH*CH}_2\text{*CH}_2\text{*CH}_2\text{*CO} \longrightarrow \text{R*CH*CH}_2\text{*CH}_2\text{*CO} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \\ \text{$\delta$-lactone} \end{array}$$

β-Lactones from β-hydroxyacids can only be obtained under special conditions; in practice \beta-lactones may be prepared by shaking an aqueous solution of the sodium salt of the β-chloroacid with chloroform:

R·CHCl·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>Na 
$$\longrightarrow$$
 R·CH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO + NaCl

They may, however, be prepared more readily by reaction between keten and a carbonyl compound; e.g.,  $\beta$ -propiolactone, which promises to be an important intermediate, is prepared from keten and formaldehyde:

$$CH_2:C:O + H\cdot CHO \longrightarrow CH_2\cdot CH_2\cdot CO$$

According to the I.U.P.A.C. system of nomenclature, lactones are known as

-olides, e.g., CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO, δ-valerolactone or 1:5-pentanolide. The systematic name of this lactone is 4-hydroxybutane-1-carboxylic acid lactone.

Lactone formation takes place very readily, particularly with γ-hydroxyacids, which often form the lactone on standing at room temperature, or even in aqueous solution when the sodium salt is acidified.

y-Lactones may be prepared by the rearrangement of unsaturated acids by heating with concentrated sulphuric acid, e.g., oleic acid forms y-stearo-

$$\mathrm{CH_{3}\text{-}(CH_{2})_{7}\text{-}CH\text{-}CH\text{-}(CH_{2})_{7}\text{-}CO_{2}H} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_{2}SO_{4}}} \rightarrow \mathrm{CH_{3}\text{-}(CH_{2})_{13}\text{-}CH\text{-}CH_{2}\text{-}CH_{2}\text{-}CO}$$

 $\gamma$ -Butyrolactone is manufactured by the oxidation of tetramethylene glycol over a copper catalyst:

$$\text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{O}_2} \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}$$

It is an important intermediate in the preparation of polyamides. Lactones are converted into alkali salts when refluxed with excess alkali:

$$\text{R-CH-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-CO} + \text{NaOH} \longrightarrow \text{R-CHOH-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-CO}_2\text{Na}$$

Lactones are reduced by sodium amalgam in acid solution to the corresponding fatty acid:

$$\text{R-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-CO} + 2[\text{H}] \longrightarrow \text{R-CH}_2\text{-CH}_$$

On the other hand, lactones of polyhydroxyacids are reduced, under these conditions, to polyhydroxyaldehydes (see p. 447). Lithium aluminium hydride reduces lactones to diols, e.g.,  $\gamma$ -valerolactone forms pentane-i: 4-diol. When treated with concentrated halogen acid, lactones form the corre-

sponding halogen-acid:

$$\text{R-CH-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-CO} + \text{HX} \rightleftharpoons \text{R-CHX-CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-CO}_2\text{H}$$

With concentrated ammonium hydroxide solution, the hydroxyamide is formed:

$$R \cdot CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO + NH_3 \Longrightarrow R \cdot CHOH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH_2$$

δ-Lactones can change spontaneously into linear polyesters:

397

(iv) ε-Hydroxyacids, in certain cases, may form the lactone on heating. Usually they either eliminate a molecule of water to form two unsaturated acids, δε- and εζ- or form linear polyesters.

(v) Hydroxyacids with the hydroxyl group further removed than the ε-position, on heating, either eliminate a molecule of water to form unsaturated acids (of two types; cf. ε-hydroxyacids), or form linear esters.

Large ring lactones (fourteen- to eighteen-membered rings) have been prepared by the oxidation of cyclic ketones with Caro's acid (Ruzicka and Stoll, 1928):

$$\operatorname{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{(\operatorname{CH}_2)_n} \operatorname{CO} + [\operatorname{O}] \xrightarrow{\operatorname{H}_2 \operatorname{SO}_4} \operatorname{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{(\operatorname{CH}_2)_n} \operatorname{CO}$$

By using the high dilution principle of Ruggli (1912), large ring lactones have also been prepared from hydroxyacids in which the hydroxyl group is far removed from the carboxyl group. According to this principle, by using sufficiently dilute solutions of a hydroxyacid, the distance between different molecules can be made greater than the distance between the hydroxyl and carboxyl groups of the same molecule. Thus the cyclic compound (lactone) is formed instead of linear condensation taking place; e.g., Stoll and his coworkers (1934) found that ω-hydroxypentadecoic acid gave a high yield of lactone in very dilute solution.

Hunsdiecker and Erlbach (1947) have also prepared large ring lactones by the dilution principle. These workers cyclised ω-bromo-aliphatic acids by boiling dilute solutions in butanone with excess potassium carbonate; they obtained lactones in yields varying from 56·3 to 96·8 per cent., the yield increasing with the size of the ring.

increasing with the size of the ring.

Some large ring lactones occur naturally, e.g., ambrettolide (in musk):

Glycollic acid (hydroxyacetic acid, hydroxyethanoic acid), CH<sub>2</sub>OH·CO<sub>2</sub>H, is the simplest hydroxyacid, and occurs in the juice of beet and sugar-cane, and in unripe grapes. It may be prepared by refluxing an aqueous solution of potassium chloroacetate with sodium carbonate and then acidifying with hydrochloric acid:

Glycollic acid may also be prepared by warming a solution of formalin with potassium cyanide, and then acidifying with hydrochloric acid:

$$\text{H-CHO} + 2\text{KCN} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{OH-CO}_2\text{K} + \text{NH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{HCI}} C\text{H}_2\text{OH-CO}_2\text{H} \quad (70\%)$$

Glycollic acid is prepared industrially by the electrolytic reduction of oxalic acid. A more recent method of manufacture is to heat, at 160–170° and under pressure, a mixture of formaldehyde, carbon monoxide and water in acetic acid with sulphuric acid as catalyst:

$$\text{H-CHO} + \text{CO} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{OH-CO}_2\text{H}$$

If methanol is used instead of water, methyl glycollate is obtained.

Glycollic acid is a crystalline solid, m.p. 80°, readily soluble in water, ethanol and ether. It is oxidised to oxalic acid by nitric acid. Its lactide is known as glycollide.

Lactic acid (\alpha-hydroxypropionic acid, 2-hydroxypropanoic acid), CH3. CHOH. CO2H, may be prepared:

(i) By oxidising propylene glycol with dilute nitric acid:

$$CH_3 \cdot CHOH \cdot CH_2OH + 2[O] \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CHOH \cdot CO_2H + H_2O \quad (p.-f.)$$

(ii) By heating α-chloro- or α-bromopropionic acid with silver oxide in water, or with sodium hydroxide solution:

$$CH_3 \cdot CHBr \cdot CO_2H + H_2O \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CHOH \cdot CO_2H + HBr \quad (g.-v.g.)$$

(iii) By the hydrolysis of acetaldehyde cyanohydrin:

$$CH_3 \cdot CHO + HCN \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CHOH \cdot CN \xrightarrow{H_4O} CH_3 \cdot CHOH \cdot CO_2H$$

(iv) By the action of nitrous acid on alanine:

$$CH_3 \cdot CH(NH_2) \cdot CO_2H + HNO_2 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CHOH \cdot CO_2H + N_2 + H_2O$$

(v) Milk contains the sugar lactose, which is fermented by the Bacillus acidi lactiti:

$$C_{12}H_{22}O_{11} + H_2O \longrightarrow 4CH_3 \cdot CHOH \cdot CO_2H$$

This is the basis of the industrial preparation of lactic acid. A little sour milk is added to a solution of cane-sugar or glucose in the presence of excess chalk, and the temperature is maintained at 35°. As the lactic acid is produced, it is neutralised by the chalk, being precipitated as the insoluble calcium salt. The solution must be kept neutral, since the micro-organism ceases to function if the concentration of the lactic acid exceeds I per cent. The calcium lactate is filtered off and decomposed with the calculated quantity of dilute sulphuric acid. Lactic acid is also prepared by the fermentation of sucrose by Rhizopus oryzae.

Lactic acid is a colourless syrup, m.p. 18°, b.p. 122°/15 mm. It has a sour taste and smell, is hygroscopic, and is very soluble in water. It undergoes all the general reactions of α-hydroxyacids; oxidation with Fenton's

reagent converts it into pyruvic acid:

# $\mathrm{CH_3\text{-}CHOH\text{-}CO_2H} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_3O_3/Fe^{2+}}} \mathrm{CH_3\text{-}CO\text{-}CO_2H}$

It is oxidised to acetic acid by permanganate. Lactic acid is used in the tanning industry to remove lime from the hides; it is used in the dyeing

industry, and ethyl lactate is used as a solvent for cellulose nitrate.

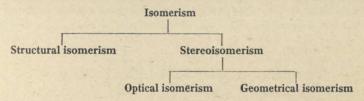
Lactic acid exists in three distinct forms, all of which have been shown to possess the same chemical structure. The three kinds of lactic acids are: (i) dextrorotatory lactic acid; (ii) lævorotatory lactic acid; (iii) DL-lactic acid. The lactic acid prepared by the above methods is the DL-. Dextrorotatory lactic acid may be obtained from meat extract; this acid is also known as sarcolactic acid (Greek: sarkos, flesh). Lævorotatory lactic acid may be obtained by the fermentation of sucrose by Bacillus acidi lævolactiti.

The chemical properties of these isomeric lactic acids are identical in all respects, except in their behaviour towards other optically active compounds (see later). The differences appear only in certain physical properties. The dextrorotatory and lævorotatory lactic acids both melt at 26°; the DL- melts at 18°. The main difference between dextrorotatory and lævorotatory lactic acid is their respective action on polarised light. This is

due to stereochemical differences in structure.

#### STEREOCHEMISTRY

Isomerism consists of three types:



Structural isomerism is due to the difference in structure, and is exhibited in three different ways.

(i) Chain or nuclear isomerism is exhibited by compounds which differ in

the arrangement of the carbon atoms, e.g., n- and isobutane.

(ii) Position isomerism is exhibited by compounds having the same carbon skeleton but differing in the position occupied by a substituent group, e.g., n- and isopropyl alcohols;  $\alpha$ -,  $\beta$ - and  $\gamma$ -hydroxybutyric acids; ortho-, meta- and para-nitrophenols.

$$\begin{array}{c|cccc} OH & OH & OH \\ \hline & NO_2 & \hline & NO_2 & \hline \\ & ortho- & meta- & para- \end{array}$$

(iii) Functional group isomerism is exhibited by compounds having different functional groups, i.e., compounds with the same molecular formula but belonging to different homologous series, e.g., ethanol and dimethyl ether; acetone and propionaldehyde.

This type of isomerism was originally called *metamerism* by Berzelius, but he also included under this heading compounds in the same homologous series, *e.g.*, diethyl ether, methyl *n*-propyl ether and methyl *iso* propyl ether. The name metamerism is now reserved only for the latter type of isomerism (p. 144).

Tautomerism may be regarded as a special case of functional group

isomerism

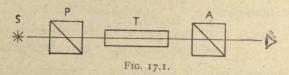
Stereoisomerism is exhibited by isomers having the same structure but differing in their spatial arrangement, i.e., having different configurations. Different configurations are possible because carbon forms mainly covalent bonds and these have direction in space.

Optical isomerism is characterised by compounds having the same structure but different configurations, and because of their molecular asymmetry these compounds rotate the plane of polarisation of plane-polarised light. Optical isomers have similar physical and chemical properties; the most marked difference between them is their action on polarised light (see below).

Geometrical isomerism or cis-trans isomerism is characterised by compounds having the same structure but different configurations, and because of their molecular symmetry these compounds do not rotate the plane of polarisation of plane-polarised light. Geometrical isomers differ in all their physical and in many of their chemical properties. They can also exhibit optical isomerism if the structure of the molecule, apart from giving rise to geometrical isomerism, also satisfies the requirements for optical isomerism.

Optical activity is the name given to the phenomenon exhibited by compounds which, when placed in the path of a beam of polarised light, are

capable of rotating the plane of polarisation to the left or right; such compounds are said to be optically active. The instrument used for measuring the rotatory power of a substance is the *polarimeter*.\* Essentially it consists of two Nicol prisms, one the polariser (P) and the other, the analyser (A), and between them a tube (T) which contains the substance (a liquid or a solution) to be examined (Fig. 1). S is a source of monochromatic light.



If the substance rotates the plane of polarisation to the right, *i.e.*, if the analyser has to be turned to the right (clockwise) to restore the original field, the substance is said to be *dextrorotatory*; if to the left (anticlockwise), *lævorotatory*.

It has been found that the amount of the rotation depends, for a given substance, on a number of factors, e.g., (i) the thickness of the layer traversed, (ii) the nature of the solvent (if in solution), (iii) the temperature, and (iv) the wavelength of the light used. If  $[\alpha]$  represents the specific rotation, l the thickness of the layer in decimetres, d the density of the liquid (if a solution is being examined, d is equal to the number of grams of substance per millilitre of solution), and the determination is carried out at temperature  $l^{\circ}$  using sodium light (the D line), then if  $\alpha$  is the observed rotation (+ or -),

$$[\alpha]_{\mathbf{D}}^{l} = \frac{\alpha_{\mathbf{D}}^{l}}{l \times d}$$

Since the value of the rotation depends on the solvent, this should also be stated.

The original method of indicating optical isomers was to prefix each isomer by d or l according as it was dextrorotatory or levorotatory. Van't Hoff (1874) introduced a + and - notation for designating the configuration of an asymmetric carbon atom. He used mechanical models (built of tetrahedra), and the + and - signs were given by observing the tetrahedra of the mechanical model from the centre of the model. Thus a molecule of the type Cabd-Cabd may be designated ++, --, and +- (see also p. 409). E. Fischer (1891) pointed out that this + and - notation can lead to wrong interpretations when applied to molecules containing more than two asymmetric carbon atoms (the signs given depend on the point of observation in the molecule). Fischer therefore proposed the use of plane projection diagrams of the mechanical models instead of the + and - system.

Fischer, working on the configurations of the sugars, obtained the plane formulæ (I) and (II) for the enantiomorphs of saccharic acid, and arbitrarily chose (I) for dextrorotatory saccharic acid, and called it d-saccharic acid. He then, from this, deduced formula (III) for d-glucose. Furthermore, Fischer thought it was more important to indicate stereochemical relationships than merely to indicate the actual direction of rotation. He therefore proposed that the prefixes d and l should refer to stereochemical relationships and not to the direction of rotation of the compound. The question now is: Is it possible to choose a standard to which all sugars may be referred? Fischer apparently intended to use the scheme whereby the

<sup>\*</sup> All standard text-books of Practical Physical Chemistry describe the construction and operation of polarimeters.

compounds derived from a given aldehyde sugar should be designated accord-

ing to the direction of rotation of the parent aldose.

Natural mannose is dextrorotatory. Hence natural mannose will be d-mannose, and all derivatives of d-mannose, e.g., mannonic acid, mannose phenylhydrazone, etc., will thus belong to the d-series. Natural glucose is dextrorotary. Hence natural glucose will be d-glucose, and all its derivatives

will belong to the d-series. Furthermore, Fischer (1890) was able to convert natural mannose into natural glucose, and since the latter is d-glucose (according to Fischer's scheme), the prefix d for natural glucose happens to agree with its dextrorotation (with d-mannose as standard). Now natural fructose can also be prepared from natural mannose (or natural glucose), and so will be d-fructose. Natural fructose, however, is lævorotatory, and so is written as d(-)-fructose, the symbol d indicating its stereochemical relationship to the parent aldose glucose, and the symbol - placed in parentheses before the name indicating the actual direction of rotation.

More recently, the symbols d and l have been replaced by D and L for configurational relationships, e.g., L(+)-lactic acid. Also, when dealing with compounds that cannot be referred to sugars, (+)- and (-)- are used to indicate the sign of rotation. The prefixes dextro and lævo (without

hyphens) are also used.

Fischer's proposal to use each aldose as the arbitrary standard for its derivatives leads to some difficulties, e.g., natural arabinose is dextrorotatory, and so is to be designated p-arabinose. Now this p-arabinose can be converted into mannonic acid, which, if p-arabinose is the parent aldose, will therefore be p-mannonic acid. This same acid, however, can also be obtained from p-mannose, and so should be p-mannonic acid. Thus in cases such as this the use of the symbol p or p will depend on the historical order in which the stereochemical relationships were established!

Rosanoff (1906) showed that if the enantiomorphs of glyceraldehyde (a molecule which contains only *one* asymmetric carbon atom) are chosen as the (arbitrary) standard, then a satisfactory system for correlating stereochemical relationships can be developed. He also proposed that the formula of dextrorotatory glyceraldehyde should be written as in Fig. 2 (c), in order that the arrangement of its asymmetric carbon atom should agree with the arrangement of  $C_5$  ( $C_1$  is the carbon of the CHO group) in Fischer's projection formula for natural glucose (see formula (III) above).

It is of great interest to note in this connection that in 1906 the active forms of glyceraldehyde had not been isolated, but in 1914 Wohl and Momber separated DL-glyceraldehyde into its enantiomorphs, and in 1917 they showed that dextrorotary glyceraldehyde was stereochemically related to natural glucose (i.e., with D(+)-glyceraldehyde as arbitrary standard,

natural glucose is D(+)-glucose).

The accepted convention for drawing D(+)-glyceraldehyde—the agreed

(arbitrary) standard—is shown in Fig. 2 (a). The tetrahedron is drawn so that three corners are imagined to be above the plane of the paper, and the fourth below this plane. Furthermore, the spatial arrangement of the four groups joined to the central carbon atom must be placed as shown in (a), i.e., the accepted convention for drawing D(+)-glyceraldehyde places the hydrogen atom at the left and the hydroxyl group at the right, with the aldehyde group at the top corner. Now imagine the tetrahedron to rotate about the

CHO CHO CHO CHO
H
CH2OH
$$(a)$$
 $(b)$ 
 $(c)$ 
 $(d)$ 
 $(d)$ 

horizontal line joining H and OH until it takes up position (b). This is the conventional position for a tetrahedron, groups joined to full horizontal lines being above the plane of the paper, and those joined to broken vertical lines being below the plane of the paper. The conventional plane-diagram is obtained by drawing the full horizontal and broken vertical lines of (b) as full lines, placing the groups as they appear in (b), and taking the asymmetric carbon atom to be at the point where the lines cross. Although (c) is a plane-diagram, it is most important to remember that horizonal lines represent groups above the plane, and vertical lines groups below the plane of the paper. Fig. (d) represents the plane-diagram formula of L(-)-glyceraldehyde; here the hydrogen atom is to the right and the hydroxyl group to the left. Another way of drawing (c) and (d) is to use broken vertical lines (instead of the full lines shown). Thus any compound that can be prepared from, or converted into, D (+)-glyceraldehyde will belong to the D-series. Similarly, any compound that can be prepared from, or converted into, L (-)-glyceraldehyde will belong to the L-series. When representing relative configurational relationships of molecules containing more than one asymmetric carbon atom, the asymmetric carbon atom of glyceraldehyde is always drawn at the bottom, the rest of the molecule being built up from this unit.

Thus we have a scheme of classification of relative configurations based on D(+)-glyceraldehyde as arbitrary standard. Until recently there was no way of determining, with certainty, the absolute configuration of molecules. Arbitrary choice makes the configuration of D(+)-glyceraldehyde have the hydrogen to the left and the hydroxyl to the right. Bijvoet et al. (1951), however, have shown by X-ray analysis that dextrorotatory tartaric acid has the configuration assigned to it by E. Fischer. Hence tartaric acid can be used as an absolute standard (see p. 419).

In 1848, Pasteur separated sodium ammonium racemate (p. 421) into two kinds of crystals by hand, and found that the specific rotation of each kind of crystal was the same, but one was dextrorotatory and the other,

lævorotatory. Pasteur was able to separate the crystals by hand because he observed that they had hemihedral facets, one set of crystals being the mirror images of the other set. Such crystals, one being the mirror image

of the other, are said to be enantiomorphous.

It has been found that only those structures, crystalline or molecular, which are not superimposable on their mirror images, are optically active. Such structures may be asymmetric, or dissymmetric. Asymmetric means completely devoid of the elements of symmetry. Dissymmetric means not completely devoid of symmetry, but possessing so few elements of symmetry as still to be capable of existing in two forms (one the mirror image of the other) which are not superimposable. To avoid unnecessary complications, we shall use the term asymmetric to cover both cases (of asymmetry and dissymmetry). If a compound is asymmetric, then it is to be expected that the original molecule and its mirror image might differ in some properties although their structures are identical. Experience shows that the most marked difference is their action on polarised light.

Optical activity may be due entirely to the crystal structure being asymmetric, e.g., quartz. In such cases the substance is optically active only so long as it remains solid, the optical activity being lost when the solid is fused or dissolved in a solvent. Quartz crystals exist in hemihedral forms. Hemihedral faces are those faces not symmetrically placed with respect to other faces; they occur only in half the positions where they might be expected to occur, and thus give the crystal an asymmetric structure (actually dissymmetric). The (+)- and (-)-forms of quartz are mirror images; but it should be noticed that many optically active crystals do not

possess hemihedral faces.

On the other hand, optical activity may be due entirely to molecular structure. In this case the molecular structure is asymmetric, i.e., the compounds have molecules in which the atoms are arranged spatially so that the original molecule is not superimposable on its mirror image. Such compounds are optically active in the solid, fused, dissolved or gaseous

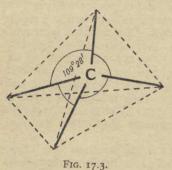
state, e.g., sucrose, lactic acid, limonene, etc.

A molecule and its mirror image, when they are not superimposable, are known as enantiomorphs (this name taken from crystallography) or optical antipodes. It appears that enantiomorphs are identical physically except in their manner of rotating polarised light; the rotations are equal but opposite. The crystal forms of enantiomorphs may be mirror images of each other, i.e., the crystals themselves may be enantiomorphous, but this is unusual. Enantiomorphs are similar chemically, but their rates of reaction with other optically active substances are usually different. They may also be different physiologically, e.g., (+)-histidine is sweet, (-)-tasteless; (-)-nicotine is more poisonous than (+)-; D(-) ascorbic acid (vitamin

C) is more efficient than L(+)-. In 1874, van't Hoff and Le Bel, independently, gave the solution to the problem of optical isomerism. Van't Hoff proposed the theory that if the four valencies of the carbon atom are arranged tetrahedrally with the carbon atom at the centre, then all the cases of isomerism known are accounted for. Le Bel's theory is substantially the same as van't Hoff's, but differs in that whereas van't Hoff believed that the valency distribution was definitely tetrahedral and fixed as such, Le Bel believed that the valency directions were not rigidly fixed, and did not specify the tetrahedral arrangement, but thought that whatever the spatial arrangement, the molecule Cabde would be asymmetric. Van't Hoff's theory is more in keeping with later work, e.g., in recent years physico-chemical evidence—X-ray and dipole moment studies-has shown that saturated carbon compounds exhibit a tetrahedral structure and that the carbon atom is situated inside the tetrahedron at the centre. Before the tetrahedral theory was suggested, it was believed that the four valencies of carbon were planar.

Two postulates underlie the tetrahedral theory.

(i) The principle of constancy of the valency angle. Mathematical calculation of the angle subtended by each side of a regular tetrahedron at the

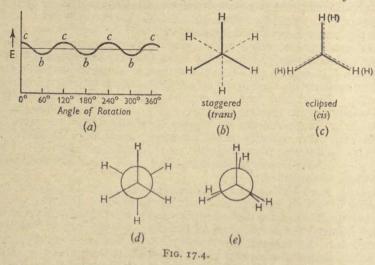


central carbon atom (Fig. 3) gives a value of 109° 28′. Originally it was postulated (van't Hoff) that the valency angle was fixed at this value. It is now known, however, that the valency angle may deviate from this value, e.g., in various ring structures; even so, great deviations lead to instability (see p. 487).

Quantum mechanical calculations show that the four valencies of carbon (in saturated compounds) are equivalent and directed towards the four corners of a regular tetrahedron; these four valencies are formed by the hybridisation of 2s and 2p<sup>3</sup> electrons

(p. 25). Furthermore, quantum mechanical calculation require the carbon bond angles to be close to the tetrahedral value, since change from this value is associated with loss in bond strength and consequently decrease in stability (see also p. 487).

(ii) The principle of free rotation about a single bond. Consider the ethane molecule,  $CH_3$ — $CH_3$ , and let us imagine that one methyl group is rotated about the C—C bond as axis with the other group at rest. The energy content, E, of the molecule will undergo the regular changes shown in Fig. 4 (a). Had there been complete free rotation, the graph would have been a horizontal straight line. Fig. (b) [the projection formula, obtained by viewing



the molecule along the bonding line of the two carbon atoms] represents the trans or staggered form in which the hydrogen atoms (on the two carbon atoms) are as far apart as possible. To change from this form to the cis or eclipsed form in which the hydrogen atoms are as close together as possible (Fig. c), energy must be supplied to overcome, among other things, the repulsion between hydrogen atoms. Thus the energy content of the mole-

cule in the eclipsed conformation is greater than that in the staggered conformation. The actual energy difference is 2.75 kg. cal./mole. This is much too small for either form to remain stable, i.e., the eclipsed and staggered forms are readily interconvertible, and so only one form of ethane can be isolated. Even so, the staggered conformation is the preferred form (see below). Newman (1952) has proposed projection formulæ 4(d) and 4(e) for 4(b) and 4(c) respectively. The carbon atom nearer the eye is designated by equally spaced radii, and the carbon atom further from the eye by a circle with three equally spaced radial extensions.

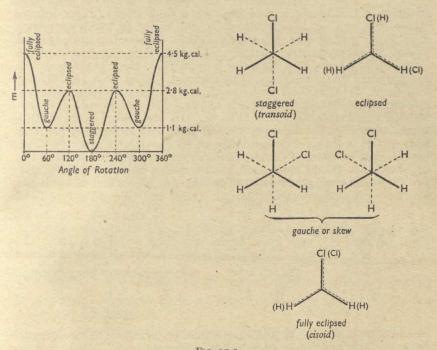


Fig. 17.5.

Now let us consider ethylene chloride. Here the energy changes are larger because (among other things) of the strong electrostatic repulsion between the chlorine atoms. According to Bernstein (1949), the potential energy of ethylene chloride undergoes the changes shown in Fig. 5. There are two positions of minimum energy, but the staggered conformation is the more preferred one, *i.e.*, the one in which the molecule largely remains. Dipole moment studies show that this is so in practice, and according to Mizushima et al. (1938), only the staggered form is present at low temperatures. (The student should draw the Newman projection formulæ of the above forms.)

Thus, in theory, there is no free rotation about a single bond, but in practice it may occur if the various forms do not differ very much in energy content (usually between I and Io kg. cal./mole). Molecules which can form isomers by rotation about single bonds are called **flexible molecules**, and the different forms taken up are different **conformations** (see also p. 488) or **rotational isomers**. Usually, the staggered conformation is the most stable one, and the eclipsed form is always avoided where possible.

Free rotation about a single bond is generally accepted in simple molecules.

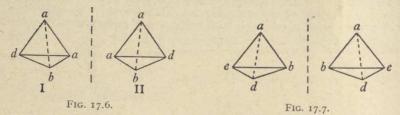
Restricted rotation about a single bond, however, may take place when the molecule contains groups large enough to impede free rotation, e.g., in ortho-



substituted diphenyls (p. 700), if groups A and B are sufficiently large, the two benzene rings cannot rotate through 360° about the single bond joining the two rings. In some cases, resonance may give rise to restricted rotation about a single bond (see, e.g., p. 688).

It has been pointed out in the foregoing account that the basis of optical activity is that the molecule should be asymmetric. The simplest type of asymmetric

structure is that which contains one carbon atom joined to four different atoms or groups, *i.e.*, a molecule of the type Cabde, in which the groups, a, b, d or e may or may not contain carbon. The carbon atom in Cabde is said to be asymmetric (actually, of course, it is the group which is asymmetric; a carbon atom cannot be asymmetric). Up to the present time, compounds of the type  $Ca_4$  (e.g.,  $CCl_4$ ),  $Ca_3b$  (e.g.,  $CHCl_3$ ),  $Ca_2b_2$  (e.g.,  $CH_2Cl_2$ ),  $Ca_2bd$  (e.g.,  $CH_2OH \cdot CO_2H$ ) have never been observed to exist as optical isomers. Only one form of each is known. This agrees with the tetrahedral configuration, e.g.,  $Ca_2bd$  (Fig. 6). (II), the mirror image of (I), is superimposable on (I); however the four groups are arranged in the tetrahedron, (II) is always superimposable on (I) (see footnote, p. 41). Thus there is only one form of  $Ca_2bd$ . Similarly, there is only one form of  $Ca_4$ ,  $Ca_3b$  or  $Ca_2b_2$ . On the other hand, the tetrahedral structure of Cabde gives two forms (no more), one related to the other as object and mirror image, which are not superimposable (Fig. 7). Thus a molecule of the type Cabde



should exist in two forms; and these should be detectable if the difference between them (physical or chemical) is sufficiently great. This would account for the structural identity and optical activity of molecules of the type Cabde, e.g., the lactic acids, CH<sub>3</sub>·CHOH·CO<sub>2</sub>H (Fig. 8). (III) and (IV)

$$H - C - OH$$
 $CH_3$ 
 $CH_3$ 
 $CH_3$ 
 $CO_2H$ 
 $CO$ 

are mirror images and cannot be superimposed. Further evidence that optical activity is due to this arrangement is shown by the fact that if lactic acid is reduced to propionic acid, optical activity disappears; propionic acid,  $CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$ , is a molecule of the type  $Ca_2bd$ , which is superimposable on its mirror image.

Groups a, b, d, e are all different, but two or more may be *structural* isomers, e.g., propylisopropylmethanol is optically active. The substitution of hydrogen by

407

deuterium has also been investigated in recent years to ascertain whether these two atoms are sufficiently different to give rise to optical isomerism. The earlier work gave conflicting results, but later work appears to be conclusive in favour of optical activity, e.g., Eliel (1949) prepared optically active methylphenyldeuteromethane,  $\mathrm{CH_3}\text{-}\mathrm{CHD}\text{-}\mathrm{C_6H_5}$ , by reducing optically active methylphenylmethyl chloride with lithium aluminium deuteride.

Lactic acid obtained from sour milk (and by any of the other methods described on p. 398) is not optically active. If we examine an equimolecular mixture of the dextrorotatory and lævorotatory lactic acids, we shall find that the mixture is optically inactive. This is to be expected, since optical isomers have equal but opposite rotatory power. Such a mixture (of equimolecular amounts) is said to be optically inactive by external compensation, and is known as a racemic modification. A racemic modification may be a purely mechanical mixture, a compound, or a solid solution; for this reason it is better to use the term racemic modification than racemic mixture. Lactic acid, which is optically inactive by external compensation, is known as racemic (r-) or DL-lactic acid.

We can now therefore account for the existence of three lactic acids:

(i) L(+)-lactic acid, m.p. 26°; prepared from meat extract (sarcolactic acid).

(ii) D(-)-lactic acid, m.p. 26°; prepared by the fermentation of sucrose by Bacillus acidi lævolactiti.

(iii) DL-lactic acid, m.p. 18°; prepared from e.g., sour milk.

Thus a compound with one asymmetric carbon atom exists in three

forms: D, L, and DL (or r-).

Isomeric with lactic acid is hydracrylic acid or β-hydroxypropionic acid, CH<sub>2</sub>OH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H. β-Hydroxypropionic acid may be prepared in a number of ways, *e.g.*, by the hydrolysis of ethylene cyanohydrin:

$$\text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{Cl} \xrightarrow{\text{KCN}} \text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CN} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \text{CH}_2\text{OH}\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \quad (28-31\%)$$

It may also be prepared by the action of silver oxide in boiling water on β-halogeno-propionic acid:

$$CH_2Br \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H + \text{``AgOH''} \longrightarrow CH_2OH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H + AgBr$$

β-Hydroxypropionic acid is a sour, syrupy liquid. It is not optically active (it does not contain an asymmetric carbon atom). When heated, it loses a molecule of water to form acrylic acid.

$$CH_2OH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow CH_2 \cdot CH \cdot CO_2H + H_2O$$

When oxidised, \(\beta\)-hydroxypropionic acid forms malonic acid:

$$CH_2OH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \xrightarrow{[O]} CO_2H \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H$$

β-Hydroxybutyric acid (3-hydroxybutanoic acid), CH<sub>3</sub>·CHOH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, may be prepared by oxidising aldol with ammoniacal silver nitrate:

$$CH_3 \cdot CHOH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CHO + Ag_2O \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CHOH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H + 2Ag$$

It may also be prepared by reducing acetoacetic ester, and hydrolysing the product:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{\cdot}\text{CO}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{[H]}} \text{CH}_3\text{\cdot}\text{CHOH}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ & \xrightarrow{\text{(i) KOH}} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3\text{\cdot}\text{CHOH}\text{\cdot}\text{CH}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$$

 $\beta$ -Hydroxybutyric acid can exist in D- and L-forms (it contains one asymmetric carbon atom). It occurs, together with acetoacetic acid, in diabetic urine; the acid found in urine is lævorotatory. When heated with sodium hydroxide solution,  $\beta$ -hydroxybutyric acid forms crotonic acid:

# $CH_3$ ·CHOH· $CH_2$ · $CO_2H$ $\longrightarrow$ $CH_3$ ·CH:CH· $CO_2H$ + $H_2O$

#### HYDROXY-DIBASIC AND POLYBASIC ACIDS

Before describing the individual acids, let us consider the stereochemistry of a molecule containing two asymmetric carbon atoms. First let us consider the case of a compound containing two structurally dissimilar carbon atoms, i.e., compounds of the type  $Cabd \cdot Cabe$ , e.g.,  $CH_3 \cdot CHBr \cdot CHBr \cdot CO_2H$ . Investigation shows that there are four possible spatial arrangements for this type of structure (Fig. 9). (I) and (II) are enantiomorphs, and an equimolecular mixture of them forms a racemic modification; similarly for (III) and (IV). Thus there are four optically active forms. In general, a compound containing n different asymmetric carbon atoms exists in  $2^n$ -optically active forms.

(I) and (III) are not identical in configuration and are not mirror images;

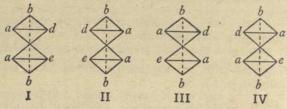
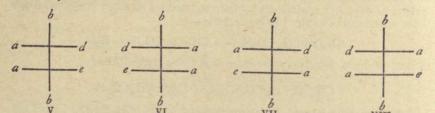


Fig. 17.9.

they are known as diastereoisomers, *i.e.*, they are optical isomers but not mirror images (not enantiomorphs). Thus a compound of the type Cabd-Cabe exists in six forms: two pairs of enantiomorphs, and two racemic modifications. Diastereoisomers differ in physical properties, such as melting point, solubility, specific rotation, etc. Chemically they are similar, but their rates of reaction with other optically active compounds are different.

The plane-diagrams of the molecules (I–IV) in Fig. 9 will be (V–VIII), respectively, as shown below:



When the formulæ are written as plane-diagrams, it is not always easy to see whether the mirror image in superimposable on the original molecule. A test for non-superimposability of plane-diagrams is to rotate the formula of the mirror image through 180° in the plane of the paper; if the result is the same formula as the original molecule, then the two molecules (orginal and image) are superimposable, and consequently not optically active (see also plane of symmetry, below).

Instead of writing down all the possible configurations, the number of optical isomers for a compound of the type Cabd Cabe may be obtained by

indicating the *configuration* of each asymmetric carbon atom by the symbol + or -, or by D or L; thus:

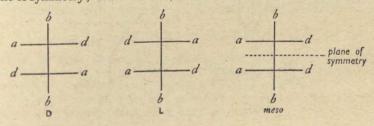
Now let us consider the case of a compound containing two asymmetric carbon atoms which are structurally the same, *i.e.*, compounds of the type  $Cabd \cdot Cabd$ , *e.g.*, tartaric acid,  $CO_2H \cdot CHOH \cdot CHOH \cdot CO_2H$ . In compounds of this type, it is obvious that  $D_1 = D_2$ .

$$\begin{array}{c|ccccc} Cabd & D & L & D & L \\ \hline \\ Cabd & D & L & L & D \\ \hline \\ (IX) & (X) & (XI) & (XII) \\ \hline \end{array}$$

In molecules (IX) and (X), the upper and lower halves reinforce each other; hence (IX), as a whole, has the dextro-, and (X), the levo-configuration, i.e., (IX) and (X) are optically active, and enantiomorphous. On the other hand, in (XI) the two equal halves are in opposition, and hence the molecule, as a whole, will not show optical activity. It is also obvious that (XI) and (XII) are identical, i.e., there is only one optically inactive form of Cabd·Cabd. Molecule (XI) is said to be optically inactive by internal compensation; it is known as the meso-form, and is a diastereoisomer of (IX) and (X). Thus there are four possible forms: D-, L-, DL- and meso-. The meso-form is also known as the inactive form and is represented as the i-form. The meso-form cannot be resolved.

Molecule (XI) is an example of a compound having two asymmetric carbon atoms, but is optically inactive (by internal compensation). It is therefore obvious that inspection of the usual structural formula, which contains two (or more) asymmetric carbon atoms, is not sufficient to decide whether the molecule is optically active or not. The molecule as a whole must be asymmetric. The test of superimposing the original formula (tetrahedral) on its mirror image definitely indicates whether the molecule is symmetrical or not. The only satisfactory way in which superimposability may be ascertained is to build up models of the molecule and its mirror image. Usually, this is not convenient. Alternatively, superimposability may be determined by rotation of the plane-formula in the plane of the paper (see above). A much simpler device to decide whether a molecule is symmetrical or not is to ascertain whether it contains a plane of symmetry, a centre of symmetry, or an alternating axis of symmetry. If any one of these is present the molecule is symmetrical, i.e., superimposable on its mirror image.

A plane of symmetry divides a molecule in such a way that points (atoms or groups of atoms) on the one side of the plane form mirror images of those on the other side. This test may be applied to both solid and plane-formulæ, e.g., the plane-formula of the meso form of Cabd·Cabd possesses a plane of symmetry; the other two, D- and L-, do not:



It should also be observed that rotation of the formula of the mirror image of the meso form through 180° in the plane of the paper produces the formula of the original molecule. Similar treatment of the L-formula does not produce the D-formula.

A centre of symmetry is a point from which lines, when drawn on one side and produced an equal distance on the other side, will meet exactly similar points in the molecule. This test can be satisfactorily applied only to

three-dimensional formulæ, particularly those of ring systems, e.g.,

2:4-dimethylcyclobutane-1:3-dicarboxylic acid. The form shown possesses a centre of symmetry which is the centre of the ring. This form is therefore optically inactive.

(ii) Dimethyldiketopiperazine exists in two geometrical isomeric forms,

cis and trans:

The cis isomer has neither a plane nor a centre of symmetry. It can therefore exist in two enantiomorphous forms; both are known. The trans isomer has a centre of symmetry and is therefore optically inactive.

It is important to note that only even-numbered rings can possibly possess

a centre of symmetry.

Up to the present, all optically active *natural* compounds have been found to consist of molecules which owe their asymmetry to the absence of both a plane and centre of symmetry. It is possible, however, for these elements of symmetry to be *absent* and the molecule to be superimposable on its mirror image and hence not be optically active. Such a molecule will possess an **alternating axis of symmetry**. This may be defined as follows: a molecule possesses an *n*-fold alternating axis of symmetry if, when rotated

411

through an angle of  $360^{\circ}/n$  about this axis and then followed by reflection in a plane perpendicular to the axis, the molecule is the same as it was in the

starting position.

McCasland and Proskow (1956) have now synthesised, for the first time, a compound which owes its symmetry to the presence of an alternating axis of symmetry only (this compound possesses neither a plane nor a centre of symmetry). It is the N-spiro-compound (XIII) (as the p-toluenesulphonate). If (XIII) is rotated through 90° about the co-axis of the two rings, (XIV) is obtained. Reflection of (XIV) through a central plane perpendicular to this axis gives a molecule identical and coincident with (XIII).

#### Resolution of Racemic Modifications

When optically active compounds are prepared by synthetic methods, the usual result is a racemic modification; e.g., bromination of propionic acid results in the formation of  $DL-\alpha$ -bromopropionic acid:

(II) and (III) (Fig. 10) are enantiomorphs, and since molecule (I) is symmetrical about its vertical axis, it can be anticipated from the theory of probability that either hydrogen atom should be replaced equally well to give  $DL_{\alpha}$ -bromopropionic acid. This actually does occur in practice.

The process of separating a racemic modification into its enantiomorphs

is known as resolution. Various methods have been introduced.

I. Mechanical separation (Pasteur, 1848). In this method the crystals are, if sufficiently well defined, actually separated by hand; the crystals must be enantiomorphous. This method is applicable only to racemic mixtures, and is mainly of historical interest. This method of resolution is also known as spontaneous resolution.

2. Biochemical separation (Pasteur, 1858). Certain bacteria and moulds, when they grow in a dilute solution of a racemic modification, destroy one optical isomer more rapidly than the other; e.g., Penicillium glaucum (a mould), when grown in a solution of ammonium racemate, attacks the

D-form leaving the L-.

3. By means of salt-formation (Pasteur, 1858). This method, which is the best of all the methods of resolution, consists in converting the optical isomers in a racemic modification into *diastereoisomers*; e.g., if an optically active base is combined with a racemic acid, two diastereoisomers are obtained:

$$(D_{acid} + L_{acid}) + 2D_{base} \longrightarrow (D_{acid}D_{base}) + (L_{acid}D_{base})$$

Because of their different solubilities, these diastereoisomers may be separated by fractional crystallisation. After separation, the acids may be regenerated by hydrolysis with inorganic acids or with alkalis.

Bases which are used for the resolution of racemic acids are mainly alkaloids, e.g., quinine, strychnine, brucine, cinchonine, morphine, etc.

Acids which are used for the resolution of racemic bases are, e.g., tartaric acid, camphorsulphonic acid, bromocamphorsulphonic acid.

The method of salt-formation has been extended to compounds other than acids and bases, e.g., (i) Racemic alcohols are converted into the acid ester derivative with phthalic anhydride:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_{\text{CO}}\text{O} + \text{ROH} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_{\text{o}}\text{R} \\ \text{CO}_{\text{o}}\text{H} \end{array}$$

The acid ester, consisting of equimolecular amounts of the D- and L-forms, may now be resolved by the method used for acids.

(ii) Racemic aldehydes and racemic ketones may be resolved by means of optically active derivatives of hydrazine, e.g., (—)-menthylhydrazine.

Resolution of racemic modifications by means of salt formation may be complicated by the phenomenon of asymmetric transformation. This phenomenon is exhibited by compounds that are optically unstable, i.e., the enantiomorphs are readily interconvertible:

It is possible to get *complete* conversion of C into the form (as salt) that crystallises from solution. The form may be (+) or (-), depending on the nature of the base (used for resolving acids) and the solvent.

4. Selective adsorption. Optically active substances may be selectively adsorbed by some optically active adsorbent, e.g., Henderson and Rule (1939) resolved a racemic modification of a camphor derivative on p-lactose as adsorbent; Prelog and Wieland (1944) resolved Tröger's base on p-lactose (p. 433).

5. Channel complex formation. This method is possible because the complexes of each enantiomorph have different solubilities; e.g., Schlenk (1952) has resolved (±)-2-chloro-octane by means of channel complex formation with urea (see p. 387).

## Racemisation

By using suitable conditions, it is possible to cause most optically active compounds to lose their optical activity without changing their structure. This means that the (+)- and (-)-forms of most optically active compounds are convertible one into the other, the final result being a racemic modification. Such a transformation is known as racemisation. The method of effecting racemisation depends on the nature of the compound in question; generally, heat, light or chemical reagents may be used. Thus, if the starting material is the (+)-form, then after treatment half will have been converted into the (-)-form; similarly, when starting with the (-)-form, half will be converted into the (+)-form, e.g., when (+)- or (-)-lactic acid is warmed with sodium hydroxide solution, the result is (+)-lactic

In some cases racemisation occurs spontaneously at room temperature; it is then known as autoracemisation, e.g., dimethyl bromosuccinate autoracemises.

Many different types of compounds can racemise, and a number of mechanisms have been developed, each mechanism applying to a particular type of compound. One important type of compound that readily racemises is that in which the asymmetric carbon atom is joined to a hydrogen atom and a negative group. Since this type of compound can undergo tautomeric

change, the mechanism proposed for this racemisation is one via enolisation, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} H & O \\ R-C-C-OH \Longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} OH \\ R-C-C-OH \end{bmatrix} \Longrightarrow (\pm)\text{-acid} \\ R' & \text{loss of asymmetry} \end{array}$$

Clearly, when the intermediate enol form, which is no longer asymmetrical, reverts to the stable form, it can do so equally well to produce the (+)- or (—)-forms, *i.e.*, it will racemise.

Some compounds which cannot undergo tautomeric change can, nevertheless, be racemised, e.g., (—)-limonene, some diphenyl compounds. The mechanism of these racemisations is uncertain.

## The Walden Inversion (Optical Inversion)

By a series of reactions, Walden (1893) was able to transform an optically active compound into its optical isomer. In some cases the product is 100 per cent. pure, *i.e.*, the *inversion* is quantitative; in other cases the product is a mixture of the (+)- and (-)-forms, but in unequal quantities, *i.e.*, a partial inversion has taken place.

The phenomenon was first discovered by Walden with the following

reactions:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} & \xrightarrow{\text{PCI}_{\text{s}}} & \text{CHCl} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} & \xrightarrow{\text{``AgOH''}} & \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} & \xrightarrow{\text{D-chlorosuccinic acid}} & \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{(I)} & \text{(II)} & \text{(III)} \end{array}$$

The change: L-malic acid to D-chlorosuccinic acid to D-malic acid, constitutes a Walden inversion. The Walden inversion may be defined as the conversion of the L-form into the D-, or vice versa, without recourse to resolution. In one of the two reactions there must be an interchange of position between two groups; e.g., if the configuration of (I) corresponds with that of (II), the inversion must have taken place between (II) and (III). This "definition" of the Walden inversion was used by Fischer (1906). However, now that the mechanism of substitution at a saturated carbon atom has been well worked out, the term Walden inversion is now applied to any single reaction in which inversion of configuration occurs.

As the above experiment stands, there is no way of telling at which stage inversion has occurred. Change in the sign of rotation does not necessarily indicate an inversion of configuration; e.g., when D(+)-glyceraldehyde is

oxidised to glyceric acid, the acid obtained is D(-)-glyceric acid.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CHO & CO_2H \\ H & OH & \stackrel{[O]}{\longrightarrow} & H & OH \\ \hline CH_2OH & CH_2OH \\ D(+)\text{-glyceric acid} \end{array}$$

Both compounds are *stereochemically* related, but the signs of rotation are opposite. Thus it is necessary to have methods to determine relative configurations. The above example with glyceraldehyde is easy to solve; both have the same relative configurations, since the asymmetric carbon atom

is not affected in the reaction, and so inversion is not possible. When, however, the asymmetric carbon atom is involved in various reactions, the problem is far more difficult.

Kenyon et al. (1925) established a basis for the determination of relative configurations as follows. These authors carried out a series of reactions on optically active hydroxy compounds. Now it has been established that in the esterification of a monocarboxylic acid by an alcohol under ordinary conditions, acyl-oxygen fission occurs (see p. 187); i.e.,

$$R \cdot CO \longrightarrow H + R'O \longrightarrow R \cdot COOR' + H_2O$$

Kenyon et al. assumed that in all reactions of this type the R'—O bond remained intact, and consequently no inversion of the alcohol is possible. The following chart shows a series of reactions carried out on ethyl (+)-lactate; Ts = p-tosyl group, i.e., p-toluenesulphonyl group, CH<sub>3</sub>·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·SO<sub>2</sub>—, Ac = CH<sub>3</sub>·CO, and the symbol —<sub>8</sub>  $\rightarrow$  is used to represent inversion in that step.

(IV) and (VI) have the same relative configurations although the sign of rotation has changed. Similarly, (IV) and (V) have the same relative configurations. Reaction of (V) with AcO<sup>-</sup>K<sup>+</sup>, however, produces (VII), the enantiomorph of (VI). It should be noted that if inversion is going to occur, the *complete group* attached to the asymmetric carbon atom must be removed. The converse, however, is not necessarily true, *i.e.*, removal of a complete group does not invariably result in inversion (see below).

In this way, Kenyon has been able to relate configurations of various com-

pounds (see also p. 417).

The outcome of much investigation has shown that many factors play a part in the Walden inversion, e.g., the nature of the reagent, solvent and compound. According to the theory of Hughes and Ingold, nucleophilic substitution reactions may take place by either the  $S_{\rm N}2$  or  $S_{\rm N}1$  mechanism (p. 106).

# (i) The S<sub>N</sub>2 mechanism.

$$HO^{\frown}R - X \longrightarrow HO - - R - - X \longrightarrow HO - R + X$$

In the transition state, the groups OH and X are collinear and on opposite sides of the attacked carbon atom. Furthermore, the line joining OH and X is perpendicular to the plane containing the other three groups a, b and d. In the original molecule CabdX, the four groups are arranged tetrahedrally. Hence to achieve a planar configuration of Cabd in the transition state, the carbon atom changes from tetrahedral to trigonal hybridisation, the remaining p, orbital being used (by means of its two lobes) to hold the groups OH and X by "half-bonds". When X is ejected, the carbon atom returns to its state of tetrahedral hybridisation (see diagram below).

The above reaction is a three-centre reaction, proceeding by an end-on approach.

$$HO^- + \bigvee_{b = 1}^{a} \times \longrightarrow HO^- - \bigvee_{b = 1}^{a} \times \longrightarrow \bigoplus_{d = 1}^{a} + \times^-$$

Hughes et al. (1935) studied: (a) the interchange reaction of (+)-2-iodo-octane with radioactive iodine (as NaI\*) in acetone solution, and (b) the racemisation of (+)-2-iodo-octane by ordinary NaI under the same conditions. These reactions were shown to occur by the  $S_{\rm N}^2$  mechanism, and the results showed that every halide-halide\* displacement was always accompanied by inversion. Thus, this experiment leads to the assumption that an  $S_{\rm N}^2$  reaction always gives inversion; this is fully supported by other experimental work.

## (ii) The SNI mechanism.

$$R \xrightarrow{X} \stackrel{\text{slow}}{\rightleftharpoons} X^- + R^+ \xrightarrow{OH^-} ROH$$

When the reaction proceeds by this mechanism, then inversion and retention (racemisation) will occur, the amount of each depending on various factors. The carbonium ion is flat (trigonal hybridisation), and hence attack by nucleophilic reagents can take place equally well on either side, *i.e.*, equal amounts of (+)- and (-)-forms are produced; this is racemisation. Complete racemisation, however, can be expected only if the carbonium ion is sufficiently long-lived; this is favoured by low reactivity of the carbonium ion and low concentration of the nucleophilic reagent. On the other hand, during the actual ionisation, the retiring negative group will shield attack on that side; this encourages end-on attack on the other side, thereby leading to inversion. In general, the  $S_N$ I mechanism is accompanied by inversion and racemisation, but in some cases there may be complete inversion.

Arylmethanols react with thionyl chloride by the  $S_Ni$  mechanism (substitution, nucleophilic, internal), e.g., Hughes, Ingold et al. (1937) have shown that optically active  $\alpha$ -phenylethanol ( $C_0H_5$ -CHMe- = R) reacts with thionyl chloride to give a chloride with complete retention. The mechanism proposed is  $S_Ni$  via a chlorosulphinate.

$$\begin{array}{c} H & Cl \\ R \longrightarrow S \longrightarrow O \longrightarrow HCl + R \longrightarrow S \longrightarrow RCl + SO_2 \\ Cl & Cl \end{array}$$

Participation of neighbouring groups in nucleophilic substitution. So far, we have discussed polar and steric effects on rates and mechanisms of reactions (for solvent effects, see p. 109). We have already seen that the phenomenon of neighbouring group participation may operate in various rearrangements (p. 101). In the same way, this effect may also operate in nucleophilic substitution reactions. Here we have a group attached to the carbon atom adjacent to the carbon atom where nucleophilic substitution occurs and, during the course of the reaction, becomes bonded or partially bonded to the reaction centre. When the reaction is accelerated by neighbouring group participation, that reaction is said to be anchimerically assisted. As we have seen, various atoms exhibit this phenomenon of neighbouring group participation, e.g., halogen. Brominium (bromonium) ions were first proposed by Roberts et al. (1937) as intermediates in the addition of bromine to olefins

(see p. 429). The existence of this cyclic brominium ion (bridged ion) has been demonstrated by Winstein *et al.* (1939), who found that the action of fuming hydrobromic acid on (-)-threo-3-bromobutan-2-ol gave  $(\pm)$ -2: 3-dibromobutane.

Had no neighbouring group participation occurred, then if the reaction were  $S_N 2$ , complete inversion would have occurred only at  $C_1$ . If the reaction were  $S_N 1$ ,  $C_1$  would have formed a classical carbonium ion, and so racemisation would have occurred at  $C_1$  only. Since retention or inversion of both  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  occurs, the results are explained as shown above. If the Brion attacks  $C_1$  from the back, the (—)-form is produced; if it attacks  $C_2$  from the back, the (+)-form is produced.

### **Asymmetric Synthesis**

In ordinary laboratory preparations of optically active compounds, the racemic modification is always obtained. By special means, however, it is possible to prepare optically active compounds from symmetrical compounds (i.e., not optically active) without the necessity of resolution. The method involves the use of optically active compounds, and is known as asymmetric synthesis. The first asymmetric synthesis was carried out by Marckwald (1904), who prepared an active (—)-valeric acid (lævorotatory to the extent of about 10 per cent. of the pure compound) by heating the half brucine salt of ethylmethylmalonic acid at 170°:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_{3} \\ C_{2}H_{5} \\ CO_{2}H \\ CO_{2}H$$

(I) and (II) are diastereoisomers; so are (III) and (IV). (V) and (VI) are enantiomorphs, and since the mixture is optically active, they must be present in unequal amounts. This was believed to be due to the different rates of decomposition of diastereoisomers (I) and (II).

This reaction was reinvestigated by Eisenlohr and Meier (1938), and they believed that the half-brucine salts were not present in equal amounts in the solid form (as thought by Marckwald). These authors suggested that as the less soluble salt crystallised out (during evaporation of the solution), some of the more soluble salt spontaneously changed into the less soluble salt to restore the equilibrium between the two; thus the final result was a mixture of the half-brucine salt containing a larger proportion of the less soluble diastereoisomer. If this be the case, then we are dealing with an example of asymmetric transformation (p. 412). Kenyon and Ross (1952) have also reinvestigated this reaction, and their work appears to show that the above reaction is a true asymmetric synthesis. According to these authors, when the half-brucine salt is heated, decarboxylation occurs with the intermediate formation of a carbanion. (I) and (II) both produce the same carbanion:

$$I \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CH_3 \\ \hline C_2H_5 \end{array} \\ \bar{C} \cdot CO_2H[(-)\text{-brucine}] \longleftarrow II$$

Combination of this carbanion with a proton would produce diastereoisomers (III) and (IV) in different amounts, since, in general, diastereoisomers are formed at different rates.

McKenzie (1905) reduced with aluminium amalgam pyruvic esters in which the alcohol was optically active, e.g., (—)-amyl alcohol, (—)-menthol, etc. When the product, lactic acid ester, was hydrolysed, the resulting lactic acid was found to be slightly lævorotatory:

$$\text{CH}_3\text{·CO·CO}_2\text{R} + 2\text{[H]} \xrightarrow{\text{Al/Hg}} \text{CH}_3\text{·CHOH·CO}_2\text{R} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_4\text{O}} \text{CH}_3\text{·CHOH·CO}_2\text{H}$$

Prelog et al. (1953) have studied, by conformational analysis, the steric course of the addition of Grignard reagents to benzoylformic esters of asymmetric alcohols, and have found that the configuration of the

$$C_6H_5^{\bullet}CO^{\bullet}CO_2R \xrightarrow[\text{(i) R'MgX}]{\text{(ii) hydrolysis}} C_6H_5^{\bullet}CHOH^{\bullet}CO_2H$$

asymmetric carbon atom in the stereoisomer that predominated in this reaction could be correlated with the asymmetric carbon atom in R, e.g., (—)-menthol and (—)-borneol are both configurationally related to (—)-glyceraldehyde, and both lead to a predominance of the (—)-hydroxyacid.

A special case of asymmetric synthesis is absolute asymmetric synthesis. This is the preparation of an optically active compound without the intermediate use of optically active reagents. The first conclusive evidence for an absolute asymmetric synthesis was obtained by Kuhn and Knopf (1930), who irradiated  $(\pm)$ - $\alpha$ -azidopropionic dimethylamide,  $CH_3$ · $CH(N_3)$ ·CO· $N(CH_3)_2$ , with dextro circularly polarised light and obtained a product that was slightly dextrorotatory. When the amide was irradiated with  $l \varpi vo$  circularly polarised light, the product was slightly lævorotatory.

Tartronic acid (hydroxymalonic acid), CO<sub>2</sub>H·CHOH·CO<sub>2</sub>H, may be prepared by heating bromomalonic acid with silver oxide suspended in water:

$$CHBr(CO_2H)_2 + "AgOH" \longrightarrow CHOH(CO_2H)_2 + AgBr$$

It is a crystalline solid which, heated to  $160^{\circ}$ , melts with the evolution of carbon dioxide and the formation of polyglycollide,  $(C_2H_2O_2)_n$ .

Malic acid (hydroxysuccinic acid, hydroxybutanedioic acid), CO<sub>2</sub>H·CHOH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, occurs in sour apples (Latin: malum, apple), fruits, berries, etc. It may be obtained from mountain-ash berries; the juice is expressed and boiled with calcium hydroxide solution. The precipitated calcium malate is collected by filtration and decomposed with the calculated quantity of dilute sulphuric acid. Malic acid is now being made synthetically by heating maleic acid with dilute sulphuric acid under pressure:

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{CH-CO}_2\text{H} \\
\parallel \\
\text{CH-CO}_2\text{H}
\end{array} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4} \xrightarrow{\text{CHOH-CO}_2\text{H}} (\text{100\%})$$

Malic acid may be conveniently prepared in the laboratory by heating bromosuccinic acid with silver oxide suspended in water:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CHBr-CO}_2\text{H} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} + \text{``AgOH''} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CHOH-CO}_2\text{H} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} + \text{AgBr}$$

Malic acid contains one asymmetric carbon atom, and can therefore exist in the D-, L- and DL-forms. Malic acid from natural sources is L(-); synthetic malic acid is DL; D(+)-malic acid may be obtained by the careful reduction of D(+)-tartaric acid with concentrated hydriodic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{H-C-OH} \\ \text{HO-C-H} \\ \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} + 2\text{HI} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{H-C-OH} \\ \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} + I_2 + I_2\text{O}$$

D(+)-Malic acid may also be obtained from the L(-)-isomer by means of the Walden inversion.

L(—)-Malic acid is a crystalline deliquescent solid, m.p. 100°, readily soluble in water and ethanol. It behaves both as an alcohol and acid. Inspection of the formula of malic acid shows it to be an  $\alpha$ -hydroxyacid with respect to one carboxyl group, and a  $\beta$ -hydroxyacid with-respect to the other. Such acids, when heated, undergo the reaction characteristic of the  $\beta$ -acid, *i.e.*, they eliminate a molecule of water to form an unsaturated acid (not the lactide). Thus, on heating, malic acid forms maleic anhydride and fumaric acid (q.v.):

Malic acid may be reduced to succinic acid by heating with hydriodic acid.

Malic acid is gradually replacing citric and tartaric acids in beverages, jellies, etc.

Tartaric acid (a: a'dihydroxysuccinic acid, 2: 3-dihydroxybutanedioic acid), CO<sub>2</sub>H·CHOH·CHOH·CO<sub>2</sub>H, contains two structurally identical carbon atoms, and can therefore exist in the D-, L-, DL- and meso-forms; all of these are known (Fig. 11).

The configurations of the tartaric acids are a troublesome problem,

Fischer wrote the configuration of the natural dextrorotatory acid (i.e., the (+)-acid) as shown above. It is possible to synthesise (-)-tartaric acid from D(+)-glyceraldehyde, and on this basis the (+)-acid would be L(+)-tartaric acid. This is in agreement with Rosanoff's scheme of building up from D(+)-glyceraldehyde. It is also possible, however, to degrade (+)-tartaric acid into D(-)-glyceric acid, and hence (+)-tartaric acid will be D(+)-tartaric acid. Freudenberg assigned the D-configuration to the

(+)-acid since this is the acid that is obtained by the direct oxidation of D-glucose. Since the relative configurations of (+)-tartaric acid and (+)-glyceraldehyde have been established, it is now possible to assign absolute configurations to many compounds whose relative configurations to (+)-glyceraldehyde are known (see p. 402). A notation for specifying absolute configurations has been suggested by Cahn et al. (1956).

The following account gives some idea for the procedure for a molecule containing one asymmetric carbon atom.

(I) The four groups are first ordered according to the sequence rule. According to this rule, the groups are arranged in decreasing atomic number of the atoms by which they are bound to the asymmetric carbon atom. If two or more of these atoms have the same atomic number, then the relative priority of the groups is determined by a similar comparison of the atomic numbers of the next atoms in the groups. If this fails, then the next atoms in the groups are considered. Thus one works outwards from the asymmetric carbon atom until a selection can be made for the sequence of the groups.

(2) It is next determined whether the sequence describes a right- or left-handed pattern on the molecular model as viewed according to the conversion rule. When the four groups in the molecule Cabcd have been ordered in the priority a, b, c, d, the conversion rule states that their spatial pattern shall be described as right- or left-handed according as the sequence  $a \rightarrow b \rightarrow c$  is clockwise or anticlockwise when viewed from an external point on the side remote from d (the atom with the lowest priority), e.g., (I) shows a right-handed (i.e., clockwise) arrangement.

$$d - c = a = a = c$$

$$(1)$$

(3) Absolute-configuration labels are then assigned. The asymmetry leading under the sequence and conversion rules to a right- and left-handed pattern, is indicated by R and S respectively (R; rectus, right; S, sinister, left).

When fumaric acid is treated with dilute alkaline permanganate, DL-tartaric acid is formed; maleic acid, under the same conditions, forms mesotartaric acid (see also p. 424):

$${\rm CO_2H \cdot CH \cdot CO_2H + [O]} \xrightarrow{\rm KMnO_4} {\rm CO_2H \cdot CHOH \cdot CHOH \cdot CO_2H}$$

Both DL- and meso-tartaric acid are formed when  $\alpha$ :  $\alpha'$ -dibromosuccinic acid is boiled with silver oxide suspended in water:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CHBr+CO}_2\text{H} \\ | \\ \text{CHBr+CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} + 2 \text{ "AgOH "} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CHOH+CO}_2\text{H} \\ | \\ \text{CHOH+CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} + 2\text{AgBr}$$

DL- and meso-Tartaric acids are also formed by the hydrolysis of glyoxal cyanohydrin:

$$\begin{matrix} \text{CHO} \\ \mid \\ \text{CHO} \end{matrix} + 2 \text{HCN} \longrightarrow \begin{matrix} \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CN} \\ \mid \\ \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CN} \end{matrix} \longrightarrow \begin{matrix} \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \\ \mid \\ \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \end{matrix}$$

All the foregoing synthetic preparations clearly show the structure of tartaric acid.

dextro Tartaric acid, D(+)-tartaric acid, occurs in the free state and as potassium hydrogen tartrate in the juice of grapes. During the fermentation of grapes, the acid potassium salt separates as a reddish-brown crystalline mass which is known as argol. When recrystallised, argol is converted into the purer substance (white), which is known as cream of tartar, from which D(+)-tartaric acid is obtained by dissolving it in water, and adding calcium hydroxide until the solution is nearly neutralised:

$$2KHC_4H_4O_6 + Ca(OH)_2 \longrightarrow K_2C_4H_4O_6 + CaC_4H_4O_6 + 2H_2O$$

The precipitated calcium tartrate is collected by filtration, and calcium chloride is added to the filtrate:

$$K_2C_4H_4O_6 + CaCl_2 \longrightarrow CaC_4H_4O_6 + 2KCl$$

The precipitate is collected by filtration, both lots of calcium tartrate are mixed and decomposed with the calculated quantity of dilute sulphuric acid:

$$CaC_4H_4O_6 + H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow H_2C_4H_4O_6 + CaSO_4$$

The precipitated calcium sulphate is removed by filtration and the filtrate evaporated to crystallisation; anhydrous crystals are obtained, m.p. 170°.

D(+)-Tartaric acid is soluble in water and ethanol but insoluble in ether. The calcium salt is insoluble in water but soluble in potassium hydroxide solution. When heated, tartaric acid is converted into pyruvic acid:

$$\overset{\text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}}{\longrightarrow} \overset{\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}}{+ \text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O}}$$

Tartaric acid is reduced by hydriodic acid, first to malic acid and then to

Sodium potassium D(+)-tartrate, NaKC4H4O6.4H2O, is known as Rochelle salt, and is used in the preparation of Fehling's solution. Fehling's solution, which contains a complex copper tartrate, is prepared by adding copper sulphate solution to an aqueous solution of Rochelle salt containing sodium hydroxide. The structure of the complex is uncertain; it may be (I).

Potassium antimonyl D(+)-tartrate, known as tartar emetic, is usually given the formula (II). Its structure is uncertain; it may be (III).

Tartar emetic may be prepared by boiling antimonous oxide with an

aqueous solution of potassium hydrogen tartrate.

When heated with sodium hydroxide solution (or even with water), D(+)-tartaric acid is converted into DL-tartaric acid (29-33 per cent.) and meso-tartaric acid (13-17 per cent.).

D(+)-Tartaric acid is used in the preparation of effervescent drinks. The acid and tartar emetic are both used as mordants in dyeing and

printing.

levoTartaric acid, L(-)-tartaric acid, does not occur naturally. It may be obtained by the resolution of DL-tartaric acid. Physically and chemically,

it is similar to D(+)-tartaric acid.

DL-Tartaric acid, racemic tartaric acid, crystallises as the hemihydrate, (C4H6O6)2·H2O, m.p. 206°. In the solid state DL-tartaric acid exists as the racemic compound, but dissociates into the D- and L-forms in solution. DL-Tartaric acid is optically inactive by external compensation. It is obtained from the mother-liquors in the preparation of D(+)-tartaric acid, or by racemisation of the latter (together with meso-tartaric acid).

meso-Tartaric acid (i-tartaric acid) crystallises as the monohydrate; the melting point of the anhydrous acid is 140°. meso-Tartaric acid is optically inactive by internal compensation, and may be obtained (together with DL-) by heating D(+)-tartaric acid with alkali. It may also be prepared by the oxidation of maleic acid with dilute alkaline permanganate. The prolonged oxidation of benzene with hydrogen peroxide in tert.-butanol containing a little osmium tetroxide produces meso-tartaric acid (and some allomucic and oxalic acids; Cook et al., 1950).

2-hydroxypropane-I:2:3-tri-Citric acid (β-hydroxytricarballylic acid, carboxylic acid) occurs in many fruits, especially unripe fruits of the citrus group, e.g., lemon juice contains about 6-10 per cent. citric acid. Citric acid is prepared from lemons by extracting the juice, CH. CO.H boiling to coagulate the protein substances, and neutralising with calcium carbonate. The precipitated calcium citrate is C(OH)·CO,H collected by filtration and decomposed with the calculated quantity of dilute sulphuric acid. The precipitated calcium CH, CO, H sulphate is removed by filtration and the filtrate evaporated to crystallisation; crystals of the monohydrate of citric acid are obtained.

Citric acid is now also manufactured by the fermentation of solutions of glucose, sucrose, or purified cane-molasses in the presence of certain inorganic salts, by various moulds or fungi, e.g., Citromyces pfefferianus, Aspergillus wentii.

Citric acid may be synthesised from glycerol by the following reactions;

this synthesis shows its structure:

Lawrence (1897) synthesised citric acid by means of the Reformatsky reaction (p. 363), starting with ethyl bromoacetate and oxalacetic ester:

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{CH_2Br} & \operatorname{CO} \cdot \operatorname{CO}_2 \operatorname{C}_2 \operatorname{H}_5 \\ + \operatorname{CO}_2 \operatorname{C}_2 \operatorname{H}_5 \\ + \operatorname{CO}_2 \operatorname{C}_2 \operatorname{H}_5 \\ + \operatorname{CH}_2 \cdot \operatorname{CO}_2 \operatorname{C}_2 \operatorname{H}_5 \\ \end{array} + \operatorname{Zn} \longrightarrow \\ \begin{array}{c} \operatorname{OZnBr} & \operatorname{OH} \\ \\ \operatorname{C}_2 \operatorname{H}_5 \operatorname{O}_2 \operatorname{C} \cdot \operatorname{CH}_2 \cdot \operatorname{C} \cdot \operatorname{CO}_2 \operatorname{C}_2 \operatorname{H}_5 \\ \end{array} \longrightarrow \operatorname{HO}_2 \operatorname{C} \cdot \operatorname{CH}_2 \cdot \operatorname{C} \cdot \operatorname{CO}_2 \operatorname{H} \\ \end{array}$$

The monohydrate of citric acid loses its water of crystallisation when heated at 130°, and melts at 153°. Citric acid is not optically active (it contains no asymmetric carbon atom). It behaves as an alcohol and a tribasic acid, e.g., it forms the acetyl derivative and three series of salts. Calcium citrate is more soluble in cold water than in hot. Citric acid can

(I) is acetonedicarboxylic acid; (II) acetoacetic acid; (III) aconitic acid; (IV) citraconic and mesaconic acid (cis-trans isomers); (V) itaconic acid; (VI) citraconic (mesaconic) anhydride; (VII) itaconic anhydride.

therefore be readily distinguished from tartaric acid, since, if aqueous calcium chloride is added to a neutral solution of a citrate, no precipitate is formed, whereas a neutral tartrate precipitates calcium tartrate. If the cold citrate solution is warmed after the addition of calcium chloride, calcium citrate,  $(C_6H_5O_7)_2Ca_3\cdot 4H_2O$ , is precipitated. Furthermore, the calcium citrate precipitate is insoluble in aqueous potassium hydroxide, whereas calcium tartrate is soluble.

Citric acid is used for making beverages and as a mordant in dyeing.

Citric acid is both an α- and β-hydroxy-acid; when heated to 150°, it eliminates a molecule of water to form aconitic acid. On pyrolysis, citric acid gives a number of products among which have been isolated aconitic acid, citraconic (mesaconic) and itaconic anhydrides, and acetone (I-VII).

When citric acid is heated with concentrated sulphuric acid, aconitic acid is obtained (41-44 per cent.). When treated with fuming sulphuric acid, citric acid forms acetonedicarboxylic acid (85-90 per cent.), a reaction

which is characteristic of α-hydroxyacids.

Tricarballylic acid (propane-1:2:3-tricarboxylic acid), m.p. 166°, occurs in unripe beet-roots. It may be prepared by the reduction of aconitic acid, or from 1:2:3-tribromopropane as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \operatorname{CH_2Br} & \operatorname{CH_2 \cdot CN} & \operatorname{CH_2 \cdot CO_2 H} \\ \operatorname{CHBr} & \xrightarrow{\operatorname{KCN}} & \operatorname{CH \cdot CN} & \xrightarrow{\text{(i) aq. KOH}} & \operatorname{CH \cdot CO_2 H} \\ \operatorname{CH_2 \cdot CN} & \xrightarrow{\text{(ii) HCI}} & \operatorname{CH_2 \cdot CO_2 H} & \text{(70\%)} \end{array}$$

Tricarballylic acids may also be synthesised by the Michael condensation (p. 279) between diethyl fumarate and malonic ester, and heating the product, ethyl propane-i:::::3-tetracarboxylate, with concentrated hydrochloric acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_2H_5O_2C \cdot CH : CH \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + CH_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 \xrightarrow{C_2H_6ONa} \\ C_2H_5O_2C \cdot CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{CH_2 \cdot CO_2H} \\ CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 \xrightarrow{CH \cdot CO_2H} \\ CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \end{array}$$

Tricarballylic esters have been used as plasticisers.

# UNSATURATED DICARBOXYLIC ACIDS

The formula of the simplest unsaturated dicarboxylic acid is CO<sub>2</sub>H·CH·CH·CO<sub>2</sub>H. This formula actually represents two isomers: maleic acid and fumaric acid.

Maleic acid may be prepared:

(i) By heating malic acid at about 250°:  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} \xrightarrow{-\text{H}_2\text{O}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$ 

(ii) By heating bromosuccinic acid with aqueous alkali; some fumaric acid is also obtained:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CHBr} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \mid \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} + \text{KOH} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \mid \\ \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} + \text{KBr} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

(iii) Maleic anhydride is prepared industrially:

(a) By the oxidation of benzene with air in the presence of vanadium pentoxide as catalyst at 410-430°:

$$2 \bigcirc + 9O_2 \xrightarrow{V_2O_5} 2 \bigcirc CH \cdot CO \bigcirc O + 4CO_2 + 4H_2O$$

(b) As a by-product in the manufacture of phthalic anhydride from

naphthalene (p. 693):

(c) By the oxidation of but-2-ene (from cracked petroleum) or crotonaldehyde with air in the presence of vanadium pentoxide as catalyst at 450°,

$$CH_3 \cdot CH \cdot CH_3 + 3O_2 \xrightarrow{V_2O_5} \begin{matrix} CH \cdot CO \\ CH \cdot CO \end{matrix} O + 3H_2O$$

(d) By the oxidation of furfural with sodium chlorate:

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
CH & CH \\
CH & C \\
CHO
\end{array}
+ 4[O] \xrightarrow{\text{NaClO}_3} CH \cdot CO$$

$$CH \cdot CO$$

$$CH \cdot CO$$

$$CH \cdot CO$$

The anhydride is converted into the acid by boiling with alkali, and then acidifying:

Maleic acid is a synthetic compound. It is a crystalline solid, m.p. 130°, soluble in water (79 g. per 100 ml. at 25°). When heated, some distils unchanged; the rest is converted into maleic anhydride. A much better yield of maleic anhydride is obtained by heating the acid with acetic anhydride. Maleic acid may be reduced catalytically or electrolytically to succinic acid. This reduction may also be effected by cyclohexene and palladium (Braude et al., 1954; see p. 483). It is oxidised by dilute alkaline permanganate to mesotartaric acid; this may be obtained in excellent yield by replacing the permanganate by potassium chlorate and osmium tetroxide. Prolonged heating of maleic acid at 150° converts it into fumaric acid. Maleic acid and its anhydride are used in the Diels-Alder synthesis (p. 472).

Maleic acid inhibits rancidity in milk powders, oils and fats. Maleic

anhydride is used for making varnishes and lacquers.

Fumaric acid may be prepared:

(i) By heating maleic acid for some time at 150°.

(ii) By heating bromosuccinic acid with alkali; maleic acid is also formed. (iii) By the Knoevenagel reaction (p. 280); malonic acid is condensed with glyoxylic acid in the presence of pyridine:

$$CO_2H\cdot CHO + CH_2(CO_2H)_2 \xrightarrow{pyridine} CO_2H\cdot CH: CH\cdot CO_2H + H_2O + CO_2$$

(iv) Fumaric acid is prepared industrially by boiling maleic acid with hydrochloric acid or sodium hydroxide. Another industrial preparation is the fermentation of glucose (and other carbohydrates) by e.g., Rhizopus nigricans.

Fumaric acid occurs in nature in many plants. It is a crystalline solid, m.p. 287°, slightly soluble in water (0.7 g. per 100 ml. at 25°). It does not form an anhydride of its own, but gives maleic anhydride when heated at 230°. It may be reduced to succinic acid, and is oxidised by alkaline permanganate to DL-tartaric acid; the latter is obtained in excellent yield if potassium chlorate and osmium tetroxide are used as the oxidising agent (cf. maleic acid). Fumaroyl chloride is formed when maleic anhydride is heated with phthaloyl chloride in the presence of zinc chloride.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH-CO} \\ \parallel \\ \text{CH-CO} \end{array} ) + \begin{array}{c} \text{COCl} \\ \text{COCl} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH-COCl} \\ \parallel \\ \text{COCl-CH} \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \\ \text{CO} \end{array} ) \text{O} \quad (82-95\%)$$

Many acid chlorides can be obtained in 95 per cent. yield by this method.

Maleic acid is a much stronger acid than fumaric acid ( $K_1$  is the first dissociation constant, and  $K_2$  the second):

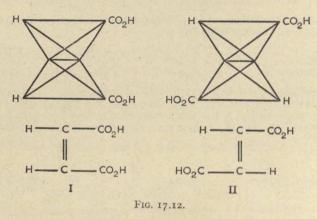
At first sight, since the structures are identical, it might have been expected that the dissociation constants would be the same. The reason why they are so different is not certain. A possible explanation is that hydrogen bonding can occur in maleic but not in fumaric acid, thereby facilitating proton release in the former:

Furthermore, since the maleic acid anion is stabilised by hydrogen bonding, and the corresponding fumaric anion is not, this offers an explanation why the second dissociation constant of maleic acid is less than that of fumaric acid.

### GEOMETRICAL ISOMERISM

Maleic and fumaric acids both have the same molecular formula C<sub>4</sub>H<sub>4</sub>O<sub>4</sub>, but differ in most of their physical and in many of their chemical properties, and neither is optically active. It was originally thought that they were structural isomers, and because of this, different names were assigned to

each form (this applies to many other geometrical isomers—see text). It was subsequently shown, however, that maleic and fumaric acids were not structural isomers, e.g., both (i) are catalytically reduced to succinic acid; (ii) add on hydrogen bromide to form bromosuccinic acid; (iii) add on water to form malic acid; (iv) are oxidised by alkaline permanganate to tartaric acid (the stereochemical relationships in reactions (ii), (iii) and (iv) have been ignored). Thus both acids have the same structure, viz., CO<sub>2</sub>H·CH·CH·CO<sub>2</sub>H. Van't Hoff suggested that if we assume there is no free rotation about a double bond, two spatial arrangements are possible for the formula CO<sub>2</sub>H·CH·CH·CO<sub>2</sub>H, and these would account for the isomerism exhibited by maleic and fumaric acids. Using tetrahedral diagrams, van't Hoff represented a double bond by placing the tetrahedra edge to edge (Fig. 12). From a mechanical point of view, such an arrangement would be rigid,



i.e., free rotation about the double bond is not to be expected. It is important to note that according to the above arrangement, the two hydrogen atoms and the two carboxyl groups are all in one plane (see also Fig. 13).

The problem now is to decide which formula represents maleic acid, and which fumaric acid. There is no general method for determining the configuration of geometrical isomers; the method used depends on the nature of the compound in question. The methods of cyclisation and dipolemoment measurements may be used to determine the configurations of maleic and fumaric acids.

Method of cyclisation. Wislicenus was the first to suggest the principle that *intramolecular* reactions are more likely to occur the closer together the reacting groups are in the molecule. This principle is generally true, but has led to incorrect results (as shown by other work) in certain cases, e.g., the aromatic oximes (p. 666).

Of the two acids, only maleic acid forms the anhydride when heated. Fumaric acid does not form an anhydride of its own, but when strongly heated, gives maleic anhydride. If we accept the principle of cyclisation, then (I) is maleic acid, and (II) fumaric acid.

$$\begin{array}{c} H-C-COOH \\ H-C-COOH \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} H-C-CO \\ H-C-CO \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} H_2O \\ H_2O \end{array}$$

In fumaric acid, the two carboxyl groups are too far apart to react with each other.

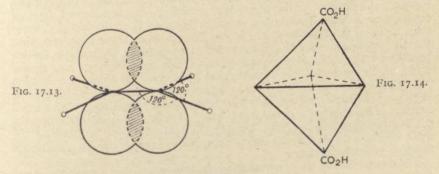
Cyclisation reactions must be carried out carefully, since one isomer may

be converted into the other in the cyclising process, and so lead to unreliable results. In the above reaction, somewhat vigorous conditions have been used; hence there is the possibility that interconversion has occurred. The correctness of the conclusion for the configurations of the two acids may be tested by hydrolysing maleic anhydride in the cold; only maleic acid is obtained. Under these mild conditions it is most unlikely that interconversion occurs, and so we may accept (I) as the configuration of maleic acid.

Method of dipole-moment measurements. The use of dipole moments to assign configurations to geometrical isomers must be used with caution. Since dipole moments are vector quantities, the sum of two equal and opposite group moments will be zero only if the two vectors are collinear or parallel. When the group moment is directed along the axis of the bond formed by the "key" atom of the group and the carbon atom to which it is joined, then that group is said to have a linear moment. Such groups are H, halogen, Me, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, etc. On the other hand, groups which have nonlinear moments are OH, OR, CO<sub>2</sub>H, NH<sub>2</sub>, etc. Thus for cis- and transolefinic compounds, the dipole moments of the latter will be zero only if the groups attached have linear moments, e.g., CH<sub>2</sub>=CH<sub>2</sub>, CHCl=CHCl, CHMe=CHMe. When the groups have non-linear moments, their vector sum is not zero, and the difference between the dipole moments of the cisand trans-forms may be too small to assign configuration with any confidence, e.g., the dipole moment of diethyl maleate is 2.38D (see also p. 513).

The type of isomerism exhibited by maleic and fumaric acids is known as geometrical isomerism. For a compound to exhibit geometrical isomerism, the molecule must have a double bond about which there is no free rotation. Let us consider the compounds  $Ca_2$ : $Cb_2$ ,  $Ca_2$ : $Cb_3$ , Cab:Cab and Cab:Ca

Inspection of these formulæ shows that geometrical isomerism is possible in (V) and (VI), and impossible in (III) and (IV). Thus a double bond is not the only condition for geometrical isomerism; the groups attached to the two carbon atoms joined by the double bond must also be taken into consideration.



In the foregoing account of geometrical isomerism, the distribution of the carbon valencies was assumed to be tetrahedral (as postulated by van't Hoff). According to modern theory, in olefinic compounds the two unsaturated carbon atoms exhibit the *trigonal* mode of hydridisation, not the *tetrahedral*. Thus there are three coplanar valencies (σ-bonds), and the

fourth ( $\pi$ -bond) at right angles to the trigonal hybrids. It is the overlap of the  $\pi$ -electrons which causes the resistance to rotation about the carbon-

carbon double bond (Fig. 13; see also p. 27).

When addition occurs at the double bond, the trigonal arrangement in the olefin changes to the tetrahedral arrangement in the saturated compound. As we have seen (p. 24), the electron distribution round the axis of a single bond is symmetrical; consequently there is no force in the bond itself restraining free rotation, and hence the saturated molecule takes up the position of least internal energy. This readily explains, e.g., why maleic and fumaric acids both give the same succinic acid in reduction.

Geometrical isomerism is also possible in *cyclic* compounds, the ring structure being comparable to the double bond in olefinic compounds (in giving rise to a more or less rigid structure), e.g., hexahydroterephthalic acids:

$$(VII) \begin{array}{c|c} CO_2H & CO_2H & CO_2H \\ \hline CH_2 & -CH_2 \\ \hline H & CH_2 - CH_2 \\ \hline H & CH_2 - CH_2 \\ \hline CH_2 - CH_2 \\ \hline CH_2 - CH_2 \\ \hline CO_2H \\ \hline \\ (VIII) \\ \hline \\ CO_2H \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Geometrical isomerism is also known as *cis-trans* isomerism. one isomer being the *cis* and the other *trans*. The *cis*-isomer is the one which (usually) has identical, or similar atoms or groups, on the *same* side. Thus maleic acid is *cis*-butenedioic acid, and fumaric acid is *trans*-butenedioic acid. Similarly, (VII) is *cis*-hexahydroterephthalic acid, and (VIII) *trans*-hexahydroterephthalic acid. It is interesting to note that both the hexahydroterephthalic acids are optically inactive; (VII) has a plane, and (VIII) a centre of symmetry.

Compounds with a triple bond cannot exhibit geometrical isomerism, e.g., acetylenedicarboxylic acid, CO<sub>2</sub>H·CiC·CO<sub>2</sub>H. According to van't Hoff's tetrahedral theory, a triple bond is represented as two tetrahedra placed face to face (Fig. 14). According to modern theory, in acetylenic compounds the two unsaturated carbon atoms exhibit the digonal mode of hybridisation. Examination of both the van't Hoff representation and the digonal structure

shows that only one form of acetylenedicarboxylic acid is possible.

Properties of cis-trans isomers. Comparison of the properties of cisand trans-isomers of known configurations shows certain regularities, e.g.,
the melting point and stability of the cis- are lower than those of the transisomer; the density, refractive index, solubility, dipole moment, heat of
combustion and the dissociation constant (if an acid) of the cis- are greater
than those of the trans-isomer. It can be seen from these properties that
the cis-isomer is usually the labile form. It is possible, by suitable means,
to convert the labile cis-isomer into the stable trans-isomer; e.g., maleic
acid may be converted into fumaric acid by heating the solid, or a solution
of the solid in water or benzene, to a temperature above its melting point
(130°). The transformation may also be effected by treating it with a small
amount of halogen in the presence of light. It is far more difficult to convert
the trans-isomer into the cis-. Usually the best method is to irradiate the
trans-isomer with ultra-violet light; the product is generally an equilibrium
mixture of both isomers.

The mechanism of the conversion of cis- into trans-, and vice versa, is not fully understood.

The addition of various substances to the double bond of, e.g., maleic and fumaric acids is difficult to interpret. Experiment has shown that maleic acid adds on bromine to form DL-dibromosuccinic acid, and fumaric acid adds on bromine to form meso-dibromosuccinic acid. These additions

correspond to a trans addition of the two bromine atoms (full lines represent groups in front, and broken lines behind):

$$H$$
 $CO_2H$ 
 $+Br_2$ 
 $+Br_2$ 
 $HO_2C$ 
 $H$ 
 $Br$ 
 $HO_2C$ 
 $H$ 
 $Br$ 

Similar results, i.e., trans-addition, are also obtained when the addenda are chlorine, halogen acid or hypohalous acid. On the other hand, oxidation with dilute alkaline permanganate leads to cis-addition, maleic acid forming meso-tartaric acid, and fumaric acid DL-tartaric acid:

The problem is further complicated by the fact that oxidation with Caro's acid causes the addition of the two hydroxyl groups to take place in the trans-position.

The results of many experiments indicate that trans-addition to a double

bond is usually, but not invariably, the case.

The mechanisms of the stereochemical additions to a double and a triple bond are still not certain. The addition of halogen is trans. If the two halogen atoms approach on the same side of the attacked molecule and add simultaneously to the two carbon atoms, i.e., we have a four-centre side-approach reaction, the resulting addition must be cis. If the two halogen atoms add on singly, then cis or trans addition could result. Since trans-addition occurs in practice, the addition must occur by a two-step mechanism (i.e., the halogen atoms must add on one at a time; cf. ethylene, p. 66). Roberts and Kimball (1937) suggested the addition to a double bond occurs via the formation of a cyclic planar compound, e.g.,

If the bromine ion attacks the planar compound from behind, then a Walden inversion occurs at this attacked carbon atom. Winstein and Lucas (1939) have demonstrated the existence of the above planar intermediate (p. 416).

cis-Hydroxylation with permanganate is believed to proceed via a cyclic intermediate (see p. 72). trans-Hydroxylation probably proceeds through the epoxide which is then converted into the trans glycol (see p. 251).

The stereochemistry of elimination reactions also follows a definite pattern.

According to Hughes and Ingold, bimolecular elimination reactions take place when the two groups (to be eliminated) are trans; in this way the planar transition state will be readily formed (see also p. 491). Let us consider the base-catalysed dehydrobromination of the diastereoisomeric 1-bromo-1:2-diphenylpropanes (I and II). The results obtained by Cram et al. (1952) show that the olefins produced can arise only by trans elimination (Ph =  $C_6H_5$ ):

Geometrical isomerism accounts for the existence of many pairs of compounds, e.g., the following acids: oleic (cis) and elaidic (trans); isocrotonic (cis) and crotonic (trans); angelic (cis) and tiglic (trans); etc.

Citraconic acid (methylmaleic acid) and mesaconic acid (methylfumaric acid) are geometrical isomers:

Citraconic acid is a crystalline solid, m.p. 91°; it forms the anhydride. Citraconic acid may be prepared by heating itaconic anhydride and refluxing the product, citraconic anhydride, with water.

Mesaconic acid is a crystalline solid, m.p. 240°; it does not form an anhydride of its own. It may be prepared by evaporating a mixture of citraconic anhydride and dilute nitric acid:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_3-C-CO\\ H-C-CO \end{array} O + H_2O \xrightarrow{HNO_4} \begin{array}{c} CH_3-C-CO_2H\\ HO_2C-C-H \end{array} (43-52\%)$$

Citraconic acid forms the anhydride more easily than maleic acid does, and mesaconic acid, when heated with acetic anhydride, readily gives citraconic anhydride.

Itaconic acid (methylenesuccinic acid), CH2;C(CO2H)\*CH2\*CO2H, m.p. 162°, may be prepared by heating citric acid until it melts, and refluxing the product, itaconic anhydride (which distils over), with water.

Itaconic acid may also be prepared by the fermentation of glucose by Aspergillus terreus.

When itaconic anhydride is distilled rapidly, a large portion of it rearranges to citraconic anhydride:

Esters of itaconic acid can be polymerised to form plastics.

Glutaconic acid, CO<sub>2</sub>H·CH·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H (isomeric with the above acids), may be prepared by heating a mixture of sodiomalonic ester and chloroform with sodium ethoxide:

$$\begin{split} 2[\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2]^-\text{Na}^+ + \text{CHCl}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{ONa}} (\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C})_2\text{CH}\cdot\text{CH}:\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2} \\ \xrightarrow{\text{(i) KOH}} (\text{HO}_2\text{C})_2\text{CH}\cdot\text{CH}:\text{C}(\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2 \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \text{CO}_2\text{H}\cdot\text{CH}:\text{CH}\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}} \end{split}$$

Glutaconic acid may also be prepared as follows (Lochte and Pickard, 1946):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} & \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} & \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 \\ \text{C}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} & \text{H}_2 \text{SO}_4 \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} & \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} & \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 & \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{C}_2 \text{H}_5 \\ \text{CHOH} & \frac{\text{SOCI}_2 \text{ in}}{\text{pyridine}} & \text{CH} & \text{C24\%} \end{array} \right)$$

Glutaconic acid is a crystalline solid, m.p. 138°. Although only one form has been prepared, in theory two geometrical isomers are possible:

$$H-C-CO_2H$$
  $H-C-CO_2H$   
 $H-C-CO_2H$   $HO_2C\cdot CH_2-C-H$   
 $cis$ -acid  $trans$ -acid

Owing to the presence of two strongly negative (terminal) groups, the  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms are readily eliminated as protons and can thereby give rise to a prototropic system:

$$-\text{CO-CH=CH-CH}_2\text{-CO-} \rightleftharpoons \text{H}^+ + -\text{CO-CH=CH-CH-CO-} \longleftrightarrow \\ -\text{CO-CH=CH-CH=CH-CO-} \rightleftharpoons -\text{CO-CH}_2\text{-CH=CH-CO-} \longleftrightarrow$$

This may be regarded as a three-carbon prototropic system. If, as is generally believed, this tautomeric system involves the enol form, it is, strictly speaking, a pentad-enol form (cf. p. 220). This prototropic change makes the cis- and transforms unstable; it has been shown that the known form is the trans isomer.

An interesting point in this connection is that the material, m.p. 115–116°, commonly accepted in the literature as trans-β-methylglutaconic acid is, in fact, a mixture of the cis- and trans-isomer, which have now been separated by Jackman et al. (1958), who showed the material was a mixture by means of nuclear magnetic resonance spectral studies, and found cis-acid, m.p. 150°, and trans-acid, m.p. 140°.

Glutaconic esters form sodio-derivatives with sodium ethoxide, and these react

with alkyl halides:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}\cdot\text{CH}:\text{CH}\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{C}_4\text{H}_6\text{ONa}} [\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}\cdot\text{CH}:\text{CH}\cdot\text{CH}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5]^-\text{Na}^+ \\ \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3\text{I}} \xrightarrow{\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}\cdot\text{CH}:\text{CH}\cdot\text{CH}(\text{CH}_3)\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5} \end{array}$$

This is an example of vinylogy (p. 287).

Muconic acid, CO<sub>2</sub>H·CH·CH·CH·CH·CO<sub>2</sub>H, m.p. 306°, may be prepared by heating α: α'-dibromoadipic acid with ethanolic potassium hydroxide:

$$CO_2H \cdot CHBr \cdot CH_2 \cdot CHBr \cdot CO_2H \xrightarrow{KOH} CO_2H \cdot CH \cdot CH \cdot CH \cdot CH \cdot CO_2H$$

Muconic acid is formed by the oxidation of benzene in the animal body.

Aconitic acid (propene-1: 2: 3-tricarboxylic acid) occurs in the sugar-cane and beet-root, and in sorghum. It may be prepared by means of the Michael condensation between acetylenedicarboxylic ester and malonic ester:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}\text{\cdot}\text{C}\text{:}\text{C}\text{\cdot}\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 + \text{CH}_2(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_4\text{ONa}} \\ \\ \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}\text{\cdot}\text{C}\text{:}\text{CH}\text{\cdot}\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5} \\ \text{C}\text{H}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5} \\ \text{C}\text{H}_2\text{\cdot}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{aconitic acid} \end{array}$$

Aconitic acid is prepared industrially from calcium aconitate, which is recovered from sugar-cane syrup residues. Another industrial method is to

dehydrate citric acid with concentrated sulphuric acid at 120-150°.

Aconitic acid is used in pain-preventive and fever-reducing medicines. Its esters have been used as plasticisers, and in the manufacture of wetting agents. On heating, aconitic acid is readily decarboxylated to itaconic acid. Aconitic acid exists in two forms (cis- and trans-), both of which form anhydrides:

### The Stereochemistry of Carbon Compounds not Containing an **Asymmetric Carbon Atom**

As pointed out previously (p. 403), the presence of an asymmetric carbon atom is not essential for optical activity; the essential requirement is the asymmetry of the molecule as a whole. Allenes are compounds whose structures are asymmetric, and so should be resolvable. Several compounds of this type have been obtained

in optically active forms, e.g., where  $R=C_6H_5$  (phenyl) and  $R'=\text{1-C}_{10}H_7$  (1-naphthyl) [Mills and Maitland, 1936].

If both double bonds of allene are replaced by rings, spirans are obtained in which the rings are at right angles to each other. Hence by suitable substitution, it should be possible to obtain optically active spiro-compounds, e.g., Backer (1928) resolved the following spiroheptane derivative.

Suitably ortho-substituted diphenyls are also compounds whose structures are asymmetric, the asymmetry arising from restricted rotation about the single bond joining the two benzene rings (p. 700).

# The Optical Isomerism of Elements other than Carbon

Many quadricovalent elements whose valencies are distributed tetrahedrally have also been obtained in optically active forms, e.g., silicon and tin.

Nitrogen can be tercovalent or quadricovalent unielectrovalent. In the latter compounds, if the charge on the nitrogen atom is ignored, the molecule then closely resembles carbon compounds. Thus, for example, the following compounds have been obtained in optically active forms.

Racemisation of compounds of the type Nabde \ X is effected far more readily than with the carbon compounds, Cabde. The mechanism is believed to be due to the ready dissociation:

bromide (Mills and Warren, 1925)

$$\overset{+}{N}abde$$
 $X^- \rightleftharpoons Nabd + eX$ 

The amine, Nabd readily racemises (see below), and so the quaternary compound will racemise.

Tercovalent nitrogen offers a very interesting problem from the point of view of stereoisomerism. No tertiary amine, Nabd, has yet been resolved. It was therefore suggested that such molecules were planar, but physico-chemical evidence, e.g., dipole moment measurements, absorption spectra, etc., shows that the configuration of ammonia and amines is tetrahedral, the nitrogen atom being at one corner of the tetrahedron with a valency angle of about 109°. Meisenheimer

FIG.17.15.

(1924) explained the failure to resolve tertiary amines as being due to the rapid oscillation of the nitrogen atom at right angles above and below the plane containing the three groups a, b and d (Fig. 15), i.e., rapid optical inversion is occurring all the time. This explanation assumes that the nitrogen valency angles and bond lengths change. This inversion of amines, however, is better represented as an "umbrella" switch of bonds, i.e., the bond lengths remain unaltered and only the nitrogen valency angles change. Theoretical considerations have shown that if the nitrogen atom were "anchored" by forming part of a ring, then the inversion (due to oscillation) would be inhibited. This has been confirmed by the resolution of Tröger's base.

Oximes are also compounds of tercovalent nitrogen. They exhibit geometrical isomerism, and some have also been obtained in optically active forms, e.g., the oxime of cyclohexanone-4-carboxylic acid (Mills and Bain, 1910).

No tertiary phosphines have yet been resolved, but a number of quadricovalent phosphorus compounds have been obtained in optically active forms, e.g.,

Tercovalent and quadricovalent arsenic compounds have been resolved, e.g.,

CH<sub>2</sub>

$$CH_2$$

$$CH_3$$

$$CH_2$$

$$CH_2$$

$$CH_3$$

$$CH_2$$

$$CH_3$$

$$CH_2$$

$$CH_3$$

$$CH_2$$

$$CH_3$$

$$C$$

Various sulphur compounds have also been resolved, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_{3} \\ \text{C}_{2}\text{H}_{5} \\ \text{CPope and Peachey, 1900} \\ \text{CO}_{2}\text{H} \\ \text{S=O} \\ \text{CH}_{3} \\ \text{CPhillips, 1925} \\ \text{CH}_{2} \\ \text{CH}_{2} \\ \text{CH}_{2} \\ \text{CO} \cdot \text{C}_{6}\text{H}_{4}\text{Cl} \\ \text{CH}_{2} \\ \text{CH}_{3} \\ \text{(Phillips, 1926)} \\ \text{(Mann and Holliman, 1946)} \end{array}$$

The shapes of molecules containing sulphur as the central atom have been discussed on p. 335.

#### QUESTIONS

1. Write out the structures and names of the isomeric hydroxyacids with the molecular formula C4H8O3. How would you prepare each isomer, and how would you distinguish them from one another?

2. Name the products and state the conditions under which they are formed, when an  $\alpha$ -,  $\beta$ -,  $\gamma$ - or  $\delta$ -hydroxyacid is treated with:—(a) EtOH, (b) AcCl, (c) PCl<sub>5</sub>, (d) KMnO<sub>4</sub>, (e) H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, (f) HI, (g) heat.

(e) H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, (f) fit, (g) neat.
3. Write an account of the preparation and properties of lactones, and include in your answer the preparation of large-ring lactones.
4. Describe the preparation and properties of:—(a) glycollic acid, (b) lactic acid, (c) hydracrylic acid, (d) malic acid, (e) p(+), L(-), pL- and meso-tartaric acids, (f) citric acid, (g) tricarballylic acid, (h) maleic acid, (i) fumaric acid, (f) acount acid.

Give an account of the analytical evidence for the structure of each acid mentioned. 5. Write an account of the theoretical basis of optical and geometrical isomerism. Discuss the case of:—(a) lactic acid, (b) tartaric acid, (c) the isomers with the formula

6. How many possible stereoisomers are there for each of the following:—(a) CH<sub>3</sub>·CHCl·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (b) CH<sub>2</sub>Br·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (c) Me<sub>2</sub>C(OH)·CO<sub>3</sub>H, (d) Me·CHOH·CHOH·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (e) Me·CHBr·CHCl·Me, (f) Et·CHOH·CHOH·Et, (g) HO<sub>3</sub>C·CHBr·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>Et, (h) CH<sub>2</sub>OH·CHOH·CHOH·CHO, (i) CH<sub>2</sub>·CH·Me, (j) Me·CH:CH·Me, (h) MeCHBr·CH:CH<sub>2</sub>, (l) Me·CHOH·CHOH·CHMe, (m) HO<sub>2</sub>C·CMe:C(CO<sub>2</sub>H)·CHMe·CO<sub>2</sub>H?

(c) the Walden inversion, (d) asymmetric synthesis, (e) asymmetric transformation.

8. Write an account of the properties of cis-trans isomers, paying special attention to:—(a) their addition reactions, (b) their interconversion, (c) the methods of deter-

mining their configurations.

9. Define and give examples of:—(a) the Dilution Principle, (b) isomerism, (c) structural isomerism, (d) chain isomerism, (e) position isomerism, (f) functional group isomerism, (g) metamerism, (h) tautomerism, (f) stereoisomerism, (f) optical isomerism, (h) geometrical isomerism, (h) diastereoisomerism, (h) restricted rotation, (h) plane of symmetry, (o) centre of symmetry, (p) flexible molecules.

10. Starting with AcOH, indicate by means of equations how you would prepare:—

a) tartronic acid, (b) malic acid, (c) tartaric acid, (d) maleic acid, (e) aconitic acid.

11. Write an account of the preparation and properties of glutaconic acid.

#### READING REFERENCES

Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1942, 2nd ed.).

(i) Vol. I, Ch. 8 (pp. 707-714). Polyesters of hydroxyacids.

(ii) Vol. I, Ch. 4. Stereoisomerism.

Filachione and Fischer, The Purification of Lactic Acid, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1946, 38, 228. Dascher et al., The Industrial Application of Fumaric Acid. ibid., 1941, 33, 315.

Karow and Waksman, The Production of Citric Acid by Submerged Culture, ibid., 1947, 39, 821.

(This paper gives references to other fermentations.)

Mann and Pope, Dissymmetry and Asymmetry of Molecular Configuration, Chem. and Ind., 1925, III, 833.

Stewart, Stereochemistry, Longmans, Green (1919). Frankland, Pasteur Memorial Lecture, J.C.S., 1897, 71, 683. Walker, Van't Hoff Memorial Lecture, ibid., 1913, 1127.

Pope, Obituary Notice of Le Bel, *ibid.*, 1930, 2789. Wheland, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1960, 3rd ed.), Ch. 5-8. Bijvoet et al., Determination of the Absolute Configuration of Optically Active Compounds by means of X-Rays, Nature, 1951, 168, 271.

McCoubrey and Ubbelohde, The Configuration of Flexible Organic Molecules, Quart.

Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1951, 5, 364.
Turner and Harris, Asymmetric Transformation, ibid., 1947, 1, 299.

Crombie, Geometrical Isomerism about Carbon-Carbon Double Bonds, ibid., 1952, 6, 101.

Kenyon and Ross, A New Mechanism for the Marckwald Asymmetric Synthesis, J.C.S., 1952, 2307.

Hudson, Emil Fischer's Stereo-Formulas, Advances in Carbohydrate Chemistry, Academic

Press. Vol. 3 (1948), Ch. 1.
Organic Reactions, Wiley, Vol. VIII (1954), Ch. 7. β-Lactones.
Finar, Organic Chemistry, Longmans, Green, Vol. II (1959, 2nd ed.). Ch. 2–6.
McCasland and Proskow, The Conditions for Optical Inactivity, J. Amer. Chem. Soc.,

1956, 78, 5646. Klyne (Ed.), *Progress in Stereochemistry*, Butterworth (1954). Newman, A Notation for the Study of Certain Stereochemical Problems, *J. Chem.* 

Educ., 1955, 32, 344.
Cram, Recent Advances in Stereochemistry, J. Chem. Educ., 1960, 37, 317.

Cahn, Ingold, and Prelog, The Specification of Asymmetric Configurations in Organic Chemistry, Experientia, 1956, 12, 81.

#### CHAPTER XVIII

#### CARBOHYDRATES

Carbohydrates are substances with the general formula  $C_x(H_2O)_y$ , and were called carbohydrates (hydrates of carbon) because they contained hydrogen and oxygen in the same proportion as in water. Recently, a number of compounds have been discovered which are carbohydrates by chemical behaviour, but do not conform to the formula  $C_x(H_2O)_y$ , e.g., rhamnose,  $C_6H_{12}O_5$ ; rhamnohexose,  $C_7H_{14}O_6$ . It is also important to note that all compounds conforming to the formula  $C_x(H_2O)_y$  are not necessarily carbohydrates, e.g., formaldehyde,  $CH_2O$ ; acetic acid,  $C_2H_4O_2$ ; etc.

All carbohydrates are polyhydroxy aldehydes or ketones, or substances

that yield these on hydrolysis.

Nomenclature. The names of the simpler carbohydrates end in -ose; carbohydrates with an aldehydic structure are known as aldoses, and those with ketonic, ketoses. The number of carbon atoms in the molecule is indicated by a Greek prefix, e.g., a tetrose contains four carbon atoms, a

pentose five, a hexose six, etc.

Carbohydrates are divided into two main classes, sugars and polysaccharides (polysaccharoses). Sugars are crystalline substances with a sweet taste and soluble in water. Polysaccharides are more complex than the sugars, their molecular weights being far greater. Most of them are noncrystalline substances which are not sweet, and are insoluble or less soluble in water, than the sugars.

Both classes of compounds have similar structures and both are produced

by plants.

Sugars are subdivided into a number of groups as follows:

I. Monosaccharides (monosaccharoses). These are sugars which cannot be hydrolysed into smaller molecules. Their general formula is  $C_nH_{2n}O_n$  (there are exceptions), where n is 2–10 (but see later). The most important monosaccharides are the pentoses and hexoses, and these are practically the only monosaccharides which occur naturally.

2. Oligosaccharides. These consist of:

(i) Disaccharides,  $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ , which yield two monosaccharide molecules on hydrolysis, e.g., sucrose, maltose.

(ii) Trisaccharides, C<sub>18</sub>H<sub>32</sub>O<sub>16</sub>, which yield three monosaccharide

molecules on hydrolysis, e.g., raffinose.

(iii) Tetrasaccharides, C<sub>24</sub>H<sub>42</sub>O<sub>21</sub>, which yield four monosaccharide molecules on hydrolysis, e.g., stachyose.

Polysaccharides (polysaccharoses) are carbohydrates which yield a large number of monosaccharide molecules on hydrolysis. The most widely spread polysaccharides have the general formula  $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n$ , e.g., starch, cellulose, etc.; a group of polysaccharides which are not so widely spread in nature is the pentosans,  $(C_5H_8O_4)_n$ .

#### Monosaccharides

The simplest monosaccharide is glycolaldehyde, CH<sub>2</sub>OH·CHO. This does not contain an asymmetric carbon atom and is therefore not optically active. Since all naturally occurring sugars are optically active, it is more

satisfactory to exclude glycolaldehyde from the group of sugars, and to define sugars as optically active polyhydroxy-aldehydes or ketones.

Triose, C3H6O3. Glyceraldehyde, CH2OH·CHOH·CHO, is an aldotriose. It contains one asymmetric carbon atom, and can therefore exist in two optically active forms, D- and L-; both are known. Glyceraldehyde has now been chosen as the standard configuration in sugar chemistry (p. 401).

Dihydroxyacetone, CH2OH·CO·CH2OH, is not optically active, and hence, by the definition given above, is not a sugar. If the definition be rejected, i.e., the proviso that a sugar is always optically active is rejected, then dihydroxyacetone

will be a ketotriose.

Tetroses, C4H8O4. The structure of an aldotetrose is

CH,OH.CHOH.CHOH.CHO (see p. 456).

There is only one structure possible for a ketotetrose, viz., CH<sub>2</sub>OH·CO·CHOH·CH<sub>2</sub>OH. This contains one asymmetric carbon atom, and corresponds to D- and L-erythrulose, which are synthetic compounds.

Pentoses, C5H10O5. The aldopentoses are an important group of sugars (monosaccharides), and their structure has been elucidated as follows:

(i) Analysis and molecular-weight determinations show that the molecular

formula of the aldopentoses is C5H10O5.

(ii) When treated with acetic anhydride, aldopentoses form the tetraacetate. This indicates the presence of four hydroxyl groups. Furthermore, since aldopentoses are not easily dehydrated, it can be assumed that no carbon atom is attached to two hydroxyl groups (cf. p. 168). As we shall see, this assumption is borne out by other reactions of the aldopentoses.

(iii) Aldopentoses form an oxime when treated with hydroxylamine, and

therefore contain a carbonyl group.

(iv) When an aldopentose is oxidised with bromine-water, a tetrahydroxyacid of formula C5H10O8 is obtained. This indicates that the carbonyl group is present in an aldehydic group, since the acid obtained on oxidation contains the same number of carbon atoms as the original compound.

(v) When an aldopentose is oxidised with nitric acid, trihydroxyglutaric acid, CO2H. (CHOH)3. CO2H, is obtained. This indicates that the five carbon atoms in the aldopentose are in a straight chain. This conclusion is supported by ascending the series by the Kiliani reaction (p. 447) and reducing the product, a polyhydroxyacid, with hydriodic acid; n-hexoic acid, CH3 (CH9)4 CO2H, is produced.

The foregoing reactions show that the structure of the aldopentoses is:

# CHO-CHOH-CHOH-CHOH-CH2OH

This contains three structurally different asymmetric carbon atoms, and can therefore exist in eight optically active forms. All are known, and correspond to the D- and L-forms of arabinose, xylose, ribose and lyxose (see p. 456).

L(+)-Arabinose, m.p. 158°, occurs naturally as pentosans (arabans) in various gums, e.g., gum arabic. It is usually obtained by the hydrolysis

of cherry-gum with dilute sulphuric acid.

D(-)-Arabinose occurs in certain glucosides.

D(+)-Xylose (wood-sugar), m.p. 145°, occurs as pentosans (xylans) in wood gums, bran and straw, from which it may be obtained by hydrolysis with dilute sulphuric acid.

D(+)-Ribose, m.p. 95°, occurs in plant nucleic acids, and in liver and

pancreas nucleic acids.

All the other aldopentoses are synthetic compounds.

The chemical properties of the aldopentoses are similar to those of the aldohexoses (see glucose, below); pentoses do not undergo fermentation. All the aldopentoses are converted quantitatively into furfural when warmed with dilute acid:

$$C_5H_{10}O_5 \xrightarrow{HCl} CH - CH - CH - 3H_2O$$

Rhamnose is a hexose with the formula CH3 (CHOH)4 CHO; it is also known

as methylpentose or 6-deoxyhexose. It occurs in several glycosides.

Ketopentoses with the structure CH<sub>2</sub>OH•CO•CHOH•CHOH•CH<sub>2</sub>OH have been prepared. The molecule contains two structurally different asymmetric carbon atoms, and can therefore exist in four optically active forms. All are known, and correspond to D- and L-forms of ribulose and xylulose. All are synthetic compounds except L-xylulose which occurs in pentosuric urine.

Hexoses, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>12</sub>O<sub>6</sub>. The aldohexoses are another important group of monosaccharides, and their structure has been elucidated as follows (cf. aldopentoses):

(i) Analysis and molecular-weight determinations show that the molecular

formula of the aldohexoses is C6H12O6.

(ii) When treated with acetic anhydride, aldohexoses form the pentaacetate. This indicates the presence of five hydroxyl groups, and since aldohexoses are not easily dehydrated, it can be assumed that each hydroxyl group is attached to a different carbon atom.

(iii) Aldohexoses form an oxime when treated with hydroxylamine, and

therefore contain a carbonyl group.

(iv) When an aldohexose is oxidised with bromine-water, a pentahydroxyacid of formula C6H12O7 is obtained. This indicates that the carbonyl

group is present in an aldehydic group.

(v) When reduced with concentrated hydriodic acid and red phosphorus at 100°, aldohexoses give a mixture of 2-iodohexane and n-hexane. This indicates that the six carbon atoms in an aldohexose are in a straight chain. This conclusion is supported by ascending the series by the Kiliani reaction and reducing the product, a polyhydroxyacid, with hydriodic acid; n-heptoic acid,  $CH_3$  ( $CH_2$ )<sub>5</sub>  $CO_2H$ , is produced.

The foregoing reactions show that the structure of the aldohexoses is:

## СНО•СНОН•СНОН•СНОН•СНОН•СН"ОН

This contains four structurally different asymmetric carbon atoms, and can therefore exist in sixteen optically active forms. All are known, and correspond to the D- and L-forms of glucose, mannose, galactose, allose, altrose, gulose, idose and talose (see p. 457). The following aldoses occur naturally: D(+)-glucose, D(+)-mannose, D(+)-galactose, and D(+)-talose. D(-)-idose and D(+)-altrose have been isolated from the polysaccharide produced by the mould, Penicillium varians. L-Galactose-6-sulphate has been isolated from a seaweed polysaccharide (Turvey et al., 1961).

Although the foregoing evidence indicates an open-chain structure, there is further evidence which shows that the sugars actually exist as six-membered rings. In many cases, however, it is more convenient to use the open-chain structure, and although this is incorrect, nevertheless it gives a simple picture of the properties of the sugars, since many reactions apparently involve first the opening of the ring (which is easily broken) and then reaction with the other reagent. The ring structure is hexagonal (I), but it is usually more convenient to use the planar formula (II), e.g., \(\alpha - D - glucose.\) (II) corresponds to the open-chain formula (III) (see also p. 452), and it should be noted that the usual way of drawing the conventional planar formula of an aldose is with the carbon chain vertical and the aldehyde group at the top. In the p-series the hydroxyl group is always to the right on the bottom asymmetric carbon atom. The L-series is then the enantiomorphs of the p-series.

D(+)-Glucose, dextrose (grape-sugar), is found in ripe grapes, honey, and most sweet fruits; it is also a normal constituent of blood, and occurs in the urine of diabetics. Commercially, pure D(+)-glucose is manufactured by heating starch with dilute hydrochloric acid under pressure:

$$(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n + nH_2O \xrightarrow{HC1} nC_6H_{12}O_6$$

D(+)-Glucose is a white crystalline solid, m.p. 146°, readily soluble in water, but sparingly soluble in ethanol, and insoluble in ether. It has a sweet taste, but is not as sweet as cane-sugar. The relation between constitution and taste has not yet been worked out, but observations show that the groups —CHOH·CH<sub>2</sub>OH and —CO·CHOH— confer a sweet taste on compounds containing either (or both) of them.

Naturally occurring glucose is dextrorotatory (hence name dextrose).

I. Glucose is a strong reducing agent, reducing both Fehling's solution and ammoniacal silver nitrate. It reduces more Fehling's solution than corresponds to one aldehyde group this indicates that other groups in the chain (besides the aldehyde group) must be involved in the reduction.

2. When heated with sodium hydroxide, an aqueous solution of glucose

turns brown (see also p. 450).

3. Glucose forms a cyanohydrin with hydrogen cyanide (see also the Kiliani reaction, p. 447):

4. When glucose is treated with hydroxylamine, the oxime is formed:

$$CH_2OH \cdot (CHOH)_4 \cdot CHO + NH_2 \cdot OH \longrightarrow CH_2OH \cdot (CHOH)_4 \cdot CH = N \cdot OH + H_2O$$

5. The reaction between glucose and phenylhydrazine is complicated. Stempel (1934) found that glucose reacts with PhNH·NH<sub>2</sub> in dilute inorganic acids in an atmosphere of nitrogen to form glucose phenylhydrazone. Addition of acetic acid caused the formation of glucosazone (see p. 443). On the other hand, Bloink et al. (1951) have shown that if the containing vessel is

filled with oxygen, then the osazone is obtained in the presence of inorganic acid. Diphenylhydrazine is a very good reagent for preparing sugar hydrazones.

6. When treated with a mild oxidising reagent, e.g., bromine-water,

glucose is oxidised to gluconic acid, m.p. 131°.

$$CH_2OH \cdot (CHOH)_4 \cdot CHO + [O] \xrightarrow{Br_3/H_2O} CH_2OH \cdot (CHOH)_4 \cdot CO_2H \quad (50\%)$$

The oxidation of only the aldehyde group in any sugar produces the corresponding aldonic acid, and is best carried out by electrolysing a solution of the aldose in the presence of calcium bromide and calcium carbonate (Isbell and Frush, 1931; Kiliani, 1933). Oxidation of a glucose solution with mercuric oxide in the presence of calcium carbonate gives a 70 per cent. yield of calcium gluconate (Candin, 1948). Gluconic acid is also formed by the fermentation of glucose by Aspergillus niger or Penicillium chrysogenum.

When treated with a strong oxidising agent, e.g., nitric acid, glucose is oxidised to saccharic acid (some oxalic acid is also obtained):

$$CH_2OH \cdot (CHOH)_4 \cdot CHO \xrightarrow{[O]} CO_2H \cdot (CHOH)_4 \cdot CO_2H \quad (40-46\%)$$

Oxidation of only the terminal -CH2OH group in an aldose produces the corresponding -uronic acid, e.g., glucose forms glucuronic acid:

$$CH_2OH \cdot (CHOH)_4 \cdot CHO \xrightarrow{[O]} CO_2H \cdot (CHOH)_4 \cdot CHO$$

This oxidation is extremely difficult to carry out in the laboratory. One of the best methods of preparing glucuronic acid is to feed borneol (a terpene alcohol) to dogs; bornyl glucuronate is excreted in the urine. Glucuronic acid may be prepared in the laboratory by reducing the lactone of saccharic acid (cf. Kiliani reaction). Uronic acids may also be prepared by the oxidation of glycosides (p. 454) with nitrogen peroxide (Maurer et al., 1947), or with oxygen in the presence of platinum as catalyst (Marsh, 1951). Heyns et al. (1953) have obtained the lactone of D-glucuronic acid by oxidising corn starch with fuming nitric acid (26 per cent. yield).

7. When reduced with sodium amalgam in aqueous solution, glucose is

converted into the hexahydric alcohol, sorbitol:

$$CH_2OH \cdot (CHOH)_4 \cdot CHO + 2[H] \longrightarrow CH_2OH \cdot (CHOH)_4 \cdot CH_2OH$$
 (50%)

High-pressure catalytic reduction, or electrolytic reduction in acid solution of aldoses, is better than reduction with sodium amalgam, since aldoses tend to undergo rearrangement in alkaline solution (see p. 450). Sugars may also be reduced to the corresponding alcohols with sodium borohydride in aqueous solution (Abdel-Akher et al., 1951).

Reduction of glucose with concentrated hydriodic acid and red phosphorus at 100° produces 2-iodohexane; prolonged heating finally gives n-hexane.

The electrolytic reduction of D-glucose in alkaline solution gives D-mannitol and the by-product dodecitol, m.p. 233-235°, formed by bimolecular reduction (Wolfrom et al., 1951).

$${}_{2}\mathrm{CH}_{2}\mathrm{OH}\text{-}(\mathrm{CHOH})_{4}\text{-}\mathrm{CHO} \xrightarrow{[\mathrm{HI}]} \mathrm{CH}_{2}\mathrm{OH}\text{-}(\mathrm{CHOH})_{10}\text{-}\mathrm{CH}_{2}\mathrm{OH}$$

8. Acetone condenses with glucose in the presence of hydrochloric acid to form I: 2-isopropylideneglucose and I: 2-5: 6-di-isopropylideneglucose, e.g., (see also mutarotation, p. 451):

The two hydroxyl groups involved in the condensation are usually on adjacent carbon atoms. These *iso* propylidene derivatives are stable to alkali, but are readily hydrolysed by acid.

9. When heated with concentrated hydrochloric acid, glucose (and any

other aldohexose) is converted into lævulic acid:

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H + H \cdot CO_2H + H_2O$$

Glucose can also form hydroxymethylfurfural on treatment with hydrochloric acid:

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 \longrightarrow \underset{HOCH_2 \cdot C}{ \overset{CH-CH}{\underset{U}{\longleftarrow}}} CH_{2}O$$

This compound yields lævulic acid on acid treatment. Hence it is possible that lævulic acid is produced from glucose via the intermediate formation of hydroxymethylfurfural.

10. Glucose is readily fermented by yeast to ethanol:

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 \longrightarrow 2C_2H_5OH + 2CO_2$$

II. Glucose forms *glucosates* with various metallic hydroxides, *e.g.*, with calcium hydroxide it forms calcium glucosate, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>12</sub>O<sub>6</sub>·CaO; the structure of these glucosates is uncertain.

12. Glucose combines with monohydric alcohols, e.g., methyl and ethyl alcohols, in the presence of hydrochloric acid, to form glucosides (pentoses behave in a similar manner).

D(+)-Mannose, m.p. 132°, may be obtained by carefully oxidising mannitol with nitric acid:

 $\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \cdot (\text{CHOH})_4 \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH} + [\text{O}] \xrightarrow{\text{HNO}_8} \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \cdot (\text{CHOH})_4 \cdot \text{CHO} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ 

Commercially, mannose is prepared by hydrolysing the polysaccharide seminine with boiling dilute sulphuric acid. Seminine (a mannan) occurs in many plants, particularly in the shell of the ivory nut, which is used as the starting material for D(+)-mannose.

Chemically, mannose behaves like glucose. D(+)-Galactose (m.p. of monohydrate, II8°) is found in several polysaccharides (galactans), and is combined with glucose in the disaccharide lactose. Galactose may be prepared by hydrolysing lactose, and separating it from glucose by fractional crystallisation from water, in which glucose is more soluble than galactose.

Chemically, galactose behaves like glucose,

**Ketohexoses.** The only important ketohexose is D(-)-fructose, the structure of which has been elucidated as follows:

(i) Analysis and molecular-weight determinations show that the mole-

cular formula of fructose is C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>12</sub>O<sub>6</sub>.

(ii) When treated with acetic anhydride, fructose forms the penta-acetate. This indicates the presence of five hydroxyl groups, each being attached to a different carbon atom (cf. aldohexoses).

(iii) Fructose forms an oxime when treated with hydroxylamine, and

therefore contains a carbonyl group.

(iv) When oxidised with nitric acid, fructose is converted into a mixture of trihydroxyglutaric, tartaric and glycollic acids. Since a mixture of acids each containing fewer carbon atoms than fructose is obtained, the carbonyl group in fructose must be present in a *ketonic* group.

(v) Fructose may be reduced to a hexahydric alcohol, sorbitol, which, on reduction with hydriodic acid and red phosphorus at  $100^{\circ}$ , gives a mixture of 2-iodohexane and n-hexane. The formation of the latter two compounds indicates that the six carbon atoms in fructose are in a straight chain.

(vi) On ascending the series by the Kiliani reaction, and reducing the pro-

duct with hydriodic acid, n-butylmethylacetic acid,

CH<sub>3</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>4</sub>·CH<sub>3</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, is obtained. This shows that the ketonic group in fructose is adjacent to one of the terminal carbon atoms (all the known ketohexoses have the ketonic group in this position).

The foregoing reactions show that the structure of fructose is:

### CH2OH•CHOH•CHOH•CO•CH2OH

This contains three structurally different asymmetric carbon atoms, and can therefore exist in eight optically active forms. Of these the following six are known: D(-)- and L(+)-fructose, D(+)- and L(-)-sorbose, D(+)-tagatose and D(-)-fructose, D(-)-fructose, D(-)-sorbose and D(-)-

tagatose occur naturally (see also p. 458).

Naturally occurring fructose (fruit-sugar) is lævorotatory, and is therefore also known as lævulose (cf. dextrose). D(—)-Fructose is found in fruits and honey, and occurs combined with glucose in the disaccharide cane-sugar, from which it may be obtained by hydrolysis and fractional crystallisation. Fructose is prepared commercially by hydrolysis of inulin, a polysaccharide which occurs in dahlia tubers and Jerusalem artichokes:

$$(\mathsf{C_6H_{10}O_5})_n + n\mathsf{H_2O} \xrightarrow{\ \ \mathsf{HCl} \ \ } n\mathsf{C_6H_{12}O_6}$$

Fructose is a white crystalline solid, m.p. 102° (with decomposition); it has a sweet taste, and is readily soluble in water but sparingly soluble in ethanol, and insoluble in ether.

I. Fructose is a strong reducing agent, reducing Fehling's solution and ammoniacal silver nitrate (cf.  $\alpha$ -hydroxyketones, p. 237).

2. Fructose forms a cyanohydrin with hydrogen cyanide:

$$\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \cdot (\text{CHOH})_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH} + \text{HCN} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \cdot (\text{CHOH})_3 \cdot \text{C} \stackrel{\text{CH}_2\text{OH}}{\longrightarrow} \text{CN}$$

3. Fructose reacts with hydroxylamine to form the oxime:

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm CH_2OH \boldsymbol{\cdot} (CHOH)_3 \boldsymbol{\cdot} CO \boldsymbol{\cdot} CH_2OH + NH_2 \boldsymbol{\cdot} OH \longrightarrow} \\ {\rm CH_2OH \boldsymbol{\cdot} (CHOH)_3 \boldsymbol{\cdot} C (\longleftarrow} {\rm N \boldsymbol{\cdot} OH) \boldsymbol{\cdot} CH_2OH + H_2O} \end{array}$$

4. When treated with phenylhydrazine, fructose forms the phenylhydrazone or osazone, according to the conditions (cf. glucose, above).

5. Nitric acid oxidises fructose to a mixture of trihydroxyglutaric, tartaric and glycollic acids. Fructose is *not* oxidised by bromine-water.

6. Fructose may be reduced to sorbitol (a hexahydric alcohol) by sodium

amalgam and water, or catalytically, or electrolytically.

7. When heated with concentrated hydrochloric acid, fructose forms lævulic acid (in better yield than from any aldohexose; see glucose, above).
8. Fructose is fermented by yeast to ethanol:

$$C_6H_{19}O_6 \longrightarrow 2C_9H_5OH + 2CO_9$$

9. When treated with monohydric alcohols in the presence of hydrochloric acid, fructose forms fructosides (p. 454).

10. Fructose condenses with acetone to form an isopropylidene and a

di-isopropylidene derivative (cf. glucose).

Glucose

CHO

Reaction of glucose and fructose with phenylhydrazine. Fischer (1884, 1887) proposed the following series of reactions to account for the formation

CH=N·NH·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CHOH} & \underbrace{\text{C}_{4}\text{H}_{3}\text{\cdot}\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}_{2}} \\ \text{(CHOH)}_{3} & \text{(CHOH)}_{3} \\ \text{CH}_{2}\text{OH} & \underbrace{\text{C}_{4}\text{H}_{3}\text{\cdot}\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}_{2}} \\ \text{CO} & \underbrace{\text{C}_{6}\text{H}_{5}\text{\cdot}\text{NH}_{2} + \text{NH}_{3}} \\ \text{CO} & + C_{6}\text{H}_{5}\text{\cdot}\text{NH}_{2} + \text{NH}_{3} \\ \text{C}_{4}\text{H}_{3}\text{\cdot}\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}_{2}} \\ \text{CHOH)}_{3} & \underbrace{\text{C}_{4}\text{H}_{3}\text{\cdot}\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}_{2}} \\ \text{CHOH} & \underbrace{\text{C}\text{H}_{2}\text{OH}} \\ \text{CHOH} & \underbrace{\text{C}\text{H}_{3}\text{\cdot}\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}_{2}} \\ \text{C}\text{CHOH} & \underbrace{\text{C}\text{H}_{3}\text{\cdot}\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}_{2}} \\ \text{C}\text{CHOH} & \underbrace{\text{C}\text{H}_{2}\text{OH}} \\ \text{C}\text{C}\text{N}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{C}_{6}\text{H}_{5} \\ \text{C}\text{N}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{C}_{6}\text{H}_{5} \\ \text{C}\text{C}\text{H}_{3}\text{\cdot}\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}_{3} \\ \text{C}\text{H}_{2}\text{OH} \\ \text{C}\text{H}_{2}\text{OH} \\ \text{C}\text{H}_{2}\text{OH} \\ \text{Phenythydrazone} \\ \text{of fructosance} \\ \text{of fructosance} \\ \text{of fructosance} \\ \text{(insoluble)} \\ \end{array}$$

Glucose

CHO

of an osazone when glucose or fructose is treated with excess of phenylhydrazine. According to this mechanism, a phenylhydrazone is first produced, and one of its hydroxyl groups, adjacent to the original aldehyde or ketonic group, is oxidised to a carbonyl group by a second molecule of phenylhydrazine which is reduced to aniline and ammonia; the carbonyl group now reacts with a third molecule of phenylhydrazine to form the osazone.

Although glucose and fructose are different sugars, both form the same osazone. This indicates that the two sugars differ only in the two carbon groups which take part in the formation of the osazone (see also below).

Osazones are yellow crystalline solids, and are used to characterise the sugars. All compounds containing the -CO·CHOH- group form osazones (p. 237). A better means of identifying sugars is to convert the osazone into an osotriazole by heating with copper sulphate solution (Hudson, 1944). These triazoles are readily purified, and have sharp melting points.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH=N\cdot NH\cdot C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \text{C=-N\cdot NH\cdot C}_6\text{H}_5 \end{array} \xrightarrow[]{\text{Cuso}_4} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH=N} \\ \text{C} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH=N} \\ \text{C} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{N\cdot C}_6\text{H}_5 + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{NH}_2 \end{array}$$

Fischer's mechanism of osazone formation is difficult to accept because phenylhydrazine is a powerful reducing agent; this is the only reaction in which it behaves as an oxidising agent. Furthermore, Fischer's mechanism does not explain why only two carbon atoms should be involved; it might have been expected that other hydroxyl groups would be attacked as well as the second one.

Weygand (1940) suggested that osazone formation occurred via the Amadori rearrangement.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CHO} & \xrightarrow{C_{\circ}H_{\circ}\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}_{\circ}} & \text{CH=N\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{C}}_{6}H_{5} \\ \text{CHOH} & \xrightarrow{C} & \text{CHOH} \\ & \xrightarrow{C} & \text{CHOH} \\ & \xrightarrow{C} & \text{CHOH} \\ & \xrightarrow{C} & \text{CH}_{2}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{C}}_{6}H_{5} \\ & \xrightarrow{C} & \xrightarrow{C} & \text{CH}_{2}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{C}}_{6}H_{5} \\ & \xrightarrow{C} & \text{CH}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{C}}_{6}H_{5} \\ & \xrightarrow{C} & \text{CH}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{NH}\cdot\text{C}}_{6}H_{5} \\ & \xrightarrow{C} & \text{CHOH} \\ & \xrightarrow{C} & \xrightarrow{C} & \xrightarrow{C} & \text{CHOH} \\ & \xrightarrow{C} & \xrightarrow{C}$$

Both glucose and fructose give (I), and this then forms the osazone as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH-NH+NH+C}_{6}\text{H}_{5} & \text{CH=N+NH+C}_{6}\text{H}_{5} \\ \text{C+NH+NH+C}_{6}\text{H}_{5} & \text{CH=N+NH+C}_{6}\text{H}_{5} \\ \text{II)} & \text{C=N+NH+C}_{6}\text{H}_{5} \\ & \begin{array}{c} \text{CH=N+NH+C}_{6}\text{H}_{5} \\ \text{C=N+NH+C}_{6}\text{H}_{5} \\ \text{C=N+NH+C}_{6}\text{H}_{5} \\ \end{array} \\ \end{array}$$

Barry and Mitchell (1955) have given evidence to support the above mechanism in that it occurs via the Amadori rearrangement, but suggest that the two hydrogen atoms are removed by the hydrogen acceptor, the phenylhydrazinium cation:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{·NH} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{-2\text{H}} \text{CH} = \text{N} \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \text{CO} & \text{CO} \\ \text{I} & \text{CO} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{NH}_3^+ + \text{H} \longrightarrow \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{NH}_2 + \text{NH}_3 \\ \end{array}$$

These authors also propose the following mechanism to explain the Amadori rearrangement:

Aldose: R = sugar residue; R' = H. Ketose: R' = sugar residue; R = H.

It should be noted that Weygand's mechanism also does not explain why only the first two carbon atoms should be involved (cf. Fischer's mechanism). Fieser and Fieser (1944), however, have suggested that the osazone is stabilised by chelation:

This is supported by work of Mester et al. (1955) who have obtained evidence to show that osazones are acyclic and that a chelate ring is present.

Osazones may be hydrolysed with hydrochloric acid, both phenylhydrazine radicals being eliminated; the dicarbonyl compound formed is known as an osone, e.g., glucosazone forms glucosone:

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \text{CH=N·NH·C}_6\text{H}_5 & \text{CHO} \\ | & & | & \\ \text{C=N·NH·C}_6\text{H}_5 & \text{CO} \\ | & & | & \\ \text{(CHOH)}_3 & & | & \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH} & & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \end{array}$$

A more convenient method of obtaining the osone is to add benzaldehyde to a solution of the osazone; benzaldehyde phenylhydrazone is precipitated, leaving the osone in solution. The precipitate is removed by filtration and the filtrate evaporated; a white substance is obtained which is difficult to crystallise. Osones react with phenylhydrazine in the cold to form osazones.

Epimerisation. Aldoses which produce the same osazones must have identical configurations on all their asymmetric carbon atoms except the alpha (since only the aldehyde group and  $\alpha$ -carbon atom are involved in osazone formation). Such sugars are known as epimers. Fischer (1890) changed an aldose into its epimer via the aldonic acid. The aldonic acid was heated with pyridine (or quinoline), whereupon it was converted into an equilibrium mixture of the original acid and its epimer. These were separated, and the epimeric acid lactone reduced to an aldose (see the Kiliani reaction below). The mechanism of epimerisation is not certain, but it is possibly similar to racemisation, *i.e.*, it takes place via the enol form; e.g., epimerisation of glucose into mannose:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{CHO} & \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{H-C-OH} & \text{Br}_2/\text{H}_2\text{O} \\ \text{(CHOH)}_3 & \text{(CHOH)}_3 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH} & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \text{D(+)-glucose} & \text{gluconic acid} \\ \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CO_2H & CHO \\ \hline & HO-C-H \\ \hline & (CHOH)_3 & (CHOH)_3 \\ \hline & CH_2OH & CH_2OH \\ \hline & mannonic acid & D(+)-mannose \\ \end{array}$$

The function of the pyridine (or quinoline) is to prevent the formation of the lactone of the aldonic acid.

This change of configuration of one of the asymmetric carbon atoms in a compound containing two or more asymmetric carbon atoms is known as epimerisation.

Method of ascending the sugar series. An aldose may be converted into its next higher aldose, e.g., an aldopentose into an aldohexose, by means of the Kiliani reaction (1886). The aldopentose is dissolved in dilute hydrocyanic acid, and the cyanohydrin formed is hydrolysed with aqueous barium hydroxide. After acidification with the calculated quantity of dilute sulphuric acid and subsequent filtration, there is obtained an aqueous solution of a polyhydroxyacid with one more carbon atom than the aldopentose (yield: 70 per cent.). When this solution is evaporated to dryness, the  $\gamma$ -lactone is obtained (cf. p. 395) and this, on reduction with sodium amalgam in faintly acid solution, is converted into the aldohexose (yield: 30–40 per cent. on the acid):

Theoretically, two lactones are possible, since two cyanohydrins may be formed when hydrogen cyanide adds on to the aldopentose (a new asymmetric carbon is produced), viz.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{HCN}} \rightarrow \text{H-COH} + \text{HO-C-H} \\ \end{array}$$

Thus two epimeric aldohexoses should be obtained. In practice, one cyanohydrin predominates because the asymmetry present in the molecule exerts a spatial directive influence on the addition of hydrogen cyanide (cf. asymmetric synthesis, p. 416). Hence the final product will be mainly one aldohexose, and very little of its epimer.

By means of the Kiliani reaction, it has been possible to prepare aldoses

up to an aldodecose.

Hudson (1951) has modified the Kiliani reaction, using sodium cyanide instead of hydrocyanic acid. The proportions of the epimers were the reverse of those when hydrocyanic acid was used.

Sowden and Fischer (1947) have stepped up the aldose series by condensing the aldose with nitromethane in the presence of methanolic sodium methoxide, separating the I-nitro-I-deoxy-compounds produced, converting each of these into its sodium salt and then hydrolysing with cold 60 per cent. sulphuric acid (cf. p. 305). The proportions of the epimers formed by this method are different from those produced by the Kiliani reaction.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CHO} + \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{NO}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{NO}_2} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NO}_2} \xrightarrow{\text{CHOH}} \xrightarrow{\text{CHOH}} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_3 \times \text{O}_4} \xrightarrow{\text{CHOH}} \xrightarrow{\text{CHOH}}$$

Sowden (1950) has stepped up an aldose into a *ketose* containing *two* additional carbon atoms using the above method except that 2-nitroethanol is used instead of nitromethane.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CHO} + \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NO}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \text{OH} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3 \text{ONa}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \text{OH} \\ \text{C} = \text{NO}_2 \text{Na} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_3 \text{SO}_4} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \text{OH} \\ \text{CO} \\ \text{CHOH} \end{array}$$

On the other hand, Wolfrom et al. (1946) have stepped up an aldose to a ketose with one more carbon atom by a modified Arndt-Eistert reaction (p. 327).

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CHO} \xrightarrow{[O]} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \xrightarrow{\text{SOCl}_2} \text{COCl} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{N}_2} \xrightarrow{\text{CO}_2} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{H}} \xrightarrow{\text{CO}_2\text{H}} \xrightarrow{\text{CO}_2\text{H}} \end{array}$$

Method of descending the sugar series. There are various methods of converting a sugar into its next lower sugar, e.g., a hexose into a pentose. All of these methods start with the aldohexose, and hence, in order to convert a ketohexose into a pentose, it is first necessary to transform it into an aldohexose (as later)

aldohexose (see later).

Wohl's method (1893). The aldohexose is converted into its oxime, which is then heated with acetic anhydride, whereupon the oxime is dehydrated to the cyano-compound with simultaneous acetylation of the hydroxyl groups. When this acetyl derivative is warmed with ammoniacal silver nitrate, the acetyl groups are removed by hydrolysis, and a molecule of hydrogen cyanide is eliminated with the formation of the aldopentose:

Zemplen (1917) modified Wohl's method by using a solution of sodium methoxide in chloroform instead of an aqueous solution of ammoniacal silver nitrate, to remove hydrogen cyanide and the acetyl groups, and thereby increased the yield of pentose to 60–70 per cent. Weygand et al. (1950) have treated the oxime with 1-fluoro-2: 4-dinitrobenzene in aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate; the products are the lower aldose (50–60 per cent. yield), hydrogen cyanide and 2: 4-dinitrophenol.

Ruff's method (1898). The aldohexose is oxidised (by bromine-water) to the corresponding aldonic acid; when the calcium salt of this acid is treated with Fenton's reagent it is converted into the aldopentose (cf. oxidation of

α-hydroxyacids, p. 394):

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{CHO} & \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CHOH} & \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_2/\text{H}_2\text{O}} & \text{CHOH} & \xrightarrow{\text{Ca salt}} & \text{CHO} \\ (\text{CHOH})_3 & & (\text{CHOH})_3 & \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}_2/\text{Fe}^{\text{g}}+} & \text{CHOH} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH} & & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} & & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \end{array}$$

Berezovski et al. (1949) have shown that calcium gluconate can be oxidised with hydrogen peroxide in the presence of ferric sulphate and barium acetate to give p-arabinose (44%).

Weerman's reaction (1913). This is the reaction whereby an  $\alpha$ -hydroxy-or  $\alpha$ -methoxy-amide is degraded by means of a cold solution of sodium hypochlorite (cf. Hofmann degradation, p. 206). The mechanism of the Weerman reaction is not certain, but according to Ault, Haworth and Hirst (1934), the reaction takes place as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO-NH}_2 \\ \text{CHOH} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH/NaOCl}} \\ \text{R} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{NCO} \\ \text{CHOH} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \text{CHO} + \text{NaNCO}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{$\alpha$-Methoxyamides} \\ \text{$\text{CO} \cdot \text{NH}_2$} \\ \text{$\text{CH} \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{CH}_3$} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH/NaOCl}} \\ \text{$\text{CH} \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{CH}_3$} \\ \text{$\text{R}$} \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{NaOH} \\ \text{$\text{CHO}$} + \text{CO}_2 + \text{NH}_3 + \text{CH}_3 \text{OH} \\ \text{$\text{R}$} \end{array}$$

Haworth, Peat and Whetstone (1938) carried out the descent of the sugars by the Weerman reaction, and obtained a 55 per cent. yield from the methylated amides.

Macdonald et al. (1953) have stepped down an aldose as follows:

Hough et al. (1954) have found that this degradation is general, but that the structure of the disulphone may vary from one aldose to another.

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \text{CH}(\text{SC}_2\text{H}_5)_2 & \text{C}(\text{SO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 & \text{CH}_2(\text{SO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \\ \text{CHOH} & \xrightarrow{[0]} & \text{CH} & \xrightarrow{\text{NH}_4\text{OH}} & \text{CHO} \\ \text{R} & & \text{R} & & \text{R} \end{array}$$

Perlin (1954) has shown that aldoses may be stepped down by direct oxidation with lead tetra-acetate or sodium bismuthate, e.g., D-mannose gives D-arabinose (35%).

Conversion of an aldose into a ketose. The aldose is converted into its osazone, which is then hydrolysed with hydrochloric acid to the osone. On reduction with zinc and acetic acid, the osone is converted into the ketose (an aldehyde group is reduced more readily than a ketonic group):

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{CH=N·NH·C}_{6}\text{H}_{5} & \xrightarrow{\text{CHO}} & \xrightarrow{\text{[H]}} & \text{CH}_{2}\text{OH} \\
\text{C=N·NH·C}_{6}\text{H}_{5} & \xrightarrow{\text{CO}} & \xrightarrow{\text{CO}} & \text{CO}
\end{array}$$

Conversion of a ketose into an aldose. The ketose is reduced (preferably by catalytic reduction, p. 450) to the corresponding polyhydric alcohol,

which is then oxidised to a monocarboxylic acid (only one of the terminal CH,OH groups being oxidised). On warming, the acid is converted into the y-lactone which, on reduction with sodium amalgam in faintly acid solution, is converted into the aldose:

Theoretically, two polyhydric alcohols may be formed on reduction of the ketose, due to the formation of a new asymmetric carbon atom:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{OH} & \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2/\text{Ni}} & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid & & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid & \mid & \mid & \mid & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \mid &$$

In practice, however, one predominates (cf. the Kiliani reaction). Furthermore, when these two alcohols are oxidised, oxidation may take place at either end of the chain, and hence the final product will be a mixture of four

aldoses, but these will not be present to the same extent.

Lobry de Bruyn-van Ekenstein rearrangement (1890). When warmed with concentrated alkali, sugars first turn yellow, then brown and finally resinify (cf. aldehydes, p. 160). In the presence of dilute alkali or amines, sugars undergo rearrangement; e.g., a dilute solution of glucose, in the presence of sodium hydroxide, is converted into an almost optically inactive solution from which have been isolated D(+)-glucose, D(+)-mannose, D(-)fructose. The same mixture is obtained if the starting material is D(-)fructose or D(+)-mannose. It has been suggested that the re-arrangement occurs through I: 2-enolisation. Topper et al. (1951), using deuterium oxide, support this enolisation mechanism, but conclude that mannose and fructose cannot arise from the same enediol, and suggest there are two geometrical isomeric enediol intermediates, both being capable of changing into fructose.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CHO} \\ \text{H-C-OH} \\ \text{\downarrow} \\ \text{D(+)-glucose} \end{array} \begin{bmatrix} \text{HO-C-H} \\ \text{C-OH} \\ \text{trans-diol} \end{bmatrix} \stackrel{\text{CH}_2\text{OH}}{\Longrightarrow} \begin{bmatrix} \text{HO-C-H} \\ \text{HO-C} \\ \text{HO-C} \end{bmatrix} \stackrel{\text{CHO}}{\rightleftharpoons} \\ \text{independent of the properties of the properties$$

Since the Lobry de Bruyn-van Ekenstein rearrangement takes place in alkaline media, it is best to carry out reactions with the sugars in neutral or acid media.

Lobry de Bruyn's "glutose," obtained by heating fructose with lead hydroxide, has been shown by Schneider et al. (1952) to be D-psicose (p. 458). D-Psicose has also been isolated from the products formed by warming D-glucose with aqueous ammonia at 37° (Hough et al., 1953).

Mutarotation. When a monosaccharide is dissolved in water, the optical rotatory power of the solution gradually changes until it reaches a constant value. E.g., a freshly prepared solution of glucose has a specific rotation of +IIO°; when this solution is allowed to stand, the specific rotation falls to +52.5°, and remains constant at this value. The final stage can be reached more rapidly either by heating the solution or by adding some catalyst which may be an acid or a base. This change in value of the specific rotation is known as mutarotation. All reducing sugars (except some ketoses) undergo mutarotation. To account for mutarotation, Tollens (1883) suggested an oxide ring structure for D(+)-glucose, whereby two forms would be produced, since, in the formation of the ring, another asymmetric carbon atom (which can exist in two configurations) is produced (cf. the Kiliani reaction). Tollens assumed that a five-membered ring (the  $\gamma$ -form) was produced (I) and (II). The difficulty of this suggestion was that there was no experimental evidence for the existence of these two forms. Tanret (1895), however, isolated two isomeric forms of D(+)-glucose, thus apparently verifying Tollens' supposition (see later). The two forms are called  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -D(+)- $\gamma$ -glucose; (I) is the  $\alpha$ -form, and (II) the  $\beta$ -.

Ring formation of a sugar is really hemiacetal formation, one alcohol group of the sugar forming a hemiacetal with the aldehyde group of the same molecule, thus producing a ring structure which is known as the *lactol* form of the sugar. This equilibrium between the open and ring forms is an example of ring-chain tautomerism.

Later work by Haworth, Hirst and their co-workers (1926 onwards) has shown that glucose (and other sugars) exists, not as a five-membered ring, but as a six-membered ring, the two forms being  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -D(+)- $\delta$ -glucose:

Mechanism of mutarotation. According to Lowry (1925), mutarotation is not possible without the presence of an amphiprotic solvent, i.e., a solvent

which can function both as an acid and a base, e.g., water. It appears that when mutarotation takes place, the ring must open and then reclose in the inverted position or in the original position. Lowry suggested that in water the aldehydrol was formed as an intermediate product by a concerted mechanism (p. 222):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{H} & \text{CH} \rightarrow \\ \text{CH} \rightarrow \\ \text{CHOH} & \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2O} & \text{HO} \rightarrow \\ \text{CHOH} & \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2O} & \text{HO} \rightarrow \\ \text{CH} \rightarrow \\ \text{CH}$$

Lowry and Faulkner (1925) showed that mutarotation is arrested in pyridine solution (basic solvent) and in cresol solution (acidic solvent), but that it

takes place in a mixture of pyridine and cresol.

The ordinary form of D(+)-glucose is the α-isomer, m.p. 146°, specific rotation +110°, and may be prepared by crystallisation of glucose from cold ethanol. The β-isomer, m.p. 148–150°, specific rotation +19.7°, may be obtained by crystallising glucose from hot pyridine. Both forms show mutarotation, the final value of the specific rotation being 52·56°. This corresponds to about 38 per cent. of the α-form and 62 per cent. of the β-. It is therefore assumed that whenever a sugar is formed in solution, it immediately changes into a mixture of the two isomeric forms, the open chain isomer being present in extremely small amount, if at all. The cyclic structure of the sugars accounts for the following facts: (i) the existence of two isomers, e.g., α- and β-glucose; (ii) mutarotation; (iii) glucose and other aldoses do not give certain characteristic reactions of aldehydes, e.g., Schiff's reaction, do not form a bisulphite or an aldehyde-ammonia compound. Recently, however, it has been shown that by preparing Schiff's reagent in a special way, it becomes very sensitive, simple aldoses restoring the pink colour to this solution; the monosaccharide aldoses react strongly, but the disaccharide aldoses react weakly (Tobie, 1942). This reaction with a sensitive Schiff's reagent appears to indicate that some, although a very small amount, of the open-chain form of a sugar is present in solution in equilibrium with the two ring forms.

Haworth (1926) proposed a six-membered ring formula (hexagonal formula) based on the pyran ring which is almost planar. The pyranose structure is applicable to nearly all the sugars, and is supported by X-ray

H<sub>2</sub>CCH=CH O 
$$H_{5}$$
 O  $H_{6}$  O  $H_{6}$  O  $H_{6}$  O  $H_{6}$  O  $H_{6}$  O  $H_{7}$  O  $H_{1}$  O  $H_{1}$  O  $H_{2}$  O  $H_{3}$  O  $H_{4}$  O  $H_{5}$  O  $H_{6}$  O  $H_{1}$  O  $H_{1}$  O  $H_{2}$ 

crystal analysis (of the sugars). Thus  $\alpha$ -D(+)- $\delta$ -glucose is called  $\alpha$ -D(+)glucopyranose, and its perspective (i.e., hexagonal) formula is (a).

Reeves (1950) has shown that the conformation of α-D(+)-glucopyranose is (b) and that of the β-form is (c). Both have the chair form, but in the former the glycosidic hydroxyl is axial and in the latter equatorial (see also p. 489).

Furthermore, it has been shown (Irvine, Haworth et al.) that glucose, fructose, etc., can also exist as five-membered rings, which may be regarded as derivatives of furan. So far, the y- or furanose sugars (corresponding to

Tollens' suggestion) have not been isolated in the free state, but some of their derivatives have been prepared, e.g., methyl α-D(+)-γ-glucoside (see below). Thus  $\alpha$ -D(+)- $\gamma$ -glucose or  $\alpha$ -D(+)-glucofuranose would (if it existed) have perspective (i.e., pentagonal) formula (III); methyl α-D(+)-γ-glucoside or methyl α-D(+)-glucofuranoside (a known compound) has formula (IV):

Pentoses also normally exist in the pyranose form, and derivatives of the

furanose form have been prepared.

Conversion of the plane-diagrams into the perspective formulæ may be done as follows. (V) is α-D-glucopyranose, and if the H on C5 is interchanged with the group CH2OH, then a Walden inversion has been effected;

$$H-C_{1}-OH$$
  $H-C_{2}-OH$   $H-C_{2}-OH$   $H-C_{2}-OH$   $H-C_{3}-H$   $H-C_{4}-OH$   $H-C_{4}-OH$   $H-C_{5}-H$   $HO-C_{5}-H$   $HO-C_{5}-H$   $HO-C_{5}-H$   $HO-C_{5}-H$   $HO-C_{5}-H$   $HO-C_{5}-H$   $HO-C_{5}-H$   $HO-C_{5}-H$   $(VII)$ 

and if the H is now interchanged with the point of attachment of the oxygen ring, another Walden inversion is effected, and so the original configuration of (V) is retained; thus we now have (VI) (with no change in configuration). Since all horizontal bonds indicate groups lying above the plane of the paper, and vertical bonds groups lying behind this plane (see p. 402), then by twisting (VI) so that the oxide ring is perpendicular to the plane of the paper, and placing the oxygen atom as shown, (VII) is obtained. Thus, to change from (VI) to (VII), first draw the hexagon (as shown in (VII)), and then place all the groups on the left-hand side in (VI) above the plane of the ring in (VII), and all those on the right-hand side in (VI) below the plane of the ring in (VII).

In a similar way, perspective formulæ may be obtained for the furanose sugars, e.g., methyl  $\beta$ -D(+)-fructofuranoside.

There is a certain amount of evidence to show that oximes, phenylhydrazones and osazones exist in both the open-chain and cyclic forms; e.g., the oxime of glucose may have either of the following structures (p. 442):

Just as simple hemiacetals react with another molecule of an alcohol to form acetals (p. 161), so can the hemiacetal form (lactol) of a sugar react with a molecule of an alcohol to form the acetal derivative, which is known under the generic name of glycoside; those of glucose are known as glucosides; of fructose, fructosides, etc. E.g., ethyl  $\alpha$ -D(+)-glucopyranoside, prepared by refluxing glucose in excess ethanol in the presence of a small amount of hydrochloric acid, is:

These glycosides are stable compounds, and do not undergo many of the reactions of the sugars, e.g., they show no reducing properties, they do not mutarotate, etc. The non-sugar part of a glycoside is known as the aglycon, and in most of the glycosides which occur naturally the aglycon is a phenolic compound; e.g., the aglycon in salicin is salicyl alcohol; in indican, indoxyl.

Synthesis of the monosaccharides. Plant cells convert carbon dioxide (of the atmosphere) into carbohydrates. Experimental work has shown that the oxygen evolved in this synthesis is provided by water, and so the overall equation may be written:

$$6CO_3 + 6H_2O \longrightarrow C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2$$

This takes place in the presence of chlorophyll and sunlight, and the process is known as photosynthesis. Calvin et al. (1954) have shown that photosynthesis occurs via a complex series of reactions, and that two monosaccharides, ribulose and sedoheptulose, play an essential part in the photosynthesis of carbohydrates.

In the laboratory, the sugars have been synthesised in various ways:

- (i) By the aldol condensation (p. 157) of formaldehyde in the presence of calcium hydroxide; the product is a mixture of compounds among which is a number of hexoses. This hexose mixture, known as formose, has been shown to contain DL-fructose (Butlerow, 1861; Loew, 1886).
- (ii) By the aldol condensation of glycolaldehyde in the presence of sodium hydroxide; the product is formose (E. Fischer, 1887):

$$_3$$
CH $_2$ OH $_2$ CHO  $\xrightarrow{NaOH}$  C $_6$ H $_{12}$ O $_6$ 

(iii) When oxidised with nitric acid or bromine-water, glycerol yields a product known as *glycerose*, which contains, among other things, glyceraldehyde and dihydroxyacetone. These, in the presence of barium hydroxide, are converted into a mixture of  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -acrose (E. Fischer, 1887);  $\alpha$ -acrose is DL-fructose and β-acrose is DL-sorbose:

$$\mathtt{CH_2OH \cdot CHOH \cdot CHO} + \mathtt{CH_2OH \cdot CO \cdot CH_2OH} \longrightarrow \mathtt{CH_2OH \cdot CO \cdot (CHOH)_3 \cdot CH_2OH}$$

Starting with a-acrose, Fischer isolated DL-fructosazone (DL-glucosazone), and making use of reduction, oxidation and epimerisation, he converted DLfructosazone into D(-)-fructose, D(+)-glucose, D(+)-mannose and other aldo-

(iv) When hydrolysed with barium hydroxide solution, dibromoacraldehyde forms a mixture of α- and β-acrose (E. Fischer, 1887):

$$\text{CH$_2$Br$$^{\bullet}$CHBr$$^{\bullet}$CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{Ba}(\text{OH})_3} \text{CH$_2$OH$$^{\bullet}$CHOH$$^{\bullet}$CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{dimerises}} \text{CH$_2$OH$$^{\bullet}$CO$$^{\bullet}$(CHOH)$$_3$$^{\bullet}$CH$_2$OH}$$

(v) When allowed to stand in a barium hydroxide solution containing a small amount of iodine, D(+)-glyceraldehyde is converted into a mixture of D(-)fructose and D(+)-sorbose (H. Fischer and Baer, 1936). These authors believed that part of the glyceraldehyde rearranged to dihydroxyacetone (p. 257), which then condensed with unchanged glyceraldehyde to form the ketohexoses. They supported their belief by showing that the same products were obtained in a much shorter time when D(+)-glyceraldehyde and dihydroxyacetone were used as the starting materials.

(vi) By means of the Kiliani reaction, sugars up to a decose have been

prepared. Two ketoheptoses have been isolated from natural sources, viz., mannoheptulose from the Avocado pear, and altroheptulose (sedoheptulose) from the leaves of Sedum (vii) A number of aldoses have been prepared by the oxidation of polyhydric

alcohols, e.g., mannitol, on oxidation with nitric acid, yields mannose.

Only three natural sugars are known which are not straight-chain compounds: -

The third sugar, (—)-cordycepose (isolated from a glycoside in 1951), has been shown to be 3-deoxyapiose, (CH<sub>2</sub>OH)<sub>2</sub>·CH·CHOH·CHO. This and D(+)-apiose have been synthesised by Raphael *et al.* (1955).

## Configuration of the Monosaccharides

Aldotrioses. Glyceraldehyde is the only aldotriose, and has been chosen as arbitrary standard (p. 401).

$$\begin{array}{ccc} CHO & CHO \\ H--OH & HO--H \\ CH_2OH & CH_2OH \\ D(+)\text{-glyceraldehyde} & L(-)\text{-glyceraldehyde} \end{array}$$

Aldotetroses,  $CH_2OH \cdot CHOH \cdot CHOH \cdot CHO$ . This structure contains two asymmetric carbon atoms, and so there are four optical isomers (two pairs of enantiomorphs). All are known, and correspond to D- and L-threose and D- and L-erythrose. D(+)-Glyceraldehyde may be stepped up by the Kiliani reaction to give D(-)-threose and D(-)-orythrose. The question now is: which is which?

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CHO \\ \hline \\ CHO \\ CH_2OH \\ \hline \\ CHO \\ H-OH \\ CH_2OH \\ \hline \\ (I) \\ \hline \end{array}$$

On oxidation, D-erythrose forms *meso*tartaric acid. Therefore D-erythrose must be (I), and consequently (II) must be D-threose.

The tetroses are synthetic compounds.

Aldopentoses,  $CH_2OH \cdot CHOH \cdot CHOH \cdot CHOH \cdot CHO$ . This structure contains three asymmetric carbon atoms, and so there are eight optical isomers (four pairs of enantiomorphs). All are known. D-Erythrose, when stepped up by the Kiliani reaction, gives D(-)-ribose and D(-)-arabinose. Similarly, D-threose gives D(+)-xylose and D(-)-lyxose.

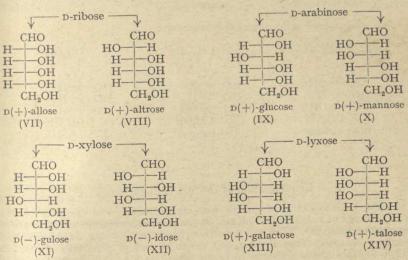
(III) and (IV) must be ribose and arabinose, but which is which? On oxidation with nitric acid, arabinose gives an optically active dicarboxylic acid (a trihydroxyglutaric acid), whereas ribose gives an optically inactive dicarboxylic acid. When the terminal groups (i.e., CHO and CH<sub>2</sub>OH) of (III) are oxidised to carboxyl

groups, the molecule produced possesses a plane of symmetry, and so this acid is inactive. The dicarboxylic acid produced from (IV), however, has no plane (or any other element) of symmetry, and so is optically active. Thus (III) is p-ribose and (IV) is D-arabinose.

(V) and (VI) must be xylose and lyxose, but which is which? The former, on oxidation, gives an optically inactive dicarboxylic acid, whereas the latter gives an optically active dicarboxylic acid. Therefore (V) is D-xylose and (VI) is

p-lyxose.

Aldohexoses, CH2OH CHOHCHOHCHOHCHOHCHO. This structure contains four asymmetric carbon atoms, and so there are sixteen optical isomers -(eight pairs of enantiomorphs). All are known, and may be prepared by stepping up the aldopentoses: D-ribose gives D(+)-allose and D(+)-altrose; D-arabinose gives D(+)-glucose and D(+)-mannose; D-xylose gives D(-)-gulose and D(-)idose, and D-lyxose gives D(+)-galactose and D(+)-talose.



(VII) and (VIII) must be allose and altrose, but which is which? On oxidation with nitric acid, the former gives an optically inactive (allomucic) and the latter an optically active (talomucic) dicarboxylic acid. Therefore (VII) is allose and (VIII) is altrose.

(XIII) and (XIV) must be galactose and talose, but which is which? On oxidation with nitric acid, the former gives an optically inactive (mucic) and the latter an optically active (talomucic) dicarboxylic acid. Therefore (XIII) is galactose

and (XIV) is talose.

The elucidation of the configurations of the remaining four aldohexoses is not quite so simple, since, on oxidation with nitric acid, glucose and mannose both give optically active dicarboxylic acids, as also do gulose and idose; in all four configurations (IX, X, XI, XII), replacement of the two terminal groups (CHO and CH<sub>2</sub>OH) by carboxyl groups leads to dicarboxylic acid whose structures have no plane (or any other element) of symmetry. It has been found, however, that the dicarboxylic acid from glucose (saccharic acid) is the same as that produced from gulose. Actually the two saccharic acids obtained are enantiomorphs, p-glucose giving D-saccharic acid and D-gulose L-saccharic acid. Since saccharic acid, CO<sub>2</sub>H·(CHOH)<sub>4</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, is produced by the oxidation of the terminal groups with the rest of the molecule unaffected, it therefore follows that the "rest of the molecule" must be the same for both glucose and gulose. Inspection of formulæ (IX, X, XI and XII) shows that only (IX) and (XI) have the "rest of the molecule" the same; by interchanging the CHO and CH2OH groups of (IX), (XI) is obtained. Therefore (IX) must be glucose (since we know that glucose is obtained from arabinose), and (XI) must be gulose. Consequently (X) is mannose and (XII) is idose.

**Ketohexoses.** Fructose is a ketohexose, and natural fructose is lævorotatory. Since p-glucose gives the *same* osazone as natural fructose, the latter must be D(-)-fructose. Furthermore, since osazone formation involves only the first two carbon atoms in a sugar, it therefore follows that the configuration of the rest of the molecule in glucose and fructose must be the same. Hence the configuration of D(-)-fructose is D(

$$\begin{array}{c|ccccc} CH_2OH & CH=N\cdot NH\cdot C_6H_5 & CHO \\ CO & C=N\cdot NH\cdot C_6H_5 & C_{\bullet}H_{\bullet}\cdot NH\cdot NH_2 & H-OH \\ H-OH & H-OH & H-OH \\ CH_2OH & CH_2OH & CH_2OH \\ D(-)-fructose (XV) & osazone & D(+)-glucose \\ \end{array}$$

The configurations of the other ketohexoses are:

# Determination of the Size of Sugar-rings

E. Fischer (1893) refluxed glucose with excess methanol in the presence of a small amount of hydrochloric acid and obtained a white crystalline solid containing one methyl group. This compound was no longer reducing, and also did not form an osazone. Thus Fischer had prepared methyl glucoside. Ekenstein (1894) isolated a second isomer from the same reaction, and Fischer explained the existence of these two isomers by suggesting a ring structure for them, and followed Tollens in believing that they were five-membered rings.

There was no experimental evidence for the existence of a five-membered ring, and it was shown to be incorrect by Haworth, Hirst and their co-workers (1926 onwards). They proved that the above glucosides were six-membered rings, i.e., glucopyranosides. Their method was to fully methylate the glucoside (I), hydrolyse the product, methyl tetramethyl- $\alpha$ -D-glucoside (II) to tetramethyl- $\alpha$ -D-glucose (III), oxidise this with bromine-water at 90° to the lactone (IV), and then to oxidise this with nitric acid. The product obtained was shown to be xylotrimethoxyglutaric acid (V; this can be obtained directly by the oxidation of methylated xylose). The most reasonable interpretation of these results is in

accordance with the assumption that methyl glucoside is a six- and not a five-membered ring. Thus:

Fischer (1914) also prepared methyl glucoside by dissolving glucose in methanol and letting it stand at room temperature in the presence of hydrochloric acid. He now obtained compounds which Haworth et al., using the above method, showed to be five-membered rings, i.e., methyl p-glucofuranosides.

method, showed to be five-membered rings, i.e., methyl p-glucofuranosides.

Hudson (1937, 1939) has also determined the size of sugar-rings, but his method was to oxidise methyl glycosides with periodic acid. As we have seen (p. 73), periodic acid splits 1:2-glycols, and one molecule of acid is used for each pair of adjacent alcoholic groups, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-CHOH-CHOH-R'} \xrightarrow{\text{1HIO}_4} \text{R-CHO} + \text{R'-CHO} \\ \text{R-CHOH-CHOH-R'} \xrightarrow{\text{2HIO}_4} \text{R-CHO} + \text{H-CO}_2\text{H} + \text{R'-CHO} \end{array}$$

Compounds containing an aldehyde or ketonic group adjacent to an alcoholic group are also attacked by periodic acid in a similar manner to glycols:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{R-CHOH-CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{rHIO}_4} \text{R-CHO} + \text{H-CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{R-CO-CHOH-R'} \xrightarrow{\text{rHIO}_4} \text{R-CO}_2\text{H} + \text{R'-CHO} \end{array}$$

Thus an aldopentose, if it had an *open-chain* structure, would require *four* molecules of periodic acid, and the products would be four molecules of formic acid and one molecule of formaldehyde (from the terminal CH<sub>2</sub>OH group).

$$\texttt{CHO+CHOH+CHOH+CH2OH} \xrightarrow{\phantom{.} 4\text{HIO}_4 \phantom{.} } 4\text{H+CO}_2\text{H} + \text{CH}_2\text{O}$$

Thus estimating the periodic acid used and the formic acid and/or formaldehyde produced will indicate the number, in pairs, of *free* oxidisable groups (CHOH, CHO or CO).

Oxidation of methyl glucoside (produced under reflux conditions; see above)

uses two molecules of periodic acid and produces one molecule of formic acid. Only one structure fits these facts, namely, a six-membered ring.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{CHOCH}_3 & \text{CHOCH}_3 \\ \hline \text{CHOH} & \text{CHO} \\ \hline \text{CHOH} & \text{CHO} \\ \hline \text{CHOH} & \text{CHO} \\ \hline \text{CH} & \text{CH} \\ \hline \text{CH}_2\text{OH} & \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \end{array}$$

The other product of the oxidation has also been isolated and characterised by Hudson. It should be noted that the successful application of this method depends on the fact that the oxide ring in glycosides is stable during the oxidation.

Since methylation of sugars under different conditions produces different sized rings, the question is: what is the size of the ring in the original sugar? Various sources of evidence, e.g., X-ray analysis, show that the normal sugars are

One other point will be mentioned here, and that is the configuration of the first carbon atom. When the open-chain structure is closed to form the ring, two configurations of the new asymmetric carbon atom are possible, the one with the hydrogen to the left (the α-form), and the one with the hydrogen to the right (the β-). This is an arbitrary arrangement, but in recent years it has been shown quite conclusively that the α- and β-forms actually have the configurations originally arbitrarily assigned to them, e.g., X-ray analysis of α-D-glucose has shown that the 1: 2-hydroxyl groups are in the cis-position (McDonald et al., 1950).

#### Disaccharides

All the disaccharides are crystalline solids, soluble in water, and fall into two classes, the reducing sugars and the non-reducing sugars.

Just as methanol forms methylglycosides with the monosaccharides, so can other hydroxy-compounds form similar unions with the monosaccharides. Since the latter are themselves hydroxy-compounds, it is possible that they can link up with themselves to form acetals, i.e., glycosides in which the aglycon is another sugar molecule. Actually, three such com-

pounds occur in nature: sucrose, maltose and lactose.

Sucrose, cane-sugar, C<sub>11</sub>H<sub>22</sub>O<sub>11</sub>, is one of the most important compounds commercially, and is obtained from the sugar-cane and sugar-beet. Sugarcane is cut into small pieces, crushed, and the juice pressed out. The juice is warmed and run into settling tanks; it is then decanted from the sediment and made alkaline with calcium hydroxide, whereupon some impurities are precipitated. The liquid is now steamed to coagulate protein matter, allowed to settle, and the clear juice concentrated to a syrup by evaporation under reduced pressure. The syrup is allowed to cool; some crystallises (about 65 per cent.), and the rest remains as a thick solution. The crystalline material is collected by centrifuging, and the thick liquid, which is known as molasses, will not crystallise.

The sugar so obtained is brown, and has an unpleasant odour. It is dissolved in water, the solution decolorised with animal charcoal or with norit (coconut charcoal), filtered, concentrated under reduced pressure, and

allowed to crystallise.

If it is desired to recover the sugar from molasses, the latter may be mixed with a fresh lot of syrup or treated chemically. Chemical treatment consists in diluting the molasses with water and adding calcium hydroxide with vigorous agitation, whereupon calcium saccharate, C12H22O11.3CaO, is precipitated. This is collected by filtration, suspended in water, and decomposed by passing in carbon dioxide. The precipitated calcium carbonate is removed by filtration and the filtrate is evaporated, etc. (see above).

The sugar-beet is sliced, extracted with hot water, the solution agitated with calcium hydroxide and carbon dioxide blown in. The calcium carbonate, which is precipitated, carries down with it nearly all the impurities. The liquid is

filtered and the filtrate evaporated, etc.

Sucrose is a white crystalline solid, m.p. 180°, soluble in water. When heated above its melting point, it forms a brown substance known as caramel. Concentrated sulphuric acid chars sucrose, the product being almost pure carbon. Sucrose is dextrorotatory, its specific rotation being +66.5°. On hydrolysis with dilute acids sucrose yields an equimolecular mixture of D(+)-glucose and D(-)-fructose:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_{12}H_{22}O_{11} + H_2O \xrightarrow{\quad HCl} \\ C_6H_{12}O_6 + C_6H_{12}O_6 \end{array}$$

Since D(-)-fructose has a greater specific rotation than D(+)-glucose, the resulting mixture is lævorotatory. Because of this, the hydrolysis of canesugar is known as the inversion of cane-sugar (this is not to be confused with the Walden inversion), and the mixture is known as invert sugar. The inversion (i.e., hydrolysis) of cane-sugar may also be effected by the enzyme invertase which is found in yeast.

Controlled oxidation of sucrose in alkaline solution with air gives D-arabonic acid. Oxidation of sucrose with nitric acid under different conditions gives either oxalic acid (80 per cent.), tartaric acid (40 per cent.), or saccharic acid (30 per cent.). Hydrogenation of sucrose under controlled conditions gives a mixture of mannitol and sorbitol (these may be separated by frac-

tional crystallisation).

Sucrose is not a reducing sugar, e.g., it will not reduce Fehling's solution; it does not form an oxime or an osazone, and does not undergo mutarotation. This indicates that neither the aldehyde group of glucose nor the ketonic group of fructose is free in sucrose. Thus a tentative structure of sucrose is one in which the two molecules, glucose and fructose, are linked by the aldehyde group of the former and ketonic group of the latter. This has been amply confirmed by further work, and the structure of sucrose has been shown to be:

$$\begin{array}{c|ccccc} CH_2OH & CH_2OH \\ H & O & H \\ \hline \\ HO & H & OH & HO & H \\ \end{array}$$

It should be noted that the fructose molecule in sucrose exists as the  $\gamma$ -form, and that when sucrose is hydrolysed, it is the 8-form of fructose which is isolated.

Maltose (malt-sugar), C12H22O11, is produced by the action of malt (which contains the enzyme diastase) on starch:

$$({\rm C_6H_{10}O_5})_n + \frac{n}{2}\,{\rm H_2O} \xrightarrow{-{\rm diastase}} \rightarrow \frac{n}{2}\,{\rm C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}}$$

Maltose is a white crystalline solid, m.p. 160–165°, soluble in water, and is dextrorotatory. When it is hydrolysed with dilute acids or by the enzyme maltase, maltose yields two molecules of D(+)-glucose. Maltose is a reducing sugar, e.g., it reduces Fehling's solution; it forms an oxime and an osazone, and undergoes mutarotation. This indicates that at least one aldehyde group (of the two glucose molecules) is free in maltose. Further work has shown that the structure of maltose is:

The hemiacetal link of one glucose molecule (the reducing half) is unchanged, but that of the other (the non-reducing half) has been converted into the acetal link.

Cellobiose,  $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ , may be obtained from cellulose by acetylating good filter paper (which is almost pure cellulose) with acetic anhydride in the presence of concentrated sulphuric acid. The octa-acetate of cellobiose so obtained is saponified with potassium hydroxide or with sodium ethoxide, whereupon cellobiose is produced.

Cellobiose is a white crystalline solid, m.p.  $225^{\circ}$ , soluble in water, and dextrorotatory. When hydrolysed with dilute acids or by the enzyme *emulsin*, it yields two molecules of D(+)-glucose. It is a reducing sugar, forms an oxime and osazone, and undergoes mutarotation. Its structure has been shown to be:

Lactose (milk-sugar), C<sub>12</sub>H<sub>22</sub>O<sub>11</sub>, occurs in the milk of all animals, and is prepared commercially from whey by evaporation to crystallisation; whey is obtained as a by-product in the manufacture of cheese.

Lactose is a white crystalline solid, m.p.  $203^{\circ}$  (with decomposition), soluble in water, and is dextrorotatory. It is hydrolysed by dilute acids or by the enzyme *lactase*, to an equimolecular mixture of D(+)-glucose and D(+)-galactose. Lactose is a reducing sugar, forms an oxime and osazone, and undergoes mutarotation. Its structure has been shown to be:

Sucrose, maltose and lactose are three disaccharides which occur naturally. Cellobiose may be prepared from cellulose. Two other disaccharides which have been prepared are melibiose (from the trisaccharide raffinose), and gentiobiose (from the trisaccharide gentianose). These differ from the other disaccharides in

that the two monosaccharide molecules are linked by the sixth carbon atom (the aldehyde carbon atom being number one) of the reducing monosaccharide:

### Polysaccharides

The polysaccharides are high polymers of the monomeric sugars and are

analogous to the synthetic long-chain polymers.

Inulin occurs in many plants, e.g., in the roots of the dandelion, in the tubers of the dahlia and in certain lichens. It is a white powder, insoluble in cold water, and in hot water forms a colloidal solution which does not form a gel on cooling. Inulin solutions do not give any colour with iodine. Inulin is hydrolysed by dilute acids to D(-)-fructose, and therefore the structure of inulin is based on the fructose unit. The empirical formula of inulin is usually given as  $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n$ , but more accurately, it is  $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n \cdot H_2O$ , since in the formation of inulin n-I molecules of water are eliminated from n-molecules of fructose. Molecular-weight determinations (by chemical methods) appear to indicate the value of 5000 (about 30 units).

Starch,  $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n$ , occurs in all green plants; the commercial sources of starch are maize, wheat, barley, rice, potatoes, and sorghum. The plant cells are broken down by grinding and washing with water; the extract is passed over fine sieves, the starch granules passing through and the other materials being retained. The starch granules are collected and dried with

hot air, the product now containing about 20 per cent. water.

Starch consists of two fractions, one being known as  $\alpha$ -amylose (the "A" fraction), and the other as  $\beta$ -amylose or amylopectin (the "B" fraction); the former comprises 10–20 per cent. of starch, and the latter 80–90 per cent.  $\alpha$ -Amylose is soluble in water, and the solution gives a blue colour with iodine. An aqueous solution of  $\alpha$ -amylose slowly forms a precipitate, since  $\alpha$ -amylose has a strong tendency to "revert" to the insoluble state in solution. Amylopectin is insoluble in water, is stable in contact with water, and gives a violet colour with iodine.  $\alpha$ -Amylose and amylopectin are both hydrolysed to maltose by the enzyme diastase, and to D(+)-glucose by dilute acids (amylopectin gives about 50 per cent. of maltose).

The determination of the molecular weight of  $\alpha$ -amylose by means of osmotic pressure measurements gives a value of 10,000–50,000; the molecular weight of amylopectin (by osmotic pressure measurements) is 50,000–100,000 (see also cellulose, below). The structures of  $\alpha$ -amylose and amylopectin are not known with certainty, but the work done so far appears to indicate that  $\alpha$ -amylose consists mainly of linear chains, and that amylopectin contains branched chains. Furthermore, the glucose units exist mainly in

the a-form in starch.

The dextrins,  $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n$ , are produced by the partial hydrolysis of starch by boiling with water under pressure at about 250°. They are white powders, and are used for making adhesives and confectionery, for sizing paper, etc.

Glycogen,  $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n$ , is found in nearly all animal cells, occurring mainly in the liver; it is the reserve carbohydrate of animals, and so is often known as "animal starch". It has also been isolated from plant sources (Hassid and McCready, 1941).

Glycogen is a white powder, soluble in water, the solution giving a purplishred colour with iodine. On hydrolysis with dilute acid, glycogen gives D(+)glucose. The molecular weight of glycogen has been given as 500,000-800,000,

and it appears that glycogen contains highly branched chains.

Pectins are found in plant and fruit juices. Their characteristic property is the ability of their solutions to gelate, i.e., form jellies. They have a high molecular weight, and appear to be polygalacturonic acids with the carboxyl groups partially esterified with methanol.

Cellulose, (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>10</sub>O<sub>5</sub>)<sub>n</sub>, is the main constituent of the cell-wall of plants; it is the most widely distributed organic compound. Recently it has been found to occur in certain animal tissues.

The main source of cellulose is cotton and wood. Cotton is almost pure cellulose, but wood also contains lignin, which is not a polysaccharide. Lignin is separated from cellulose by digesting wood chips at 130-150° with an aqueous solution containing calcium and magnesium hydrogen sulphites; the lignin is soluble. This method of preparing cellulose is known as the sulphite process. Another method, the "sulphate process", consists in digesting wood with a solution of sodium hydroxide, sodium sulphide and sulphur; again only the lignin is soluble.

The hemicelluloses comprise a group of polysaccharides which also occur as the constituent of the cell-wall of plants. Many hemicelluloses give glucose, mannose and galactose on hydrolysis.

Cellulose is a white solid, insoluble in water but soluble in ammoniacal copper hydroxide solution (Schweitzer's reagent). Careful hydrolysis of cellulose gives cellobiose; it is also possible to isolate cellotriose (trisaccharide) and cellotetrose (tetrasaccharide). All of these saccharides, on further hydrolysis, yield only D(+)-glucose which exists in the  $\beta$ -form in

cellulose (cf. starch).

Molecular-weight determinations of cellulose give different values according to the method used, e.g., chemical methods give a value of 20,000-40,000; viscosity method, 150,000-200,000; and by means of the ultracentrifuge, 300,000-500,000. Of all the methods for measuring the molecular weight of large molecules (including the method of osmotic pressure), probably that by the ultracentrifuge is the most reliable. In any case, the value of n in  $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_n$  is uncertain for all the polysaccharides.

Artificial silk. The term rayon is used collectively to cover all synthetic or manufactured fibres from cellulose, but it is usually most often applied to viscose yarns. There are four processes for obtaining synthetic fibres from cellulose; cellulose nitrate, cellulose acetate, cuprammonium and viscose processes. The cellulose for these purposes is best obtained from wood-pulp and cotton-linters; other sources give rise to inferior yarns.

Cellulose nitrates (nitrocellulose). When treated with a mixture of concentrated nitric and sulphuric acids, cellulose is converted into its highest nitrate ester, the trinitrate (each glucose unit in cellulose has three free hydroxyl groups). Cellulose trinitrate is known as gun-cotton; it is insoluble in a mixture of ethanol and ether, is explosive, and is used in the manufacture of smokeless powders.

By using a diluted mixture of nitric and sulphuric acid, the lower nitrates of cellulose, the mono- and di-nitrates, are obtained. These lower nitrates, in the . solid state, are known as pyroxylin. Pyroxylin is soluble in a mixture of ethanol and ether, the solution being known as collodion. When heated with ethanol and camphor or camphor substitutes, pyroxylin is converted into celluloid.

The oldest method—the Chardonnet process—of preparing artificial silk involves the use of cellulose nitrate (pyroxylin) in one of its stages. The pyroxylin is dissolved in a mixture of ethanol and ether to give collodion, which is then forced through glass capillary tubes into the air, whereupon the solvent evaporates, leaving filaments of cellulose nitrate. These filaments are digested with sodium hydroxide or sodium hydrogen sulphate solutions to "denitrate" the cellulose nitrate to cellulose. This process of preparing artificial silk is

expensive due to the high cost of the chemicals.

Cellulose acetate (celanese silk). When acetylated with acetic anhydride in the presence of sulphuric acid, cellulose is converted into cellulose triacetate. When the reaction is complete, water is added to decompose the triacetate into the diacetate (approximately). The diacetate is washed, dried, and dissolved in a mixture of organic solvents (of which acetone is generally the main constituent). The solution is then forced through a spinneret into a warm chamber, whereupon the solvent evaporates leaving behind fine threads of cellulose acetate.

Cellulose acetate silk burns with difficulty, but is expensive. Cellulose acetate is also used for making non-inflammable photographic and motion-picture films,

non-shatterable glass, lacquers and varnishes.

Esters other than the acetate are also used for the above purposes, e.g., cellulose

formate, propionate and butyrate.

Cuprammonium process (cupra silk). In the cuprammonium process, cellulose is dissolved in ammoniacal copper hydroxide solution, which is then forced through a spinneret into a sulphuric acid bath, whereupon cellulose is precipitated as fine threads. Cupra silk has the very big advantage of being cheap.

Viscose rayon. In the viscose process, cellulose is digested with sodium hydroxide solution, and then carbon disulphide is passed into the solution. A mixture of sodium cellulose xanthates, soluble in sodium hydroxide, is formed (cf. p. 341): R = cellulose:

$$R-OH + CS_2 + NaOH \longrightarrow S=C + H_2O$$

This alkaline solution has a high viscosity, and hence the silk obtained by this process was named viscose rayon. The viscose solution is forced through a spinneret into a sulphuric acid bath, whereupon cellulose is precipitated as fine threads. Of all artificial silks, viscose rayon is produced in the largest quantity.

Cellophane is made by extruding a viscose solution through a long narrow slit into an acid bath, whereupon cellulose is precipitated as very thin sheets. These sheets are made moisture-proof by coating with a transparent nitrocellulose

Some cellulose ethers, particularly the ethyl ether, are used in the manufacture

of plastics.

When agitated with about 20 per cent. aqueous sodium hydroxide, cellulose swells; apparently cellulose combines with the sodium hydroxide to form a sodiocellulose. This is unstable, and is readily decomposed into cellulose by the addition of water, but the cellulose has a number of its physical properties changed, e.g., it absorbs dyes more readily than untreated cellulose. This

reactive" form of cellulose is known as mercerised cellulose.

Cellulose may be oxidised by nitrogen dioxide to give a product which retains its original form and much of the original tensile strength. It appears that about half of the CH2OH groups (alternately) are oxidised to carboxyl, thereby giving a compound readily soluble in sodium hydroxide. This oxidised cellulose is useful in medicine, e.g., it possesses hæmostatic properties, and is useful as sterile gauze.

### QUESTIONS

1. What are the carbohydrates and how are they classified?

2. Outline the evidence for the structural formulæ of:—(a) the aldopentoses, (b) the

ketohexoses, (d) sucrose, (e) maltose, (f) lactose.
3. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when 3. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when glucose, fructose, sucrose and maltose, respectively, are treated with:—(a) Tollens' reagent, (b) Fehling's solution, (c) NaOH, (d) HCN, (e) NH<sub>2</sub>OH, (f) C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·NH·NH<sub>2</sub>, (g) oxidising agents, (h) reducing agents, (i) HCl, (f) Ca(OH)<sub>2</sub>, (k) EtOH, (l) Me<sub>2</sub>CO, (m) Ac<sub>2</sub>O, (n) MeI, (o) Me<sub>5</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, (p) micro-organisms, (q) enzymes.

4. How are the following compounds prepared commercially:—(a) D(+)-glucose, (b) D(+)-mannose, (c) D(+)-galactose, (d) D(-)-fructose, (e) D(-)-arabinose, (f) sucrose, (g) maltose, (h) lactose, (i) inulin, (j) starch, (k) cellulose?

5. Write an account of:—(a) the methods of descending and ascending the sugar series, (b) the conversion of an aldose into a ketose and vice versa, (c) the synthesis of

6. Show, by means of equations, how you would convert D(+)-glucose into:—(a) D(+)-mannose, (b) D(-)-arabinose, (c) mannitol, (d) methylglucoside, (e) ethylfructoside. 7. Write an account of:—(a) mutarotation, (b) the pyranose structure of the sugars,

(c) the furanose structure of the sugars, (d) the configuration of the sugars.

8. Define and give examples of:—(a) the Amadori rearrangement, (b) epimerisation,
(c) the Kiliani reaction, (d) Wohl's method, (e) Zemplen's method, (f) Ruff's method,
(g) Weerman's reaction, (h) the Lobry de Bruyn-van Ekenstein rearrangement, (i) glycoside, (j) the inversion of cane-sugar, (h) an enzyme.

9. Discuss the methods of determining the molecular weight of macromolecules.

10. Write an account of the chemistry involved in the utilisation of cellulose in

industry.

#### READING REFERENCES

Weygand, The Theory of Osazone Formation, Ber., 1940, 73B, 1284. Barry and Mitchell, Mechanism of Osazone Formation, Nature, 1955, 175, 220. Oertly and Meyers, Constitution and Taste, J. Amer. Chem. Soc., 1919, 41, 855.
Tobie, A Supersensitive Schiff's Reagent, Ind. Eng. Chem. (Anal. Ed.), 1942, 14, 405.
Mullin, Synthetic Fibres, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1930, 22, 461.
Ott, Cellulose Derivatives for Plastics, ibid., 1940, 32, 1641.
Hussey and Scherer, Rayon—Today and Tomorrow, J. Chem. Educ., 1930, 7, 2543.
Marsh and Wood, Introduction to the Chemistry of Cellulose, Chem. Rayon—and Hall (1945).
Nord. The Fermentation of Clusope. Chem. Registers, 1940, 22, 462. Nord, The Fermentation of Glucose, Chem. Reviews, 1940, 23, 423.
Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley. (1942, 2nd ed.) Vol. II, Ch. 20 and 21, Carbohydrates; Ch. 22, Cellulose.

Percival, Structural Carbohydrate Chemistry, Muller (1950). Honeyman, Chemistry of the Carbohydrates, Oxford Univ. Press (1948).

Shearon et al., Cane Sugar Refining, Ind Eng. Chem., 1951, 43, 552 (also pp. 603-638). Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1953). Vol. IV, Ch. 9. Starch. Finar, Organic Chemistry. Longmans, Green. Vol. II (1959, 2nd ed.), Ch. VII.

Carbohydrates. Stacey, Industrial and Medical Uses of Carbohydrates, Chem. and Ind., 1956, 1398. Arcus and Greenwood, The Hofmann Reaction with  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -Hydroxyamides, J.C.S., 1953, 1937.

Ferrier and Overend, Newer Aspects of the Stereochemistry of Carbohydrates, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1959, 13, 265.

Wiggins, Sugar and its Industrial Applications, Roy. Inst. Chem., Lectures, Monographs and Reports, 1960, No. 5.

#### CHAPTER XIX

### ALICYCLIC COMPOUNDS

THERE is a large number of compounds which contain closed rings comprised of carbon atoms only. These compounds are known collectively as carbocyclic or homocyclic compounds. In this group falls a class of compounds which resemble the aliphatic compounds in many ways, and hence they are often called alicyclic compounds (aliphatic cyclic compounds). The saturated alicyclic hydrocarbons have the general formula  $C_n H_{2n}$  (the same as that of the olefins); they do not contain a double bond but possess a ring structure.

Nomenclature. Since the saturated alicyclic hydrocarbons contain a number of methylene groups joined together to form a ring, they are known as the polymethylenes, the number of carbon atoms in the ring being indicated by a Greek or Latin prefix, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \operatorname{CH_2} & \operatorname{CH_2} & \operatorname{CH_2-CH_2} \\ \operatorname{CH_2} & \operatorname{CH_2-CH_2} \\ \operatorname{trimethylene} & \operatorname{trimethylene} \end{array}$$

According to the I.U.P.A.C. system, the saturated monocyclic hydrocarbons take the names of the corresponding open-chain saturated hydrocarbons, preceded by the prefix cyclo-, and they are known collectively as the cycloparaffins or cycloalkanes, and if the alicyclic hydrocarbon is unsaturated, the rules applied to the olefins are used, e.g.,

In addition to the simple monocyclic compounds, there are more complicated compounds with bridges linked across the ring, e.g.,

According to the I.U.P.A.C. system, saturated alicyclic hydrocarbons consisting of two rings only and having two or more atoms in common, take the prefix bicyclo followed by the name of the open-chain hydrocarbon containing the same total number of carbon atoms. The number of carbon atoms in each of the three bridges connecting the two tertiary carbon atoms is indicated in brackets in descending order. Numbering begins with one of the bridgeheads and proceeds by the longest possible path to the second bridgehead; numbering is then continued from this atom by the longer unnumbered path back to the first bridgehead and is completed by the shortest path, e.g.,

6-chloro-2-ethyl-1:8-dimethyl-

## CYCLOALKANES AND CYCLOALKENES

Five- and six-membered cycloparaffins occur in petroleum (the naphthenes; see p. 56); three-, four- and five-membered rings occur in terpenes, the most important class of alicyclic compounds. Many cyclic acids also occur in petroleum; these are known as the *naphthenic acids* and are mainly cyclopentane derivatives. Some cyclopentene derivatives of the fatty acids occur naturally, and are important in medicine.

General methods of preparation of alicyclic compounds. It is interesting to note that up to about 1880, organic chemists thought that there were only two classes of compounds, aliphatic and aromatic; e.g., V. Meyer (1876) believed that rings smaller than six carbon atoms were never likely to be obtained. Since 1882, however, many methods have been introduced to prepare various sized rings. The following methods are typical.

I. When αω-dihalogen derivatives of the paraffins are treated with sodium or zinc, the corresponding cycloparaffin is formed (Freund, 1882),

e.g., I: 3-dibromopropane forms cyclopropane:

$$\mathrm{CH_2} \overset{\mathrm{CH_2Br}}{\longleftarrow} + \mathrm{Zn} \overset{\mathrm{CH_2}}{\longrightarrow} \mathrm{CH_2} \overset{\mathrm{CH_2}}{\longleftarrow} + \mathrm{ZnBr_2}$$

This method is really an extension of the Wurtz reaction and may be re-

garded as an internal Wurtz reaction.

αω-Dihalogen derivatives of the paraffins in which the two halogen atoms are further apart than the 1:6 positions, do not form ring compounds but undergo the Wurtz reaction (at each end) to form long-chain paraffins; e.g., decamethylene bromide, Br (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>10</sub>·Br, in ether, reacts with sodium to form normal paraffins C<sub>20</sub>, C<sub>30</sub>, C<sub>40</sub>, C<sub>50</sub>, C<sub>60</sub>, C<sub>70</sub>, and higher members (Carothers, 1930).

2. When the calcium or barium salt of a dicarboxylic acid is distilled, a cyclic ketone is formed (Wislicenus, 1893), e.g., barium adipate gives cyclo-

pentanone:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot COO \\ CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot COO \end{array} \text{Ba} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \\ CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \end{array} CO + \text{BaCO}_3 \end{array}$$

Actually, the slow distillation of adipic acid gives cyclopentanone.

Cyclic ketones may readily be converted into the corresponding cycloparaffins by means of the Clemmensen reduction, e.g.,

$$CH_{2} \xrightarrow{CH_{2} \cdot CH_{2}} CO + 4[H] \xrightarrow{Zn/Hg} CH_{2} \xrightarrow{CH_{2} - CH_{2}} CH_{2} + H_{2}O \quad (g.)$$

Alternatively, the conversion may be effected by either of the following two methods:

(i) 
$$CH_2-CH_2$$
  $CO \xrightarrow{Na/C_1H_1OH} CH_2-CH_2$   $CHOH \xrightarrow{HI \text{ at o}^{\circ}} CH_2-CH_2$   $CH_2-CH_2$   $CH_2-C$ 

(ii) 
$$CH_2$$
— $CH_2$ — $CH$ 

3. Six-membered alicyclic compounds may very conveniently be prepared by the reduction of benzene and its derivatives. Catalytic reduction under pressure using nickel is the most satisfactory, e.g., phenol is almost quantitatively converted into cyclohexanol:

$$C_6H_5OH + 3H_2 \xrightarrow{NI} C_6H_{11}OH$$

Reduction may also be carried out at room temperature and at atmospheric

pressure by using Adams' platinum catalyst (see p. 65).

4. Various alicyclic compounds may be prepared by the condensation between certain dihalogen derivatives of the paraffins and sodiomalonic

ester or sodioacetoacetic ester (Perkin junior, 1883), e.g.,

(i) Ethylene bromide condenses with one molecule of malonic ester in the presence of two molecules of sodium ethoxide to form cyclopropane-I: I-dicarboxylic ester. This reaction may be formulated (see p. 232):

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{CH_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2} + \operatorname{2NaOC_2H_5} \longrightarrow \operatorname{CNa_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2} + \operatorname{2C_2H_5OH} \\ \operatorname{CH_2Br} + \operatorname{CNa_2(CO_2C_2H_5)_2} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \operatorname{CH_2} \\ \operatorname{CH_2} \\ \operatorname{CH_2Br} \end{array} \\ \operatorname{CH_2Br} \end{array} + \operatorname{2NaBr}$$

This ester may be converted into cyclopropanecarboxylic acid by the usual procedure used in malonic ester syntheses:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ \mid \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{C} (\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{(i) KOH}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ \mid \\ \text{(ii) HCl} \end{array} \text{C} \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{C} (\text{CO}_2\text{H})_2 \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{C} \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{C} \\ \text{C} \text{H}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{C} \\ \text{C} \text{H}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{C} \text{H}_2 \end{array} \text{C} \\ \text{C} \text{H}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \text{H}_2 \\ \text{C} \text{H}_2 \end{array} \text{C} \\ \text{C} \text{H}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \text{H}_2 \\ \text{C} \text{H}_2 \end{array} \text{C} \\ \text{C} \text{H}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \text{H}_2 \\ \text{C} \text{H}_2 \end{array} \text{C} \\ \text{C} \text{H}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \text{H}_2 \\ \text{C} \text{H}_2 \end{array} \text{C} \\ \text{C} \text{H}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \text{H}_2 \\ \text{C} \text{H}_2 \end{array} \text{C} \\ \text{C} \text{H}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \text{H}_2 \\ \text{C} \text{H}_2 \end{array} \text{C} \\ \text{C} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2} \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \text{H}_2 \\ \text{C} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2} \end{array} \text{C} \\ \text{C} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2} \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \text{H}_2 \\ \text{C} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2} \end{array} \text{C} \\ \text{C} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_$$

(ii) Ethylene bromide condenses with two molecules of sodiomalonic ester to form butane-I: I: 4: 4-tetracarboxylic ester:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_2\text{Br} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2\text{Br} \end{array} + 2\text{CHNa}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \longrightarrow \begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2 \end{array} + 2\text{NaBr}$$

On treatment with excess sodium ethoxide, this tetracarboxylic ester forms the disodio-derivative, which, when treated with iodine, is converted into a cyclobutane derivative. If methylene iodide is used instead of iodine, the cyclopentane derivative is obtained:

Thus, by using the appropriate dihalogen derivatives of the paraffins under suitable conditions, it is possible to prepare rings containing 3-7 carbon atoms (the yield being highest for the 5- and lowest for the 7membered ring; see later).

Acetoacetic ester may also be used to prepare ring compounds, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{CH_2-CH_2Br} \\ + \operatorname{CH_2-CH_2Br} \\ \operatorname{CO_2C_2H_5} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{cOoc}_{\operatorname{cH_3}}} \operatorname{CH_2-CH_2} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{COoc}_{\operatorname{cH_3}}} \operatorname{CH_2-CH_2} \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{CO_2C_2H_5}} \operatorname{CH_2-CH_2} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{COoc}_{\operatorname{ch_3}}} \operatorname{CH_2-CH_2} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{Cooc}_{\operatorname{ch_3}}} \operatorname{CO_2C_2H_5}$$

Hydrolysis and decarboxylation of this compound produce cyclohexyl methyl ketone.

By using acetoacetic ester, it is possible to prepare rings containing 3, 5, 6 and 7 carbon atoms, but not 4; all attempts to prepare a 4-membered ring result in the formation of a dihydropyran derivative (p. 767):

$$(CH_{2})_{3} + NaCH_{CO\cdot CH_{3}} \xrightarrow{H_{2}C} OH_{2}C \xrightarrow{C \cdot CH_{3}} \xrightarrow{-HBr} OH$$

$$H_{2}CBr$$

$$H_{2}C \xrightarrow{CH_{2} \cdot C \cdot CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5}} \longrightarrow H_{2}C \xrightarrow{C \cdot CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5}} \longrightarrow$$

5. Certain cyclic ketones can be obtained by the **Dickmann reaction** (1901). This reaction is an *intramolecular* acetoacetic ester condensation (Claisen condensation); the reaction is carried out by treating the esters of adipic, pimelic or suberic acids with sodium, whereupon 5-, 6- or 7-membered rings, respectively, are obtained; *e.g.*, adipic ester forms *cyclo*pentanone:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_2-CH_2-CO\boxed{OC_2H_5} & \xrightarrow{Na} & CH_2-CH_2 \\ CH_2-CH_2-COOC_2H_5 & \xrightarrow{CH_2-CH_2} & CONa \xrightarrow{H_4O} \\ \hline \\ CH_2-CH_2-CH_2 & CO\xrightarrow{acid} & CH_2-CH_2 & CO\xrightarrow{heat} & CH_2-CH_2 \\ \hline \\ CH_2-CH_2 & CO\xrightarrow{heat} & CH_2-CH_2 & CO\xrightarrow{heat} & CH_2-CH_2 \\ \hline \\ CO_2C_2H_5 & CO_2C_2H_5 & CO\xrightarrow{heat} & CH_2-CH_2 & CO+CO_2 \\ \hline \\ CO_2C_2H_5 & CO_2C_2H_5 & CO-CO_2C_2H_5 & CO-CO_2C_2C_2H_5 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Leonard *et al.* (1958), however, have now cyclised  $\alpha$ ,  $\omega$ -diesters with potassium t-butoxide in xylene under high dilution conditions (p. 397), and have obtained mono- and diketones for n=6–14 (yields: variable):

$$(\mathrm{CH_2})_n \overbrace{\mathrm{CO_2Et}}^{\mathrm{CO_2Et}} \longrightarrow (\mathrm{CH_2})_n \mathrm{CO} + (\mathrm{CH_2})_n \overline{\mathrm{CO}}_{\mathrm{CO}} (\mathrm{CH_2})_n$$

Esters lower than adipic ester may form products by *intermolecular* condensation and cyclisation, e.g., in the presence of sodium or sodium ethoxide, ethyl succinate forms succinosuccinic ester (cyclohexane-2:5-dione-1:4-dicarboxylic ester):

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CO_2C_2H_5 & CO_2C_2H_5 \\ H\dot{C}|H & C_2H_5O|OC & CH_2 & CH_2 \\ \dot{C}O_2C_2H_5 & H|CH & CO_2C_2H_5 \\ \dot{C}O_2C_2H_5 & CO_2C_2H_5 \end{array}$$

On the other hand, five-membered ring compounds may be prepared by the intermolecular condensation between oxalic and glutaric esters:

6. Cyclic ketones may be obtained by a modified Thorpe's reaction (1909). Thorpe's reaction is the condensation of cyano-compounds in the presence of sodium ethoxide to form the dimers; the cyano-compound must have at least one active hydrogen atom, e.g.,

$$2C_2H_5O_2C \cdot CH_2 \cdot CN \xrightarrow{NaOC_2H_5} C_2H_5O_2C \cdot CH - C \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5$$

By using the dicyano-derivative of an ester, it is possible to obtain a cyclic ketonic acid; e.g.,  $\alpha$ :  $\delta$ -dicyanovaleric ester undergoes cyclisation in the presence of sodium ethoxide:

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{CH_2-CH_2\cdot CN} \\ | & \operatorname{CN} \\ \operatorname{CH_2-CH\cdot CO_2C_2H_5} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{NaOC_2H_5}} \begin{array}{c} \operatorname{CH_2-CH\cdot CN} \\ | & \operatorname{C}=\operatorname{NH} \\ \operatorname{CH_2-CH\cdot CO_2C_2H_5} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{acid}} \\ & \begin{array}{c} \operatorname{CH_2-CH\cdot CO_2H} \\ | & \operatorname{CO} \\ \operatorname{CH_2-CH\cdot CO_2H} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{heat}} \begin{array}{c} \operatorname{CH_2-CH_2} \\ | & \operatorname{CO} \\ \operatorname{CH_2-CH\cdot CO_2H} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{heat}} \begin{array}{c} \operatorname{CH_2-CH_2} \\ | & \operatorname{CO} \\ \operatorname{CH_2-CH\cdot CO_2H} \end{array}$$

Dicyano-compounds have also been used to prepare large ring compounds

(p. 493).

7. (i) Hydroxy-cyclic compounds may be prepared by reducing certain diketones with magnesium amalgam; the reaction is a pinacol reduction (cf. p. 163). E.g., heptane-2:6-dione forms 1:2-dimethylcyclopentane-1:2-diol:

$$\text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2 - \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3} \xrightarrow{\text{(i) Mg/Hg}} \text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2 - \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3} \xrightarrow{\text{(ii) acid}} \text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2 - \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3}$$

(ii) Hydroxycyclic compounds may also be prepared by an *intramolecular* Grignard reaction on certain bromo-ketones; *e.g.*, when treated with magnesium in ethereal solution, 6-bromohexan-2-one forms the corresponding

Grignard reagent which, due to the proximity of the carbonyl group, undergoes intramolecular reaction to form a cyclic compound:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}\text{-}\text{CH}_3 & \text{Mg} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CO}\text{--}\text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{MgBr} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3\text{--}\text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2} \end{array}$$

Methods (i) and (ii) work very well for the preparation of five- and six-membered rings. The reason for this will be discussed later (p. 486), where it will also be seen why the Dieckmann reaction is limited to the formation

of 5-, 6- and 7-membered rings.

8. Diels-Aider Reaction or Diene-Synthesis (1928). A simple example of the Diels-Alder reaction is the addition to a conjugated diene of an ethylenic compound in which the double bond is adjacent to a carbonyl group; e.g., butadiene combines with acraldehyde at 100° to form tetrahydrobenzaldehyde:

In general, the diene synthesis is the following type of condensation:

Compound A is usually referred to as the diene (whether it be a conjugated diene, polyene, enyne or diyne), and compound B is usually referred to as the dienophile. R is usually a group which contains a carbonyl group attached to one of the ethylenic or acetylenic carbon atoms, *i.e.*, the dienophile is usually an  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compound, *e.g.*,  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated acids, acid anhydrides, esters, aldehydes or ketones; the dienophile may also be a quinone (see p. 728). The presence of a carbonyl group (a negative group) in the dienophile is not essential: compounds which contain other negative groups such as nitro- or cyano-, can also behave as dienophiles. In certain cases, the dienophile may even be an unsaturated hydrocarbon (see p. 501). Nevertheless, the diene synthesis takes place most readily when the dienophile contains a carbonyl group, and the most useful dienophile is *maleic anhydride*. Tetracyanoethylene,  $C(CN)_2 = C(CN)_2$  [m.p. 200°], however, appears to be the most reactive dienophile discovered so far.

The compound formed by the condensation of A with B is known as the adduct. The adduct is always a six-membered ring, the addition taking

place in the 1: 4-positions (see also below).

The diene may be of various types: acyclic, alicyclic, semi-cyclic compounds containing two double bonds in conjugation, bicyclic compounds, aromatic hydrocarbons containing at least three linear benzene rings (e.g., anthracene; see p. 729), and certain heterocyclic compounds (e.g., furan; see p. 742). No catalyst is required (but see later); the two compounds are heated together or heated in some solvent, e.g., benzene. Cyclic dienes produce bridge-compounds, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH & CH \\ CH & CH_2 + \begin{pmatrix} CH \cdot CO \\ CH \cdot CO \end{pmatrix} O \longrightarrow \begin{pmatrix} CO \\ CH \cdot CO \\ CO \end{pmatrix} O$$

Some examples of various dienes are:

The addition reaction is always stereospecific in that it is a *cis*-addition, *e.g.*, butadiene reacts with maleic acid to give *cis*-1:2:5:6-tetrahydrophthalic acid, whereas fumaric acid gives the *trans* derivative:

When the diene is cyclic, two cis-additions are possible, one giving the endocompound and the other the exo-compound, e.g.,

It has been found experimentally that the *endo*-product is usually obtained exclusively. It has been shown, however, that the diene synthesis is reversible and exothermic, and therefore raising the temperature shifts the equilibrium to the reactants (Wassermann, 1938). It has also been shown that the *endo*-compound is the kinetically controlled product and the *exo*-compound the thermodynamically controlled product. Thus raising the temperature of the reaction favours the formation of the *exo*-compound.

The mechanism of the Diels-Alder reaction is uncertain. A heterolytic mechanism has been suggested, and evidence in its favour is that when the diene contains an electron-repelling group, the rate of reaction is increased, e.g., the

reaction between isoprene and acraldehyde is faster than when butadiene is the diene, and also the heterolytic mechanism explains the orientation of the product:

If the reaction proceeds in two stages, then it must be assumed that the second stage is extremely rapid to prevent time for rotation about the single bond in the intermediate. (With maleic acid as dienophile, when the first step has occurred, one would expect rotation to fumaric acid unless the second stage is so rapid that ring closure occurs before rotation can take place.) Wassermann (1950) has overcome this difficulty by proposing that ring formation occurs by both new bonds (of the addition) being formed simultaneously. This is imagined to proceed through a non-planar transition state, and is produced by bonds being formed simultaneously between diene and dienophile, which are in parallel planes, by overlap of the p-orbitals in an endwise fashion instead of the usual sideways overlap (see I and II; the broken lines represent the overlapping orbitals). It is difficult to explain polar effects with this mechanism. If, however, some complex is produced between the reactants before the transition state is formed, then one would expect that the less symmetrical the diene and dienophile, charge distribution in each is less symmetrical, and consequently complex formation would be facilitated. Keefer et al. (1955) and Berson et al. (1956) have obtained evidence for the preliminary formation of such a complex.

Dewar (1959) also favours a one-step mechanism passing through a pseudo-

aromatic transition state:

$$\left( + \right)^z \rightarrow \left( \right)^z$$

On the other hand, Woodward et al. (1959) favour a two-stage mechanism, the two bonds being formed in separate processes, both reactants approaching each other initially in parallel planes. The formation of the first bond is the ratedetermining step.

There is also some recent evidence for the heterolytic two-stage mechanism. Yates et al. (1960) have shown that the Diels-Alder reaction is accelerated by aluminium chloride. Robinson et al. (1961) have shown that Friedel-Crafts catalysts, e.g., AlCl<sub>3</sub>, SnCl<sub>4</sub>, BF<sub>3</sub>, etc., effect the Diels-Alder reaction under much milder conditions than when the compounds are absent.

General properties of the cycloparaffins. cycloParaffins usually boil at higher temperatures than the corresponding paraffins. In many chemical respects they are similar to the paraffins, but in others they are different in that the lower members form addition products with ring fission. Hydrogen bromide attacks cyclopropane to form n-propyl bromide, but has no effect on other cycloparaffins. Hydrogen iodide attacks both cyclopropane and cyclobutane to form n-propyl iodide and n-butyl iodide, respectively; cyclobutane is attacked only when heated, no action taking place at room temperature. The higher cycloparaffins are not affected by hydrogen iodide in the cold or on moderate heating. Bromine attacks cyclopropane to form 1:3-dibromopropane; the higher members form cyclosubstituted products with bromine. When heated with hydrogen in the presence of nickel at 80°, cyclopropane is converted into propane; cyclobutane yields n-butane at 120°, and cyclopentane yields n-pentane at 300°. The higher cycloparaffins are not attacked by hydrogen in the presence of

nickel. All the foregoing reactions indicate that the stability of the ring

increases as the ring becomes larger.

Generally, derivatives of the *cyclo*paraffins very closely resemble the paraffins in those properties which do not involve ring fission, *e.g.*, cyclic acids may be converted into esters, acid chlorides, acid amides, etc.; cyclic ketones may be reduced to cyclic alcohols, etc. Owing to the presence of the ring, however, various derivatives of the *cyclo*paraffins are capable of exhibiting geometrical isomerism (see, *e.g.*, *cyclo*propane).

Opening of rings. Three- and four-membered rings may readily be opened by means of hydrogen iodide or by catalytic reduction. The rings of higher members may be opened by oxidation of the cyclic alcohol, or ketone, or cycloolefin, and in some cases, by the oxidation of the cycloalkane itself.

Changing the size of rings. On treatment with particular reagents, certain derivatives of the *cyclo*paraffins undergo rearrangement, the ring becoming either smaller or larger (see, *e.g.*, *cyclo*butylamine and *cyclo*pentanone, below).

Acetoxylation of the double bond in cycloolefins. Lead tetra-acetate attacks double bonds in cyclo-olefins to form I: 2-diacetates, the addition products usually being a mixture of the cis and trans compounds, e.g., cyclohexene forms a mixture of cis- and trans-cyclohexanediol.

cycloPropane. b.p.  $-34^{\circ}$ , may be prepared by the action of zinc on trimethylene bromide (p. 468). A recent method of preparation is to chlorinate propane, separate the r: 3-dichloro-isomer, and close the ring by means of zinc dust and sodium iodide.

cycloPropane is one of the best anæsthetics known. When heated to a high temperature, preferably in the presence of a catalyst, e.g., platinum,

cyclopropane is converted into propylene.

cyclo Propane derivatives may be prepared by the action of diazomethane on ethylenic compounds; the pyrazoline compounds formed eliminate nitrogen when heated with copper powder to form cyclopropane derivatives, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \parallel \\ \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \text{ethyl maleate} \end{array} + \\ \text{CH}_2\text{N}_2 \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 - \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \parallel \\ \text{NH} \\ \text{C} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array} \longrightarrow \\ \text{CH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{CH}} \\ \text{$$

Improved yields of cyclopropanes are obtained by photochemical, rather than thermal, decomposition of the pyrazolines (Rinehart et al., 1960).

Dihalogenomethylenes add to double bonds to form cyclopropane derivatives (see, e.g., pp. 83, 477). Methylene also does this, and the reaction may be carried out in ether solution by reaction between the olefin and methylene iodide in the presence of a zinc-copper couple (Simmons et al., 1959). According to these authors, the mechanism is:

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c$$

Chlorocyclopropanes are formed, via chloromethylene, from olefins by the action of methylene chloride and butyl-lithium (Closs et al., 1959):

$$\begin{array}{c|c} & \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2 & \longrightarrow \text{:CHCl} \\ & + :\text{CHCl} & \longrightarrow \text{CHCl} \\ \end{array}$$

Many cyclopropanecarboxylic acids are known; some exhibit geometrical and optical isomerism, e.g., cyclopropane-I: 2-dicarboxylic acid exists in the cis-form (optically inactive; it has a plane of symmetry) and the transform which is optically active (it has neither a plane nor a centre of symmetry).

cycloPropylamine, b.p. 50°, on treatment with nitrous acid forms allyl alcohol instead of the expected cyclopropanol (see cyclobutylamine, below):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{CH-NH}_2 + \text{HNO}_2 \longrightarrow \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{OH} + \text{N}_2 + \text{H}_2 \\ \text{O} \end{array}$$

cycloPropanol has not yet been prepared in a pure form; it readily rearranges to propionaldehyde. It has been prepared in a crude form by several methods (Roberts et al., 1951), e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{CHCl} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{Mg}} \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \end{array} \text{CHMgCl} \quad \xrightarrow{\text{(i) O}_2} \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ | \\ \text{(ii) H}_2 \text{O} \end{array} \text{CHOH} \\ \end{array}$$

eyeloButane, b.p.  $-15^{\circ}$ . cycloButane derivatives may be prepared by means of the malonic ester synthesis, and by polymerising certain ketens (p. 289). Curiously enough, it appears that cyclobutane cannot be prepared by ring closure of I:4-dihalogen derivatives of n-butane (this is contrary to expectation by Baeyer's Strain Theory, p. 486). Many derivatives of cyclobutane were known long before the parent hydrocarbon was obtained. This was first prepared by Willstätter (1907) by the following laborious process, using the Hofmann exhaustive methylation reaction (p. 762):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{Br} \\ | \text{CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{Br} \\ | \text{CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{Br} \\ | \text{CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{Br} \\ | \text{CH}_2\text{-CH}_2\text{-} \\ | \text{CH}_2\text{-CH}_2 \\ | \text{C$$

eycloPropene has been prepared in a similar manner from eyclopropylamine. Pines et al. (1953) have prepared cyclobutane from cyclobutanecarboxylic acid as follows:

cycloButene, b.p. 2°, shows the ordinary olefinic reactions. Willstätter was

unable to convert cyclobutene into cyclobutadiene, | CH—CH | The existence of CH—CH

this compound is doubtful; if it does exist, it is very unstable. Avram et al. (1959) appear to have prepared cyclobutadiene, and found its half-life to be about one minute. On the other hand, the following aromatic derivatives of cyclobutadiene are known: diphenylene (I; Lothrop, 1941), di-2: 3-naphthylene (II; Curtis et al., 1954), and di-1: 2-naphthylene (III; Cava et al., 1955).

(I) and (II) are pale yellow in colour and stable thermally, but (III) is red and resinifies on heating. It might be noted that three resonating structures are possible for diphenylene, but only two can be regarded as cyclobutadiene derivatives, viz., (Ib) and (Ic); (Ia) is a cyclobutane derivative. Measurements of bond distances in diphenylene have been carried out by Mak et al. (1961), and the results indicate that (Ia) makes the greatest contribution to the resonance hybrid of resonating structures (Ia, Ib, and Ic). Cava et al. (1956) have prepared (IV) and (V) (the latter is a cyclobutene derivative). Borg et al. (1958) have prepared benzocyclobutene (V) by the action of chloroform on a methanolic solution of sodium methoxide and cycloheptatriene (the reaction proceeds via the formation of dichloromethylene, p. 117; cf. cyclopentadiene, p. 479):

cycloButylamine, b.p. 82°, when treated with nitrous acid, gives a mixture of cyclobutanol and cyclopropylcarbinol, the latter being produced by ring contraction:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \text{--CH} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \\ | & | \\ \text{CH}_3 \text{---CH}_2 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{HNO}_4} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \text{---CHOH} \\ | & | \\ \text{CH}_2 \text{---CH}_2 \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \\ | & \text{CH}_2 \text{---CH}_2 \end{array}$$

This rearrangement of cyclic amines is known as the Demjanov rearrangement (1903).

If cyclobutylmethylamine is treated with nitrous acid, ring expansion by the

Demjanov rearrangement takes place; four products are obtained: cyclobutyl-carbinol, methylenecyclobutane, cyclopentanol and cyclopentene:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}\cdot\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{NH}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{HNO}_2} \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2 & \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2 \\ & + \begin{vmatrix} \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2 \end{vmatrix} \text{CHOH} + \begin{vmatrix} \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2 \end{vmatrix} \text{CH}_2 \\ \end{array}$$

cycloPropylmethylamine and some larger ring amines behave in a similar manner, and so by means of the Demjanov rearrangement it is possible to prepare seven- and eight-membered rings.

The Demjanov rearrangement is analogous to the pinacolic deamination (p. 171), and is an example of the 1,2-shift. It was at first suggested that the rearrangement occurred via a classical carbonium ion, e.g.,

Roberts et al. (1951), however, have obtained evidence that the structure of the intermediate carbonium ion is not the classical one, e.g., these authors found that both cyclopropylmethylamine and cyclobutylamine, on treatment with nitrous acid, give about the same mixture of cyclopropylmethanol, cyclobutanol, and but-3-en-1-ol. This implies that the deamination proceeds through the same intermediate carbonium ion in both cases. The structure proposed for this ion is the bridged ion (I), and the deamination may therefore be written:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_2 \\ CH_2 \\$$

Examination of (I) shows that the three CH<sub>2</sub> groups are equivalent, and this equivalence was demonstrated by Roberts, who used *cyclo*propylmethylamine labelled with <sup>14</sup>C at position 1. The cyclic products obtained were:

Thus the tracer atom is distributed equally among the three  $\mathrm{CH}_2$  carbon atoms in the cyclobutanol (positions a and b are equivalent). The cyclopropylmethanol contained 45 per cent. of  $^{14}\mathrm{C}$  at  $\mathrm{C}_1$  and 54 per cent. in the ring (at positions 3 and 3). Since the three  $\mathrm{CH}_2$  groups are equivalent in (I), the cyclopropylmethanol should have contained 33·3 per cent. of  $^{14}\mathrm{C}$  at  $\mathrm{C}_1$  and at each of the  $\mathrm{C}_3$  carbon atoms. Thus, although the major part of the reaction is proceeding through (I), there must be some other carbonium ion also produced. The structure of this ion is uncertain.

cycloPentane, b.p. 50°, may be prepared by cyclising 1:5-dibromopentane with zinc or, better, by reducing cyclopentanone by the Clemmensen method.

pound in that when heated above 450° in the presence of chromic oxide, it rearranges to cyclohexane. On the other hand, when 1-methyl-1-nitrocyclopentane is reduced with lithium aluminium hydride, 2-methylpiperidine (40 per cent.) is obtained (Lee et al., 1958):

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{Me} \\
\text{NO}_2 \\
\xrightarrow{\text{LiAiH}_4} \\
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{N} \\
\text{Me}
\end{array}$$

cycloPentanone, b.p. 130°, when treated with diazomethane, undergoes ring expansion to form cyclohexanone. This reaction has been used to prepare sevento ten-membered cyclic ketones (Kohler et al., 1939). The mechanism is uncertain, but a strong possibility is the 1,2-shift (cf. the Arndt-Eistert synthesis, p. 327):

cycloPentene, b.p. 45°, may be prepared by dehydrating cyclopentanol or by heating cyclopentyl bromide with ethanolic potassium hydroxide.

Some cyclopentene derivatives of the fatty acids are very important, since they are useful in the treatment of leprosy and tuberculosis. Two acids, which occur in chaulmoogra oil, have been used from early times in the treatment of leprosy, both acids are optically active, the naturally occurring form being the (+);

cycloPentadiene, b.p. 41°, is found in the crude benzene that is obtained from coal tar. It readily polymerises at room temperature into the dimer, dicyclopentadiene; at high temperature it forms high polymers. The hydrogen atoms of the methylene group are very reactive, e.g., cyclopentadiene reacts with Grignard reagents to form a hydrocarbon and cyclopentadienylmagnesium halide:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH=CH} \\ \mid \\ \text{CH=CH} \end{array} \\ \text{CH=} \\ \text{CH$$

Borg et al. (1958) have treated cyclopentadienylsodium with chloroform and obtained chlorobenzene. The reaction is believed to proceed via the formation of dichloromethylene (p. 117):

$$| - CCl_2 \rightarrow | - CCl_2 - Cl$$

Owing to the presence of the reactive methylene group, *cyclo*pentadiene also condenses with aldehydes or ketones in the presence of sodium ethoxide to form *fulvenes*:

ch=ch ch<sub>2</sub> + 0=c 
$$\stackrel{R}{\underset{CH=CH}{\longrightarrow}}$$
  $\stackrel{CH=CH}{\underset{CH=CH}{\longleftarrow}}$  ch=ch c=c  $\stackrel{R}{\underset{R'}{\longleftarrow}}$  + H<sub>2</sub>O

Fulvenes are derivatives of the unstable compound fulvene ( $R=R^\prime=H$ ). The fulvenes are coloured substances, the colour deepening with increase in size of

the alkyl groups, R and R'. When irradiated with ultraviolet light, benzene is

partially isomerised to fulvene (Blair et al., 1957).

The reactivity of the methylene group may be due to the fact that when cyclopentadiene loses a proton from the methylene group, the cyclopentadiene carbanion produced can behave as a resonance hybrid. The ion contains less

energy than *cyclo*pentadiene itself (the former has acquired stabilisation due to resonance), and it is this possibility of becoming more stable that acts as the "driving force" to achieve this more stable state. It should also be noted that in the *cyclo*pentadienyl carbanion there is a sextet of electrons; this gives rise to aromatic properties (p. 509).

cycloPentadiene complexes. Pauson et al. (1951) treated cyclopentadienyl-magnesium bromide with ferric chloride, their object being the preparation of dicyclopentadienyl (cf. p. 359).

$$6C_5H_5MgBr + 2FeCl_3 \longrightarrow 3C_5H_5 - C_5H_5 + 2Fe + 3MgBr_2 + 3MgCl_2$$

The reaction, however, did not proceed in this manner; instead, these authors isolated dicyclopentadienyliron, which is formed by the reduction of the ferric chloride to ferrous chloride, and the latter then reacting with the Grignard reagent:

 $2C_5H_5MgBr + FeCl_2 \longrightarrow (C_5H_5)_2Fe + MgBr_2 + MgCl_2$ 

This iron complex was named ferrocene by Woodward et al. (1952).

Many dicyclopentadienyls have now been prepared, the methods of preparation being by the use of the Grignard reaction (as shown above), by direct reaction between cyclopentadiene vapour and a heated metal or metal carbonyl, or by reaction between the sodium salt of cyclopentadiene and a metal halide (in tetrahydrofuran or liquid ammonia solution); e.g.,  $(C_5H_5)_2Cr$ ,  $(C_5H_5)_2Mn$ ,  $(C_6H_5)_2Co$ , etc. A convenient preparation of ferrocene itself is the mercuration of cyclopentadiene followed by treatment of the product with iron (Isslieb et al., 1956). One of the best methods of preparing ferrocene is by reaction between ferrous chloride and cyclopentadiene in diethylamine (Wilkinson, 1956):

$$2C_5H_6 + \mathrm{FeCl_2} + 2\mathrm{Et_2NH} \longrightarrow (C_5H_5)_2\mathrm{Fe} + 2\mathrm{Et_2NH}\cdot\mathrm{HCl}$$

Originally, structure (I) was assigned to ferrocene, but the high stability of

the molecule showed that this was unlikely. Ferrocene has a zero dipole moment, and the molecule is therefore symmetrical. Furthermore, the infrared spectrum showed that all of the C—H bonds are equivalent, and so, on this evidence, structure (II) was proposed and has been confirmed by X-ray analysis, i.e., that the two five-membered rings lie in parallel planes with the iron atom placed symmetrically between the two. In ferrocene and other cyclopentadienyls of the transition metals (Cr, Mn, Co, etc.), the entire ring is bonded uniformly to the metal atom; the bonding occurs by overlap of the sextet of  $\pi$ -electrons of the ring with the d-orbitals of the metal, thereby giving a delocalised covalent bond between the metal atom and the cyclopentadienyl ring as a whole. This,

in ferrocene, is represented by (III). Structurally related compounds are

bisbenzenechromium, etc. (see p. 541).

Derivatives of sodium, potassium, etc., are examples of ionic bonding; there is essentially an electron transfer from metal to ring, and compounds of this type are known as cyclopentadienides. On the other hand, there are cases where the key atom, e.g., silicon, and one carbon atom of the ring each contribute one electron to form essentially a  $\sigma$ -bond.

Ferrocene is an orange solid, and its reactions are aromatic, e.g., it gives a mono- and diacetyl derivative by means of the Friedel-Crafts reaction under suitable conditions. Ferrocene forms an aldehyde by the N-methylformanilide method, and this undergoes the Cannizzaro reaction, the azlactone synthesis, etc. Ferrocene can also be sulphonated to the monosulphonic acid with chlorosulphonic acid in acetic anhydride (Pauson et al., 1958). Ferrocene also undergoes mercuration and metalation, but because of its ease of oxidation, it cannot be directly halogenated or nitrated. It does not condense with maleic anhydride, and hence the conjugated system is absent in the rings.

cycloHexane, b.p. 81°, occurs in petroleum. When reduced with hydrogen iodide at 250°, benzene is converted into a mixture of cyclohexane and methylcyclopentane. Pure cyclohexane may be conveniently prepared by the reduction of cyclohexanone, and is prepared industrially by the hydrogenation of benzene in the presence of nickel at 200°. Another industrial method is the hydrogenation of phenol, dehydrating the product cyclohexanol to cyclohexene, which is then catalytically hydrogenated to cyclohexane; the process is carried out without isolating the intermediate compounds:

Many benzene derivatives may be reduced to the corresponding cyclohexane compounds, and because of this, cyclohexane and its derivatives are known as the hydroaromatic compounds. The cyclic terpenes are hydroaromatic compounds, e.g.,

Hot concentrated nitric acid oxidises cyclohexane to adipic acid, and fuming sulphuric acid converts it into benzenesulphonic acid:

$$\begin{array}{cccc} CH_2 & & & & & & & & \\ CH_2 & CH_2 & & & & & & \\ CH_2 & CH_2 & & & & & & \\ CH_2 & CH_2 & & & & & & \\ \end{array}$$

For a consideration of the spatial arrangement of the carbon atoms in cyclohexane, see p. 488.

cycloHexane can be catalytically (Pt or Pd) dehydrogenated to benzene. Provided the ring contains at least one double bond, then dehydrogenation can be readily effected with sulphur of selenium. In general, this dehydrogenation is confined to six-membered rings.

cycloHexanol, m.p. 24°, is prepared industrially by the catalytic hydrogenation of phenol. It undergoes the general reactions of an aliphatic secondary alcohol. It is converted by gentle oxidation (dilute nitric acid) into cyclohexanone; vigorous oxidation (concentrated nitric acid) produces adipic acid.

cycloHexanone, b.p.  $157^{\circ}$ , may be prepared by the oxidation of cyclohexanol.  $\alpha$ -Halogeno-cyclohexanones undergo the Favorsky reaction (1894) when treated with alkali, i.e., the six-membered ring changes to a five-membered ring carboxylic acid, e.g.,

Loftfield (1951), using the isotope <sup>14</sup>C as tracer, was led to suggest the following mechanism:

Acyclic  $\alpha$ -halogeno-ketones also undergo the Favorsky rearrangement, e.g.,

$$Me_2CBr^*COMe + OMe^- \longrightarrow Me_3C^*CO_2Me + Br^-$$

The rings of cyclic ketones may be opened by oxidation with Caro's acid to give lactones. This reaction has been used to prepare large ring lactones (p. 397).

cycloHexane-1: 4-diol, quinitol, may be prepared by the catalytic reduction of quinol:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{HO} & \xrightarrow{\text{H}_{\text{0}}/\text{Ni}} & \text{CH}_{\text{2}}\text{-CH}_{\text{2}} \\ \text{CH}_{\text{2}}\text{-CH}_{\text{2}} \\ \text{CH}_{\text{2}}\text{-CH}_{\text{2}} \end{array}$$

Quinitol exists in both the cis- and trans-forms:

Both forms are optically inactive; the cis has a plane of symmetry, and the trans a centre of symmetry.

exists in a number of stereoisomeric forms. A (+)-form, m.p. 234°, occurs in acorns: this form is known as (+)-quercitol.

cycloHexanehexol, inositol, hexahydroxycyclohexane, can exist in eight geometrical isomeric forms, of which only one is optically active (see formula). The (+)- and (-)-forms of this isomer (m.p. 248°) occur in plants as the hexaphosphoric ester, which is known as phytin. Some of the optically inactive forms also occur as their hexaphosphoric esters. One of the optically OH inactive forms is present in the vitamin B complex; it appears to have growth-promoting properties in chicks, and is an antialopecia factor (anti-baldness) in mice.

Hexachlorocyclohexane, C6H6Cl6, exists in a number of geometrical isomeric

forms, one of which is a powerful insecticide (see p. 544).

cycloHexene (tetrahydrobenzene), b.p. 83°, may conveniently be prepared by dehydrating cyclohexanol with sulphuric acid. It has the usual properties of an

A number of cyclohexene derivatives may be prepared by means of the Diels-

Alder reaction.

Braude, Linstead et al. (1952- ) have shown that hydrogen transfer takes place in the presence of palladium as catalyst (and below 100°) between cyclohexene and a wide variety of acceptors containing a multiple bond, e.g., ethylenic and acetylenic compounds, nitro-, azo- and azoxy-compounds. It is also possible to reduce only one nitro-group in compounds containing two or more, e.g., p-dinitrobenzene to p-nitroaniline:

$$3 \bigcirc \xrightarrow{Pd} 2 \bigcirc + \bigcirc$$

cycloHexene itself, under the above conditions, undergoes disproportionation to give benzene and cyclohexane.

$$\mathrm{NO_2} \hspace{-0.5cm} \stackrel{\mathrm{[H]}}{\longrightarrow} \mathrm{NH_2} \hspace{-0.5cm} \stackrel{\mathrm{NO_2}}{\longrightarrow}$$

Thus an excess of cyclohexene is required in reductions to off-set this competing disproportionation, and it has been shown that there is a direct hydrogen transfer between cyclohexene and the hydrogen acceptor.

Friedman et al. (1960) have reported the formation of carbene by reaction between methyl chloride and, e.g., phenylsodium in the presence of carbene

acceptors, e.g., cyclohexene, to give norcarane:

$$+ CH_2 \xrightarrow{\text{MeCl}} CH_2$$

cycloHexadienes (dihydrobenzenes). There are two isomeric cyclohexadienes, the 1:3-(b.p. 81°) and the 1:4-(b.p. 86°). They readily polymerise and undergo the usual reactions of a diolefin. Since cyclohexa-1:3-diene contains a conjugated system of double bonds, it can undergo both the 1:2- and 1:4addition reactions (see p. 86).

cycloHexatriene is benzene, and differs enormously in its chemical properties from the cycloalkenes and cycloalkadienes. Benzene has "aromatic properties" see benzene, p. 483).

5:5-Dimethylcyclohexane-1:3-dione, dimedone, is a solid, m.p. 148°. It is a very sensitive reagent for formaldehyde, which may be estimated gravimetrically with this reagent:

$${}^{2}(CH_{3})_{2}C \xrightarrow{CH_{2}-CO} CH_{2} + H \cdot CHO \longrightarrow$$

$$(CH_{3})_{2}C \xrightarrow{CH_{2}-CO} CH - CH_{2} - CH \xrightarrow{CO-CH_{2}} C(CH_{3})_{2} + H_{2}O$$

cycloHeptane, b.p. 118°, occurs in petroleum; it may be prepared by the

reduction of cycloheptanone.

Tropolone (cycloheptatrienolone) is a cyclic α-hydroxyketone; it has a seven-membered ring containing three double bonds. Dewar (1945), who proposed its structure, also predicted that it would have aromatic properties, and this has now been confirmed. The tropolone system occurs in certain natural products. It may be prepared from tropilidene (cycloheptatriene) as follows:

A good method of synthesising tropolone is as follows (Drysdale et al., 1958):

$$F \xrightarrow{F} F$$

$$+ F \xrightarrow{F} F$$

$$F_{2} \xrightarrow{700^{\circ}} F_{2}$$

$$+ F_{2} \xrightarrow{F} F_{2}$$

$$F_{2} \xrightarrow{F} F_{2}$$

$$F_{2} \xrightarrow{F} F_{2}$$

$$F_{2} \xrightarrow{F} F_{2}$$

$$F_{3} \xrightarrow{F} F_{2}$$

$$F_{4} \xrightarrow{F} F_{2}$$

$$F_{2} \xrightarrow{F} F_{2}$$

$$F_{3} \xrightarrow{F} F_{2}$$

$$F_{4} \xrightarrow{F} F_{2}$$

$$F_{2} \xrightarrow{F} F_{2}$$

Tropolone is very weakly acidic; it is also basic, e.g., it forms a hydrochloride. It is attacked by electrophilic reagents to give substitution products, e.g., it is readily brominated and nitrated at the 3-, 5-, and 7-positions. On heating with alkali, it is isomerised to benzoic acid. Ultraviolet absorption studies have shown that tropolone is planar (see also p. 509). The fundamental structure of the seven-membered aromatic compounds is the tropylium ion.

the seven-membered aromatic compounds is the tropylium ion. This is tropilidene with a hydride ion removed from the CH<sub>2</sub> group. Tropylium bromide may be prepared from tropilidene by the action of bromine followed by heating; the dibromide eliminates a molecule of hydrogen bromide (Doering et al., 1954).

cycloOctane, m.p. 11.8°, may be obtained by the catalytic reduction of cyclo-octane, cyclo-octadiene or cyclo-octatetraene (Willstätter (1911).

(1:3:5:7)-cycloOctatetraene was first obtained by Willstätter (1911, 1913), who prepared it from the alkaloid *pseudo*-pelletierine (ψ-pelletierine) by means of the Hofmann exhaustive methylation method (p. 762):

In 1939, Willstätter's results were questioned by a number of workers who believed that Willstätter had prepared, not cyclo-octatetraene, but styrene,  $C_6H_5$ ·CH',CH<sub>2</sub>, which has somewhat similar properties to those recorded for cyclo-octatetraene. Cope and Overberger (1947), however, prepared cyclo-octatetraene from synthetic  $\psi$ -pelletierine, and found it to have the physical properties reported originally; these authors (1948) also duplicated Willstätter's work from natural  $\psi$ -pelletierine.

Reppe (1940) prepared cyclo-octatetraene in large quantities by the polymerisation of acetylene under pressure in the presence of a nickel compound, e.g., nickel

cyanide, as catalyst, in tetrahydrofuran solution:

$$_{4}C_{2}H_{2} \rightarrow \begin{array}{c} HC \\ HC \\ HC \\ CH = CH \end{array} CH$$

cyclo-Octatetraene is a yellow liquid, b.p. 142–143°. It behaves as a typical unsaturated compound, e.g., it adds on bromine, halogen acids, etc. It can be reduced catalytically to cyclo-octane, and this, on oxidation with concentrated nitric acid, yields suberic acid. A better yield of suberic acid is obtained by reducing cyclo-octatetraene to cyclo-octene and oxidising this with nitric acid. cyclo-Octatetraene is therefore a potential commercial source of suberic acid:

The olefinic properties of cyclo-octatetraene are somewhat surprising at first sight. Since the molecule contains a closed conjugated system, one might have expected delocalisation of bonds, thereby giving rise to aromatic character (cf., p. 509). If, however, delocalisation occurred, the molecule would be planar and therefore in a state of strain (the angle of a regular octagon is 135°, and that of carbon trigonally hybridised is 120°). X-Ray analysis has indicated that the cyclo-octatetraene molecule contains alternate single and double bonds and that the ring is non-planar (Kaufman et al., 1948). The presence of this conjugated system has been supported by infrared and Raman absorption spectra studies. These results account for aliphatic properties. Treibs (1950) has shown from models of cyclo-octatetraene that one form—a basket shape ("tub")—has no internal stresses. This conformation is supported by electron-diffraction studies (Karle, 1952).

cyclo-Octa-1: 3:5-triene. This exhibits valence-tautomerism; it behaves as (I) in that it can be reduced to cyclo-octane, and it behaves as (II) in that it can

be oxidised to cis-cyclobutane-1:2-dicarboxylic acid. The isomers have been separated, and heating of either tautomer at about 80° gives an equilibrium mixture of both (Cope et al., 1950, 1952).

cycloAlkynes. Ring compounds containing one triple bond have now been prepared (Eglinton et al., 1956). The preparation of these compounds offers a new means of synthesising macrocyclic compounds (p. 493). The following example illustrates the method used. Tetradeca-1:13-di-yne, on treatment with excess of cupric acetate in methanolic pyridine, in high dilution (see p. 397), forms cyclotetradeca-1: 3-di-yne and also some of the cyclic dimer cyclo-octacosa-1:3:15:17-tetra-yne.

These, on catalytic hydrogenation (platinum), gave respectively cyclotetra-decane ( $C_{14}H_{28}$ ) and cyclocotacosane ( $C_{28}H_{56}$ ). Sondheimer et al. (1959) have carried out oxidative coupling with octa-1:7-di-yne and obtained 16-, 24-, 32-, and 40-membered polyacetylenes which, on hydrogenation, give cycloalkanes. These authors have now prepared up to a 54-membered ring system; the largest ring hitherto contained 34 carbon atoms.

Baeyer's Strain Theory. Baeyer (1885) was the first to point out that the angle subtended by the corners and centre of a regular tetrahedron-190° 28'—lies between the values of the angles in a regular pentagon (108°) and a regular hexagon (120°). On this observation was based the Baeyer Strain Theory. According to the Strain Theory, the valency angle can be altered from this normal value (109° 28'), but when altered, a strain is set

up in the molecule, and the greater the deviation from the normal angle, the greater is the strain. Thus, according to Baeyer, five- and six-membered rings form most readily, and are the most stable because they involve the least strain (or distortion) from the normal valency angle.

109°28'

FIG. 19.1.

The following arguments are based on the assumption that the rings are planar. In cyclopropane the three carbon atoms each occupy a corner of an equilateral triangle. Since the angles of an equilateral triangle are  $60^{\circ}$ , the distortion in cyclopropane will be  $\frac{1}{2}(109^{\circ}28'-60^{\circ}) = +24^{\circ}44'$ (Fig. 1). When the carbon valencies are forced together, the strain is said to be positive; when forced apart, negative. Thus the cyclopropane molecule will be under a very large strain, and hence should be difficult to prepare, and should not be very

In cyclobutane the distortion is  $\frac{1}{2}$  (109° 28′ - 90°) = + 9° 44', a value which is considerably less than

that for cyclopropane. Experimental work shows that cyclobutane derivatives are more easily formed and are more stable than cyclopropane compounds; this supports the Strain Theory.

In cyclopentane the distortion is  $\frac{1}{2}$  (109° 28′ - 108°) = + 0° 44′; in cyclohexane,  $\frac{1}{2}$  (109° 28′ - 120°) =  $\frac{2}{5}$ ° 16′; in cycloheptane,  $\frac{1}{2}$  (109° 28′ - 128° 34′) = -9° 33′; etc.

Thus five- and six-membered rings involve the least distortion and hence the ease of formation and stability should be a maximum in these compounds. The Strain Theory agrees reasonably well with the properties of ring compounds containing six or less carbon atoms; e.g., we can now see why only the 1:4- and 1:5-dicarboxylic acids form cyclic anhydrides, and the I: 6- and I: 7-cycle ketones (p. 380); why only  $\gamma$ - and  $\delta$ -hydroxyacids readily form lactones (p. 395); etc. Measurements of the dipole moments of simple compounds of oxygen, nitrogen and sulphur show that the valency angles of these elements lie between 100° and 110°. Hence the presence of these elements in ring compounds will not greatly affect the stability of five- and six-membered rings in which they are present (see also the heterocyclic compounds, Ch. XXX).

The Strain Theory has been used to account for the great reactivity of the double bond. The double bond was considered to be a two-membered ring; the distortion is therefore  $\frac{1}{2}$  (109° 28′ -0°) = +54° 44′. This involves the greatest distortion (strain) and consequently the least stability, i.e., the greatest tendency to open or react. This reasoning for the double bond may have been helpful, but further consideration shows it to be inadequate, e.g., the double bond is formed so easily that it would appear

to be under very small strain, if any (see also later).

A point of interest that may be mentioned here is that alkyl substituents in a chain often facilitate ring closure, e.g., (i) β: β-dimethylglutaric acid forms an anhydride far more easily than does glutaric acid. (ii) Adipic acid is converted into cyclopentanone when heated with acetic anhydride and then distilled at 300° (p. 380); α: α'-dimethyladipic acid forms the corresponding dimethylcyclopentanone derivative very easily when warmed with acetic anhydride. The reason for this is probably as follows. The carbon chain in unsubstituted dicarboxylic acids is believed to be zig-zag (Fig. 2). On the other hand, in β: β-

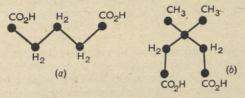
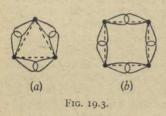


FIG. 19.2.

dimethylglutaric acid, it is possible that the presence of the two methyl groups gives rise to a different spatial arrangement. The methyl group, due to its large volume (relative to hydrogen), forces the carboxyl to take up the position shown in Fig. 2 (b). Thus, owing to steric effects, the zig-zag nature of the chain is forced to become coiled. This brings the reacting groups closer together, thereby facilitating anhydride formation.

Baeyer's Strain Theory is based on a mechanical concept of valency, and served its purpose in stimulating research in the field of cyclic compounds. Now we have the electronic theory of valency, and the reactivity of double bonds has been explained by the  $\pi$ -electrons. Furthermore, as pointed out on p. 26, when four identical groups are attached to a carbon atom, the four carbon valencies are equivalent, and the valency angle is 109° 28'. When the groups are different, the four valencies are no longer equivalent but now point towards the four corners of an irregular tetrahedron. Since there are no double bonds in cyclopropane, the carbon atoms cannot be in a state

of trigonal hybridisation. If the configuration of cyclopropane were an equilateral triangle, then the ring valency angle of each carbon atom would be 60°. This value is impossible, since the carbon valency angle can never be less than 90° (when they are pure p-orbitals). Furthermore, mixture of p with s-orbitals opens the valency angle. According to Coulson et al. (1949).



calculation has shown that the smallest carbon valency angle that one can reasonably expect to have is 104°. Coulson has therefore suggested that in *cyclo*propane, the carbon hybridised orbitals are not pointing towards one another in the same straight line, and consequently there is a loss of overlap (Fig. 3a). It is this loss of overlap that gives rise to instability, the *cyclo*propane molecule being in a state of "strain" due to "bent" bonds.

Applying this argument to *cyclo*butane (Fig. 3b), we see that this molecule also has "bent" bonds, but loss of overlap is less in this case than for *cyclo*-propane, and so the former will be more stable than the latter (see also p. 28).

Theory of Strainless Rings. According to Baeyer's Strain Theory (which postulates planar rings), a parallel will exist between the ease of formation of a ring and the stability of that ring. This implied that very large rings were difficult, if at all possible, to prepare, due to the great strain involved

TABLE VII

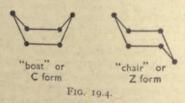
Number of carbon atoms in the ring	Heat of combustion in kg. cal./CH <sub>2</sub>		
2	170		
3	166.5		
4	163.8		
5	158.7		
0	157.2		
7	158.2		
8,	158-159		
n-paraffins	157.5		

in the ring. Chemical stability may be measured in various ways, e.g., by the heat of formation, heat of combustion, dipole moment, absorption spectra, etc. One of the most convenient to work with in respect to hydrocarbons is the heat of combustion. If the strain in a ring changes with the size of the ring, then this should be observed by changes in the heat of combustion.

According to the results shown in Table VII, stability increases up to the five- and six-membered rings and then remains effectively constant. This can be explained by rejecting the postulate that all rings are planar, and by

assuming that rings with six or more carbon atoms are *puckered*, the *normal* valency angle being retained and thereby producing *strainless* rings. Such a suggestion was first made by Sachse (1890), and according to him, *cyclo*hexane exists in two forms, both of which are strainless (Fig. 4).

The two forms of cyclohexane are also known as the chair and boat conformations,



the term conformation being used to denote different spatial arrangements of the atoms of a given molecular structure, the arrangements being produced by twisting or rotation of bonds. The terms rotational isomer and constellation have also been used in the same sense as conformation.

Although the two conformations are free from angle strain, forces due to steric repulsion (p. 108) are present, and these are different in the two conformations. Turner (1952) has introduced a simple method of calculating this energy difference. In the chair form (Fig. 5a) all the C—H bonds on

adjacent carbon atoms are in the skew position (projection of the hydrogen atoms on two adjacent carbon atoms on a plane perpendicular to the bonding line shows the hydrogen atoms are in the skew form; cf. ethylene chloride, p. 405). In the boat form (Fig. 5c), however, four of the C-H bonds are skew (1:2, 3:4, 4:5, and 6:1), and two are eclipsed (2:3 and 5:6). According to Pitzer (1940), a skew interaction of hydrogens in n-butane has a value of 0.8 kg. cal. and an eclipsed 3.6 kg. cal. (the conformations of n-butane are similar to those of ethylene chloride; replace Cl by CH2) Thus the steric strain in the chair form is  $6 \times 0.8 = 4.8$  kg. cal., and in the boat form  $4 \times$  $0.8 + 2 \times 3.6 = 10.4$  kg. cal. Hence the difference is 5.6 kg. cal. This is a minimum difference, since the steric repulsion between the hydrogens pointing towards each other at 1 and 4 (Fig. 5c) has been ignored (the actual value of this repulsion is uncertain). Thus the chair form will be more stable than the boat, but the energy difference of 5.6 kg. cal. between the two is too small for stability, and so neither retains its identity, each being readily converted into the other. Hassel (1943), however, has shown by electron diffraction studies that at room temperature most of the molecules exist mainly in the chair form, i.e., the chair conformation is the preferred one.

Since the boat conformation occurs in relatively few cases, we shall confine our attention to the chair form. Consideration of the C—H bonds in this form shows that there are two sets of six In one set the six C—H bonds are parallel to the axis of the ring (Fig. 5a); these are the axial (a) bonds (or  $\varepsilon$ - or polar bonds). In the other set the six C—H bonds make an angle of 109° 28' with the axis (or  $\pm 19^\circ$  28' with the horizontal plane of the ring; Fig. 5a); these are the equatorial (e) bonds (or  $\kappa$ -bonds). Each carbon atom has one axial and one equatorial bond, and because of the flexibility of the chair conformation, one form (Fig. 5a) can readily change into the other (Fig. 5b), and when this occurs all hydrogens originally axial now become equatorial, and vice versa. The two forms are identical.

Calculations have shown that in the chair conformation the distances

between pairs of hydrogen atoms are (Angyal and Mills, 1952):

1e: 2e, 2·49A; 1e: 2a, 2·49A; 1a: 2a, 3·06A; 1a: 3a, 2·51A.

The nearest four hydrogens to the equatorial hydrogen at I are those on 2 (a and e) and 6 (a and e) whereas for the axial hydrogen at I these four hydrogens are the axial hydrogens on 3 and 5 and the equatorial on 2 and 6 (see Fig. 5a). Thus a I:2-interaction for two adjacent equatorial hydrogens or for an equatorial and an adjacent hydrogen is about the same as for a I:3-interaction for two meta axial hydrogens.

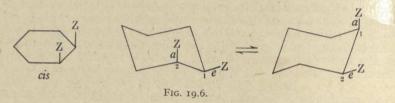
Now let us consider the problem when one hydrogen atom in cyclohexane is replaced by some substituent which, of necessity, must be larger than

a hydrogen atom. A study of accurate scale models has shown that in monosubstituted cyclohexanes, an axial substituent at I is closer to the two axial hydrogens at 3 and 5 than an equatorial substituent at I is to the four hydrogens at 2 and 6. Thus I: 3-interactions will be greater than I: 2interactions, and so, in general, a monosubstituted cyclohexane will assume the conformation in which the substituent occupies an equatorial position. This has been confirmed experimentally, e.g., Hassel (1950) has shown from electron-diffraction studies that the chlorine in chlorocyclohexane is equatorial (predominantly).

From what has been said above, we can now say that conformational analysis is the study of the existence of one or more preferred conformations in a given molecular structure, and the relating of the physical and chemical

properties to this preferred conformation.

Let us now consider the application of conformational analysis to 1:2disubstituted cyclohexanes in which the two substituents are identical. According to the classical ideas of stereochemistry, there are two forms possible, cis and trans. The conformation of the cis configuration most

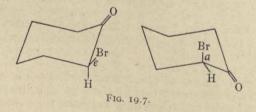


have one axial and one equatorial substituent (Fig. 6). The two conformations are mirror images and are not superimposable. Hence, if each were sufficiently stable, they would form a pair of enantiomorphs. Such compounds have never yet been resolved (their interconversion is very

The trans configuration can exist in two different conformations, 1a: 2a and Ie: 2e (Fig. 7), but from what has been said above, the trans-Ie: 2e form will be more stable than the trans-1a: 2a, and this trans form will be

more stable than the cis.

The above arguments can be applied to the 1:3- and 1:4-disubstituted cyclohexanes, and to the polysubstituted derivatives, and it will be found that the chair conformation with the maximum number of equatorial substituents will be the preferred form. This generalisation, however, is only true when other forces due to, e.g., dipole interactions, hydrogen bonding, are absent. When these "disturbing" factors are present, they



may be large enough to outweigh the I: 3-interactions, e.g., infrared spectra studies have shown that the bromine in 2-bromocyclohexanone is predominantly axial (Fig. 7). The C-Br and C=O bonds are both strongly polar, and when the bromine is equatorial the dipolar repulsion is a maximum, and a minimum when the bromine is axial. Since the axial form predominates, the equatorial dipolar repulsion must be much larger than the

I: 3-interactions.

It is also instructive to consider one example of a I:2-disubstituted cyclohexane in which the two substituents are different, e.g., cis-2-methyl-cyclohexanol. Since I:3-interactions will be most powerful when the larger group is axial, the preferred form will therefore be the one in which the larger group is equatorial. Thus, since the methyl group is greater than hydroxyl, the preferred form of cis-2-methylcyclohexanol is Ia-OH: 2e-CH<sub>2</sub>.

As an example of the effect of conformation on the rate of reactions let us consider hydroxy-derivatives. If the hydroxyl group is axial, then because of its proximity to the other two axial hydrogens (i.e., because of the steric hindrance from 3 and 5), it would be expected that this hydroxyl would be esterified with greater difficulty than the corresponding equatorial compound. This has been shown to be so in many cases, e.g., steroid alcohols.

Let us now consider the case of 4-t-butylcyclohexyl-p-toluenesulphonate (Eliel et al., 1956). Two forms, cis and trans, are possible, but because of the large bulk of the t-butyl group, this group is always equatorial, i.e., the conformations

$$\operatorname{Bu}^{t}$$
  $\operatorname{OT}_{s}$   $\operatorname{Bu}^{t}$   $\operatorname{OT}_{s}$   $\operatorname{trans-}$   $\operatorname{H}$ 

of the two stereoisomers are made rigid. Under the same conditions (sodium ethoxide in ethanol at 70°), the cis form readily undergoes bimolecular elimination, but the trans does not. In the former the groups to be eliminated are in the trans-position (see p. 429).

The following example is of particular interest in that it illustrates the phenomenon of anchimeric assistance in neighbouring group participation (p. 415). Bartlett (1935) has shown that alkali converts *trans-2*-chlorocyclohexanol into cyclohexene oxide, and proposed the following mechanism:

$$\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Cl} \\
\text{OH}
\end{array}
\end{array}$$

Bergkvist (1947) showed that this reaction proceeds more than 100 times as fast as that when the *cis*-compound is used. This may be explained as follows. The *cis*-compound probably forms the alkoxide ion just as readily as does the *trans*-compound, but the *cis*-ion cannot attack at the rear of the adjacent carbon atom (where the chlorine is being ejected) without great distortion of the molecule.

Fused systems. Since the boat and chair forms of cyclohexane are readily interconvertible, neither form can be isolated. Mohr (1918), however, elaborated Sachse's theory and predicted that the fusion of two cyclohexane rings, e.g., in decalin, should produce cis and trans forms which should be stable enough to retain their identities. Both forms have now been prepared. Several conventions have been introduced to represent these isomers. One uses full lines to represent groups above the plane of the molecule, and broken lines to represent those below. Another convention

uses a black dot to represent a hydrogen atom above the plane, and the ordinary lines of the formula to indicate a hydrogen atom below the plane. Thus the decalins may be drawn:



Fig. 8 shows the original diagrammatical method of representing cis-decalin by the fusion of two boat forms, and trans-decalin by the fusion of two chair



Fig. 19.8.

forms. The configurations of decalin, however, are now known to be more complicated than this, the complication arising from the fact that a number of

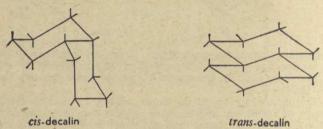


Fig. 19.9.

strainless modifications are possible which differ in the type of "locking", i.e., whether axial or equatorial bonds are used to fuse the rings. According to Hassel et al. (1946), cis- and trans-decalin are as shown in Fig. 9. In both cases the cyclohexane rings are all chair forms; the cis form is produced by joining one axial and one equatorial bond of each ring, whereas the trans form is produced by joining the two rings by equatorial bonds only. Calculation has shown that the cis isomer has 2.4 kg. cal. energy content more than the trans. It is also of interest to note that if the decalins are regarded as 1:2-disubstituted cyclohexanes, then the trans form (1e: 2e) would be expected to be more stable than the cis (1e: 2a).

From the foregoing account it can be seen that the Sachse-Mohr theory does not deny the existence of large rings. On the contrary, it implies that if it is possible to prepare large rings, these rings would be stable. This has been amply confirmed in recent years. Electron diffraction studies of cyclohexane show it to be a puckered ring, the carbon atoms having the normal valency angle (109° 28'). Also, Ruzicka, from 1926 onwards, has prepared

large rings which are stable (strainless).

Preparations of large ring compounds. Up to 1926, the largest ring compound known contained eight carbon atoms. Ruzicka and his co-workers (1926, onwards) prepared large rings containing up to thirty-four carbon

atoms. Their first method was to distil the calcium salts of dibasic acids, this method being limited to the preparation of cyclopentanone, cyclohexanone and cycloheptanone; the yields were poor. Ruzicka and his coworkers increased the yields, and also were able to obtain larger rings, by

$$(\mathrm{CH_2})_8 \overset{\mathrm{CH_2}}{\underset{(\mathrm{II})}{\mathrm{CO}}} (\mathrm{CH_2})_{10} \overset{\mathrm{CO}}{\underset{(\mathrm{II})}{\mathrm{CO}}} (\mathrm{CH_2})_{10}$$

distilling in vacuo at about 300° the thorium, cerium or yttrium salt mixed with copper powder (which aids heat conduction). Usually a number of products was obtained by the distillation of a particular acid, viz., a cyclic hydrocarbon, a cyclic monoketone and a cyclic diketone; e.g., the yttrium salt of the dibasic acid (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>10</sub>(CO<sub>2</sub>H)<sub>2</sub> gave a cyclic hydrocarbon, the cyclic monoketone I, and the cyclic diketone II.

The mechanism of these cyclisations is obscure. Ruzicka suggested that ring closure depends on: (a) the distance between the two carboxyl groups, and (b) the stability of the ring formed. He obtained the highest yield for five- and six-membered rings.

Reduction of the cyclic ketones and diketones by Clemmensen's method converted them into cyclic hydrocarbons. Conversion into the cyclic hydrocarbon was also carried out by reducing the cyclic ketone to the cyclic alcohol (with sodium and ethanol), dehydrating this (with potassium hydrogen sulphate), and then catalytically reducing the cyclo-olefin thus produced. By these methods, Ruzicka prepared cyclic compounds containing up to thirty-four carbon atoms in the ring. The structure of the ring compound (the cyclic ketone) was established by oxidation to the and-dicarboxylic acid.

Ziegler and his co-workers (1933) used an entirely different method for preparing large ring compounds. They made use of the high-dilution principle (p. 397), obtaining large rings by the intramolecular condensation of  $\alpha\omega$ -normal aliphatic dicyanides in the presence of alkali derivatives of secondary amines. In order to apply the high-dilution principle, it is necessary to have all the reactants in solution. Thus lithium derivatives (of secondary amines) are the most satisfactory, since they are soluble in ether (they are covalent compounds). The mechanism of the reaction is not certain; it may be as follows:

$$(CH_{2})_{n} \xrightarrow{CH_{2} \cdot CN} \xrightarrow{LiN(C_{e}H_{3})(C_{2}H_{3})} (CH_{2})_{n} \xrightarrow{CH \cdot CN} + C_{e}H_{5} \cdot NH \cdot C_{2}H_{5} \longrightarrow CH_{2} \cdot CN$$

$$(CH_{2})_{n} \xrightarrow{CH \cdot CN} \xrightarrow{CH \cdot CN} \xrightarrow{acid} (CH_{2})_{n} \xrightarrow{CH \cdot CN} \xrightarrow{CH_{2}} CH_{2} \longrightarrow CH_{2} \xrightarrow{CH_{2}} CO \xrightarrow{CH_{2}} CO \xrightarrow{CH_{2}} CO \xrightarrow{CH_{2}} CO$$

The high dilution was effected by very slowly adding a dilute solution of the dicyanide in ether to a solution of the lithium compound in ether. This method may be regarded as an extension of the Thorpe reaction (p. 471).

In addition to cyclic monoketones, cyclic diketones are obtained, and are believed to be formed as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CN} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_n \cdot \text{CN} \\ + \\ \text{CN} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_n \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CN} \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{LiN}(\text{C}_6 \text{H}_8)(\text{C}_2 \text{H}_8)} \begin{array}{c} \text{CN} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_n \cdot \text{C} = \text{NLi} \\ + \\ \text{LiN} = \text{C} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_n - \text{CH} \cdot \text{CN} \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{acid} \\ \text{hydrolysis}} \begin{array}{c} \text{acid} \\ \text{hydrolysis} \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CO}_2 \text{H} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_n \cdot \text{CO}} \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_n \cdot \text{CO} \\ + \\ \text{CO} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_n \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CO} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_n \cdot \text{CH}_2} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_n \cdot \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CO} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_n \cdot \text{CH}_2 \end{array}$$

This method of preparing large ring compounds is superior to Ruzicka's,

since the yields are better (up to 85 per cent.).

Hunsdiecker (1942) has prepared large rings by condensing an  $\omega$ -bromo-acyl chloride with sodioacetoacetic ester, subjecting the product to "acid hydrolysis" with methanolic sodium methoxide, then replacing the bromine atom by iodine, and finally cyclising the product by boiling in butanone in the presence of potassium carbonate. The cyclic keto-ester is then treated with sulphuric acid, whereupon the  $\beta$ -keto-acid produced spontaneously decarboxylates:

$$\begin{split} \operatorname{Br} \cdot (\operatorname{CH}_2)_n \cdot \operatorname{COCl} + [\operatorname{CH}_3 \cdot \operatorname{CO} \cdot \operatorname{CH} \cdot \operatorname{CO}_2 \operatorname{C}_2 \operatorname{H}_5]^- \operatorname{Na}^+ \longrightarrow \\ & \quad \operatorname{CO} \cdot \operatorname{CH}_3 \\ \operatorname{Br} \cdot (\operatorname{CH}_2)_n \cdot \operatorname{CO} \cdot \operatorname{CH} \cdot \operatorname{CO}_2 \operatorname{C}_2 \operatorname{H}_5 + \operatorname{NaCl} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{CH}_3 \operatorname{ONa}} \to \operatorname{Br} \cdot (\operatorname{CH}_2)_n \cdot \operatorname{CO} \cdot \operatorname{CH}_2 \cdot \operatorname{CO}_2 \operatorname{CH}_3 \\ & \xrightarrow{\operatorname{NaI}} \to \operatorname{I} \cdot (\operatorname{CH}_2)_n \cdot \operatorname{CO} \cdot \operatorname{CH}_2 \cdot \operatorname{CO}_2 \operatorname{CH}_3 \\ & \xrightarrow{\operatorname{K}_2 \operatorname{CO}_3} \to (\operatorname{CH}_2)_n \xrightarrow{\operatorname{CO}} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{CH}_4 \cdot \operatorname{CO}_2 \operatorname{CH}_3} & \xrightarrow{\operatorname{CO}} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{CH}_2 \operatorname{CH}_2} \cdot \operatorname{CO}_2 \operatorname{CH}_3 \end{split}$$

Prelog (1947) and Stoll (1947) have prepared large ring compounds from dicarboxylic esters containing nine or more carbon atoms. The ester is made to undergo the acyloin synthesis (p. 193) by heating in xylene solution with sodium, and finally acidifying.

$$(\mathrm{CH_2})_n \overset{\mathrm{CO_2R}}{\longleftarrow} \longrightarrow (\mathrm{CH_2})_n \overset{\mathrm{CO}}{\longleftarrow} \\ \mathrm{CHOH}$$

The yields by this method exceed those by any other given above, and an added advantage is that the reaction does not have to be carried out at high dilution (see also the Dieckmann reaction, p. 470)

dilution (see also the Dieckmann reaction, p. 470).

Recently large rings have been prepared by treating the ethereal solution of acid chlorides of the dibasic acids with triethylamine; an aldoketen is formed first, and this then cyclises (Blomquist and Spencer, 1947, 1948):

COCI CH=CO (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub> 
$$\rightarrow$$
 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n-2</sub>  $\rightarrow$  (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>=CO + (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>  $\rightarrow$  (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>

Large rings have also been prepared via cyclo-ynes and -di-ynes (p. 486). The paracyclophanes form another type of large ring system in that they contain two benzene rings joined in the para-positions. Cram et al. (1954) have prepared them as follows (using the Friedel-Crafts reaction (p. 529), the Willgerodt reaction (p. 663), and the acyloin synthesis), e.g.,

$$(CH_2)_4 \xrightarrow{(CH_3 \cdot CO)_2O} (CH_2)_4 \xrightarrow{(CH_2)_4} CO \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{(ii) S + morpholine} (iii) CH_3OH - HCI} CH_2 \cdot CO_2CH_3 \xrightarrow{(CH_2)_4} CH_2 \cdot CO_2CH_3 \xrightarrow{(CH_2)_4} CH_2 \cdot CO_2CH_3 \xrightarrow{(CH_2)_4} CH_2 \cdot CH_2$$

Cram et al. (1951) have also prepared paracyclophanes by the action of sodium on the following compound  $(n \ge 2)$ :

Eglinton et al. (1959, 1960) have prepared the cyclic dimer (I) by oxidative coupling of o-diethynylbenzene (II; cf. cycloalkynes, p. 486).

These large ring compounds are very stable, e.g., they are not affected by hydrogen chloride at 200° or by hydrogen iodide at 250°. They cannot therefore be planar (the negative strain would be very large); X-ray analysis has shown that the rings are puckered—the carbon retaining its normal tetrahedral valency angle—and that they consist of two parallel portions (this applies to rings containing more than twenty carbon atoms).

Although these large rings are free from angle strain, they are, however, subject to steric strain produced by steric repulsion (cf. cyclohexane, p. 489). Since all puckered rings are subject to this strain, it was thought that the physical and chemical properties of large rings would be similar to those of cyclohexane. It has now been shown, however, that the properties of large rings depend on the size of the ring. The reason for this is not certain, but one suggestion is that shielding of a reactive centre will vary with the size of the ring, e.g., a cyclic ketone could be (III) ("O-outside") or (IV)

$$(H_2C)_n C = O \qquad (H_2C)_n C = O \qquad (H_2C)_n HO \qquad (H_2C)_n$$

("O-inside"). Now medium-sized ketones combine with nitromalonaldehyde, NO2 CH(CHO)2, to form p-nitrophenols, (V) (Prelog et al., 1948). It therefore follows that the carbonyl group is shielded as in (IV).

Although large saturated rings are relatively strainless, rings containing multiple bonds present a different picture. Experiments, so far, have shown that the smallest ring that can contain a cis-double bond is three-membered (VI), and a trans-double bond is eight-membered (VII). The smallest ring yet made

$$(VI) \qquad (CH_2)_6 \qquad (CH_2)_6 \qquad (CH_2)_6 \qquad (VIII)$$

containing a triple bond is eight-membered (VIII). All of these compounds

show abnormal reactivity.

Two large carbon-ring compounds occurring in nature are civetone and muscone. Civetone, C<sub>17</sub>H<sub>30</sub>, m.p. 31°, occurs in the civet and is the cause of the civet odour. Its constitution was elucidated by Ruzicka (1926, 1927). It was shown to be a ketone (carbonyl group present and compound non-reducing), and to contain a double bond (adds on bromine). When catalytically reduced, civetone absorbs one molecule of hydrogen (therefore one double bond present) to form dihydrocivetone (m.p. 63°). Oxidation of this compound with chromic acid gives a dicarboxylic acid,  $C_{17}H_{32}O_4$ , which was shown to be pentadecane-1:15-dicarboxylic acid; this acid was also synthesised. Since this acid contains the same number of carbon atoms as the original ketone, Ruzicka inferred that the ketone was a seventeen-membered ring compound; this was supported by evidence obtained from the study of the molecular refraction of the ketone. Thus

the structure of dihydrocivetone is

the structure of dihydrocivetone is  $CH_2 \cdot (CH_2)_7$  CO.

Reduction of civetone by Clemmensen's method produces *civetane* (which contains a double bond), and this, on ozonolysis, gives the same dicarboxylic acid as before (from dihydrocivetone). This again indicates a seventeen-membered ring containing one double bond. To find the position of the double bond in civetone, Ruzicka oxidised civetone with sodium hypobromite, and obtained a mixture of succinic, pimelic, suberic and azelaic acids. Since the structure of azelaic acid is CO<sub>2</sub>H•(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>7</sub>•CO<sub>2</sub>H, the double bond in civetone must be at least on C9 (the carbon atom of the CO group being C1), since to obtain azelaic acid there must be seven methylene groups between the carbonyl group and the

double bond. The formula which fits this is CH•(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>7</sub> CO. This structure

was confirmed by controlled oxidation of civetone with potassium permanganate; a ketodibasic acid was obtained, and its structure was determined by synthesis by heating the methyl acid ester of azelaic acid with iron powder:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_7 \\ \text{CH} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_7 \end{array} \xrightarrow{[O]} \begin{array}{c} \text{HO}_2\text{C} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_7 \\ \text{HO}_2\text{C} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_7 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CO}} \begin{array}{c} \text{(i) Fe} \\ \text{(ii) hydrolysis} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3\text{O}_2\text{C}} \text{(CH}_2)_7 \end{array}$$

The structure of civetone has been confirmed by a number of syntheses. Muscone (muskone), C16H30O, occurs in natural musk (from the musk deer). is a thick colourless oil and is optically active. Its structure was elucidated by Ruzicka. Its molecular formula is C18H30O, and it was shown to be a ketone. Since it was also shown to be saturated, it must therefore be cyclic, since if it were an open-chain compound, its formula would be C16H32O; if it had contained more than one ring, the number of hydrogen atoms would have been less than thirty. Since muscone is optically active, it must contain at least one asymmetric carbon atom: further work has shown it contains only one (see below).

The investigation of the odours of cyclic compounds was then used to elucidate the structure of muscone. Ruzicka was led to adopt this procedure because he had found that civetone and dihydrocivetone had about the same odour, i.e., he assumed that similar structures gave rise to similar odours (this might be termed a physiologico-chemical method). Ruzicka found that the odour of muscone was identical with that of synthetic cyclopentadecanone and its methyl derivatives (see also below). He believed that muscone was therefore a methyl derivative of the fifteen-membered cyclic ketone. This was proved by preparing cyclopentadecanone (by distillation of the thorium salt of tetradecane-1: 14-dicarboxylic acid), treating it with methylmagnesium iodide, and dehydrating the tertiary alcohol so produced to the olefin which was then catalytically reduced to methylcyclopentadecane:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{CO}} & \text{CH}_2 \text{MgI} \\ | & | & | & | \\ \text{(CH}_2)_{12} & \xrightarrow{\text{(ii)}} & \text{H}_2 \text{O} \\ \end{array} \\ \xrightarrow{\text{(iii)}} & \text{H}_2 \text{O} \\ \xrightarrow{\text{(CH}_2)_{12}} & \xrightarrow{\text{COH}} & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3} \\ & | & | & \text{CH}_2 \\ \end{array}$$

Methylcyclopentadecane is also obtained when muscone is reduced by the Clemmensen method.

The problem now was to determine the position of the methyl group with respect to the carbonyl group. When oxidised with chromic acid, muscone yields two acids with the formula  $C_{14}H_{28}(CO_2H)_2$  and a mixture of lower dicarboxylic acids. The properties of the acids with the formula  $C_{14}H_{28}(CO_2H)_2$ agreed with the properties of synthetic α- and β-methyltridecane-1:11-dicarboxylic acids, both of which may be expected from the oxidation of a fifteenmembered ring ketone with a methyl group in the β-position with respect to the carbonyl group:

$$(CH_2)_{12} \xrightarrow{\beta} CO \xrightarrow{CrO_3} \xrightarrow{CO_2 H \cdot CH(CH_3) \cdot (CH_2)_{12} \cdot CO_2 H}$$

$$\alpha \cdot acid$$

$$CO_2 H \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH(CH_3) \cdot (CH_2)_{11} \cdot CO_2 H$$

$$CH_3 \cdot CH \xrightarrow{\beta} -acid$$

$$\beta \cdot acid$$

This evidence, however, is not conclusive for the structure of muscone. Muscone was finally shown to contain the methyl group in the β-position by synthesis.

Civetone and muscone are both used in perfumery. Investigation of the relationship between ring size and odours of cyclic ketones is as follows:  $C_5$ , bitter almonds;  $C_6$ , mint;  $C_7$ – $C_9$ , transition to camphor;  $C_{10}$ – $C_{13}$ , transition to cedar:  $C_{14}$ – $C_{16}$ , transition to musk with maximum musk odour at  $C_{15}$ ;  $C_{17}$ , civetone;  $C_{18}$ , very weak civetone; from  $C_{19}$  onwards, the odour decreases very rapidly. rapidly.

cycloPentadecanone is used in perfumery under the name of exaltone.

# **QUESTIONS**

1. Discuss the general methods for preparing alicyclic compounds.

1. Discuss the general methods for preparing allcyclic compounds.

2. Starting with any readily accessible open-chain compounds you like, suggest a synthesis for each of the following:—(a) cyclopentane, (b) cycloheptanone, (c) cyclohexane-i: 3-dione, (d) cyclopentane-i: 2-dione, (e) cyclohexene, (f) 1:5-diMe-cyclopenta-i: 4-diene, (g) hexahydrobenzoic acid, (h) endoethylene-hexahydrobenzoic acid, (i) endomethylene-hexahydrophthalic acid, (j) cyclopentylacetic acid.

3. Describe two methods of preparation of each of the cycloalkanes containing 3—6 carbons atoms.

Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when each of the above hydrocarbons is treated with:—(a) Br<sub>2</sub>, (b) HBr, (c) HI, (d) HCl, (e) heat, (f) H<sub>2</sub>, (g) HNO<sub>3</sub>, (h) H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>.

4. Write an account of:—(a) the Baeyer Strain Theory, (b) the Theory of Strainless

Rings, (c) the preparation of large-ring compounds.

5. What is meant by the term chemical stability? Discuss the various methods which may be used to measure chemical stability.

6. Discuss the structure of civetone and muscone.

7. Define and give examples of:—(a) the Freund reaction, (b) the Wislicenus reaction, (c) the Perkin junior reaction, (d) the Dieckmann reaction, (e) the Thorpe reaction, (f) the Diels-Alder reaction, (g) the Clemmensen reduction, (h) the Favorsky rearrangement, (i) the Demjanov rearrangement.

8. Discuss the preparation and properties of (a) tropolone, (b) ferrocene, (c) cyclo-

hexene, (d) the paracyclophanes.

9. Write an essay on conformational analysis.

#### READING REFERENCES

Perkin, The Early History of the Synthesis of Closed Carbon Chains, J.C.S., 1929, 1347. Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1942, 2nd ed.). Vol. I, Ch. 2. Alicyclic Compounds and the Theory of Strain.

Compounds and the Theory of Strain.

Norton, The Diels-Alder Diene Synthesis, Chem. Reviews, 1942, 31, 319.

Organic Reactions, Wiley, Vol. IV (1948), Ch. 1 and 2. Vol. V (1949), Ch. 3. The Diels-Alder Reaction. Vol. XI (1960), Ch. 2. The Demjanov and Tiffeneau-Demjanov Ring Expansions, Ch. 4. The Favorsky Rearrangement of Haloketones. cycloPolyolefins (Reppe), B.I.O.S., No. 137; Item No. 22, London, H.M.S.O. Ruzicka, Many Membered Carbon Rings, Chem. and Ind., 1935, 54, 2.

Craig, The Chemistry of Eight-Membered Carbocycles, Chem. Reviews, 1951, 49, 103. Cook and Loudon. The Tropolones, Ouart Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1051, 5, 60.

Cook and Loudon, The Tropolones, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1951, 5, 99. Brooks, The Chemistry of Nonbenzenoid Hydrocarbons, Reinhold (1950, 2nd ed.). Prelog. Newer Developments of the Chemistry of Many-membered Ring Compounds,

J.C.S., 1950, 420.

Cook (Ed.), Progress in Organic Chemistry, Butterworth, Vol. III (1955), Ch. 2. Non-Benzenoid Aromatic Compounds. Ch. 3. The Fulvenes.

Cram et al., The Preparation of Paracyclophanes, J. Amer. Chem. Soc., 1954, 76, 4406. Eglinton and Galbraith, Macrocyclic Acetylenic Compounds, J. C.S., 1954, 70, 4400. Eglinton and Galbraith, Macrocyclic Acetylenic Compounds, J.C.S., 1959, 889.

Pauson, Ferrocene and Related Compounds, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1955, 9, 391. Braude, Linstead et al., Hydrogen Transfer, J.C.S., 1954, 3578, 3586, 3595.

Klyne (Ed.), Progress in Stereochemistry, Butterworth. Vol. I (1954), Ch. 2. The Conformation of Six-membered Ring Systems.

Newman (Ed.), Steric Effects in Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1956), Ch. 1. Conformational Analysis.

Barton and Cookson, The Principles of Conformational Analysis, Quart. Reviews (Chem.

Soc.), 1956, 10, 44.
Eliel, Conformational Analysis in Mobile Systems, J. Chem. Educ., 1960, 37, 126.
Ginsburg (Ed.), Non-Benzenoid Aromatic Compounds, Interscience Publishers (1959).
Zeiss (Ed.), Organometallic Chemistry, Reinhold (1960). Ch. 7. Cyclopentadienyl Metal

#### CHAPTER XX

# AROMATIC COMPOUNDS

## SIMPLE AROMATIC HYDROCARBONS

EARLY in the development of Organic Chemistry, organic compounds were arbitrarily classified as either aliphatic or aromatic. The aliphatic compounds were so named because the first members of this class to be studied were the fatty acids (see p. 38). The term *aliphatic* is now reserved for

any compound that has an open-chain structure.

In addition to the aliphatic compounds, there was a large number of compounds which were obtained from natural sources, e.g., resins, balsams, "aromatic" oils, etc., which comprised a group of compounds whose structures were unknown but had one thing in common: a pleasant odour. Thus these compounds were arbitrarily classified as aromatic (Greek: aroma, fragrant smell). Careful examination of these compounds showed that they contained a higher percentage carbon content than the corresponding aliphatic hydrocarbons, and that most of the simple aromatic compounds contained at least six carbon atoms. Furthermore, it was shown that when aromatic compounds were subjected to various methods of treatment, they often produced benzene or a derivative of benzene. If attempts were made to convert aromatic compounds into compounds with fewer carbon atoms than six (as in benzene), the whole molecule generally disrupted. It became increasingly evident that aromatic compounds were related to benzene, and this led to reserving the term aromatic for benzene and its derivatives. Thus aromatic compounds are benzenoid compounds; these are cyclic, but their properties are totally different from those of the alicyclic compounds.

Benzene (phene), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>6</sub>, was first isolated by Faraday (1825) from cylinders of compressed illuminating gas obtained from natural sources. In 1845, benzene was found in coal-tar by Hofmann, and this is still the main source

of benzene and its derivatives.

When coal is destructively distilled, four fractions are obtained: coal-

gas, coal-tar, ammoniacal liquors and coke.

Coal-tar. The composition of coal-tar depends on the method of carbonisation, viz., the type of retort used, the temperature and the time taken for

TABLE VIII

Number of fraction	Temperature range	Name of fraction	Specific gravity	Percentage by volume	
7	Up to 170°	Crude light oil	0.970	2.25	
2	Up to 170° 170-230°	Middle oil or Carbolic oil	1.005	7.5	
3	230-270°	Heavy oil or	1.033	16.5	
4	270-360°	Creosote oil Green oil or	1.088	12	
5		Anthracene oil Pitch (left in retort)		about 56	

carbonisation. Water is removed from tar by slow heating and the tar is then fractionated. The number of fractions taken varies; a typical sample is shown in Table VIII.

The crude light-oil fraction is washed successively with concentrated sulphuric acid, water, sodium hydroxide and water. The sulphuric acid

removes basic substances such as pyridine, and also removes some of the thiophen; the sodium hydroxide removes phenols. The washed light oil is now distilled. Various fractions may be taken, e.g., the fraction collected up to 110° is known as "90 per cent. benzol" (70 per cent. benzene, 24 per cent. toluene and some xylene). Pure xylene is obtained from the fraction between 110–140°. The distillate between 140–170° is known as "solvent naphtha" or benzine (consists mainly of xylenes, cumenes, etc.); it is used as a solvent for resins, rubber, paints, etc. The fraction "90 per cent. benzol" gives pure benzene, toluene and xylene on careful fractionation; about 9.5 per cent. benzene and 8.7 per cent. toluene are obtained from the crude light-oil fraction. Enslin et al. (1956) have separated mixtures of benzene homologues by means of reversed-phase partition chromatography.

Benzene was first synthesised by Berthelot (1870) by passing acetylene

through a red-hot tube:

$$3C_2H_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_6$$

The polymerisation is more involved than this, since many other cyclic products are also obtained, e.g., styrene and naphthalene (Goubeau et al., 1953). Reppe et al. (1948) have shown that acetylene is converted into benzene (80 per cent. yield) in the presence of dicarbonyldi(triphenylphosphino)-nickel [(CO)<sub>2</sub>Ni(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>].

Benzene may be prepared in the laboratory by many methods, most of which depend on the decarboxylation of aromatic acids, e.g., by heating benzoic acid with soda-lime:

or by heating phthalic acid with calcium oxide:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_2\text{H} + 2\text{CaO} \longrightarrow \\ \text{CO}_2\text{H} + 2\text{CaCO}_3 \end{array}$$

Preparation of benzene and its homologues from petroleum. Aromatic compounds can be extracted from petroleum in which they occur naturally. They are also prepared from the non-aromatic constituents of petroleum by two methods:

(i) Hydroforming or catalytic reforming. This method is based on dehydrogenation, cyclisation and isomerisation reactions, and the aromatic compounds obtained contain the same number of carbon atoms as the aliphatic starting materials. Very good catalysts which effect dehydrogenation and cyclisation are the oxides of chromium, vanadium and molybdenum carried on an alumina support. Hydroforming is carried out under a pressure of 150–300 lb./sq. in. at 480–550° in the presence of the catalyst. Cyclisation may be brought about on any paraffin or olefin having at least six carbon atoms in a straight chain. The mechanism of the reaction is not known with certainty, but it appears probable that the paraffin is first dehydrogenated to the olefin, which then cyclises to the aromatic hydrocarbon. The following are the most important examples of hydroforming:

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{CH_3}\text{`}(\operatorname{CH_2})_4\text{`}\operatorname{CH_3} \longrightarrow \operatorname{C_6H_6} + \operatorname{4H_2} \\ \text{$n$-hexane} & \operatorname{benzene} \\ \\ \operatorname{CH_3}\text{`}(\operatorname{CH_2})_5\text{`}\operatorname{CH_3} \longrightarrow \operatorname{C_6H_5}\text{`}\operatorname{CH_3} + \operatorname{4H_2} \\ \text{$n$-heptane} & \operatorname{toluene} \\ \\ \operatorname{CH_3}\text{`}(\operatorname{CH_2})_6\text{`}\operatorname{CH_3} \longrightarrow \operatorname{C_6H_4}(\operatorname{CH_3})_2 + \operatorname{C_6H_5}\text{`}\operatorname{C_2H_5} \\ \\ \text{$n$-octane} & \operatorname{xylene} \text{ (three} \\ \operatorname{isomers)} & \operatorname{ethyl-benzene} \\ \end{array}$$

It is interesting to note that catalytic reforming was originally intended to raise

the octane number of petrol (see p. 57).

(ii) High-temperature cracking in the presence of a catalyst. This method was also originally used to raise the octane number of petrol. The charging stock may be cracked at about 650–680° in tubes packed with metallic dehydrogenation catalysts (which are the same as those used in hydroforming). By this means the following aromatic hydrocarbons have been isolated from the cracked paraffins: benzene, toluene, xylenes, naphthalene, anthracene and many other polynuclear hydrocarbons. There appears to be a large amount of evidence to show that the mechanism of the formation of the aromatic compounds is via the Diels-Alder reaction, i.e., low-molecular-weight olefins and diolefins are produced in the cracking process, and these condense to form aromatic hydrocarbons as follows, e.g.,

$$\left(\!\!\left( + \bigcup_{CH_2}^{CH_2} \!\!\! \longrightarrow \!\!\! \left( \right) \!\!\! \longrightarrow \!\!\! \left( \right) \!\!\!\! + 2H_2 \!\!\!\! \right) \right.$$

If this is the mechanism of the reaction, then it is an example of the Diels-Alder reaction in which the dienophile does not contain a negative group (see p. 472). It should be noted, however, that the conditions used are not the same as those in the usual Diels-Alder reaction: this is carried out up to about 100°; cracking is carried out at a far higher temperature.

Properties of benzene. Benzene is a colourless liquid, m.p. 5·5°, b.p. 80°, with a peculiar smell. It is inflammable, burning with a smoky flame, a property which is characteristic of most aromatic but not of most aliphatic compounds, and is due to the high carbon content of the former. Benzene is insoluble in water, but is miscible with ethanol and ether in all proportions. It is a very good solvent for fats, resins, sulphur, iodine, etc., and is used in dry cleaning. It is also used as a motor fuel ("benzol") and for the manu-

facture of nitrobenzene, dyes, drugs, etc.

Benzene is a very stable compound; it is very slowly attacked by a solution of chromic acid or acid permanganate (both powerful oxidising agents) to form carbon dioxide and water. It can be reduced catalytically to cyclohexane, but the partially hydrogenated products, dihydro- and tetrahydrobenzene, have not been isolated in this reaction. Lithium in anhydrous ethylamine, however, reduces benzene to cyclohexene and cyclohexane (Benkeser et al., 1955). It might also be noted here that nickel is an extremely good catalyst for the catalytic reduction of the benzene nucleus, whereas copper chromite is useful when it is desired to retain this nucleus, i.e., to reduce a side-chain only. The heats of hydrogenation of benzene in stages have been calculated and the values found are

$$C_6 H_6 \xrightarrow[-5.6]{} C_6 H_8 \xrightarrow[+26.7]{} C_6 H_{10} \xrightarrow[+28.6]{} C_6 H_{12} \xrightarrow[\text{kg.cal./mole.}]{}$$

These values indicate that the reduction of the first double bond is different

from that of the second and third.

When heated with hydrogen iodide at  $250^{\circ}$ , benzene is converted into a mixture of cyclohexane and methylcyclopentane. The action of chlorine and bromine on benzene depends on the conditions. In bright sunlight, halogen forms addition products with benzene, e.g., chlorine adds on to form benzenehexachloride,  $C_6H_6Cl_6$ . In the absence of direct sunlight, benzene undergoes substitution with halogen; the reaction is slow, but in the presence of a halogen carrier, e.g., iron or iodine, substitution is rapid. Thus, with chlorine, benzene forms chlorobenzene,  $C_6H_5Cl$ , dichlorobenzenes,  $C_6H_4Cl_2$ ,

etc. When benzene is heated with concentrated nitric acid or concentrated sulphuric acid, substitution products of benzene are obtained:

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm C_6H_6 + HNO_3 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot NO_2 + H_2O} \\ {\rm nitrobenzene} \\ {\rm C_6H_6 + H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot SO_3H + H_2O} \\ {\rm benzenesulphonic\ acid} \end{array}$$

Isomerism of benzene derivatives. Since all the six hydrogen atoms in benzene are equivalent (p. 508) only one monobromobenzene, mononitrobenzene, etc., is possible. In many compounds the univalent radical  $C_6H_5^-$  is known as **phenyl**, and is represented by the abbreviation Ph or  $\phi$ , e.g., chlorobenzene may be written PhCl or  $\phi$ Cl. When dealing with any univalent aromatic radical, the symbol Ar is used.

When two hydrogen atoms in benzene are replaced by two univalent radicals (which may be the same or different), three isomers are possible

(position isomerism):

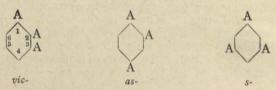


Since the six hydrogen atoms in benzene are equivalent, the positions I:2-and I:6- are equivalent. The I:2-(I:6-)disubstituted benzene derivative is known as the ortho- (o-) compound. The I:3- and I:5-positions are equivalent and a I:3-(I:5)-disubstituted derivative is known as the meta-(m)-compound. The I:4-disubstituted derivative is known as the para-(p)-compound. The bivalent radical  $C_6H_4<$  is known as the phenylene radical, e.g., m-phenylenediamine.

In the case of trisubstitution derivatives of benzene, the number of

isomers depends on the nature of the substituent groups.

(i) If the three substituent groups are identical, then three isomers are possible:



The I:2:3-isomer is known as the *vicinal*-(*vic*-) compound; the I:2:4-as the *unsymmetrical* or *asymmetrical* (*unsym*- or *as*-) compound; and the I:3:5-as the *symmetrical* (*sym*- or *s*-) compound.

(ii) If two substituent groups are identical and the third different, then

six isomers are possible.

(iii) If all three substituent groups are different, then ten isomers are

possible.

There are no characteristic names for the individual isomers in groups (ii) and (iii), and so the positions of side-chains and substituent groups are indicated by numbers (this may also be applied to (i) and to disubstituted derivatives). Prior to April, 1950, British Chemical Abstracts gave the number I to one of the following groups: CH<sub>3</sub>, SO<sub>3</sub>H, CO<sub>2</sub>H, CN, CHO, OH, or NH<sub>2</sub>. When two or more of these groups are present, the number I was

always assigned to the group earlier in the list. The Chemical Society has now adopted the alphabetical order for prefixes (see p. 46), but when two or more functional groups are present, number I is to be given to the principal function. The usual order for choosing the principal function is given on p. 235. For convenience of fixing the orientation (position of groups), the ring should be oriented with position I at the top and with the numbers proceeding in a *clockwise* direction. If a letter (o, m, p) is used, the principal function is still given position r. The general rule is: if the functional group is named as a suffix, this group is given number I. In many cases, however, it may be better to name aromatic compounds by using the trivial names of the simple (or parent) hydrocarbon. When this scheme is used, the root name decides where numbering starts. The following examples show the application of the above rules:

I-bromo-3-chlorobenzene; m-bromochlorobenzene

p-chlorotoluene

4-bromo-I: 2-dimethylbenzene; 4-bromo-o-xylene

4-iodo-2-methylphenol; p-iodo-o-cresol (in both names, the suffix is -ol; therefore this group is given number 1)

3-bromo-4-hydroxybenzoic acid; 3-bromo-p-hydroxybenzoic

2-nitro-p-toluidine (the amino-group is in the suffix; therefore this group is given position I); 4-amino-3-nitrotoluene (toluene is the parent, and so numbering starts at the methyl group).

Structure of benzene. Analysis and molecular-weight determinations show that the molecular formula of benzene is C6H6. The corresponding paraffin is hexane,  $C_6H_{14}$ , and since the number of hydrogen atoms in benzene is much less, it is to be expected that benzene would exhibit marked "unsaturated reactions ". This is found to be so in practice, e.g.

(i) Benzene adds on halogen, the maximum number of halogen atoms

being six.

(ii) Benzene may be catalytically hydrogenated to cyclohexane, the maximum number of hydrogen atoms added is six.

(iii) Benzene forms a triozonide, C6H6(O3)3.

All these reactions indicate that benzene contains three double bonds. Further examination, however, shows that these double bonds behave in a most remarkable manner in comparison with double bonds in aliphatic compounds, e.g.,

(iv) Alkaline permanganate has no action on benzene in the cold, but on prolonged boiling, benzene is broken down into carbon dioxide and water.

(v) In the absence of sunlight (and preferably in the presence of a halogen carrier), benzene undergoes substitution when treated with halogen (cf. however, isobutene, p. 82).

(vi) Halogen acids do not add on to benzene.

Reactions (i)-(vi) lead to the conclusion that benzene contains three double bonds, but that these double bonds are different from aliphatic double bonds. This difference gives rise to "aromatic properties" (unusual degree of saturation, stability, etc.; see also later). The problem was now to decide what is the structure of benzene, and this is one of the most interesting problems in organic chemistry; the final word still remains to be written.

Kekulé (1865) was the first to suggest a ring structure for benzene. He proposed formula I, and believed (but did not prove) that this formula satis-

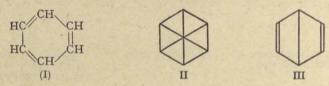
fied the following points:

(i) That benzene contains three double bonds.

(ii) That all the six hydrogen atoms in benzene are equivalent; consequently there is only one possible mono-substituted derivative, and there

are three possible disubstitution products of benzene.

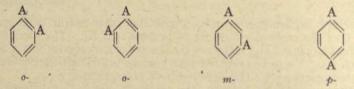
Kekulé's theory stimulated a large amount of research into the structure of aromatic compounds, a notable result being achieved by Ladenburg in 1874, when he *proved experimentally* that all the six hydrogen atoms in benzene were equivalent.



Kekulé's formula, however, did not explain the peculiar behaviour of the three double bonds in benzene. Claus (1867) therefore introduced his diagonal formula, (II), to overcome this difficulty. This formula also appeared to suggest a reason for the simultaneous formation of o- and p-compounds (see later). In 1882, Claus modified his formula, now postulating that the para-bonds were not like ordinary bonds, but could be easily ruptured.

Dewar (1867) suggested a number of formulæ for benzene, one being (III). This is not perfectly symmetrical and therefore was unacceptable (but see later). Ladenburg (1869) attacked Kekulé's formula on the grounds that it

should give four disubstituted derivatives:



Thus there should be two ortho-derivatives, 1:2- and 1:6-; these have never been observed in practice. Ladenburg therefore proposed his prism formula, (IV). The six carbon atoms are at the corners of a regular prism, the edges of which denote linkages. This formula does not contain any double bonds, and therefore does not account for the addition products of benzene.

V. Meyer (1870) opposed Ladenburg; he pointed out that the 1:2- and 1:6-derivatives differed only in the position of double bonds and believed that this difference would be too slight to be noticeable. V. Meyer thus

supported Kekulé's formula.

Kekulé (1872) felt that too much importance was being attached to the possible difference between the 1:2- and 1:6-positions, and pointed out that the difficulty arose from the inadequate representation of molecules by structural formulæ. According to Kekulé, the carbon atoms in benzene were continually in a state of vibration, and due to this vibration, each C—C pair had a single bond half of the time and a double bond the other half. This amounts to an oscillation between the two forms (V) and (VI),

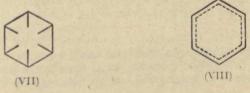
each molecule spending half its time in (V) and the other half in (VI). Thus neither (V) nor (VI) represents the benzene molecule satisfactorily; benzene is a "combination" of the two, and so all bonds will be identical (neither single nor double), and hence there is no real difference between I:2- and I:6-disubstituted benzenes.

$$\qquad \qquad \Longrightarrow \qquad \bigvee_{(\mathrm{IV})} \qquad \Rightarrow \qquad \bigvee_{(\mathrm{VI})} \qquad \Rightarrow \qquad \bigvee_{(\mathrm{VI})} \qquad \Longrightarrow \bigvee_{(\mathrm{VI})} \qquad \Longrightarrow$$

In 1932, Levine and Cole subjected o-xylene to ozonolysis and obtained glyoxal, methylglyoxal and dimethylglyoxal. These authors supported Kekulé's oscillation (tautomeric) hypothesis, arguing that the three carbonyl compounds could not be obtained unless two forms of o-xylene were present (see, however, p. 508):

$$CH_3$$
 $CH_3 \longrightarrow 2CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CHO + CHO \cdot CHO$ 
 $CH_3 \longrightarrow CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + 2CHO \cdot CHO$ 

Baeyer (from about 1884–1892) carried out a detailed investigation of benzene and some of its derivatives in order to decide between the formulæ of Kekulé and Ladenburg. One of the first things Baeyer proved was that hexamethylene (cyclohexane) and hexahydrobenzene were identical, thus establishing the ring structure of benzene (which Kekulé had assumed). Baeyer observed that as soon as one double bond was removed from benzene, the "saturation" properties were lost, and that dihydrobenzene (cyclohexadiene) behaved as would be expected of a diolefin. Baeyer showed that no para linkage was apparently present and hence rejected Claus' diagonal formula; he also rejected Dewar's formula for similar reasons. Baeyer also showed, by investigation of various benzene derivatives, that Ladenburg's prism formula was untenable. Baeyer concluded that benzene contained six carbon atoms in a ring, but did not accept Kekulé's formula. He adopted a suggestion of Armstrong (1887) and proposed what is known as the Armstrong—Baeyer centric formula (VII). According to this, the



fourth valency of each carbon atom is represented as directed towards the centre of the ring but not actually linked to its opposite neighbour as in the Claus formula. This centric bond is not real but potential; by mutual

action the power of each is rendered latent and there is a condition of equilibrium. Such a centric formula is unknown in aliphatic chemistry, and thus this formula could account for "aromatic properties". When benzene is converted into dihydrobenzene,\* the condition of equilibrium is destroyed, resulting in the production of normal double bonds:

$$\stackrel{H_2}{\longleftrightarrow} \stackrel{H_2}{\longleftrightarrow} H_2^1$$

Thus this accounts for the difference in behaviour between benzene and its

reduction products.

The centric formula, however, is unsatisfactory for several reasons, e.g., it did not explain the stability of the ring or the behaviour of the polynuclear hydrocarbons. The outcome of Baeyer's work was that "aromatic properties" depend on the peculiar symmetrical arrangement of the fourth valency of each carbon atom in the ring.

valency of each carbon atom in the ring.

$$CH_{2} CH_{2} CH_{2}$$

Physico-chemical methods were also applied to the benzene problem, e.g., Thomsen (1880) and Stohmann (1893) came to the conclusion that the heat of combustion of benzene was incompatible with the existence of three

<sup>\*</sup> Dihydrobenzene cannot be obtained by the direct hydrogenation of benzene (p. 501), but since dihydrobenzene (cyclohexadiene) exhibits the normal properties of a diolefin, the reduction of benzene to dihydrobenzene may be visualised as shown in the equation.

double bonds. On the other hand, Bruhl (1880) believed that the value of the refractive index of benzene proved their existence. These methods are particularly interesting in that they are some of the first examples of the application of physico-chemical methods to the elucidation of the

structure of organic compounds.

In 1899, Thiele applied his theory of partial valency (p. 85) to the benzene problem, and suggested formula (VIII). This formula dispenses with Kekulé's oscillation hypothesis, and in this formula there is no real difference between "single" and "double" bonds, and so accounts for there being no difference between the 1:2- and 1:6-positions. At the same time it also accounts for the "saturation" of benzene.

The introduction of one double bond into *cyclo*hexane leads to normal unsaturated properties. Introduction of a second double bond enhances the addition reactivity, but the introduction of a third double bond causes "saturation". Willstätter introduced successively one, two and three double bonds into *cyclo*hexanol as shown on p. 506 (using the method of exhaustive methylation; see p. 762).

The conclusion that may be drawn from this experiment is that the ring is intact, contains three double bonds, and that the introduction of the third double bond causes a complete change in properties of the resulting compound.

If Thiele's formula is correct, i.e., "aromatic character" is due to the symmetrical conjugation of the benzene ring, then cyclooctatetraene should also exhibit "aromatic character". Willstätter prepared this compound with a view to testing Thiele's formula for benzene, and found that it had

typical unsaturated properties (see p. 485), whereas, owing to its symmetrical conjugation (structure IX), it would have been expected to resemble benzene (see also p. 509). This led to a revival of Kekulé's oscillation formulæ and some of the modifications mentioned (other than Thiele's formula). The difficulty with the Kekulé formula is that it represents benzene with three double bonds, and the oscillation does not account for the difference in behaviour between these and olefinic bonds.



Present-day position regarding the formula of benzene. The approach at the present time is still an attempt to account for the fourth valency of each carbon atom in the benzene ring. Related to this is the question of defining "aromatic character", about which there is still no agreement.

Originally, the term aromaticity was used to describe all compounds that had the properties of benzene, and was confined, in consequence, only to compounds which contained benzene rings or a condensed system of benzene rings. The reason for this description was that compounds which had "aromatic character" exhibited properties which were very much different from those of the analogous aliphatic and alicyclic compounds, e.g., the ease of substitution (although the benzene ring was "unsaturated"), the stability of the benzene ring, the weaker basic properties of aromatic amines, the acidic properties of phenols (as compared with alcohols), etc. These differences in chemical properties led chemists to seek an explanation, and in consequence, to define aromaticity.

A very highly favoured theory for the aromatic properties of benzene uses the idea of resonance. According to this, benzene is believed to be a

resonance hybrid of the resonating structures (X-XIV):

(X) and (XI) are Kekulé structures, which are far more stable that (XII), (XIII) and (XIV), which are Dewar structures. The instability of the latter is due to the formation of weak formal bonds (cf. butadiene, p. 87; it is interesting to note that a combination of the three Dewar structures gives, in effect, the Claus diagonal formula). Thus the Kekulé structures contribute far more to resonance (about 80 per cent.) than do the Dewar structures (about 20 per cent.). Furthermore, since the two Kekulé structures are equivalent the stability of the resulting resonance hybrid is very high; the resonance energy of benzene has been shown to be about 39 kg. cal./mole. Resonance therefore makes benzene relatively stable in comparison with aliphatic unsaturated compounds; hence its "aromatic properties".

Thermochemical calculations show that the heat change associated with the dehydrogenation of cyclohexane to benzene, i.e., the introduction of three double bonds, is about 85-95 kg. cal./mole. The experimental value is 48 kg. cal./mole. The difference, 37 kg. cal./mole, is attributed to resonance energy (this value agrees with that obtained by other methods). Thus benzene contains less energy than is expected and consequently is

more stable than is expected.

Resonance gives each C—C bond in benzene some double bond character, and this has been shown to be so by measurements of the distance between two adjacent carbon atoms in various compounds. The C—C bond length (in ethane, propane, etc.) is 1·54A; the C—C bond (in ethylene) is 1·33A; and the C—C bond (in acetylene) is 1·20A. The C—C bond length in benzene has been shown to be 1·30A, a value which lies between that of a single and that of a double bond. Furthermore, it has also been found that all the C—C bonds in benzene are the same, thus indicating the symmetrical nature of the benzene ring.

According to Haayman and Wibaut (1939), ozonolysis of o-xylene agrees with a resonating structure for the benzene ring. These authors found the composition of the mixture to be roughly o-88 molecule dimethylglyoxal, 2 molecules methylglyoxal, and 3·2 molecules glyoxal. The calculated ratio should be 1:2:3 if the two Kekulé structures contribute equally; the experimental results agree fairly well with the theoretical value. The ozonolysis of o-xylene is an interesting example of the same experimental results being explained differently; one explanation is that o-xylene is a resonance hybrid (Haayman and Wibaut), and the other, a tautomeric mixture (Levine and Cole; p. 505).

In compounds of the type Ca<sub>2</sub>—Ca<sub>2</sub>, all the atoms are in the same plane (see p. 426). Since all the C—C bonds in benzene have double bond character due to resonance, it would therefore appear that the benzene ring should be planar, and that substituted groups should also be in the same plane (as the benzene ring). Evidence that the benzene ring is planar has been obtained from studies of X-ray analysis, dipole moments, Raman spectra, infrared spectra and electron diffraction photographs of benzene vapour.

The foregoing description of aromatic character has been in terms of valence-bond theory. An earlier modern theory is the aromatic sextet theory, which was proposed by Robinson (1925). The essence of this theory is that there are six electrons more than necessary to link together the six carbon atoms (of the benzene ring). These six electrons, one being contributed by each carbon atom, form a "closed group", and it is this closed group which gives rise to "aromatic properties". This closed group is not possible in aliphatic and alicyclic compounds, but is possible in heterocyclics, and so these also exhibit aromatic properties:









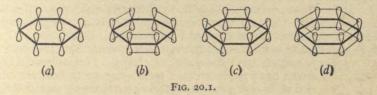
benzene

pyridine

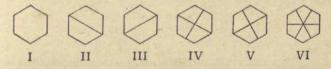
furan

It should be noted that the hetero-atom in five-membered rings contributes two electrons to the aromatic sextet.

Let us first consider the benzene molecule from the point of view of M.O. theory. Spectroscopic studies and X-ray analysis have shown that benzene is a regular flat hexagon (angle 120°), with all six hydrogen atoms lying in the same plane (of the ring) and each C—C—H valency angle also being 120°. Thus each carbon atom is in a state of trigonal hybridisation. Hence, in benzene, there are  $\sin \sigma$  C—H bonds,  $\sin \sigma$  C—C bonds and  $\sin 2p_z$  electrons (one on each carbon atom) which are all parallel and perpendicular to the plane of the ring (Fig. 1a).



These electrons can be paired in two ways, both being equally good (b and c). Each  $2p_z$  electron, however, overlaps its neighbours equally, and therefore all six can be treated as forming an M.O. embracing all six carbon atoms, and so are completely delocalised (Fig. d; cf. p. 88). Since six  $2p_z$  electrons are involved, six M.O.s are possible, three bonding and three antibonding (p. 30). These are as shown; ((I), (II), (III) are bonding, and (IV), (V), (VI) are anti-bonding); all have a node in the plane of the ring; but (II) and (III) have one node, (IV) and



(V) two, and (VI) three nodes perpendicular to the plane of the ring. Now, as we have seen, no more than two electrons can occupy any particular M.O. Furthermore, in the ground state, the six  $2p_s$  electrons of benzene will occupy, in pairs, the M.O.s of lowest energy. These three are (I), (II) and (III) (these are the M.O.s in which the number of nodes are fewer than in (IV), (V) and (VI). When benzene is in an excited state, one or more of the  $\pi$ -electrons will occupy the higher energy level M.O.s.

In the ground state, the total energy of the three pairs of delocalised  $\pi$ -electrons (Fig. d) is less than that of three pairs of localised  $\pi$ -electrons (Fig. b or c), and hence the benzene molecule is stabilised by delocalisation (resonance). It should also be noted that delocalisation of the  $\pi$ -electrons gives them the freedom to move round the ring, thereby producing ring currents. The flow is normally equal in both directions, but under the influence of a magnetic field perpendicular to the plane of the ring, the flow takes place preferentially in one direction to give an induced ring current (see also p. 511). Also, because of these induced currents, benzene shows a large diamagnetic susceptibility.

Hückel (1937) carried out an M.O. treatment of conjugated cyclic systems, and as a result connected aromatic stability (high-resonance energy) with the presence of (4n+2)  $\pi$ -electrons in a closed system. Thus the molecule must have 6, 10, .  $\pi$ -electrons. It will be noticed in this description that no mention is made of the number of atoms in the ring; the essential requirement is (4n+2)  $\pi$ -electrons. However, another requirement of aromatic character is planarity of the ring. Thus, if a molecule has a "circular" planar system and contains (4n+2)  $\pi$ -electrons, that molecule will exhibit aromatic character. For benzene, n=1, and the molecule has its closed shell of 6  $\pi$ -electrons; benzene is regarded as the "ideal" aromatic compound. cyclo-Octatetraene has four double bonds (and hence

8 π-electrons), and is also not planar. Hence this molecule is not aromatic; it has typical olefinic properties (p. 485). cyclo-Octatetraene, however,

forms a doubly charged anion on reaction with alkali metals. Katz (1960), from his nuclear magnetic resonance spectra studies, has shown that this dianion is planar, and suggests that its stability may be partly attributed to the fact that it obeys Hückel's (4n + 2) rule with n = 2. cyclo-Pentadiene, by loss of a proton, forms the cyclopentadienyl anion, which is a planar

ring system and now has a closed shell of 6 π-electrons. This anion is very stable, and compounds containing it exhibit aromatic properties, e.g., ferrocene (p. 480). The tropylium cation (p. 484) is a 7-membered ring system and contains a closed shell of 6 π-electrons. This cation is "aromatic", and its symmetrical structure has been shown, e.g., from spectral

measurements (Fately et al., 1955). Tropolone (p. 484), which has 7  $\pi$ -electrons, "loses" one to the oxygen atom, and so is now a 7-ring system containing a closed shell of 0  $6\pi$ -electrons; tropolone exhibits aromatic properties. Infrared studies have shown the high polarity of the C=O bond. Another ring system which fulfils "aromatic" requirements (for n = 1)

is borazole:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} H & H \\ H \ddot{N} & \ddot{N} H \\ \downarrow & \downarrow \\ H B & \ddot{N} \\ H & H \end{array} \longleftrightarrow \begin{array}{c} H \\ B \ddot{N} \\ H \ddot{N} \\ H \\ H \end{array}$$

So far, we have discussed aromatic compounds in which n = 1, i.e., there are 6  $\pi$ -electrons associated with the ring. All of these compounds which do not contain a benzene ring are referred to as non-benzenoid aromatic compounds. There are also non-benzenoid aromatics in which n=2, e.g., azulene (cf. the cyclo-octatetraene dianion, above).

dipolar structure

In the two Kekulé structures of azulene there are 10  $\pi$ -electrons; the 5membered ring has 5 and the 7-membered ring has 7  $\pi$ -electrons. Because of the tendency for each ring to acquire a closed shell of 6  $\pi$ -electrons, one electron passes from the 7-ring to the 5-ring, and now the molecule has a dipolar structure, each ring having an aromatic sextet.

Azulene undergoes many typical aromatic substitution reactions, e.g., it can be nitrated and brominated, and undergoes the Friedel-Crafts reaction.

From the foregoing, it can be seen that "aromatic character" has been defined in different ways: "unexpected" chemical properties; possession by the molecule of a large resonance energy; presence of a planar cyclic system containing (4n + 2)  $\pi$ -electrons.

Still other descriptions have been proposed. Diamagnetic susceptibility has been suggested as a test for aromaticity. It has been found that the value obtained in "aromatics" is much greater than the value calculated

from atomic constants.

The most recent definition of aromaticity has been given by Elvidge and Jackman (1961). As we have seen, the essential feature of an aromatic compound is a ring of atoms so linked that  $\pi$ -electrons are delocalised right round the ring. In these compounds there are induced circulations (or ring currents), and Elvidge and Jackman therefore define an aromatic compound as a compound which will sustain an induced ring current. The magnitude of the ring current will be a function of the delocalisation of the  $\pi$ -electrons around the ring and therefore is a measure of aromaticity (using the aromaticity of benzene as standard equal to r). Thus Elvidge and Jackman have calculated that the 2-pyridone ring sustains only 36 per cent. of the induced ring current of benzene and so has a fractional aromaticity of 0.36.

The structural representation of aromatic compounds. According to the Chemical Society, the Kekulé type of structure should, in general, be used. On the other hand, large circles representing 6 delocalised  $\pi$ -electrons in cyclic systems (with or without positive or negative signs as appropriate) should be permitted for certain types of compounds, and in certain circumstances. Cyclic systems having more or fewer than 6 delocalised electrons may be represented by formulæ containing dotted lines.



**Orientation.** The problem of assigning positions of substituents in disubstituted and higher substituted derivatives of benzene is known as *orientation*. When the substitutent is a carbon radical joined to the *benzene ring* or *nucleus* it is known as a *side-chain*. The generic name of monocyclic

(and polycyclic) aromatic hydrocarbons is arene.

(i) Körner's absolute method (1874). This method is based on the principle that the introduction of a third substituent into the p-isomer gives one trisubstituted product, the o-isomer two, and the m-isomer three trisubstituted products. Körner applied this principle to establish the orientation of the isomeric dibromobenzenes. He nitrated each isomer and examined the number of nitrated products. One isomer gave one dibromo-nitrobenzene; this isomer is therefore the p-compound. Another gave two dibromo-nitrobenzenes; this is therefore the o-compound; and the third gave three and is therefore the m-compound:

Körner also introduced a third bromine atom instead of a nitro-group (the number of isomers produced is independent of the nature of the third substituent).

In practice, this method is often difficult, if not impossible, since all the trisubstituted products cannot always be isolated due to the formation of some in very small amount.

The reverse procedure to Körner's method is often useful, *i.e.*, one group of the isomeric trisubstituted derivatives is removed, *e.g.*, Griess (1874) distilled the six diaminobenzoic acids (all known) with soda-lime. He obtained three phenylenediamines; three acids gave the same diamine, which is therefore the m-isomer; two acids gave the same diamine, which is therefore the o-isomer; and one acid gave one diamine, which is therefore the p-isomer.

(ii) The relative method. In this method the compound in question is converted into or synthesised from a substance of previously determined orientation; e.g., reduction of one or both nitro-groups in m-dinitrobenzene

gives rise to m-nitroaniline and m-phenylenediamine respectively:

Another example is the *replacement* of one group by another, e.g., *m*-benzene-disulphonic acid on fusion with sodium hydroxide gives *m*-dihydroxybenzene:

$$SO_3H$$
 OH  $OH$   $OH$ 

A classical example of the relative method of orientation is the case of the three benzenedicarboxylic acids. This starts with mesitylene. Mesitylene may be prepared by distilling acetone with sulphuric acid, and Baeyer assumed it to be s-trimethylbenzene, arguing that the reaction can be

formulated only if the symmetrical structure of mesitylene is assumed. This assumption was later proved correct by Ladenburg (1874). Mesitylene may be converted into dimethylbenzene, which, in turn, may be converted into a benzenedicarboxylic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_3 & CO_2H \\ \hline CH_3 & CH_3$$

The dimethylbenzene must be the *m*-isomer whichever methyl group in mesitylene is oxidised. Hence the benzenedicarboxylic acid must be the *m*-isomer, which is known as *iso*phthalic acid. Of the three isomeric

benzenedicarboxylic acids only one, phthalic acid, forms the anhydride; the other two, *iso*phthalic acid and the one known as terephthalic acid, do not form anhydrides at all. Thus phthalic acid is the o-isomer (by analogy with succinic acid; cf. p. 374); and terephthalic acid is consequently the p-isomer:

$$CO_2H \longrightarrow CO_2O + H_2O$$

Another example of the relative method is the nitration of o- and p-nitrotoluenes; both give the same dinitrotoluene derivative, which, therefore, must be the m-dinitro-compound:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{CH}_3 & \text{CH}_3 & \text{CH}_3 \\ \hline & \text{NO}_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{HNO}_3} & \hline & \text{NO}_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{HNO}_3} & \hline & \\ & \text{NO}_2 & & \text{NO}_2 & & \hline \end{array}$$

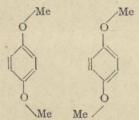
The relative method of orientation is based on the assumption that atoms or groups remain in the same positions or exchange positions with the incoming groups. It is also based on the assumption as to the structure of the starting material. Sometimes one or both of these assumptions are right, and sometimes they are wrong. Baeyer's assumption for the mesitylene formula was correct. On the other hand, o-, m- and p-bromobenzene-sulphonic acids all give m-dihydroxybenzene (resorcinol) when fused with sodium hydroxide. These fusions are carried out at about 300°, and since the conditions are vigorous, the interpretation of the results always contains an element of doubt. Thus Körner's absolute method is more satisfactory theoretically, but unfortunately it is often difficult to carry out in practice (see below).

(iii) Method of dipole measurements. In those cases where the two substituents are either atoms or simple groups, the determination of the dipole moment of the compound may often be used to ascertain the orientation, e.g., the dichlorobenzenes. The observed dipole moment of the C—Cl bond (in chlorobenzene) is 1.55D. By using this value, it is possible to calculate the dipole moments of the o-, m- and p-dichlorobenzenes, and by comparing these calculated values with those observed, the orientation of

the isomers may be decided:

As pointed out on p. 427, the dipole moment of p-disubstituted benzenes will be zero only for groups which have linear moments, e.g., p-dichloro-, dibromo-, dimethyl, and dinitro-benzene. When the groups have non-linear

moments, then the dipole moment of the p-disubstituted benzene will not be zero, e.g., in p-dimethoxybenzene, the two extreme conformations (planar

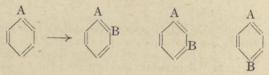


on the basis of resonance) are as shown. Thus of these two, it is the latter molecule population which has zero dipole moment whereas the former will have some definite value. The overall result is that this compound will not have a zero dipole moment; the actual value has been shown to be 1.7D. However, this method of orientation may still be used, since the values (observed and calculated) for o-, m-, and p-disubstituted benzenes are very often

sufficiently different to distinguish the isomers containing groups with non-

linear moments.

Substitution in the benzene ring. When one group is introduced into the benzene ring, only one compound is produced. When, however, a second group is introduced, three isomers are possible:



Holleman (1895, onwards) studied aromatic substitution in great detail, and found that when the second group enters the benzene nucleus, the main product is either a mixture of the o- and p-isomers or the m-isomer. Pure o-p- or m-substitution is rare, all three isomers being obtained simultaneously; but since the velocities of their formation are very different, the slowest one results in the formation of very little of that derivative (hence the difficulty of Körner's absolute method of orientation). Holleman (1910) found that the rate of o-p-substitution is very much greater than m-; e.g., if phenol is treated with bromine-water, s-tribromophenol is obtained extremely rapidly (and quantitatively); thus the o- and p-positions are very active. On the other hand, when nitrobenzene is brominated, m-bromonitrobenzene (60-70 per cent. yield) is obtained. This reaction, however, is slow; thus the m-position is not very active.

Experiments of this kind have led to the conclusion that usually o-psubstitution is associated with activation of the benzene nucleus, i.e., reaction is faster than in benzene itself, whereas m-substitution is associated with

deactivation of the nucleus, i.e., reaction is slower than in benzene.

Rules of orientation. Experience shows that the nature of group A already present in the nucleus determines the position taken by the incoming group.

Class I directs the incoming group to the o- and p-positions. In this class, A may be any one of the following:-R, OH, OR, NH2, NH·R, NR2,

NH·CO·CH3, Cl, Br, I, F, CH2Cl, SH, Ph, etc.

Class II directs the incoming group to the m-position. In this class, A may be any one of the following:-NO2, CHO, CO2H, CO2R, SO3H, SO2Cl,

CO·CH<sub>3</sub>, CN, CCl<sub>3</sub>, NH<sub>3</sub>+, NR<sub>3</sub>+, etc.

Very few groups direct exclusively to the o- and p- or to the m-positions. In most cases orientation is mainly o, p or m. Furthermore, the orienting effect of a given group may be affected by reaction conditions, e.g., solvent or nature of the incoming group.

Many empirical rules have been formulated to predict the course of substitution in the benzene ring. These rules connected the orienting power of group A with its acidic or basic nature (Körner, 1874; Hübner, 1875; Noelting, 1876); whether HA could be directly oxidised to HAO (Crum-Brown and Gibson, 1892); whether A was saturated or unsaturated (Vorländer, 1902). Flurscheim (1902) proposed a rule based on whether A was positive or negative, and subsequently Vorländer (1919), Lapworth (1920) and Fry (1921) all put forward a somewhat similar theory, the theory of alternating polarities.

The most satisfactory empirical rule is that of Hammick and Illingworth (1930). (i) If in the benzene derivative  $C_6H_5$ ·XY, Y is in a higher group in the periodic table than X, or if, being in the same group, Y is of lower atomic weight than X (i.e., higher in the same group), then a second atom or group entering the nucleus

goes to the m-position.

(ii) In all other cases, including that in which XY is a single atom, o-p-

substitution takes place.

(iii) The effect of ionic charges on XY is given by the statement that a positive

charge directs m- and a negative charge o-p-.

It is important to note that when the atoms joining the groups X and Y are the same, e.g., -N=N-, -C=C-, the group XY is o-p-orienting (this follows from statement ii). For mixed groupings, e.g., CHCl<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl, etc., the strict rule may be applied and thereby the correct orientation will be obtained. Thus in CHCl<sub>2</sub> the part CH is o-p-orienting and the part CCl, m-; in practice, both orientations are obtained.

There are apparently only two exceptions, the nitroso- and iodoxy-groups (see

p. 522).

Introduction of a third group into the benzene ring. The position taken up by a third group entering the ring depends on the nature of the two groups already present. Experiments by Holleman have shown that:—

(i) When both groups belong to class I, the directive power of each group

is in the following order:

$$\mathrm{OH}{>}\mathrm{NH_2}{>}\mathrm{NR_2}{>}\mathrm{NH}{\cdot}\mathrm{CO}{\cdot}\mathrm{CH_3}{>}\mathrm{Cl}{>}\mathrm{Br}{>}\mathrm{I}{>}\mathrm{CH_3}$$

If the p-position is unoccupied, then generally this position is entered preferably to the o-, i.e., more of the p-isomer is formed than the o-, e.g.,

(ii) When both groups belong to class II, then it is difficult to introduce a third group, and the directive power of each group is:

# CO2H>SO3H>NO3

The directive powers given above are due to Holleman, but study of more recent literature appears to show lack of agreement on this problem. However, it appears the order of *m*-directing groups is probably the reverse of that given above, *i.e.*, it appears to be

$$NO_2 > SO_3H > CO_2H$$

(iii) When the two groups direct differently, *i.e.*, belong to classes I and II, then class I takes precedence. Furthermore, if the orientations reinforce each other, the third group enters almost entirely one position, *e.g.*,

Separation of isomers. This usually means the separation of the o- and p-isomers. There are three common methods:

(i) Steam distillation may be used, since the o-isomer is often steam-volatile whereas the p- is not. This method of separation is particularly

applicable to o-hydroxy-compounds.

(ii) The boiling points of o- and p-isomers are often very close together and so it is difficult to separate them by fractional distillation. Their melting points, however, are usually very different, that of the p-isomer being much higher than that of the o-. Thus these isomers may be separated by filtration; it may be necessary to cool the mixture in order to get the p-isomer in the solid form.

(iii) Chemical methods of separation may be used in certain cases (see,

e.g., p. 609).

### MECHANISM OF AROMATIC SUBSTITUTION

There are three possible mechanisms for aromatic substitution: electrophilic, nucleophilic and free-radical. Of these the common substitution

reactions are those which involve electrophilic reagents.

Electrophilic substitution. A widely held theory of electrophilic aromatic substitution is that it proceeds by a bimolecular mechanism. This theory postulates the formation of an intermediate, and that the formation of this intermediate is the rate-determining step. Melander (1950) has shown that in nitration and bromination there is no kinetic isotope effect; he showed that tritium and protium are displaced at essentially identical rates. This indicates that the breaking to the C—H bond has made little or no progress in the rate-determining stages of these reactions. Recent kinetic studies, together with isotope effect measurements, have also established a two-step mechanism for certain coupling reactions, etc. (Zollinger, 1955; Schubert et al., 1956).

Let us illustrate this mechanism for benzene itself. Theoretical considerations of Hughes and Ingold (1937) have shown that the entering group should approach the ring in a lateral direction with respect to the plane of the ring, i.e., approach (and ejection) of groups can only occur in a direction at right angles to the ring. The problem now is: What is the structure of the intermediate? A theoretically possible intermediate is one in which the attacked carbon atom changes its state of hybridisation from trigonal to tetrahedral (Wheland, 1942). Thus this carbon atom is removed from conjugation with the rest of the system, but the latter, although no longer benzenoid, still has a conjugated system which exhibits resonance. This resulting positive ion is known as the pentadienyl (pentadienate) cation (cf. p. 480).

 $Y^{+} +$  Slow Slo

The three resonating structures contributing to the intermediate are often combined, and the intermediate is then represented as follows:

$$Y^+ + \longrightarrow + \longrightarrow + H^+$$

The resonance energy of this cation will not be as great as that of benzene, but by the expulsion of a proton the molecule can revert to the benzenoid state. The proton is not set free as such, but is removed by some base present.

Consideration of the mechanism of aromatic substitution from the M.O. point of view gives much the same picture as described above. An intermediate is formed as before, but now two of the original six  $\pi$ -electrons forming the "closed circuit" are localised to form a  $\sigma$ -bond with the attacking electrophilic reagent. Formation of this bond in the intermediate involves change from trigonal to tetrahedral hybridisation at the carbon atom where reaction actually occurs. The remaining four  $\pi$ -electrons occupy M.O.s embracing the other five carbon atoms, *i.e.*, a delocalised pentadienyl cation exists in the intermediate. Because of the partial localisation to form a  $\sigma$ -bond, this intermediate is also called a  $\sigma$ -complex.

The mechanism given above has been supported by the detection or isolation of intermediates, but according to Gold et al. (1955–58) and Brown (1959), this mechanism does not account for all the observed facts. Brown has proposed a mechanism involving unsymmetrical charge-transfer complexes as intermediates, and accounts for all the features of electrophilic substitution reactions.

$$Ar-H+Y^{+} \rightleftharpoons \begin{picture}(100,0) \put(0,0){\line(1,0){10}} \put(0,0){\line(1,$$

The first step is the formation of a charge-transfer complex (I), which, in the second step, isomerises to the charge-transfer complex (III) by way of a transition state (II). The final step is the base-catalysed loss of a proton from (III).

Effect of substituents in electrophilic substitution. It has been previously pointed out (p. 516) that the rules of orientation are empirical. It is possible, however, to obtain a definite physical basis for orientation from the electronic theories of organic chemistry. As a result of a very large amount of work, it has been found that at least three factors must be considered, the most widely studied of which is the polar effect of the substituent group on the nucleus. The other two factors are discussed later (see *ortho-para* ratio, p. 523). The effects of substituents described below hold for kinetically controlled products; they do not always apply to the thermodynamically controlled products (see, e.g., pp. 530, 611).

**Polar effects.** In o-p-substitutions group A causes these positions to become points of high electron density; hence substitution will take place in the o-p-positions with electrophilic reagents. Furthermore, owing to the increased electron density in the o-p-positions, group A is associated with activation of the benzene ring, i.e., further substitution is facilitated by the presence of an o-p-orienting group.

In *m*-substitution, group A causes a withdrawal of electrons from the o- and p-positions, leaving the m-position practically unaffected. Thus the m-position becomes a point of relatively high electron density, and so substitution takes place in the m-position with electrophilic reagents. Since the m-position is almost unaffected, and the o- and p-positions decrease in electron density, group A is associated with deactivation of the benzene ring, i.e., further substitution is made more difficult by the presence of a m-orienting group.

A point of interest here is the methods used to determine the relative reactivity of the benzene ring due to the presence of substituent A. Various methods have been used; one of the best is by competitive reactions. An equimolecular mixture of two substrates is treated with insufficient reagent to lead to complete reaction with both compounds. Thus the two substrates

compete with each other, and analysis of the products will show which

substrate has reacted with more of the reagent.

The problem that now confronts us is: How are changes in electron densities brought about by group A? The following detailed account shows that these are caused by the inductive, electromeric and resonance (mesomeric) effects.

When the group present in the ring is OH, OR, NH<sub>2</sub>, etc., the product of further substitution is mainly o-p. A property common to all these groups is that the atom adjacent to the nucleus—the "key atom"—has at least one lone pair of electrons. The resonance effect gives rise to increased electron densities in the o-p-positions, e.g.,

(I) and (II) are the normal structures; (III) and (IV) are o-quinonoid and (V) is p-quinonoid. (I–V) are the resonating structures,  $C_6H_5$ ·O·R being a resonance hybrid of them. Hence the actual state of  $C_6H_5$ ·O·R is a molecule having small negative charges at the two o-positions and at the p-position. Thus substitution with electrophilic reagents takes place in these positions, and is facilitated owing to the excess electron densities, since it is reasonable to suppose that an electrophilic reagent will attack at the point where the electron density is highest.

According to Ingold's terminology of mesomerism, etc. (p. 20), these electronic displacements are +M, and in addition to this +M effect, there

will also be brought into play the +E effect; thus:

It therefore follows that o-/p-substitution takes place by the +T effect.

When the group present in the ring is NO<sub>2</sub>, CO<sub>2</sub>H, COR, SO<sub>3</sub>H, etc., the product of further substitution is mainly *m*-. All these groups, by virtue of having at least one strongly electron-attracting atom and a double or triple bond conjugated to the benzene ring, cause an electron displacement away from the nucleus and towards the group (i.e., a —M effect), e.g., C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CO·R, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·NO<sub>2</sub> and C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·SO<sub>3</sub>H. (VI–X) are resonating structures, and the actual states of C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CO·R, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·NO<sub>2</sub> and C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·SO<sub>3</sub>H are molecules which have small positive charges in the o- and p-positions, i.e., the m-positions have a relatively high electron density with respect to the o-p-positions. The above groups are therefore m-orienting to electrophilic reagents.

The relative high electron density of the *m*-positions with respect to the *o-p*-positions is due to the *withdrawal* of electrons from the *o-p*-positions (*i.e.*, —M effect), and not due to a gain of electrons in the *m*-positions. Hence *m*-substitution is due to deactivation of the whole nucleus, particularly in the

o-p-positions.

The electromeric effect will assist the resonance effect in deactivating the ring, and so for m-substitution we have -M -E, i.e., -T. Furthermore, since all m-orienting groups contain at least one strongly electron-

since all *m*-orienting groups contain at least one strongly electronattracting atom, the inductive effect of this atom will also help to withdraw electrons from the o-p-positions. In this case the M, E and I effects all assist one another, the net result being -T — I.

The electron-attracting power (I effect) of an atom alone cannot decide whether the substituent atom or group will be o-p- or m-orienting; e.g., Cl, OH, NH<sub>2</sub>, etc. have a strong —I effect and therefore tend to withdraw electrons from the ring, i.e., the —I effect tends to promote m-substitution, and not o-p- as is the case in practice. The "key-atom" in all of these groups, however, has at least one lone pair of electrons, and consequently both the resonance and electromeric effects are possible. Since these effects together are stronger than the I effect, the above atoms or groups become o-p-orienting, e.g.,

Thus for  $C_0H_5Cl$ , we have +T-I, and since T is greater than I, the result is o-p-substitution.

Although chlorine is o-p-orienting, it is more difficult to nitrate

chlorobenzene than benzene, *i.e.*, chlorine *deactivates* the ring (*cf.* above). According to Ingold (1933), the -I effect of chlorine deactivates the ring, and the +M effect is too small to be significant. When, however, the +E effect is brought into play by the attacking reagent, the o- and p-positions are raised in electron density above the m-, but the increase is not as great as that which occurs in benzene itself. Consequently, although chlorine is o-p-orienting it deactivates the ring.

As we have seen in the foregoing, the amino-group in aniline is o-p-orienting; e.g., bromination of aniline produces 2:4:6-tribromoaniline; nitration with nitric acid produces a mixture of o- and p-nitroanilines. On the other hand, if the nitration is carried out in the presence of concentrated sulphuric acid, a large amount of m-nitroaniline is obtained. This is believed

to be due to the formation of the  $-NH_3$  group, the positive charge of which exerts a strong -I effect, thereby withdrawing electrons from the ring; also, there is now no lone pair (on the nitrogen atom) available for the +M and +E effects. Thus the o- and p-positions become points of low electron densities and so m-substitution takes place. This effect of the positive charge is well brought out by the nitration of the following compounds (Ingold, 1926, 1927):

Side-chain	·NMe <sub>3</sub>	·CH <sub>2</sub> ·NMe <sub>3</sub>	·(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> ·NMe <sub>3</sub>	·(CH <sub>2</sub> ) <sub>3</sub> ·NMe <sub>3</sub>
m- (per cent.)	100	88	19	5

The amount of *m*-substitution decreases with increasing length of the carbon chain (the inductive effect decreases rapidly from the source). Other positive centres also behave in a similar manner, and it should be noted that positively charged substituents are the strongest types of *m*-orienting groups. Furthermore, the *m*-orienting power for key atoms in the same periodic

group decreases as the atomic weight increases, i.e., N > P > AS > Sb. Although each of these atoms has a unit positive charge, the nucleus becomes progressively larger (from left to right) and consequently nuclear screening increases.

The carboxyl group is m-orienting, but the carboxylate ion is o-p-orienting. This is attributed to the negative charge on each oxygen atom giving the carboxylate ion electron-repelling properties (+I) in contrast to the carboxyl group which is electron-attracting (-I).

Similarly, on the -I effect of a carboxyl group, it would be expected that m-substitution would result in cinnamic acid. In practice, however, the main product is a mixture of the o- and p-compounds. The reason for this is uncertain, but a possible explanation is one similar to that given for nitrosobenzene (see below). The permanent electronic displacement is as shown in (I), but in the presence of electrophilic reagents a + E effect comes into operation (II).

The polar effect of an alkyl group in the alkylbenzenes is particularly interesting. Since alkyl groups are electron-repelling (+I), the o-p-positions become points of high electron density, and consequently alkyl groups are

$$R \rightarrow 2 \delta - 1$$
 $R \rightarrow 2 \delta - 1$ 

o-p-orienting. Since the order of the inductive effect of alkyl groups is (p. 16):

methyl<ethyl<pre>propyl<isopropyl<t.-butyl</pre>

then the activating effect of an R group, if entirely due to the +I effect, would be in the same order. Actually, in a number of cases the order is the reverse. One explanation offered for this reversal is hyperconjugation (p. 269), this being greatest in the methyl group and least in the t-butyl group; thus:

Hyperconjugation may also be used to explain, for example, the m-orienting power of the  $CCl_3$  group (as well as by the -I effect):

$$\text{Cl}_{2}\overset{\overset{.}{C}_{1}}{=}\overset{.}{\longleftarrow}\rangle \iff \text{Cl}_{2}\overset{\overset{.}{C}_{1}}{=}\overset{+}{\longleftarrow}\rangle \iff \text{Cl}_{2}\overset{\overset{.}{C}_{1}}{=}\overset{-}{\longleftarrow}\rangle +$$

The general effect of a substituent on the introduction of a second group may be summarised as follows:

(i) +I substituent: increases o-reactivity more than p-.
(ii) -I , . . decreases o- , . , . , . p-.
(iii) -M , . . decreases p- , . , . , . o-.
(iv) +T , . . increases p- , . , . , . o-.
(v) Steric factor : decreases o-reactivity.

From the M.O. point of view, the methyl group of toluene can behave as a "compound atom" with a  $\pi$ -orbital, and this conjugates with the benzene ring (Fig. 2; cf. p. 270). This produces an increase in charge densities at the o- and  $\sigma$ -positions.

The m-orienting effect of the CCl<sub>3</sub> group may be explained by assuming that one chlorine atom ionises. This leaves the carbon atom with a positive charge. The "closed circuit" of the benzene ring can now extend itself to cover this carbon atom, thereby stabilising the molecule (Fig. 3). This extended conjuga-



tion can probably be extended further by contributions of the  $p_*$  lone pairs on each of the two chlorine atoms remaining attached to the carbon atom. The final result is a decrease in charge densities at the o- and p-positions.

It has been pointed out (p. 515) that the nitroso- and iodoxy-groups are apparently exceptions to the Hammick-Illingworth rule. Thus, if the nitroso-group had the same effect as a nitro-group, then it should give rise to m-substitution

with electrophilic reagents. Unfortunately, electrophilic reagents, when used in the usual way, destroy the nitroso-group. Ingold (1925) and Le Fèvre (1931), however, nitrated and brominated nitrosobenzene under special conditions and obtained the p-derivatives. If we assume that no unusual factors (e.g., dimerisation; see p. 307) were operating under these special conditions, the results may be explained by the operation of a + E effect (I) in nitrosobenzene. On the other hand, it appears that - E effect (II) can operate in the presence of a nucleophilic reagent, e.g., in o- and p-bromonitrosobenzene the bromine is readily removed by hydrolysis. Thus nitrosobenzene can undergo two electromeric directions, and the direction will be determined by the nature of the attacking reagent.

According to the Hammick-Illingworth rule, the iodoxy-group,  $IO_2$ , would be expected to be o-p-orienting. It has been shown, however, that this group is m-orienting, e.g., nitration of iodoxybenzene produces almost 100 per cent. of the m-derivative (Masson  $et\ al.$ , 1935).

An alternative way of predicting the effect of substituents in electrophilic substitution is to examine the stabilities of the carbonium ions produced as intermediates. Thus if A is the substituent and Y the entering group, then the various carbonium ions for o-, p- and m-substitution are as follows:

If A has a +I effect (e.g., Me) or is an electron-donating group (e.g., OH), then the positive charge in I. and 4. will tend to be neutralised, and consequently these ions are stabilised. Therefore the pentadienyl cations (I) and (II) each have a stabilised resonating structure contributing to the resonance hybrid. There is no such stabilised resonating structure contributing to the pentadienyl cation (III). Thus cations (I) and (II) will be more stable than (III); consequently, A will be o.p-orienting. If A has a -I effect (e.g., NR<sub>3</sub>+) or is an electron-withdrawing group (e.g., NO<sub>2</sub>) then these effects are opposed in I. and 4., but not in 7., 8. or 9. (or to a far less extent). Thus, in this case cation (III) will be more stable than (I) or (II), and consequently A will be m-orienting.

Ortho-para ratio. Since there are two o-positions and only one  $\phi$ -position, it might be expected that there would be twice as much o- as p-substitution if the group present affected the electron density of each position to the same extent, i.e., the o/p ratio should be 2/1. This is rarely observed in practice; for some substituents o-substitution is favoured, and for others

b-substitution.

Since the approach of the incoming group is perpendicular to the ring, it is reasonable to infer that, in addition to its polar effects, the actual size of the o-substituent and the entering group, i.e., steric (spatial) effects, will also operate in determining the amount of o- and p-substitution. This purely steric effect will affect only the o-positions. Polar effects, as we have seen, are transmitted mainly to the o- and p-positions, with very little change in the m-positions. Thus the m/p ratio will indicate only the polar influences at these two positions, whereas the o/m and o/p ratios will indicate effects due to both polar and steric influences. The following results have been obtained for mononitration (I, Jones et al., 1947; 2 and 3, Brown et al., 1954; 4, Nelson et al., 1951):

No.	Compound	0	m	p	0/p	o/m	p/m
I 2 3 4	Ph·Me	58·5	4·4	37·2	1·57	13·3	8·5
	Ph·Et	45	6·5	48·5	0·93	6·9	7·5
	Ph·CHMe <sub>2</sub>	30	7·7	62·3	0·48	3·9	8·1
	Ph·CMe <sub>3</sub>	15·8	11·5	72·7	0·22	1·4	6·3

It can be seen that as the size of the alkyl group increases, the proportion of the o-product decreases. The question then is: Is this purely a steric effect, or are there in addition some other factors operating? One possible influence is that due to hyperconjugation, since this decreases from methyl to t.-butyl (p. 521). The ratio p/m, however, does not vary much in this series, and so it may be concluded that the polar effects of the four alkyl groups are nearly the same (Nelson, 1951). This conclusion is supported by other work, and thus the decreased o-substitution can be attributed to the steric requirements of the alkyl substituents.

In addition to the steric effect of the substituent group, there is also the steric effect of the entering group. Thus it has been shown that in the alkylation of toluene, as the size of the entering group increases, so the o/p

de la Mare et al. (1956) found that the ratio of isomers produced in the acid-catalysed bromination of toluene by hypobromous acid is: o-, 70.3%; m-, 2·3%; p-, 27·4%. The reagent was a positively charged brominating

species, either the brominium cation Br+ or the hypobromous acidium ion BrOH2+. The reaction is thus electrophilic, and there is a great similarity in partial rate factors between this bromination (I) and nitration (II). The results, however, show more resistance to the o-entry of the nitro-group Br+ or BrOH2+ than to the bromo-group. de la Mare has explained this by suggesting that in the transition

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \text{CH}_3 & \text{CH}_3 \\ & & & \\$$

state the initially linear nitronium ion now becomes distorted (triangular), and therefore the effective radius of the nitro-group in the direction of the flanking o-methyl group is likely to be greater than that of the spherical bromine substituent.

The existence of the steric factor is also supported by spectroscopic work. When, owing to steric hindrance, the two substituent groups are forced out of the same plane, one spectral effect is a decrease in absorption intensity. The absorption intensity of the p-halogenonitrobenzenes is in the order I>Br>Cl>F, and the order of the o-compounds is the reverse. This difference is attributed to the steric inhibition of uniplanarity of the phenyl and nitro-groups by the o-halogen substituent. At the same time, the energy of activation (in the transition state) is also affected (Brown et al., 1955).

Not only must the polar and steric factors be considered, but also one arising from the electrostatic forces set up between the substituent and the entering group, e.g., Sandin et al. (1947) nitrated aryl halides and obtained

the following results:

Compound				0	P	0/p
C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> F C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> Cl	1			12·6 30·1	87·4 73·1	0·14 0·41
C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>5</sub> Br				37.2	62.5	0.59

All the halogens are o-p-orienting, and since the halogen increases in size from fluorine to bromine, then, on the basis of the steric effect also operating,

the ratio o/p would be expected to fall. This ratio, however, actually rises, and so some other factor must be operating. One explanation that has been offered is that there is interaction between the C—X bond moment and the entering group Y, and that these forces will be different for the o- and p-positions in the transition state (the C—X dipole decreases from F to Br). be operating. One explanation that has been offered is

Nucleophilic substitution. This term covers the replacement of hydrogen or a substituent by a nucleophilic reagent. Furthermore, this latter type includes activated nucleophilic aromatic substitution in which the replacement is facilitated by the presence of an electron-withdrawing group in the o- and/or the p-position. In general, there are three types of mechanism in nucleophilic aromatic substitution: unimolecular, bimolecular and the benzyne type (the last is discussed on p. 547).

Unimolecular substitution. This mechanism is most unusual in aromatic substitution. It appears that the only well-established example is the case of the uncatalysed decomposition of aryl diazonium cations to phenols in aqueous solution. Aryl halides may also be formed if halide ions (nucleophilic reagents) are present in solution, e.g.,

are present in solution, e.g.,
$$Ar \xrightarrow{N_2^+} \xrightarrow{\text{slow}} N_2 + Ar^+ \xrightarrow{\text{fast}} ArCH$$

There is a great deal of evidence to support this unimolecular mechanism, e.g.: (i) Moelwyn-Hughes et al. (1940) showed that the decomposition of benzene-

diazonium chloride in water is a first-order reaction.

(ii) The decomposition of benzenediazonium borofluoride, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>N<sub>2</sub>+BF<sub>4</sub>-, in, e.g., nitrobenzene solution, phenylates the latter compound in the m-position; the borofluoride also converts diphenyl ether, Ph<sub>2</sub>O, into the oxonium ion Ph<sub>3</sub>O<sup>+</sup> (Nesmeyanov et al., 1957). These results are readily explained on the assumption that the active species is the phenyl cation.

Bimolecular substitution. This is the common type of mechanism in nucleophilic aromatic substitution. Where kinetic studies have been made, the reaction has been shown to be of the second-order. The general belief is that the reaction proceeds through a negative ion intermediate, the pentadienyl anion. In general terms, this may be represented as follows:

As in the case of the pentadienyl cation, the resonating structures of the pentadienyl anion may be represented by a single formula, e.g., the reaction between chlorobenzene and aqueous sodium hydroxide at 300° may be represented:

$$OH^{-} + Cl \xrightarrow{Slow} I \xrightarrow{-} I \xrightarrow{fast} OH \xrightarrow{fast} + Cl^{-}$$

An example of activated nucleophilic substitution is the conversion of o-chloronitrobenzene into o-nitrophenol when heated with aqueous sodium hydroxide at 200° (see also p. 547):

Here, because of the electron-withdrawing effect of the nitro group, the carbon of the C—Cl group acquires a positive charge, and so attack at this carbon atom is facilitated.

Although benzene itself does not undergo nucleophilic substitution, substitution of *hydrogen* by a nucleophilic reagent can occur when the ring contains a nitro group, *e.g.*,

Support for the above mechanism via intermediates is given by the isolation (at least in some cases) of these intermediates. Meisenheimer (1902) showed that the adduct formed from 2:4:6-trinitroanisole (I) and potassium ethoxide (in ethanolic solution) was identical with that obtained from 2:4:6-trinitrophenetole (II) and potassium methoxide (in methanol solution); he obtained the same mixture of (I) and (II) from each adduct on acidification:

Foster et al. (1954, 1955) have also shown that (I) and OEt and (II) and OMe-

form compounds having identical infrared and visible spectra.

According to Reinheimer et al. (1958), ion-pairs (p. 109) play a part in the bimolecular reaction between 1-chloro-2: 4-dinitrobenzene and methoxide ions. The nucleophilic reagent has been assumed to exist as an ion pair M+OMe-, and the reactivity sequence M = Li < Na < K is as expected.

The bimolecular mechanism has been shown to be subject to polar and steric

effects (cf. the section on the ortho-para ratio).

In the same way as it was possible to discuss electrophilic substitution from the point of view of the stabilities of the intermediate carbonium ions, so can one discuss nucleophilic substitution from the point of view of the stabilities of the carbanions.

If A has a -I effect or is an electron-withdrawing group, then the negative charge in 3. and 5. will tend to be neutralised, and consequently these ions are stabilised. Since there is no such stabilisation in 7., 8. and 9., the pentadienyl anions (I) and (II) will be more stable than (III). Consequently, A will favour nucleophilic substitution of a group in the o- or the p-position. If A has a +1 effect or is an electron-donating group, then these effects are opposed by the negative charge in 3. and 5., and consequently the pentadienyl anion (III) is more stable than (I) or (II), i.e., an electron-donating group will favour nucleophilic substitution when the replaced group is in the m-position, and consequently deactivates the ring with respect to nucleophilic substitution when the replaced groups are in the

If A is an electron-attracting group in which the "key" atom can form a double bond with the ring, this will produce increased stability in 3. and 5. Such a group is the nitro group, and so when A is a nitro group, the nucleophilic

substitution rate is increased (see above).

Free-radical substitution. In homolytic substitution, since the attacking agent is uncharged, it might be expected that the (polar) orienting influence of the substituent would be without effect, i.e., the ratios of o:m:p would be 2:2:I. In practice, however, substitution is mainly o- and p-, irrespective of the nature of the group already present in the ring. transition states are possible (pentadienyl radicals) for free-radical attack.

Let us first consider the o-pentadienyl radical; this will be a resonance hybrid of three resonating structures:

$$\stackrel{X}{\longrightarrow} \stackrel{X}{\bigvee}^{H} \leftrightarrow \stackrel{X}{\bigvee}^{H} \leftrightarrow \stackrel{X}{\bigvee}^{H}$$

Thus the o-, m-, and p-transition state may be written as follows:

Since o- and p-substitution predominate, the energies of these transition states must be lower than that of the m-. The reason for this is uncertain.

The hydrogen atom is expelled, but is probably never free; it is rapidly removed by another free radical present in solution. Examples of free-radical substitution are chlorination of benzene at high temperature in the vapour phase or in the presence of sunlight (p. 544), the decomposition of diazonium salts under certain conditions (p. 585), mercuration with mercuric acetate (p. 539) and the Wurtz-Fittig reaction (p. 534).

Arylation of aromatic compounds may be effected by decomposing benzoyl peroxide in aromatic solvents. This type of reaction is of some interest in connection with some work of Price et al. (1957, 1958). These authors phenylated 2:4-dinitrotritiobenzene with benzoyl peroxide and obtained equal amounts of labelled (I) and unlabelled (II) products.

$$(\text{Ph} \cdot \text{CO}_2)_2 \longrightarrow 2 \text{Ph} \cdot + 2 \text{CO}_2$$

$$\stackrel{\text{NO}_2}{\text{H}} \stackrel{\text{NO}_2}{\text{T}} \stackrel{\text{Ph}}{\text{T}} \stackrel{\text{NO}_2}{\text{T}} + \stackrel{\text{NO}_2}{\text{H}} \stackrel{\text{NO}_2}{\text{Ph}}$$

$$(I) \qquad (II)$$

Since there is no kinetic isotope effect, homolysis of the C—H bond cannot be the rate-determining step. The observed results are support for the rate-determining step being the addition of the phenyl radical to form the pentadienyl radical.

One method of studying organic reactions has been to calculate the *charge densities* ( $\pi$ -electron densities) of the various positions in the molecule. The assumption has then been made that these quantities are related to the chemical reactivities to charged reagents.

In conjugated systems, only the  $\pi$ -electrons are considered, since the  $\sigma$ -electrons are localised and consequently very little affected by external influences. The  $\pi$ -electrons cover the whole benzene nucleus, and since they are easily polarised, i.e., readily affected by external electrical influences, any change at one point in the molecule will be propagated to another. Hence the presence of a substituent group in the benzene nucleus will affect the  $\pi$ -electron distribution throughout the whole molecule, i.e., the charge densities, and consequently the chemical reactivities of distant positions will be affected by the substituent group. These changes will, as one might expect, depend largely on the nature of the substituent group.

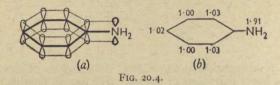
Substitution reactions of benzene involve three types of reagents, electrophilic, nucleophilic and free-radical. Since electrophilic reagents are electron-seeking

reagents, they will attack the carbon atom which has the highest charge density. Since nucleophilic reagents supply a pair of electrons, these reagents will attack the carbon atom which has the lowest charge density. (Reactions involving free radicals are more difficult to deal with, and will not be discussed here.)

It can be seen from the foregoing discussion that if we know the charge densities of all the atoms in the molecule, we are in a position to say where attack

will occur with electrophilic or nucleophilic reagents. π-Electron densities have been calculated for many molecules (particularly by Coulson and his co-workers). Let us first consider benzene itself. This is a symmetrical molecule, and so all the charge densities are equal, the value being unity (as shown by calculation). Thus all the carbon atoms in benzene are attacked equally well by electrophilic reagents.

Now let us consider aniline. The nitrogen atom has a lone pair of electrons which can conjugate with the  $\pi$ -electrons of the benzene ring (Fig. 4a).



results in the nitrogen losing "full control" of this lone pair, but owing to the strong electron-attracting power of nitrogen, the loss of control is fairly small. The new  $\pi$ -electron densities are shown in (b). Since the nitrogen "started off" with full control of its lone pair, its  $\pi$ -electron density was originally 2. In the conjugated molecule, the value is 1.91. Thus the nitrogen atom acquires a small positive charge (cf. resonance theory), and the net result is increased charge densities on o- and p-carbon atoms, the m-carbon atoms remaining unaffected. Thus electrophilic attack on aniline will occur at the o- and p-positions, and according to the above figures, preferentially at the o-position. Similarly, a lone pair of electrons of the chlorine atom in chlorobenzene will conjugate with the benzene ring, the chlorine thereby acquiring a small positive charge and the oand p-positions increasing their charges above unity, whereas the charge density of the m-position remains sensibly the same (unity).

Now let us consider nitrobenzene. The nitro-group itself is conjugated, with the nitrogen atom positively charged (Fig. 5a). When the nitro-group conjugates with the ring (Fig. b), the nitrogen atom attracts towards itself the ring

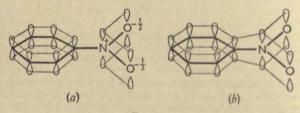


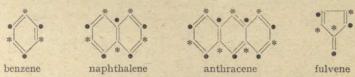
FIG. 20.5.

π-electron cloud, and thereby decreases the charge densities on the carbon atoms in the ring, more so at the o- and p-positions than at the m-position (as shown by calculation). Thus electrophilic attack will occur at the m-position, and nucleo-

philic attack at the o- and p-positions.

Calculation of the charge distribution in conjugated compounds is usually a laborious process. Coulson et al. (1940) have shown that the calculation is simple for alternant hydrocarbons (A.H.). In these it is possible to divide the atoms of the resonating part of the molecule into two groups (sometimes called starred and unstarred) such that no atom of one group is adjacent to another atom of the same group, but is always adjacent to one or more atoms of the other group. Thus benzene, naphthalene and anthracene are A.H.'s, but fulvene is not.

Furthermore, no odd-membered ring can be alternant, and with A.H.'s Coulson has shown that all the carbon atoms have a charge density of unity (which is not generally true for non-A.H.'s).



Another method of studying organic reactions has been to assume that the reactivity of a double bond is related to its double-bond character (or bond order; see p. 89). This assumption agrees quite well with the experimental results. The greater the double-bond character, the greater will be the reactivity at this point in the molecule. In benzene all the bonds have the same double-bond character, and so no particular carbon atom will be attacked preferentially. In the case of more complex aromatic hydrocarbons, e.g., naphthalene, the double-bond character differs in various parts of the molecule, and so attack at some carbon atoms is easier than at others. Badger (1948–50) has found that osmium tetroxide is the most satisfactory reagent for the determination of the relative reactivity of aromatic double bonds. This reagent does not attack benzene, but attacks polycyclic compounds containing pronounced double-bond character (see, e.g., naphthalene, p. 715).

## General Methods of Preparation of the Benzene Homologues

Friedel-Crafts reaction (1877). This reaction involves the introduction of an alkyl or acyl group into the benzene ring in the presence of a catalyst. Recently, the Friedel-Crafts reaction has been applied to certain aliphatic and alicyclic compounds.

The aromatic compounds may be hydrocarbons, aryl chlorides and bromides, mono- and polyhydric phenols or their ethers, amines, aldehydes, acids, quinones, and certain derivatives of heterocyclic compounds. The alkylating agents may be alkyl halides, aliphatic alcohols, olefins, ethers and alkyl esters of organic and inorganic acids. From the point of view of convenience, the alkylating agent is usually confined to alkyl halides, alcohols and olefins. The acylating agents may be acid chlorides or anhydrides, acids, or esters.

Many catalysts may be used, e.g., the chlorides of aluminium, iron (ferric), zinc, tin (stannic); boron trifluoride, hydrogen fluoride, sulphuric acid, phosphoric acid, and a mixture of silica and alumina. Acylations may also be effected in the presence of perchloric acid as catalyst (Burton et al., 1950). Recently it has been found that benzene will react with an alkyl halide or acyl chloride in the absence of a catalyst, but in this case the reaction must be carried out under pressure (Sachanen and Cæsar, 1946).

Of all the catalysts mentioned, aluminium chloride (the one originally used by Friedel and Crafts) is the best, and gives satisfactory yields when the alkylating agent is an alkyl halide, alcohol or an olefin. The amount of catalyst required depends on the nature of the alkylating agent used, e.g., with alkyl halides or olefins, about 0.2-0.4 molecule of aluminium chloride (using the formula AlCl<sub>3</sub>) is necessary. With alcohols (ethers, etc.), however, a larger amount of catalyst (one or more molecules) is necessary:

$$\begin{split} & C_6 H_6 + C H_3 C I \xrightarrow{\text{AlCl}_6} C_6 H_5 \cdot C H_3 + H C I \\ & C_6 H_6 + C_2 H_4 \xrightarrow{\text{(o·2 mol.)}} C_6 H_5 \cdot C_2 H_5 \\ \hline & C_6 H_6 + C_2 H_5 O H \xrightarrow{\text{AlCl}_6} C_6 H_5 \cdot C_2 H_5 + H_2 O \end{split}$$

The orientation of the products in the alkylation of an alkylbenzene with aluminium chloride as catalyst depends on the temperature of the reaction. Thus Norris et al. (1939) obtained the following yields (per cent.):

The reason for this is not certain. One possibility is that the o- and p-compounds are the kinetically controlled products, whereas the m-compound is the thermodynamically controlled product. The Friedel-Crafts reaction is reversible, and consequently at high temperature the product formed will be the thermodynamically controlled one. On the other hand, with boron trifluoride, which is very useful with alcohols and olefins (as is hydrogen fluoride), the main product of disubstitution is the p-derivative; sulphuric acid also produces mainly the p-derivative.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ + \text{ ROH} & \xrightarrow[\text{(o-6 mol.)}]{\text{BF}_3} \\ \end{array} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \end{array}$$

Boron trifluoride does not catalyse alkylations with alkyl chlorides or bromides, but the reaction can be carried out in the presence of water or alcohol (Hennion *et al.*, 1943). On the other hand, alkylation with alkyl fluorides is readily carried out with boron trifluoride as catalyst (Burwell *et al.*, 1942; Oláh *et al.*, 1957).

The Friedel-Crafts reaction is often the most useful method of introducing an alkyl group into the benzene ring. The ease of alkylation with an alkyl halide depends on the nature of the alkyl radical and the halogen atom. The ease of alkylation for a given halogen atom is tertiary halide > secondary > primary; and for a given alkyl radical, alkyl fluoride > chloride > bromide > iodide (this is the reverse order of the usual reactivity of alkyl halides).

The Friedel-Crafts reaction is usually carried out in the presence of a solvent, but if one of the reactants is a liquid hydrocarbon, e.g., benzene, this may be used as solvent as well. The solvents generally used are nitrobenzene, light petrol, or carbon disulphide, and the solvent sometimes affects the orientation (see p. 715). At the end of the reaction the complex (see later) is usually decomposed by ice-cold concentrated hydrochloric acid.

The Friedel-Crafts reaction has certain drawbacks:

(i) The structure of the alkyl group plays a part in the alkylation, e.g., it is easy to introduce a methyl, ethyl or isopropyl group, but usually difficult to introduce a n-propyl or n-butyl group, since these tend to rearrange to the iso-radicals. isoButyl halides very readily give a text.-butyl substitution product. If the reaction is carried out in the cold with benzene and n-propyl chloride, the n-propyl radical is introduced:

$$C_6H_6+CH_3\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH_2\text{Cl} \xrightarrow{\text{AlCl}_3} C_6H_5\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH_3+\text{HCl}$$

If, however, the reaction is carried out at higher temperatures, the isopropyl radical is mainly introduced:

$$C_6H_6 + CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CI \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} C_6H_5 \cdot CH(CH_3)_2 + HCl$$

The catalyst itself also affects isomerisation, e.g., n-alcohols usually alkylate at low temperatures without rearrangement taking place when aluminium chloride is used, but rearrangement occurs when boron trifluoride or sulphuric acid is used, a primary alcohol giving rise to a secondary alkyl radical, and a secondary alcohol to a tertiary alkyl radical.

A very good means of introducing the n-propyl radical is to use cyclopropane

as the alkylating agent:

$$C_6H_6 + CH_2 \xrightarrow{CH_2} \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 CH_2 \cdot CH_3$$
 (65%)

Acid chlorides may be used to introduce long straight-chain groups (see below).

(ii) It is not always possible to stop the reaction at the required stage, i.e., there is always a tendency to over-alkylate, e.g.,

Over-alkylation, due to the presence of the first alkyl group in the ring increasing the ease of further alkylation, may be partly prevented by using a large excess of the hydrocarbon.

(iii) The Friedel-Crafts reaction is reversible, i.e., an alkyl group may be removed, especially at high temperatures. This renders the structure of the

product uncertain in a number of cases.

(iv) The presence of a negative group (*m*-orienting group) in the ring hinders or inhibits the Friedel-Crafts reaction, *e.g.*, nitrobenzene,  $C_6H_5$ \*NO<sub>2</sub>, and acetophenone,  $C_6H_5$ \*CO·CH<sub>3</sub>, do not undergo the Friedel-Crafts reaction. On the other hand, if a strongly activating group (*o-p*-orienting group) is present in either of the above two compounds, reaction can take place, *e.g.*, *o*-nitroanisole reacts with *iso*propanol in the presence of hydrogen fluoride to form 2-nitro-4-*iso*-propylanisole:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OCH}_3 \\ \text{NO}_2 + \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CH}_3 & \xrightarrow{\text{HF}} \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{OCH}_3 \\ \text{NO}_2 + \text{H}_2 \text{O} \ (84\%) \end{array}$$

This hindering effect can be used to advantage for preparing a monoalkylated benzene (free from dialkylated-product):

$$C_6H_6 + CH_3 \cdot COCl \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{[H]} C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_3$$

The acetophenone (which is not further attacked) may be readily reduced to

ethylbenzene by the Clemmensen method.

(v) For phenols and acids it is better to use boron trifluoride than aluminium chloride, since the latter forms aluminium salts, thereby necessitating the use of a large excess of aluminium chloride:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{ArOH} + \text{AlCl}_3 \longrightarrow \text{ArOAlCl}_2 + \text{HCl} \\ \text{Ar} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{H} + \text{AlCl}_3 \longrightarrow \text{Ar} \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{AlCl}_2 + \text{HCl} \end{array}$$

## MECHANISM OF THE FRIEDEL-CRAFTS REACTION

Alkyl halides. Until recently it was generally believed that all Friedel-Crafts reactions proceeded by a free carbonium ion mechanism involving the intermediate formation of a complex (and a pentadienyl cation):

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{RCl} + \text{AlCl}_3 \Longrightarrow [\text{R-Cl-AlCl}_3] \Longrightarrow \text{R}^+ + \text{AlCl}_4^- \\ & \text{ArH} + \text{R}^+ \Longleftrightarrow \left[\text{Ar} {\overset{\text{H}}{\smallsetminus}}_{\text{R}}\right]^+ \longrightarrow \text{Ar} {\overset{\text{.}}{\cdot}} \text{R} + \text{H}^+ \\ & \text{H}^+ + \text{AlCl}_4^- \longrightarrow \text{HCl} + \text{AlCl}_3 \end{aligned}$$

Brown et al. (1953), however, have shown that this mechanism is not general, and have presented strong evidence that for at least primary halides the reaction proceeds by a bimolecular nucleophilic substitution mechanism which involves the complex.

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{RCl} + \operatorname{AlCl}_3 & \rightleftharpoons \operatorname{R-Cl-AlCl}_3 \\ \operatorname{ArH} + \operatorname{R-Cl-AlCl}_3 & \rightleftharpoons \overset{\delta_+}{\operatorname{Ar}}\overset{H}{\underset{R--Cl-AlCl}{\operatorname{AlCl}_3}} \\ & \rightleftharpoons \left[\operatorname{Ar}\overset{H}{\underset{R}{\overset{}}}\right]^{\scriptscriptstyle +} \operatorname{AlCl}_4^{\scriptscriptstyle -} & \rightleftharpoons \operatorname{Ar}\cdot\operatorname{R} + \operatorname{HCl} + \operatorname{AlCl}_3 \end{array}$$

Further work by Brown et al. (1956) on the alkylation of benzene and toluene with alkyl bromides in the presence of aluminium bromide supports the above mechanism. These authors also suggest that the transition state is best described in terms of a nucleophilic attack by the aromatic compound on a strongly polarised RBr-AlBr<sub>3</sub> addition compound, and that as branching in the alkyl bromide increases, the C—Br bond in the transition state becomes more and more ionic and finally, at some point in the series, the reaction proceeds through a free carbonium ion mechanism. It was also shown that the isomer distribution in methylation is not independent of the halogen atom in the methyl halide. This therefore precludes the free carbonium ion mechanism in methylation and suggests the bimolecular mechanism. It is also believed that the solvent S (which can also be a hydrocarbon) co-ordinates with the aluminium bromide

$$\begin{array}{c} Al_{2}Br_{6}+2S \Longrightarrow 2S-AlBr_{3} \\ RBr+S-AlBr_{3} \Longrightarrow R-Br-AlBr_{3}+S \\ ArH+R-Br-AlBr_{3} \Longrightarrow \left[Ar {\stackrel{H}{\smallsetminus}}_{R}\right]^{+}AlBr_{4}^{-} \\ \stackrel{S}{\longrightarrow} Ar {\cdot} R+HBr+S-AlBr_{3} \end{array}$$

It has previously been pointed out (p. 111) that n-propyl halides tend to rearrange, resulting in the introduction of an isopropyl radical. The mechanism of this reaction is uncertain. It has been observed that n-propyl halides isomerise in the presence of aluminium chloride:

According to Mckenna and Sowa (1937), this rearrangement might take place first and then the isopropyl halide alkylates.

Alcohols. Here again the generally accepted mechanism is believed to be ionic, e.g.,

$$ROH + BF_3 \rightleftharpoons \begin{bmatrix} H \\ R - O - BF_3 \end{bmatrix} \rightleftharpoons R^+ + HOBF_3^-$$

$$ArH + R^+ \rightleftharpoons \begin{bmatrix} Ar \\ R \end{bmatrix}^+ \longrightarrow Ar \cdot R + H^+$$

$$H^+ + HOBF_3^- \longrightarrow [H_2O \cdot BF_3] \longrightarrow H_2O + BF_3$$

However, in view of the work done with alkyl halides, it is possible that alkylation with alcohols may also proceed by the bimolecular mechanism.

Olefins. It appears that a trace of water is necessary to catalyse this reaction, and based on this it has been suggested that the actual alkylating agent is the alkyl chloride which is produced as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{AICl}_3 + 3\text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow &\text{AI(OH)}_8 + 3\text{HCl} \\ &\text{C}_2\text{H}_4 + \text{HCl} \xrightarrow{\text{AICl}_9} &\text{C}_2\text{H}_8\text{Cl} \end{aligned}$$

Acyl chlorides. The generally accepted mechanism of acylation, until recently, was an ionic one involving the intermediate formation of an acyl cation:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-COCl} + \text{AlCl}_3 \Longrightarrow [\text{R-CO--Cl--AlCl}_3] \Longrightarrow \text{R-CO}^+ + \text{AlCl}_4^- \\ \text{ArH} + \text{R-CO}^+ \Longrightarrow \left[\text{Ar--CO-R}^+\right]^+ \longrightarrow \text{Ar-CO-R} + \text{H}^+ \end{array}$$

According to Brown et al. (1954), this ionic mechanism cannot operate in the case of toluene, which acylates in the p-position. These authors suggest a substitution mechanism involving a "larger" attacking reagent to account for the steric requirements. This reagent may be the complex R·COX·AIX3 itself or a solvated complex. Thus the following mechanism has been proposed:

It has been suggested that the bimolecular mechanism is general and that the ionic mechanism operates in such cases where either the aromatic compound or the acyl halide is sterically hindered, e.g., Baddeley et al. (1954) have provided evidence that with substituted benzoyl halides the acyl cation is

the acylating agent. On the other hand, Tedder (1954) has suggested that acylations with acyl chloride and aluminium chloride take place by both ionic and substitution mechanisms. Reactive aromatic hydrocarbons are acylated by both processes simultaneously, but less activated hydrocarbons proceed through more of the bimolecular mechanism, and benzene itself almost exclusively through the bimolecular mechanism.

Wurtz-Fittig reaction (1863). Homologues of benzene may be prepared by warming an ethereal solution of an alkyl and aryl halide with sodium

(cf. Wurtz reaction):

$$C_6H_5Br + C_2H_5Br + 2Na \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot C_2H_5 + 2NaBr \quad (60\%)$$

Diphenyl and n-butane (and some other compounds) are obtained as by-

products.

The advantages of the Wurtz-Fittig method over the Friedel-Crafts are that the structure of the product is known and that long *n*-side-chains can be easily introduced:

$$C_6H_5Br + CH_3 \cdot (CH_2)_2 \cdot CH_2Br \xrightarrow{Na} C_6H_5 \cdot (CH_2)_3 \cdot CH_3 \quad (62-72\%)$$

The mechanism of the Wurtz-Fittig reaction is uncertain. Two have been suggested, and there is evidence for both (cf. Wurtz reaction):

I. The reaction proceeds via the formation of organo-metallic compounds:

Since reaction (i) proceeds very much faster than (iii), (ii) will be the main reaction.

II. The reaction proceeds via the formation of free radicals:

$$\begin{array}{l} C_6H_5\mathrm{Br} + \mathrm{Na} \cdot \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot + \mathrm{NaBr} \\ 2C_6H_5 \cdot \longrightarrow C_6H_5 - C_6H_5 \\ C_2H_5\mathrm{Br} + \mathrm{Na} \cdot \longrightarrow C_2H_5 \cdot + \mathrm{NaBr} \\ 2C_2H_5 \cdot \longrightarrow C_2H_5 - C_2H_5 \\ C_6H_6 \cdot + C_2H_5 \cdot \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot C_2H_5 \end{array}$$

In addition to diphenyl, other by-products are also obtained in the Wurtz-Fittig reaction, viz., benzene, o-diphenylbenzene and triphenylene. The formation of these is readily explained by the free-radical mechanism, disproportionation of the free radicals taking place as follows:

$$2C_6H_5 \cdot \longrightarrow C_6H_6 + \bigcirc$$

$$2C_6H_5 \cdot \longrightarrow C_6H_5$$

$$0\text{-diphenylbenzene}$$

$$3 \bigcirc \longrightarrow \bigcirc$$

triphenylene

The formation of these polyphenyl compounds has, however, also been explained by non-radical mechanisms (cf. Wurtz reaction, p. 51). It should be noted that the free diradical, as written above, is one of the structures suggested for benzyne (p. 547); this has been reported to trimerise to triphenylene (Lüttringhaus et a., 1955).

Method using a Grignard reagent. Homologues of benzene may be prepared by the action of an alkyl halide on phenylmagnesium bromide:

$$C_6H_5Br \xrightarrow{Mg} C_6H_5{}^{\bullet}MgBr \xrightarrow{CH_3I} C_6H_5{}^{\bullet}CH_3 \quad (v.g.)$$

For the introduction of a methyl or ethyl group, the corresponding alkyl

sulphate may be used instead of the alkyl halide (cf. p. 352).

Benzene homologues with branched side-chains may be prepared by the action of alkyl-magnesium halide on an aromatic ketone, e.g., isopropylbenzene from acetophenone:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OMgI} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{·CO·CH}_3 + \text{CH}_3\text{·MgI} \longrightarrow \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{·C} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{·C} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \\ & \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \longrightarrow \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{·C} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2/\text{Ni}} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{·CH}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \end{array}$$

Decarboxylation of aromatic acids. Many aromatic acids are readily decarboxylated when heated with soda-lime, e.g., toluene from p-toluic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_3 & CH_3 \\ \hline & \\ CO_2H & \end{array}$$

Removal of oxygen from phenols. When distilled with zinc dust, phenols are converted (in poor yield) into the corresponding hydrocarbons, e.g., p-cresol gives toluene:

$$\operatorname{CH_3} + \operatorname{Zn} \longrightarrow \operatorname{CH_3} + \operatorname{ZnO}$$

Method of chloromethylation. This is the process whereby a hydrogen atom (generally of an aromatic compound) is replaced by a *chloromethyl group*, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl. The reaction may be carried out by heating the aromatic hydrocarbon with formalin or paraformaldehyde and hydrochloric acid in the presence of zinc chloride as catalyst, e.g., benzyl chloride from benzene:

$$C_6H_6 + CH_9O + HCl \xrightarrow{ZnCl_9} C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2Cl + H_2O$$
 (79%)

Chloromethyl ether and dichloromethyl ether may be used instead of formalin or paraformaldehyde, but unlike the latter, do not require the presence of a catalyst. Many catalysts may be used with formalin (or paraformaldehyde), the most useful being zinc chloride, aluminium chloride, stannic chloride, acetic acid and sulphuric acid.

The introduction of a chloromethyl group is very useful, since this group is readily converted into other groups such as CH<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>OH, CHO, CH<sub>2</sub>·CN.

Chloromethylation is generally applicable to aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, naphthalene, anthracene, phenanthrene, diphenyl, and to many of their derivatives. Monoalkylbenzenes are converted mainly into the p-chloromethyl derivatives, together with a small amount of the o-compound. In certain cases it is possible to introduce a second chloromethyl group (see, e.g., p. 716). The yields of the chloromethylated compounds are variable, usually lying between 50–80 per cent. The presence of a halogen atom in the ring reduces the yield of the chloromethylated derivative. A nitro-group behaves in a similar manner, and the presence of two nitro-groups inhibits the reaction altogether, e.g., nitro-benzene gives only a small yield of the chloromethylated compound; m-dinitro-benzene gives none. Ketones of the type Ar\*CO\*R give very poor yields, and those of the type Ar\*CO\*Ar do not react at all. Phenols, however, are very reactive, so much so that polymers are often obtained.

According to Ogata et al. (1956), the mechanism of chloromethylation is:

$$\mathrm{CH_{2}O} + \mathrm{H^{+}} \Longleftrightarrow \overset{\mathrm{t}}{\mathrm{CH_{2}OH}} \overset{\mathrm{ArH}}{\longrightarrow} \mathrm{ArCH_{2}OH} + \mathrm{H^{+}} \overset{\mathrm{HCl}}{\Longleftrightarrow} \mathrm{ArCH_{2}Cl} + \mathrm{H_{2}O}$$

Supporting evidence is that electron-releasing groups facilitate the reaction, whereas electron-withdrawing groups retard the reaction.

General properties of the benzene homologues. The benzene homologues are usually colourless liquids, insoluble in water, but miscible in all proportions with organic solvents. All burn with smoky flames.

tions with organic solvents. All burn with smoky flames.

Toluene (methylbenzene), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CH<sub>3</sub>, is obtained commercially from coaltar, or by catalytically dehydrogenating n-heptane or methylcyclohexane (both obtained from petroleum; see p. 500):

$$CH_3 \cdot (CH_2)_5 \cdot CH_3 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot CH_3 + 4H_9$$

Toluene is also prepared by reaction between benzene and methane at high

temperature.

Toluene is a colourless liquid, b.p. III°, resembling benzene in many of its chemical properties. Since, however, it contains a side-chain, it undergoes some further reactions, e.g., the side-chain may be oxidised in stages, first to give benzaldehyde and then to give benzoic acid:

$$\mathsf{C_6H_5\text{-}CH_3} \xrightarrow{[0]} \mathsf{C_6H_5\text{-}CHO} \xrightarrow{[0]} \mathsf{C_6H_5\text{-}CO_2H}$$

When toluene is nitrated or sulphonated, a mixture of the three possible isomers is obtained, mainly consisting of the o- and p- and very little of the m-isomer. Chlorine and bromine react with toluene in one of two ways, according to the conditions; the halogen may enter the nucleus or the side-chain (see p. 544).

Xylenes, C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>10</sub>. Four isomers of the formula C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>10</sub> are known:

All of these isomers are present in the light oil fraction of coal-tar, and are difficult to separate because their boiling points are close together (see p. 609). The methyl groups in the xylenes may be oxidised by dilute nitric acid, one at a time, to give carboxylic acids; the *m*-isomer is not so easily oxidised as the *o*- and *p*-isomers:

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{CH_3 \cdot C_6 H_4 \cdot CH_3} \xrightarrow{[O]} \operatorname{CH_3 \cdot C_6 H_4 \cdot CO_2 H} \xrightarrow{[O]} \operatorname{HO_2 C \cdot C_6 H_4 \cdot CO_2 H} \\ \text{a toluic acid} & \text{a phthalic acid} \end{array}$$

Potassium permanganate acts in a similar manner to nitric acid, but chromic acid oxidises the o-isomer to carbon dioxide and water.

Hydrocarbons of formula  $C_9H_{12}$ . There are eight isomeric hydrocarbons of formula  $C_9H_{12}$ , viz., three trimethylbenzenes, three methylethylbenzenes, one *n*-propylbenzene, and one *iso*propylbenzene. The three trimethylbenzenes occur in coal-tar:

Mesitylene is the most important of these, and is usually prepared by distilling acetone with sulphuric acid (p. 170).

CH<sub>3</sub> isoPropylbenzene (cumene), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, b.p. 153°, also occurs in coal-tar.

p-Cymene (cymene, p-methylisopropylbenzene), b.p. 177°, occurs in oil of thyme and eucalyptus oil, and is related to camphor and other terpenes.

Aromatic hydrocarbons with unsaturated side-chains. The only important unsaturated aromatic hydrocarbon is styrene (phenylethylene, vinylbenzene),  $C_6H_5$ -CH=CH<sub>2</sub>. This occurs in storax (a balsam) and in coal-tar (distilling with the xylenes). Styrene may be prepared as follows:

(i) By heating phenylmethylmethanol with sulphuric acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5\text{-}MgBr + CH_3\text{-}CHO \longrightarrow C_6H_5\text{-}CHOMgBr \xrightarrow{H_5O} \\ CH_3 \\ C_6H_5\text{-}CHOH\text{-}CH_3 \xrightarrow{heat} C_6H_5\text{-}CH \Longrightarrow CH_2 \end{array}$$

(ii) By heating 2-phenylethanol with alkali:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot CH_2OH \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH = CH_2 + H_2O$$

(iii) The most convenient laboratory preparation is to heat cinnamic acid with a small amount of quinol:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CH = CH\cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH = CH_2 + CO_2$$

A small amount of quinol is also placed in the receiving vessel to prevent the polymerisation of the styrene.

Styrene is manufactured by dehydrogenating ethylbenzene catalytically:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot C_2H_5 \xrightarrow[600]{ZnO} C_6H_5 \cdot CH = CH_2 + H_2$$

Ethylbenzene is prepared industrially by the action between benzene and ethylene in the presence of aluminium chloride.

Styrene is a colourless liquid, b.p. 145°. It adds on bromine to form the dibromide, and is readily reduced to ethylbenzene. It polymerises slowly to a solid on standing, and rapidly when exposed to sunlight or in the presence of sodium. This polymer, which is known as *metastyrene*, (C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>8</sub>)<sub>n</sub>, may be depolymerised by heating. Styrene is used for making plastics and synthetic rubbers.

Substitution in the side-chain of styrene gives rise to two possibilities:

$$\begin{array}{cccc} C_6H_5\text{-}CCl & CH_2 & C_6H_5\text{-}CH & CHCl \\ \text{$\alpha$-chlorostyrene} & \beta\text{- or $\omega$-chlorostyrene} \end{array}$$

Phenylacetylene,  $C_6H_5$ -C:CH, may be prepared by decarboxylating phenylpropiolic acid,  $C_6H_5$ -C:C-CO<sub>2</sub>H, or by heating  $\omega$ -bromostyrene with ethanolic potassium hydroxide.

Phenylacetylene is a liquid, b.p. 142°, with acidic properties, e.g., it forms metallic derivatives. It is reduced to styrene by zinc dust and acetic acid, and in the presence of sulphuric acid, phenylacetylene adds on a molecule of water to form acetophenone:

$$C_6H_5\cdot C \equiv CH + H_2O \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CO\cdot CH_3$$

Oxidation of aromatic hydrocarbons. The benzene ring is usually very resistant to oxidation, and so when benzene homologues are oxidised, it is the side-chain which is attacked. Whatever the length of the side-chain, the ultimate oxidation product is benzoic acid; sometimes the intermediate products can be isolated, but it is usually difficult to control the oxidation. Cullis et al. (1955) have shown that when n- and isopropyl-benzene are oxidised with potassium permanganate, the initial attack is at the  $\alpha$ -carbon, e.g.,

Furthermore, these authors found that as the size of the alkyl group increased in a monoalkylbenzene, the extent of ring rupture decreases. The oxidations of toluene and ethylbenzene proceed as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5\text{-}CH_3 \longrightarrow [C_6H_5\text{-}CH_2OH] \longrightarrow C_6H_5\text{-}CHO \longrightarrow C_6H_5\text{-}CO_2H \\ C_6H_5\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH_3 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\text{-}CO\text{-}CH_3 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\text{-}CO_2H \end{array}$$

When two side-chains are present, it is possible to oxidise them one at a time, e.g., the xylenes may be oxidised first to a toluic acid and then to a phthalic acid. When the two side-chains are of unequal length, it is the longer one which is usually attacked first:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{CH}_3 & \text{CH}_3 \\ \hline \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_3 & \text{dilute} \\ \hline \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$$

The usual oxidising agents for side-chains are dilute nitric acid, acid or alkaline permanganate, dichromate-sulphuric acid mixture, and chromic acid which may be chromium trioxide in either glacial acetic acid or concentrated sulphuric acid. All except permanganate usually attack the longer side-chain first. Recently, it has been found that selenium dioxide at 250-340° will oxidise a methyl side-chain to a mixture of aldehyde and carboxylic acid (Sultanov et al., 1946):

$$Ar \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{SeO_9} Ar \cdot CHO + Ar \cdot CO_2H$$

Oxidation with chromic acid is selective, the p-isomer being more easily oxidised than the m-; the o-isomer is often completely oxidised to carbon dioxide, or the ring may be opened to give an aliphatic compound. Oxidation of o-compounds, however, is usually successful with permanganate (i.e., no breakdown of the ring). When negative groups such as a halogen, nitro-, carboxyl or sulphonic acid group are attached to the ring, they are unaffected by oxidising agents, the result of oxidation being a substituted

benzoic acid; this therefore offers a means of preparing such compounds. The presence of a negative group, however, in the o-position to the side-chain generally makes oxidation difficult with acidic oxidising agents. The best oxidising agent for such o-compounds is probably alkaline permanganate. If there are two side-chains present as well as a negative group, then alkaline permanganate usually attacks the one ortho to the negative group.

An interesting oxidising agent is potassium ferricyanide. This will oxidise a methyl group to a carboxyl group only if there is a nitro-group

ortho to the methyl group.

If a hydroxyl or amino-group is attached to the ring, the ring becomes very sensitive to oxidising agents, the ring usually breaking down completely, whatever the oxidising agent used. If, however, these groups are "protected" by acetylation, oxidation of side-chains may be effected without breakdown of the ring, but it is then best to use a *neutral* oxidising agent, *e.g.*, permanganate in the presence of magnesium sulphate, to prevent hydrolysis of the acetyl derivative. On the other hand, if the arylsulphonyl derivative, Ar·SO<sub>2</sub>—, is prepared instead of the acetyl derivative, oxidation of side-chains may be carried out in acid media, since the sulphonyl derivative is much more difficult to hydrolyse than the acetyl derivative.

Metalation of aromatic compounds. Metallic derivatives of aromatic compounds may be prepared by various methods; e.g., benzene heated with an alkyl-sodium forms phenylsodium:

$$C_6H_6 + R^-Na^+ \longrightarrow C_6H_5^-Na^+ + RH$$

Phenylsodium may also be prepared by heating diphenylmercury with sodium:

$$(C_6H_5)_2Hg + 2Na \longrightarrow 2C_6H_5^-Na^+ + Hg$$

Diphenylmercury may be prepared by refluxing a mixture of bromobenzene, sodium amalgam, xylene and a small amount of ethyl acetate:

$$2C_6H_5Br + Na_2/Hg \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_2Hg + 2NaBr (32-37\%)$$

Phenyl-lithium may conveniently be prepared by the action of lithium on bromo- or iodobenzene in ethereal solution:

$$C_6H_5Br + 2Li \longrightarrow C_6H_5Li + LiBr$$

All these metalated aromatic compounds (i.e., organo-metallic compounds) undergo the general reactions of the Grignard reagents. In practice, the lithium compound is generally used, since it is so readily prepared (see also

p. 361).

A very important case of metalation is mercuration. Aromatic compounds containing almost all the common functional groups have been mercurated, and in general mercuration proceeds easily with the formation of mono-, di- and even polymercurated compounds. Mercuration is becoming an increasingly important substitution reaction, and aromatic mercurated compounds are increasing in importance in medicine and as intermediates in the preparation of other compounds (see text).

Aromatic mercuration is carried out in two ways:

(i) Direct mercuration. This is the reaction in which a hydrogen atom of benzene, a polynuclear hydrocarbon, or a heterocyclic compound, is replaced by the mercuri-acid group, the most common one being the acetoxymercuri-group, —Hg·O·CO·CH<sub>3</sub>. This group is usually introduced by

heating the hydrocarbon with mercuric acetate, or with the equivalent of mercuric oxide in glacial acetic acid, at 90-160°, for one or more hours, e.g., acetoxymercuribenzene (phenylmercury acetate):

$${\rm C_6H_6+Hg(O\cdot CO\cdot CH_3)_2} \longrightarrow {\rm C_6H_5-Hg\cdot O\cdot CO\cdot CH_3+CH_3\cdot CO_2H}$$

The monomercurated derivative is the main product, and is accompanied by a varying amount of polymercurated derivatives.

Mercuration may be effected by heating the aromatic compound with the mercury salt only, or together with acetic anhydride or with solvents such as methanol or ethanol.

The most important aromatic compounds that can be mercurated are the aromatic hydrocarbons, aryl chlorides, nitro-compounds, amino-compounds, phenols, acids and acid anhydrides. The aryl halides and nitro-compounds are mercurated with difficulty, whereas compounds containing a hydroxyl or an amino-group (activating groups) are mercurated more readily than the parent hydrocarbon.

The orienting influence of substituent groups may be unusual. With an o-p-orienting group the reaction is usually normal, e.g., aniline and phenol give the expected o- and p-derivatives, but toluene gives about 20 per cent. of the m-compound. On the other hand, a m-orienting group may behave abnormally, e.g., Klapproth et al. (1950) have shown that mercuration of nitrobenzene with mercuric perchlorate in aqueous perchloric acid at 23° gives II per cent. of o- and p-, and 89 per cent. of m-compound, whereas mercuration with mercuric acetate at 150° gives 57 per cent. of o- and p-, and 43 per cent. of m-. The reason offered for this is that in the former case the mercuric salt is ionised and so the reaction is heterolytic, i.e., electrophilic, and consequently the usual orientation is observed. In the latter case the salt is unionised, and so this reaction proceeds largely through a homolytic process, i.e., by a free-radical mechanism.

The position of the acetoxymercuri-group can be found by treating the mercurated compound with halogen, whereupon the group is replaced by a halogen atom:

# $Ar-Hg\cdot O\cdot CO\cdot CH_3 + Br_2 \longrightarrow ArBr + HgBr(O\cdot CO\cdot CH_3)$

This reaction is the most characteristic reaction of mercurated compounds. On the other hand, if a mercurated compound is treated with sodium halide, the acetyl group is replaced by a halogen atom to form a halogenomercuricompound (phenylmercury halide):

$$Ar-Hg\cdot O\cdot CO\cdot CH_3 + NaCl \longrightarrow Ar-HgCl + CH_3\cdot CO_2Na$$

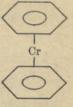
Mercuric nitrate readily reacts with excess benzene to form phenylmercury nitrate C6H5·HgNO3. The nitric acid liberated (from the mercuric nitrate) during the reaction decomposes the mercurated compound, but this can be avoided by using a mixture of mercuric nitrate and mercuric oxide (the latter neutralising the liberated nitric acid). If instead of mercuric nitrate, a solution of mercuric nitrate in nitric acid is used, the benzene is oxidised and nitrated to dinitrophenol and picric acid. In this case the reaction is known as oxynitration

(ii) Indirect mercuration. This is the reaction in which a functional group is replaced by a mercuri-acid group, usually the chloromercuri-group, -HgCl. Mostly used for this purpose are the diazonium salts, sulphinic acids and aryl halides (see text).

The advantage of indirect over direct mercuration is that the former may

be used to prepare a particular isomer, whereas the latter usually produces a mixture of isomers.

It has now been found that benzene (and various other aromatics) forms metallic complexes similar to the ferrocenes (p. 480), e.g., when benzene, chromic chloride, aluminium chloride and powdered aluminium are heated at 180°, a product containing the  $(C_6H_6)_2Cr^+$  cation is obtained. This, on reduction with, e.g., hypophosphorous acid, gives dibenzene-chromium (O),  $(C_6H_6)_2Cr$ , a dark brown solid (Zeiss et al., 1956).



A point of interest in this connection is that benzene forms 
$$\pi$$
-complexes with the silver ion; e.g., crystallisation of silver perchlorate from benzene gives the  $\pi$ -complex (I) (I)

Synthesis of aromatic compounds from aliphatic compounds. Many methods are available for the conversion of aliphatic compounds into aromatic, e.g.,

(i) From acetylenic compounds, e.g., acetylene passed through a red hot tube forms benzene:

$$3C_2H_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_6$$

When methylacetylene or bromoacetylene is treated with a small amount of concentrated sulphuric acid, the s-trisubstituted benzene derivative is formed:

$$_{3\text{CH}_{3}\text{-C:CH}} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_{2}\text{SO}_{4}} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_{3}} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_{3}}$$

(ii) When acetone is distilled with sulphuric acid, mesitylene is formed (p. 170). Similarly, butanone forms s-triethylbenzene (and other products).

(iii) When carbon monoxide is passed over heated potassium, the potassium salt of hexahydroxybenzene is formed:

$$6CO + 6K \longrightarrow C_6(OK)_6$$

(iv) Phloroglucinol (s-trihydroxybenzene) may be prepared from sodiomalonic ester as follows:

$$3[CH(CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5})_{2}]-Na^{+} \xrightarrow{heat} C_{2}H_{5}O_{2}C-HC \xrightarrow{CO} CH \cdot CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5} \xrightarrow{hydrolysis}$$

$$CO \xrightarrow{CH} CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5}$$

(v) cycloHexane derivatives (prepared by the Diels-Alder reaction, p. 472) can be dehydrogenated to give aromatic compounds. Dehydrogenation may be carried out by heating the compound with sulphur, selenium, or a palladium-charcoal catalyst:

$$\bigcirc + 3Se \xrightarrow{300-320^{\circ}} | \bigcirc + 3H_2Se$$

(vi) By means of hydroforming, and high-temperature cracking (p. 500).

Conversion of aromatic compounds into aliphatic compounds. Many methods are available for the conversion of aromatic compounds into aliphatic, but care must be exercised, since opening of the ring often results in its complete breakdown.

(i) By ozonolysis, e.g., o-xylene (see p. 505).

(ii) When phenol is carefully oxidised, mesotartaric is formed (p. 421).

(iii) When benzene is oxidised by air in the presence of vanadium pentoxide as catalyst, maleic anhydride is formed. On the other hand, oxidation of benzene with hydrogen peroxide in t.-butanol in the presence of a little osmium tetroxide gives allomucic, mesotartaric and oxalic acids (p. 421).

(iv) When phenol is oxidised with peracetic acid, muconic acid is formed

(p. 431).

(v) Phenol may be reduced to cyclohexanol, which, on oxidation with con-

centrated nitric acid, gives adipic acid (p. 378).

(vi) A curious example of the opening of the benzene ring is the reduction of salicylic acid to give pimelic acid (see p. 683).

#### QUESTIONS

1. How are the following compounds prepared commercially:—(a) C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>6</sub>, (b) PhMe, (c) PhEt, (d) PhCH=CH2?

2. Write out the structures and names of the isomers of each of the following formulæ: (a)  $C_6H_4Cl_2$ , (b)  $C_6H_4ClBr$ , (c)  $C_8H_3(NO_2)_3$ , (d)  $C_6H_3Cl_2(NO_2)$ , (e)  $C_7H_6Cl(NH_2)$ .

Write an account of the methods of orientation.
 Discuss the structure of benzene.

5. Write an essay on aromatic substitution.

5. Write an essay on aromatic substitution.
6. Starting with benzene and any other chemical you like, show how you would synthesise:—(a) PhMe, (b) PhEt, (c) p-C<sub>5</sub>H<sub>4</sub>Me<sub>2</sub>, (d) m-C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>Et<sub>2</sub>, (e) Ph·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>3</sub>.
(f) Ph·CH<sub>2</sub>·CN, (g) Ph·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, (h) Ph·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·OH, (i) Ph·CHBr·CH<sub>3</sub>, (j) Ph·CMe<sub>3</sub>, (k) p-MeC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, (l) Ph·CH=CH<sub>2</sub>, (m) Ph·CiCH, (n) PhLi, (o) PhHgOAc, (p)

7. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they may be obtained when each of the following compounds is oxidised:

$$(a) \qquad Me \qquad Me \qquad (b) \qquad Me \qquad (c) \qquad Me \qquad (d) \qquad Me$$

$$(a) \qquad Me \qquad (b) \qquad Me \qquad (c) \qquad Me \qquad (d) \qquad Me$$

$$(b) \qquad Me \qquad (d) \qquad Me \qquad Me$$

$$(e) \qquad Me \qquad (g) \qquad Me \qquad (h) \qquad Me$$

8. Define and give examples of:—(a) the Friedel-Crafts reaction, (b) the Wurtz-Fittig reaction, (c) Chloromethylation, (d) Mercuration, (e) Metalation.

 Describe a number of methods whereby aliphatics may be converted into aromatics, and vice versa.

10. Discuss methods that have been used for studying organic reactions.

II. Write an essay on the problem of the ortho-para ratio.

12. Give an account of hyperconjugation.
13. Discuss the problem of "aromatic character."

#### READING REFERENCES

Newell, Faraday's Discovery of Benzene, J. Chem. Educ., 1926, 3, 1248.

Schorlemmer, Rise and Development of Organic Chemistry, Macmillan (1894). Ch. IX, The Structure of Benzene.

Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1942, 2nd ed.). Vol. I, Ch. 3, Aromatic Character.

Brown, Charge-transfer Complexes and the Mechanism of Aromatic Substitution, J.C.S., 1959, 2224, 2232.

Ginsberg (Ed.), Non-benzenoid Aromatic Compounds, Interscience publishers (1959).

Theoretical Organic Chemistry: The Kekulé Symposium, Butterworths (1959). Johnson, Aromatic Character, J. Roy. Inst. Chem., 1960, 90. Peters, The Structure of Aromatic Systems, J.C.S., 1960, 1274.

Elvidge and Jackman, Studies of Aromaticity by Nuclear Magnetic Resonance, J.C.S., 1961, 859.

Thomas, Anhydrous Aluminium Chloride in Organic Chemistry, Reinhold Publishing Co.

Organic Reactions, Wiley. (i) Vol. I (1942), Ch. 3, Chloromethylation of Aromatic Compounds. (ii) Vol. III (1946), Ch. 1, The Alkylation of Aromatic Compounds by the Friedel-Crafts Method.

Kobe and Doumani, Aromatic Mercuration, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1941, 33, 170. Badger, The Aromatic Bond, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1951, 5, 147. Brown, Molecular Orbitals and Organic Reactions, ibid., 1952, 6, 63.

Nelson, Directive Effects in Electrophilic Aromatic Substitution, J. Org. Chem., 1956, 21, 145.

Bunnett, Mechanism and Reactivity in Aromatic Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1958, 12, 1.
Williams, Homolytic Aromatic Substitution, Pergamon Press (1960).

Baker, Structural Representation of Aromatic Compounds, Proc. Chem. Soc., 1959, 75. Baker, Hyperconjugation, Oxford Press (1952).

Newman (Ed.), Steric Effects in Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1956), Ch. 3. Steric Effects in Aromatic Substitution.

Badger, The Structures and Reactions of Aromatic Compounds, Cambridge Press (1954). Baddeley, Modern Aspects of the Friedel-Crafts Reaction, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.). 1954, 8, 355.

Gore, The Friedel-Crafts Acylation Reaction, Chem. Reviews, 1955, 55, 229.

Green, Some Applications of Valence-bond Theory to Aromatic Substitution, J.C.S., 1954, 3538.

de la Mare and Harvey, The Kinetics and Mechanisms of Aromatic Halogen Substitution, ibid., 1956, 36. Brown, et al., Mechanism of the Alkylation Reaction, J. Amer. Chem. Soc., 1956, 78, 2185.

Zeiss (Ed.), Organometallic Chemistry, Reinhold (1960). Ch. 8. Arene Complexes of the Transition Metals.

#### CHAPTER XXI

### AROMATIC HALOGEN COMPOUNDS

THERE are three types of aromatic halogen compounds, the addition compounds, the nuclear substitution products, and the side-chain substitution products.

Addition compounds. When treated with chlorine or bromine in the presence of sunlight, benzene forms the benzene hexahalides, C, H, Cl, and C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>6</sub>Br<sub>6</sub>, respectively. The addition probably takes place by a chain mechanism:

Benzene hexachloride (1:2:3:4:5:6-hexachlorocyclohexane),  $C_6H_6Cl_6$ , theoretically can exist in eight stereoisomeric forms (cf. inositol, p. 483). Until recently only five of these were known:  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ ,  $\gamma$ ,  $\delta$ ,  $\varepsilon$ ; but Kolka et al. (1954) have now prepared two others,  $\eta$  and  $\theta$ . The  $\gamma$ -isomer is a powerful insecticide; it is very stable and acts more quickly than D.D.T. All of the isomers have been shown to exist in the chair form, and the  $\gamma$ -isomer has been identified so the shown to exist in the chair form, and the  $\alpha$ -isomer has been identified as the  $(\pm)$ -form (Cristol, 1949). The following conformations have been assigned respectively to the  $\alpha$ - and  $\gamma$ -isomers: aaeeee and aaaeee.  $\gamma$ -Hexachlorocyclohexane is prepared commercially by treating benzene with chlorine in the presence of ultra-violet light. The  $\alpha$ -,  $\beta$ -,  $\gamma$ - and  $\delta$ -isomers are produced, the  $\gamma$ - to the extent of 12-14 per cent. This is the only one that has insenticidal propositions the extent of 12-14 per cent.; this is the only one that has insecticidal properties. It is very difficult to separate the isomers, but it may be done by fractional crystallisation from various organic solvents.

Mullins (1955) has suggested that molecular size and shape are critical for the action of chlorinated hydrocarbon insecticides. According to Mullins, the molecule of  $\gamma$ -BHC is smaller than those of the other stereoisomers and so can

penetrate more readily.

Nuclear substitution products (aryl halides). These compounds may be

prepared by the following methods:

I. Direct halogenation. Low temperature and the presence of a halogen carrier favour nuclear substitution. Chlorination and bromination may be very conveniently carried out at ordinary temperature in the presence of an iron or aluminium amalgam catalyst; the extent of the substitution depends on the amount of halogen used, e.g., chlorobenzene is formed when benzene is treated with chlorine (I molecule) in the presence of iron:

$$C_6H_6 + Cl_2 \xrightarrow{Fe} C_6H_5Cl + HCl \quad (90\%)$$

If 2 molecules of chlorine are used, then a mixture of o- and p-dichlorobenzenes is obtained, the latter predominating:

$$C_6H_5Cl + Cl_2 \xrightarrow{Fe} C_6H_4Cl_2 + HCl_{o-+p-}$$

When toluene is brominated in the presence of iron (using I molecule of bromine), a mixture of o- and p-bromotoluenes (tolyl bromides) is obtained:

$$C_6H_5$$
· $CH_3 + Br_2 \xrightarrow{Fe} CH_3$ · $C_6H_4Br + HBr$ 
 $o - + p -$ 

To obtain the o-, m- and p-toluene derivatives pure, it is best to prepare them from the corresponding toluidines (cf. method 3).

A possible mechanism for the chlorination of benzene in the presence of ferric chloride is:

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{Cl}_2 + \operatorname{FeCl}_3 \Longrightarrow \operatorname{Cl}^+ + \operatorname{FeCl}_4^- \\ & \begin{array}{c} \operatorname{Cl} \\ \end{array} + \operatorname{Cl}^+ \Longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \operatorname{Cl} \\ \end{array} + \operatorname{H}^+ + \operatorname{FeCl}_4^- \longrightarrow \operatorname{HCl} + \operatorname{FeCl}_3 \end{array}$$

Nuclear chlorination can be carried out with sulphuryl chloride in the presence of a catalyst, a most effective one being a mixture of sulphur monochloride and aluminium chloride; e.g., sulphuryl chloride in the presence of 1 per cent. of this catalyst chlorinates benzene in the cold. Toluene can be similarly chlorinated, and the side-chain is not attacked in the absence of organic peroxides. Chlorination with sulphuryl chloride is stepwise, and the final product depends on the amount of this reagent used:

2. Treatment of nuclear hydroxy-compounds with phosphorus pentachloride results in the formation of nuclear-chlorinated compounds:

$$C_6H_5OH + PCl_5 \longrightarrow C_6H_5Cl + POCl_3 + HCl$$

The yield of chlorobenzene, however, is poor, the main product being

triphenyl phosphate, (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>O)<sub>3</sub>PO.

Rydon et al. (1957), however, have shown that aryl chlorides may be prepared from phenols as follows:

$$3\text{ArOH} + \text{PCl}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} 3\text{HCl} + (\text{ArO})_3\text{PCl}_2 \xrightarrow{\text{Ar'OH}} \\ \text{HCl} + (\text{ArO})_3(\text{Ar'O})\text{PCl} \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} \text{Ar'X} + (\text{ArO}_3)\text{PO}$$

In these reactions Ar' contains a more powerful electron-attracting group than does Ar, e.g., when Ar =  $C_6H_5$  and Ar' = p-NO<sub>2</sub>· $C_6H_4$ —, the product is p-NO2. C6H4Cl (91%).

Bromides and iodides may also be prepared as follows:

$$(ArO)_3(Ar'O)PCl + RX \xrightarrow{heat} RCl + (ArO)_3(Ar'O)PX \xrightarrow{heat} Ar'X + (ArO)_3PO$$

3. The decomposition of diazonium salts under suitable conditions is generally the most satisfactory method of preparing nuclear derivatives (see p. 585); e.g., benzenediazonium chloride, in the presence of cuprous chloride, produces chlorobenzene:

$$C_6H_5\cdot N_2Cl \xrightarrow{CuCl} C_6H_5Cl + N_2$$

4. The silver salts of many aromatic acids react with bromine to form aryl bromides (cf. p. 105), e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5\cdot CO_2Ag+Br_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5Br+CO_2+AgBr \quad (53\%) \\ p\text{-NO}_2\cdot C_6H_4\cdot CO_2Ag+Br_2 \longrightarrow p\text{-NO}_2\cdot C_6H_4Br+CO_2+AgBr} \quad (79\%) \end{array}$$

**Iodine compounds.** Iodination is reversible, very little iodo-compound being present in the equilibrium mixture:

$$C_6H_6 + I_2 \rightleftharpoons C_6H_5I + HI$$

If, however, the iodination is carried out in the presence of an oxidising agent, e.g., nitric acid, mercuric oxide, etc., the yield of iodo-compound is usually very good:

$$2C_6H_6 + I_2 \xrightarrow{[O]} 2C_6H_5I + H_2O \quad (86-87\%)$$

Iodine compounds are generally most conveniently prepared via the diazonium salts (method 3), but if an activating group (hydroxyl or amino-) is present in the ring, then iodine monochloride, or even iodine without the

presence of an oxidising agent, may be used (see aniline, p. 569).

Fluorine compounds. Fluorination of benzene in the vapour phase in the presence of a metallic catalyst results in the formation of no aromatic fluorine products; instead, a complex mixture of aliphatic and alicyclic fluoro-compounds is obtained:  $CF_4$ ,  $C_2F_6$ ,  $C_3F_8$ ,  $C_4F_{10}$ ,  $C_5F_{12}$ ,  $C_6F_{12}$  (in greatest amount),  $C_6HF_{11}$ ,  $C_{12}F_{22}$  (Bigelow et al.).

Perfluorobenzene, C<sub>6</sub>F<sub>6</sub>, may be prepared by treating perchlorobenzene with bromine trifluoride (other products are also obtained):

$$C_6Cl_6 \xrightarrow{BrF_8} C_6F_6$$

If, however, perchlorobenzene is treated with antimony pentafluoride, not all the chlorine atoms are replaced, and an *alicyclic* compound results:

This compound, when oxidised with permanganate, yields octafluoroadipic acid.

Fluorinated aromatic compounds are always prepared indirectly, the most convenient method of introducing a fluorine atom into the ring being via the diazonium salt (see p. 586).

General properties of the nuclear halogen derivatives. Nuclear halogen derivatives are colourless oils or crystalline solids, insoluble in water but soluble in organic solvents; their densities are all greater than I. The halogen atom is firmly attached to the nucleus, and is not easily displaced by OH(NaOH), NH<sub>2</sub>(NH<sub>3</sub>), CN(KCN), etc. The aryl halides thus differ very much from the alkyl halides, but resemble the vinyl halides (p. 266). Under

special conditions, however, the halogen atom in the aryl halides may be

replaced:

(i) If an aryl halide is heated with aqueous sodium hydroxide under pressure at 300°, the halogen atom is replaced by hydroxyl:

$$C_6H_5Cl + NaOH \longrightarrow C_6H_5OH + NaCl$$

Phenol is also produced when chlorobenzene and steam are passed over a silica-gel catalyst at 500° (Chiba, 1953).

(ii) When an aryl chloride is heated with aqueous ammonia in the presence of cuprous oxide at 200° under pressure, the amino-compound is formed:

$$2C_6H_5Cl + 2NH_3 + Cu_2O \longrightarrow 2C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + 2CuCl + H_2O$$
 (90%)

Chlorobenzene also reacts with potassamide in liquid ammonia at low temperatures to form aniline. Roberts et al. (1953), using the isotope 14C to label the carbon of the C-Cl group, showed that the amino-group entered partly at the labelled carbon and partly at the ortho-carbon. This behaviour has been explained by postulating a benzyne intermediate.

Bunnett and Zahler (1951) have proposed the name cine-substitution for reactions of this kind, i.e., for the formation of (II) where nucleophilic aromatic substitution occurs in which the ring position taken up by the entering group is not the same as that of the displaced group.

Evidence for the benzyne mechanism (elimination-addition mechanism) has been provided by Roberts et al. (1953-56):

(a) The entering amino group is never further than the ο-position from the

ejected halogen atom.

(b) o-Deuterochlorobenzene reacts more slowly than the protium analogue. Thus there is a kinetic isotope effect, and from this it follows that the formation

of benzyne is the rate-determining step.

(c) If only one benzyne intermediate is possible, then the ratio of the isomeric amines produced should be independent of the nature of the halogen atom, since the formation of benzyne is the rate-determining step and not its combination with ammonia (or amines). This has been shown to be so in practice, e.g., ohalotoluenes gave the same mixtures of o- and m-amines with potassamide.

(iii) An aryl bromide reacts with anhydrous cuprous cyanide when heated in the presence of pyridine or quinoline, e.g., bromobenzene forms phenyl cyanide:

$$C_6H_5Br + CuCN \xrightarrow{pyridine} C_6H_5 \cdot CN + CuBr$$

Pyridine or quinoline is not always necessary, and sodium cyanide may be used instead of cuprous cyanide provided a small amount of the latter is also present. Aryl chlorides may be used if the chlorine atom is activated by a nitro-group in the o- or p-position (see below).

(iv) If a strongly negative group, e.g., the nitro-group is in the o- or pposition to the halogen atom, replacement of the latter halogen atom is fairly easy, e.g., o- and p-chloronitrobenzenes may be converted, at about 150-200°, by ethanolic potassium hydroxide, and ethanolic ammonia into the corresponding nitrophenols and nitroanilines. These are examples of

activated nucleophilic aromatic substitution (p. 525).

A very interesting reaction of the halogenonitro-benzenes is the von Richter reaction (1871). In this reaction, when the compound is heated with potassium cyanide at 150°, the nitro-group is expelled and a cyano group enters the ring ortho to the position occupied by the former (this is an example of cine-substitution), e.g.,

$$Br$$
 $NO_2 \xrightarrow{KCN} Br$ 
 $CN;$ 
 $NO_2 \xrightarrow{KCN} CN$ 
 $C_4H_4OH$ 
 $CN$ 

The mechanism of this reaction is uncertain. Most cine-substitutions involve a benzyne intermediate; the von Richter reaction, however, according to Bunnett et al. (1956), does not.

(v) An aryl halide may be converted into the parent hydrocarbon by reducing it with a nickel-aluminium alloy in the presence of alkali (Schwenk et al., 1944):

 $C_6H_5Cl + 2[H] \xrightarrow{Ni/Al} C_6H_6 + HCl$ 

This dehalogenation may also be carried out by means of reduction with hydrogen over Raney nickel in the presence of potassium hydroxide (Käm-

merer et al., 1958).

Aryl bromides and aryl iodides form Grignard reagents, and undergo the Ullmann reaction (p. 576). The aryl chlorides, however, form Grignard reagents in tetrahydrofuran (Ramsden et al., 1958). The aryl halides do not react with sodioacetoacetic ester or with sodiomalonic ester, but they undergo the Wurtz-Fittig (p. 534) and Fittig reactions (p. 697). Ketones, however, may be directly phenylated with bromobenzene as follows, the reaction proceeding via a benzyne intermediate (Leake et al., 1955):

$$\begin{array}{c|c} & & & & \\ & & & \\ \hline & & \\$$

As will be seen later, side-chain substituted halogen derivatives behave like the alkyl halides in most ways and therefore are better not to be regarded as

aryl halides but as aryl-substituted alkyl halides.

The aryl halides are difficult to mercurate, but they may be mercurated by refluxing them with mercuric acetate until a test portion gives no precipitate of mercuric oxide with aqueous sodium hydroxide. On the other hand, chloromercuri-derivatives may be prepared from aryl bromides or iodides as follows:

$$ArBr + Mg \longrightarrow Ar \cdot MgBr \xrightarrow{HgCl_{\bullet}} Ar \cdot HgCl + MgClBr$$

Chlorobenzene (phenyl chloride), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>Cl, is produced commercially by the Raschig process: a mixture of benzene vapour, air and hydrogen chloride is passed over a catalyst (copper chloride):

$$C_6H_6 + HCl + \frac{1}{2}O_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5Cl + H_2O$$

Chlorobenzene is a liquid, b.p. 132°. It is used for the manufacture of aniline, phenol, and D.D.T. D.D.T. is a contraction for p:p'-dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane [1:1:1-trichloro-2:2-bis(p-chlorophenyl)-ethane]. It is a solid, m.p. 109–110°, and is manufactured by heating chlorobenzene and chloral with concentrated sulphuric acid:

$$_{2C_{6}H_{5}Cl} + _{CCl_{3}\cdot CHO} \xrightarrow{H_{4}SO_{4}} _{CCl_{3}\cdot CH} \xrightarrow{Cl} _{CCl}$$

Good commercial D.D.T. contains about 75 per cent. p:p'-D.D.T., 20 per cent. o:p'-D.D.T. (m.p. 74-75°), and 5 per cent. of other substances as impurities; it is a powerful insecticide.

Side-chain substituted compounds. Side-chain substitution is favoured by high temperature and light, and the *absence* of halogen carriers; *e.g.*, when chlorinated at its boiling point in the presence of light, toluene is converted into benzyl chloride (see also below):

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CH_3 + Cl_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2Cl + HCl$$

It is generally believed that side-chain substitution proceeds by a chain reaction (cf. p. 103):

Side-chain substitution may be readily effected by sulphuryl chloride in the presence of organic peroxides. Excess of sulphuryl chloride will introduce no more than two chlorine atoms on the same carbon atom; e.g., toluene gives benzylidene chloride as the final product:

$$C_8H_5\text{-}CH_3 \xrightarrow{SO_9Cl_9} C_8H_5\text{-}CH_2Cl \xrightarrow{SO_9Cl_9} C_8H_5\text{-}CHCl_2$$

In these reactions it is believed that the peroxide provides traces of free radicals which then set up the chain reaction.

When the side-chain is larger than a methyl group, its halogenation is more complicated, e.g., chlorination of ethylbenzene at its boiling point in the presence of light first produces a mixture of  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -chloroethylbenzenes, and finally pentachloroethylbenzene:

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm C_6H_5 \text{-}CH_2 \text{-}CH_3} \xrightarrow{{\rm Cl_3}} {\rm C_6H_5 \text{-}CHCl \text{-}CH_3} + {\rm C_6H_5 \text{-}CH_2 \text{-}CH_2 \text{-}Cl} \xrightarrow{{\rm Cl_3}} {\rm C_6H_5 \text{-}CCl_2 \text{-}CCl_3} \\ \alpha\text{-isomer} & \beta\text{-isomer} \end{array}$$

The monochloro-derivatives can be isolated (using I molecule of chlorine), but it is extremely difficult to isolate any of the other intermediates (when chlorine is used in excess). If, however, chlorination is carried out in the cold and in the presence of light, then the main product of substitution is the  $\alpha$ -isomer:

$$C_6H_5\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH_3\xrightarrow{Cl_2} C_6H_5\text{-}CHCl\text{-}CH_3\xrightarrow{Cl_2} C_6H_5\text{-}CCl_2\text{-}CH_3$$

If two side-chains are present, both may be halogenated, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{CH_3^{\bullet}C_6H_4^{\bullet}CH_3} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{Cl_2}} \operatorname{CH_3^{\bullet}C_6H_4^{\bullet}CH_2Cl} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{Cl_2}} \\ \text{methylbenzyl chloride} \end{array}$$

 $\begin{array}{c} \operatorname{CH_2Cl}\text{-}\operatorname{C}_6\operatorname{H}_4\text{-}\operatorname{CH}_2\operatorname{Cl} & \xrightarrow{\operatorname{Cl}_2} & \operatorname{C}_6\operatorname{H}_4(\operatorname{CCl}_3)_2 \\ \text{xylylene chloride} & \text{bis-(trichloromethyl)-benzene} \end{array}$ 

A curious feature of this reaction is that the fully chlorinated product cannot be obtained with o-xylene, but can with the m- and p-isomers. The explanation may be the steric effect.

When a hydroxyl or an amino-group (activating groups) is present in the ring, side-chain halogenation is very difficult, if not impossible; e.g., bromination of p-cresol gives 2:6-dibromo-p-cresol:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_3 & CH_3 \\ \hline \\ OH & OH \end{array}$$

Introduction of fluorine into the side-chain may be carried out by heating the corresponding chloro-derivative with hydrogen fluoride under pressure, or with antimony pentafluoride; e.g., trifluoromethylbenzene (benzotrifluoride) from benzotrichloride and antimony pentafluoride:

$$\mathsf{C_6H_5\text{-}CH_3} \xrightarrow{-\mathsf{Cl_2}} \mathsf{C_6H_5\text{-}CCl_3} \xrightarrow{-\mathsf{SbF_5}} \mathsf{C_6H_5\text{-}CF_3}$$

The trifluoromethyl group is very resistant to attack, e.g., oxidation of trifluoromethylbenzene results in the formation of trifluoroacetic acid:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CF_3 \xrightarrow{[O]} CF_3 \cdot CO_2H$$

Benzyl chloride, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>Cl, may be prepared by passing chlorine into boiling toluene until the theoretical increase in weight for benzyl chloride is obtained:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CH_3 + Cl_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2Cl + HCl$$
 (60%)

Benzyl chloride may also be prepared by the chloromethylation of benzene. Benzyl chloride is a liquid, b.p. 179°, and chemically it behaves like an alkyl halide, e.g., when heated with aqueous alkali, aqueous potassium cyanide, or ethanolic ammonia, it is converted into benzyl alcohol.  $C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot CH$ , benzyl cyanide,  $C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot CH$ , and benzylamine,  $C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot NH_2$ , respectively. Actually, the chlorine atom in benzyl chloride is more reactive than in methyl chloride. One suggestion that has been put forward to account for this is hyperconjugation:

This shows that the chlorine is largely ionised, but does not account for the fact that the —CH<sub>2</sub>Cl group is mainly o-p-orienting and not m- (cf. p. 521).

From the M.O. point of view, ionisation of the chlorine atom would leave the carbon atom with a positive charge. The "closed circuit" of the benzene ring can now extend itself to cover this carbon atom.

i.e., the resulting positive ion is stabilised by delocalisation (Fig. 1). It is this extension of conjugation that acts as the "driving force" in the ionisation of the chlorine atom. Conjugation is not possible in alkyl halides.

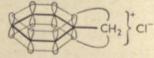


FIG. 21.1.

Benzylidene chloride (benzal chloride), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CHCl<sub>2</sub>, may be prepared by passing chlorine into boiling toluene in the presence of light until the weight increase corresponds to C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CHCl<sub>2</sub>:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CH_3 + 2Cl_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CHCl_2 + 2HCl$$
 (g.)

It may also be prepared by the action of phosphorus pentachloride on benzaldehyde:

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHO +  $PCl_5 \longrightarrow C_6H_5$ ·CHCl<sub>2</sub> +  $POCl_3$ 

Benzylidene chloride is a liquid, b.p. 207°; it is hydrolysed by calcium hydroxide solution to benzaldehyde, and is used industrially for this purpose.

$$C_6H_5\cdot CHCl_2 + Ca(OH)_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CHO + CaCl_2 + H_2O$$

The conversion of toluene into benzaldehyde via benzylidene chloride is an example of *indirect* oxidation.

Benzotrichloride, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CCl<sub>8</sub>, may be prepared by the continued action of chlorine on boiling toluene in the presence of light:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CH_3 + 3Cl_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CCl_3 + 3HCl$$

It is a liquid, b.p. 214°. When heated with calcium hydroxide solution, it is converted into benzoic acid: it is used industrially for this purpose. This is another example of indirect oxidation:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CCl_3 + 2H_2O \xrightarrow{Ca(OH)_3} C_6H_5 \cdot CO_2H + 3HCl_3$$

It can be seen from the foregoing that the properties of the side-chain halogen derivatives are very much different from those of the nuclear halogen derivatives. The former closely resemble the alkyl halides but, in general, possess a pungent smell and are lachrymatory (provided the halogen atom is on the  $\alpha$ -carbon); they have been used in warfare.

Polyvalent iodine compounds. When a well-cooled chloroform solution of iodobenzene is treated with chlorine, a precipitate of iodosobenzene dichloride (phenyliodochloride) is formed:

$$C_6H_5I + Cl_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot ICl_2 \quad (87-94\%)$$

This is a yellow crystalline solid: its structure is uncertain. When exposed to light or heated to 110°, it is converted into p-chloroiodobenzene:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot ICl_2 \longrightarrow p\text{-}Cl \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot I + HCl$$

When treated with alkali, iodosobenzene dichloride is converted into iodosobenzene,  $C_6H_5I\rightarrow O$ :

$$C_6H_5 \cdot ICl_2 + 2NaOH \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot IO + 2NaCl + H_2O$$
 (60-62%)

Iodosobenzene is a yellow solid which is basic, e.g., with hydrochloric acid it forms iodosobenzene dichloride, and with nitric acid, iodosobenzene dinitrate:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot IO + 2HNO_3 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot I(NO_3)_2 + H_2O$$

Iodosobenzene has been used to oxidise sulphides to sulphoxides (Ford-Moore, 1949), and iodosobenzene diacetate oxidises primary aromatic amines to azocompounds (Pausacker, 1953).

When steam distilled, iodosobenzene is converted into iodoxybenzene:

$${}_{2}C_{6}H_{5}\cdot IO \longrightarrow C_{6}H_{5}\cdot IO_{2} + C_{6}H_{5}I$$
 (92-95%)

This is also obtained when iodosobenzene dichloride is treated with an alkaline solution of sodium hypochlorite:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot ICl_2 + NaOCl + H_2O \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot IO_2 + NaCl + 2HCl (87-92\%)$$

Iodoxybenzene is a solid which does not melt or vaporise when heated to 230°; all iodoxy-compounds exhibit this refractory property. The structure of iodoxy-

benzene is not known with certainty; it may be C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>—I

inorganic acids, e.g., C6H5·IO2·H2SO4, but although these salts are fairly stable in the solid state, they are readily hydrolysed in solution. Iodoxybenzene also forms salts with alkalis, but these have not yet been isolated.

When a mixture of iodoso- and iodoxybenzene is treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide, diphenyliodonium iodate is formed, and this, on treatment with

potassium iodide, forms diphenyliodonium iodide:

$$C_{6}H_{5}\cdot IO + C_{6}H_{5}\cdot IO_{2} \xrightarrow{NaOH} [(C_{6}H_{5})_{2}I]^{+}IO_{3}^{-} \xrightarrow{KI} [(C_{6}H_{5})_{2}I]^{+}I^{-} \quad (70-72\%)$$

Diphenyliodonium iodide readily changes to iodobenzene on heating; the mechanism of this reaction is obscure. Diphenyliodonium iodide is the salt of the base diphenyliodonium hydroxide which may be prepared, in solution, by the action of "silver hydroxide" on a mixture of iodoso- and iodoxybenzene:

$$C_6H_5\cdot IO + C_6H_5\cdot IO_2 + \text{"AgOH"} \longrightarrow [(C_6H_5)_2I]^+OH^- + AgIO_3$$

#### QUESTIONS

r. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when each of the following compounds is treated with chlorine: (a) C,H, (b) PhMe, (c) o-C6H4Me2, (d) PhEt, (e) p-Me·C6H4·Et.

2. Discuss the general methods of preparing:—(a) nuclear halogen derivatives, (b) side-chain halogen derivatives, and write an account of the general properties of these

two types of halogen compounds.

3. Starting with benzene and any other compound you like, how would you prepare:—
(a) PhCl, (b) PhI, (c) D.D.T., (d) PhCH<sub>2</sub>Br, (e) PhCHMeCO<sub>2</sub>H, (f) PhCH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·NH<sub>2</sub>, (g) o-C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>4</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>Br)<sub>2</sub>, (h) 2:4:6-tribromophenol, (i) p-nitrophenol, (j) PhCH<sub>2</sub>F, (k) PhCHO, (l) PhCO<sub>2</sub>H?

4. Discuss the use of sulphuryl chloride as a chlorinating agent.

5. Write an account of the aromatic polyvalent iodine compounds.
6. How would you distinguish between:—(a) PhCH<sub>2</sub>Cl and p-MeC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>Cl; (b) PhCOCl and p-ClC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H?
7. Write an account of cine-substitution.

#### READING REFERENCES

Brown, Sulphuryl Chloride in Organic Chemistry, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1944, 36, 785.

Haller, Insecticides, ibid., 1947, 39, 469.
Bigelow, The Action of Fluorine on Organic Compounds, Chem. Reviews, 1947, 40, 51. Fluorine Symposium, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1947, 39, 237.

Masson, Race and Pounder, The Iodoxy-group and its Relations, J.C.S., 1935, 1669. Bunnett and Zahler, Aromatic Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions, Chem. Reviews,

1951, 49, 273. Everard and Sutton, The Polar Effect of the Halogens and Other Groups, J.C.S.,

1951, 2821. Bunnett, Mechanism and Reactivity in Aromatic Nucleophilic Substitution Reactions, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1958, 12, 1.
Bunnett, The Chemistry of Benzyne, J. Chem. Educ., 1961, 38, 278.

de la Mare and Ridd, Aromatic Substitution: Nitration and Halogenation, Butterworths (1959).

#### CHAPTER XXII

# AROMATIC NITRO-COMPOUNDS

Aromatic nitro-compounds are almost invariably prepared by direct nitration, using one of the following reagents:

(i) Concentrated nitric acid, density about 1.5.

(ii) Fuming nitric acid (6-12 per cent. nitrogen dioxide).

(iii) Mixed acid. This is a mixture of nitric acid (concentrated or fuming) and various amounts of concentrated sulphuric acid (sometimes fuming sulphuric acid is used). Mixed acid is by far the most important nitrating agent. Occasionally other acids besides sulphuric acid are used, e.g., glacial acetic acid.

Boron trifluoride is a very effective catalyst for nitration (Thomas et al.,

1940). One equivalent of catalyst must be used:

The yields are better and the products purer than by the above methods. Furthermore, boron trifluoride is particularly useful for nitrating compounds containing a negative group, e.g.,

$$C_6H_5 \cdot NO_2 + HNO_3 \xrightarrow{BF_3} m - C_6H_4(NO_2)_2$$
 (87%)

Oláh et al. (1956) have shown that nitronium tetrafluoroborate (a stable compound) is a useful nitrating agent.

$$ArH + (NO_2^+)(BF_4^-) \longrightarrow Ar \cdot NO_2 + HF + BF_3 \quad (g.-ex.)$$

This method of nitration gives direct preparative proof of the electrophilic

character of nitration through the nitronium cation (see below).

(iv) Acetyl nitrate, CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·O·NO<sub>2</sub>, is useful as a nitrating agent in certain cases, since it introduces a nitro-group into the o-position, and produces almost only the mononitro-derivative. Acetyl nitrate, however, is somewhat dangerous to use, since it tends to explode when heated.

The nitrating agent used depends on the nature of the compound to be nitrated and the object in view, *i.e.*, the introduction of one or more nitrogroups. In any case, whichever reagent is used, it is usually difficult to stop the nitration process at one nitro-group (except with acetyl nitrate).

As an outcome of a great deal of experimental work, it has been shown that nitration with mixed acid, i.e., nitration in sulphuric acid, is due to some substance produced from the nitric acid and not the nitric acid itself. According to Bennett et al. and Ingold et al. (1946), the active nitrating agent is the nitronium cation, NO<sub>2</sub>+, which, they believe, is formed as follows:

$$\mathrm{HNO_3} + 2\mathrm{H_2SO_4} \Longrightarrow \mathrm{NO_2}^+ + \mathrm{H_3O^+} + 2\mathrm{HSO_4}^-$$

The evidence for the existence of the nitronium cation is shown:

(i) By electrolysis experiments, e.g., it has been found that nitric acid in oleum migrates to the cathode.

(ii) By cryoscopic experiments in which it has been shown that i (the van't Hoff factor) is 4; this value satisfies the equation given above.

(iii) By the isolation of salts of the nitronium ion, e.g., nitronium perchlorate, (NO<sub>2</sub>+)(ClO<sub>4</sub>-), and nitronium tetrafluoroborate, (NO<sub>2</sub>+)(BF<sub>4</sub>-) [see (iii) above].

(iv) By spectroscopic analysis (which has shown the existence of

the nitronium ion).

Nitration (with mixed acid) thus possibly proceeds as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \\ \end{array} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \end{array} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \end{array} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \end{array} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c}$$

Nitration in concentrated aqueous nitric acid and in organic solvents is also believed to be via the nitronium ion:

$$_2HNO_3 \rightleftharpoons NO_2^+ + H_2O + NO_3^-$$

On the other hand, in more dilute nitric acid solutions, it is probably the nitracidium cation that is involved in nitration:

The catalytic effect of boron trifluoride is believed to be due to the formation of the nitronium ion:

$$HNO_3 + BF_3 \Longrightarrow NO_2^+ + HO - BF_3$$

According to Norman et al. (1960), the active species with acetyl nitrate (and other organic nitrates) is dinitrogen pentoxide.

General properties of the nitro-compounds. Most nitro-compounds are yellow crystalline solids; a few, including nitrobenzene, are yellow liquids. Many are steam-volatile, and except for a few mononitro-derivatives, cannot be distilled under atmospheric pressure because, when strongly heated, they decompose, often with explosive violence. All the nitro-compounds are denser than water, in which they are insoluble; they are, however, readily soluble in organic solvents. The nitro-group is firmly attached to the nucleus and may be replaced only under certain conditions (see later). Nitro-compounds form addition products with many aromatic compounds; their most important reaction is their reduction by various reducing agents.

Nitrobenzene (oil of mirbane), C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>5</sub>\*NO<sub>2</sub>, may be prepared by the action of cold mixed acid on benzene, and then warming to complete the reaction:

$$C_6H_6 + HNO_3 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot NO_2 + H_2O$$
 (85%)

It is a pale yellow oil, b.p. 2II°, with a smell like benzaldehyde. It is almost insoluble in water, but is steam-volatile; its vapour is poisonous. It is used for scenting cheap soaps, in the manufacture of floor polishes, aniline, benzidine and some azo-dyes, etc. It is used as a solvent, and is used occasionally as an oxidising agent in organic chemistry, e.g., in the preparation of quinoline.

When heated with solid potassium hydroxide, nitrobenzene produces a

mixture of o- and p-nitrophenols and some azoxybenzene.

**Dinitrobenzenes.** When nitrobenzene is heated with mixed acid (furning nitric acid and concentrated sulphuric acid), the main product is *m*-dinitrobenzene:

$$NO_2$$
 $+ HNO_3$ 
 $H_2SO_4$ 
 $NO_2$ 
 $NO_2$ 
 $NO_2$ 
 $NO_2$ 
 $NO_2$ 
 $NO_2$ 

Nitric acid alone may be used to introduce one nitro-group; mixed acid must be used to introduce the second nitro-group into nitrobenzene.

m-Dinitrobenzene is a pale yellow solid, m.p. 90°, practically insoluble in water, but is steam-volatile. It may be reduced stepwise by, e.g., sodium sulphide, to m-nitroaniline, and then to m-phenylenediamine:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} NO_2 & NH_2 & NH_2 \\ \hline NO_2 & \stackrel{Na_2S}{\longrightarrow} & NO_2 & \stackrel{Na_2S}{\longrightarrow} & NH_2 \end{array}$$

The hydrogen atom o- or o-p- to two nitro-groups is easily displaced by oxidation, but not by substitution; e.g., m-dinitrobenzene is oxidised by an alkaline solution of potassium ferricyanide to a mixture of 2:4-dinitrophenol (mainly) and 2:6-dinitrophenol (small amount):

$$\begin{array}{c|c} NO_2 & NO_2 & NO_2 \\ \hline NO_2 & \xrightarrow{K_3 Fe(CN)_4} & OH \\ \hline \end{array} \\ OH \\ \end{array}$$

**o-Dinitrobenzene** can be isolated after removing the m-isomer when nitrobenzene is nitrated. Nitration of acetanilide gives a mixture of o- and p-nitroacetanilides:

These isomers are separated; each is deacetylated, and by replacing the amino-group by a nitro-group (see p. 586), the o- and p-dinitrobenzenes may be obtained pure, e.g.,

It is necessary to "protect" compounds with a hydroxyl or amino-group in the ring, since these compounds are very easily oxidised instead of nitrated by nitric acid.

An alternative method for preparing o- and p-dinitrobenzenes is to oxidise the corresponding nitroaniline with Caro's acid, and then to oxidise the product, the nitro-nitroso-derivative, with a mixture of nitric acid and hydrogen peroxide:

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
NH_2 & NO & NO_2 \\
\hline
NO_2 & & NO_2 & \\
\hline
NO_2 & & NO_2
\end{array}$$

On the other hand, peroxytrifluoroacetic acid oxidises the amino-group directly to the nitro-group (Emmons et al., 1953), e.g.,

$$NH_2$$
  $NH_2$   $CF_4 \cdot CO_4H$   $NO_2$   $NO_2$   $NO_2$   $(86\%)$ 

p-Dinitrobenzene may also be prepared by oxidising p-benzoquinone dioxime (p. 672) with nitric acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{NOH} \\ \hline \\ \text{NOH} \\ \hline \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{NO}_2 \\ \hline \\ \text{NO}_2 \\ \end{array}$$

o- and p-Dinitrobenzenes are colourless solids, melting points 118° and 173°, respectively. They resemble the m-isomer in many ways, but differ in the following respects.

(i) When o- and p-dinitrobenzenes are boiled with aqueous sodium hydroxide, one nitro-group is replaced by hydroxyl to give the corresponding

nitrophenol:

$$NO_2$$
 OH  $NO_2$  NaOH  $NO_2$ 

This reaction is used to separate m-dinitrobenzene from its o- and p-isomers in the industrial preparation of m-dinitrobenzene.

(ii) When boiled with ethanolic ammonia, o- and p-dinitrobenzenes are converted into the corresponding nitroanilines, one nitro-group being displaced by an amino-group:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} NO_2 & NH_2 \\ \hline & NO_2 & NO_2 \\ \hline \\ NO_2 & NO_2 \end{array}$$

(iii) When boiled with methanolic sodium methoxide, o- and p-dinitrobenzenes are converted into the corresponding nitroanisoles, one nitrogroup being replaced by a methoxyl group:

$$NO_2$$
  $CH_3ONa$   $OCH_3$   $NO_2$   $NO_2$ 

These nucleophilic substitutions are characteristic of polynitro-compounds in which two nitro-groups are in the o- or p-positions, one nitro-group being

replaced by a hydroxyl, amino-, or methoxyl group.

s-Trinitrobenzene may be prepared by the nitration of m-dinitrobenzene with mixed acid consisting of fuming nitric acid and fuming sulphuric acid. This reaction takes five days to complete; it is very difficult to introduce the third nitro-group, and it is impossible to introduce more than three nitro-groups by direct nitration. A better method of preparing s-trinitrobenzene is to oxidise 2:4:6-trinitrotoluene, and to decarboxylate the trinitrobenzoic acid so produced by heating it in acetic acid solution:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_3 & CO_2H \\ NO_2 & NO_2 & NO_2 \\ \hline NO_2 & NO_2 & NO_2 \\ \hline NO_2 & NO_2 & NO_2 \\ \end{array}$$

It may also be prepared by the removal of the chlorine atom in picryl chloride by means of hydrogen iodide generated from sodium iodide and acetic acid in acetone solution (Blatt et al., 1952):

s-Trinitrobenzene is a colourless solid, m.p. 122°. It forms well-defined addition compounds with many aromatic compounds such as hydrocarbons, phenols, etc. Many polynitro compounds form these complexes, and the forces that hold the two components together have been the subject of much discussion. It has been suggested that these complexes are charge-transfer complexes, the closed aromatic sextet of the nitro-compound forming a π-complex with the other component. The stabilisation of the complex depends on the overlap between the highest filled M.O. of the donor molecule and the lowest unfilled M.O. of the acceptor molecule (Mulliken, 1952). However, there are also complexes which are held together by dipole-dipole interactions, van der Waals forces, etc. The term "polarisation bonding" (first used by McKeown et al., 1951) has been used by Mulliken (1952) to include both charge-transfer bonding and the weaker polar interactions. Wallwork (1961), from his X-ray analysis work, has concluded that: (a) polarisation bonding in complexes between aromatic molecules results in a characteristic plane-to-plane structure in the crystal lattice, and (b) where charge-transfer forces predominate, the relative orientations and positions of the components are found to be such as to allow the maximum degree of overlap between their molecular π-orbitals.

When three nitro-groups are present in the ring as in s-trinitrobenzene, one may be removed by the reagents which attack the o- and p-dinitro-compounds; e.g., when heated with methanolic sodium methoxide, s-

trinitrobenzene forms 3:5-dinitroanisole:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} NO_2 & OCH_3 \\ NO_2 & CH_3ONa \\ \hline NO_2 & CH_5OH \\ \end{array} \quad NO_2 & NO_2 & (63-77\%) \end{array}$$

Benzene may be oxidised and nitrated simultaneously to dinitrophenol and picric acid by mercuric nitrate in nitric acid solution (see p. 628).

Nitrotoluenes. Benzene homologues are more readily nitrated than benzene itself, due to the activating effect of the alkyl group. When nitrated with mixed acid, toluene forms a mixture of o- and p-nitrotoluenes:

These isomers may readily be separated by fractional distillation under reduced pressure: o-isomer, m.p.  $-4^{\circ}$ , b.p.  $222^{\circ}$ ; p-isomer, m.p.  $54^{\circ}$ , b.p.  $238^{\circ}$ .

A larger yield of o-nitrotoluene may be obtained by nitrating toluene with acetyl nitrate:

m-Nitrotoluene, m.p. 16°, b.p. 227°, may be prepared by reducing the pisomer, acetylating the p-toluidine, nitrating the acetyl derivative, deacetylating, and replacing the amino-group by hydrogen (see p. 584):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 & \text{CH}_3 & \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{NO}_2 & \text{NH}_2 & \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 & \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{NO}_2 & \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 & \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 & \text{CH}_3 & \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{NO}_2 & \text{NaNO}_2/\text{H}_2 \text{SO}_4 & \text{NO}_2 \\ \text{NH}_2 & \text{No}_2 + \text{No}_2 & \text{No}_2 \\ \text{No}_2 & \text{No}_2 & \text{No}_2 & \text{No}_2$$

All the nitrotoluenes may be reduced to the corresponding toluidines. A very interesting oxidising effect of a nitro-group is the internal oxidation of o-nitrotoluene to o-aminobenzoic acid when heated with ethanolic sodium hydroxide:

Dinitrotoluenes. Nitration of any of the nitrotoluenes gives a mixture of 2:4- and 2:6-dinitrotoluenes.

2:4:6-Trinitrotoluene (T.N.T), m.p. 81°, may be prepared by nitrating toluene with mixed acid consisting of fuming nitric and fuming sulphuric acids. This reaction takes place far more readily than with benzene because of the activation of the ring by the methyl group.

Trinitrotoluene is used as an explosive; mixed with ammonium nitrate, it forms the explosive amatol.

Artificial musks. Polynitro-derivatives of benzene containing a tertiary butyl group, possess odours resembling musk, and are used in perfumery, e.g.,

Halogeno-nitrobenzenes. Nitration of phenyl halides produces a mixture of the o- and p-halogeno-nitrobenzenes; these may be separated by freezing and filtration, the p-isomer having the higher melting point. The halogen atom o- or p- to a nitro-group is fairly reactive, and is replaced when heated with alkali, ethanolic ammonia, etc., to form respectively nitrophenols, nitroanilines, etc. Smith et al. (1953) have shown that the halogen atom in halogenonitro-compounds may be removed by heating with copper powder

and benzoic acid. Chlorine and bromine may be removed when o- or p- to a nitro-group; iodine is removed from any position, and fluorine not at all, e.g.,

When two nitro-groups are present in the o- and p-positions (with respect to the halogen atom), the halogen atom is more reactive, and when three nitro-groups are present in the p- and two o-positions, the halogen atom is so reactive that it can be replaced by hydroxyl merely by warming with water, e.g., picryl chloride forms picric acid:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{Cl} & \text{OH} \\ \text{NO}_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{H}_4\text{O}} & \text{NO}_2 \\ & \text{NO}_2 & & \text{NO}_2 \end{array}$$

It is also interesting to note that the fluorine atom in r-fluoro-2: 4-dinitrobenzene is strongly activated. This compound condenses with amino-groups to form N-2: 4-dinitrophenyl derivatives. This reaction has been used in protein and peptide studies (Sanger, 1945).

A methyl group is also made reactive by a nitro-group in the o- or p-position, e.g., trinitrotoluene condenses with benzaldehyde in the presence of ethanolic potassium hydroxide to form trinitrostilbene:

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{NO_2} \\ \mathrm{NO_2} \\ \end{array} \\ \hspace{-0.5cm} \begin{array}{c} \mathrm{NO_2} \\ \hspace{-0.5cm} \end{array} \\ \hspace{-0.5cm} \begin{array}{c} \mathrm{NO_2} \\ \hspace$$

Halogenation of nitrobenzene produces mainly the m-derivative:

$$NO_2$$
 $+ Br_2$ 
 $\xrightarrow{Fe}$ 
 $Br'$ 
 $+ HBr (85\%)$ 

A halogen atom m- to a nitro-group shows the same unreactivity as the

Phenylnitromethana C. H. CH.

Phenylnitromethane,  $C_6H_5$ - $CH_2$ - $NO_2$ , may be prepared by heating toluene with dilute nitric acid in a sealed tube at 100°, or by heating benzyl chloride with aqueous ethanolic silver nitrite:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5\cdot CH_3 + HNO_3 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot NO_2 + H_2O \quad (\rlap/p.) \\ C_6H_5\cdot CH_2Cl + Ag\cdot O\cdot NO \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot NO_2 + AgCl \quad (\rlap/f.g.). \end{array}$$

Phenylnitromethane is best prepared as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CN + CH_3\text{-}O\text{-}NO_2 + C_2H_5ONa \longrightarrow \\ C_6H_5\text{-}C = NO_2Na + CH_3OH + C_2H_5OH \xrightarrow[heat]{\text{aq. NaOH}} C_6H_5\text{-}C = NO_2Na \xrightarrow[heat]{\text{HCI}} \\ CN \quad (I) \quad & CO_2Na \quad (II) \\ \hline \begin{bmatrix} C_6H_5\text{-}C = NO_2H \\ CO_2H \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{-CO_2} C_6H_5\text{-}CH\text{-}NO_2H \xrightarrow{\text{isomerises}} C_6H_5\text{-}CH_2\text{-}NO_2 \\ & (50-55\%) \end{array}$$

(I) is sodio-phenylacinitroacetonitrile, and (II) is the sodium salt of phenylnitroacetic acid.

Phenylnitromethane behaves as a true primary aliphatic nitro-compound; both the nitro- and *aci*nitro-forms have been isolated (cf. p. 304):

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm C_6H_5\text{-}CH_2\text{-}NO_2} \Longleftrightarrow {\rm C_6H_5\text{-}CH} {= \hspace{-0.5cm} NO_2 H} \\ {\rm yellow \ oil} \\ {\rm b.p. \ 226^\circ} \\ \end{array}$$

Abnormal nitration. When nuclear-substituted aromatic compounds are nitrated, there are many cases where an alkyl, halogen, alkoxyl, acyl, carboxyl, or sulphonic acid group is replaced by a nitro-group; in some cases, a hydrogen atom in the side-chain is replaced by the *nitrate* group. Generally, abnormal nitration is more likely to occur in the nitration of polysubstituted benzene compounds, particularly the polyalkylbenzenes. Mono-, di- and trialkylbenzenes (where the alkyl group is methyl or ethyl) give the expected nitro-compounds. Polyalkylbenzenes containing three or more alkyl groups in some cases give normal products, and in others, abnormal; e.g., ethylmesitylene, when nitrated with mixed acid (fuming nitric and sulphuric), gives 3:5:6-trinitro-4-ethyl-o-xylene:

$$\begin{array}{cccc} CH_3 & CH_3 \\ CH_3 & CH_3 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} CH_3 \\ NO_2 \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 1 & 2 \\ 5 & 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix} NO_2 \\ C_2H_5 & C_2H_5 \end{array}$$

## AROMATIC NITROSO-COMPOUNDS

The simplest aromatic nitroso-compound is nitrosobenzene,  $C_6H_5$ ·NO. This may be prepared by oxidising phenylhydroxylamine with dichromate-sulphuric acid mixture, or by oxidising aniline with Caro's acid:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{NHOH} & \text{NO} & \text{NH}_2 \\ \hline & \xrightarrow{\text{K}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7} & & \\ \hline & & & \\ & & & \\ \end{array}$$

Nitrosobenzene may also be prepared by the electrolytic reduction of nitrobenzene (see later).

Nitroso-compounds containing certain other groups in the ring may be prepared directly by the action of nitrous acid on the compound, e.g., dimethylaniline forms p-nitrosodimethylaniline:

$$N(CH_3)_2$$
  $N(CH_3)_2$   $+ H_2O$ 

Nitrosobenzene, in the solid state, exists as colourless crystals, m.p. 68°; this is the dimer. According to Lüttke (1956, 1957), dimeric nitrosobenzene exists in the *cis*-form. In the liquid (fused) state, in solution, or in the gaseous state, nitrosobenzene is green; this is the monomer (*cf.* p. 307).

Reactions of nitrosobenzene. Nitrosobenzene is reduced by hydrogen in the presence of palladium (on a calcium carbonate support) to azobenzene:

$$2C_6H_5\cdot NO + 2H_2 \xrightarrow{Pd} C_6H_5\cdot N:N\cdot C_6H_5 + 2H_2O$$
 (100%)

When reduced with concentrated hydriodic acid-red phosphorus, nitrosobenzene gives phenylhydroxylamine:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NO + 2HI \xrightarrow{P} C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot OH + I_2$$

Reduction with metal and acid gives aniline:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NO + 4[H] \xrightarrow{Fe/HCl} C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + H_2O$$

Reduction of nitroso-compounds with sulphur dioxide or sodium hydrogen sulphite is often accompanied by the simultaneous introduction of a sulphonic acid group, e.g., p-nitrosophenol forms 2-amino-5-hydroxybenzene-1: 3-disulphonic acid:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} OH & OH \\ & & & OH \\ & & & & OH \\ & & & & & OH \\ & & & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & & \\ &$$

Nitrosobenzene is oxidised by alkaline hydrogen peroxide, dilute nitric acid, or a mixture of nitric acid and hydrogen peroxide, to nitrobenzene:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NO + H_2O_2 \xrightarrow{NaOH} C_6H_5\cdot NO_2 + H_2O$$

Nitrosobenzene condenses with aniline to form azobenzene:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NO + C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot N:N\cdot C_6H_5 + H_2O$$

It will also condense with compounds containing a reactive methylene group, e.g.,

$$C_6H_5\cdot NO + C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot CN \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot C(CN):N\cdot C_6H_5 + H_2O$$

The orienting influence of the nitroso-group has been discussed on p. 522. Phenylhydroxylamine, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·NH·OH, may be prepared by reducing nitrobenzene with zinc dust and aqueous ammonium chloride (yield: 62–68 per cent.), or by the electrolytic reduction of nitrobenzene in an aqueous solution of acetic acid containing sodium acetate.

Phenylhydroxylamine is a white solid, m.p. 81°, soluble in water, ethanol and ether. It is a powerful reducing agent, e.g., it reduces ammoniacal silver nitrate and Fehling's solution. It readily absorbs oxygen from the air to form nitrosobenzene; this can react with unchanged phenylhydroxylamine to give azoxybenzene:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot OH + C_6H_5\cdot NO \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot N:N\cdot C_6H_5 + H_2O$$

In dilute acid solution, phenylhydroxylamine rearranges to p-aminophenol. According to Hughes and Ingold (1951), the mechanism is possibly:

If the p-position is occupied by a methyl group, the rearrangement can still take place, but in this case ammonia is eliminated and a methylquinol is formed; this methylquinol then readily rearranges to a quinol:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{NH-OH} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{acid}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{NH} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{OH}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{-NH}_3 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{OH}} \begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \text{OH} \end{array}$$

Phenylhydroxylamine is used to prepare **cupferron**; an ethereal solution of phenylhydroxylamine is treated with dry ammonia gas, and then *n*-butyl nitrite is added:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot OH + C_4H_9\cdot O\cdot NO + NH_3 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot N(NO)\cdot ONH_4 + C_4H_9OH$$

$$(85-90\%)$$

Cupferron is the ammonium salt of N-nitrosophenylhydroxylamine, and was originally used for the quantitative estimation of copper and iron (hence its name). Cupferron is a colourless solid, and the structure of its metallic complexes is uncertain.

Reduction products of the nitro-compounds. The course of the reduction of nitro-compounds has been shown to take place through the following stages:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NO_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NO \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot OH \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NH_2$$

The nature of the final product, however, depends mainly on the pH of the solution in which the reduction is carried out.

(i) In acid solution (metal and acid), aniline is obtained:

$$C_6H_5$$
•NO<sub>2</sub> + 6[H]  $\xrightarrow{\text{metal/acid}} C_6H_5$ •NH<sub>2</sub> + 2H<sub>2</sub>O

In acid solution, the intermediate products nitrosobenzene and phenylhydroxylamine are reduced far more rapidly than nitrobenzene, and so these intermediates are never isolated.

(ii) In neutral solution, e.g., with zinc dust and ammonium chloride

solution, the main product of the reduction is phenylhydroxylamine.

(iii) In alkaline solution the compound obtained depends on the nature of the reducing agent used (see p. 599). The complex compounds that may be obtained are:

(a) Azoxybenzene. This is believed to be formed by interaction of the intermediate products nitrosobenzene and phenylhydroxylamine:

$$C_6H_5$$
·NO +  $C_6H_5$ ·NH·OH  $\longrightarrow C_6H_5$ ·N:N· $C_6H_5$  +  $H_2O$ 

(b) Azobenzene. This is believed to be formed by reaction between two molecules of phenylhydroxylamine:

$$2C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot OH \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot N:N\cdot C_6H_5 + 2H_9O$$

(c) Hydrazobenzene. This is apparently formed by the reduction of azobenzene:

$$C_6H_5\cdot N:N\cdot C_6H_5 + 2[H] \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot NH\cdot C_6H_5$$

Thus by choosing a suitable alkaline reducing agent, it is possible to isolate (a), (b), or (c).

In weakly acid solution, the main product is aniline; but in strongly acid solution, the product is p-aminophenol, formed by the rearrangement of phenylhydroxylamine. On the other hand, aromatic nitro-compounds are reduced to azo-compounds by lithium aluminium hydride. If, however, this reduction is carried out in the presence of a small amount of metal chloride, e.g., Fe, Sn, etc. (but not Al), nitrobenzene (and azobenzene) gives hydrazobenzene (yield: good; Oláh, 1959).

The course of catalytic reduction (with Raney nickel) has not been investigated in detail. It is quite likely that it takes place in the same way as those discussed above; the final product is often almost a quantitative

yield of amine.

#### QUESTIONS

I. Write an account of the mechanism of nitration with (a) mixed acid, (b) with

concentrated aqueous nitric acid.

2. Starting with benzene or toluene, how would you prepare each of the following:-(a) PhNO<sub>2</sub>, (b) o-, m- and p-C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>(NO<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, (c) s-C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>(NO<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>, (d) o-, m- and p-MeC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·NO<sub>2</sub>, (e) T.N.T., (f) o-, m- and p-ClC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·NO<sub>2</sub>, (g) Ph·CH<sub>2</sub>·NO<sub>2</sub>?

In each case indicate the principles upon which you have based your method. 3. What are the important differences in behaviour between o-, m- and p-dinitrobenzene? Which of these isomers resemble s-trinitrobenzene in chemical properties? 4. Discuss the effect of a nitro-group on the reactivity of:—(a) a halogen atom, (b) a

methyl group, (c) another nitro-group, in aromatic compounds.

5. Write an account of the preparation and properties of:—
(a) PhNO, (b) p-Me<sub>2</sub>N·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·NO, (c) Ph·NH·OH.
6. Write an account of the reduction products of nitrobenzene.

7. A compound has the formula C<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>O<sub>2</sub>N. Write out the structures of the possible isomers and show how you would distinguish between them.

### READING REFERENCES

Gillespie and Millen, Aromatic Nitration, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1948, 2, 277. Nightingale, Anomalous Nitration Reactions, Chem. Reviews, 1927, 40, 11

de la Mare and Ridd, Aromatic Substitution: Nitration and Halogenation, Butterworths (1959).

Gowenlock and Lüttke, Structure and Properties of C-Nitroso-Compounds, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1958, 12, 321.

Murrell, The Theory of Charge-Transfer Spectra, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1961, 15,

Vanderzee and Edgell, The Kinetics of the Reduction of Aromatic Nitro Compounds with Tin and Hydrochloric Acid, J. Amer. Chem. Soc., 1950, 72, 2916.

#### CHAPTER XXIII

#### AROMATIC AMINO-COMPOUNDS

Aromatic amines are of two types, one in which the amino-group is attached directly to the ring, and the other in which the amino-group is in the sidechain. The latter behave very much like the aliphatic amines, and so may be regarded as aryl-substituted aliphatic amines.

Nuclear amino-compounds fall into the same three classes as the aliphatic amines, viz., primary amines, Ar·NH<sub>2</sub>; secondary amines, Ar<sub>2</sub>NĤ and Ar·NH·R; and tertiary amines, Ar<sub>3</sub>N, Ar<sub>2</sub>N·R and Ar·NR<sub>2</sub>.

Purely aromatic quaternary compounds, i.e., compounds of the type Ar, N}X-, have not yet been prepared; compounds of the type

Ar, N·R}X-, however, are known.

General methods of preparation of primary amines. 1. Primary aromatic amines are nearly always prepared by the reduction of the corresponding nitro-compound. Various reducing reagents may be used, e.g., tin, iron, or zinc, with hydrochloric or acetic acid:

$$Ar \cdot NO_2 + 6[H] \xrightarrow{\text{metal/acid}} Ar \cdot NH_2 + 2H_2O \quad (v.g.-ex.)$$

Zinc and hydrochloric acid often produce the chloroamino-compound as well as the desired amino-compound. Acetic acid is very useful for compounds which contain a group that is attacked by inorganic acid; e.g., reduction of p-nitroacetanilide in hydrochloric acid solution leads to some hydrolysis of the acetyl group; use of acetic acid prevents this deacetylation.

Titaneus chloride in hydrochloric acid reduces nitro-compounds to amines, and may be used for the quantitative estimation of nitro-groups in a compound:

$$Ar\cdot NO_2 + 6TiCl_3 + 6HCl \longrightarrow Ar\cdot NH_2 + 6TiCl_4 + 2H_2O$$

By means of aqueous ethanolic ammonium hydrogen sulphide, aqueous sodium sulphide, or stannous chloride in hydrochloric acid, nitro-groups in a polynitro-compound can be reduced one at a time, e.g., m-nitroaniline from m-dinitrobenzene:

$$NO_2$$
 $NH_2$ 
 $NO_2 + 3NH_4HS \longrightarrow NH_2$ 
 $NO_2 + 3NH_3 + 3S + 2H_2O$  (70-80%)

It appears that ammonium hydrogen sulphide and sodium sulphide will not reduce a nitro-group in the o-position to an alkyl group, whereas stannous chloride in hydrochloric acid reduces this nitro-group preferentially:

Sulphur dioxide or sodium hydrogen sulphite may also be used to reduce one nitro-group in polynitro-compounds, but in certain cases the reduction is accompanied by the introduction of a sulphonic acid group, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c|c} NO_2 & NO_2 \\ \hline \\ NO_2 & & & \\ \hline \\ NO_2 & & & \\ \hline \\ NO_3 & & & \\ \hline \\ SO_3 H \\ \hline \\ 4-nitro-orthanilic acid \end{array}$$

Nitro-compounds may be reduced catalytically to the corresponding amine at 200–400°; if Raney nickel or platinum is used as catalyst, the reduction may be carried out at room temperature. Catalytic reduction is particularly useful for compounds which contain a group that is hydrolysable in acid solution, e.g., p-nitroacetanilide, p-NO<sub>2</sub>·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·NH·CO·CH<sub>3</sub>. Although organic sulphur compounds poison the Raney nickel catalyst, nitro-compounds containing a thiol, sulphide, etc., linkage can nevertheless still be reduced by using a large excess of the catalyst (Fel'dman, 1949). The reduction of nitro-compounds may also be effected with hydrazine hydrate. The reaction is slow, but is catalysed by Raney nickel (Balcom et al., 1953). Dewar et al. (1956) have shown that palladised charcoal is a more convenient catalyst, the yields of amine varying from 60-81 per cent.

Nitro-compounds may also be reduced by means of cyclohexene and palladium, and if more than one nitro-group is present, it is possible to reduce only one (see p. 483).

Certain nitro-compounds may be reduced to the corresponding amine in liquid ammonia solution by sodium and methanol, or sodium and ammonium bromide (Watt et al., 1947), e.g.,

$$C_6H_5^{\bullet}NO_2 \xrightarrow{Na/CH_8OH} C_6H_5^{\bullet}NH_2$$
 (92%)

If a nitro-compound contains an unsaturated chain or an aldehyde group in the nucleus, alkaline ferrous sulphate may be used as the reducing agent to avoid reduction of these other groups. If only an aldehyde group is present, then stannous chloride may be used as the reducing agent; e.g., m-nitrobenzaldehyde may be reduced to m-aminobenzaldehyde:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{CHO} & \text{CHO} \\ \hline \\ \text{NO}_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{SnCl}_2/\text{HCl}} & \\ \hline \end{array} \\ \text{NH}_2$$

2. Amino-compounds may be prepared by reduction of nitroso-compounds:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NO + 4[H] \xrightarrow{Sn/HCl} C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + H_2O$$

3. Reduction of azo- and hydrazo-compounds, usually with sodium hyposulphite (dithionite), gives very good yields of amino-compound:

$$Ar \cdot N \cdot N \cdot Ar' + 2Na_2S_2O_4 + 4H_2O \longrightarrow Ar \cdot NH_2 + Ar' \cdot NH_2 + 4NaHSO_3$$

Reduction of azo-compounds is very useful in certain cases (see, e.g., p. 598).

4. Amino-compounds may be prepared by the Hofmann reaction; e.g., benzamide gives aniline:

$$C_6H_5$$
·CO·NH<sub>2</sub>  $\xrightarrow{Br_9/KOH}$   $C_6H_5$ ·NH<sub>2</sub>

5. The Schmidt reaction may be used to prepare amines:

$$Ar \cdot CO_2H + HN_3 \xrightarrow{H_2SO_4} Ar \cdot NH_2 + CO_2 + N_2$$

6. Ammonolysis of halogeno- and hydroxy-compounds may be used in certain cases to prepare amino-compounds (see, e.g., aniline).

7. Many amino-compounds may be prepared by means of rearrangement

reactions (see, e.g., p. 602).

Aniline (aminobenzene), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·NH<sub>2</sub>, was discovered by Unverdorben (1826), who obtained it by distilling indigo; this name was given to it by Fritzsche (1841), who derived it from anil, the Portuguese word for indigo.

In the laboratory, aniline is prepared by the reduction of nitrobenzene

with metal and acid, e.g., tin and hydrochloric acid:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NO_2 + 6[H] \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + 2H_2O$$
 (80%)

The aniline remains in solution as aniline stannichloride (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·NH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>·H<sub>2</sub>SnCl<sub>6</sub>; when the solution is made alkaline and steam distilled, the aniline comes over in the distillate.

Commercially, aniline is prepared:

(i) By the reduction of nitrobenzene with iron, water and a small amount of hydrochloric acid (one fortieth of the theoretical amount).

The mechanism of the reduction is uncertain, but there is some evidence to show it may be as follows:

$$\begin{split} \text{Fe} &+ 2\text{HCl} \longrightarrow \text{FeCl}_2 + 2[\text{H}] \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{`NO}_2 + 6[\text{H}] \longrightarrow \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{`NH}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \\ \text{FeCl}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{Fe(OH)}_2 + 2\text{HCl} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{`NO}_2 + 6\text{Fe(OH)}_2 + 4\text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{`NH}_2 + 6\text{Fe(OH)}_3 \end{split}$$

(ii) By the catalytic reduction (nickel catalyst) of nitrobenzene.

(iii) By heating chlorobenzene with excess aqueous ammonia in the presence of cuprous oxide at 200° under pressure. The cuprous oxide renders the reaction irreversible by decomposing the ammonium chloride formed in the reaction:

$$2C_6H_5Cl + 2NH_3 + Cu_2O \longrightarrow 2C_6H_5NH_2 + 2CuCl + H_2O$$
 (90%)

Aniline (whose properties are characteristic of primary aromatic amines in general) is, when freshly prepared, a colourless liquid, b.p. 184°; it has an unpleasant odour and is poisonous. When exposed to air, it rapidly darkens, since it is very sensitive to oxidation. It is practically insoluble in water, but is steam-volatile; it is readily soluble in organic solvents.

Aniline forms crystalline salts with strong inorganic acids, and these salts are considerably hydrolysed in solution. Aniline is a weaker base than the primary aliphatic amines, and this may be explained by resonance (which

is not possible in aliphatic primary amines):

In aniline, owing to resonance, the lone pair of electrons on the nitrogen atom is less available for co-ordinating with a proton; at the same time, the small positive charge on the nitrogen atom would tend to repel a proton. Alternatively, since there are more resonating structures possible for aniline itself than for the cation  $C_6H_5$  NH<sub>3</sub>, the former will be stabilised with respect to

the latter.

The decreased basicity of aniline may be explained from M.O. theory as follows. The lone pair of electrons on the nitrogen atom conjugate with the  $p_z$  electrons of the benzene ring, thereby reducing their availability for accepting a proton owing to partial delocalisation (see Fig. 20.4, p. 528).

Hydrogen atoms of the amino-group are replaceable by halogen when aniline is treated with hypohalous acid. When aniline is heated with sodium or potassium, the metal dissolves with the evolution of hydrogen;

$$C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + K \longrightarrow [C_6H_5\cdot NH]^-K^+ + \frac{1}{2}H_2$$

Aniline combines with alkyl halides to give finally a quaternary ammonium compound:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + 3CH_3Cl \longrightarrow [C_6H_5\cdot N(CH_3)_3]+Cl^{-1}$$

Aniline gives the isocyanide reaction when heated with chloroform and ethanolic potassium hydroxide (see p. 297):

$$C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + CHCl_3 + 3KOH \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NC + 3KCl + 3H_2O$$

Aniline is readily acetylated, and condenses with aromatic aldehydes to form anils or Schiff bases; e.g., when warmed with benzaldehyde, it forms benzylideneaniline:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + C_6H_5\cdot CHO \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot N:CH\cdot C_6H_5 + H_2O$$
 (84-87%)

These Schiff bases are easily hydrolysed to the free amine, and so their formation offers a means of "protecting" an amino-group, e.g., during nitration. Schiff bases may also be used to prepare secondary amines:

$$C_6H_5\cdot N:CH\cdot Ar \xrightarrow{H_2} C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot CH_2\cdot Ar$$

On the other hand, benzylideneaniline undergoes reductive cleavage to aniline by hydrogen transfer with *cyclo*hexene and palladium (Braude *et al.*, 1954; see also p. 483).

When refluxed with ethanolic carbon disulphide and solid potassium hydroxide, aniline forms s-diphenylthiourea (thiocarbanilide), m.p. 154°,

which is used as a rubber accelerator:

$$CS_2 + 2C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + 2KOH \longrightarrow S:C(NH\cdot C_6H_5)_2 + K_2S + 2H_2O$$
 (70%)

When treated with concentrated hydrochloric acid, diphenylthiourea is converted into phenyl isothiocyanate:

$$S:C(NH\cdot C_6H_5)_2 + HCl \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NCS + C_6H_5\cdot NH_2\cdot HCl$$

Phenyl isothiocyanate may be conveniently prepared by running aniline into a cooled mixture of carbon disulphide and concentrated aqueous ammonium hydroxide, and decomposing the precipitated ammonium phenyldithiocarbamate with lead nitrate solution:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + CS_2 + NH_4OH \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot CS_2NH_4 + H_2O \xrightarrow{Pb(NO_9)_5} C_8H_5\cdot NCS + NH_4NO_3 + HNO_3 + PbS (74-78\%)$$

Baxter et al. (1956) have shown that aryl isothiocyanates may be prepared by heating arylthioureas in chlorobenzene solution at 150°, e.g.,

$$C_0H_5\cdot N\cdot CS\cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow C_0H_5\cdot NCS + NH_3$$
 (44%)

The oxidation products of aniline are far more complex than those obtained from primary aliphatic amines (p. 316). Nitrosobenzene, nitrobenzene, phenylhydroxylamine, p-benzoquinone, azobenzene, azoxybenzene, aniline black (a dye), etc., may be isolated, the actual substance obtained depending on the nature of the oxidising agent used, e.g., Caro's acid oxidises aniline to a mixture of nitroso- and nitrobenzene; peroxytrifluoroacetic acid oxidises aniline to nitrobenzene (89%; Emmons, 1954); chromic acid gives p-benzoquinone; sodium hypochlorite gives a purple coloration—this reaction is characteristic of aniline.

Aniline may be easily mercurated with an aqueous ethanolic solution of

mercuric acetate in the cold or on warming.

The most important difference between aniline and primary aliphatic amines is their behaviour towards nitrous acid; aliphatic amines liberate nitrogen (see p. 316), whereas aniline (and all other primary aromatic monoamines) forms *diazonium salts*, which are stable in cold aqueous solution:

$${\rm C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + HNO_2 + HCl} {\longrightarrow} {\rm C_6H_5\cdot N_2Cl + 2H_2O}_{\rm benzenediazonium\ chloride}$$

Acetanilide (N-phenylacetamide), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·NH·CO·CH<sub>3</sub>, may be readily prepared, in very good yield, by heating aniline with acetyl chloride, acetic anhydride, or glacial acetic acid. It is a white crystalline solid, m.p. 114°, almost insoluble in cold water but readily soluble in hot. It is hydrolysed by strong acids or alkalis to aniline. It is used in medicine, under the name of antifebrin, as a febrifuge. It is a useful intermediate in various reactions of aniline in which it is desirable to "protect" the amino-group, e.g., in nitration, halogenation, etc.; the acetamido-group is predominantly prorienting. The N-phenyl derivative of the amide of any acid is known as an anilide.

**Halogenated anilines.** The amino-group in aniline activates the o- and p-positions to a very large degree; e.g., when aniline is treated with excess chlorine- or bromine-water, an immediate precipitate of the 2:4:6-tri-halogeno-derivative is obtained:

$$NH_2$$
 $+ 3Br_2 \rightarrow Br$ 
 $Br + 3HBr$ 

The yield is quantitative, and so this reaction is used to estimate aniline.

In order to introduce only one chlorine or bromine atom, the activating effect of the amino-group must be lowered; this may be done by acetylation:

These, on hydrolysis, yield the corresponding bromoanilines, which may be separated by steam distillation (the o-compound being steam volatile).

The deactivating effect of the acetyl group may be due to the inductive effect of the carbonyl group, thereby inhibiting, to a certain extent, the lone pair entering into resonance.

An interesting method of preparing p-chloroaniline is to heat p-chlorobromobenzene with ammonia in the presence of cuprous oxide:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \operatorname{Br} & \operatorname{NH}_2 \\ \hline \\ \operatorname{Cl} & + \operatorname{NH}_3 & \xrightarrow{\operatorname{Cu}_9\operatorname{O}} & \begin{array}{c} \operatorname{NH}_2 \\ \hline \\ \operatorname{Cl} & \end{array} \end{array}$$

This is possible due to the more ready displacement of bromine compared with chlorine.

Aniline is readily chlorinated by sulphuryl chloride, in the absence of catalysts, to form the mono-, di- and trichloroanilines, e.g.,

$$NH_2$$
  $NH_2$   $NH_2$   $+ SO_2Cl_2 \rightarrow Cl + SO_2 + HCl$ 

**p-Iodoaniline** may be prepared by the action of iodine on aniline in the presence of aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate (cf. p. 546). Oxidising agents cannot be used to remove the hydrogen iodide, since they will oxidise the aniline; hence the use of sodium hydrogen carbonate.

m-Chloro- and bromo-anilines may be prepared by reducing the corresponding halogeno-nitrobenzenes. They are also formed by the halogenation of aniline in concentrated sulphuric acid, the m-orienting effect being due

to the presence of the -NH3 group (see p. 520).

2:6-Dichloroaniline may be prepared by first blocking the p-position of aniline with a sulphonamide group, refluxing the sulphanilamide with hydrochloric acid and hydrogen peroxide, and subsequently refluxing the product, 3:5-dichlorosulphanilamide, with 70 per cent. sulphuric acid, thereby removing the sulphonamide group:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{SO}_2 \text{NH}_2 \end{array} \rightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{Cl} \\ \text{SO}_2 \text{NH}_2 \end{array} \rightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{Cl} \\ \text{SO}_2 \text{NH}_2 \end{array} \rightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{Cl} \\ \text{SO}_2 \text{NH}_2 \end{array}$$

The presence of a halogen atom, particularly in the o- or p-position, decreases the basic properties of aniline; e.g., the salts of the trihalogeno-anilines are completely hydrolysed in aqueous solution (cf. nitroanilines below).

An interesting point about trihalogeno-anilines is their anomalous nitration:

Nitroanilines. Direct treatment of aniline with nitric acid gives a complex mixture of mono-, di- and trinitro-compounds, and oxidation products. If, however, the amino-group is protected (and deactivated) by acetylation

or by the formation of the benzylidene derivative, the main product on nitration is the p-nitro-derivative:

The nitroacetanilides may be separated by digesting the mixture with chloroform in which the o-derivative is soluble and the p-, insoluble. Alternatively, they may be separated by keeping the o-compound liquid (m.p. 93°) and filtering off the solid p-isomer (m.p. 215°); or by chromatographic adsorption, since the o-compound chelates. After separation, the nitroanilines may be obtained by hydrolysis with alkali.

Nitration of aniline derivatives is accelerated by nitrous acid. This is believed to be due to the formation of the nitroso-compound, followed by

its oxidation to the nitro-compound (see phenol, p. 626).

o- and p-Nitroanilines may be prepared by heating o- and p-chloronitrobenzenes with ammonia (cf. p. 558). The o-isomer, however, is best prepared as follows:

m-Nitroaniline (m.p. 114°) may be prepared by the partial reduction of m-dinitrobenzene with ammonium hydrogen sulphide (yield: 70–80 per cent.), sodium sulphide (yield: 70 per cent.), or stannous chloride in hydrochloric acid. m-Nitroaniline may also be prepared by the direct nitration of aniline in the presence of concentrated sulphuric acid (cf. m-chloroaniline, above). Industrially, it is prepared by reducing m-dinitrobenzene with the calculated quantity of iron (for one nitro-group) and a small amount of hydrochloric acid.

All three nitroanilines may be reduced by metal and acid to the corresponding diamines. All can be halogenated in the o-position; iodine monochloride in boiling acetic acid is used to prepare the iodo-compound:

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{NH_2} \\ + \, \mathrm{2ICl} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \mathrm{NH_2} \\ \mathrm{I} \\ \mathrm{NO_2} \end{array} + 2 \mathrm{HCl} \quad (56\text{-}64\%) \end{array}$$

o- and p-Nitroanilines, but not m-, react with boiling aqueous sodium hydroxide to give the corresponding nitrophenol (cf. chloronitrobenzenes, p. 558):

$$NH_2$$
 OH  $+ NH_3$   $NO_2$ 

All the nitroanilines are weaker bases than aniline. This may be due to the inductive effect of the nitro-group tending to withdraw electrons from the ring, thereby decreasing the availability of the lone pair on the nitrogen atom of the amino-group; the net result is an increased contribution of the charged state, due to resonance, to the actual state of the molecule:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{NH}_2 & \text{NH}_2 \\ \hline \\ \text{NO}_2 & \text{NO}_2 \\ \end{array}$$

This explanation is supported by the fact that the dipole moment of p-nitroaniline is greater than the sum of the dipole moments of the amino-and nitro-groups.

Increasing the number of nitro-groups decreases the basic properties of the compound due to an increase in resonance. A nitro-group in the o- or p-position has a much greater effect than one in the m-position.

From the point of view of M.O. theory, the decreased basicity may be accounted for by the fact that in nitroanilines, the nitrogen atoms of both nitroand amino-groups enter into conjugation with the benzene ring. Also, since the nitrogen atom of the nitro-group has a positive charge and consequently attracts the electron cloud, partial delocalisation of the lone pair on the amino-group will be greater than had the nitro-group been absent. Calculation shows that this effect of the nitro-group is greater in the o- and p-positions than in the m-position.

2:4-Dinitroaniline, m.p. 180°, may be prepared by passing ammonia gas into a heated mixture of 1-chloro-2:4-dinitrobenzene and ammonium acetate:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Cl} & \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{NO}_2 + 2 \text{NH}_3 & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{NH}_4} & \text{NO}_2 + \text{NH}_4 \text{Cl} \quad (61\text{-}68\%) \\ \text{NO}_2 & \text{NO}_2 & \text{NO}_2 & \text{NO}_2 \end{array}$$

Aminobenzenesulphonic acids (see p. 615).

Toluidines (tolylamines). These may be obtained by reduction of the corresponding nitrotoluenes. o- and m-Toluidines are oils, b.p. 201° and 200°, respectively; p-toluidine is a solid, m.p. 45°, b.p. 200°.

Nitration of toluene gives a mixture of o- and p-nitrotoluenes, and this, when reduced with iron and dilute hydrochloric acid, gives a mixture of the corresponding toluidines.

When the reaction mixture is steam distilled, both pass over; when the distillate is cooled, the hydrate of the p-isomer crystallises out, the o-compound remaining as an oil (yield of o- and p-isomers is 90–95 per cent.). Both isomers are used in the preparation of dyes.

m-Nitrotoluene is prepared via a diazonium salt (p. 584).

**N-Alkylanilines.** The commonest N-alkylanilines are mono- and dimethylaniline. These may be prepared by heating aniline with methyl iodide:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5\cdot NH_2+CH_3I \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot CH_3\cdot HI \\ C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot CH_3+CH_3I \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot N(CH_3)_2\cdot HI \end{array}$$

Commercially, these methylanilines are prepared by heating a mixture of aniline, methanol and sulphuric acid under pressure at 230°. No quaternary compound is formed under these conditions (cf. p. 309). Monomethylaniline is the main product (50 per cent.) when about 1.2 molecules of methanol

are used; dimethylaniline and unchanged aniline are also present. Dimethylaniline is obtained as the main product (95 per cent.) by using a large excess of methanol; monomethylaniline and unchanged aniline are also present, but these are removed by acetylating the mixture and distilling off the dimethylaniline.

To prepare higher N-alkyl derivatives of aniline, hydrochloric acid is used instead of sulphuric, since the latter tends to dehydrate the alcohol to olefin.

An interesting example of *reductive methylation* is the conversion of aniline into dimethylaniline; aniline and formaldehyde, in aqueous ethanolic sulphuric acid, is hydrogenated in the presence of platinum as catalyst (Pearson *et al.*, 1951).

$$C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + 2CH_2O + 2H_2 \xrightarrow{Pt} C_6H_5\cdot N(CH_3)_2 + 2H_2O$$
 (74%)

Mono- and dimethylaniline are liquids, b.p. 196° and 193°, respectively, and, due to the closeness of their boiling points, cannot be readily separated by fractional distillation. They can be separated, however, by acetylating the monomethyl derivative (as indicated above).

Pure monomethylaniline may be prepared by treating the sodium derivative of acetanilide with methyl iodide in toluene solution:

$$\begin{array}{c} [C_6H_5\cdot N\cdot CO\cdot CH_3]^-Na^+ + CH_3I \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot N(CH_3)\cdot COCH_3 + NaI \xrightarrow{KOH} \\ C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot CH_3 & (90\%) \end{array}$$

Pure monomethylaniline may also be prepared as follows:

$$\begin{split} \mathrm{C_6H_5\cdot NH_2} + \mathrm{C_6H_5\cdot SO_2Cl} &\longrightarrow \mathrm{C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot SO_2\cdot C_6H_5} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{(CH_3)_5SO_4}} \\ &\qquad \qquad \mathrm{C_6H_5\cdot N(CH_3)\cdot SO_2\cdot C_6H_5} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_2O}} \mathrm{C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot CH_3} \end{split}$$

Secondary amines, particularly those in which one group is of the type Ar·CH<sub>2</sub>—, may be readily prepared by the catalytic reduction of the corresponding anil (p. 312).

Mono- and dimethylaniline are slightly weaker bases than aniline itself. The reason for this is not certain, but it may be due to the electron-releasing property of an alkyl group. This would tend to increase resonance and consequently the lone pair on the nitrogen atom would be less available for proton co-ordination in these bases than in aniline. On the other hand, phenyl-

trimethylammonium hydroxide C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>)OH<sup>-</sup>, is strongly basic.

Mono- and dimethylaniline resemble secondary and tertiary aliphatic amines in many ways, but differ in that they can also undergo substitution reactions (in the o- and p-positions) due to the presence of the benzene ring. Monoalkylanilines form pale yellow N-nitrosoamines with nitrous acid, and these give Liebermann's nitroso-reaction (p. 317):

$$C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot CH_3 + HNO_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot N(NO)\cdot CH_3 + H_2O$$
 (87–93%)

This may be converted into the original compound by heating with hydrochloric acid:

$$C_6H_5\cdot N(NO)\cdot CH_3 + H_2O \xrightarrow{HCl} C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot CH_3 + HNO_2$$

The nitroso-compound may also be reduced by nascent hydrogen to asmethylphenylhydrazine:

$$C_6H_5\cdot N(NO)\cdot CH_3 + 4[H] \xrightarrow{Zn/CH_5\cdot CO_6H_5} C_6H_5\cdot N(CH_3)\cdot NH_2 + H_2O$$
 (52-56%)

N-Methylformanilide, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·N(CH<sub>3</sub>)·CHO, may be prepared by distilling a mixture of methylaniline, formic acid and toluene:

$$C_6H_5$$
·NH·CH<sub>3</sub> + H·CO<sub>2</sub>H  $\longrightarrow$   $C_6H_5$ ·N(CH<sub>3</sub>)·CHO + H<sub>2</sub>O (93–97%)

It may also be prepared (in 80 per cent. yield) by oxidising N: N-dimethylaniline with hydrated manganese dioxide (Henbest *et al.*, 1957).

It is a liquid, b.p. 253°, and is used as a formylating agent in the prepara-

tion of aldehydes (see p. 657).

Dialkylanilines form p-nitroso-compounds with nitrous acid, e.g., dimethylaniline forms p-nitrosodimethylaniline (green flakes):

$$N(CH_3)_2$$
  $N(CH_3)_2$   $+ H_2O$  (80-90%)

If the p-position is occupied, the o-nitroso-compound is formed:

$$\begin{array}{c} N(CH_3)_2 & N(CH_3)_2 \\ \hline \\ CH_3 & CH_3 \end{array}$$

The nitroso-group activates the dimethylamino-group, e.g., when boiled with aqueous sodium hydroxide, p-nitrosodimethylaniline forms p-nitrosophenol; the mechanism is possibly:

p-Nitrosodimethylaniline is readily oxidised by permanganate to p-nitrodimethylaniline, and may be reduced to p-aminodimethylaniline.

When dimethylaniline is dissolved in concentrated sulphuric acid and then nitrated with nitric acid at 40-55°, a tetranitro-derivative is obtained in which one methyl group has been replaced by a nitro-group:

$$\begin{array}{c} N(CH_3)_2 \\ \hline \\ NO_2 \\ \hline \\ NO_2 \\ \hline \\ NO_2 \\ \hline \\ NO_2 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

The dimethylamino-group activates the p-hydrogen atom so much that dimethylaniline will condense with formaldehyde and carbonyl chloride to form diphenylmethane derivatives, and with aromatic aldehydes to form triphenylmethane derivatives; e.g., with carbonyl chloride, it forms Michler's ketone:

$$COCl_2 + 2$$
  $N(CH_3)_2$   $\rightarrow$   $CO$   $N(CH_3)_2$   $+ 2HCl$   $N(CH_3)_2$ 

A remarkable property of the mono- and dialkylanilines (and the quaternary compounds) is the ability of their hydrochlorides (or hydrobromides) to undergo rearrangement on strong heating, an alkyl group migrating from the nitrogen atom and entering preferentially the *p*-position, or, if this is occupied, the *o*-; *e.g.*, when phenyltrimethylammonium chloride is heated under pressure, the following rearrangement takes place:

$$\stackrel{\tilde{\mathbf{N}}(\mathsf{CH}_3)_3}{\longrightarrow} \stackrel{\mathsf{N}(\mathsf{CH}_3)_2 \cdot \mathsf{HCl}}{\longrightarrow} \stackrel{\mathsf{NH} \cdot \mathsf{CH}_3 \cdot \mathsf{HCl}}{\longrightarrow} \stackrel{\mathsf{NH}_2 \cdot \mathsf{HCl}}{\longrightarrow} \stackrel{\mathsf{NH}_3 \cdot \mathsf{HCl}}{\longrightarrow} \stackrel{$$

This reaction is known as the Hofmann-Martius rearrangement (1871); it may be used to prepare aniline homologues.

Many mechanisms have been proposed for the Hofmann-Martius rearrangement. Hughes and Ingold (1952) have proposed the following, based largely on the suggestion of Hickinbottom (1934) that the rearrangement occurs via the formation of an alkyl carbonium ion:

$$\begin{split} \mathbf{C_6H_5\cdot NH_2\cdot C_2H_5}\mathbf{Cl} & \Longrightarrow \mathbf{C_6H_5\cdot NH_2} + \mathbf{C_2H_5}\mathbf{Cl} \\ & \mathbf{C_2H_5}\mathbf{Cl} & \Longrightarrow \mathbf{C_2H_5}^+ + \mathbf{Cl}^- \\ & \mathbf{C_6H_5\cdot NH_2} + \mathbf{C_2H_5}^+ & \Longrightarrow \mathbf{C_6H_5\cdot NH_3}^+ + \mathbf{C_2H_4} \\ & \mathbf{C_2H_5}^+ + \mathbf{C_6H_5\cdot NH_2} & \Longrightarrow \not{p}\text{-}\mathbf{C_2H_5\cdot C_6H_4\cdot NH_2} + \mathbf{H}^+ \\ & \mathbf{H}^+ + \mathbf{C_6H_5\cdot NH_2} & \Longrightarrow \mathbf{C_6H_5\cdot NH_3}^+ \end{split}$$

Some evidence given by Hickinbottom to support this mechanism is that alkyl halides have been shown to be formed during the rearrangement, and when the alkyl group is ethyl or a higher homologue, then olefins are also produced. Hickinbottom also showed that alkyl groups may rearrange during the reaction, e.g., when N-isobutylaniline hydrobromide is rearranged the product is p-t-butylaniline. This product was also obtained when aniline hydrobromide was heated with isobutylene. All these facts clearly demonstrate that the rearrangement is intermolecular.

Rearrangements of this kind have been observed to take place with aniline derivatives of the type  $C_6H_5$ -N-Z, where Z is R, X,  $NH_2$ , NO, or  $NO_2$ , e.g.,

When Z is NO, i.e., the compound is the N-nitroso-derivative of a secondary aromatic amine, the rearrangement is known as the Fischer-Hepp rearrangement (1886).

The main product in the Fischer-Hepp rearrangement is the p-isomer, and the mechanism is believed to be intermolecular and possibly as follows:

This mechanism was proposed by Houben (1913), who was led to suggest it because he found that in certain cases the yield of rearranged product was increased by the addition of sodium nitrite. This mechanism is supported by, e.g., the fact that when the reaction is carried out in the presence of urea, no C-nitroso compound is formed; only secondary amine is produced (Macmillan et al., 1929). This is readily explained on the basis that nitrosyl chloride is decomposed by reaction with urea.

Hughes et al. (1956) have studied the rearrangement of phenylnitramine in sulphuric acid in the presence of enriched <sup>15</sup>N tracer. The products were o- and p-nitroaniline and they contained the normal amount of <sup>15</sup>N, thus showing that the rearrangement is intramolecular. According to Hughes and Ingold (1952),

the mechanism is:

The mechanism of the rearrangement of N-chloroacetanilide in hydrochloric acid (which acts as a catalyst) is believed to be:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{NH-CO-CH}_3 \\ + \text{HCl} \end{array} \Longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{NH-CO-CH}_3 \\ + \text{Cl}_2 \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{NH-CO-CH}_3 \\ + \text{HCl} \end{array}$$

This is an example of the Orton rearrangement (1909), which is the rearrangement of N-halogenoacylanilides in which the halogen migrates to the p-position and sometimes to the o-position. The rearrangement may be effected:

(i) By means of halogen acids as catalysts; the intermolecular mechanism given above was proposed by Orton. Orton, e.g., isolated both acetanilide and

chlorine from solution during the rearrangement, and also showed that the proportions of p- to o-chloro-compound were the same when the starting materials were N-chloroacetanilide and hydrochloric acid or acetanilide and chlorine. This mechanism is supported by Olson et al. (1936–1938) who used hydrochloric acid containing radioactive chlorine, some of which appeared in the chloroacetanilide produced.

(ii) By the action of heat or photochemically; these reactions probably occur by a free-radical mechanism. Hickinbottom et al. (1955) have shown that this rearrangement is also effected by benzoyl peroxide in the absence of light. Thus the rearrangement in this case is a homolytic intermolecular chlorination.

(iii) With carboxylic acids or phenols in aprotic solvents. The mechanism of the rearrangement under these conditions is not certain; some workers (Soper et al., 1945) believe it to be intermolecular, and others (Bell et al., 1934–1939) intramolecular. According to Soper, the mechanism is:

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm C_6H_5 \cdot NX \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + HOY} \longrightarrow {\rm C_6H_5 \cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + XOY} \longrightarrow \\ p\text{-}{\rm X \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot NH \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + HOY} \end{array}$$

where X is the halogen and HOY the acid catalyst. Work by Dewar et al. (1959) appears to show that the mechanism is much more involved than that given by Soper.

The rearrangement of phenylhydroxylamine in acid solution to p-aminophenol (p. 561) may be regarded as the case where Z is OH.

Diphenylamine (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NH, may be prepared by heating phenol with aniline in the presence of zinc chloride at 260°:

$$C_6H_5OH + C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 \xrightarrow{ZnCl_2} (C_6H_5)_2NH + H_2O$$

It may also be prepared by the Ullmann reaction; this is carried out by refluxing acetanilide, potassium carbonate, bromobenzene and a little copper powder in nitrobenzene solution (copper accelerates the reaction):

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5\text{·NH·CO·CH}_3 + C_6H_5Br + K_2CO_3 \xrightarrow{Cu} \\ (C_6H_5)_2NH + CO_2 + CH_3\text{·CO}_2K + KBr \quad (60\%) \end{array}$$

Commercially, diphenylamine is prepared by heating aniline with aniline hydrochloride at 140° under pressure:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + C_6H_5\cdot NH_2\cdot HCl \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_2NH + NH_4Cl \quad (85\%)$$

Diphenylamine is a colourless, pleasant-smelling solid, m.p. 54°. It is a weaker base than aniline, and its salts are completely hydrolysed in solution. It forms an N-nitroso-derivative with nitrous acid. A solution of diphenylamine in phosphoric acid gives a blue colour with oxidising agents; this reaction is used as a test for nitric acid. When melted with sulphur, diphenylamine forms phenothiazine (thiodiphenylamine):

$$NH \longrightarrow NH \longrightarrow S$$

Diphenylamine is used for making certain dyes.

When heated with sodium or sodamide, diphenylamine is converted into the sodium salt:

$$(C_6H_5)_2NH + Na \longrightarrow [(C_6H_5)_2N]^-Na^+ + \frac{1}{2}H_8$$

When treated with iodine, sodiodiphenylamine forms tetraphenylhydrazine:

$$2(C_6H_5)_2N^-Na^+ + I_2 \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_2N\cdot N(C_6H_5)_2 + 2NaI$$

Tetraphenylhydrazine is best prepared by oxidising diphenylamine with potassium permanganate in acetone solution. It is a colourless crystalline solid, but in benzene solution (or any other non-ionising solvent) it produces a green colour due to the formation of the free hydrazine radical, diphenylnitrogen, in which the nitrogen is bivalent:

$$(C_6H_5)_2N-N(C_6H_5)_2 \Longrightarrow 2(C_6H_5)_2N$$

When the solution is diluted, the colour deepens, thereby showing increased dissociation; the colour also deepens on warming and fades on cooling. That we are dealing with a free radical is shown, apart from the colour phenomena (the colour intensity does not obey Beer's law), by the immediate reaction of the substance (in solution) with e.g., nitric oxide, a reaction which is characteristic of free radicals:

$$(C_6H_5)_2N^{\bullet} + NO \xrightarrow{\cdot} (C_6H_5)_2N$$
—NO

The stability of this free hydrazine radical is believed to be due to its being a resonance hybrid (cf. triphenylmethyl, p. 703).

Triphenylamine (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>3</sub>N, may be prepared by the reaction between

sodiophenylamine and bromobenzene:

$$(C_6H_5)_2N^-Na^+ + C_6H_5Br \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_3N + NaBr$$

A better method of preparation is the Ullmann reaction; diphenylamine, iodobenzene, potassium carbonate and a little copper powder are heated in nitrobenzene solution:

$$2(C_6H_5)_2NH + 2C_6H_5I + K_2CO_3 \xrightarrow{Cu} 2(C_6H_5)_3N + CO_2 + 2KI + H_2O$$
 (82-85%)

Triphenylamine is a colourless crystalline solid, m.p. 127°, and is too weak a base to combine with acids. The decreasing basic character of aniline, diphenylamine and triphenylamine may be explained by the increasing number of resonating structures (reaching a maximum in triphenylamine), thereby decreasing the availability of the lone pair on the nitrogen atom.

Triphenylamine dissolves in concentrated sulphuric acid to give a blue

Benzylamine (α-aminotoluene), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·NH<sub>2</sub>, may be prepared by the reduction of phenyl cyanide or benzaldoxime:

$$C_6H_5\text{-}CN \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Na/C_2H_5OH}} C_6H_5\text{-}CH_2\text{-}NH_2 \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Na/C_2H_5OH}} C_6H_5\text{-}CH\text{-}N\text{-}OH$$

It may also be prepared by heating benzyl chloride with ammonia under pressure, or by the Hofmann reaction on phenylacetamide:

$$C_aH_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH_2 \xrightarrow{Br_g/KOH} C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH_2 + CO_2$$

Benzylamine is a colourless liquid, b.p. 185°, which resembles the aliphatic amines, and is best regarded (as far as the amino-group is concerned) as a phenyl-substituted methylamine; e.g., it differs from the primary aromatic amines in that it is soluble in water, basic (more so than aniline), and with nitrous acid does not form a diazonium salt but gives benzyl alcohol:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot NH_2 + HNO_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2OH + N_2 + H_2O$$

A special type of nucleophilic rearrangement is the *Hauser rearrangement* (1951–1956); this occurs with quaternised benzylamine:

(I) can be quaternised and the process repeated until all the ring positions are filled.

#### **Diamines**

The aromatic diamines may be prepared:

- 1. By reduction of dinitro-compounds.
- 2. By the reduction of nitroamines.
- 3. By the reduction of C-nitrosoamines.
- 4. By reducing an aminoazo-compound with sodium hyposulphite;

e.g., reduction of aminoazobenzene gives aniline and p-phenylenediamine:

The diamines are colourless or white crystalline solids which turn brown when exposed to the air. They are "diacid" bases, and their reactions are characterised by those of the three phenylenediamines.

o-Phenylenediamine (benzene-1: 2-diamine, 1: 2-diaminobenzene) is best prepared by reducing o-nitroaniline with zinc dust and aqueous ethanolic sodium hydroxide:

$$NH_{2} + 3Zn + H_{2}O \longrightarrow NH_{2} + 3ZnO$$
 (74-85%)

It is manufactured by reduction of o-nitroaniline with iron and dilute hydrochloric acid.

It is a white crystalline solid, m.p. 102°. The most characteristic property of o-diamines is the ease with which they form heterocyclic compounds.

(i) When o-phenylenediamine is treated with ferric chloride solution, a dark red colour is produced due to the formation of 2:3-diaminophenazine:

(ii) Benziminazoles are formed when o-phenylenediamine is heated with organic acids, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c|c} NH_2 + H \cdot CO_2H & \xrightarrow{-H_2O} & \begin{array}{c} NH \cdot CHO \\ NH_2 \end{array} & \xrightarrow{-H_2O} & \\ NH_2 & NH \end{array}$$

(iii) When o-phenylenediamine is treated with nitrous acid (a solution of the diamino-compound in acetic acid is treated with aqueous sodium nitrite), benztriazole is formed:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} NH_2 \\ NH_2 \\ \end{array} + HNO_2 & \xrightarrow{-H_2O} & \begin{array}{c} -H_2O \\ \end{array} \\ NH_2 \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c|c} N:N\cdot OH \\ \end{array} \\ NH_2 \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c|c} NH_2 \\ \end{array} \\ NN \\ NN \\ \end{array} (75-81\%)$$

(iv) o-Phenylenediamine condenses with α-dicarbonyl compounds to form quinoxalines; e.g., with glyoxal, quinoxaline is formed:

$$\begin{array}{c}
NH_2 \\
NH_2 \\
-
\end{array} + \begin{array}{c}
O = CH \\
O = CH
\end{array}
\longrightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
N \\
CH \\
N
\end{array} + 2H_2O$$

This reaction is used to identify o-diamines; the  $\alpha$ -dicarbonyl compound employed for this purpose is phenanthraquinone, resulting in the formation of a sparingly soluble phenazine derivative:

m-Phenylenediamine (benzene-1: 3-diamine, 1: 3-diaminobenzene) is best prepared by the reduction of m-dinitrobenzene with iron and hydrochloric acid:

$$NO_2$$
 $NH_2$ 
 $NH_2$ 
 $NH_2$ 
 $NH_2$ 
 $NH_2$ 
 $NH_2$ 

It is a white crystalline solid, m.p. 63°. The most characteristic reaction of m-phenylenediamine is the formation of brown dyes—Bismarck Brown—

when it is treated with nitrous acid; a monazo- and a bisazo-compound are formed:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} & & & & \\ \hline NH_2 & & & & \\ \hline NH_2 & & & \\ \hline NH_2 & & & \\ \hline NNH_2 & & \\ \hline NNH_3 & & \\ \hline NNH_4 & & \\ \hline NNH_5 & & \\ \hline NNH_$$

This reaction is used as a colorimetric method for the determination of nitrites in water; even when nitrites are present in traces, a yellow colour is produced. On the other hand, by dissolving *m*-phenylenediamine in concentrated hydrochloric acid, and by keeping the nitrous acid always in excess, both amino-groups may be diazotised to give the tetrazo-compound:

$$NH_2$$
  $N_2Cl$   $N_2Cl$   $N_2Cl$   $N_2Cl$   $N_2Cl$   $N_2Cl$   $N_2Cl$   $N_2Cl$   $N_2Cl$ 

m-Phenylenediamine is used in the preparation of dyes.

p-Phenylenediamine (benzene-1: 4-diamine, 1: 4-diaminobenzene) may be prepared by the reduction of p-nitroaniline or aminoazobenzene. It is a white crystalline solid, m.p. 147°. On vigorous oxidation it forms pbenzoquinone:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} NH_2 & O \\ \hline NH_2 & \hline \\ NH_2 & \hline \\ NH_2 & O \end{array}$$

p-Phenylenediamine can be diazotised in the ordinary way, and is used in the preparation of dyes.

#### QUESTIONS

1. Compare and contrast the reactions of PhNH2 and EtNH2.

2. How may primary aromatic amines be prepared? In your answer, discuss the advantages and disadvantages of the various reducing agents that may be used.

3. Starting with  $C_8H_6$  or PhMe, how would you prepare:—(a) o-, m- and p-nitro-toluidine, (b) o-, m- and p-nitro-toluidine, (c) p-aminobenzaldehyde, (d) PhNCS, (e) o-, m- and p-nitro-toluidine, (f) 2:6-dibromo-aniline, (g) 2:6-dibromo-p-phenylenediamine, (h) 2:4-dinitroaniline, (i) PhMeN·NH<sub>2</sub>, (j) PhNMe·CHO, (k) s-trimethylaniline, (l) 3-bromo-4-aminotoluene?

(e) PhNHMe, (f) PhNMe<sub>2</sub>, (g) Ph<sub>2</sub>NH?

5. Write an essay on the basic properties of aniline and its halogeno-, nitro-, and

 Write an account of the rearrangement of the N-substituted aniline compounds. 7. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when 7. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when PhNH<sub>2</sub>, PhNHMe and PhNMe<sub>2</sub>, are respectively treated with:—(a) HNO<sub>2</sub>, (b) MeI, (c) ArSO<sub>2</sub>Cl, (d) Ac<sub>2</sub>O, (e) CS<sub>2</sub>, (f) CHCl<sub>3</sub>, (g) chromic acid, (h) Ph·CHO, (i) H·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (f) Br<sub>2</sub>, (h) HNO<sub>3</sub>, (l) COCl<sub>2</sub>, (m) HCl and heat.

8. Write an account of the preparation and properties of (a) Ph<sub>2</sub>NH, (b) Ph<sub>3</sub>N,

9. Define and give examples of:—(a) the Schmidt reaction, (b) the Hofmann reaction, (c) the Hofmann rearrangement, (d) the Fischer-Hepp rearrangement, (e) the Ullmann reaction, (f) an anilide, (g) the Orton rearrangement.

10. Write an account of the preparation and properties of the three isomeric

phenylenediamines.

NH2? 11. How would you distinguish between PhNHEt, PhNMe2, and

12. Discuss the various methods for distinguishing between primary, secondary and tertiary aromatic amines.

#### READING REFERENCES

Olson et al., The Rearrangement of N-Chloroacetanilide, J. Amer. Chem. Soc., 1937, 59, 1613. Spring, Reactions of Aldehydes with Amines, Chem. Reviews, 1940, 26, 297.

Sidgwick, The Organic Chemistry of Nitrogen, Oxford Press (New Ed. by Taylor and Baker, 1937), Ch. 3, Aromatic Amines.

Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1942, 2nd ed.). Vol. I, Ch. 12, Re-

arrangements.

Dewar, The Mechanism of Benzidine-type Rearrangements and the Role of π-Electrons in Organic Chemistry, J.C.S., 1946, 406.

Hughes and Ingold, Aromatic Rearrangements, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1952, 6, 34.

Werner, Amination by Reduction, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1950, 42, 1661.

#### CHAPTER XXIV

### DIAZONIUM SALTS AND THEIR RELATED COMPOUNDS

WHEN a primary aliphatic amine is treated with nitrous acid, the nature of the product depends on the amine used (see p. 316); nitrogen is always evolved:

 $R\cdot NH_2 + HNO_2 \longrightarrow ROH + N_2 + H_2O$ 

When, however, a primary aromatic amine is treated with nitrous acid in a well-cooled solution, the product is an unstable compound known as a diazonium salt:

$$Ar\cdot NH_2 + HNO_2 + HCl \longrightarrow Ar\cdot N_2Cl + H_2O$$

Diazo-compounds may be obtained with primary aliphatic amines provided that the amino-group is attached to a carbon atom which is adjacent to a negative group such as acyl, carbalkoxy, or cyano; e.g., aminoacetic ester forms diazoacetic ester (p. 329):

$$\text{CH}_2(\text{NH}_2)\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \xrightarrow{\text{HNO}_2} \text{CHN}_2\text{-}\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$$

The formation of a diazonium compound by the interaction of sodium nitrite, an inorganic acid (usually) and a primary aromatic amine, in icecold solution, is known as diazotisation. This reaction was discovered by Griess in 1858.

The diazonium compounds are salts of the strong base diazonium hydroxide, Ar. N2OH, which has not yet been isolated, but is known in aqueous solution. Most diazonium salts of the inorganic acids are colourless solids, extremely soluble in water, and many, particularly the nitrate, are explosive (in the solid state). They form complex salts with many metallic salts, of which one of the most important is zinc chloride, (Ar N2)22+ZnCl42-. These complex salts are stable in solution, and hence offer a means of stabilising a diazonium salt solution.

The diazonium salts are very important synthetic reagents, being the starting point in the preparation of various aromatic compounds, dyes and drugs. As pointed out previously, the preparation of a diazonium salt in the solid state is usually a hazardous process. Fortunately, however, the aqueous solutions of the diazonium salts undergo practically all the necessary reactions (cf. the Grignard reagents).

There are various methods of preparing a solution of a diazonium salt, but the usual procedure is to dissolve (or suspend) the amine in excess dilute inorganic acid (usually hydrochloric or sulphuric) cooled in ice and to add slowly, with stirring, a cooled aqueous solution of sodium nitrite, the addition of which is completed when the reaction mixture produces a blue colour with potassium iodide-starch paper, thereby showing the presence of

When dealing with a mono-o- or p-substituted amine, e.g., nitro- or chloroamine, it is necessary to use a more concentrated acid (than for the unsubstituted amine) because of the weakened basic character of the amino-group (p. 570). An alternative method is to mix the amine and sodium nitrite in aqueous solution and to pour this on to a mixture of cracked ice and concentrated hydrochloric and to point this on to a finite of cracked ite and concentrated hydrochione acid. When dealing with di- $(o:o'-or\ o:p-)$  or tri-(o:o':p-) substituted amines, diazotisation may usually be effected by dissolving the amine in concentrated sulphuric acid and adding solid sodium nitrite, concentrated aqueous sodium nitrite, or sodium nitrite dissolved in concentrated sulphuric acid.

Tedder (1957) has shown that aromatic compounds containing activating groups may be converted directly to the diazonium salt by the action of excess of nitrous acid:

$$ArH + 2HNO_2 + HX \longrightarrow ArN_2X + 2H_2O + 2[O]$$

Deactivated aromatic nuclei, when treated with nitrosylsulphuric acid in the presence of mercuric sulphate as catalyst, are also converted to the diazonium salt.

The mechanism of diazotisation is still not settled, but it seems certain

that the rate-determining step involves the free base.

Hughes, Ingold et al. (1958) have studied the diazotisation of various aromatic primary amines in weakly acidic solutions containing small amounts of perchloric acid as the only strong acid. They studied the effect of changes in reaction conditions, including the addition of halide ion, and on their kinetic results it was found that the reaction could proceed by any of the following routes (depending on the amine and the conditions):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{NOX} \xrightarrow{ArN_{H_2}} \\ \text{HNO}_2 & \stackrel{\text{H}^+}{\longrightarrow} \\ \text{H}_2 \text{NO}_2^+ & \stackrel{\text{ArNH}_2}{\longrightarrow} \\ \text{Slow} & \text{ArNH}^* \text{NO} \longrightarrow \text{products} \\ \\ N_2 \text{O}_3 & \stackrel{\text{ArNH}_2}{\longrightarrow} \\ \\ \text{H}_2 \text{O} & \end{array}$$

Larkworthy (1959) has shown that with a given amine the mechanism of diazotisation depends on the extent of the acidity and the reactant concentration. This author has demonstrated that the active agent may be, e.g., NO+, NO·OH2+, NO·NO2, NO·OH.

Nomenclature. The name of the diazonium salt is obtained by adding diazonium chloride, diazonium sulphate, etc., to the name of the parent hydrocarbon, e.g., C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·N<sub>2</sub>Cl, benzenediazonium chloride;

CH<sub>3</sub>·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·N<sub>2</sub>HSO<sub>4</sub>, p-toluenediazonium sulphate.

Reactions of the diazonium salts. These may be divided into two groups: those which involve the liberation of nitrogen gas and the displacement of the diazo-group, -N2X, by another univalent group, and those in which the two nitrogen atoms are retained.

# REPLACEMENT REACTIONS

I. Replacement by hydroxyl. When a diazonium sulphate solution is boiled or steam distilled, the diazo-group is replaced by hydroxyl, e.g.,

$$C_6H_5\cdot N_2HSO_4 + H_2O \longrightarrow C_6H_5OH + N_2 + H_2SO_4$$
 (g.)

The solution should be fairly strongly acid in order to avoid coupling (p. 589) which leads to tar formation. The hydrolysis of diazonium salts has been improved by running the aqueous solution down a chilled tube in a vessel containing boiling 20 per cent. sulphuric acid through which steam is passing, e.g., o-toluenediazonium chloride gives o-cresol in 89 per cent. yield (Lambooy, 1950). This reaction occurs by the nucleophilic unimolecular mechanism (p. 524).

2. Replacement by hydrogen. Replacement of the diazo-group by hydrogen offers a means of preparing substituted aromatic compounds in which the substituents are in positions which they would not take up by direct substitution. According to Kornblum (1944, 1949), the most reliable method of replacing the diazo-group by hydrogen is by means of hypophosphorous acid. Furthermore, Kornblum et al. (1949) have shown that the aromatic primary amino-group may be selectively replaced by hydrogen in aliphatic-aromatic diamines by dissolving the diamine in hypophosphorous acid and adding sodium nitrite at 0-5°, e.g.,

$$NH_2$$
  $CH_2 \cdot NH_2$   $H_3PO_2$   $CH_2 \cdot NH_2$  (84%)

Another common method of replacing the diazo-group by hydrogen is to dissolve the amine in a mixture of ethanol and concentrated sulphuric acid, add sodium nitrite and then warm (sometimes in the presence of copper as catalyst). According to Griess (1864), benzenediazonium sulphate reacted as follows:

$${\rm C_6H_5 \cdot N_2HSO_4 + C_2H_5OH \longrightarrow C_6H_6 + CH_3 \cdot CHO + N_2 + H_2SO_4}$$

Remsen et al. (1887), however, showed that this was incorrect; the main product was shown to be phenetole together with a small amount of benzene. This was confirmed by Hantzsch et al. (1901) who obtained the following results in absolute ethanol:

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm C_6H_5 \cdot N_2Cl + C_2H_5OH \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot O \cdot C_2H_5 + C_6H_6} \\ {\rm (61\%)} \end{array}$$

When methanol was used instead of ethanol, no benzene was obtained at all, the product was anisole,  $C_6H_5\cdot O\cdot CH_3$  (70%). As a result of much work is appears that the amount of side-reactions, *i.e.*, formation of ether, depends on the structure of the diazonium salt and the nature of the alcohol used; *i.g.*, if a negative group is in the o-position, the diazo-group is replaced in good yield by hydrogen when ethanol is used. On the other hand, if methanol is used instead of ethanol, the main product is an aryl methyl ether; this offers a means of preparing methyl ethers:

# m-Bromotoluene

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_3 & CH_3 & CH_3 \\ Br & \xrightarrow{N_aNO_2} & D_{Br} & \xrightarrow{C_2H_4OH} & CH_3 \\ N_2HSO_4 & & N_2HSO_4 & & \end{array}$$

m-Nitrotoluene

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_3 & CH_3 & CH_3 \\ \hline NO_2 & \xrightarrow{N_aNO_2} & N_2HSO_4 & \hline \end{array} \\ NO_2 & \xrightarrow{C_2H_4OH} & NO_2 & (62-72\%) \\ \hline \end{array}$$

s-Tribromobenzene

The mechanism of the decomposition of diazonium salts with alcohols is uncertain. According to Hey and Waters (1937), the reaction takes place by a free-radical mechanism:

$$C_{6}H_{5}-N=N-Cl\longrightarrow C_{6}H_{5}\cdot +N_{2}+Cl\cdot$$

$$C_{6}H_{5}\cdot +CH_{3}\cdot CH_{2}OH\longrightarrow C_{6}H_{6}+CH_{3}\cdot \dot{C}HOH$$

$$CH_{3}\cdot \dot{C}HOH+Cl\cdot\longrightarrow CH_{3}\cdot CHO+HCl$$

$$C_{6}H_{5}\cdot +C_{2}H_{5}-O-H\longrightarrow C_{6}H_{5}-O-C_{2}H_{5}+H\cdot$$

$$H\cdot +Cl\cdot\longrightarrow HCl$$

$$C_{2}H_{5}-O-H+Cl\cdot\longrightarrow C_{2}H_{5}O\cdot +HCl$$

$$C_{6}H_{5}\cdot +C_{2}H_{5}O\cdot\longrightarrow C_{6}H_{5}\cdot O\cdot C_{2}H_{5}$$

Hey and Waters believe, however, that this free-radical decomposition is not generally produced in aqueous solution, but that their formation is possible in non-ionising solvents, e.g., ethanol, acetone, ethyl acetate, etc. When diazonium salts are decomposed in these solvents in the presence of metals, the metal is attacked to form an organo-metallic compound. This has been used to prepare aromatic derivatives of mercury, antimony, arsenic and tellurium.

Many reagents have been used to replace the diazo-group by hydrogen; the two usual methods have been described above. Roe et al. (1952) have now shown that this reaction can be carried out in reasonable yields by decomposing the fluoroborate in ethanol in the presence of zinc dust.

$$Ar \cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow Ar \cdot N_2BF_4 \xrightarrow{C_3H_5OH} ArH (47-85\%)$$

3. Replacement by halogen. (i) Sandmeyer reaction (1884). When a diazonium salt solution is run into a solution of cuprous halide dissolved in the corresponding halogen acid, the diazo-group is replaced by a halogen atom, e.g.,

The diazotisation may be carried out with hydrobromic acid, but in practice sulphuric acid is used, since it is cheaper and only slightly affects the yield of aryl bromide.

The important point to note in the Sandmeyer reaction is that it is the halogen joined to the copper that enters the nucleus. The mechanism of the reaction is uncertain. Cowdrey and Davies (1949) have investigated the reaction kinetics of the Sandmeyer reaction and suggest that the mechanism is (a) slow co-ordination of the terminal N atom of Ar·N<sub>2</sub><sup>+</sup> to the copper in the CuCl<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup> ion to form the complex Ar·N<sub>2</sub>·CuCl<sub>2</sub>, (b) decomposition of this to ArCl, or (c) further fast addition to it of Ar·N<sub>2</sub><sup>+</sup> to give [(Ar·N<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CuCl<sub>2</sub>)<sup>+</sup>, which either (d) decomposes to ArCl or (e) reacts with CuCl<sub>2</sub><sup>-</sup> to give Ar·N·N·Ar.

Pfeil et al. (1949) have obtained p-chloronitrobenzene in 98 per cent, yield by treating p-nitrobenzenediazonium chloride with cupric chloride in hydrochloric acid. It appears that cupric chloride is effective only if the diazotised amine contains a negative group.

(ii) Gattermann reaction (1890). This reaction is carried out by dissolving the amine in hydrochloric or hydrobromic acid, cooling, adding cooled aqueous sodium nitrite, and then warming the diazonium salt solution in the presence of copper powder, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
CH_3 & CH_3 & CH_3 \\
NH_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{NaNO}_2/\text{HBr}} & \nearrow N_2\text{Br} & \xrightarrow{\text{Cu}} & Br & (43-47\%)
\end{array}$$

Iodo-compounds may be prepared by boiling the diazonium salt solution with aqueous potassium iodide:

$$C_6H_5\cdot N_2Cl + KI \longrightarrow C_6H_5I + KCl + N_2$$
 (74-76%)

This is usually the best method for introducing iodine into the benzene ring. Fluoro-compounds may be prepared by the Balz-Schiemann reaction (1927). When borofluoric acid is added to a diazonium salt solution, the insoluble diazonium borofluoride is precipitated. This is collected by filtration, dried and heated gently:

$$C_6H_5\cdot N_2Cl + HBF_4 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot N_2BF_4 + HCl \longrightarrow C_6H_5F + N_2 + BF_3$$
 (51-57%)

Borofluoric acid may be prepared by adding hydrochloric acid to sodium borofluoride, or by dissolving boric acid in 50 per cent. hydrofluoric acid (contained in a lead vessel): the latter usually gives better yields

(contained in a lead vessel); the latter usually gives better yields.

Fluoro-compounds may also be prepared by dissolving the amine in cold anhydrous hydrofluoric acid, adding solid sodium nitrite and then allowing the solution to stand until the excess acid has evaporated; the residue consists of a mixture of aryl fluoride and sodium fluoride (Aelony, 1934):

$$\operatorname{Ar}\text{*}\operatorname{NH}_2 \xrightarrow{\operatorname{NaNO}_2/\operatorname{HF}} \operatorname{Ar}\text{*}\operatorname{N}_2\operatorname{F} \longrightarrow \operatorname{Ar}\text{*}\operatorname{F} + \operatorname{N}_2$$

4. Replacement by a cyano-group. This is a special case of the Sandmeyer and Gattermann reactions, and is carried out by treating a diazonium salt solution with cuprous cyanide dissolved in aqueous potassium cyanide or with aqueous potassium cyanide in the presence of copper powder:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5\cdot N_2C1 \xrightarrow{K_3Cu(CN)_4} C_6H_5\cdot CN + N_2 & (65\%) \\ C_6H_5\cdot N_2HSO_4 + KCN \xrightarrow{Cu} C_6H_5\cdot CN + KHSO_4 + N_2 & (60\%) \end{array}$$

5. Replacement by a nitro-group. This was originally carried out by treating a diazonium salt solution with an equivalent amount of nitrous acid in the presence of cuprous oxide:

$$C_6H_5\cdot N_2Cl + HNO_2 \xrightarrow{Cu_4O} C_6H_5\cdot NO_2 + N_2 + HCl$$

A better method is to decompose the diazonium borofluoride with aqueous sodium nitrite containing copper powder:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} NH_2 & N_2BF_4 & NO_2 \\ \hline NO_2 & NO_2 & NO_2 & NO_2 \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c|c} N_2BF_4 & NO_2 \\ \hline NO_2 & NO_2 & NO_2 \\ \end{array}$$

Hodgson and Marsden (1944) have found that the decomposition of a diazonium cobaltinitrite (Ar·N<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub><sup>3+</sup>Co(NO<sub>2</sub>)<sub>6</sub><sup>3-</sup>, in the cold, by aqueous sodium nitrite in the presence of cuprous oxide and copper sulphate gives nitro-compounds in yields higher than 60 per cent. The diazonium cobaltinitrite is prepared by adding sodium cobaltinitrite to a diazonium salt solution previously neutralised with calcium carbonate; the yield is almost quantitative.

Ward et al. (1960) have shown that in certain cases the addition of the diazonium salt solution to sodium nitrite solution containing sodium hydrogen carbonate gives good yields of nitro-compound, e.g., o-nitroaniline gives

o-dinitrobenzene (97 per cent. yield).

6. Replacement by an arsonic acid group, AsO<sub>3</sub>H<sub>2</sub>. One method is Bart's reaction (1910). This is carried out by decomposing a diazonium salt with sodium arsenite in the presence of a copper salt, e.g., phenylarsonic acid:

$$\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{*}\text{N}_2\text{Cl} + \text{Na}_3\text{AsO}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{CuSO}_4} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{*}\text{AsO}_3\text{Na}_2 + \text{N}_2 + \text{NaCl} \xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} \xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} \text{(39-45\%)}$$

The yield may be increased by buffering the solution with sodium carbonate

(Blas, 1940).

An alternative method to the Bart reaction is to add a suspension of a diazonium borofluoride to an aqueous solution of sodium meta-arsenite in the presence of a small amount of cuprous chloride (Ruddy et al., 1942):

$$\begin{array}{l} C_6H_5\text{*}N_2BF_4 + NaAsO_2 + H_2O \xrightarrow{CuCl} \\ C_6H_5\text{*}AsO_3H_2 + NaF + N_2 + BF_3 \end{array} \tag{58\%}$$

7. Replacement by an aryl group. This may be carried out by treating a diazonium sulphate with ethanol and copper powder, e.g., diphenyl from benzenediazonium sulphate:

$$2C_6H_5\cdot N_2HSO_4 \xrightarrow{C_8H_8OH} C_6H_5\cdot C_6H_5 + 2N_2 + 2H_2SO_4$$
 (25%)

This is really a special case of the Gattermann reaction. Alternatively, a diaryl may be prepared by adding an aromatic compound to an *alkaline* solution of a diazonium salt, e.g., p-bromodiphenyl from p-bromobenzene-diazonium chloride and benzene:

This method of preparation is known as the Gomberg reaction (1924), and experiment has shown that whatever is the nature of a substituent in the second component, o- or p-substitution always occurs; e.g., benzenediazonium chloride forms p-nitrodiphenyl when treated with nitrobenzene:

$$N_2$$
Cl +  $NO_2$   $N_3$ OH  $NO_2$ 

This anomalous orienting effect of the nitro-group led Hey et al. (1934) to suggest that the reaction takes place by a free-radical mechanism:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5\cdot N_2Cl \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot + N_2 + Cl\cdot \\ C_6H_5\cdot + C_6H_5\cdot NO_2 \longrightarrow \begin{array}{@{}c@{}} \\ \end{array} \end{array} \begin{array}{@{}c@{}} NO_2 + H\cdot \\ \end{array}$$

The Gomberg reaction is very useful for closing rings.

Arylation with diazonium salts may also be carried out by the Meerwein reaction (1939). Diazonium salts react with compounds containing an activated ethylenic bond to give arylated products. The reaction is carried out in acetone solution in the presence of sodium acetate and a cupric salt, e.g., benzenediazonium chloride and cinnamic acid give stilbene:

$$C_6H_5N_2Cl + C_6H_5\cdot CH = CH\cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow$$

$$C_6H_5$$
·CH=CH· $C_6H_5$  +  $N_2$  +  $CO_2$  + HCl

The mechanism of this reaction is believed to be a free-radical one.

8. Replacement by a chloromercuri-group. This is an example of indirect mercuration (cf. p. 540), and may be carried out by heating the double compound of a diazonium chloride and mercuric chloride in acetone or ethanol solution with copper powder:

$$Ar \cdot N_2Cl \cdot HgCl_2 + 2Cu \longrightarrow Ar \cdot HgCl + N_2 + 2CuCl$$
 (40%)

By this means it is possible to prepare the mercuri-compounds of aromatic hydrocarbons, aryl halides, nitro-compounds, amines, phenols, acids and esters. If the double compound is heated in acetone solution with copper powder and then with copper powder in aqueous ammonia, the diaryl mercury compound is obtained:

$${\rm 2Ar}{\cdot}{\rm N_2Cl}{\cdot}{\rm HgCl_2} + {\rm 6Cu} \longrightarrow {\rm Ar_2Hg} + {\rm Hg} + {\rm 6CuCl} + {\rm N_2}$$

The diazo-group may be replaced by many other groups, e.g.,

(i) 
$$Ar \cdot N_2Cl \xrightarrow{CuSCN} Ar \cdot SCN$$

(iv) 
$$Ar \cdot N_2 HSO_4 + SO_2 + Cu \longrightarrow Ar \cdot SO_2 H + N_2 + CuSO_4$$

(v) 
$$Ar \cdot N_2Cl + S:C \stackrel{SK}{\bigcirc C_2H_5} \longrightarrow S:C \stackrel{SAr}{\bigcirc C_2H_5} \xrightarrow{H_2O} ArSH$$

(vi) Beech (1954) has shown that formaldoxime reacts with diazonium salts to give products which, on hydrolysis, yield aldehydes. Other oximes, under similar conditions, give alkyl aryl ketones (R = H or R):

$$Ar^*N_aCl + R^*CH = NOH \xrightarrow{NaOH} Ar^*CR = NOH \xrightarrow{H_aO} Ar^*CO^*R$$

In certain cases, diazotisation may lead to abnormal reactions; e.g.,

Diazotisation of o-diamines produces triazoles (p. 579).

(ii) Treatment of m-phenylenediamine with nitrous acid gives Bismarck Brown (p. 579).

# REACTIONS OF THE DIAZONIUM SALTS IN WHICH THE NITROGEN ATOMS ARE RETAINED

I. When bromine and hydrobromic acid are added to a diazonium salt solution, a crystalline precipitate of diazonium perbromide, Ar NaBra, is obtained. This, on heating, forms the aryl bromide. On the other hand, if the perbromide is treated with aqueous ammonia, the azide, Ar N<sub>3</sub>, is produced.

Phenyl azide may also be prepared by the action of hydrazoic acid on

nitrosobenzene (Maffei et al., 1954):

$$C_6H_5\cdot NO + 2HN_3 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot N_3 + H_2O + 2N_2$$
 (92%)

2. When reduced with stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid, or with sodium sulphite, diazonium salts form phenylhydrazines:

$$Ar \cdot N_2Cl + 4[H] \xrightarrow{SnCl_2/HCl} Ar \cdot NH \cdot NH_2 \cdot HCl$$

If vigorous reducing agents are used, e.g., zinc and hydrochloric acid, the product is an aromatic amine:

$$\text{Ar-N}_2\text{Cl} \xrightarrow{\text{Zn/HCl}} \text{[Ar-NH-NH}_2] \xrightarrow{\text{Zn/HCl}} \text{Ar-NH}_2 + \text{NH}_3$$

3. Diazonium salts readily undergo coupling reactions. This is the reaction between a diazonium salt and another substance containing a labile hydrogen, the result being the formation of an azo-compound.

The most important groups of compounds that couple with diazonium salts are phenols, naphthols and primary, secondary and tertiary aromatic amines; e.g., benzenediazonium chloride couples with phenol to form phydroxyazobenzene:

$$N_2$$
Cl + OH  $\rightarrow$  N=N-OH + HCl

With primary and secondary amines, coupling may take place at the nitrogen atom to form diazoamino-compounds (N-azo-compounds), or directly with the nucleus to form aminoazo-compounds (C-azo-compounds). Generally, the nature of the amino-compound and the pH of the solution decide which type of coupling takes place (see p. 596).

Compounds containing an active methylene group, e.g., acetoacetic ester, and certain hydrocarbons, e.g., mesitylene, isodurene, butadiene, also couple with diazonium salts. The mechanism for the reaction between E.A.A. and benzene-diazonium chloride is believed to be:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5-N=N^++\bar{C}H(COMe)\cdot CO_2Et\xrightarrow{NaOH} \\ \\ C_6H_5-N=N-CH(COMe)\cdot CO_2Et\longrightarrow C_6H_5-NH-N=C \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} COMe \\ CO_2Et \end{array}$$

This coupling reaction is often used to detect the presence of the enolic form in the keto-enol mixtures, and is then referred to as the Japp-Klingermann reaction (1887).

Simple diazonium salts do not couple with hydrocarbons, but the nitroderivatives couple readily; e.g., diazotised picramide (s-trinitroaniline) couples with mesitylene:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array} + \text{CIN}_2 \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{NO}_2 \\ \text{NO}_2 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{NO}_2} \text{NO}_2 \end{array}$$

With phenols, coupling is best carried out in faintly alkaline solution; with amines, in faintly acid solution. The azo-group enters mainly the p-position to the hydroxyl or amino-group, but if this position is occupied, coupling takes place in the o-position; it never occurs in the m-position; e.g., p-cresol gives the o-azo-compound:

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \\
+ C_6 H_5 \cdot N_9 CI \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \\
\text{CH}_3
\end{array}$$

It has also been found that the rate of coupling is increased if the diazonium salt contains a negative group such as nitro-, sulphonic acid, or chlorine (cf. coupling with hydrocarbons, above).

When an excess of diazonium salt is used, the bisazo- (o- and  $\phi$ -) and the

trisazo-compound may be formed:

Experiment has shown that the introduction of a second azo-group is facilitated by the presence of an alkyl group in the p-position to the hydroxyl group, or by two hydroxyl groups in the m-positions; e.g., resorcinol readily forms the trisazo-derivative:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} & \text{OH} & \text{OH} \\ \text{OH} & \xrightarrow{\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{N}_2} & \text{OH} & \xrightarrow{\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{N}_2} & \text{OH} \\ \text{N}_2\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 & \text{N}_2\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 & \text{N}_2\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \end{array}$$

The introduction of the second (and third) azo-group takes place more slowly than the first, and so it is possible to introduce two (or three) different azo-groups.

When a compound contains a hydroxyl and an amino-group in the p-positions, the amino-group directs coupling to the o-position in acid solution

and the hydroxyl group to the o-position in alkaline solution:

$$\begin{array}{c|ccccc} OH & OH & OH \\ \hline & N_2 \cdot Ar & \xrightarrow{Ar \cdot N_2 Cl} & & Ar \cdot N_2 \cdot Cl \\ \hline & NH_2 & & NH_2 & & NH_2 \end{array}$$

Unusual cases of coupling may occur when the phenol contains a carboxyl or a sulphonic acid group in the p-position to the hydroxyl group, the carboxyl or sulphonic acid group being replaced by an azo-group; e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} & \text{OH} \\ & & \text{OH} \\ & & \\$$

The coupling reaction with 2-naphthol is used to detect the presence of a primary aromatic amine. The compound is treated with sodium nitrite in acid solution, and this solution is added to an alkaline solution of 2-naphthol. A red precipitate of azo-2-naphthol (insoluble in alkali) shows that the original compound was a primary aromatic amine; e.g., benzenediazonium chloride forms 1-phenylazo-2-naphthol:

$$OH + C_6H_5 \cdot N_2CI \xrightarrow{N_2 \cdot C_6H_5} OH$$

The mechanism of coupling is still a subject of discussion. Recent work indicates that coupling takes place by direct attack at the carbon atom, the

active components in the coupling reaction being the diazonium cation and the free amine or the phenoxide ion (Wistar and Bartlett, 1941; Hauser and Breslow, 1941):

$$C_{6}H_{5}-\overset{\cdot}{N}=\overset{\cdot}{N^{+}}+\overset{\cdot}{\underbrace{N^{+}}}\overset{\cdot}{\underbrace{N^{+}}}(CH_{3})_{2}\overset{-}{\longrightarrow}C_{6}H_{5}-\overset{\cdot}{N}=\overset{\cdot}{N}-\overset{\cdot}{\underbrace{N^{+}}}\overset{\cdot}{\underbrace{N^{+}}}(CH_{3})_{2}\overset{-}{\longrightarrow}C_{6}H_{5}-\overset{\cdot}{N}=\overset{\cdot}{N}-\overset{\cdot}{\underbrace{N^{+}}}\overset{\overset$$

The phenoxide ion also undergoes the resonance effect in a similar manner:

Structure of the diazonium salts. Griess (1864) believed that each nitrogen atom in benzenediazonium chloride was attached to the benzene ring, and he proposed the formula C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>—N=N<H. Kekulé (1866), however, believed that only one of the two nitrogen atoms was directly attached to the ring, his reason being that diazonium salts are converted into monosubstituted derivatives of benzene, e.g., monohydric phenols, monohalogen derivatives, etc., i.e., the N2Cl group is replaced by a univalent radical. Kekulé also suggested that the structure of benzenediazonium chloride was similar to its best-known derivatives, the azo-compounds, the structure of which was known to be Ar—N=N—Ar'. Kekulé therefore proposed the formula  $C_6H_5$ —N=N—Cl, arguing that the attachment of the chlorine

atom to N was shown by the fact that the coupling reaction of benzenediazonium chloride produced the azo-compounds.

The attachment of only one nitrogen atom to the benzene ring was proved by Langfurth (1878), who showed that the tetrabromo-sulphonic acid of aniline yields a diazo-compound in which the four bromine atoms and the

sulphonic acid group are still present.

In 1869, Blomstrand suggested the formula C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>.N:N, his reason being that since the diazonium salts closely resembled the ammonium salts (in basic character, solubility in water, etc.), both must contain quinquevalent nitrogen. Blomstrand also thought that this formula readily explained the formation of a diazonium salt from a primary aromatic amine:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} C_{\mathbf{6}}H_{5} - N & \stackrel{H}{\underset{Cl}{H}} + O \\ N & \stackrel{}{\underset{Cl}{H}} + HO \end{array} N \longrightarrow C_{\mathbf{6}}H_{5} - N = N + 2H_{2}O$$

In modern terminology this formula is written C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>—N≡N:}Cl<sup>-</sup>.

Electrical conductivity measurements by Goldschmidt (1890) showed that diazonium salts dissociated into two ions, thus supporting Blomstrand's formula. Strecker (1871) upheld Blomstrand's formula on the grounds of dissimilarity between the properties of the diazonium compounds and the azo-compounds. The former are unstable (and explosive in the solid state), whereas the latter are very stable; hence the structures of the two compounds must be completely different. Le Fèvre et al. (1955) have obtained evidence from the infrared absorption spectra of diazonium salts that a triple bond is present.

In 1892, von Pechmann proposed the nitrosamine structure, Ar NH NO. for the diazonium hydroxides, basing his arguments on the fact that toluenediazonium chloride gave nitrosobenztoluidide when treated with benzoyl chloride and aqueous sodium hydroxide:

$$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C}_6 \text{H}_4 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{NO} + \text{C}_6 \text{H}_5 \cdot \text{COCI} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C}_6 \text{H}_4 \cdot \text{N(NO)} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{C}_6 \text{H}_5 + \text{HCI}$$

In 1894, the problem of the structure of the diazonium compounds was further complicated by the discovery of two forms of the diazoates (diazotates); one was called the n-diazoate, and the other the isodiazoate. Von Pechmann proposed structural isomerism to account for their existence, suggesting that the n-diazoate was the salt of normal diazohydroxide, Ar·N:H·OH, and that the isodiazoate was the salt of isodiazohydroxide, which he believed to have the nitrosamine structure. Ar. NH. NO.

In 1895, Hantzsch, who was influenced by his work on the aromatic oximes (p. 666), proposed geometrical isomerism to account for the existence of the two forms of the diazoates. He adopted the Kekulé formula, since this can give rise to geometrical isomerism (assuming there is no free rotation about an N=N double bond). Geometrical isomerism is not possible with the Blomstrand formula (cf. the acetylenic dicarboxylic acids, p. 428). According to Hantzsch, the "diazo-compounds" (the name originally given to them by Griess) have the Blomstrand formula in acid solution, and these Hantzsch called the *diazonium salts*, *i.e.*, diazonium salts have the formula  $[Ar-N\equiv N]^+X^-$ , where X is Cl, Br, HSO<sub>4</sub>, NO<sub>3</sub>, etc. These are the salts of *diazonium hydroxide*,  $[Ar-N\equiv N]^+OH^-$ , which has never been isolated. When a diazonium salt solution is made alkaline, the diazonium hydroxide liberated rapidly rearranges to the diazohydroxide, the salts of which Hantzsch called the diazoates (diazotates). The mechanism of these changes may be as follows:

$$[Ar-N \equiv N:]^+Cl^- \xrightarrow{NaOH} [Ar-N \equiv N:]^+OH^-$$

$$Ar-N \equiv N: \longleftrightarrow Ar-N \equiv N: \xrightarrow{OH^-} Ar-N = N-OH \xrightarrow{NaOH} \longrightarrow [Ar-N \equiv N-O:]^-Na^+$$

These diazoates exist in two geometrical isomeric forms, the syn-(cis-) and anti-(trans-):

The syn-form, the n-diazoate, is produced in weakly alkaline solution and is unstable, slowly changing into the anti-form, the isodiazoate; this change is accelerated by making the solution strongly alkaline. Hantzsch found that one form produces dyes with phenols and amines far more readily than the other, and assumed that the syn-isomer was the reactive form (cisisomers contain more internal energy than the trans).

This led to a controversy between Hantzsch and Bamberger, who supported the theory of structural isomerism (of von Pechmann). Hantzsch supported his contentions by making use of physico-chemical methods, a procedure rarely used before in organic chemistry; and in 1912, Bamberger

agreed with Hantzsch.

In 1926, Angeli reopened the question by proposing structural isomerism

for the existence of the two diazoates, suggesting that the n-diazohydroxide

was Ar-N=NH and the isodiazohydroxide, Ar-N=N·OH. Hantzsch once again attempted to defend his theory of geometrical isomerism, but this time he was not so successful as against Bamberger. At the present time, chemists have reverted to the two original schools of thought, the geometrical isomerism of Hantzsch and the structural isomerism of either von Pechmann or Angeli; e.g., Hodgson and Marsden (1945) believe:

(i) that the solid syn-(n-) diazoates are represented by the formula Ar N=NOM (where M is a metal), and in aqueous solution hydrolyse to give

an equilibrium mixture of diazohydroxide and diazonium hydroxide:

$$Ar \cdot N = NOM \xrightarrow{H_9O} Ar \cdot N = NOH \rightleftharpoons Ar \cdot N_2^+ + OH^-$$

(ii) that the anti-(iso-) diazotes are either nitrosamines Ar·N(NO)}M, or equilibrium mixtures in alkaline solution of the ionised n-diazoate and nitrosamine:

$$Ar\cdot N=NO\}M^+ \Leftrightarrow Ar\cdot N(NO)\}M^+$$

The strongest evidence brought forward by Hantzsch in favour of geometrical isomerism was the existence of two diazosulphonates and two diazocyanides.

The diazosulphonates. When a solution of a diazonium salt is treated with a cold alkaline solution of potassium sulphite, an orange or red precipitate is obtained. This compound couples immediately with phenols, is oxidised by iodine to the diazonium sulphate, and liberates sulphur dioxide when treated with inorganic acids. On standing in solution, this reactive form changes to a stable form which is paler in colour, does not couple with phenols, is not oxidised by iodine, and does not liberate sulphur dioxide when treated with inorganic acids.

Bamberger (1874) suggested that the labile and stable forms were structural isomers, the former being the *sulphite*, Ar·N<sub>2</sub>·O·SO<sub>2</sub>K, and the latter the *sulphonate*, Ar—N=N—SO<sub>3</sub>K. Hantzsch found that the absorption spectra of both compounds were similar, and therefore believed that the labile and stable forms were geometrical isomers, the former being the syn- and the latter the anti-.

Marsden and Hodgson (1943), however, have reopened the question. These authors argue that it is difficult to explain the ease of coupling of the syn- and the impossibility of coupling of the anti-diazosulphonate if they are stereoisomers. On the other hand, if the compounds are structural isomers, then the difference in coupling power is explained by the ready rupture of the N-O bond in the syn-form (sulphite) and the non-rupture of the N—S bond in the anti-form (sulphonate). Furthermore, these authors argue that the liberation of nitrogen from the syn- but not from the anti-form by copper sulphate is in accord with the sulphite formula for the syn-form; it is oxidised to the diazonium sulphate, followed by decomposition by the cuprous salt thereby produced.

The diazocyanides. When a diazonium salt solution is treated with potassium cyanide in slightly acid solution at temperatures below  $-5^{\circ}$ , a yellow precipitate The physical properties of these compounds, e.g., insolubility, colour and non-electrolytes, appear to indicate that they cannot be diazonium salts. Hantzsch therefore believed these compounds to have the structure Ar-N=N-CN (this azo-structure would account for their physical properties).

When allowed to stand in the solid state or in ethanolic solution, the yellow precipitate turns red. This red form may also be prepared by adding potassium

cyanide to a diazonium salt solution at temperatures above oo.

Hantzsch and Schultze (1895) prepared two forms of p-chloro- and p-nitrobenzenediazocyanides and showed that one form, the labile yellow form, coupled with 2-naphthol, and was decomposed into aryl cyanide by copper powder. The other form, the stable red form, did not couple with 2-naphthol, and was not attacked by copper. Hantzsch proposed geometrical isomerism to explain the existence of the two forms, the labile being the syn-, and the stable, the anti-:

$$CIC_6H_4-N$$
 $N\equiv C-N$ 
 $(syn-form)$ 
 $CIC_6H_4-N$ 
 $N-C\equiv N$ 
 $(anti-form)$ 

Orton (1903) believed that the labile form was the cyanide Ar—N—N—CN, and the stable form the *iso*cyanide, Ar—N—NC. This, however, could not be reconciled with the work of Hantzsch and Schultze, who had shown that the labile and stable diazocyanides, on boiling with acid, both gave the same acid amide and same carboxylic acid. These hydrolytic products are characteristic of cyanides; *iso*cyanides give amines.

$$Ar \cdot N = N \cdot CN \xrightarrow{H_2O} Ar - N = N - CO \cdot NH_2 \xrightarrow{H_2O} Ar - N = N - CO_2H$$

Le Fèvre et al. (1938, 1947, 1949) examined the dipole moments, refractivities, magnetic optical rotatory powers, diamagnetic susceptibilities and ultraviolet spectra of the diazocyanides, and believe that their results agree with geometrical isomerism. Sheppard and Sutherland (1947), from an examination of the vibrational spectra of some pairs of diazocyanides, also believe that the diazocyanides are geometrical isomers (both forms being the cyanide).

In 1939, Stephenson and Waters claimed that the reactivity, *i.e.*, the coupling power, of the *syn*-diazocyanide is associated with the fact that in ionising solvents, the covalent diazocyanide (I) exists in equilibrium with the diazonium cyanide (II) to which the ionic reactivity (*i.e.*, coupling) is due, whereas the *anti*-diazo-

cyanides do not yield (II) in this way:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
Ar - N & \rightleftharpoons & Ar - N^{+} \\
NC - N & \rightleftharpoons & N \\
(I) & (II)
\end{array}$$

**Hydrazines.** The most important substituted hydrazine is **phenyl-hydrazine**,  $C_6H_5$ 'NH·NH<sub>2</sub>. This may be prepared by the reduction of benzenediazonium chloride with stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid:

$$C_6H_5\cdot N_2Cl + 4[H] \xrightarrow{SnCl_2/HCl} C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot NH_2\cdot HCl \quad (90\%)$$

The reduction may also be carried out with sodium sulphite; the benzene-diazonium chloride is poured into aqueous sodium sulphite, concentrated hydrochloric acid is added, and the solution is then heated on a water-bath. The mechanism of the reduction may be as follows, sodium benzene-anti-diazosulphonate, (III), and the sodium salt of phenylhydrazine sulphonate, (IV), being intermediate products:

$$\begin{array}{c} [C_6H_5\cdot N!N]^+\text{Cl}^- \xrightarrow{Na_9SO_6} C_6H_5 - N \xrightarrow{H_9SO_6} \\ & N - SO_3Na & \text{(III)} \\ \\ [C_6H_5\cdot N\cdot NH\cdot SO_3Na] \xrightarrow{H_2O} C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot NH\cdot SO_3Na + H_2SO_4 \xrightarrow{HCl} \\ \\ SO_3H & \text{(IV)} \\ \\ C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot NH_2\cdot HCl \xrightarrow{NaOH} C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot NH_2 & (80-84\%) \end{array}$$

Phenylhydrazine is a colourless liquid when freshly distilled, b.p. 241°. It is readily oxidised when exposed to the air. It is very slightly soluble in water but is very soluble in organic solvents. Phenylhydrazine is strongly basic and forms well-defined salts, e.g., phenylhydrazine hydrochloride,

C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·NH·NH<sub>2</sub>·HCl; these salts are relatively stable to atmospheric oxidation. Phenylhydrazine is a powerful reducing agent, reducing Fehling's solution in the cold:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot NH_2 + 2CuO \longrightarrow C_6H_6 + Cu_2O + N_2 + H_2O$$

Hardie *et al.* (1957) have described a new method of phenylation by oxidising phenylhydrazine with metallic oxides (preferably silver) in an aromatic solvent, *e.g.*,

$$\begin{array}{c} C_{6}H_{5}\text{\cdot}NH\text{\cdot}NH_{2} \xrightarrow{Ag_{3}O} [C_{6}H_{5}\text{\cdot}N=NH] \longrightarrow C_{6}H_{5}\text{\cdot} + N_{2} + H\text{\cdot} \\ \\ C_{6}H_{5}\text{\cdot}Ar & C_{6}H_{5}\text{\cdot}C_{6}H_{5} \\ (by\text{-product}) & (by\text{-product}) \end{array}$$

When reduced with vigorous reducing agents, e.g., zinc and hydrochloric acid, phenylhydrazine gives aniline and ammonia; this shows the structure of phenylhydrazine:

$$C_6H_5$$
·NH·NH<sub>2</sub> + 2[H]  $\xrightarrow{Z_{D/HCI}}$   $C_6H_5$ ·NH<sub>2</sub> + NH<sub>3</sub>

The most important reaction of phenylhydrazine is with carbonyl compounds to form *phenylhydrazones*, and with simple sugars to form *osazones*. These derivatives are usually well-defined crystalline solids, and so are useful for the identification of carbonyl compounds. Many phenylhydrazones are decomposed by strong inorganic acids to reform the carbonyl compound. When reduced with zinc and acetic acid, phenylhydrazones form primary amines:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot N:CH\cdot R+4[H]\longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NH_2+R\cdot CH_2\cdot NH_2$$

Phenylhydrazine is used for making antipyrine (p. 755).

Various derivatives of phenylhydrazine are used instead of phenylhydrazine, since these produce compounds which crystallise more readily, e.g., p-nitro, 2:4-dinitro- and p-bromophenylhydrazine. Of these, 2:4-dinitrophenylhydrazine is most commonly used, and this is prepared by the action of hydrazine sulphate and potassium acetate on 1-chloro-2:4-dinitrobenzene:

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{Cl} & \text{NH} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \\
\text{NO}_2 + \text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{H}_2 \text{SO}_4 & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO}_3 \text{K}} & \text{NO}_2 \\
\text{NO}_2 & \text{NO}_2
\end{array}$$
(80%)

It is a red crystalline solid, m.p. 194°.

# DIAZOAMINO- AND AMINOAZO-COMPOUNDS

Diazo-compounds have the structure Ar—N—N—Y, where Y is a group that is not attached to the nitrogen atom by carbon, Azo-compounds, on the other hand, have the structure Ar—N—N—Ar, each aryl group being attached to a nitrogen atom by carbon.

attached to a nitrogen atom by carbon.

Diazoaminobenzene, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·N=N·NH·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, is formed by the interaction of benzenediazonium chloride and aniline. It may be prepared by treating aniline hydrochloride solution with sodium nitrite just sufficient to diazotise

half of the aniline, and then adding sodium acetate:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5\cdot N_2Cl + C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + CH_3\cdot CO_2Na \longrightarrow \\ C_6H_5\cdot N = N\cdot NH\cdot C_6H_5 + NaCl + CH_3\cdot CO_2H \end{array} (82-85\%)$$

Diazoaminobenzene is often formed during the diazotisation of aniline, especially when the solution is only weakly acid. It exists in two forms, one as golden-yellow prisms, m.p. 98°, and the other, yellow prisms, m.p. 80°. Diazoaminobenzene explodes when heated rapidly, and is insoluble in water but soluble in ethanol. It is feebly basic and does not form stable salts. When boiled with dilute sulphuric acid, diazoaminobenzene liberates nitrogen forming phenol and aniline:

$$C_6H_5\text{-}N\text{:}N\text{-}NH\text{-}C_6H_5 + H_2O \xrightarrow{H_2SO_4} C_6H_5OH + N_2 + C_6H_5\text{-}NH_2$$

When boiled with concentrated hydrobromic acid, diazoaminobenzene forms bromobenzene and aniline, and when treated with sodium nitrite and hydrochloric acid, it forms benzenediazonium chloride.

When I molecule of aniline, in ethanol solution, is treated with 2 molecules of benzenediazonium chloride, bisdiazoaminobenzene is formed:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + 2C_6H_5\cdot N_2Cl \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot N(-N=N\cdot C_6H_5)_2 + 2HCl$$

A very important property of diazoaminobenzene is its tendency to rearrange to aminoazobenzene (see below).

Tautomerism of the diazoamino compounds. When benzenediazonium chloride is added to p-toluidine, the product obtained is the same as that formed by adding p-toluenediazonium chloride to aniline:

A. 
$$\langle N_2CI + NH_2 \rangle CH_3 \rightarrow$$

$$\langle N=N-NH- \rangle CH_3 + HCI$$
B.  $CH_3 \langle N_2CI + NH_2 \rangle \rightarrow$ 

$$CH_3 \langle N=N-NH- \rangle + HCI$$

Since the same product is obtained in reactions A and B, the explanation may be either that only one form, the *stable* form, is present, the other, the *labile* form, changing into the stable form; or that both forms are present in equilibrium, thereby forming a tautomeric system. Two compounds have been shown to be present as follows:

(i) By reduction with tin and hydrochloric acid. Reduction of A would (presumably) give aniline and p-tolylhydrazine, and B, p-toluidine and phenylhydrazine. In practice, all four compounds are obtained.

(ii) By hydrolysis with sulphuric acid. Hydrolysis of A would give phenol and p-toluidine, and B, p-cresol and aniline. Again, in practice, all four compounds are obtained.

These results therefore show that both A and B are present in equilibrium:

$$N=N-NH$$
 $CH_3 \Longrightarrow NH-N=N CH_3$ 
 $A$ 

Further support for the existence of this equilibrium mixture has been provided by Hardie et al. (1958). They showed that heating unsymmetrical diazoaminobenzenes in chlorobenzene at 150–160°, the latter underwent phenylation by a free-radical mechanism to give mixtures of amines and diaryls. The formation of these products shows that the diazoaminobenzenes undergo decomposition in both tautomeric forms:

$$\begin{array}{c} Ar \cdot N = N - NH \cdot Ar' \longrightarrow Ar \cdot + Ar'NH \cdot + N_{s} \\ \downarrow \\ Ar \cdot NH - N = N \cdot Ar' \longrightarrow ArNH \cdot + Ar' \cdot + N \end{array}$$

Thus four free radicals are produced, two aryl and two anilino, the former giving two diaryls with the solvent chlorobenzene and the latter two amines with the chlorobenzene.

This tautomeric system is known as the diazoamino triad system, the three nitrogen system, or the triazene system. Since such a system has never been separated into the two forms (as is the case when a mobile hydrogen atom is attached to a carbon atom), Hunter (1945) called this type of tautomerism mesohydric tautomerism.

**p-Aminoazobenzene** is formed when diazoaminobenzene is warmed at 30-40° with a small amount of aniline hydrochloride:

$$C_6H_5N=N-NH- \longrightarrow C_6H_5N=N- \longrightarrow NH_2 (80\%)$$

This isomeric change also takes place when the precipitate of diazoaminobenzene is left in contact with its mother liquor for several days.

If the p-position in the anilino-group is occupied, then the isomeric change occurs more slowly, the azo-group taking up the o-position to the aminogroup:

$$\texttt{C}_6 \texttt{H}_5 \cdot \texttt{N} = \texttt{N} - \texttt{N} + - \underbrace{\texttt{N}} + \underbrace{\texttt{C}} + \underbrace{\texttt{H}_5 \cdot \texttt{N}} + \underbrace{\texttt{N}} + \underbrace{\texttt{N}$$

The mechanism of diazoamino-aminoazo rearrangement is still uncertain; one proposed recently is that the diazoamino-compound accepts a proton from the catalyst (amine salt), and this intermediate breaks down into a diazonium cation and amine, these two then coupling in the p-position:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5-\dot{N}-\dot{N}=N-C_6H_5+C_6H_5\cdot\dot{N}H_3 \Longrightarrow \\ H & \begin{bmatrix} H \\ C_6H_5-\dot{N}-\dot{N}=N-C_6H_5 \end{bmatrix}^+ +C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 \\ H & \end{bmatrix} \\ C_6H_5\cdot NH_2+[C_6H_5-N\equiv N]^+ \longrightarrow C_6H_5-N=N-N+N+2 \\ \end{array}$$

Evidence for this mechanism is to be found in the fact that if the amine salt,

Ar\* $\mathrm{NH}_3$ }Cl<sup>-</sup>, is used as the catalyst instead of aniline hydrochloride, the product of the rearrangement consists of two azo-compounds,  $\mathrm{C}_6\mathrm{H}_5$ \* $\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{N}-\mathrm{C}_6\mathrm{H}_4$ \* $\mathrm{NH}_2$  and  $\mathrm{C}_6\mathrm{H}_5$ \* $\mathrm{N}=\mathrm{N}-\mathrm{Ar'}$ \* $\mathrm{NH}_2$  (Ar' is Ar less a hydrogen atom). This shows that the rearrangement is intermolecular (i.e., separates into parts), the  $\mathrm{C}_6\mathrm{H}_5$ \* $\mathrm{NH}_2$  and  $\mathrm{Ar}$ \* $\mathrm{NH}_2$  molecules competing for the diazonium cation (Kidd, 1937). This intermolecular mechanism is supported by Clusius et al. (1952) who showed that diazoaminobenzene containing <sup>15</sup>N reacts quantitatively with aniline hydrochloride according to the following equation:

$$^*$$
Ph·N=N-NH·Ph + 2PhNH<sub>3</sub>+  $\longrightarrow$  Ph·N=N·NH·Ph + 2PhNH<sub>3</sub>+

An interesting point here is that the PhN fragment of the azo-part of the molecule is set free. This is understandable on the basis of the tautomerism of diazoamino compounds (see previous section).

Aminoazobenzene forms brilliant orange-red plates, m.p. 126°. It is insoluble in water but may be rendered soluble by sulphonation (cf. p. 773). Aminoazobenzene is manufactured in large quantities for the preparation

of bisazo-dyes and indulines. Aminoazobenzene forms two series of salts with acids. When one equivalent of hydrochloric acid is used, the salt formed is yellow and unstable, and probably has the structure (I) (since this

has the same type of spectrum as azobenzene). When, however, a large excess of hydrochloric acid is used, the salt produced is dark violet and stable, and its structure is probably (II), *i.e.*, the salt of the quinone-iminohydrazone (see p. 775); the spectrum of this salt is different from that of azobenzene.

On vigorous reduction, aminoazobenzene is converted into aniline and

p-phenylenediamine:

If titanous chloride is used as the reducing agent, the reaction is quantitative, and so may be used for the volumetric determination of aminoazo-dyes.

Aminoazobenzene is oxidised by manganese dioxide and sulphuric acid

to p-benzoquinone.

Secondary amines behave similarly to aniline in their reaction towards diazonium salts; e.g., methylaniline couples with benzenediazonium chloride to form methyldiazoaminobenzene:

$$C_6H_5\cdot N_2Cl + C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot CH_3 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot N=N-N(CH_3)\cdot C_6H_5 + HCl$$

At the same time, however, C-azo-coupling takes place, some methyl-aminoazobenzene being formed:

$$C_6H_5\cdot N_2CI +$$
  $NH\cdot CH_3 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot N = N$   $NH\cdot CH_3 + HCI$ 

This is also formed by the rearrangement of methyldiazoaminobenzene. With tertiary amines, the formation of a diazoamino-compound is impossible; the aminoazo-compound is always formed by direct coupling in the p-position; e.g., dimethylaminoazobenzene from dimethylaniline and benzenediazonium chloride:

$$C_6H_5\cdot N_2Cl + \underbrace{\hspace{1cm}} N(CH_3)_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot N = N\underbrace{\hspace{1cm}} N(CH_3)_2 + HCl$$

Reduction of azo-compounds with sodium hyposulphite, or stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid offers a relatively simple method of preparing diamines (or amino-phenols) in a pure state; e.g., 2:5-diaminotoluene from m-toluidine:

It should be noted that the azo-compound, 4-amino-2-methylazobenzene, is formed by direct coupling with the nucleus. Generally, the diazoamino-compound (N-coupling) is formed by reaction between diazonium salts and

primary aromatic amines (cf. p. 595); m-toluidine and the naphthylamines

always form the C-azo-compound.

Azoxybenzene may be prepared by reducing nitrobenzene with methanolic sodium methoxide (which is oxidised to sodium formate). It may be conveniently prepared by refluxing nitrobenzene with alkaline sodium arsenite:

$$\begin{array}{c} 4 C_6 H_5 \cdot NO_2 + 3 As_2 O_3 + 18 NaOH \longrightarrow \\ O \\ + \\ 2 C_6 H_5 \cdot N = N \cdot C_6 H_5 + 6 Na_3 AsO_4 + 9 H_2 O \end{array} \tag{85\%}$$

Reduction of nitro-compounds with glucose in alkaline solution gives azoxy-compounds, e.g., nitrobenzene gives azoxybenzene (83 per cent. yield; Galbraith et al., 1951). Metallic thallium also reduces nitro-compounds in ethanolic solution to the corresponding azoxy-compounds (McHatton et al., 1953), e.g.,

$$2C_6H_5\cdot NO_2 + 6Tl + 6C_2H_5OH \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot N = N(O)\cdot C_6H_5 + 6TlOC_2H_5 + 3H_2O \quad (84\%)$$

Oxidation of aniline with peracetic acid also gives an 85 per cent. yield of

azoxybenzene (Greenspan, 1947).

Azoxybenzene is a yellow crystalline solid, m.p. 36°, insoluble in water but soluble in ethanol and ether. When warmed with iron filings, it is reduced to azobenzene. When reduced with ammonium sulphide, azoxybenzene gives hydrazobenzene, and with metal and acid it gives aniline.

When warmed with concentrated sulphuric acid, azoxybenzene rearranges to hydroxyazobenzene; this is an example of the Wallach transformation (1880). Gore *et al.* (1950) have shown that azoxybenzene gives 65 per cent. of *p*-hydroxyazobenzene when heated at 90° for 30 minutes with 83 per cent. sulphuric acid.

With 98 per cent. sulphuric acid at 25°, however, only 9.5 per cent. of phydroxyazobenzene was obtained, together with 58 per cent. of azobenzene and some other products. It was found that high temperatures increase the yield of the hydroxyazo-compound, and high concentrations of sulphuric acid increase the yield of the azo-compound. On the other hand, Badger et al. (1954) have isomerised a number of azoxy derivatives to o-hydroxyazo-derivatives exclusively (or almost exclusively) by exposure to sunlight. An intramolecular mechanism has been proposed for this ortho-rearrangement.

Formerly, the formula of azoxybenzene was believed to contain a three-membered ring (cf. V). This was shown to be incorrect by Angeli (1913), who

obtained two bromoazoxybenzenes when p-bromoazobenzene was oxidised with hydrogen peroxide in acetic acid:

If the structure of *p*-bromoazoxybenzene were (V), it would make no difference whether the bromine atom was in one ring or the other. If, however, the oxygen is attached to one or other nitrogen atom by a co-ordinate link, the structure is unsymmetrical and therefore two isomers are possible (III and IV).

$$\operatorname{Br} \bigvee_{(V)}^{O} \bigvee_{(V)}^{O}$$

Azoxybenzene exists in two forms which are geometrical isomers:

$$C_6H_5-N$$
 $C_6H_5-N$ 
 $C_6H_5-N$ 
 $C_6H_5-N$ 
 $C_6H_5$ 
 $C_6H_5-N$ 
 $C_6H_5$ 
 $C_6H_5-N$ 
 $C_$ 

This trans-isomer is "ordinary" azoxybenzene.

Azobenzene may be prepared by carefully warming azoxybenzene with three times its weight of iron filings, or by the reaction between nitrosobenzene and aniline:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NO + C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot N = N\cdot C_6H_5 + H_0O$$

It may be conveniently prepared by reducing nitrobenzene with sodium amalgam, alkaline sodium stannite, or best with zinc dust and methanolic sodium hydroxide:

$$2C_6H_5\cdot NO_2 + 8[H] \xrightarrow{Z_{D/NaOH}} C_6H_5\cdot N:N\cdot C_6H_5 + 4H_2O \quad (84-86\%)$$

Lithium aluminium hydride also reduces nitrobenzene to azobenzene. Another convenient preparation is to gently reflux hydrazobenzene (yield is 50 per cent. of each compound):

$$2C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot NH\cdot C_6H_5 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot N:N\cdot C_6H_5 + 2C_6H_5\cdot NH_6$$

Azobenzene crystallises in orange-red plates, m.p. 68°, insoluble in water but soluble in organic solvents. According to Hartley (1938), azobenzene exists as geometrical isomers, the *trans*-form being "ordinary" azobenzene:

It is of interest to note that the reduction of cis-azoxybenzene with lithium aluminium hydride gives trans-azobenzene (Badger et al., 1953).

Azobenzene is reduced by zinc dust and aqueous sodium hydroxide to hydrazobenzene, and by stannous chloride or titanous chloride in acid solution, and by alkaline sodium hyposulphite, to aniline. Azobenzene is

not reduced by sodium sulphide. Sodium hydrogen sulphite adds on to azobenzene to form a bisulphite compound:

$$C_6H_5\cdot N=N\cdot C_6H_5+NaHSO_3\longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot N(C_6H_5)\cdot SO_3Na$$

Azobenzene is oxidised by hydrogen peroxide in acetic acid to azoxybenzene. Oxidation of cis-azobenzene with perbenzoic acid gives cis-azoxybenzene. The trans-compound gives trans-azoxybenzene on oxidation in the dark, but in sunlight some cis-isomer is also obtained (Badger et al., 1953). The most outstanding property of the azo-compounds is their colour, and this is used to great advantage in the manufacture of azo-dyes.

Hydroxyazo-compounds (azophenols). The reaction between diazonium salts and phenols has been the subject of much research. Chemical evidence has been used to support the structure as hydroxyazo-compounds, e.g., 4-phenylazo-inaphthol (I), and as hydrazones (II):

$$\bigoplus_{(I)}^{\text{Ph}} \Longrightarrow \bigoplus_{(II)}^{\text{NHPh}} \bigoplus_{(III)}^{\text{NMPh}}$$

This compound has been prepared in two ways: (i) by direct coupling between benzenediazonium chloride and naphthol (corresponding to I); (ii) by reaction between phenylhydrazine and 1:4-naphthaquinone (corresponding to II). Kuhn et al. (1935), from ultraviolet spectra studies, concluded that both forms (I) and (II) existed in solution as a tautomeric equilibrium mixture. No evidence for tautomeric equilibrium has been found in the spectra of hydroxyazobenzenes or hydroxyazoanthracenes; the former behave spectrally as phenolic compounds (Burawoy et al., 1952), and the latter as hydrazones (Shingu, 1938; Ospenson, On the other hand, Fischer et al. (1959) have confirmed, by spectroscopic evidence, the existence of this equilibrium (I == II) in solution, but have also shown that, on cooling, the equilibrium shifts towards (II) in methylcyclohexane, or towards (I) in alcohol. These authors also showed that the alcoholic solution at -140° contains practically only the hydroxyazo-form as the trans-isomer (I) which, on irradiation with light, forms an equilibrium mixture with its cisisomer (III). Between -135° and -90°, the unstable cis-isomer (III) is converted into the stable trans-isomer (I) via (II). Morgan (1961) has shown, from infrared studies, the presence of an azo-hydrazone tautomerism both in the solid and in solutions of 1-arylazo-2-naphthols and 4-arylazo-1-naphthols. Furthermore, the equilibrium moves towards the hydrazone in polar solvents and under the influence of electron-withdrawing substituents in the aryl group.

Another problem of structure is that of the diazo-oxides. When o-hydroxy-benzenediazonium chloride (o-diazophenol) is treated with alkali, the diazo-oxide is formed, the structure of which was thought to be an oxide ring:

A quinonoid structure has also been suggested. It now appears that the properties of o-diazophenol are best explained on the basis of a resonance hybrid (involving the quinonoid structure):

$$\bigcirc \stackrel{\vec{h}=\vec{h}:}{\bigcirc o} \leftrightarrow \bigcirc \stackrel{\vec{h}=\vec{h}:}{\bar{o}}$$

Similarly, p-diazophenol is also believed to be a resonance hybrid:

$$0 = \sqrt{\hat{N}} = \hat{N}: \longleftrightarrow \hat{0} = \sqrt{\hat{N}} = \hat{N}:$$

**Hydrazobenzene** (s-diphenylhydrazine),  $C_6H_5\cdot NH\cdot NH\cdot C_6H_5$ , may be prepared by reducing nitrobenzene or azobenzene with zinc dust and aqueous sodium hydroxide. It is also formed when azoxybenzene is reduced electrolytically; azobenzene has never been isolated as an intermediate product in this reduction.

Hydrazobenzene is a colourless crystalline solid, m.p. 126°. It is slowly oxidised by atmospheric oxygen to azobenzene; this oxidation is rapid with sodium hypobromite. Hydrazobenzene is reduced by stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid to aniline, and when heated, forms azobenzene and aniline (see azobenzene, above).

The most important reaction of hydrazobenzene is its rearrangement to benzidine (4:4'-diaminodiphenyl) when warmed with hydrochloric acid. The rearrangement, however, is not completely in the p:p'positions; some diphenyline (2:4'-diaminodiphenyl) is also formed:

$$NH-NH$$
 $NH_2$ 
 $NH_2 + NH_2$ 

When the p-position of one nucleus is occupied, o: p'-coupling (i.e., diphenyline formation) or the o- and p-semidine transformations take place, according to the nature of the group in the p-position. When a methyl, methoxyl, or an ethoxyl group is in the p-position, the main product is an o-semidine, accompanied by a small amount of the p-semidine (in the case of the methyl group, apparently only the o-semidine is formed); e.g., p-methoxyhydrazobenzene gives mainly anilinomethoxyaniline (I) (the o-semidine), together with some methoxyanilinoaniline (II) (the p-semidine):

On the other hand, if the p-position is occupied by Cl, Br, I, or N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, the main product is a diphenyline derivative, accompanied by a small amount of o-and p-semidines; e.g., p-chlorohydrazobenzene gives chlorodiphenyline (III), anilinochloroaniline (IV) (the o-semidine), and chloroanilinoaniline (V) (the

$$\begin{array}{c|c} NH-NH & NH_2 \\ \hline \\ CI & \\ \hline \\ CI & \\ \hline \\ (III) & \\ \hline \\ (IV) & \\ \hline \\ (IV) & \\ \hline \\ (IV) & \\ \hline \\ NH_2 \\ \hline \\ NH_2 \\ \hline \\ NH_2 \\ \hline \\ (IV) & \\ \hline \\$$

When both p-positions are occupied, then only the o-semidine transformation takes place (the p-rearrangement is now impossible); e.g., p-hydrazotoluene gives o-amino-(4:3')-ditolylamine:

Some groups, particularly carboxyl and sulphonic acid, may be eliminated during the rearrangement, e.g., hydrazobenzene-4-carboxylic acid gives benzidine in very high yield.

All of these rearrangements, under the influence of acids such as hydrochloric or sulphuric, are included under the heading of the benzidine rearrangement.

According to Večeřa et al. (1956), in the rearrangement of hydrazobenzene, not only benzidine and diphenyline are formed, but also 2:2'-diaminodiphenyl, 2-aminodiphenylamine, and 4-aminodiphenylamine. All of these products were identified by means of paper chromatography. Thus the semidine transformation also occurs to some extent even though the p-positions of both rings are unoccupied.

Carlin et al. (1956) have carried out the benzidine rearrangement on 3:3'-dibromo-5:5'-dimethylhydrazobenzene in sulphuric acid and obtained the following products:

Br Br Br 
$$Me \rightarrow NH_2$$
  $Me \rightarrow NH_2$   $Me \rightarrow NH$ 

Clemo et al. (1954) have shown that an N-methylhydrazobenzene also undergoes the normal benzidine rearrangement:

The mechanism of the above transformations is still uncertain. The benzidine transformation has been shown to be intramolecular; e.g., Ingold and Kidd (1933) found that when a mixture of the hydrazobenzenes ANH•NHA and BNH•NHB rearranged, the result always was a mixture of NH<sub>2</sub>-A-A-NH<sub>2</sub> and NH<sub>2</sub>-B-B-NH<sub>2</sub>; the compound NH<sub>2</sub>-A-B-NH<sub>2</sub> was never formed. This is

also supported by Wheland et al. (1952) who prepared (VI) and (VII) ( $C = {}^{14}C$ ), and carried out the rearrangement with the mixture. Compounds (VIII) and (IX) were obtained, and since (VIII) contained almost all of the tracer atom, the mechanism is thus intramolecular. (Actually IX did contain about 0.03 per

cent. of the tracer atom.)

Hammond and Shine (1950) have shown that the velocity of the benzidine rearrangement is proportional to the square of the hydrogen ion concentration. Thus it has been suggested that the rearrangement proceeds via an intermediate which contains two protons. Hammond et al. (1955) showed that p:p'-dideuterohydrazobenzene rearranges to benzidine at about the same rate as hydrazobenzene. It therefore appears that breaking of the p-C—H bond occurs after and not during the rate-determining step. Hughes et al. (1956), on the basis of their study of the rearrangement of phenylnitramine (p. 575), have proposed the following mechanism (the two benzene rings lie in approximately parallel planes):

In a similar way, the left-hand ring in (X) can use its nitrogen atom to link either with the p- or the remaining o-position of the right-hand ring, thereby giving a semidine rearrangement.

### QUESTIONS

1. Starting with benzene or toluene, show how you would prepare:—(a) m-bromotoluene, (b) m-nitrotoluene, (c) s-tribromobenzene, (d) p-iodotoluene, (e) m-fluoronitrobenzene, (f) o-tolunitrile, (g) p-dinitrobenzene, (h) phenylarsonic acid, (i) m-nitrophenyl-mercuric chloride, (j) 2:4-diaminophenol, (k) 3:4-diaminophenol, (l) 2:5-diaminotoluene, (m) 1:2:3-tribromobenzene, (n) 4-chloro-1:3-dinitrobenzene, (o) 3:4-dinitrotoluene, (p) 1:3-dinitro-4-hydroxybenzene, (q) 3-amino-4-hydroxytoluene, (r)

2. Write an account of the synthetic uses of the diazonium salts.

3. Describe the preparation and properties of:—(a) phenylhydrazine, (b) 2:4-dinitrophenylhydrazine, (c) diazoaminobenzene, (d) aminoazobenzene, (e) methylaminoazobenzene, (f) methyldiazoaminobenzene, (g) dimethylaminoazobenzene, (h) azoxybenzene, (j) azobenzene, (j) hydrazobenzene, (k) benzidine, (l) diphenyline.

4. Write an account of the coupling reactions of the diazonium salts.

5. Write an essay on the structure of the "diazo-compounds".

6. Discuss the rearrangements of compounds with the structures Ar-N=N-NHAr' and Ar-NH·NH-Ar'.

7. Write an account of the structure of the hydroxyazo-compounds.
8. Define and give examples of:—(a) diazotisation, (b) Sandmeyer reaction, (c) Gattermann reaction, (d) Balz-Schiemann reaction, (e) Bart's reaction, (f) benzidine transformation, (g) semidine transformation, (h) Wallach transformation.

# READING REFERENCES

Hughes, Ingold and Ridd, Nitrosation, Diazotisation, and Deamination, J.C.S., 1958, 58-98.

Ridd, Nitrosation, Diazotisation, and Deamination, Quart, Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1961, 15.

Halliwell and Nyburg, The Reaction of the Benzenediazonium Ion with Certain Anions in Aqueous Acid Solution, J.C.S., 1960, 4603. Cowdrey and Davies, Sandmeyer and Related Reactions, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.),

1952, 6, 358.

Hey and Waters, Free-radical Reactions of the Diazo-compounds, J.C.S., 1948, 882.

Saunders, Aromatic Diazo Compounds, Arnold (1949, 2nd Ed.).

Sidgwick, The Organic Chemistry of Nitrogen, Oxford Press (New Ed. by Taylor and Baker, 1937), Ch. 13. Aromatic Diazo-Compounds. Ch. 14. Azoxy- and Azo-Compounds.

Moore, The Hantzsch Memorial Lecture, J.C.S., 1936, 1055.

Hughes and Ingold, Aromatic Rearrangements, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1952, 6, 53

Organic Reactions, Wiley.

(i) Vol. II (1944), Ch. 10. The Bart Reaction.
 (ii) Vol. V (1949), Ch. 4. Preparation of Aromatic Fluorine Compounds from Diazonium Fluoroborates.

(iii) Vol. X (1959), Ch. 1. The Coupling of Diazonium Salts with Aliphatic Carbon Atoms. Ch. 2. The Japp-Klingermann Reaction.
 Campbell and Day, The Structure of the Aromatic Triazenes, Chem. Reviews, 1951, 48,

299.

Kornblum and Kelly, The Reaction of Diazonium Salts with Alcohols, Science, 1953, 117, 379.

Ingold et al., Kinetic Form of the Benzidine and Semidine Rearrangements, J.C.S.,

1957, 1906.

## CHAPTER XXV

## SULPHONIC ACIDS

ONE of the most characteristic properties of the aromatic hydrocarbons and their derivatives is the ease with which they can be sulphonated with concentrated or fuming sulphuric acid, or with chlorosulphonic acid. The saturated aliphatic hydrocarbons are not so readily sulphonated, and so this reaction can be used to separate saturated aliphatic hydrocarbons from aromatic hydrocarbons.

Aromatic sulphonic acids are usually prepared by direct sulphonation, since this is far more convenient than indirect methods. The usual sul-

phonating agents are:

(i) Concentrated sulphuric acid (98 per cent.); e.g., benzene readily forms benzenesulphonic acid (note the reversibility of the reaction):

$$C_6H_6 + H_2SO_4 \Longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot SO_3H + H_2O$$

(ii) Sulphur trioxide in an inert solvent such as sulphuric acid, i.e., oleum (fuming sulphuric acid), or as an addition product with pyridine or dioxan. Oleum with a free sulphur trioxide content up to about 70 per cent. is particularly useful for those cases where sulphonation is difficult, e.g., the sulphonation of compounds containing m-orienting groups in the ring (nitrocompounds, sulphonic acids, etc.).

(iii) Chlorosulphonic acid. This results in the formation of either a sulphonic acid by carrying out the reaction in carbon tetrachloride solution (using one molecule of reagent), or a sulphonyl chloride (using excess of

reagent):

$$ArH + CISO_3H \longrightarrow Ar \cdot SO_3H + HCI$$
  
 $Ar \cdot SO_3H + CISO_3H \longrightarrow Ar \cdot SO_9CI + H_9SO_4$ 

(iv) Sulphuryl chloride in the presence of aluminium chloride sulphonates aromatic compounds in the cold to form a sulphonyl chloride:

$$ArH + SO_2Cl_2 \longrightarrow Ar \cdot SO_2Cl + HCl$$

An example of indirect sulphonation is the replacement of an "activated" halogen atom by sulphonic acid group, e.g., o-chloronitrobenzene reacts with sodium sulphite to form o-nitrobenzenesulphonic acid:

$$\mathbb{O}_{\mathrm{NO_2}}^{\mathrm{Cl}} + \mathrm{Na_2SO_3} \longrightarrow \mathbb{O}_{\mathrm{NO_2}}^{\mathrm{SO_3Na}} + \mathrm{NaCl}$$

Another example of indirect sulphonation is the reduction of nitro- or nitroso-compounds with sulphur dioxide (see p. 565).

When a compound containing an o-p-orienting group is sulphonated with sulphuric acid or oleum, the temperature at which the reaction is carried out affects the ratio of the o- and p-isomers. Generally, lower temperatures favour o-substitution and higher temperatures, p-substitution; both isomers, however, are always obtained.

Lauer (1935) found that the presence of water also influenced the o-p ratio. When concentrated sulphuric acid (98 per cent.) is used, the product is mainly a mixture of the o- and p-isomers, together with a small amount of the m-isomer;

or vice versa. When sulphur trioxide (gaseous or in oleum) is used, 100 per cent. o-p- or m-substitution is obtained; e.g.,

Very few catalysts are known for sulphonation; the salts of mercury, silver and vanadium, and iodine, seem the best. It has also been found that a mercury catalyst may change the orientation of sulphonation (see anthraquinone, p. 733).

Chlorosulphonic acid, at low temperatures, usually gives a high yield of the o-isomer when the compound contains an o-p-orienting group (see p. 612).

Many mechanisms have been suggested for sulphonation with sulphuric acid or sulphur trioxide, but none is certain. It is certain, however, that sulphonation with these reagents is *reversible*. The difficulty in ascertaining the mechanism appears to be that it is not completely clear what is the active sulphonating species. Price (1941) believed that the active species in sulphuric acid was the SO<sub>3</sub>H<sup>+</sup> cation, which is produced as follows:

$$_{2}\mathrm{H}_{2}\mathrm{SO}_{4} \Longrightarrow \mathrm{HSO}_{4}^{-} + \mathrm{H}_{3}\mathrm{SO}_{4}^{+} \Longrightarrow \mathrm{H}_{2}\mathrm{O} + \mathrm{SO}_{3}\mathrm{H}^{+}$$

Sulphonation then occurs with this ion:

$$+ SO_3H \Leftrightarrow + H^+ \Leftrightarrow + H^+$$

This mechanism was supported by Hinshelwood et al. (1948) from their kinetic studies on sulphonation. Brand et al. (1950, 1952) proposed that the active species in oleum was also the SO<sub>3</sub>H<sup>+</sup> ion, and believed it was produced as follows:

$$SO_3 + H^+ \Longrightarrow SO_3H^+$$

This then reacts according to the mechanism proposed by Price. However, later experiments of Brand  $et\ al.\ (1959)$  have shown that this mechanism is unacceptable; the  $SO_3H^+$  ion is not believed to be the active species with sulphonations in oleum. These authors conclude that sulphur trioxide is the active species:

An interesting point here is that Gold et al. (1956) have proposed the following mechanism in aqueous sulphuric acid (but the authors are not certain about the intervening steps):

The mechanisms of sulphonation given above are all electrophilic reactions. It is also possible that the following electrophilic reaction could occur:

$$H \xrightarrow{\mathbf{O}} SO_{2}OH \Longrightarrow H^{+} + HSO_{4}^{-}$$

$$H \xrightarrow{\mathbf{H}} H$$

$$H^{+} \Longrightarrow H^{+} \Longrightarrow H^{+}$$

As the experiment stands, there is no way of telling whether this reaction occurs or not. It was, however, shown to occur by using deuterosulphuric acid,  $D_2SO_4$ . the final product being hexadeuterobenzene (Ingold *et al.*, 1936):

Benzenesulphonic acid, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·SO<sub>3</sub>H, may be readily prepared by heating benzene with concentrated sulphuric acid at 80°:

$$C_6H_6 + H_2SO_4 \Longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot SO_3H + H_2O$$
 (75-80%)

Owing to the reversibility of this reaction, the accumulation of water tends to regenerate the benzene by desulphonation of the sulphonic acid. Hence to obtain the maximum yield of sulphonic acid, it is necessary to remove the water from the reaction mixture as the reaction proceeds. The simplest way in which this may be done is by using oleum, the water being removed chemically by combination with free sulphur trioxide:

$$SO_3 + H_2O + H_2SO_4$$

Alternatively, the water may be removed by carrying out the reaction at high temperature or under reduced pressure, or by passing an inert gas, e.g., nitrogen, through the mixture, or by forming a constant-boiling mixture with an inert liquid, e.g., kerosene. On the other hand, Thomas et al. (1940) have shown that boron trifluoride (one equivalent) is an effective catalyst in aromatic sulphonation, e.g.,

$$C_6H_6 + H_2SO_4 + BF_3 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot SO_3H + BF_3 \cdot H_2O$$
 (98%)

During sulphonation a small amount of sulphone is produced as a by-product, e.g., diphenylsulphone:

$$2C_6H_6 + H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_2SO_2 + 2H_2O$$

Since these sulphones are insoluble in water, they may be readily separated from the sulphonic acid by filtration.

Properties of benzenesulphonic acid. Benzenesulphonic acid is a colour-less crystalline deliquescent solid, m.p. 44°. It is very soluble in water and the solution is strongly acid (about as strong as sulphuric acid). Benzenesulphonic acid and other aromatic sulphonic acids are useful catalysts in esterification and dehydration, being better than sulphuric acid, since they attack the reaction constituents far less than does sulphuric acid. The sulphonic acids are valuable as synthetic reagents because of the ease with which the sulphonic group can be replaced by a hydrogen, amino, hydroxyl, cyano, thiol, or a nitro-group. Furthermore, since the presence of a sulphonic acid group makes the compound soluble in water, sulphonation is an

extremely important process in the preparation of dyes and drugs (converting them into soluble derivatives).

Reactions of benzenesulphonic acid. The following reactions are typical

of all sulphonic acids.

1. As pointed out above, sulphonation is a reversible reaction, but the ease of desulphonation depends on the nature of the aromatic nucleus. Benzenesulphonic acid may be desulphonated by heating with dilute hydrochloric acid under pressure at 150-200°:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot SO_3H + H_2O \xrightarrow{HCl} C_6H_6 + H_2SO_4 \quad (v.g.)$$

With some sulphonic acids the sulphonic acid group may be eliminated merely by steam distillation. This desulphonation is very useful for preparing certain isomers, e.g., o-chlorotoluene may be prepared as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_3 & CH_3 & CH_3 \\ & & \\$$

Desulphonation may also be used to separate certain isomers, e.g., the three xylenes. The xylene fraction from coal tar may be treated with cold 80 per cent. sulphuric acid. Under these conditions, the m-isomer is readily sulphonated to m-xylene-4-sulphonic acid, the o- and p-isomers remaining unaffected:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_3 \\ CH_3 + H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CH_3 \\ CH_3 \end{array} + H_2O \end{array}$$

Thus only the m-isomer dissolves, and hence may be separated from the other two. The mixture of o- and p-xylenes is then sulphonated with concentrated sulphuric acid (98 per cent.), and the resulting o-xylene-4-sulphonic acid and p-xylene-2-sulphonic acid may be separated by fractional crystallisation from the diluted sulphonated mixture; the p-derivative is less soluble than the o-. The xylenes are then regenerated by heating their sulphonic acid derivatives with dilute hydrochloric acid under pressure.

2. When sodium benzenesulphonate is fused with sodamide, aniline is obtained:

$$C_6H_5$$
·SO<sub>3</sub>Na + NaNH<sub>2</sub>  $\longrightarrow$   $C_6H_5$ ·NH<sub>2</sub> + Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>3</sub> (f.g.-g.)

3. Fusion with sodium hydroxide converts sodium benzenesulphonate into sodium phenoxide:

$$C_6H_5\cdot SO_3Na + NaOH \longrightarrow Na_2SO_3 + C_6H_5OH \xrightarrow{NaOH} C_6H_5ONa \quad (g.-v.g.)$$

4. When sodium benzenesulphonate is fused with sodium cyanide, phenyl cyanide is formed:

$$C_6H_5$$
·SO<sub>3</sub>Na + NaCN  $\longrightarrow$   $C_6H_5$ ·CN + Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>3</sub> (f.g.)

5. When the potassium salt of benzenesulphonic acid is fused with potassium hydrogen sulphide, thiophenol is formed:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot SO_3K + KSH \longrightarrow C_6H_5SH + K_2SO_3$$
 (f.g.)

6. The sulphonic acid group is often readily replaced by a nitro-group. This offers a means of preparing nitro-derivatives of compounds that are

easily oxidised by nitric acid, since the sulphonic acid derivatives are not easily oxidised; e.g., picric acid from phenol:

Halogen may also replace a sulphonic acid group which is either o- or p- to a hydroxyl or to an amino-group; e.g., when treated with bromine water, sulphanilic acid forms s-tribromoaniline:

$$\begin{array}{c} NH_2 \\ \hline \\ SO_3H \end{array} \xrightarrow{Br_g/H_2O} \begin{array}{c} NH_2 \\ Br \\ Br \end{array}$$

Sulphonic acids form many derivatives that are analogous to those of the carboxylic acids, e.g., salts, esters, acid chlorides, amides, etc. The acid chloride may be prepared by treating a sulphonic acid or its sodium salt with phosphorus pentachloride, e.g., benzenesulphonyl chloride:

$$\begin{array}{ll} C_6H_5\text{-}SO_3H + PCl_5 &\longrightarrow C_6H_5\text{-}SO_2Cl + HCl + POCl_3 & (g.-ex.) \\ C_6H_5\text{-}SO_3Na + PCl_5 &\longrightarrow C_6H_5\text{-}SO_2Cl + NaCl + POCl_3 & (75-80\%) \end{array}$$

The aromatic sulphonyl chlorides, however, are usually best prepared by treating an aromatic compound with excess of chlorosulphonic acid:

$$C_6H_6 + 2CISO_3H \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot SO_2Cl + HCl + H_2SO_4$$
 (75-77%)

Thionyl chloride has no action on sulphonic acids (and some carboxylic acids), but in the presence of dimethylformamide, the sulphonyl chloride is obtained in excellent yield (Bosshard *et al.*, 1959). The reaction proceeds through the amide chloride Me<sub>2</sub>N·CHCl<sub>2</sub>.

The sulphonyl chlorides are decomposed very slowly by water but rapidly by alkali; they react with alcohols in the presence of alkali to form esters:

$$Ar \cdot SO_2Cl + ROH + NaOH \longrightarrow Ar \cdot SO_3R + NaCl + H_2O$$

It is important to note that the esters of the sulphonic acids cannot be prepared by direct esterification. The sulphonic acid esters are very good alkylating agents for alcohols and amines:

$$\begin{array}{c} ROH + Ar \cdot SO_3R' \longrightarrow R \cdot O \cdot R' + Ar \cdot SO_3H \\ R \cdot NH_2 + Ar \cdot SO_3R' + NaOH \longrightarrow R \cdot NH \cdot R' + Ar \cdot SO_3Na + H_2O \end{array}$$

It is because of this alkylating action on alcohols that sulphonic esters cannot be prepared by direct esterification.

Benzenesulphonyl chloride is reduced to benzenesulphinic acid or thiophenol by lithium aluminium hydride, depending on the conditions (Field et al., 1951).

When shaken with concentrated ammonia, the sulphonyl chlorides form sulphonamides; e.g., benzenesulphonamide from benzenesulphonyl chloride:

$$C_6H_5\cdot SO_2Cl + 2NH_3 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot SO_2\cdot NH_2 + NH_4Cl$$

These sulphonamides are well-defined crystalline solids, and so are used to characterise the sulphonic acids. Better derivatives for characterising the sulphonic acids are their S-benzylisothiouronium salts:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_{6}H_{5}\cdot CH_{2}\cdot S\cdot C \overset{\dagger}{\nearrow} H_{2} \\ NH_{2} \end{array} \\ Cl^{-} + Ar\cdot SO_{3}Na \longrightarrow \\ C_{6}H_{5}\cdot CH_{2}\cdot S\cdot C \overset{\dagger}{\nearrow} NH_{2} \\ NH_{2} \\ \end{bmatrix} SO_{3}\cdot Ar^{-} + NaCl$$

Sulphonyl chlorides also react with primary and secondary amines to form N-substituted sulphonamides. These derivatives may be used to separate the three classes of amines (see the Hinsberg separation, p. 309), and for this purpose it is better to use p-toluenesulphonyl chloride than benzenesulphonyl chloride, since the former is a solid (m.p. 69°) and the latter a liquid (b.p. 246°, with decomp.).
Sulphonic acid anhydrides have been prepared by heating the acid with

excess of phosphorus pentoxide (Field et al., 1952), e.g.,

$$2C_6H_5\cdot SO_3H \xrightarrow{P_4O_4} (C_6H_5\cdot SO_2)_2O$$
 (70%)

Benzenedisulphonic acids. When heated with excess of fuming sulphuric acid at 200°, benzene forms benzene-m-disulphonic acid as the main product and the p-isomer in a small amount:

$$SO_3H$$
  $SO_3H$   $SO_3H$   $SO_3H$   $SO_3H$ 

Continued heating of the *m*-isomer in sulphuric acid causes it to rearrange to the *p*-isomer. Thus the *m*-compound is the kinetically controlled product, and the p-compound the thermodynamically controlled product. Benzene-o-disulphonic acid may be prepared by sulphonating m-aminobenzenesulphonic acid, and then replacing the amino-group by hydrogen (diazotising, etc.).

When fused with potassium hydroxide, m- and p-benzenedisulphonic acids both form resorcinol (m-dihydroxybenzene); benzene-o-disulphonic acid

forms catechol (o-dihydroxybenzene).
s-Benzenetrisulphonic acid may be prepared by heating benzene-m-

disulphonic acid with fuming sulphuric acid.

Toluenesulphonic acids. When toluene is treated with concentrated sulphuric acid, the o- and p-toluenesulphonic acids are formed, low temperatures (below 100°) favouring the formation of the o-isomer, and high temperatures (above 100°) the p-:

Both isomers are crystalline solids, the o- melting at  $67.5^{\circ}$ , and the p- at 106°. They may be separated by treating the mixture of the isomers with phosphorus pentachloride and then filtering; p-toluenesulphonyl chloride is a solid, m.p. 69°, whereas the o-compound is an oil.

A much better yield of o-toluenesulphonic acid may be obtained by treating

toluene with chlorosulphonic acid at low temperatures:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ & \xrightarrow{\text{CISO}_3 \text{H}} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ & & \text{SO}_2 \text{CI} \\ & & \text{SO}_2 \text{CI} \end{array}$$

These are separated by filtration and converted into the sulphonic acids by

heating with alkali, and then acidifying the solution.

o-Toluenesulphonyl chloride is used in the preparation of saccharin (p. 681); p-toluenesulphonic acid is used in the preparation of antiseptics, chloroamine T and dichloramine T. Chloramine T is the sodium salt of N-chloro-p-toluenesulphonamide (toluene-p-sulphonsodiochloramide), and may be prepared as follows:

In addition to being used as an antiseptic, chloramine T is also used as a laboratory reagent instead of hypochlorite salts, since it is stable and liberates hypochlorous acid when acidified:

$$\begin{array}{c|cccc} CH_3 & CH_3 & CH_3 \\ & & & \\ \hline \\ SO_2 \cdot NCI \}Na & SO_2 \cdot NHCI & SO_2 \cdot NH_2 \\ \end{array}$$

When treated with a large excess of sodium hypochlorite solution, p-toluenesulphonamide forms dichloramine T (N: N-dichloro-p-toluenesulphonamide):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ & \xrightarrow{\text{NaOCl}} \end{array} \rightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ & \\ \text{SO}_2 \cdot \text{NCl}_2 \end{array}$$

The p-toluenesulphonyl group is often referred to as the tosyl group, and is denoted by Ts. Tosylates are useful for preparing, e.g., ethers (with ROH), cyanides (with KCN), thiols (with KSH) thioethers (with K<sub>2</sub>S), thiocyanates (with KSCN), alkyl iodides (with NaI), alkanes (with Grignard reagents), etc. (see text).

m-Toluenesulphonic acid (an oil) may be prepared by replacing the aminogroup in p-toluidine-m-sulphonic acid by hydrogen:

Isolation of the sulphonic acids. It is usually difficult to isolate the sulphonic acids due to their great solubility in water and their non-volatility. Generally, the isolation of the acids is not attempted, since their salts undergo the desired synthetic reactions. The sulphonic acids (or their salts) may be isolated by any one of the following methods, the actual method used depending on the properties of the acid under investigation:

(i) When the sulphonic acid is not very soluble, the sulphonating mixture

is cooled and filtered (through glass wool).

(ii) The sulphonating mixture is allowed to flow into a saturated solution of sodium chloride; in many cases the sodium sulphonate is precipitated.

(iii) The usual method for isolating the sulphonic acids is to dilute the sulphonating mixture and neutralise the liquid with the carbonate of calcium, barium or lead. The insoluble sulphate is collected by filtration, and the filtrate, which contains the soluble salt of the sulphonic acid, is evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure; this gives the dry salt. To obtain the sulphonic acid the solution of the lead salt is decomposed with hydrogen sulphide, filtered and the filtrate evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure. The sodium salt of a sulphonic acid may readily be prepared by adding aqueous sodium carbonate to the calcium or barium sulphonate solution until all the calcium or barium has been precipitated. The liquid is filtered and evaporated to dryness under reduced pressure.

Since the free sulphonic acids are hygroscopic liquids or solids, they are very difficult to purify; some sulphonic acids have not yet been isolated in a pure state.

The separation of a mixture of isomeric sulphonic acids is usually difficult. The method to be employed must be found by experiment. Many are used, e.g., fractional crystallisation of the acids from water or from organic solvents; fractional crystallisation of the salts from suitable solvents; conversion of the sulphonic acids into their sulphonyl chlorides, which are then separated.

Jacobsen rearrangement (1886). During sulphonation polyalkylbenzenes, halogenated polyalkylbenzenes, or polyhalogenated benzenes fairly readily undergo isomerisation due to the migration of an alkyl group or a halogen atom. This is known as the Jacobsen rearrangement, and two types of migrations are possible: intramolecular (no "free parts"), in which a group moves from one position to another in the same molecule; and intermolecular (involving "free parts"), in which one or more groups are transferred from one molecule to another. Experiment has shown that both types of migrations usually occur simultaneously in the Jacobsen rearrangement, and that an alkyl group always migrates to the vicinal position. Thus the Jacobsen rearrangement offers a means of preparing vic-compounds from non-vic-compounds; e.g., sulphonation of durene gives 70 per cent. prehnitenesulphonic acid (I) and very small amounts of 5-ψ-cumenesulphonic acid (II) and hexamethylbenzene (III); sulphur dioxide, carbon dioxide and about 30 per cent. of a brown amorphous material are also obtained (Smith and Cass, 1932). The reaction possibly takes place as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3}$$

An example of the migration of a halogen atom is the rearrangement of 5-chloro- $\psi$ -cumene- to 3-chloro- $\psi$ -cumene-sulphonic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c|cccc} CH_3 & CH_3$$

The mechanism of the Jacobsen rearrangement is uncertain; the only certain thing appears to be that it is the sulphonic acid, and not the hydrocarbon, that rearranges. It has also been found (so far) that the Jacobsen rearrangement does not take place when the compound contains an amino-, nitro-, methoxyl, or a carboxyl group.

Sulphinic acids, ArSO-OH. The general methods of preparing the aromatic sulphinic acids may be illustrated by the preparation benzenesulphinic acid:

(i) By warming benzenesulphonyl chloride with zinc dust and water, and then acidifying the liquid:

$$\mathbf{C_6H_5^{\bullet}SO_2Cl} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{Zn/H_2O}} (\mathbf{C_6H_5^{\bullet}SO_2})_2\mathbf{Zn} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{HCl}} \mathbf{2C_6H_5^{\bullet}SO_2H} \quad (g.)$$

Alternatively, the reduction of the sulphonyl chloride may be effected by means of a hot aqueous solution of sodium sulphide:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot SO_2Cl + 2Na_2S \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot SO_2Na + NaCl + Na_2S_2$$
 (g.)

Alkaline sodium sulphite is also widely used:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot SO_2Cl + Na_2SO_3 + 2NaOH \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot SO_2Na + NaCl + Na_2SO_4 + H_2O$$

Aryl esters of sulphonic acids are reduced by lithium aluminium hydride to sulphinic acids.

$$C_6H_5$$
 ·  $SO_3Ar \xrightarrow{LiAlH_4} C_6H_5$  ·  $SO_2H + ArOH$ 

Alkyl esters, on the other hand, usually give the sulphonic acid.

$$C_6H_5 \cdot SO_3R \xrightarrow{LiAlH_4} C_6H_5 \cdot SO_3H + RH$$

(ii) By the action of copper powder on a solution of a diazonium salt saturated with sulphur dioxide:

$$C_6H_5\cdot N_2HSO_4 + SO_2 + Cu \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot SO_2H + N_2 + CuSO_4$$
 (g.)

(iii) By the action of sulphur dioxide on benzene in the presence of anhydrous aluminium chloride:

$$C_6H_6 + SO_2 \xrightarrow{AlCl_8} C_6H_5 \cdot SO_2H$$
 (g.)

(iv) By the action of sulphur dioxide on an arylmagnesium bromide.

$$C_6H_5MgBr + SO_2 \xrightarrow{-40^{\circ}} C_6H_5 \cdot SO_2MgBr \xrightarrow{H_2O} C_6H_5 \cdot SO_2H \quad (g.)$$

The usual by-product in this reaction is the sulphoxide.

$$C_6H_5 \cdot SO_2MgBr + C_6H_5MgBr \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_2SO + (MgBr)_2O$$

(v) Sulphinic acids may be prepared by fusion of sulphones with potassium hydroxide at 200° (see p. 338).

The sulphinic acids are unstable solids which readily oxidise in the air to sulphonic acids. They are reduced by zinc and hydrochloric acid to thiols; e.g., benzenesulphinic acid gives thiophenol;

$$C_6H_5 \cdot SO_2H + 4[H] \xrightarrow{Zn/HCl} C_6H_5SH + 2H_2O$$

The sulphinic acids are decomposed when warmed with water, forming the sulphonic acid and the disulphoxide. The most useful reaction of the sulphinic

acids is the ease with which the sulphinic acid group is replaced by a chloromercuri-group (this is an example of indirect mercuration); e.g., p-tolylmercuric chloride may be prepared by boiling an aqueous solution of sodium p-toluene-sulphinate with mercuric chloride:

$$CH_3$$
  $SO_2Na + HgCl_2 \longrightarrow CH_3$   $HgCl + SO_2 + NaCl (51-57%)$ 

The structure of disulphoxides has been under discussion for some time. Two favoured structures are (I) and (II) (the latter is the thiolsulphonate):

$$Ar \cdot SO \cdot SO \cdot Ar$$
  $Ar \cdot SO_2 \cdot S \cdot Ar$  (II)

Chemical evidence has been obtained which supports both structures, but Cymerman *et al.* (1951) have shown from spectroscopic evidence that (II) is the correct one. This is also supported by the work of Crenshaw *et al.* (1961), who used a compound labelled with  $^{35}$ S (Ar = p-MeC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>; S of SO<sub>2</sub> labelled).

Thiophenol, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>SH, is the simplest aryl thiol, and may be prepared by the action of phosphorus pentasulphide on phenol:

$$5C_6H_5OH + P_2S_5 \longrightarrow 5C_6H_5SH + P_2O_5$$
 (v.p.)

A far better method of preparation is to reduce benzenesulphonyl chloride with zinc and sulphuric acid:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot SO_2Cl + 6[H] \longrightarrow C_6H_5SH + HCl + 2H_2O$$
 (96%)

This reaction shows that in the sulphonic acids the sulphur atom is directly attached to a carbon atom in the ring. Lithium aluminium hydride also reduces sulphonyl chlorides to thiols (Marvel *et al.*, 1950).

Thiophenol is a colourless liquid, b.p. 170°, with a nauseating odour. It undergoes the usual reactions of the thiols, and is a stronger acid than

phenol (cf. the aliphatic thiols, p. 333).

Sulphanilic acid (p-aminobenzenesulphonic acid), p-NH<sub>2</sub>·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·SO<sub>3</sub>H, is formed as the main product when aniline is sulphonated with oleum (containing 10 per cent. sulphur trioxide) at 180°; some metanilic and a little orthanilic acid are also produced. With excess of oleum, a second sulphonic acid group may be introduced into the o-position (to the amino-group), and a third into the o'-position. Sulphanilic acid is prepared commercially by the "baking process"; the acid sulphate of aniline (prepared by mixing about equal weights of aniline and concentrated sulphuric acid) is heated for some time at 200°; again, the other two isomers are produced, but less of the metanilic acid in this case.

The mechanism of the baking process is uncertain. According to Bamberger (1897), the acid sulphate of aniline is converted into *phenylsulphamic acid* (I), which then rearranges to *orthanilic acid* (II), which, in turn, rearranges to sulphanilic acid (cf. the Hofmann-Martius rearrangement, p. 574):

In support of this mechanism, Bamberger prepared phenylsulphamic acid (which, however, has not been isolated as an intermediate in the above reaction), and showed that when carefully heated, it formed orthanilic acid which, on heating at 180°, rearranged to sulphanilic acid. On the other hand, sulphonation in oleum is believed to occur by *direct* sulphonation, and the formation of a larger amount of metanilic acid may be accounted for by the sulphonation of the anilinium ion (p. 520).

Sulphanilic acid is a white solid, m.p. 288° (with decomp.), almost insoluble in cold water but fairly easily soluble in hot. It forms salts with bases but does not combine with acids. The latter may be due to sulphanilic

acid existing as an inner salt, p- $H_3$ N- $C_6H_4$ - $SO_3$ - (sulphonic acids are as strong as the inorganic acids). When sulphanilic acid is treated with nitric acid, the sulphonic acid group is replaced by a nitro-group to form p-nitroaniline. Similarly, bromine water attacks sulphanilic acid to form s-tribromoaniline. Sulphanilic acid may be diazotised, but there is reason to

believe that the diazonium salt may be an inner salt, p-N:N·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·SO<sub>3</sub>-. Sulphanilic acid is a very important intermediate in dye chemistry, and its

substituted amides form the sulphanilamide drugs.

Orthanilic acid (o-aminobenzenesulphonic acid) may be prepared by refluxing o-chloronitrobenzene with sodium sulphide and sulphur in ethanol solution heating the product di-o-nitrophenyl sulphide with concentrated nitric acid in the presence of chlorine (which is passed in), refluxing the o-nitrobenzenesulphonyl chloride with aqueous sodium carbonate, and finally reducing the o-nitrobenzenesulphonic acid with iron and acetic acid:

Orthanilic acid may also be prepared by sulphonating p-bromoaniline, and then removing the bromine atom with zinc dust and aqueous sodium hydroxide:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} NH_2 & NH_2 \\ \hline & & \\ Br & & \\ Br & & \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{NH_2} SO_3H \xrightarrow{Zn/NaOH} \begin{array}{c} NH_2 \\ \hline & \\ SO_3H \end{array}$$

Orthanilic acid is a crystalline solid which, on heating with concentrated sulphuric acid, isomerises to sulphanilic acid (see above).

Metanilic acid (m-aminobenzenesulphonic acid) may be prepared by reducing m-nitrobenzenesulphonic acid. It is a crystalline solid, and is used in the manufacture of dyes.

#### QUESTIONS

r. Write an account of the sulphonating agents that may be used in aromatic chemistry and discuss, where possible, the mechanism of their action.

2. Starting with benzene or toluene, show how you would prepare:—(a) PhSO<sub>3</sub>H, (b) p-MeC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>SH, (c) picric acid, (d) PhSO<sub>2</sub>Cl, (e) p-MeC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·SO<sub>2</sub>·NH<sub>2</sub>, (f) o- m- and p-MeC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·SO<sub>3</sub>H)<sub>2</sub>, (g) o-, m- and p-MeC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·SO<sub>3</sub>H, (h) chloramine T, (i) PhSO<sub>2</sub>H, (f) m-MeC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·SO<sub>2</sub>H, (h) p-MeC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·H<sub>2</sub>Cl, (l) PhSH, (m) sulphanilic acid, (n) orthanilic acid, (o) metanilic acid, (p) o-NO<sub>2</sub>·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·SO<sub>3</sub>H, (q) p-NO<sub>2</sub>-toluene-o-sulphonic acid, (r) 5-NO<sub>2</sub>-MeC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·SO<sub>3</sub>H, (q) p-NO<sub>2</sub>-toluene-o-sulphonic acid, (r) 5-NO<sub>2</sub>-MeC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·SO<sub>3</sub>H, (q) p-NO<sub>2</sub>-toluene-o-sulphonic acid, (r) 5-NO<sub>2</sub>-MeC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·SO<sub>3</sub>H, (r) p-NO<sub>2</sub>-Toluene-o-sulphonic acid, (r) p-NO<sub>2</sub>-Toluene-o 2-NH2-benzenesulphonic acid.

3. Write an account of the isolation of the sulphonic acids, and discuss their use as

synthetic reagents.

4. Compare and contrast the reactions of the sodium salts, acid chlorides, ammonium salts, amides and esters of the sulphonic acids and the carboxylic acids.

5. Write notes on:—(a) the Jacobsen rearrangement, (b) the sulphonation of aniline.

6. Show how you would distinguish between the following compounds:

p-MeC, H<sub>4</sub>·SO, Cl, p-CH, Cl·C, H<sub>4</sub>·SO, H and o-Cl-p-toluenesulphonic acids. 7. Discuss the preparation and properties of the aromatic sulphonic acids.

#### READING REFERENCES

Gold et al., The Mechanism of Aromatic Sulphonation and Desulphonation in Aqueous Sulphuric acid, I.C.S., 1956, 1635.

Brand et al., Aromatic Sulphonation, J.C.S., 1959, 3844.
Suter, Organic Compounds of Sulphur, Wiley (1944).
Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. III (1946), Ch. 4. Direct Sulphonation of Aromatic Hydrocarbons and their Halogen Derivatives.

Ibid., Vol. I (1942), Ch. 1. The Jacobsen Reaction. Brown, Sulphuryl Chloride in Organic Chemistry, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1944, 36, 788. Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1942, 2nd ed.). Vol. I, Ch. 10. Organic Sulphur Compounds. Alexander, The Mechanism of Sulphonation of Aromatic Amines, J. Amer. Chem. Soc.,

1946, 68, 969; 1947, 69, 1599.
Truce and Murphy, The Preparation of Sulphinic Acids, Chem. Reviews, 1951, 48, 69.
Hughes and Ingold, Aromatic Rearrangements, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1952, 6, 51.

#### CHAPTER XXVI

## PHENOLS

PHENOLS are aromatic compounds containing hydroxyl groups directly attached to the nucleus, and they are classified as monohydric, dihydric, trihydric phenols, etc. according as they contain one, two, three, etc., hydroxyl groups.

#### MONOHYDRIC PHENOLS

General methods of preparation. I. A number of monohydric phenols occur in coal-tar and their extraction from this source is very important commercially.

(i) Middle oil (p. 499) is cooled, whereupon naphthalene crystallises out (43 per cent.). The oil is pressed free from the naphthalene and then treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide, which dissolves the phenols. The alkaline liquor is drawn off, boiled, and air is blown through; this removes naphthalene (that remained after cooling the oil), pyridine, etc. The liquid is allowed to cool and then carbon dioxide is blown through, thereby decomposing the sodium phenoxides into the free phenols and sodium carbonate, the latter dissolving in the aqueous layer. This aqueous layer is drawn off, and the crude phenols (the yield of which is about 12 per cent. of the middle oil) are fractionated. Three fractions are collected: phenol, b.p. 182° (20 per cent.), cresols, b.p. 190–203° (43 per cent.) and xylenols, b.p. 211–225° (26 per cent.); the residue is pitch.

(ii) Heavy oil is treated in the same manner as above. After being pressed to

remove naphthalene, the residual oil contains cresols, higher phenols, naphthol,

etc. (heavy oil contains about 7 per cent. of the phenols).

2. Phenols may be prepared by fusion of sodium sulphonates with sodium hydroxide:

3. When a diazonium sulphate solution is steam distilled, a phenol is produced:

$$Ar \cdot N_2 HSO_4 + H_2O \longrightarrow ArOH + N_2 + H_2SO_4$$

4. Phenols are formed when compounds containing an "activated" halogen atom are heated with aqueous sodium hydroxide; e.g., p-nitrophenol from p-chloronitrobenzene:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Cl} & \text{OH} \\ \hline \text{NO}_2 & \text{NO}_2 \end{array} + \text{NaCl}$$

5. Distillation of phenolic acids with soda-lime produces phenols; e.g., sodium salicylate gives phenol:

$$_{\mathrm{CO_{2}Na}}^{\mathrm{OH}} + \mathrm{NaOH(CaO)} \longrightarrow _{\mathrm{CO_{3}}}^{\mathrm{OH}} + \mathrm{Na_{2}CO_{3}}$$

6. Phenols may be prepared by means of a Grignard reagent:

$$\underbrace{ \text{Ar} \cdot \text{MgBr} \xrightarrow{\text{O}_{\bullet}} \text{Ar} \cdot \text{O} \cdot \text{MgBr} \xrightarrow{\text{acid}} \text{ArOH} }_{\text{618}}$$

PHENOLS 619

Alternatively, the Grignard reagent may be converted into a phenol via a boronic or borinic acid (these need not be isolated; Hawthorne, 1957):

$$ArMgX \xrightarrow{(i) B(OMe)_3} ArB(OH)_2 \text{ or } Ar_2BOH \xrightarrow{\overline{H_2O_3}} ArOH \quad (60-70\%)$$

Phenol (carbolic acid, hydroxybenzene), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>OH, may be prepared by any of the general methods; commercially, it is prepared from coal tar (see above). The supply from this source is now insufficient to give the amount of phenol required for industry, and so it is also prepared synthetically. Various methods are used. The oldest synthetic method is the fusion of sodium benzenesulphonate with soldium hydroxide:

$$C_6H_5$$
 · SO<sub>3</sub>Na  $\xrightarrow{NaOH}$   $C_6H_5ONa \xrightarrow{HCI}$   $C_6H_5OH$ 

A more recent method is to heat chlorobenzene with 10 per cent. solution of sodium carbonate or sodium hydroxide under pressure at about 300°:

(i) 
$$C_6H_5Cl + Na_2CO_3 + H_2O \longrightarrow C_6H_5OH + NaCl + NaHCO_3$$

(ii) 
$$C_6H_5Cl + C_6H_5OH + Na_2CO_3 \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_2O + NaCl + NaHCO_3$$

By adding about 10 per cent. of diphenyl ether to the reaction mixture, the further formation of this ether is prevented in reaction (ii).

In addition to diphenyl ether, some o- and p-hydroxydiphenyls are obtained:

The o-compound is used as an antiseptic, and the p- for making resins.

One of the newest methods of preparing phenol synthetically is to heat chlorobenzene (prepared by the Raschig method, p. 548) with steam at 425° in the presence of a catalyst:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_6 + HCl + \frac{1}{2}O_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5Cl + H_2O \\ C_6H_5Cl + H_2O \longrightarrow C_6H_5OH + HCl \end{array}$$

The hydrochloric acid formed in the second reaction is returned for use in the first. Another new method is the oxidation of cumene to the hydroperoxide which is then decomposed into phenol and acetone by means of acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-C}\text{-O-OH} \\ \text{CH}_3\text{-CH} = \text{CH}_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{AlCl}_3} & \xrightarrow{\text{Os}} & \text{OH} \\ & \xrightarrow{\text{acid}} & \text{CH}_3\text{-CO-CH}_3 \end{array}$$

Properties of phenol—these are characteristic of monohydric phenols. Phenol is a colourless crystalline solid, m.p. 43°, b.p. 182°, which turns pink on exposure to air and light. It is moderately soluble in cold water, but is readily soluble in ethanol and ether. Phenol undergoes the *Liebermann reaction* (cf. p. 317); when phenol is dissolved in concentrated sulphuric

acid and a few drops of aqueous sodium nitrite added, a red colour is obtained on dilution, and turns green when made alkaline with aqueous sodium hydroxide.

Phenol is used as an antiseptic and disinfectant, and in the preparation of

dves, drugs, bakelite, etc.

Reactions. 1. Phenol gives a violet colour with ferric chloride; this reaction is characteristic of all compounds containing the grouping —C(OH)=C< (cf. enols, p. 220).

2. Phenol behaves as a weak acid, forming phenoxides with strong alkalis:

$$C_6H_5OH + NaOH \longrightarrow C_6H_5ONa + H_2O$$

Since phenol is a weaker acid than carbonic acid, it may be separated from carboxylic acids by making the solution alkaline with sodium hydroxide, and then passing in carbon dioxide. Phenol is liberated from its sodium salt and so may be extracted with ether; the carboxylic acid salts are not decomposed by carbon dioxide.

Phenols are stronger acids than the alcohols, one possible explanation being that the former exist as resonance hybrids whereas the latter do

not:

$$\vdots \ddot{o} - H \qquad \vdots \ddot$$

Thus the oxygen atom acquires a positive charge, and so attracts the electron pair of the O-H bond, thereby facilitating the release of a proton. Since resonance is impossible in alcohols, the hydrogen atom is more firmly linked to the oxygen. Support for this argument is to be found in the fact that the resonance energy of phenol is greater than that of the benzene ring (this indicates that the presence of the hydroxyl group has given rise to a larger number of resonating structures); and it has also been shown that the C-OH bond has about 16 per cent. double bond character. Puttnam (1960), from spectroscopic studies, has shown that in all phenols the hydroxyl group is coplanar with the aromatic ring. This is in keeping with the partial double-bond character of the C-O bond.

3. Phenol can be halogenated, nitrated, and sulphonated to give o- and

p-derivatives (the hydroxyl group is o-p-orienting; cf. 2 above).
4. Phenol reacts with phosphorus pentachloride to form only a very small amount of chlorobenzene, the main product being triphenyl phosphate, (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>O)<sub>3</sub>PO (see p. 545). Phenol does *not* react with hydrogen chloride. 5. When distilled with zinc dust, phenol is converted into benzene:

$$C_6H_5OH + Zn \longrightarrow C_6H_6 + ZnO$$

Phenol may also be converted into benzene by treating with hydrogen at atmospheric pressure in the presence of molybdenum oxide as catalyst (Fischer et al., 1932):

$$C_6H_5OH + H_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_6 + H_2O$$

6. When heated with the double compounds of ammonia and zinc or calcium chloride, phenol forms aniline:

$$C_6H_5OH + NH_3 \xrightarrow{ZnCl_8} C_6H_5 \cdot NH_2 + H_2O$$

PHENOLS 621

Aniline is also produced when phenol is heated with ammonia under pressure.

7. The alkali phenoxides react with alkyl halides to form phenolic ethers;

e.g., sodium phenoxide and methyl iodide form anisole:

$$C_6H_5ONa + CH_3I \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot O \cdot CH_3 + NaI$$

8. Phenol can be hydrogenated in the presence of a nickel catalyst at 160° to cyclohexanol (cf. reaction 5, above):

$$C_6H_5OH + 3H_2 \xrightarrow{Ni} C_6H_{11}OH$$
 (ex.)

When phenol is oxidised with potassium permanganate, the ring is broken down (most phenols behave in a similar manner). Homologues of phenol can, however, be oxidised to the corresponding phenolic acid provided the hydroxyl group is protected by alkylation or acylation. The best means of protection is the formation of the benzenesulphonate, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_3 & CO_2H & CO_2H \\ \hline \\ OH & C_6H_5 \cdot SO_2C1 & \xrightarrow{NaOH} & O \cdot SO_2 \cdot C_6H_5 & O \cdot SO_2 \cdot C_6H_5 & OH \end{array}$$

Phenol also undergoes the Elbs persulphate oxidation (1893). In this reaction, monohydric phenols are oxidised to dihydric phenols with potassium persulphate in alkaline solution. If the p-position to the hydroxyl group is free, the quinol is formed; if the p-position is occupied, the catechol derivative is formed. The yields of dihydric phenol are often low, but the products can readily be isolated pure.

Phenols, as a group, appear to undergo homolytic substitution by the mechanism of transfer substitution, e.g., hydroxylation of phenol by hydrogen peroxide in the presence of ferrous ions gives a mixture of catechol and quinol (Weiss et al., 1951):

$$Fe^{3+} + H_2O_2 \longrightarrow Fe^{3+} + HO^- + HO$$

$$OH \longrightarrow H_2O + OH \longrightarrow HO$$

$$OH \longrightarrow HO$$

$$OH \longrightarrow HO$$

Other products are also obtained, e.g., o-benzoquinone. Phenols also react with lead tetra-acetate by transfer substitution. The initial products are o- and p-acetoxyl derivatives (replace HO· by Me·COO· in the above equations). These derivatives, however, are usually attacked further (Cavill et al., 1954).

9. Phenol undergoes the Friedel-Crafts reaction to form mainly the p-derivative and a small amount of the o-:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{OH} & \text{OH} & \text{OH} \\ \hline & + \text{CH}_3\text{Cl} & \xrightarrow{\text{AlCl}_3} & \hline \\ & \text{CH}_3 & + & \hline \end{array}$$

10. Phenol couples in the p-position with diazonium salts in alkaline solution to form hydroxyazo-compounds (p. 601).

11. When sodium or potassium phenoxide is heated with carbon dioxide, a phenolic acid is formed (see p. 681), e.g., salicylic acid:

$$ONa + CO_2 \rightarrow OH CO_2Na$$

12. Phenol is chloromethylated (p. 535) so readily that usually polymers are obtained.

The presence of a negative group, however, decreases the activating effect of the hydroxyl group; e.g., p-nitrophenol may be successfully chloromethylated to give 2-hydroxy-5-nitrobenzyl chloride.

On the other hand, phenol may be chloromethylated successfully by first converting it into an ester (usually the ethyl phenyl carbonate by means

of chloroformic ester), and chloromethylating this.

13. Phenol can be readily mercurated, e.g., when refluxed with aqueous mercuric acetate, o-acetoxymercuriphenol is formed (together with some dimercurated compound):

14. Phenol undergoes the Reimer-Tiemann reaction (p. 655), and the Gattermann reaction (p. 646).

15. When treated with acid chlorides, phenol forms phenyl esters:

$$C_6H_5OH + R \cdot COCl \longrightarrow R \cdot CO_2C_6H_5 + HCl$$

These phenyl esters, under suitable conditions, undergo the Fries rearrangement (1908). This consists of the conversion of a phenyl ester into an o-or p-hydroxyketone, or a mixture of both, by treatment with anhydrous aluminium chloride:

Generally low temperatures (60° or less) favour the formation of the p-isomer, whereas high temperatures (above 160°), favour the o-isomer. In either case, the yield of phenolic ketone is better than that obtained by means of a Friedel-Crafts reaction.

Many theories have been proposed for the Fries rearrangement, but none is certain. There is evidence for an intermolecular mechanism, since, when a

mixture of esters is rearranged, cross products are obtained, e.g. (Baltzly et al., 1948):

A highly favoured mechanism is the following intermolecular one based on the Friedel-Crafts acylation with acid chlorides (p. 533):

$$\begin{array}{c} \bar{\mathrm{AlCl_3}} \\ \mathrm{PhO \cdot COR} + \mathrm{AlCl_3} & \Longrightarrow \mathrm{PhO^+ - COR} & \Longrightarrow \mathrm{PhO \cdot \bar{A}lCl_3} + \mathrm{RCO^+} & \Longrightarrow \\ \bar{\mathrm{O}} - \bar{\mathrm{AlCl_3}} & \mathrm{OAlCl_2} \\ \mathrm{H} & - \mathrm{HCl} & \mathrm{COR} & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{H_4O}} & \mathrm{OH} \\ \mathrm{COR} & & & \mathrm{COR} & \end{array}$$

Ralston *et al.* (1940—) showed that variations in the amount of aluminium chloride and in the solvent influence the o/p ratio in the Fries rearrangement in the same way as they do in the Friedel–Crafts reaction; this supports the analogy between the two reactions.

16. Phenol condenses with aliphatic and aromatic aldehydes in the o-and p-positions, the most important example being the condensation with formaldehyde. At low temperature, in the presence of dilute acid or alkali, and using formalin (40 per cent. aqueous formaldehyde), the main product is p-hydroxybenzyl alcohol, together with a small amount of the o-isomer.

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \\
+ \text{ H-CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \\
\xrightarrow{\text{(6 days)}}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \\
+ \\
\text{CH2OH}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{(80\% o + p)}
\end{array}$$

This is known as the Lederer-Manasse reaction (1894); its mechanism may be:

Acid catalysis

When larger amounts of formaldehyde are used, bishydroxymethylphenol and p:p'-dihydroxydiphenylmethane are obtained:

OH OH 
$$CH_2OH$$
  $CH_2OH$   $CH_2OH$  OH  $CH_2OH$   $C$ 

These condensations are the basis of the preparation of phenol-formaldehyde resins; phenol and excess formaldehyde, in the presence of dilute sodium hydroxide, slowly form a three-dimensional polymer of the possible structure:

## Substituted Phenols

Halogenated Phenols. The presence of the hydroxyl group activates the o- and p-positions to such an extent that phenol, on treatment with chlorine or bromine water, gives an immediate precipitate of the 2:4:6-trihalogen derivative:

$$OH \longrightarrow Br \longrightarrow Br \longrightarrow Br + 3HBr$$

This reaction may be used to estimate phenol quantitatively.

Gaseous chlorine or bromine at 150–180° attacks phenol to give mainly the o-halogen derivative and a small amount of the p-isomer. If phenol is halogenated in glacial acetic acid or in carbon tetrachloride solution, the mono-, di- or trihalogen derivative is produced according to the amount of halogen used. Phenol can also be chlorinated with sulphuryl chloride, the reaction being less vigorous and more easily controlled than with chlorine.

o-Bromophenol may be obtained in a high state of purity by first sulphonating phenol to give the disulphonic acid derivative, which is then treated with sodium hydroxide and bromine. The mixture is acidified and steam distilled, whereupon the sulphonic acid groups are eliminated, the resulting o-bromophenol distilling over:

OH OH OH OH SO<sub>3</sub>H 
$$\xrightarrow{\text{Br}_9/\text{NaOH}}$$
 Br  $\xrightarrow{\text{SO}_3\text{H}}$   $\xrightarrow{\text{acid}}$   $\xrightarrow{\text{Br}}$  (40–43%)

PHENOLS 625

p-Bromophenol may be prepared by adding bromine dissolved in carbon disulphide to a cooled solution of phenol in carbon disulphide:

$$OH \longrightarrow Br_2 \xrightarrow{CS_0} OH + HBr \quad (80-84\%)$$

o- and p-Halogeno-phenols may be prepared pure from the corresponding

halogeno-anilines.

If the hydroxyl group is in the o- or p-position to a negative group such as  $NO_2$ ,  $CO_2H$ , or  $SO_3H$ , then on treatment with aqueous halogen, the negative group is often displaced, the product being the trihalogen derivative of phenol; e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
OH & OH \\
\hline
NO_2 & \xrightarrow{\operatorname{Br_a/H_aO}} Br & Br
\end{array}$$

o-Bromophenol shows two absorption bands in the infrared; this has been explained by suggesting the existence of two isomers due to hydrogen bonding. o-Iodophenol behaves similarly, but it appears that o-chlorophenol exists almost entirely in the cis form (hydrogen bonding is much stronger for chlorine than for bromine or iodine).

o-Iodophenol is best prepared by heating phenol with mercuric acetate, converting the o-acetoxymercuriphenol into the corresponding chloromercuri-derivative by heating with aqueous sodium chloride, and replacing the chloromercuri-group by treatment with iodine in chloroform solution:

$$\begin{array}{c}
OH \\
OH \\
\hline
\begin{array}{c}
(CH_3 \cdot CO_3)_3 Hg \\
\end{array}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
OH \\
HgO \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 \\
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
NaCl \\
(44\%)
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
HgCl \\
\hline
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
I_3/CHCl_3 \\
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
(63\%)
\end{array}$$

p-Iodophenol may be prepared as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
OH & OH & OH \\
\hline
N_{a}NO_{s} & \hline
N_{2}HSO_{4}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
OH & OH \\
\hline
N_{2}HSO_{4}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
I & (69-72\%)
\end{array}$$

The halogenated phenols, particularly the o- and p-derivatives, are stronger acids than phenol itself, e.g., tribromophenol decomposes carbonates. This may be due to the inductive effect of the halogen atom which enhances

resonance, thereby increasing the tendency for proton release in the hydroxyl

group.

When the halogenated phenols are fused with potassium hydroxide, halogen is replaced by hydroxyl, but the positions do not always remain the same, e.g., all three isomeric chlorophenols give resorcinol (m-dihydroxy benzene).

Nitrophenols. Treatment of phenol with cold dilute nitric acid gives a mixture of o- and p-nitrophenols, the latter predominating; oxidation products are also obtained. These isomers may be separated by steam distillation. As we have seen (p. 53), solubility in hydroxylic solvents depends

HOON

on, among other things, the power to form hydrogen bonds with the solvent. Phenol can form these bonds and hence a certain solubility in water can be expected. This argument also applies to substituted phenols since the hydroxyl group is still present, but in the o-compounds, however, because chelation is possible, hydrogen bonding with the solvent water molecules is hindered and hence the solubility is lowered. Furthermore, since chelation causes the o-compound to behave as a "monomer," this isomer will be more volatile

than the corresponding m- and p-isomers. Thus the effects of chelation are lower solubility and greater volatility in the o-compounds, thereby enabling these to be separated from their m- and p-isomers by steam distillation. The o-isomer may also be separated from the p- by crystallisation

or by chromatography.

It has been found that the nitration of phenol (and of aniline) is accelerated by the presence of nitrous acid, and it appears that the mechanism of the reaction is different from that of ordinary nitration. Evidence for this is based on the observation that when phenol is nitrated in the presence of very little nitrous acid, o- and p-nitrophenols are formed in the ratio of f: 3. When nitrated in the presence of a large amount of nitrous acid, the ratio becomes f: 9, which is the ratio in which f- and f-nitrosophenols are formed if the nitric acid is omitted. It is therefore believed that the nitrosocompound is formed first, and this is then oxidised to the nitro-compound (Hughes et al., 1946). This scheme may be used to prepare pure f-nitrophenol in very good yield; phenol is treated with nitrous acid and the product, f-nitrosophenol, is oxidised to f-nitrophenol.

o- and p-Nitrophenols are prepared commercially by direct nitration of phenol, and by hydrolysis of o- and p-chloronitrobenzenes with aqueous

sodium hydroxide.

o- and p-Nitrophenols are also formed when nitrobenzene is heated with solid potassium hydroxide (cf. p. 525).

m-Nitrophenol may be prepared from m-dinitrobenzene:

$$NO_2$$
 $NH_4HS$ 
 $NO_2$ 
 $NH_4HS$ 
 $NO_2$ 
 $NANO_4$ 
 $N_2HSO_4$ 
 $NO_2$ 
 $NO_2$ 

o-Nitrophenol is a yellow solid, m.p. 45°; the m- and p-isomers are colourless solids, m.ps. 97° and 114°, respectively. The o- and p-derivatives are stronger acids than the m-, and all are stronger acids than phenol (cf. chlorophenols, above). All three are readily reduced to the corresponding aminophenols, and the nitro-group in the o- and p-compounds is displaced on treatment with bromine water, 2:4:6-tribromophenol being formed. The salts of the three nitrophenols are highly coloured (yellow to red), and o- and p-nitrophenols give rise to two series of ethers, one colourless and the

other coloured. The colour of the latter series is believed to be due to the presence of the *quinonoid* structure:

$$HO \longrightarrow N \bigcirc O \Rightarrow O \longrightarrow N \bigcirc OH$$
 $n$ -form

 $RO \longrightarrow N \bigcirc O \Rightarrow O \longrightarrow N \bigcirc OR$ 
 $Colourless ether$ 
 $COlourless ether$ 
 $COlourless ether$ 

Only one form of the nitrophenols is known, but the existence of two series of ethers suggests that the nitrophenols are tautomeric. The colourless ethers are stable, and are only very slowly hydrolysed to the nitrophenol: the coloured ethers are unstable, and are easily hydrolysed. The n-ethers are produced by alkylating the nitrophenol in the usual way (e.g., with alkyl halide and alkali). If, however, the silver salt of the nitrophenol is treated with alkyl iodide, a mixture of the n- and aci-ethers is obtained.

The ethers of *m*-nitrophenol exist only in one form—colourless. This agrees with the fact that the *m*-compound cannot form the quinonoid structure.

On the other hand, it is difficult to explain the colour of the salts of *m*-nitrophenol on this theory. One suggestion is that the ion can resonate more than the undissociated phenol, and this gives rise to colour.

Owing to the negative charge on the oxygen atom, more of the other resonating structure is present. This also explains why m-nitrophenol is a stronger acid than phenol.

When o- and p-nitrophenols are nitrated, 2:4-dinitrophenol is formed, and this, in turn, can be further nitrated to 2:4:6-trinitrophenol (picric acid). The yield of picric acid is poor due to large losses by oxidation. Picric acid is prepared commercially by first sulphonating phenol and then nitrating the product (see p. 609). Another commercial method is as follows:

The interesting point to note about this method is that the presence of the negative nitro-group protects, to a large extent, the hydroxyl group from oxidation. It is in the nitration of phenol to the o- and p-nitrophenols that the loss by oxidation is greatest.

Picric acid may be obtained in the laboratory by oxidising s-trinitro-

benzene with potassium ferricyanide.

When benzene is subjected to *oxynitration*, *i.e.*, simultaneous oxidation and nitration by means of a solution of mercuric nitrate in nitric acid, 2:4-dinitrophenol and picric acid are formed. This is often referred to as the Wolffenstein-Böters reaction (1906).

Picric acid is a yellow crystalline solid, m.p. 122°, with a bitter taste (Greek: pikros, bitter). It is almost insoluble in cold water, but is soluble in hot water and in ether. It is a fairly strong acid, decomposing carbonates; the three nitro-groups in the p- and two o-positions create the maximum enhancement of resonance. The yellow colour is probably due to the presence of a large amount of the quinonoid structure. Picric acid forms crystalline molecular compounds known as picrates, with aromatic hydrocarbons, amines and phenols; their picrates are frequently used to identify these classes of compounds. When treated with bleaching powder, picric acid forms chloropicrin (p. 117) as one of the products. Picric acid forms picryl chloride when treated with phosphorus pentachloride. Although phenol gives a very poor yield of chlorobenzenes with phosphorus pentachloride, the nitrophenols (o-, p-, and o: p-derivatives) give fairly good yields of chloro-compound (the nitrophenols are relatively strongly acidic). The chlorine atom in picryl chloride is very reactive (owing to the presence of the three nitro-groups in the p- and two o-positions); e.g., when boiled with water, picryl chloride forms picric acid, and when shaken with concentrated ammonia, picramide:

The chlorine atom is also readily replaced by hydrogen when picryl chloride is treated with hydrogen iodide (see p. 557).

Picramic acid (2-amino-4:6-dinitrophenol) is formed when picric acid is reduced with sodium sulphide (cf. p. 564):

Picric acid is used in the manufacture of explosives, and is a dye for wool and silk.

Aminophenols. These may be prepared by reducing the corresponding nitrophenols with metal and acid, or catalytically. *m*-Aminophenol (used in the manufacture of dyes) is prepared commercially by heating resorcinol with ammonia and ammonium chloride under pressure at 200°:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \hline \\ \text{OH} + \text{NH}_3 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{NH}_4\text{CI}} \begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \hline \\ \text{NH}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \end{array}$$

This replacement reaction is only satisfactory for the preparation of the m-isomer.

o- and p-Aminophenols are more weakly acidic than phenol, possibly

PHENOLS 629

due to the amino-group inhibiting resonance of the hydroxyl group with the benzene ring; thus they do not form phenoxides with alkalis. On the other hand, they form salts with strong inorganic acids. The o- and pderivatives are readily oxidised to the corresponding quinones; the mcompound is not easily oxidised (and does not give a quinone). o-Aminophenol has a marked tendency to form cyclic compounds (cf. o-phenylenediamines, p. 579); e.g., with acetic acid it forms 2-methylbenzoxazole:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} OH & HO \\ & + & C-CH_3 \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} O \\ & \ddot{N} \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} C \cdot CH_3 + 2H_2O \end{array}$$

The amino-group in aminophenols is more readily acetylated than the hydroxyl group; e.g., when p-aminophenol hydrochloride is acetylated with one equivalent of acetic anhydride in the presence of aqueous sodium acetate, p-acetamidophenol is formed:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ & + (\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO})_2 \text{O} & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO}_2 \text{N\'a}} \\ & \text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{HCl} & \text{NH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$$

p-Aminophenol, m.p. 186°, is very important as a photographic developer. It may be prepared by boiling phenylhydroxylamine with sulphuric acid (see p. 561), or by reducing hydroxyazobenzene with sodium hyposulphite:

It is prepared industrially by the electrolytic reduction of nitrobenzene in sulphuric acid (see p. 561).

p-Aminophenol is readily oxidised to p-benzoquinone (p. 669).

Two other important photographic developers are amidol, m.p. 78°, and metol, m.p. 87°:

Phenolsulphonic acids. When phenol is treated with concentrated sulphuric acid, o- and p-phenolsulphonic acids are formed, the former being the main product at ordinary temperatures, and the latter at higher temperatures (110°); the o-compound rearranges to the p- on heating. m-Phenolsulphonic may be obtained by the controlled potassium hydroxide fusion of benzene-m-disulphonic acid at about 180°:

When o- or p- to a hydroxyl group (or an amino-group), a sulphonic acid group is often displaced by halogen when the sulphonic acid is halogenated in aqueous solution (cf. nitrophenols):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} & \text{OH} \\ & \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_9/\text{H}_2\text{O}} & \text{Br} \\ & \text{SO}_3\text{H} & \text{Br} \end{array}$$

**Nitrosophenols.** When treated with nitrous acid, phenol forms mainly *p*-nitrosophenol, and a small amount of the *o*-compound:

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \\
& \xrightarrow{\text{HNO}_{\sharp}}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \\
\text{NO}$$

p-Nitrosophenol is also formed when p-nitrosodimethylaniline is boiled with alkali (p. 573):

$$N(CH_3)_2$$
 OH  $+ (CH_3)_2NH (90\%)$  NO NO

p-Nitrosophenol crystallises from hot water in pale yellow needles which readily turn brown. On the other hand, it crystallises from ether in brownish-green flakes. This colour suggests that p-nitrosophenol may have a quinonoid structure, i.e., the following tautomeric system is present (cf. nitrophenols):

This is supported by the fact that p-nitrosophenol has been shown to be identical with the monoxime of p-benzoquinone, which may be prepared by the action of hydroxylamine on p-benzoquinone:

Havinga et al. (1955) have shown, from a study of ultraviolet spectra, that p-nitrosophenol exists in solution as the phenol together with the quinone oxime, but in the solid state it appears that only the latter form is present. Hadži (1956), from an examination of the infrared spectrum of the mon-

PHENOLS 631

oxime of benzoquinone, concludes that the oxime structure is correct for the compound in the solid state, and that this form predominates in chloroform solution.

o-Nitrosophenol may be prepared by the Baudisch reaction (1913), which uses the nitrosyl radical NOH and an oxidising agent; a nitroso- and a hydroxyl group are introduced into the ring (cf. oxynitration, p. 628):

$$\bigcirc + [\text{NOH}] + [\text{O}] \longrightarrow \bigcirc_{\text{OH}} \rightleftharpoons \bigcirc_{\text{OH}}$$

The nitrosyl radical is formed by the reduction of nitrous acid or the oxidation of hydroxylamine; the presence of a copper salt is essential, both to stabilise the nitrosyl radical and to ensure that o-, and not p-nitrosophenol, is formed.

The characteristic property of o-nitrosophenol is its ability to form highly-coloured chelated compounds with heavy metals; the complex has the quinone-monoxime structure (which is necessary for colour):

# Homologues of Phenol

Cresols (hydroxytoluenes), CH<sub>3</sub>·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>OH. The cresols occur in the middle and heavy oil fractions of coal-tar (p. 499). The mixture of the three cresols (together with a little phenol) is known as cresylic acid or cresote, and is used for preserving purposes, e.g., timber, railway sleepers, etc. A solution of cresols in soapy water is known as lysol, which is used as a disinfectant.

The boiling points of the cresols are: o-, 191°; m-, 201°; p-, 202·5°. By means of a very good fractionating column it is possible to separate the o-isomer from the other two. Each isomer can be obtained pure from the corresponding toluidine.

When either o- or m-chlorotoluene is heated with aqueous sodium hydroxide at about 300-320° under pressure, a certain amount of m-cresol

is obtained,

The methyl group in the cresols is *not* oxidised to a carboxyl group by chromic acid; nor is the ring attacked (cf. p. 512). If, however, the hydroxyl group is acetylated or alkylated, the methyl group can then be oxidised.

m- and p-Cresols are used in the manufacture of resins, plasticisers, etc.

Two higher homologues of phenol are the isomers thymol (3-hydroxy-4-iso-propyltoluene), and carvacrol (2-hydroxy-4-isopropyltoluene):

Thymol occurs in the essential oil, oil of thyme, but is prepared commercially by heating m-cresol and isopropanol with sulphuric acid; it is used in perfumery

and as an antiseptic. Carvacrol also occurs in some essential oils, but is prepared by heating camphor with iodine:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_3 \\ \hline C\\ CH_2 \\ \hline CC\\ CH_2 \\ \hline CH_3 \\ \hline CH_3 \\ \hline CH_3 \\ \hline CH_4 \\ \hline CH_5 \\ \hline CH_6 \\ \hline CH_7 \\ \hline CH_8 \\ \hline CH_8 \\ \hline CH_1 \\ \hline CH_1 \\ \hline CH_2 \\ \hline CH_1 \\ \hline CH_2 \\ \hline CH_2 \\ \hline CH_3 \\ \hline CH_4 \\ \hline CH_1 \\ \hline CH_2 \\ \hline CH_3 \\ \hline CH_4 \\ \hline CH_1 \\ \hline CH_2 \\ \hline CH_3 \\ \hline CH_4 \\ \hline CH_1 \\ \hline CH_2 \\ \hline CH_3 \\ \hline CH_3 \\ \hline CH_4 \\ \hline CH_1 \\ \hline CH_2 \\ \hline CH_3 \\ \hline CH_4 \\ \hline CH_1 \\ \hline CH_2 \\ \hline CH_3 \\ \hline CH_4 \\ \hline CH_1 \\ \hline CH_2 \\ \hline CH_3 \\ \hline CH_1 \\ \hline CH_2 \\ \hline CH_3 \\ \hline CH_4 \\ \hline CH_1 \\ \hline CH_2 \\ \hline CH_3 \\ \hline CH_3 \\ \hline CH_4 \\ \hline CH_4 \\ \hline CH_5 \\ CH_5 \\ \hline CH_5 \\$$

It is used in perfumery and as an antiseptic.

A number of monochloro-derivatives of monohydric phenols are also very good disinfectants, e.g., 2-chloro-5-hydroxytoluene.

#### DIHYDRIC PHENOLS

There are three possible dihydroxybenzenes, and all are known:

Catechol (o-dihydroxybenzene) occurs in certain plants. It may be prepared by the alkaline fusion of o-phenolsulphonic acid; commercially, it is prepared by heating o-chlorophenol or o-dichlorobenzene with 20 per cent. aqueous sodium hydroxide and a trace of copper sulphate at 190° under pressure:

Catechol may be conveniently prepared in the laboratory by the action of alkaline hydrogen peroxide on salicylaldehyde:

$$OH \rightarrow H_2O_3 \longrightarrow OH \rightarrow OH \rightarrow H \cdot CO_2Na \quad (69-73\%)$$

This reaction is characteristic of o- and p-hydroxyaldehydes; it is known as the **Dakin reaction** (1909).

Catechol is a colourless solid, m.p. 105°, soluble in water, ethanol and ether. With ferric chloride it gives a green coloration which turns red on the addition of sodium carbonate. Catechol is a powerful reducing agent: its aqueous solution darkens on exposure to air due to oxidation; it reduces cold silver nitrate and warm Fehling's solution. It is used as a photographic developer. Catechol is oxidised by silver oxide in ether solution to o-benzo-quinone, and it condenses with many compounds, e.g., with phthalic anhydride in the presence of sulphuric acid to form alizarin (p. 806).

Two curious reactions of catechol are its oxidation with nitrous acid in ether solution to dihydroxytartaric acid, and its easy carboxylation to protocatechuic acid by heating with aqueous ammonium carbonate at 140° under pressure:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{C(OH)}_2 \\ \text{C(OH)}_2 \\ \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{OH}} \begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \text{(NH_4)}_2\text{CO}_3 \\ \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array}$$

Important derivatives of catechol are guaiacol and adrenaline (the hormone secreted by the adrenal glands):

Resorcinol (m-dihydroxybenzene) is prepared industrially by the alkaline fusion of benzene-m-disulphonic acid.

Resorcinol is also formed when benzene-p-disulphonic acid or all three

bromobenzenesulphonic acids are fused with alkali.

Resorcinol is a colourless crystalline solid, m.p. 110°, very soluble in water, ethanol and ether. Its aqueous solution gives a violet coloration with ferric chloride. It is not so powerful a reducing agent as the o- and p-isomers, but it will reduce silver nitrate and Fehling's solution on warming. With nitrous acid it forms dinitrosoresorcinol:

$$\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{OH} & & \text{OH} & & \text{OH} \\
\text{OH} & & & \text{NO} & & \\
\text{NO} & & & & \text{NOH}
\end{array}$$

This is known as Fast Green O, and is used as a dye.

When nitrated, resorcinol forms styphnic acid (2:4:6-trinitroresorcinol), m.p. 180°:

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \\
\text{OH} \\
\text{H}_{4}\text{SO}_{4}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \\
\text{NO}_{2} \\
\text{OH} \\
\text{NO}_{2}
\end{array}$$

Styphnates are used to identify certain compounds by molecular complex formation (cf. picrates, p. 628; see also p. 557).

A number of reactions of resorcinol are best explained on the assumption that resorcinol behaves as a tautomeric substance:

Resorcinol is used for making dyes.

Orcinol (3:5-dihydroxytoluene), HOOH, m.p. 290°, is found in many lichens, and is chemically related to litmus.

Quinol (hydroquinone, p-dihydroxybenzene) occurs in the glucoside arbutin. It may be prepared by diazotising p-aminophenol (yield 30 per cent)., or by reducing p-benzoquinone with sulphurous acid:

It is made commercially as follows:

$$NH_2 \xrightarrow{MnO_2} O = O \xrightarrow{Fe} HOOOH$$

Quinol is a colourless solid, m.p. 170°, very soluble in water, ethanol and ether. It is a powerful reducing agent and hence is used as a photographic developer. It is oxidised by ferric chloride to p-benzoquinone; it is also oxidised by diazonium salts, no coupling taking place at all. In both cases, the oxidation takes place via the intermediate formation of quinhydrone (p. 670). Quinol behaves as a tautomeric compound.

$$HO\bigcirc OH \implies O = \bigcirc H_2 H_2 = O$$

Cookson et al. (1955) have shown that quinol forms an adduct with maleic anhydride.

This is particularly interesting since it is the first example of an adduct being formed from a *monocyclic* hydrocarbon (see Diels-Alder reaction, p.

Clathrates. When quinol is crystallised from a solution in water saturated with sulphur dioxide, a quinol-sulphur dioxide complex is obtained. These inclusion complexes are also formed with hydrogen sulphide, methanol, etc., and have a molecular formula of the type  $3C_6H_4(OH)_2$ ·Z (where Z is one molecule of the second component). Powell et al. (1948), using X-ray analysis, found that in these complexes the quinol molecules were linked together through hydrogen bonds to form giant molecules the cavities in which enclosed the second component. Powell named these complexes clathrates, and showed that the "cages" must be large enough to contain the molecule of the second component and that they must be so arranged that the enclosed molecules do not escape. These clathrates are stable, but the imprisoned molecules may be released either by melting or by means of an organic solvent which dissolves quinol.

PHENOLS 635

Clathrates differ from channel complexes (p. 387) in that each molecule of the second component is enclosed in a separate molecular cage of limited size, and thus the possible variations of this second component depend on molecular size. Hence clathrates may be used to separate certain homologues, e.g., quinol forms a clathrate with methanol but not with any other homologue of this alcohol series.

### TRIHYDRIC PHENOLS

There are three possible trihydroxybenzenes, and all are known:

Pyrogallol (vic-trihydroxybenzene) may be prepared by heating solid gallic acid in a stream of carbon dioxide, or by heating an aqueous solution of gallic acid at 210° under pressure:

Pyrogallol is a colourless solid, m.p. 133°, soluble in water, ethanol and ether; its aqueous solution gives a red coloration with ferric chloride. Alkaline solutions of pyrogallol oxidise very rapidly on exposure to air, and hence are used in gas analysis for the absorption of oxygen (and carbon dioxide); the pyrogallol is oxidised to a complex mixture containing, among other things, carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, acetic and oxalic acids. Pyrogallol also reduces the salts of silver, gold, platinum and mercury to their metals. It is used as a photographic developer.

Hydroxyquinol (as-trihydroxybenzene), m.p. 140°, may be prepared by the alkaline fusion of quinol in air. It is best prepared by hydrolysing its triacetate, which is obtained by heating p-benzoquinone with acetic an-

hydride and concentrated sulphuric acid:

$$O \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$$

$$O \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$$

$$O \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + CH_3 \cdot CO_2H \xrightarrow{H_4O} OH$$

$$O \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$$

$$O \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$$

Phloroglucinol (s-trihydroxybenzene) is obtained when many plant resins are fused with alkalis. It may be prepared by fusing resorcinol with sodium hydroxide in the air, but a convenient laboratory method is to reduce strinitrobenzoic acid, and heat the resulting amino-derivative with hydrochloric acid (yield: 46-53 per cent. as dihydrate):

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{CO}_2\text{H} & \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{NO}_2 & \text{NH}_2 & \text{NH}_2 & \text{HO} \\ \text{NO}_2 & \text{NH}_2 & \text{NH}_2 & \text{OH} \\ \end{array}$$

It should be noted that this decarboxylation and replacement of aminogroups by hydroxyl merely by boiling with hydrochloric acid is *not* a general reaction.

Phloroglucinol is a colourless solid, m.p. 218°, fairly soluble in water, its aqueous solution giving a bluish-violet coloration with ferric chloride. Its alkaline solutions rapidly darken on exposure to air due to oxidation. Phloroglucinol behaves as a tautomeric compound; e.g., when warmed with acetic anhydride, it forms the triacetate, and when treated with hydroxylamine, the trioxime:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \text{HO} \\ \text{OH} \end{array} \Longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \text{H}_2 \\ \text{O} \\ \text{H}_2 \end{array}$$

This tautomeric system was formerly supported by the statement that phloroglucinol could be prepared from acetone and malonyl chloride, but according to Elvidge et al. (1952), these two compounds do not give phloroglucinol.

Infrared spectra studies have shown that *all* phenols are entirely enolic in the solid state and also in solution. Of all the phenols mentioned in the foregoing account, the tendency to react as a ketone is most pronounced in phloroglucinol. Further evidence for the existence of tautomerism in phenols is the formation of two types of alkyl derivatives when alkylated with alkyl halide in the presence of alkali, *viz.*, *O-* and *C-*alkyl derivatives; *e.g.*, resorcinol gives a mixture of three methylated products:

Phloroglucinol forms only the C-alkyl derivatives:

HOOH 
$$\rightleftharpoons$$
  $H_2$   $H_2$   $CH_3I$   $CH_3I$ 

C-hexamethylphloroglucinol

These alkylations, however, may be explained, not by the existence of a ketoenol system, but by attack of alkyl carbonium ions at negative points in the system. This is a reasonable assumption since alkylations are always carried out in alkaline solution, and so one can expect the presence of a resonance hybrid ion (Thomson, 1956), e.g.,

In addition to the phenols described above, three tetrahydric, one pentahydric, and one hexahydric phenol are known.

#### AROMATIC ETHERS

The aromatic ethers may be divided into two groups, the *phenolic ethers*, which are of the type Ar<sub>2</sub>O<sub>1</sub>R, and the ethers of the type Ar<sub>2</sub>O (the diaryl ethers).

Phenolic ethers. These may be prepared by heating sodium phenoxide with alkyl halide in ethanol solution, or by treating an alkaline solution of a phenol with alkyl sulphate:

$$ArONa + RX \longrightarrow Ar \cdot O \cdot R + NaX \quad (v.g.)$$
  
 $ArONa + R_2SO_4 \longrightarrow Ar \cdot O \cdot R + RNaSO_4 \quad (v.g.-ex.)$ 

Phenolic methyl ethers may be obtained in excellent yield by the action of diazomethane on a phenol:

$$ArOH + CH_2N_2 \longrightarrow Ar \cdot O \cdot CH_3 + N_2$$
 (ex.)

Two important phenolic ethers are anisole (methyl phenyl ether, methoxybenzene),  $C_6H_5\cdot O\cdot CH_3$ , b.p. 155°, and phenetole (ethyl phenyl ether, ethoxybenzene),  $C_6H_5\cdot O\cdot C_2H_5$ , b.p. 172°. These ethers are prepared industrially by the alkylation of phenol with methyl or ethyl sulphate, or with the methyl and ethyl esters of p-toluenesulphonic acid.

Anisole and phenetole are used as the starting point for the preparation of various derivatives. They are stable liquids; they are unaffected by most acids and alkalis, but are decomposed by concentrated hydriodic acid (or hydrobromic acid) into phenol and alkyl iodide (or bromide):

$$C_6H_5 \cdot O \cdot CH_3 + HI \longrightarrow C_6H_5OH + CH_3I$$

The alkyl iodide can be absorbed by an ethanolic solution of silver nitrate, and the silver iodide so formed, weighed. This is the basis of the Zeisel method for the estimation of methoxyl and ethoxyl groups.

Phenolic ethers may be decomposed by refluxing with aluminium chloride, or better, with aluminium bromide, in benzene solution, using one equivalent of aluminium halide for each alkoxyl group present. The mechanism of the reaction is uncertain; according to Pfeiffer and Loewe (1936), the reaction takes place as follows:

$$C_{6}H_{5}\cdot O\cdot R + AlCl_{3} \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} AlCl_{3} \\ + \\ -O + R \end{bmatrix} \longrightarrow RCl + C_{6}H_{5}\cdot O\cdot AlCl_{2} \xrightarrow{H_{5}O} \\ C_{6}H_{5}OH + HOAlCl_{2}$$

On the other hand, this conversion of phenolic ethers into phenols is very conveniently carried out by boiling the ether in piperidine containing sodamide (Brotherton et al., 1957):

$$PhOR + HN \longrightarrow PhOH + RN \longrightarrow$$

Phenolic ethers may also be decomposed by refluxing in pyridine solution with sodium:

$$C_6H_6$$
·O·R + 2Na  $\longrightarrow$   $C_6H_5$ Na + RONa  $\xrightarrow{H_9O}$   $C_6H_6$  + ROH

Formation of an ether provides a means of protecting the hydroxyl group in many reactions; e.g., in the Friedel-Crafts reaction, due to acidic character of the hydroxyl group, aluminium chloride is attacked with the liberation of hydrogen chloride:

Thus to carry out a successful Friedel-Crafts reaction with phenol, it is necessary to use a large amount of aluminium chloride. This, however, may be avoided by carrying out the reaction with the methyl ether, but the temperature must be kept as low as possible to prevent the catalyst decomposing the ether.

In certain cases, phenolic ethers rearrange to the o- or p-alkyl compound:

$$C_6H_5OR \xrightarrow{AlCl_9} o$$
- or  $p$ -R• $C_6H_4OH$ 

This rearrangement occurs fairly readily when the alkyl group is tertiary; secondary alkyl groups migrate less easily, and primary groups with great difficulty, if at all, e.g., aluminium chloride dealkylates anisole and phenetole, but Smith (1933) showed:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OCH}_2\text{-CHMe}_2 & \text{OH} \\ & \xrightarrow{\text{AlCl}_8} & \\ & \xrightarrow{\text{CMe}_3} \end{array}$$

Dewar et al. (1959) have examined the rearrangement of n- and sec.-butyl phenyl ether, and conclude from their experiments that the rearrangement occurs by intramolecular and intermolecular mechanisms operating independently.

**Catechol ethers. Guaiacol** (o-hydroxyanisole), m.p. 32°, b.p. 205°, occurs in beech-wood tar from which it may be obtained by fractional distillation. Guaiacol is prepared synthetically from o-anisidine:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{O-CH}_3 & \text{O-CH}_3 \\ \hline NH_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{NaNO}_2/\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4} \\ \hline \text{boil} & \end{array}$$

When refluxed with constant boiling hydrobromic acid, or heated with hydriodic acid at 130°, guaiacol is converted into catechol.

Guaiacol is used in medicine, and as the starting material in the preparation

of vanillin (see p. 659).

Veratrole (1:2-dimethoxybenzene), b.p. 207°, may be prepared by methylating catechol with methyl sulphate in alkaline solution:

Eugenol (4-allylguaiacol), b.p. 254°, occurs in oil of cloves and in many other essential oils. When heated with ethanolic potassium hydroxide, or better, with potassium hydroxide in diethyleneglycol at 180°, eugenol isomerises to isoeugenol (4-propenylguaiacol):

This migration of the double bond in the allyl side-chain, under the influence of alkali, is general; this is an example of prototropy.

isoEugenol, b.p. 267.5°, also occurs naturally, and gives vanillin on gentle oxidation.

Anethole (p-methoxypropenylbenzene), m.p. 22-23°, b.p. 235°, is one of the chief constituents of aniseed oil, from which it is obtained. It is also prepared synthetically by the interaction of p-methoxyphenylmagnesium bromide and allyl bromide, and isomerising the product, estragole (methyl-chavicol), with alkali:

Safrole (4-allyl-1: 2-methylenedioxybenzene), b.p. 232°, occurs in camphor oil and sassafras oil. When heated in ethanolic potassium hydroxide solution, or better, in a concentrated solution of potassium hydroxide in cellosolve, safrole isomerises to isosafrole:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} O \longrightarrow CH_2 & O \longrightarrow CH_2 \\ \hline O & KOH & O \\ \hline CH_2 \cdot CH : CH_2 & CH : CH \cdot CH_3 \\ \hline safrole & isosafrole \\ \end{array}$$

isoSafrole, b.p.  $252^{\circ}$ , also occurs naturally, and gives piperonal on gentle oxidation (p. 660).

Aromatic ethers of the type Ar<sub>2</sub>O. These are most conveniently prepared by means of the *Ullmann reaction* (cf. p. 576); eg., diphenyl ether may be prepared by refluxing a mixture of bromobenzene, phenol, potassium hydroxide with a small amount of copper as catalyst:

$$C_6H_5Br + C_6H_5OH + KOH \xrightarrow{Cu} (C_6H_5)_2O + KBr + H_2O$$
 (90%)

Diphenyl ether may also be prepared by heating phenol with aluminium chloride:

$$2C_6H_5OH \xrightarrow{AlCl_9} (C_6H_5)_2O + H_2O$$

Diphenyl ether is a solid, m.p. 28°, with a geranium odour. It is not decomposed by hydriodic acid, and is valuable as a high temperature heat transfer medium.

Ethers of aminophenols. The methyl ethers of o- and p-aminophenol are known as o-anisidine and p-anisidine, respectively, and each may be prepared by reducing its corresponding nitroanisole, e.g., o-anisidine from o-nitroanisole:

The anisidines are used in the preparation of azo-dyes.

The ethyl ethers of the aminophenols are known as phenetidines; these are also

used in the preparation of azo-dyes. The acetyl derivative of p-phenetidine is known as phenacetin, and is prepared commercially as follows:

Phenacetin is replacing acetanilide in medicine; it is a very good analgesic (i.e., promotes relief from pain) and antipyretic (i.e., fever-reducing).

Dulcin is the carbamyl derivative of p-phenetidine, and is prepared by heating

p-phenetidine with urea:

Dulcin is a solid, m.p. 171°, and is about 200 times as sweet as sugar; it is used commercially as a sweetening agent.

Claisen rearrangement. When heated to about 200°, allyl ethers of phenols rearrange to form the corresponding o-allylphenols, e.g.,

This is known as the *Claisen rearrangement*. The starting material may be readily prepared by heating phenol with allyl bromide in acetone solution in the presence of potassium carbonate:

$$C_6H_5OH + CH_2 = CH \cdot CH_2Br \xrightarrow{K_5CO_5} C_6H_5 \cdot O \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH = CH_2 + HBr (86-97\%)$$

In the Claisen rearrangement the allyl group migrates to the o-position preferably, but if both o-positions are occupied, it migrates to the p-position:

The Claisen rearrangement also takes place with allyl ethers of enols; actually, the rearrangement was originally discovered by Claisen (1912), while working on O-allylacetoacetic ester:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{O-CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH} = \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{C} = \text{CH-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array} \rightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{O} \quad \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH} = \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_3\text{-}\text{C} = \text{CH-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$$

This reaction further shows the resemblance between phenols and enols.

PHENOLS 641

The mechanism of the Claisen rearrangement has been the subject of a great deal of work. The intramolecular nature of the rearrangement has been demonstrated by the fact that if two different ethers are heated together, they rearrange independently, e.g., Hurd et al. (1937) heated a mixture of allyl 2-naphthyl ether and cinnamyl phenyl ether and did not obtain cross products:

Kincaid et al. (1939) showed the rearrangement was of the first order, and other workers have shown that when the allyl group migrates to the ring in the orearrangement, the  $\alpha,\gamma$ -bonding is reversed (see above example). Schmid et al. (1953), using the allyl radical labelled with <sup>14</sup>C at the  $\gamma$ -carbon atom, also showed that the rearranged product contained the tracer atom attached to the nucleus:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OCH}_2\text{-CH} = \overset{*}{\text{CH}}_2 \\ \longrightarrow \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \overset{*}{\text{CH}}_2\text{-CH} = \text{CH}_2 \end{array}$$

These examples suggest that the reversal of the bonding in the allyl group is a necessary requirement in the rearrangement. The following intramolecular *cyclic* mechanism is in agreement with the foregoing facts:

A point of interest here is that the electron-flow has been drawn in a clockwise direction. White et al. (1958) have obtained evidence to show that this is so. It will also be noted that the formation of a dienone is postulated in this mechanism; evidence for its existence has been obtained in the para rearrangement (see below). Support for the migration of the o-hydrogen in the dienone is given by the following experiment of Kistiakowsky et al. (1942):

The mechanism of the p-rearrangement is believed to occur in two stages, each one with "inversion", and thus the final product will not be "inverted"

Schmid et al. (1953) showed the following rearrangement occurred with labelled allyl 2:6-dimethylphenyl ether:

The existence of the dienone and the reversibility of the steps (as shown in the orearrangement) have been demonstrated by Curtin et al. (1954, 1956). Curtin et al. (1957) also prepared (I) and showed it rearranged above 70° to give a mixture of (II) and (III):

$$\begin{array}{c|c} O & OCH_2 \cdot CH = CH_2 \\ \hline Me & OH \\ \hline CH_2 \cdot CH = CH_2 \\ \hline (I) & (II) & (III) \\ \end{array}$$

Conroy et al. (1954, 1956) also have demonstrated the existence of the dienone by rearranging allyl 2:6-dimethylphenyl ether in the presence of maleic anhydride; a small amount of adduct was isolated. Thus a Diels-Alder reaction has occurred, and this is powerful evidence for the formation of the dienone (the dienophile in this system). The reversibility of both stages in the p-arrangement has also been demonstrated by Schmid et al. (1956) using allyl radicals labelled with 14C:

Compound (IV), in which labelling was only in the C-allyl group (C), was recovered chemically unchanged after being heated to 160°, but was now also

labelled in the O-allyl group (C), the isotope being equally distributed between

the terminal methylene groups.

A two-stage mechanism for this p-rearrangement, each stage involving a cyclic transition state, accounts for all of the facts. In the second stage, o- to p-, the cyclic transition state will be highly deformed.

#### QUESTIONS

1. Describe how each of the following compounds is prepared commercially:

1. Describe how each of the following compounds is prepared commercially:—
(a) Phenol, (b) o- and p-nitrophenols, (c) picric acid, (d) m- and p-aminophenols, (e) catechol, (f) resorcinol, (g) anisole, (h) phenetole, (i) phenacetin, (j) dulcin.

2. Name the compounds and state under what conditions they are formed when phenol is treated with:—(a) FeCl<sub>3</sub>, (b) NaOH, (c) Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, (d) Br<sub>2</sub>, (e) HNO<sub>3</sub>, (f) H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, (g) Zn, (h) NH<sub>3</sub>, (i) H<sub>3</sub>, (j) Etl, (k) KMnO<sub>4</sub>, (l) Ph·N<sub>2</sub>Cl, (m) CO<sub>2</sub>, (n) AcCl, (o) H·CHO, (p) SO<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, (q) PCl<sub>3</sub>, (r) HNO<sub>2</sub>, (s) AlCl<sub>3</sub>.

3. Discuss the differences between the properties of PhOH and EtOH and attempt to account for them

4. Starting with benzene or toluene, show how you would prepare:—(a) phenol, (b) 5-nitro-2-hydroxybenzyl alcohol, (c) o-nitrosophenol, (d) p-hydroxyacetophenone, (e) p-hydroxybenzyl chloride, (f) o-, m- and p-bromophenols, (g) o- and p-bodophenols, (h) piccamide (f) piccamide (g) piccamide (h) November (h) November (h) piccamide (h) pic (h) m-nitrophenol, (i) picramide, (j) picramic acid, (k) N-acetylaminophenol, (l) m-phenolsulphonic acid, (m) o-, m- and p-cresols, (n) thymol, (o) s-trinitrobenzoic acid. PHENOLS 643

5. Write an account of:—(a) displacement of groups in phenol derivatives, (b) hydrogen bonding in phenol derivatives, (c) acid or basic strengths of phenol derivatives, (d) nitration of phenol, (e) the colour of nitrophenol ethers.

6. Describe the preparation and the more important properties of:—(a) the three dihydroxybenzenes, (b) the three trihydroxybenzenes.

7. Starting with any phenol you like, show how you would synthesise:—(a) guaiacol, (b) veratrole, (c) eugenol, (d) anethole, (e) diphenyl ether, (f) o-anisidine, (g) pphenetidine.

8. Define and give examples of:—(a) Chloromethylation, (b) mercuration, (c) Fries reaction, (d) Lederer-Manasse reaction, (e) oxynitration, (f) Baudisch reaction, (g) Zeisel method, (h) Ullmann reaction, (i) Claisen rearrangement, (j) Elbs persulphate

oxidation.

9. How would you show, by means of analytical and synthetic evidence, that the

CH<sub>3</sub> structure of a compound is OC2H5

10. Discuss the mechanisms of (a) the Fries reaction, (b) the Claisen rearrangement. II. Give an account of the principles involved in the separation of isomeric substi-

tuted phenols.

12. Write an essay on clathrates.

#### READING REFERENCES

Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. I (1942), Ch. II. The Fries Reaction. Vol. II (1944), Ch. 1. The Claisen Rearrangement. Oxynitration:

(i) Westheimer et al., J. Amer. Chem. Soc., 1947, 69, 773.

(ii) Carmack et al., ibid., 1947, 69, 785.

(iii) Aristoff et al., Ind. Eng. Chem., 1948, 40, 1281.

Cronheim, o-Nitrosophenols, J. Org. Chem., 1947, 12, 1, 7, 20.

Sidgwick, The Organic Chemistry of Nitrogen. Oxford Press (New Ed. by Taylor and Baker, 1937). (i) p. 221. Nitrosophenols. (ii) p. 265. Nitrophenols.

Kenyon and Boehmer, Phenol by Sulphonation, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1950, 42, 1446. Sethna, The Elbs Persulphate Oxidation, Chem. Reviews, 1951, 49, 91. Thomson, Phenol Tautomerism, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1956, 10, 27. Salt, Synthetic Phenol Manufacture, Chem. and Ind., 1953, S46. Truter, Sorting Molecules by Size and Shape, Research, 1953, 6, 320.

Mandelcorn, Clathrates, Chem. Reviews, 1959, 59, 827.

### CHAPTER XXVII

## ALCOHOLS, ALDEHYDES, KETONES AND QUINONES

### AROMATIC ALCOHOLS

Aromatic alcohols are compounds containing a hydroxyl group in a *side-chain*, and may be regarded as aryl derivatives of the aliphatic alcohols. Aromatic alcohols may be classified as primary, secondary, or tertiary alcohols, and their methods of preparation are similar to those used for aliphatic alcohols (p. 124). Only primary alcohols will be discussed in this section; secondary and tertiary aromatic alcohols are dealt with in the chapter on polynuclear hydrocarbons.

Benzyl alcohol (phenylcarbinol), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, may be prepared: (i) By hydrolysing benzyl chloride with aqueous sodium hydroxide:

$$C_6H_5$$
· $CH_2Cl + NaOH \longrightarrow C_6H_5$ · $CH_2OH + NaCl (70\%)$ 

This method is used commercially:

(ii) By reducing benzaldehyde with zinc and hydrochloric acid:

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHO + 2[H]  $\longrightarrow$   $C_6H_5$ ·CH<sub>2</sub>OH

(iii) By means of the Cannizzaro reaction:

$$2C_6H_5$$
·CHO + NaOH  $\longrightarrow C_6H_5$ ·CH<sub>2</sub>OH +  $C_6H_5$ ·CO<sub>2</sub>Na (90%)

It may also be prepared by means of a crossed Cannizzaro reaction (p. 165):

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHO + H·CHO + NaOH  $\longrightarrow$   $C_6H_5$ ·CH<sub>2</sub>OH + H·CO<sub>2</sub>Na

Benzyl alcohol (which is isomeric with the cresols) is a colourless liquid, b.p. 205°, sparingly soluble in water but readily soluble in organic solvents. Its reactions are similar to those of the primary aliphatic alcohols; e.g., on oxidation, it forms benzaldehyde and finally benzoic acid:

$$C_6H_5\text{-}CH_2OH \xrightarrow{[O]} C_6H_5\text{-}CHO \xrightarrow{[O]} C_6H_5\text{-}CO_2H$$

Benzyl alcohol forms esters, many of which are used in perfumery, e.g., benzyl acetate (prepared from benzyl alcohol and acetic anhydride) occurs in oil of jasmine. Benzyl alcohol reacts with sodium to form sodium benzyl oxide.

In addition to the above reactions, benzyl alcohol exhibits aromatic properties due to the presence of the ring, e.g., it can be nitrated, sulphonated, etc. Care, however, must be taken to avoid reaction with the hydroxyl group; it is therefore generally better, when preparing nuclear-substituted derivatives of benzyl alcohol, to use benzyl chloride (the CH<sub>2</sub>Cl and CH<sub>2</sub>OH groups are both o-p-orienting), and then hydrolyse to the alcohol.

Benzyl alcohol may be catalytically (palladium) reduced to toluene:

$$C_6H_5$$
· $CH_2OH + H_2 \xrightarrow{Pd} C_6H_5$ · $CH_3 + H_2O$ 

This reaction occurs when the benzyl group is attached to O, N, or S, and may also be effected by sodium amalgam or lithium aluminium hydride. *Debenzylation* is a very useful reaction since a benzyl group may be introduced into a compound to protect a sensitive group and then removed at the end of the reaction.

Hydroxybenzyl alcohols may be prepared by the Lederer-Manasse reaction (p. 623). o-Hydroxybenzyl alcohol, salicyl alcohol (saligenin), o-HO·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, occurs in the glucoside salicin. It is a crystalline solid, m.p. 87°, and is used in medicine as an antipyretic.

2-Phenylethanol (β-phenylethyl alcohol), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, may be pre-

pared by reducing phenylacetic ester with sodium and ethanol:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + 4[H] \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot CH_2OH + C_2H_5OH$$

It is prepared industrially by the action of ethylene oxide on phenyl-magnesium bromide:

$$C_6H_5\text{*}MgBr + CH_2\text{*}CH_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\text{*}CH_2\text{*}CH_2\text{*}OMgBr \xrightarrow{H_9O} C_6H_5\text{*}CH_2\text{*}CH_2OH$$

2-Phenylethanol is a colourless oil, b.p. 220°, and is the chief consitutent of rose oil. When heated with alkali, it forms styrene.

2-Phenylethanol and its esters are used in perfumery.

#### AROMATIC ALDEHYDES

Aromatic aldehydes fall into two groups: those in which the aldehyde group is directly attached to the nucleus, and those in which it is attached to the side-chain. The former group comprises the aromatic aldehydes; the latter, which behave as aliphatic aldehydes, are best regarded as aryl-substituted aliphatic aldehydes.

Benzaldehyde (benzenecarbonal), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CHO, is also known as oil of bitter almonds, since it is found in the glucoside amygdalin which occurs in bitter almonds. Amygdalin may be hydrolysed by dilute acids or the enzyme

emulsin to benzaldehyde, glucose and hydrogen cyanide:

$$C_{20}H_{27}O_{11}N + 2H_2O \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot CHO + 2C_6H_{12}O_6 + HCN$$

Benzaldehyde may be prepared by any of the following methods, which are general for its homologues as well.

I. By the hydrolysis of benzylidene chloride with water at 100°, in the

presence of iron powder as catalyst:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CHCl_2 + H_2O \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CHO + 2HCl$$
 (76%)

Benzylidene chloride usually contains benzyl chloride and benzotrichloride, and consequently the product of hydrolysis is contaminated with benzyl alcohol and benzoic acid. If, however, hydrolysis is carried out with boric acid, then only benzylidene chloride is hydrolysed, the other two being unaffected under these conditions (the Makarov–Zemlianskii–Prokin method, 1936).

2. By boiling benzyl chloride with aqueous copper or lead nitrate in a current of carbon dioxide. The mechanism of the reaction is unknown; the equation usually given is:

$${}_{2}C_{6}H_{5}\cdot CH_{2}Cl + Pb(NO_{3})_{2} \longrightarrow {}_{2}C_{6}H_{5}\cdot CHO + PbCl_{2} + 2HNO_{2}$$
 (40%)

3. By the oxidation of toluene. This may be done in the vapour phase or in the liquid phase. In vapour-phase oxidation, toluene is catalytically oxidised with air diluted with nitrogen to prevent complete oxidation of the hydrocarbon. The temperature may be as high as 500°, and the catalyst is the oxide of metals such as manganese, molybdenum, zirconium, etc.:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CH_3 + O_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CHO + H_2O$$

Oxidation of hydrocarbons containing a side-chain of two or more carbon atoms gives mainly a ketone since only the  $\alpha$ -carbon atom is readily oxidised, e.g., ethylbenzene forms acetophenone:

$$C_6H_5$$
• $CH_2$ • $CH_3 \xrightarrow{O_2} C_6H_5$ • $CO$ • $CH_3$ 

In liquid phase oxidation, toluene is oxidised with manganese dioxide and 65 per cent. sulphuric acid at 40°. This method is used commercially.

Benzaldehyde may be conveniently prepared in the laboratory by oxidising toluene with chromium trioxide in acetic anhydride. As the benzaldehyde is formed, it is converted into benzylidene acetate, thereby preventing further oxidation of the benzaldehyde. Hydrolysis of the acetate with dilute sulphuric or hydrochloric acid gives benzaldehyde:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow[(CH_2 \cdot CO)_2O)]{CrO_5} C_6H_5 \cdot CH(O \cdot CO \cdot CH_3)_2 \xrightarrow[H_2O]{H_2O} + CH_3 \cdot CO_2H \quad (40-50\%)$$

A better yield of benzaldehyde may be obtained by oxidising benzyl alcohol with chromium trioxide in acetic anhydride (yield 90 per cent.) or with acid dichromate (yield 80–95 per cent.).

An interesting oxidising agent is chromyl chloride (Étard's reaction, 1877). In this method the hydrocarbon is treated with chromyl chloride in carbon tetrachloride solution and the complex, which is precipitated, is decomposed with water:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CH_3 + 2CrO_2Cl_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot CH_3 \cdot 2CrO_2Cl_2 \xrightarrow{H_3O} C_6H_5 \cdot CHO$$
 (80%)

Side-chains larger than methyl are oxidised at the *terminal* carbon atom, *e.g.*, ethylbenzene gives phenylacetaldehyde:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot CH_3 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot CHO$$

4. Gattermann-Koch aldehyde synthesis (1897). Benzaldehyde may be synthesised by bubbling a mixture of carbon monoxide and hydrogen chloride through a solution of nitrobenzene or ether containing benzene and a catalyst consisting of aluminium chloride and a small amount of cuprous chloride:

$$C_6H_6 + CO + HCl \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} C_6H_5 \cdot CHO + HCl$$

In the absence of cuprous chloride the yield is very poor: in its presence, and under normal pressure, the yield is 30–50 per cent.; under high pressure, the yield is 80–90 per cent. Benzaldehyde can also be prepared from benzene and carbon monoxide under a pressure of 90 atmospheres in the presence of aluminium chloride. The reaction, however, must be carried out in the presence of a small amount of water which, presumably, produces hydrogen chloride by hydrolysis of aluminium chloride:

$$C_6H_6 + CO \xrightarrow{AlCl_9} C_6H_5 \cdot CHO$$
 (g.)

This method is used commercially.

When there are substituents in the ring, e.g., a methyl group, the aldehyde group is introduced into the p-position only. The Gattermann-Koch aldehyde synthesis is not applicable to phenols and their ethers.

5. Gattermann aldehyde synthesis (1906). When benzene is treated with a mixture of hydrogen cyanide and hydrogen chloride in the presence of

aluminium chloride, and the complex so produced decomposed with water, benzaldehyde is produced (in low yield).

Two mechanisms have been proposed for this reaction:

(i) Formanidine hydrochloride (iminoformyl chloride) is formed as an intermediate:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{HCl} + \text{HCN} \xrightarrow{\text{AlCl}_0} \text{HN} = \text{CHCl} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_6 + \text{HN:CHCl} \xrightarrow{\text{AlCl}_0} \text{HCl} + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH:NH} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CHO} + \text{NH}_3 \\ \text{aryl imine} \end{array}$$

(ii) Chloromethyleneformamidine is formed as an intermediate (Hinkel et al., 1935):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{C}_6\text{H}_6 + \text{CICH:N\cdot CH:NH} \xrightarrow{\quad \text{AlCl}_9 \quad \text{HCl} + \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH:N\cdot CH:NH}} \xrightarrow{\quad \text{H}_2\text{O} \quad \text{aryl methyleneformamidine}} \end{array}$$

$$C_6H_5\cdot CH:NH + NH_3 + H\cdot CO_2H \xrightarrow{H_2O} C_6H_5\cdot CHO + NH_3$$

There is evidence in support of each of these mechanisms, but it appears that (i) is more widely accepted.

The Gattermann reaction is applicable to phenols and phenolic ethers

(see also phenolic aldehydes, p. 655).

6. Sommelet's Reaction (1913). Benzaldehyde is produced when benzyl chloride is refluxed with hexamethylenetetramine in aqueous ethanolic solution, followed by acidification and steam distillation:

$$C_6H_5$$
· $CH_2Cl + (CH_2)_6N_4 \longrightarrow C_6H_5$ · $CHO$  (60–70%)

The mechanism of this reaction is uncertain. According to Angyal et al. (1953), the mechanism is:

(i) 
$$C_6H_5\cdot CH_2Cl + C_6H_{12}N_4 \longrightarrow [C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot C_6H_{12}N_4]^+Cl^- \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot N = CH_2 \stackrel{H^+}{\rightleftharpoons} C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot N + CH_2$$

(ii) 
$$C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot NH = CH_2 + C_6H_5\cdot CH = NH_2 \Rightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot NH \cdot CH_3 + C_6H_5\cdot CH = NH_2 \Rightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot NH \cdot CH_3 + C_6H_5\cdot CH = NH_3 \Rightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot NH_3 \Rightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH_3 + C_6H_5\cdot CH_3 \Rightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH_3 + C_6H_5\cdot CH_3 \Rightarrow C_6H_$$

Methylenebenzylamine, formed by hydrolysis of the quaternary compound, adds on a proton, and the ion thus formed reacts with benzylamine (formed as an intermediate) with transfer of a *hydride* ion from the latter to the former.

7. Rosenmund reduction (1918). Benzaldehyde is produced by bubbling hydrogen through benzoyl chloride in xylene solution in the presence of a palladium catalyst until the theoretical amount of hydrogen chloride has been evolved. The liquid is then acidified and steam distilled. To stop the reaction at the aldehyde stage, a quinoline-sulphur poison is added:

$$C_6H_5$$
 · COCl +  $H_2 \xrightarrow{Pd} C_6H_5$  · CHO + HCl (v.g.)

This method may be used to prepare hydroxybenzaldehydes, provided the hydroxyl group is protected, e.g., by acetylation.

8. Stephen's method (1925). When phenyl cyanide is reduced with stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid in ethereal solution, and then the product hydrolysed with water, benzaldehyde is formed (cf. p. 148):

$$C_6H_5$$
·CN  $\xrightarrow{(i) \text{SnCl}_4/HCl}$   $C_6H_5$ ·CHO  $(v.g.)$ 

This method is a general one except for o-substituted cyanides, e.g., o-tolyl cyanide, in which the yields are negligible due, possibly, to steric hindrance.

Sodium triethoxyaluminium hydride, Na(EtO)3AlH, converts aromatic (and heterocyclic) cyanides via the imines, into aldehydes in excellent yield (Hesse et al., 1957). The reagent is prepared from aluminium ethoxide and sodium hydride in ether or tetrahydrofuran.

9. Benzaldehyde may be prepared by the reaction between phenyl-magnesium bromide and ethyl formate:

$$C_6H_5\cdot MgBr + H\cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CHO + MgBr(OC_2H_5)$$

10. Benzaldehyde may be obtained from aniline via the diazonium salt and formaldoxime (Beech, 1954):

$$C_6H_5\cdot N_2CI \xrightarrow{CH_8=NOH} C_6H_5\cdot CH = NOH \xrightarrow{H_9O} C_6H_5\cdot CHO$$
 (40%)

Benzaldehyde is a colourless liquid, b.p. 179°, with a smell of almonds. It is only slightly soluble in water, but is readily soluble in ethanol and ether; it is steam-volatile. It is used for flavouring purposes, in perfumery and in the dye industry.

Benzaldehyde (and aromatic aldehydes in general) resembles aliphatic

aldehydes in the following reactions:

(i) It gives the Schiff's reaction.

(ii) It is readily oxidised, i.e., it is a strong reducing agent; e.g., it reduces ammoniacal silver nitrate to silver, itself being oxidised to benzoic acid. Benzaldehyde oxidises to benzoic acid when exposed to air. Baeyer and Villiger (1900) suggested that this oxidation took place by autoxidation via the formation of perbenzoic acid:

$$\begin{matrix} O \\ C_6H_5 \cdot C - H + O_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot C - O - OH \xrightarrow{C_6H_6 \cdot CHO} 2C_6H_5 \cdot CO_2H \end{matrix}$$

Later work, however, has indicated that this mechanism is incomplete, and that autoxidation proceeds first via the free peroxide radical.

According to Bäckström (1934), the mechanism of the reaction is:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_{6}H_{5}\cdot CHO \xrightarrow{hv} C_{6}H_{5}\cdot \dot{C}H - \dot{O} \\ C_{6}H_{5}\cdot \dot{C}H - \dot{O} + C_{6}H_{5}\cdot CHO \longrightarrow C_{6}H_{5}\cdot \dot{C} = O + C_{6}H_{5}\cdot \dot{C}HOH \\ \\ C_{6}H_{5}\cdot \dot{C} = O + O_{2} \longrightarrow C_{6}H_{5}\cdot C \xrightarrow{O-O} \\ \\ C_{6}H_{5}\cdot C \xrightarrow{O-O} + C_{6}H_{5}\cdot CHO \longrightarrow C_{6}H_{5}\cdot C \xrightarrow{O-OH} + C_{6}H_{5}\cdot \dot{C} = O \\ \\ C_{6}H_{5}\cdot C \xrightarrow{O-O} + C_{6}H_{5}\cdot CHO \longrightarrow C_{6}H_{5}\cdot CO_{2}H \end{array}$$

(iii) Benzaldehyde forms a bisulphite compound, and may be prepared pure via this compound:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CHO + NaHSO_3 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH(OH)\cdot SO_3Na$$

(iv) Benzaldehyde forms a cyanohydrin (mandelonitrile),  $C_6H_5$ ·CH(OH)·CN, with hydrogen cyanide, and an oxime (and phenylhydrazone) with hydroxylamine (and phenylhydrazine). The latter compounds exist in two geometrical isomeric forms, e.g., benzaldoxime:

With hydrazine, benzaldehyde forms benzylideneazine,  $C_6H_5$ ·Ch:N·N:Ch·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>.

(v) Benzaldehyde reacts with phosphorus pentachloride to form benzylidene chloride:

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHO +  $PCl_5 \longrightarrow C_6H_5$ ·CHCl<sub>2</sub> +  $POCl_3$ 

(vi) Benzaldehyde readily undergoes condensation with many aromatic and aliphatic compounds (see below).

Benzaldehyde (and other aromatic aldehydes) differs from aliphatic

aldehydes in the following ways:

(i) It does not reduce Fehling's solution.

(ii) It does not readily polymerise; e.g., it does not resinify with sodium hydroxide, but undergoes the Cannizzaro reaction due to its not having an  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atom:

$$2C_6H_5\cdot CHO + NaOH \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH_2OH + C_6H_5\cdot CO_2Na$$

The reaction may be carried out in two ways: (i) in homogeneous alkaline solution; (ii) in heterogeneous systems (an organic phase and a strongly alkaline

aqueous phase). It is usual to carry out the reaction by method (i).

The mechanism of the Cannizzaro reaction in the homogeneous phase is uncertain. Fredenhagen et al. (1938) showed that when benzaldehyde undergoes the Cannizzaro reaction in D<sub>2</sub>O, the benzyl alcohol produced contained no C—D bonds. Thus hydrogen must be transferred directly from one molecule to the other. A difficulty in arriving at a mechanism is that the order of the reaction varies with the nature of the solvent; it may be third- or fourth-order, i.e.,

Hammett (1940), on the evidence available at that time, proposed the following mechanism:

Then hydride ion transfer occurs:

R·CH<sub>2</sub>O<sup>-</sup> + H<sub>2</sub>O  $\Longrightarrow$  R·CH<sub>2</sub>OH + OH<sup>-</sup>

If (I) is the active species, then have rate  $\infty[OH^-]$ ; if (II), then have rate  $\infty[OH^-]^2$ . Also, if neither (I) nor (II) can eliminate a hydride ion as such, but requires an acceptor, then in both cases have rate  $\infty[RCHO]^2$ . Thus when (I) is the active species, the reaction is third-order; when (II) is the active species, the reaction is fourth-order.

The mechanism in the heterogeneous phase is believed to be a free-radical one.

(iii) Benzaldehyde does not yield a simple addition product with ammonia, but forms a complex product, hydrobenzamide.

$$3C_6H_5$$
·CHO + 2NH<sub>3</sub>  $\longrightarrow$   $C_6H_5$ ·CH( $-N$ :CH· $C_6H_5$ )<sub>2</sub> + 3H<sub>2</sub>O (90%)

Benzaldehyde also reacts with primary aromatic amines to form anils or Schiff bases; e.g., with aniline it forms benzylideneaniline:

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHO +  $C_6H_5$ ·NH<sub>2</sub>  $\longrightarrow$   $C_6H_5$ ·CH:N· $C_6H_5$  + H<sub>2</sub>O (85%)

Aliphatic aldehydes tend to form compounds of the type.

## R·CH(NH·C6H5)2.

(iv) Reduction of benzaldehyde with zinc and hydrochloric acid or with sodium amalgam gives *hydrobenzoin* as well as benzyl alcohol (cf. pinacol, p. 253):

$$2C_6H_5$$
·CHO +  $2[H] \longrightarrow C_6H_5$ ·CHOH·CHOH· $C_6H_5$ 

(v) When chlorinated in the absence of a halogen carrier, benzaldehyde forms benzoyl chloride (no  $\alpha$ -hydrogen present):

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHO +  $Cl_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5$ ·COCl + HCl

(vi) Benzaldehyde behaves as a base in concentrated sulphuric acid (see p. 662).

## Condensation Reactions of Benzaldehyde

I. Claisen reaction (see also p. 158). Benzaldehyde, in the presence of dilute alkali, condenses with aliphatic aldehydes or ketones containing α-hydrogen; e.g., with acetaldehyde it forms cinnamaldehyde:

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHO +  $CH_3$ ·CHO  $\xrightarrow{NaOH}$   $C_6H_5$ ·CH: $CH$ ·CHO +  $H_2O$ 

With acetone, benzaldehyde forms benzylideneacetone (m.p. 42°; used in perfumery):

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHO +  $CH_3$ ·CO·CH<sub>3</sub>  $\xrightarrow{NaOH}$   $C_6H_5$ ·CH:CH·CO·CH<sub>3</sub> +  $H_2O$  (65–78%)

If the reaction is carried out in aqueous ethanolic sodium hydroxide, dibenzyl-ideneacetone (m.p. 112°) is produced by interaction of benzylideneacetone and another molecule of benzaldehyde:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CH:CH\cdot CO\cdot CH_3 + C_6H_5\cdot CHO \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH:CH\cdot CO\cdot CH:CH\cdot C_6H_5 + H_2O$$
 (90–94%)

Benzaldehyde also condenses with acetophenone to form phenyl styryl ketone (benzylideneacetophenone):

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHO +  $CH_3$ ·CO· $C_6H_5 \xrightarrow{NaOH} C_6H_5$ ·CH: $CH$ ·CO· $C_6H_5 + H_2O$  (85%)

Derivatives of phenyl styryl ketone are known as *chalkones*. Phenyl styryl ketone may be reduced catalytically (platinum) in ethyl acetate solution to benzylacetophenone:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CH:CH\cdot CO\cdot C_6H_5 + H_2 \xrightarrow{Pt} C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot CH_2\cdot CO\cdot C_6H_5 \quad (81-95\%)$$

The above condensation reactions, apart from their synthetic value, illustrate the use of benzaldehyde to detect the presence of a —CH<sub>2</sub>·CO-group in carbonyl compounds (cf. p. 163).

Benzaldehyde condenses with crotonaldehyde, in the presence of pyridine

acetate, to form 5-phenylpentadienal:

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHO +  $CH_3$ ·CH:CH·CHO  $\longrightarrow$   $C_6H_5$ ·CH:CH·CH:CH·CHO +  $H_2O$ 

This reaction is an example of vinylogy (p. 287), and was introduced by Kuhn (1929).

Benzaldehyde also condenses with nitromethane to form  $\omega$ -nitrostyrene; the methylene group is made "active" by the adjacent nitro-group:

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHO +  $CH_3$ ·NO<sub>2</sub>  $\xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}}$   $C_6H_5$ ·CH:CH·NO<sub>2</sub> +  $H_2$ O (80–83%)

2. Perkin reaction (1877). When benzaldehyde (or any other aromatic aldehyde) is heated with the anhydride of an aliphatic acid (containing two  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms) in the presence of its sodium salt, condensation takes place to form a  $\beta$ -arylacrylic acid; e.g., with acetic anhydride and sodium acetate, cinnamic acid is formed:

$$C_6H_5\text{-}CHO + (CH_3\text{-}CO)_2O \xrightarrow{CH_3\text{-}CO_5Na} C_6H_5\text{-}CH\text{-}CH\text{-}CO_2H$$

With propionic anhydride and sodium propionate, α-methylcinnamic acid is formed:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CHO + (CH_3\cdot CH_2\cdot CO)_2O \xrightarrow{CH_3\cdot CH_3\cdot CO_3Na} C_6H_5\cdot CH: C(CH_3)\cdot CO_2H$$

The mechanism of the Perkin reaction has been the subject of much discussion. Perkin believed that the anhydride was involved, whereas Fittig believed it was the salt. The general feeling now is that it is the anhydride that is the addendum; the actual steps involved, however, are uncertain. The mechanism may be as follows (cf. the aldol condensation):

$$CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot O \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + CH_3 \cdot CO_2 - \rightleftharpoons \overline{C}H_3 \cdot CO \cdot O \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + CH_3 \cdot CO_2H$$

$$C_6H_5 \cdot C + \overline{C}H_2 \cdot CO \cdot O \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 \rightleftharpoons C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot O \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 \rightleftharpoons H$$

$$C_6H_5 \cdot C \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot O \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 \xrightarrow{-H_3O} C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot O \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$$

$$\xrightarrow{H_4O} C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot O \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$$

It should be noted that only the  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms of the anhydride are involved in the condensation.

Experiment has shown that the Perkin reaction proceeds more readily when the aldehyde contains a halogen atom or a nitro-group in the ring.

The Perkin reaction does not usually take place with aliphatic aldehydes, but does occur if the anhydride is p-nitrophenylacetic anhydride (inter alia, Crawford et al., 1959).

Benzaldehyde undergoes the Knoevenagel reaction with malonic acid in ethanolic ammonia to form cinnamic acid:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CHO + CH_2(CO_2H)_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH\cdot CH\cdot CO_2H + CO_2 + H_2O$$

A special case of the Perkin reaction is the condensation of benzaldehyde with cyclic anhydrides, e.g., succinic anhydride (see p. 281).

3. Benzoin condensation. When refluxed with aqueous ethanolic potassium cyanide, benzaldehyde forms benzoin (see also p. 706):

$$2C_6H_5$$
·CHO  $\xrightarrow{KCN}$   $C_6H_5$ ·CHOH·CO· $C_6H_5$  (83%)

4. Benzaldehyde condenses with phenols and tertiary aromatic amines in the presence of sulphuric acid or zinc chloride to form triphenylmethane derivatives; e.g., with dimethylaniline it forms malachite green:

## Derivatives of benzaldehyde

A large variety of substituted benzyl alcohols can be oxidised to the corresponding aldehydes by means of dinitrogen tetroxide solutions (yields: 91-98 per cent.). The benzyl alcohols (except the nitro-compounds) may be obtained by reduction of acid chloride or methyl esters with lithium aluminium hydride (Field et al., 1955), e.g.,

Various substituted benzaldehydes may also be obtained via diazonium salts (Beech, 1954), e.g.,

Nitrobenzaldehydes. Curiously enough, nitrating mixture nitrates benzaldehyde to a large extent instead of oxidising it (as might have been expected). The main product is the m-isomer, m.p. 58° (about 50 per cent.), together with the o-isomer (about 20 per cent.).

o-Nitrobenzaldehyde may be prepared by oxidising o-nitrocinnamic acid

with cold aqueous potassium permanganate:

Alternatively, it may be prepared by dissolving o-nitrotoluene in glacial acetic acid containing acetic anhydride, and adding chromium trioxide and sulphuric acid. The product is the diacetate and this, on hydrolysis, gives the aldehyde:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{NO}_2 \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH(O\cdot CO\cdot CH}_3)_2 \\ \text{NO}_2 \\ \text{(23-24\%)} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CHO}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CHO} \\ \text{NO}_3 \\ \text{(74\%)} \end{array}$$

A better yield may be obtained by oxidising the o-nitrotoluene with man-

ganese dioxide and sulphuric acid.

o-Nitrobenzaldehyde is a yellow solid, m.p. 44°. Its most important reaction is its conversion into indigotin when heated with acetone and sodium hydroxide:

p-Nitrobenzaldehyde (m.p. 106°) may be prepared by oxidising p-nitrocinnamic acid or p-nitrotoluene; it may also be prepared by oxidising

p-nitrobenzyl chloride with aqueous lead nitrate.

All three nitrobenzaldehydes may be reduced to the corresponding aminobenzaldehydes by shaking a mixture of nitrobenzaldehyde and solid sodium carbonate with ferrous sulphate solution (cf. p. 565). The reduction may also be effected by stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid. On the other hand, sodium borohydride reduces nitrobenzaldehydes to the corresponding nitrobenzyl alcohols. This reduction (yield: 75 per cent.) may also be effected with I: I mixture of lithium aluminium hydride and aluminium chloride (Nystrom, 1955).

o-Aminobenzaldehyde readily condenses with compounds containing a —CH<sub>2</sub>·CO—group to form quinoline compounds; e.g., with acetaldehyde it forms quinoline:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{CHO} & + \overset{\text{CH}_3}{\underset{\text{CHO}}{\longleftarrow}} & \longrightarrow & & & \\ \text{NH}_2 & + \overset{\text{CH}_3}{\underset{\text{CHO}}{\longleftarrow}} & \longrightarrow & & \\ \end{array}$$

m- and p-Aminobenzaldehydes are used in the preparation of dyes. o- and p-Aminobenzaldehydes are prepared commercially by the oxidation of the corresponding aminobenzyl alcohols (see method 3, p. 656).

2:4-Dinitrobenzaldehyde (m.p. 72°) may be prepared by dissolving dimethylaniline in concentrated hydrochloric acid and adding sodium nitrite. The p-nitroso-compound so produced is heated with 2:4-dinitrotoluene in the presence of sodium carbonate, and the condensation product is then heated with hydrochloric acid (cf. p. 559):

$$(CH_3)_2 N(CH_3)_2$$

$$N(CH_3)_2 N(CH_3)_2$$

$$NO_2 NO_2 NO_2 N(CH_3)_2 CHO$$

$$(CH_3)_2 NCH NO_2 HCI NO_2 HCI NO_2 (24-32\%)$$

Halogen derivatives of benzaldehyde. m-Halogenobenzaldehydes may be prepared from m-nitrobenzaldehyde by reduction and subsequent

replacement of the diazo-group by halogen (Sandmeyer reaction), e.g., m-chlorobenzaldehyde:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{CHO} & \text{CHO} & \text{CHO} \\ \hline \\ \text{NO}_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{SnCl}_2/\text{HCl}} & \hline \\ \text{NH}_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} & \text{HCl} & \hline \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c|c} \text{NaNO}_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{CuCl}} & \text{CHO} \\ \hline \\ \text{N2Cl} & \xrightarrow{\text{HCl}} & \text{Cl} & (75-79\%) \\ \hline \end{array}$$

o- and p-Halogeno-benzaldehydes may be prepared by brominating the corresponding halogeno-toluenes at their boiling points in the presence of light to give the benzylidene bromide derivative, and hydrolysing this with calcium hydroxide; e.g., p-bromobenzaldehyde from p-bromotoluene:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_3 & CHBr_2 & CHO \\ & & & \\ Br & & Br & Br \end{array}$$

Alternatively, the halogeno-toluene may be oxidised with manganese dioxide and sulphuric acid.

2:6-Dichlorobenzaldehyde (m.p. 72°) is important in the preparation of triphenylmethane dyes; it may be prepared as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_{3} & CH_{3} & CH_{3} \\ \hline NO_{2} \xrightarrow{Cl_{2}} & Cl \\ \hline NO_{2} \xrightarrow{Fe/HCl} & Cl \\ \hline NH_{2} \xrightarrow{NaNO_{2}} & Cl \\ \hline CH_{3} & CHCl_{2} \\ \hline Cl & Cl \\ \hline Cl & (at b,p.) & Cl \\ \hline \end{array} \begin{array}{c} CH_{3} \\ \hline CHCl_{2} \\ \hline \end{array} \begin{array}{c} CHO \\ \hline CCl \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Concentrated sulphuric acid must be used to hydrolyse the o: o'-dichlorobenzylidene chloride; alkali has very little effect (this is an example of steric hindrance). The overall yield of 2:6-dichlorobenzaldehyde is very small; this is to be expected from the large number of steps involved. This method illustrates the important point that although a particular method gives a small yield of the desired product, it may be the only worthwhile method to use. It is therefore important that the reader should realise that many syntheses, although very complicated, may nevertheless be the best in practice (cf. 2: 4-dinitrobenzaldehyde, above).

Benzaldehydesulphonic acids. Sulphonation of benzaldehyde gives mainly

the m-derivative. The o- and p-isomers are prepared indirectly.

Cinnamaldehyde (3-phenylpropenal), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CH:CH·CHO, is the chief constituent of cinnamon oil, from which it may be isolated by means of its bisulphite compound. It may be prepared synthetically by the Claisen reaction between benzaldehyde and acetaldehyde:

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHO +  $CH_3$ ·CHO  $\xrightarrow{NaOH}$   $C_6H_5$ ·CH:CH·CHO +  $H_2O$ 

Cinnamaldehyde is an oil, b.p. 252°, which slowly oxidises in air to cinnamic acid. This acid may also be obtained by oxidising cinnamaldehyde with ammoniacal silver nitrate:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CH:CH\cdot CHO + [O] \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH:CH\cdot CO_2H$$

Vigorous oxidising agents, e.g., acid permanganate, convert cinnamaldehyde into benzoic acid.

Cinnamaldehyde forms the normal bisulphite compound with sodium hydrogen sulphite, but on prolonged treatment with this reagent, the sodium salt of a disulphonic acid is formed, possibly as follows (cf. p. 278):

The normal addition is reversible; the r:4-addition is irreversible, and hence all the cinnamaldehyde is gradually converted into the disulphonic acid. Cinnamaldehyde adds on bromine to the double bond to form the dibromide,  $C_6H_5$ -CHBr-CHBr-CHO, and is reduced by aluminium *iso* propoxide to cinnamyl alcohol,  $C_6H_5$ -CH:CH-CH<sub>2</sub>OH.

### PHENOLIC ALDEHYDES

Phenolic aldehydes (hydroxyaldehydes) are very important compounds, and contain an aldehyde group and one or more hydroxyl groups directly attached to the nucleus.

General methods of preparation. 1. Gattermann's aldehyde synthesis (cf. benzaldehyde, p. 646). When phenol or a phenolic ether is treated with a mixture of hydrogen cyanide and hydrogen chloride in the presence of aluminium chloride, and the complex produced then decomposed with water, p-hydroxy-(or alkoxy)benzaldehyde is the main product:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{HO} \\ \end{array} + \text{CICH:NH} \xrightarrow{\text{AlCl}_3} \text{HO} \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH:NH} + \text{HCl} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_3\text{O}} \\ \text{HO} \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{CHO} + \text{NH}_3 \\ \end{array}$$

When one hydroxyl group is present in the ring, aluminium chloride is used as catalyst; but with *m*-substituted di- or trihydric phenols, zinc chloride

is a better catalyst.

Instead of a mixture of hydrogen cyanide and hydrogen chloride, zinc cyanide and hydrogen chloride may be used (Adams et al., 1923). Pure zinc cyanide, however, is ineffective; a trace of potassium or sodium chloride is necessary. Hinkel (1937) has shown that zinc cyanide may be used for hydrocarbons, and Niedzielski and Nord (1941) have found that sodium cyanide may be used for any aromatic hydrocarbon except benzene.

2. Reimer-Tiemann reaction (1876). This reaction is carried out by refluxing an alkaline solution of phenol with chloroform at 60°, distilling off the excess chloroform, acidifying the residual liquid with sulphuric acid, and then steam-distilling it. Unchanged phenol and o-hydroxybenzaldehyde

distil over, leaving behind p-hydroxybenzaldehyde.

The mechanism of the Reimer-Tiemann reaction is uncertain. According to Wynberg (1954) it proceeds via the formation of dichloromethylene (produced from the chloroform; see p. 117):

$$\xrightarrow[OI-H_2O]{CCl_2} \xrightarrow[H_4O]{CCl_2} \xrightarrow[H_4O]{OI-H_4O} \xrightarrow[H_4O]{CHO}$$

Kinetic work by Robinson (1961) supports this mechanism.

When o- or p-cresol is used instead of phenol, a ketonic by-product containing the dichloromethyl group is always obtained, e.g.,

A large amount of phenol always remains unreacted in the Reimer-Tiemann reaction. To account for this, Armstrong and Richardson (1933) suggested:

$$OH \longrightarrow CHCl_{2} \longrightarrow OH \longrightarrow CH(OC_{6}H_{5})_{2} \longrightarrow OH \longrightarrow CHO + 2C_{6}H_{5}OH$$

These authors obtained evidence for the existence of the diphenylacetal derivative in the alkaline solution. Another interesting point about the Reimer-Tiemann reaction is that the nature of the *cation* affects the o/p ratio, e.g., with sodium hydroxide, the ratio is 2:1; with cæsium hydroxide, i:1 (Brady et al., 1950).

In the Reimer-Tiemann reaction, phenols react with chloroform and alkali to give o- and p-phenolic aldehydes, the o-isomer predominating. The yields are not usually above 50 per cent., and the presence of a negative group such as NO<sub>2</sub>, CN, CO<sub>2</sub>H, or SO<sub>3</sub>H (m-orienting) decreases the yield to less than 25 per cent. If one of the o-positions is occupied, the aldehyde group tends to go to the p-position; e.g., guaiacol forms vanillin:

If carbon tetrachloride is used instead of chloroform, the product of the

reaction is a phenolic acid (see p. 681).

3. o- and p-Hydroxybenzyl alcohols may be prepared by the Lederer-Manasse reaction (p. 623). These alcohols may be oxidised to the corresponding hydroxyaldehydes (aminobenzaldehydes may be prepared similarly from aniline). This method is used industrially, the oxidation being carried out with nitrosobenzene or phenylhydroxylamine, in the presence of copper as catalyst:

An extension of the above method is the *chloral condensation*. This is a modified Lederer-Manasse reaction, chloral being used instead of formaldehyde, e.g.,

$$OH \longrightarrow CCl_3 \cdot CHO \xrightarrow{aq. \ K_2CO_3} OH \xrightarrow{Na_2Cr_2O_7} OH \longrightarrow (40-60\%)$$

$$CHOH \cdot CCl_3 \longrightarrow CHO$$

In this reaction, the chloral always enters the *p*-position unless it is occupied, in which case *o*-substitution takes place, but to a lesser extent.

4. **Duff's reaction** (1932). When phenol is heated with a mixture of hexamethylenetetramine, glycerol and boric acid, the mixture then acidified with sulphuric acid and steam distilled, o-hydroxybenzaldehyde is formed:

This method gives only the o-compound, and is hindered by the presence

of a negative group in the ring.

5. Formylation with N-methylformanilide (Vilsmeier and Haack, 1927). Provided the aromatic compound has a labile hydrogen atom in the nucleus it can be formylated, i.e., an aldehyde group can be introduced, by means of N-methylformanilide. The method works well for the o- and p-positions of phenolic ethers (and dialkyl anilines); it does not work with hydrocarbons, except with anthracene, in which case the aldehyde group enters the opposition (see p. 731). The formylation is carried out by treating the compound with N-methylformanilide and phosphoryl chloride, and when the reaction is complete, adding aqueous sodium acetate and steam distilling:

$$OCH_3$$
  $OCH_3$   $+ C_6H_5\cdot N(CH_3)\cdot CHO$   $\longrightarrow$   $CHO$ 

Dimethylformamide, H·CO·N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, may be used instead of N-methylformanilide.

A possible mechanism for formylation with phosphoryl chloride and dimethylformamide is:

$$\begin{array}{c} H \\ Me_{2}N \cdot C = O^{2} \\ Cl \\ Cl \\ Cl \\ MeO \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} Me_{2}N \cdot \dot{C}H - O - POCl_{2} \end{bmatrix} Cl^{-} \\ MeO \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} MeO \longrightarrow CH = NMe_{2} \end{bmatrix} PO_{2}Cl_{2}^{-} \\ MeO \longrightarrow CH \longrightarrow MeO \longrightarrow CHO \\ \hline \end{array}$$

This mechanism is a combination of proposals by various workers, and evidence obtained to support it is:

(i) Silverstein et al. (1955) suggested the preliminary formation of the 1:1-complex (I), and Bosshard et al. (1959) prepared this complex and showed it formylated N:N-dimethylaniline.

(ii) Smith (1954) isolated the free base of (II) when the substrate was indole. (iii) Finar et al. (1961) have isolated the dichlorophosphates (II) using various pyrazoles as substrates, and their infrared studies showed the absence of the C—O—P bond and the presence of the C—N bond.

N-Methylformanilide (and, in general, disubstituted formamides) reacts with Grignard reagents to form aldehydes (Bouveault, 1904; Smith et al., 1941), e.g.

6. By means of organo-lithium compounds. When a substituted phenyllithium compound is heated with ethyl orthoformate or N-methylformanilide, an intermediate compound is obtained which, on hydrolysis with acid, gives a substituted benzaldehyde in 70 per cent. yield, e.g.,

Salicylaldehyde (o-hydroxybenzaldehyde) occurs in certain essential oils, It may be prepared by any of the general methods applicable to o-hydroxyaldehydes. It is manufactured by the oxidation of o-hydroxybenzyalcohol (obtained by method 3, above), and by the oxidation of o-cresylbenzenesulphonate with manganese dioxide and sulphuric acid:

Salicylaldehyde is an oil, b.p. 197°, soluble in water and alkalis to give a yellow solution. The aqueous solution gives a violet coloration with

ferric chloride. Salicylaldehyde may be oxidised to salicylic acid and reduced to o-hydroxybenzyl alcohol. Oxidation with alkaline hydrogen peroxide converts it into catechol (see p. 632).

The hydroxyl group of salicylaldehyde is not so reactive as that in the m- and p-isomers. This is probably due to hydrogen bonding, which also accounts for the high volatility of salicylaldehyde (compared with the m- and p-compounds).

Salicylaldehyde (and other o-hydroxy-aldehydes) condenses with ketones to unsaturated ketones which, under the form influence of hydrochloric acid, form ring compounds known as pyrylium compounds, in which the oxygen is tercovalent unielectrovalent:

Anisaldehyde (p-methoxybenzaldehyde) occurs in various essential oils. It is prepared industrially by oxidising anethole (by ozonolysis or with acid dichromate):

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{OCH}_3 & \text{OCH}_3 \\
& \xrightarrow{\text{K}_4\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7} \\
\text{CH:CH:CH}_3 & \text{CHO}
\end{array}$$

Anisaldehyde may be prepared synthetically by methylating p-hydroxybenzaldehyde with methyl sulphate and aqueous sodium hydroxide or with methyl iodide and ethanolic potassium hydroxide. It may also be prepared synthetically by introducing an aldehyde group into the p-position of anisole (e.g., methods I, 5 and 6), or by oxidation of the corresponding alcohols (cf. p. 652, derivatives of benzaldehyde).

Anisaldehyde is an oil, b.p. 248°, which may be oxidised to anisic acid and

reduced to anisyl alcohol.

**Protocatechualdehyde** (3:4-dihydroxybenzaldehyde) may be prepared by heating vanillin with hydrochloric acid:

It may also be prepared by adding phosphorus pentachloride to piperonal, then treating the product with cold water, and finally boiling the solution:

Protocatechualdehyde may be prepared synthetically by means of the Reimer-Tiemann reaction using catechol:

Protocatechualdehyde is a crystalline solid, m.p. 153°, soluble in water. Its aqueous solution gives a green coloration with ferric chloride, and reduces ammoniacal silver nitrate. When methylated with approximately one equivalent of methyl sulphate, protocatechualdehyde gives a mixture of vanillin (I), and *iso*vanillin (II); excess methyl sulphate gives veratraldehyde (III):

Vanillin (m-methoxy-p-hydroxybenzaldehyde) occurs in many substances of plant origin, e.g., the vanilla bean. It may be prepared synthetically from guaiacol (p. 638) by means of the Reimer-Tiemann or the Gattermann reaction. Industrially, it is prepared:

(i) By oxidising isoeugenol (from eugenol) with nitrobenzene:

If the oxidation is carried out with acid dichromate, it is necessary to protect the hydroxyl group (by acetylation, etc.). On the other hand, ozonolysis may be used without protecting the hydroxyl group.

(ii) By the Lederer-Manasse reaction as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \text{OCH}_3 + \text{H-CHO} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \\ \hline \\ \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \text{OCH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{H_2O}} \\ \text{CH:N-C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \text{OCH}_3 \\ \text{CHO} \\ \end{array}$$

(iii) The liquors from the extraction of lignin from wood-pulp contain vanillin.

and are now used as a source of vanillin.

Vanillin is a crystalline solid, m.p. 81°. When heated with hydrochloric acid, it forms protocatechualdehyde; with methyl sulphate it forms veratraldehyde. Ethylation converts vanillin into ethylvanillin (a synthetic compound), which is three times as strong as vanillin:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{OH} & \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \hline \text{OCH}_3 & \xrightarrow[\text{NaOH}]{\text{CHO}} & \text{OC}_4\text{H}_5 \\ \hline \text{CHO} & \text{CHO} \\ \end{array}$$

Piperonal (heliotropin, 3: 4-methylenedioxybenzaldehyde) is the methylene ether of protocatechualdehyde, and is obtained when piperic acid (from the alkaloid piperine) is oxidised. It may be prepared synthetically by treating protocatechualdehyde with methylene iodide and sodium hydroxide:

OH OH 
$$+ CH_2I_2 + 2NaOH \rightarrow CHO$$
  $+ 2NaI + 2H_2O$ 

It is manufactured by the oxidation of isosafrole (from safrole) by ozonolysis or with acid dichromate:

Piperonal is a solid, m.p. 37°, with the smell of heliotrope. It may be oxidised to piperonylic acid and reduced to piperonyl alcohol. When treated with phosphorus pentachloride and then with water, piperonal forms protocatechualdehyde (see above). This aldehyde is also obtained, together with formaldehyde or methanol, when piperonal is heated with dilute hydrochloric acid at 200° under pressure.

### AROMATIC KETONES

Aromatic ketones may be either arylalkyl ketones or diaryl ketones. Acetophenone (methyl phenyl ketone, acetylbenzene), C6H5.CO.CH3, may be prepared by distilling a mixture of calcium benzoate and calcium acetate:

$$(C_6H_5\cdot CO_2)_2Ca + (CH_3\cdot CO_2)_2Ca \longrightarrow 2C_6H_5\cdot CO\cdot CH_3 + 2CaCO_3$$

It may also be prepared by the catalytic oxidation of ethylbenzene (p. 646), but it is best prepared by means of the Friedel-Crafts reaction:

$$C_6H_6 + CH_3 \cdot COCl \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + HCl$$
 (50%)

The yield is improved (to 60 per cent.) by using a mixture of aluminium and mercury chlorides as catalyst.

Alkyl aryl ketones may be prepared from diazonium salts and aldoximes other than formaldoxime (see p. 588), and by the phenylation of ketones (see p. 548).

Acetophenone is a solid, m.p. 20°; it is used as an hypnotic (under the name of hypnone) and in perfumery. When reduced with sodium and ethanol, acetophenone gives *phenylmethylmethanol*, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CHOH·CH<sub>3</sub>; reduction by Clemmensen's method gives ethylbenzene. Ethylbenzene is also produced when the reducing agent is lithium aluminium hydride containing aluminium chloride. Oxidation with cold potassium permanganate gives *phenylglyoxylic acid* (benzoylformic acid) which, on further oxidation, is converted into benzoic acid:

$$\mathrm{C_6H_5\text{-}CO\text{-}CH_3} \xrightarrow{[\mathrm{O}]} \mathrm{C_6H_5\text{-}CO\text{-}CO_2H} \xrightarrow{[\mathrm{O}]} \mathrm{C_6H_5\text{-}CO_2H}$$

Acetophenone is oxidised by selenium dioxide to phenylglyoxal:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CO\cdot CH_3 + SeO_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CO\cdot CHO + Se + H_2O$$
 (69-72%)

Acetophenone can be chloromethylated (p. 535), and it is readily halogenated in the  $\omega$ -position; e.g., phenacyl bromide ( $\omega$ -bromoacetophenone) is formed when acetophenone is treated with bromine in ether at o° in the presence of a small amount of aluminium chloride:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + Br_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2Br + HBr \quad (64-66\%)$$

Phenacyl bromide (m.p. 51°) is used to identify acids, with which it forms well-defined crystalline esters. It is oxidised to phenylglyoxal by dissolving it in a large excess of dimethyl sulphoxide (Kornblum *et al.*, 1957).

When treated with two equivalents of bromine, acetophenone forms  $\omega$ :  $\omega$ -dibromoacetophenone (*phenacylidene bromide*). This compound undergoes rearrangement on treatment with alkali to form *mandelic acid*:

$$C_6H_5$$
·CO·CHBr<sub>2</sub>  $\xrightarrow{\text{(i) KOH}}$   $[C_6H_5$ ·CO·CH(OH)<sub>2</sub>]  $\longrightarrow$   $C_6H_5$ ·CHOH·CO<sub>2</sub>H

This rearrangement does not take place if both o-positions are occupied, e.g., in the  $\omega$ :  $\omega$ -dibromo-derivative of acetomesitylene.

Phenacyl chloride, m.p. 59°, may be conveniently prepared by the Friedel–Crafts condensation between chloroacetyl chloride and benzene:

$$C_6H_6 + CH_2Cl \cdot COCl \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2Cl + HCl$$

Acetophenone forms an oxime, phenylhydrazone and cyanohydrin, but does not form a bisulphite compound (cf. p. 151). It reacts with ammonia to form acetophenone-ammonia, (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·C·CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>N<sub>2</sub> (cf. benzaldehyde and ammonia), and with Grignard reagents in the usual way. When, however, both o-positions in acetophenone are occupied, the compound exhibits steric hindrance; e.g., acetomesitylene does not form an oxime, and does not react with Grignard

does not form an oxime, and does not react with Grignard reagents in the usual way.

The acetyl group is *m*-orienting, and so when acetophenone undergoes nuclear substitution, the main product is the *m*-derivative.

In the presence of aluminium tert.-butoxide, acetophenone undergoes

condensation to form dypnone (b.p. 340-345°):

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_3 \\ C_6H_5 \cdot C = O + CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot C = CH \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5 + H_2O \quad (77-82\%) \end{array}$$

In the presence of hydrochloric acid, s-triphenylbenzene (m.p. 172°) is formed:

$$3C_eH_5\cdot CO\cdot CH_3$$
  $\longrightarrow$   $C_eH_5$   $C_eH_5$ 

Acetophenone condenses with acetic anhydride in the presence of boron trifluoride to form benzoylacetone, m.p. 61° (Meerwein et al., 1934):

C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CO·CH<sub>3</sub> + (CH<sub>3</sub>·CO)<sub>2</sub>O 
$$\xrightarrow{\text{BF}_8}$$
 C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CO·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO·CH<sub>3</sub> + CH<sub>3</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H (83%)

This is also formed by the condensation of acetophenone with ethyl acetate in the presence of sodium ethoxide:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3 + CH_3 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \xrightarrow{C_2H_4ONa} C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3$$
 (66)%

Acetophenone condenses with ethyl benzoate in the presence of sodium ethoxide to form dibenzoylmethane, m.p. 77°.

noxide to form aroenzoyimethane, m.p. 77°.

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + CH_3 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5 \xrightarrow{C_2H_5ONa} C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5 \quad (62-71\%)$$

Acetophenone undergoes the Mannich reaction (see p. 306):

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5\text{-}CO\text{-}CH_3 + \text{H}\text{-}CHO + (CH_3)_2\text{NH}\text{-}HCl \longrightarrow \\ C_6H_5\text{-}CO\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH_2\text{-}N(CH_3)_2\text{-}HCl \end{array} \tag{60\%}$$

Aromatic aldehydes and ketones generally behave as bases in concentrated sulphuric acid; cryoscopic experiments show that i (van't Hoff factor) is 2, and this value agrees with the following equation (R = H or R):

$$Ar \cdot CO \cdot R + H_2SO_4 \Longrightarrow [Ar \cdot C(=OH) \cdot R][HSO_4]$$

The carbonyl compound may be recovered by dilution with water.

On the other hand, certain unsaturated ketones behave differently. Gillespie et al. (1954) found that all but two of the fourteen unsaturated carbonyl compounds investigated by them gave freezing point depressions in sulphuric acid which increase with time and only reach a constant limiting value after a long period. These stable values varied up to 6. These results have been attributed to sulphonation, and sulphonic acids have been isolated in certain cases, e.g., benzylideneacetophenone gives first a value of i=2, and finally i=4.

$$\begin{array}{c} \ddot{\text{O}}\text{H} \\ \text{Ph·CH=CH·CO·Ph} + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 \Longrightarrow \text{Ph·CH=CH·C·Ph} + \text{HSO}_4^- \quad (i=2) \\ \ddot{\text{O}}\text{H} \\ \text{Ph·CH=CH·C·Ph} + 2\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 \Longrightarrow \\ \ddot{\text{O}}\text{H} \\ \text{HO}_3\text{S·C}_6\text{H}_4\text{·CH=CH·C·Ph} + \text{H}_3\ddot{\text{O}} + \text{HSO}_4^- \quad (i=4) \\ \end{array}$$

The solutions of these oxonium salts are much deeper in colour than the ketone or the solution of the ketone in an organic solvent, e.g., benzylidene-acetophenone is a very pale yellow solid, and its solution in ethanol is also pale yellow, but its solution in concentrated sulphuric acid is deep yellow. These deep-coloured oxonium salts have therefore been named halochromic salts.

Willgerodt reaction (1887). This is the name given to those reactions in which a carbonyl compound is converted into an amide with the same number of carbon atoms. The Willgerodt reaction was originally carried out by heating an aryl alkyl ketone with an aqueous solution of yellow ammonium polysulphide; e.g., acetophenone forms the amide of phenylacetic acid, together with a small amount of the ammonium salt:

$$\texttt{C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot CH_3} \xrightarrow{(\texttt{NH_4})_2 S_2} \texttt{C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH_2} + \texttt{C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2 NH_4}$$

The amido-group is always formed at the end of the chain whatever the size of the R group in  $C_6H_5$ -CO·R; e.g., butyrophenone forms  $\gamma$ -phenyl-butyramide:

$$\mathsf{C_6H_5\text{-}CO\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH_3} \longrightarrow \mathsf{C_6H_5\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CO\text{-}NH_2}$$

The Willgerodt reaction is very useful for preparing aryl-substituted aliphatic acids.

A modified technique of carrying out the Willgerodt reaction is to heat the ketone with approximately equimolecular amounts of sulphur and a dry amine (Kindler, 1923, 1927); a particularly useful amine is morpholine,

NH O. The final product is a thioamide and this, on acid or alkaline hydrolysis, gives an acid; or alternatively, on electrolytic reduction, the thioamide gives an amine, e.g.,

$$\begin{split} & C_6H_5\cdot CO\cdot CH_3 + (CH_3)_2NH + S \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot C(=S)\cdot N(CH_3)_2 \\ & C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot CH_2\cdot N(CH_3)_2 \overset{[H]}{\longleftarrow} C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot C(=S)\cdot N(CH_3)_2 \overset{acid}{\longrightarrow} C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot CO_2H \end{split}$$

Thus, by means of the Kindler procedure, bases containing the nitrogen atom on the terminal carbon atom of the side-chain can be synthesised.

The Willgerodt reaction was originally limited to ketones, but it has now been shown to be applicable to olefins, acetylenes, alcohols, halides, amines, etc.

Phenolic ketones may be prepared by the Houben-Hoesch synthesis (1927). This is the condensation of cyanides with polyhydric phenols, particularly *m*-compounds, in the presence of zinc chloride and hydrogen chloride; *e.g.*, phloroglucinol condenses with methyl cyanide to form *phloroacetophenone* (m.p. 219°):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{HO} \\ \text{OH} \\ \text{OH} \end{array} + \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CN} \xrightarrow[\text{HCl}]{\text{ZnCl}_2} \\ \text{OH} \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{C} = \text{NH} \\ \text{OH} \\ \text{OH} \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{C} = \text{NH} \\ \text{OH} \\ \text{OH} \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{OH} \\ \text{OH} \\ \text{OH} \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{OH} \\ \text{OH} \\ \text{OH} \\ \end{array}$$

This method is really an extension of Gattermann's phenolic aldehyde synthesis. It is not applicable to phenol itself.

Phenolic ketones may also be prepared by the Fries rearrangement

(p. 622), and by heating polyhydric phenols with aliphatic acids in the presence of fused zinc chloride; e.g., pyrogallol and acetic acid form gallacetophenone (m.p. 173°):

$$\begin{array}{c}
OH \\
OH \\
OH \\
OH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
OH \\
OH \\
OH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
OH \\
OH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
OH \\
OH
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
OH \\
OH
\end{array}$$

Many phenolic ketones occur naturally, free or as glycosides.

Benzophenone (diphenyl ketone), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CO·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, may be prepared in a similar manner to acetophenone, e.g.,

(i) By heating calcium benzoate:

$$(C_6H_5 \cdot CO_2)_2Ca \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5 + CaCO_3$$
 (30%)

(ii) By the Friedel-Crafts condensation between benzoyl chloride and benzene:

$$C_6H_6 + C_6H_5 \cdot COCl \xrightarrow{AlCl_8} C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5 + HCl \quad (80\%)$$

Carbonyl chloride may be used instead of benzoyl chloride:

$$2C_6H_6 + COCl_2 \xrightarrow{AlCl_8} C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5 + 2HCl$$

The Friedel-Crafts reaction may also be carried out with carbon tetrachloride, followed by steam distillation of the dichloro-compound produced:

$$2C_6H_6 + CCl_4 \xrightarrow{AlCl_9} (C_6H_5)_2CCl_2 \xrightarrow{H_9O} (C_6H_5)_2CO \quad (80-89\%)$$

(iii) By heating o-benzoylbenzoic acid with copper powder at 260°:

Benzophenone exists in two solid forms, a stable, m.p. 49°, and an unstable form, m.p. 26°. It cannot be chloromethylated (cf. acetophenone). It is reduced by zinc and ethanolic potassium hydroxide to benzhydrol (diphenylcarbinol, m.p. 68°) and by zinc and acetic acid to benzopinacol (m.p. 188°):

$$(C_6H_5)_2C(OH)\cdot C(OH)(C_6H_5)_2 \xleftarrow{Z_n} (C_6H_5)_2CO \xrightarrow{Z_{n/KOH}} (C_6H_5)_2CO \xrightarrow{(90\%)} (C_6H_5)_2CHOH$$

When benzophenone, dissolved in isopropanol to which a drop of acetic acid has been added, is exposed to bright sunlight, benzopinacol is formed:

$$_{2(C_{6}H_{5})_{2}CO + (CH_{3})_{2}CHOH} \xrightarrow{h\nu} (C_{6}H_{5})_{2}C(OH) \cdot C(OH)(C_{6}H_{5})_{2} + (CH_{3})_{2}CO \quad (93-94\%)$$

When benzophenone is dissolved in isopropanol and a small amount of sodium added, benzhydrol is formed. This compound is believed to be formed via benzopinacol which is first produced and then decomposed by sodium isopropoxide to benzophenone and benzhydrol. Evidence in favour

of this mechanism is afforded by the fact that benzopinacol is decomposed into benzophenone and benzhydrol by sodium hydroxide:

$$(C_6H_5)_2C(OH)\cdot C(OH)(C_6H_5)_2 \xrightarrow{NaOH} (C_6H_5)_2CO + (C_6H_5)_2CHOH$$

Benzopinacol is also obtained by the reduction of benzophenone with a mixture of magnesium and magnesium iodide, which appears to behave as magnesious iodide, MgI (Gomberg and Bachmann, 1927):

$$2(C_6H_5)_2CO + 2MgI \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_2C - C(C_6H_5)_2 \xrightarrow{-MgI_2} (C_6H_5)_2C - C(C_6H_5)_2$$

$$IMgO OMgI O Mg$$

$$\xrightarrow{H_2O} (C_6H_5)_2C(OH) \cdot C(OH) \cdot C($$

When heated in acetic acid solution in the presence of iodine as catalyst, benzopinacol undergoes the pinacol-pinacolone rearrangement (p. 171) to form benzopinacolone (m.p. 170°):

$$(C_6H_5)_2C(OH)\cdot C(OH)(C_6H_5)_2 \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_3C\cdot CO\cdot C_6H_5 + H_2O$$
 (98–99%)

When distilled with zinc dust, or reduced with a mixture of lithium aluminium hydride and aluminium chloride, benzophenone forms diphenylmethane, and when fused with potassium hydroxide, benzene and potassium benzoate:

$$(C_6H_5)_2CO + KOH \longrightarrow C_6H_6 + C_6H_5 \cdot CO_2K$$

Benzophenone forms an oxime, but does not form a cyanohydrin or a bisulphite compound. The explanation for the latter is not clear; it may be due entirely to the steric effect.

Benzophenone dissolves sodium without the evolution of hydrogen, forming a compound (blue or green) which reacts rapidly with iodine or oxygen, and consequently is believed to be a free radical:

$$(C_6H_5)_2CO + Na \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_2\dot{C} - \bar{O}Na^+$$

There is also present the following equilibrium (cf. acyloins, p. 194):

$$2(C_6H_5)_2\dot{C}-\bar{O}Na^+ \iff \begin{array}{c} (C_6H_5)_2C-\bar{O}Na^+\\ (C_6H_5)_2C-\bar{O}Na^+ \end{array}$$

The sodium salts of the free radicals are known as metallic ketyls. They are decomposed by water into benzophenone and benzhydrol (possibly via the dimer; cf. benzopinacol above). Aromatic ketones with a primary or secondary alkyl group evolve hydrogen when treated with sodium; i.e., they enolise, and so will not form a metallic ketyl.

A very important derivative of benzophenone is Michler's ketone, which may be prepared by treating dimethylaniline with carbonyl chloride:

$$COCl_2 + 2$$
  $N(CH_3)_2 \longrightarrow (CH_3)_2N$   $CO N(CH_3)_2 + 2HCl$ 

Michler's ketone is used in the preparation of certain triphenylmethane dyes (p. 788).

Elbs reaction (1884). This is the reaction whereby a polynuclear hydrocarbon is formed by the pyrolysis of a diaryl ketone containing a methyl

or a methylene group in the o-position to the carbonyl group; e.g., o-methylbenzophenone forms anthracene (see also p. 727):

$$CO$$
  $\rightarrow$   $CO$ 

The mechanism of the Elbs reaction is uncertain; according to Badger *et al.* (1953) it proceeds via free radicals. Hurd *et al.* (1951), using deuterium as tracer, have shown that hydrogen in the 9-position (in anthracene) does not come from the o-methyl group but from the o-hydrogen of the benzene ring, e.g.,

$$CH_3$$
  $CH_3$   $CH_3$ 

### STEREOCHEMISTRY OF ALDOXIMES AND KETOXIMES

Many aromatic aldoximes and ketoximes exist in two isomeric forms, and this was explained by Hantzsch and Werner (1890) as being due to geometrical isomerism. According to these authors, nitrogen is tervalent (in oximes) and is situated at one corner of a tetrahedron with its three valencies directed towards the other three corners; consequently the three valencies are not coplanar. These authors also assumed that there is no free rotation about the C=N bond, and therefore proposed configurations (I) and (II) for the two isomers:

Many facts are in favour of geometrical isomerism, e.g., (i) if Ar = R, then isomerism disappears; (ii) the absorption spectra show that both have identical structures.

# **Determination of Configuration**

Aldoximes. The two isomeric aldoximes may be distinguished by the behaviour of their acetyl derivatives towards aqueous sodium carbonate; one gives the oxime back again, and the other forms the cyanide Ar-CN.

Brady et al. (1925) showed that the cyanide is formed by anti-elimination. These authors found that only one of the two isomers of 2-chloro-5-nitrobenz-aldoxime readily gave ring closure on treatment with sodium hydroxide; this isomer is therefore the anti- (trans-) isomer. Furthermore, it was this isomer that gave the cyanide, thus showing that anti-elimination must have occurred.

Actually, the ring compound produced, the 5-nitrobenzisooxazole, is unstable, and rearranges to nitrosalicylonitrile.

Thus the general reaction may be formulated as follows, the anti-oxime giving the cyanide and the syn-(cis-)oxime regenerating the oxime:

Ketoximes. Beckmann rearrangement (1886). When treated with reagents such as phosphorus pentachloride, sulphuric acid, polyphosphoric acid, etc., aromatic ketoximes undergo the Beckmann rearrangement to

## Ar<sub>2</sub>C=NOH ---- Ar·CO·NHAr

form an acid amide:

Meisenheimer (1921, 1925) showed that the rearrangement occurs by anti-rearrangement, e.g., he (1925) showed that the  $\alpha$ -oxime of 2-bromo-5-nitroaceto-phenone is unaffected by sodium hydroxide, whereas the  $\beta$ -isomer undergoes ring closure to form 3-methyl-5-nitrobenziso-oxazole; thus the  $\alpha$ -oxime is the syn-methyl isomer (I), and the  $\beta$ -oxime the anti-methyl isomer (II). When treated with sulphuric acid or phosphorus pentachloride, the  $\alpha$ -oxime underwent the Beckmann rearrangement to give the N-substituted acetamide; thus the exchange occurs in the anti-positions.

Thus by identifying the amide and using the fact that the rearrangement occurs in the *anti*-position, the configuration of the ketoxime can be determined.

The mechanism of the Beckmann rearrangement is still the subject of much discussion. Since the oxime itself does not rearrange, it is reasonable to suppose that some intermediate is formed between oxime and reagent, and it is this intermediate which rearranges. Kuhara et al. (1914, 1916) prepared the benzenesulphonate of benzophenone oxime and showed this readily underwent rearrangement in neutral solvents to give an isomeric compound (III) which gave benzanilide on hydrolysis; thus:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & \text{Ph} & & \text{Ph} \\ & & & & \\ & & & \\ & \text{Ph-C=N} & \longrightarrow & \text{Ph-C=N} & \longrightarrow & \text{PhCO-NHPh} + \text{PhSO}_3\text{H} \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\$$

The structure of (III) was assigned to it on the basis of the similarity of its absorption spectrum with that of synthetic compounds of similar structure.

Chapman (1934– ) showed the rate of rearrangement of benzophenone oxime picryl ester is more rapid in polar solvents than in non-polar. This is strong evidence that the rate-determining step is the ionisation of the intermediate. Furthermore, Kenyon et al. (1946) found that when (+)- $\alpha$ -phenylethyl methyl ketoxime is rearranged with sulphuric acid, the product is almost 100 per cent. optically pure (retention). Thus the rearrangement is intramolecular. A mechanism which fits these facts is the 1,2-shift as follows (for PCl<sub>5</sub>):

$$\begin{array}{c} R \\ C \\ R \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{+C} \begin{array}{c} R' \\ + \text{OPCl}_4^- \end{array} \xrightarrow{Cl_4 PO} \begin{array}{c} R' \\ R \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{R} \begin{array}{c} R' \\ R \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{NHR}} \begin{array}{c} R' \\ \\ R' \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{NHR}} \begin{array}{c} R' \\ \\ R' \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{NHR}} \begin{array}{c} R' \\ \\ R' \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{NHR}} \begin{array}{c} R' \\ \\ \\ R' \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{NHR}} \begin{array}{c} R' \\ \\ \\ R' \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{NHR}} \begin{array}{c} R' \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{NHR}} \begin{array}{c} R' \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{NHR}} \begin{array}{c} R' \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{NHR}} \begin{array}{c} R' \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{$$

(When sulphuric acid is used, replace OPCl<sub>4</sub> in the above equation by OH<sub>2</sub><sup>+</sup>.)

When the migrating group is aryl and contains an electron-R' releasing group in the p-position, the rearrangement is accelerated. This may be cited as evidence for the formation of a bridged ion (cf. p. 101).

Other mechanisms have also been suggested (Stephen et al.,

1956).

## QUINONES

Quinones are compounds which are formed by the replacement of two hydrogen atoms in the nucleus by two oxygen atoms. Two quinones of benzene are possible: o-benzoquinone and p-benzoquinone:

m-Benzoquinone has not been prepared; it is impossible to arrange two carbonyl oxygen atoms in the ring in the m-position and still maintain a valency of four for carbon (cf., however, m-nitrophenol, p. 627).

**p-Benzoquinone** (p-quinone) may be prepared by the oxidation of quinol with ferric chloride, manganese dioxide and sulphuric acid, or acid dichromate; the best oxidising agent is sodium chlorate in dilute sulphuric acid in the presence of vanadium pentoxide as catalyst:

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \\
\text{OH} \\
\text{OH}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{NaCiO}_4/H_2SO_4 \\
V_2O_3
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{O} \\
\text{O}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{O} \\
\text{O}
\end{array}$$

Quinol may also be oxidised to quinone by lead tetra-acetate.

$$\begin{array}{c}
OH \\
OH \\
OH
\end{array}
+ (CH_3 \cdot CO_2)_4 Pb \longrightarrow 0 + 2CH_3 \cdot CO_2 H + (CH_3 \cdot CO_2)_2 Pb$$

p-Benzoquinone is usually prepared in the laboratory by the oxidation of

aniline with potassium dichromate and sulphuric acid.

In general, p-quinones may be prepared by the oxidation (using dichromate-sulphuric acid) of p-dihydroxy-, p-diamino- or p-aminohydroxy-compounds, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c|c} NH_2 \\ \hline NH_2 \\ \hline NH_2 \\ \hline NH \\ \hline (I) \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} O \\ \hline O \\ \hline O \\ \hline NH \\ \hline (II) \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} OH \\ \hline NH_2 \\ \hline OH \\ \hline NH_2 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

The intermediate products I (p-benzoquinonedi-imine) and II (p-benzoquinoneimine) can be isolated under certain conditions (see p. 672).

p-Benzoquinone crystallises in yellow prisms, m.p. 116°; it has a sharp smell, sublimes when heated, is slightly soluble in water, and is steam-volatile. On exposure to light, p-benzoquinone turns brown.

The yellow colour of p-benzoquinone is due to the presence of the quinonoid

structure — . This structure is also known as a crossed conjugated system; it contains three (or more) conjugated double bonds which are not

arranged in a continuous chain. p-Benzoquinone behaves in many ways as an  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated ketone rather than as an aromatic compound; e.g., it adds on bromine in the 3:4-positions to give the dibromo-derivative; with excess bromine, it adds on two more bromine atoms in the 3':4'-

positions to give the tetrabromo-derivative. It also adds on hydrogen chloride to form mainly *chloroquinol* (*chlorohydroquinone*), m.p. 106°; the mechanism of this addition is possibly 1:4-addition first, followed by enolisation:

$$\begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} + HCI \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} OH \\ OH \\ OH \\ \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} OH \\ OH \\ OH \\ \end{array}$$

Chloroquinol, on oxidation, gives chloro-p-benzoquinone. By repeating the process of adding hydrogen chloride and then oxidising, the final product obtained is tetrachloro-p-benzoquinone (chloranil):

Chloranil is used as a fungicide and as an oxidising agent (see below).

As can be seen from the above equation, chloro-p-benzoquinone adds on hydrogen chloride to form 2:5-dichloroquinol; this is to be expected by 1:4-addition (other dichloro-derivatives, however, are also possible by 1:4-addition,

but only the 2:5-appears to be formed). In the same way, p-benzoquinone forms 2:5-addition compounds with primary or secondary amines in ethanolic solution, but in this case the quinone, and not the quinol derivative, is obtained. This is believed to be formed as follows (via 1:4-addition), e.g., with aniline, the final product is 2:5-dianilino-p-benzoquinone:

p-Benzoquinone is a fairly strong oxidising agent, but although it is not strong enough to oxidise chloroquinol, it can oxidise anilino-compounds (itself being reduced to quinol).

In a similar way, primary alcohols, in the presence of zinc chloride, form

2:5-dialkoxy-p-benzoquinones with p-benzoquinone.

The addition of hydrogen cyanide to p-benzoquinone is exceptional in that 2:3-dicyanoquinol is formed:

$$\begin{array}{c}
O \\
O \\
O \\
O
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
OH \\
CN \\
OH
\end{array}$$

When treated with acetic anhydride in the presence of sulphuric acid, p-benzoquinone forms hydroxyquinol triacetate; this is known as the Thiele acetylation (1898).

p-Benzoquinone is easily reduced to quinol (1:6-addition) by sulphurous acid, hydrogen sulphide, or sodium hyposulphite (yield: 80 per cent.).

An intermediate in this reduction is quinhydrone (green prisms, m.p. 171°). Quinhydrones are a group of coloured substances formed from quinones and another aromatic compound. Some are believed to be charge-transfer complexes (p. 557), e.g., phenoquinone (I; red); phenol acts as the electron donor and the

quinone as the electron acceptor. Another type of quinhydrone is the one formed between one molecule of benzoquinone and one molecule of quinol. The structure of this type is uncertain, but it is believed that the rings of the two molecules are parallel and held together by hydrogen bonds at both ends (II).

$$C_6H_5OH \cdot O$$
 $C_6H_5OH \cdot O$ 
 $C_6H$ 

Since the compounds are coloured, this suggests that the complexes are resonance hybrids produced by charge-transfer "bonding" (see p. 775).

p-Benzoquinone is so easily reduced that it is used as an oxidising agent—generally chloranil is more satisfactory—in reactions where inorganic oxidising agents must be avoided. It liberates iodine from acidified potassium iodide solution, and is oxidised by silver oxide to maleic acid (and other products). It forms a monoxime and a dioxime (see below), and can act as a dienophile in the Diels-Alder reaction, e.g., with butadiene it forms a hydrogenated anthraquinone derivative (see p. 728).

It has been suggested that the oxidising property of benzoquinone is due to the fact that when the quinone adds on two electrons, the benzenoid structure (with a large resonance energy) is obtained:

$$O = O + 2e \rightleftharpoons O = O \rightleftharpoons HO = OH$$

Benzoquinone dehydrogenates many hydroaromatic compounds, and the hydrogen transfer has been shown to take place with the transfer of hydride ions:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} H & O & H & \bar{O} \\ \hline \\ H & H & O & H & \bar{O} \\ \hline \\ H & OH & OH \\ \hline \end{array} \rightarrow \begin{array}{c} OH \\ \hline \\ OH \\ \hline \\ OH \\ \hline \end{array}$$

An interesting point about this dehydrogenation is that, on the basis of this mechanism, it might be anticipated that gem.-dialkylhydroaromatic compounds would be converted into aromatic compounds with a migration of the "blocking" group (cf. the Wagner rearrangement, p. 131). Such reactions have been effected in practice by using high-potential quinones, e.g.,

Structure of p-benzoquinone. Analysis and molecular-weight determinations show that the molecular formula of p-benzoquinone is C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>4</sub>O<sub>2</sub>. On

reduction, p-benzoquinone gives quinol, which is known to be p-dihydroxybenzene. Thus p-benzoquinone contains two oxygen atoms in the p-positions; this is supported by the fact that on mild oxidation, quinol forms p-benzoquinone. Using these facts Fittig (1863) proposed the formula O= O for p-benzoquinone.

This structure, however, did not appear to agree with certain other properties of p-benzoquinone; e.g., on treatment with phosphorus pentachloride, p-dichlorobenzene is formed. This reaction appears to indicate that oxygen is linked to carbon by a *single* bond. Graebe (1867) therefore suggested

Many other properties of p-benzoquinone, however, do not agree with Graebe's formula, but do agree with Fittig's; e.g.,

(i) p-Benzoquinone forms a monoxime and a dioxime. This indicates

the presence of two carbonyl groups.

(ii) p-Benzoquinone behaves as an unsaturated cyclic ketone rather than as an aromatic compound; e.g., its addition of halogens, halogen acids, etc., is not characteristic of aromatic compounds.

(iii) p-Benzoquinone behaves as a dienophile in the Diels-Alder reac-

tion; this indicates the presence of the grouping O=C-C=C.

(iv) Infrared measurements of benzoquinone have shown that a

carbonyl group is present.

(v) If Graebe's formula were correct, there appears to be no reason why m-benzoquinone should not exist.

It can therefore be seen from the foregoing that Fittig's formula agrees better with the properties of p-benzoquinone and consequently is the accepted one.

**p-Benzoquinone oximes.** p-Benzoquinone forms two oximes with hydroxylamine. With one equivalent of hydroxylamine the monoxime is formed, and this is tautomeric with p-nitrosophenol (p. 630). The dioxime is a yellow crystalline solid.

 $p ext{-Benzoquinoneimine}$ , NH.C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>.O, and  $p ext{-benzoquinonedi-imine}$ , NH.C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>.NH, may be prepared by the careful oxidation of  $p ext{-aminophenol}$  and  $p ext{-phenylenedi-imine}$ , respectively, with silver oxide in ethereal solution. The mono-imine is a bright yellow crystalline solid; the di-imine is colourless and unstable. When warmed with inorganic acids, both compounds form  $p ext{-benzoquinone}$  and ammonia.

Indophenol may be prepared by condensing p-nitrosophenol with phenol in the presence of 70 per cent. sulphuric acid or concentrated hydrochloric acid:

$$O = O + OH + OH \xrightarrow{H_9SO_4} O = OH + H_9O$$

It is a brown solid, m.p. 160°, giving a red solution in ethanol; it was formerly used as a dye.

o-Benzoquinone may be prepared by the oxidation of catechol with silver oxide in dry ethereal solution in the presence of anhydrous sodium sulphate. The latter is necessary to remove the water formed during the reaction,

since o-benzoquinone is readily oxidised by silver oxide in the presence of water:

o-Benzoquinone exists in two forms, one as unstable green needles, and the other, stable light-red crystalline plates. It is odourless, not steam volatile, and is reduced to catechol by sulphurous acid. It is a strong oxidising agent, e.g., it liberates iodine from acidified potassium iodide.

The alternative structure has been rejected on grounds similar to those used for the p-compound.

Many benzoquinone compounds occur naturally, and are the cause of the colour in the pigments in which they are found.

Quinols may be prepared by oxidising p-alkylphenols with Caro's acid; e.g., p cresol gives p-toluquinol (4-methylquinol):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{OH} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_9\text{SO}_6} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{OH} \end{array} \hspace{0.5cm} (p.)$$

Quinols may also be prepared by treating p-alkylphenylhydroxylamines with dilute sulphuric acid. Rearrangement to the imine first takes place (cf. phenylhydroxylamine, p. 561), and this is then hydrolysed to the quinol; e.g., p-tolylhydroxylamine gives first iminotoluquinone and then p-toluquinol:

Quinols are colourless solids, soluble in alkalis, readily acetylated and readily reduced to the p-alkyl-phenol. Their most characteristic reaction is their great tendency to rearrange to the aromatic structure; e.g., 2:4-dimethylquinol, under the influence of dilute sulphuric acid, rearranges to 2:5-dimethylquinol:

## QUESTIONS

I. Starting with benzene or toluene, show how you would prepare:—(a) Ph-CH<sub>2</sub>OH,

(b) Ph·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, (c) Ph·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, (d) m-HO·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, (e) o-NO<sub>2</sub>·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, (f) p-ClC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH, (g) p-BrC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·CO·CH<sub>2</sub>Br, (h) Ph·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·NMe<sub>2</sub>, (i) 2:3':4-trinitrostilbene.

2. Describe, in detail, methods for preparing benzaldehyde. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when benzaldehyde is treated with:—(a) O<sub>3</sub>, (b) AgNO<sub>3</sub>, (c) Fehling's solution, (d) NaHSO<sub>3</sub>, (e) HCN, (f) NH<sub>2</sub>·OH, (g) NH<sub>3</sub>, (h) PCl<sub>5</sub>, (i) NaOH, (j) N<sub>2</sub>H<sub>4</sub>, (k) Ph·NH<sub>2</sub>, (l) H, (m) Cl<sub>2</sub>, (n) CH<sub>3</sub>·CHO, (o) Me<sub>2</sub>CO, (p) H·CHO, (q) MeNO<sub>2</sub>, (r) Ph·CO·CH<sub>3</sub>, (s) Ac<sub>2</sub>O, (t) succinic anhydride, (u) PhOH, (v) Ph·NMe<sub>2</sub>, (w) HNO<sub>3</sub>, (x) H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>.

3. Describe how each of the following compounds may be prepared:—(a) o-, m- and p-nitrobenzaldehydes, (b) 2:4-dinitrobenzaldehyde, (c) m- and p-chlorobenzaldehydes, (d) 2:6-dichlorobenzaldehyde, (e) anisaldehyde, (f) protocatechualdehyde, (g) vanillin, (h) veratraldehyde, (i) piperonal, (j) benzoylacetone, (h) 4-n-hexyl-resorcinol, (l) benzhydrol, (m) benzopinacol, (n) chloranil, (o) quinhydrone.

4. Write a detailed account of the general methods of preparing phenolic aldehydes.

Discuss the properties of salicylaldehyde.

5. How may cinnamaldehyde, acetophenone and benzophenone be prepared? Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when each of these compounds is treated with:—(a) oxidising agents, (b) reducing agents, (c) Br<sub>2</sub>, (d) HCN, (e) NH<sub>2</sub>OH, (f) NaHSO<sub>3</sub>, (g) NH<sub>3</sub>, (h) HNO<sub>3</sub>, (i) HCl, (j) Ac<sub>2</sub>O, (k) EtOAc, (l) (NH<sub>4</sub>)<sub>2</sub>S<sub>x</sub>, (m) Me<sub>2</sub>NH + S.

6. Write an account of the isomerism of the aromatic aldoximes and ketoximes.

Describe the preparation and properties of o- and p-benzoquinones. Outline the evidence for the accepted structures of these compounds.

8. A compound has the molecular formula C<sub>7</sub>H<sub>8</sub>O. Write out all the possible isomers and show how you would distinguish between them.

9. Define and give examples of:—(a) Étard's reaction, (b) Gattermann-Koch aldehyde synthesis, (c) Gattermann aldehyde synthesis, (d) Sommelet's reaction, (e) Rosenmund reduction, (f) Stephen's method, (g) Cannizzaro reaction, (h) Claisen reaction, (i) Perkin reaction, (j) vinylogy, (k) Knoevenagel reaction, (l) Reimer-Tiemann reaction, (m) Duff's reaction, (n) Mannich reaction, (o) Willgerodt reaction, (p) Houben-Hoesch synthesis, (q) Elbs reaction, (r) Beckmann rearrangement.

#### READING REFERENCES

Ferguson, Synthesis of Aromatic Aldehydes, Chem. Reviews, 1946, 38, 227.

Sprung, Reactions of Aldehydes with Amines, ibid., 1940, 26, 297 Organic Reactions, Wiley. (i) Vol. I (1942), Ch. 8. The Perkin Reaction. (ii) Vol. II (1944), Ch. 2. The Willgerodt Reaction.

Organic Reactions, Wiley, Vol. II (1944), Ch. 3. The Cannizzaro Reaction.

Vol. V (1949), Ch. 6. The Gattermann-Koch Reaction.

Vol. V (1949), Ch. 9. The Hoesch Reaction.

Vol. VIII (1954), Ch. 4. The Sommelet Reaction.
Vol. IX (1957), Ch. 2. The Gattermann Synthesis of Aldehydes.
Vol. XI (1960), Ch. 1. The Beckmann Rearrangement.

Alexander, Studies of the Mechanism of the Cannizzaro Reaction, J. Amer. Chem.

Soc., 1947, 69, 89; 1948, 70, 2592. Stempel, Rearrangement of Substituted Benzopinacols, J. Chem. Educ., 1946, 23, 434. Allen and Wilson, Mechanism of the Addition of Hydrogen Cyanide to Quinone, J.

Amer. Chem. Soc., 1941, 63, 1756.

McEwen et al., The Schmidt Reaction Applied to Several Unsymmetrical Diaryl-

ethylenes, ibid., 1950, 72, 3212.

Angyal et al., The Sommelet Reaction, J.C.S., 1953, 1737, 1740, 1742.

Mannich Reaction, Ann. Reports (Chem. Soc.), 1949, 46, pp. 151-153.

Willgerodt-Kindler Reaction, ibid., 1949, 46, pp. 210-213.

Dauben et al., Mechanism of the Willgerodt Reaction, J. Amer. Chem. Soc., 1956, 78, 4135.

Sanders et al., Acetophenone, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1953, 45, 2.

Field and Grundy, The Preparation of Aromatic Aldehydes by Means of the Dinitrogen Tetroxide Reagent, J.C.S., 1955, 1110.

Wynberg, The Reimer-Tiemann Reaction, Chem. Reviews, 1960, 60, 169.

Finar and Manning, The Preparation and Some Reactions of 4-Formyl-1-phenyl-

pyrazoles, J.C.S., 1961, 2733. Finar, Organic Chemistry, Vol. II (1959, 2nd ed.), Longmans, Green, Ch. VI (section 2d). Oximes:

#### CHAPTER XXVIII

## AROMATIC ACIDS

Aromatic acids are compounds containing one or more carboxyl groups which are directly attached to the nucleus. Those acids in which the carboxyl group occurs in the side-chain may be regarded as aryl-substituted aliphatic acids, but they are also classified as aromatic acids, since they exhibit aromatic properties due to the presence of a benzene ring.

# MONOBASIC ACIDS WITH THE CARBOXYL GROUP ATTACHED TO THE RING

General methods of preparation. I. By the oxidation of the corresponding alcohol or aldehyde; e.g., benzaldehyde gives benzoic acid:

$$C_6H_5$$
 CHO  $\xrightarrow{\text{KMnO}_4}$   $C_6H_5$  CO<sub>2</sub>H (v.g.)

2. By the hydrolysis of the corresponding cyanide, e.g., o-tolyl cyanide gives o-toluic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CN} \\ + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_5\text{SO}_4} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ + \text{NH}_3 \end{array} (g.\text{-}v.g.) \end{array}$$

3. By means of a Grignard reagent, e.g.,

$$C_6H_5\cdot MgBr + CO_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CO_2MgBr \xrightarrow{HCI} C_6H_5\cdot CO_2H$$
 (90%)

4. By means of the Friedel-Crafts reaction; e.g., treatment of benzene with carbonyl chloride in the presence of anhydrous aluminium chloride gives benzoyl chloride which, on hydrolysis, forms benzoic acid:

$$C_6H_6 + COCl_9 \xrightarrow{AlCl_9} C_6H_5 \cdot COCl \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot CO_2H$$
 (55-58%)

Excess of carbonyl chloride must be used in this method; otherwise benzo-

phenone will be the main product (p. 664).

5. By the oxidation of benzene homologues with dilute nitric acid, dichromate and sulphuric acid, alkaline permanganate, or chromium trioxide in glacial acetic acid. In some cases it may be more convenient to chlorinate the hydrocarbon, and then oxidise the chloro-derivative, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6 H_5 \text{•} CH_3 \stackrel{Cl_2}{-\!\!\!-\!\!\!-\!\!\!-\!\!\!-\!\!\!-\!\!\!-} C_6 H_5 \text{•} CH_2 \text{Cl} \xrightarrow{\text{Na}_6 \text{CO}_6} \\ \\ [C_6 H_5 \text{•} CH_2 \text{OH}] \stackrel{[O]}{-\!\!\!\!-\!\!\!-\!\!\!-\!\!\!-\!\!\!-} C_6 H_5 \text{•} \text{CO}_2 \text{H} \end{array} \tag{80\%}$$

In this way the oxidation of the side-chain is much easier, since the intermediate alcohol is much more readily oxidised than the hydrocarbon itself.

General properties. In general, the aromatic acids are slightly stronger acids than the aliphatic, less soluble in water, and less volatile. They are fairly easily soluble in hot water, and are readily decarboxylated by heating with soda-lime.

Benzoic acid (benzenecarboxylic acid), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, is present in certain resins, particularly gum-benzoin; it is also present in balsams. Benzoic acid is also found as hippuric acid (benzoylglycine) in the urine of horses.

Benzoic acid may be prepared in the laboratory by any of the general

methods. Commercially, it is prepared as follows:

(i) By the hydrolysis of benzotrichloride with aqueous calcium hydroxide in the presence of iron powder as catalyst (this is an example of indirect oxidation):

 $C_6H_5$ ·CCl<sub>3</sub> + 2H<sub>2</sub>O  $\xrightarrow{Ca(OH)_{\bullet}}$   $C_6H_5$ ·CO<sub>2</sub>H + 3HCl

(ii) By the catalytic oxidation of toluene with air and stannic vanadate as catalyst:

 $2C_6H_5\cdot CH_3 + 3O_2 \longrightarrow 2C_6H_5\cdot CO_2H + 2H_2O_3$ 

(iii) By the hydrolysis of benzoyl chloride prepared from benzene and

carbonyl chloride (see method 4 above).

(iv) When phthalic anhydride and steam are passed over a metal phthalate catalyst, e.g., zinc, chromium or nickel salt at 200–300°, some of the resulting phthalic acid is decarboxylated to benzoic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_{\text{CO}}\text{O} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} + \text{CO}_2 \end{array}$$

Benzoic acid is a white crystalline solid, m.p.  $122^{\circ}$ , sparingly soluble in cold water but readily soluble in hot water, ethanol and ether. It is steam-volatile. It forms salts in the usual way; the silver salt (white) and the ferric salt (buff-coloured) are insoluble. Benzoic acid readily forms esters when it is refluxed with an alcohol in the presence of a small amount of concentrated sulphuric acid or hydrogen chloride. Benzoic esters are pleasant-smelling liquids which are denser than water. Phenyl benzoate, which may be prepared by the action of benzoyl chloride on an alkaline solution of phenol, is a solid, m.p.  $71^{\circ}$ . In general, it has been found that benzoic acid containing a substituent in the o-position does not esterify as easily as the m- or p-isomer. If both o-positions (with respect to the carboxyl group) are occupied, then esterification occurs with the greatest difficulty, if at all. Furthermore, once the ester is formed from these diortho-substituted benzoic acids, it is very difficult to hydrolyse them. The explanation for these abnormal reactions is not yet complete (see the ortho-effect, p. 686, for further details).

Benzoyl chloride (benzenecarbonyl chloride), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·COCl, was the first acid chloride to be discovered. It may be readily prepared by distilling benzoic

acid with phosphorus pentachloride or with thionyl chloride:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CO_2H + SOCl_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot COCl + HCl + SO_2$$
 (75–80%)

It is prepared commercially by chlorinating benzaldehyde in the cold (benzaldehyde contains no  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atom):

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHO +  $Cl_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5$ ·COCl + HCl (ex.)

Another commercial method is to heat benzoic acid with benzotrichloride:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CO_2H + C_6H_5 \cdot CCl_3 \longrightarrow 2C_6H_5 \cdot COCl + HCl$$

Benzoyl chloride is a colourless fuming liquid, b.p. 197°, with an irritating odour. It is only very slowly decomposed by water or by dilute sodium hydroxide (cf. acetyl chloride), and because of this, compounds containing an active hydrogen atom can be benzoylated in the presence of dilute aqueous sodium hydroxide. This method of benzoylation is known as the Schotten-Baumann reaction. e.g.,

$$C_6H_5 \cdot COCl + C_6H_5 \cdot NH_2 + NaOH \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot C_6H_5 + NaCl + H_2O$$

p-Nitrobenzoyl and 3:5-dinitrobenzoyl derivatives of the alcohols are usually well-defined crystalline substances, and so are used to characterise the alcohols.

Hippuric acid (benzoylglycine) may be readily prepared by the action of benzoyl chloride on glycine:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot COCl + NH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2H + HCl$$

It is a white solid, m.p. 188°, almost insoluble in water. Its most important reaction is its condensation with aromatic aldehydes to form azlactones; e.g., when heated with benzaldehyde, acetic anhydride and sodium acetate, hippuric acid forms benzoyl-α-aminocinnamic azlactone (2-phenyl-4-benzylideneoxazol-5-one):

$$\begin{array}{c} C_{6}H_{5}\cdot CHO + CH_{2}\cdot CO_{2}H \\ \downarrow \\ NH\cdot CO\cdot C_{6}H_{5} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} C_{6}H_{5}\cdot CH\cdot C \\ \downarrow^{4} \\ N^{3} \\ \downarrow^{2} \\ \downarrow^{6} \\ C_{6}H_{5} \end{array}$$

This reaction is usually referred to as the Erlenmeyer azlactone synthesis (1893). Azlactones are very important as intermediates in the preparation of amino- and ketoacids; e.g., phenylalanine may be prepared from the above azlactone as follows:

$$C_{6}H_{5}\cdot CH:C \longrightarrow CO \xrightarrow{NaOH} C_{6}H_{5}\cdot CH:C \cdot CO_{2}H \xrightarrow{Na/Hg} NH \cdot CO \cdot C_{6}H_{5}$$

$$C_{6}H_{5} \xrightarrow{C} CH_{2}\cdot CH \cdot CO_{2}H \xrightarrow{HCl} C_{6}H_{5}\cdot CH_{2}\cdot CH(NH_{2})\cdot CO_{2}H + C_{6}H_{5}\cdot CO_{2}H$$

$$NH \cdot CO \cdot C_{6}H_{5}$$

See also p. 685 for another synthetic use of azlactones.

Benzamide (benzenecarbonamide), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>\*CO•NH<sub>2</sub>, may be prepared by the action of concentrated aqueous ammonia on benzoyl chloride or by hydrolysing phenyl cyanide with warm alkaline 3 per cent. hydrogen peroxide:

$$\begin{split} \mathrm{C_6H_5^{\bullet}COC1} + \mathrm{2NH_3} &\longrightarrow \mathrm{C_6H_5^{\bullet}CO^{\bullet}NH_2} + \mathrm{NH_4Cl} \quad (v.g.) \\ \mathrm{C_6H_5^{\bullet}CN} &\stackrel{\mathrm{H_4O_3}}{\longrightarrow} \mathrm{C_6H_5^{\bullet}CO^{\bullet}NH_2} \quad (ex.) \end{split}$$

Benzamide is a white crystalline solid, m.p. 130°. It undergoes most of the usual reactions of an aliphatic acid amide; e.g., it is readily hydrolysed by dilute acids or alkalis to benzoic acid and ammonia; it forms mercury benzamide, (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CO·NH)<sub>2</sub>Hg, with mercuric oxide. Benzamide forms two types of ethers, N- and O- (cf. p. 205); e.g., when the silver salt of benzamide is treated with ethyl iodide, O-ethylbenzamide, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·C(OC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>).NH, is formed (hydrolysis gives benzoic acid, ethanol and ammonia). On the other hand, when the sodium salt is treated with ethyl iodide, N-ethylbenzamide, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CO·NH·C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, is formed (hydrolysis gives benzoic acid and ethylamine).

Benzoic anhydride, (CeH5 CO)2O, may be prepared by heating a mixture of

sodium benzoate and benzoyl chloride:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CO_2Na + C_6H_5 \cdot COCl \longrightarrow (C_6H_5 \cdot CO)_2O + NaCl (g.)$$

A better method is to slowly distil a mixture of benzoic acid and acetic anhydride (cf. p. 201):

$${}_{2}C_{6}H_{5} \cdot CO_{2}H + (CH_{3} \cdot CO)_{2}O \longrightarrow (C_{6}H_{5} \cdot CO)_{2}O + 2CH_{3} \cdot CO_{2}H$$
 (72-74%)

McGookin et al. (1951) have prepared benzoic anhydride by the action of dry silver oxide or yellow mercuric oxide on benzoyl chloride in benzene:

$$_{2C_{6}H_{5}\cdot COCl} + Ag_{2}O \longrightarrow (C_{6}H_{5}\cdot CO)_{2}O + _{2}AgCl$$

Benzoic anhydride is a white solid, m.p. 42°. It is only very slowly decomposed by water (cf. acetic anhydride); it may be used in the Schotten-Baumann reaction, but is not so convenient as benzoyl chloride.

Benzoyl peroxide, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CO·O·CO·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, may be prepared by the action of sodium peroxide on benzoyl chloride:

$$2C_6H_5$$
 ·COCl + Na<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>  $\longrightarrow$  (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub> ·CO)<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> + 2NaCl

A more convenient method is to add a mixture of benzoyl chloride and aqueous sodium hydroxide to cool hydrogen peroxide with vigorous shaking:

$${}_{2\text{C}_{6}\text{H}_{5}\text{\cdot}\text{COCl}} + {}_{2}\text{NaOH} + {}_{4}\text{P}_{2}\text{O}_{2} \longrightarrow ({}_{6}\text{H}_{5}\text{\cdot}\text{CO})_{2}\text{O}_{2} + {}_{2}\text{NaCl} + {}_{2}\text{H}_{2}\text{O} \tag{80-95\%}$$

Benzoyl peroxide is a fairly stable solid, m.p. 104°. It is used as a bleaching

agent for white flour.

Perbenzoic acid, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CO·O·OH, may be prepared by adding a solution of benzoyl peroxide in chloroform to a cooled solution of sodium methoxide in methanol and extracting the product, sodium perbenzoate, with ice-cold water. When the aqueous solution is acidified with cold concentrated sulphuric acid, extracted with chloroform, and then the chloroform removed under reduced pressure, perbenzoic acid (m.p. 41°) remains:

$$(C_6H_5\cdot CO)_2O_2 + CH_3ONa \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CO\cdot O_2Na + C_6H_5\cdot CO_2CH_3$$
 (82%)

Kergomard et al. (1956) have prepared perbenzoic acid by reaction between benzoyl chloride and an aqueous ethanolic solution of sodium peroxide, or better, hydrogen peroxide and sodium carbonate.

Perbenzoic acid is a fairly active oxidising agent; e.g., it converts the ethylenic bond quantitatively into the ethylene oxide derivative:

$$C=C$$
 +  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot O_2H \rightarrow C$  +  $C_6H_5 \cdot CO_2H$ 

Perbenzoic acid is therefore used for the detection and estimation of ethylenic bonds (Prileschaiev reaction; cf. p. 74). It is far less troublesome to handle than

peracetic acid, and so is used preferably (often as its sodium salt).

Phenyl cyanide (benzonitrile, benzenecarbonitrile) may be prepared by heating benzamide with phosphorus pentoxide, by means of the Sandmeyer reaction with benzenediazonium chloride (p. 586), or by fusing sodium benzenesulphonate with sodium cyanide (p. 609). It is a colourless oil, b.p. 191°, and behaves similarly to the aliphatic cyanides.

There are many homologues of benzoic acid, but only the toluic acids need be mentioned:

Each may be prepared by oxidising the corresponding xylene with dilute nitric acid, or from the corresponding toluidine (via the cyanide).

Substituted derivatives of benzoic acid. Benzoic acid is attacked by the usual electrophilic reagents chlorine, bromine, nitric and sulphuric acids, to give mainly the *m*-derivatives; *e.g.*, *m*-bromobenzoic acid may be obtained by heating benzoic acid, bromine and water under pressure:

$$CO_2H$$
 $+ Br_2 \rightarrow Br + HBr (80\%)$ 

Waters et al. (1950) have prepared m-iodobenzoic acid (75% yield) by adding iodine to a solution of benzoic acid in concentrated sulphuric acid containing silver sulphate. The active species in this case is the iodinium ion (cf. p. 69):

$$I_2 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons HOI + H^+ + I^-$$
  
 $Ag_2SO_4 + 2I^- \longrightarrow 2AgI + SO_4^{2^-}$   
 $HOI + H^+ \rightleftharpoons H_2OI^+ \rightleftharpoons H_2O + I^+$ 

o- and p-Substituted benzoic acids may be obtained by oxidising the corresponding toluene derivatives, e.g.,

(i) 
$$CH_3$$
  $CO_2H$   $C$ 

Many substituted benzoic acids may also be prepared from the corresponding aminobenzoic acids (via the diazonium salts). o- and p-Substituted benzoic acids may be obtained directly by using, e.g., the sodium salt of benzoic acid (see p. 520).

Nitrobenzoic acids. o- and p-Nitrobenzoic acids may be prepared by oxidising the corresponding nitrotoluenes with acid dichromate:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 & \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \hline \\ \text{NO}_2 & \text{NO}_2 \end{array}$$

m-Nitrobenzoic acid may be prepared by direct nitration of methyl benzoate:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3 & \text{CO}_2\text{CH}_3 & \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ & & & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & \\ & & & \\ & & \\ & & & \\ & \\ & & \\ & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & \\ & & \\ & \\ & & \\ & \\ & \\ & \\ & & \\ & \\ & \\ & \\ & & \\$$

3:5-Dinitrobenzoic acid, m.p. 204°, is formed when benzoic acid is nitrated with a mixture of fuming nitric and sulphuric acids:

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\
& & \text{NO}_2 & \text{NO}_2
\end{array}$$

It is used to characterise alcohols.

2:5-Dinitrobenzoic acid may be prepared by treating 2-amino-5-nitrotoluene with potassium persulphate and sulphuric acid (i.e., Caro's acid) and further oxidising the product, 5 nitro-2-nitrosotoluene, with potassium dichromate and sulphuric acid:

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{CH}_3 \\
\text{NO}_2
\end{array}$$
 $\begin{array}{c}
\text{CH}_3 \\
\text{NO}_2
\end{array}$ 
 $\begin{array}{c}
\text{CO}_2\text{H} \\
\text{NO}_2
\end{array}$ 
 $\begin{array}{c}
\text{NO}_2
\end{array}$ 

Aminobenzoic acids. All three aminobenzoic acids may be obtained by

reduction of the corresponding nitrobenzoic acids.

Anthranilic acid (o-aminobenzoic acid) may be prepared by reducing o-nitrobenzoic acid. An interesting preparation is by the internal oxidation of o-nitrotoluene (p. 558).

Commercially, anthranilic acid is prepared by oxidising phthalimide with aqueous sodium hydroxide and sodium hypochlorite (the Hofmann reaction):

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CO \\ CO \\ NH \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} NaOH \\ CO \cdot NH_2 \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} CO_2Na \\ NH_2 \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} HCI \\ NH_2 \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} CO_2H \\ NH_2 \\ \end{array}$$

Anthranilic acid is a white solid, m.p. 145°, soluble in water, ethanol and ether; it behaves as an acid and as an amine; it does not exist as an inner salt in the solid state (cf. sulphanilic acid). When distilled, anthranilic acid is decarboxylated to aniline.

Methyl anthranilate is used in perfumery, since it is the characteristic constituent of jasmine and orange blossoms. Anthranilic acid is used in

the industrial preparation of indigotin (p. 802).

m-Aminobenzoic acid, m.p. 174°, is used in the preparation of azo-dyes.

p-Aminobenzoic acid, m.p. 186°, is one of the substances comprising the vitamin B complex. It has been claimed that it is an anti-grey hair factor; it is also said to be essential for the growth of chicks. Certain derivatives of p-aminobenzoic acid are used as local anaesthetics, e.g., novocaine, NH<sub>2</sub> CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·N(C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub>.

All the halogeno- and nitro-benzoic acids are stronger acids than benzoic acid itself. Both halogen and the nitro-group behave as electron-withdrawing groups, and thereby facilitate the release of the proton in the carboxyl group, e.g.,

$$Cl \leftarrow C \leftarrow O \leftarrow H$$
  $O_2N \leftarrow C \leftarrow O \leftarrow H$   $(-I \text{ effect})$ 

The aminobenzoic acids are all weaker acids than benzoic acid because of the electron-donating property of the amino group (+R effect).

$$\widetilde{\mathrm{NH_2}} \xrightarrow{\underline{\mathsf{V}}} \widetilde{\mathrm{C}} \to \mathrm{O} \to \mathrm{H}$$

Sulphobenzoic acids. Sulphonation of benzoic acid gives *m*-sulphobenzoic acid. The *o*- and *p*-isomers may be prepared by oxidising the corresponding toluenesulphonic acids.

Saccharin (o-sulphobenzoic imide) may be prepared by treating toluene with chlorosulphonic acid and separating the o- and p-toluenesulphonyl chlorides (p. 612). The o-compound is then treated with ammonia, and the resulting amide oxidised with permanganate to o-sulphamide benzoic acid; this, on heating, forms saccharin:

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} CH_{3} \\ SO_{2}Cl \end{array} \xrightarrow{NH_{3}} \begin{array}{c} CH_{3} \\ SO_{2}\cdot NH_{2} \end{array} \xrightarrow{KMnO_{4}} \begin{array}{c} CO_{2}H \\ SO_{2}\cdot NH_{2} \end{array} \xrightarrow{heat} \begin{array}{c} CO \\ SO_{2} \end{array} & NH \end{array}$$

Pure saccharin, in high yield, may be obtained by oxidising o-toluenesulphonamide with dichromate and sulphuric acid (Matveev, 1946).

The method described above was one of the first to be used industrially. Many other industrial methods are now employed; e.g., one starts with anthranilic acid; this is diazotised and treated with liquid sulphur dioxide in the presence of copper as catalyst. The sulphinic acid derivative thereby obtained is treated with chlorine in alkaline solution, and the sulphonyl chloride so produced is treated with ammonia and heated:

Saccharin is a crystalline solid, m.p. 224°, and 550 times as sweet as sugar. It is almost insoluble in water, and hence is sold as its sodium salt, which is very soluble. Saccharin is very sweet in dilute but is bitter in concentrated solutions. It is used instead of sugar for many purposes, e.g., sweetening preserves, drinks, etc. It is also used by diabetics and obese persons.

Phenolic Acids. There are three hydroxybenzoic acids; only the o-isomer,

salicylic acid, is important.

Salicylic acid (o-hydroxybenzoic acid) occurs as its methyl ester in many essential oils. It may be obtained by the oxidation of salicylaldehyde or salicyl alcohol; or fusing o-sulphobenzoic acid with sodium hydroxide. Salicylic acid may be prepared by replacing the amino-group in anthranilic acid by hydroxyl (via the diazonium salt), and also by the Reimer-Tiemann reaction using an alkaline solution of phenol and carbon tetrachloride (cf. p. 655):

The original industrial method of preparing salicylic acid was the Kolbe synthesis (1859), and this was slightly modified by Schmitt (1885) to give the method (the Kolbe-Schmitt reaction) used now. This process is carried out by heating sodium phenoxide with carbon dioxide at 120–140° under pressure.

$$ONa + CO_2 \rightarrow OH \rightarrow OH \rightarrow CO_2H$$

A small amount of the p-derivative is formed at the same time, and if the temperature rises above 140°, the p-isomer is the main product. A by-product in the Kolbe-Schmitt reaction is 4-hydroxyisophthalic acid (3–5 per cent.).

The mechanism of the Kolbe-Schmitt reaction is uncertain. Schmitt believed that sodium phenyl carbonate was formed as an intermediate and that this rearranged to salicylic acid:

$$\bigcirc^{\mathrm{ONa}} + \mathrm{CO_2} \ \longrightarrow \ \bigcirc^{\mathrm{O} \cdot \mathrm{CO_2Na}} \ \longrightarrow \ \bigcirc^{\mathrm{OH}}_{\mathrm{CO_2Na}}$$

There is, however, much experimental evidence against this mechanism. Jones et al. (1954), by an examination of the infrared absorption spectrum of the product obtained in the Kolbe-Schmitt reaction, have been led to suggest the following intramolecular mechanism involving a sodium phenoxide-carbon dioxide complex and a  $\pi$ -complex:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{ONa} \\ \text{ONa} \\ \text{ONa} \\ \text{Complex} \end{array} \rightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{ONa} \\ \text{T-complex} \\ \text{ONa} \\ \text{C-ONa} \\ \text{$$

Salicylic acid is a white crystalline solid, m.p. 159°, sparingly soluble in cold water but readily soluble in hot water, ethanol and ether. It is used as an antiseptic, in medicine, and in the preparation of azo-dyes.

Salicylic acid behaves as a phenol and as an acid. Its aqueous solutions give a violet coloration with ferric chloride. When heated quickly, salicylic acid sublimes; but when heated slowly, it undergoes decarboxylation:

$$\overset{\text{OH}}{\longrightarrow}\overset{\text{OH}}{\longrightarrow}+\text{CO}_2$$

On the other hand, when heated to about 200°, it forms phenyl salicylate:

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} & \text{OH} \\
\text{CO}_2\text{H} & \rightarrow \\
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{CO}_2\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 + \text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \\
\end{array}$$

This is possibly formed by combination of phenol (the first decomposition

product) with unchanged salicylic acid.

It has been found that as the number of hydroxyl groups in the o- and ppositions with respect to the carboxyl group increases, so the ease of decarboxylation (and carboxylation) increases. In any case, decarboxylation is
always readily effected by heating with soda-lime. When the potassium
salt of salicylic acid is heated at 230°, p-hydroxybenzoic acid is formed (see

below). When reduced with sodium and *iso*pentanol, salicylic acid is converted into pimelic acid. The mechanism of this reaction is uncertain; one that has been proposed is:

When treated with bromine water, salicylic acid forms s-tribromophenol, the carboxyl group being displaced by bromine:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
OH & OH \\
CO_2H & \xrightarrow{Br_2} & Br & Br
\end{array}$$

This reaction is characteristic of the carboxyl group when it is o- or p- to a hydroxyl or an amino-group (cf. p. 616). Similarly, the carboxyl group is displaced by a nitro-group when salicylic acid is treated with fuming nitric acid:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{OH} & \text{OH} \\ \hline \\ \text{CO}_2\text{H} & \xrightarrow{\text{HNO}_3} & \text{NO}_2 \\ \hline \\ \text{NO}_2 \\ \end{array}$$

The reason for this ready displacement of the carboxyl group by bromine or by the nitro-group is not certain, but it may possibly occur by the following mechanism:

$$H\ddot{O} \xrightarrow{2} \ddot{O} + Br \xrightarrow{\ddot{B}r} \rightarrow \ddot{B}r + H\ddot{O} \xrightarrow{2} \ddot{O} \xrightarrow{C} \ddot{O} \rightarrow HO \xrightarrow{Br} + CO_{2}$$

Decarboxylation in alkaline solution may be explained similarly (a proton is the attacking agent instead of Br<sup>+</sup>).

When treated with carbonates, only the carboxyl group in salicylic acid forms salts; with alkali, both the carboxyl and hydroxyl groups form salts. Sodium salicylate is used in the treatment of rheumatism. Salicylic acid is a stronger acid than its *m*- and *p*-isomers (see the *ortho*-effect, below).

Methyl salicylate, o-HO·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, b.p. 224°, is the principal constituent of oil of wintergreen. It may be prepared by direct esterification, and is used in perfumery and as a flavouring material Salol (phenyl salicylate), o-HO·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, m.p. 43°, may be prepared by heating salicylic acid with phenol in the presence of phosphoryl chloride. It is used as an internal antiseptic. Aspirin (acetylsalicylic acid), o-CH<sub>3</sub>·CO·O·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, m.p. 135°, may be prepared by acetylating salicylic acid with a mixture of acetic anhydride and glacial acetic acid. Aspirin behaves in a number of unusual ways, and Davidson et al. (1953) have suggested that the assumption of an equilibrium between aspirin (I) and salicyloylacetic anhydride (II)

offers an explanation for several of the unusual properties of aspirin as well as its pronounced acetylating action.

m-Hydroxybenzoic acid, m.p. 201°, may be prepared from m-aminobenzoic acid:

$$CO_2H$$
 $CO_2H$ 
 $CO_2H$ 
 $CO_2H$ 
 $N_2HSO_4$ 
 $CO_2H$ 
 $OH$ 
 $CO_9H$ 
 $OH$ 
 $CO_9H$ 

It does not give a coloration with ferric chloride.

p-Hydroxybenzoic acid, m.p. 214°, may be prepared by heating potassium salicylate at 230°:

It may also be prepared by oxidising the methyl group in p-cresol (with protection of the hydroxyl group during the oxidation):

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_3 & CO_2H & CO_2H \\ \hline OH & & C_6H_6\cdot SO_2CI \\ \hline OH & & O\cdot SO_2\cdot C_6H_5 & O\cdot SO_2\cdot C_6H_5 & OH \\ \end{array}$$

p-Hydroxybenzoic acid is formed when p-chlorobenzoic acid is heated with aqueous sodium hydroxide:

$$CO_2H$$
  $CO_2H$   $+$  NaOH  $+$  NaCl OH

Many esters of p-hydroxybenzoic acid have antiseptic properties. The

acid gives a red coloration with ferric chloride.

Anisic acid (p-methoxybenzoic acid), p-CH<sub>3</sub>O·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, m.p. 184°, may be prepared by the oxidation of anethole (p. 639). When heated with concentrated hydriodic acid, anisic acid forms p-hydroxybenzoic acid and methyl iodide, and on distillation with calcium oxide it forms anisole (p. 637).

Protocatechuic acid (3:4-dihydroxybenzoic acid) occurs in various plants, and is formed when certain resins (catechin, gum-benzoin, etc.) are fused with alkali. It may be prepared by heating catechol with aqueous ammonium carbonate at 140° under pressure (p. 632), or from vanillin as follows (note the demethylation):

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{CHO} & & \text{CO}_2\text{K} \\
\text{OCH}_3 & \xrightarrow{\text{KOH}} & & \text{OK}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{CO}_2\text{H} \\
\text{OH}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{CO}_2\text{H} \\
\text{OH}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{OH}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{(89-99\%)}
\end{array}$$

Protocatechuic acid crystallises with one molecule of water of crystallisation; the anhydrous acid melts at 199° with decomposition into catechol and carbon dioxide.

Veratric acid (3:4-dimethoxybenzoic acid), m.p. 181°, may be prepared by methylating protocatechuic acid with methyl sulphate in the presence of aqueous sodium hydroxide:

Homoprotocatechuic acid (3:4-dihydroxyphenylacetic acid), m.p. 127°, may be prepared by treating veratraldehyde with hydrogen cyanide and boiling the product, 3:4-dimethoxymandelonitrile, with hydriodic acid (Pictet and Gams, 1909):

It should be noted that the prefix homo indicates that the compound contains

one more carbon atom than the parent substance.

Homoveratric acid (3:4-dimethoxyphenylacetic acid), m.p. 99°, may be prepared by methylating homoprotocatechuic acid with methyl sulphate in the presence of aqueous sodium hydroxide. It may be prepared via the azlactone synthesis as follows:

Homoveratric acid may also be prepared by chloromethylating veratrole, treating the product with potassium cyanide, and hydrolysing the homoveratronitrile so produced (Bide and Wilkinson, 1945):

Piperonylic acid (3:4-methylenedioxybenzoic acid), m.p. 229°, may be prepared by the oxidation of piperonal (p. 660), or by heating protocatechuic acid with methylene iodide and aqueous sodium hydroxide:

OH
$$OH + CH_2I_2 + 2NaOH \longrightarrow O + 2NaI + 2H_2O$$

$$CO_2H$$

$$CO_2H$$

Piperonal and piperonylic acid are oxidation products of piperic acid, which occurs in the alkaloid piperine. Veratric acid is one of the products of oxidation of the alkaloid papaverine. The orientation of the groups in these acids (and in

the corresponding homo-acids) may be shown as follows. Sulphonation of p-hydroxybenzoic acid (the orientation of which is known) produces a sulphonic acid derivative in which, according to the rules of directing power, the sulphonic acid group is o- to the hydroxyl group. This derivative, on fusion with potassium hydroxide, produces the dihydroxybenzoic acid in which the two hydroxyl groups are o- to each other. This is confirmed by the fact that the acid, viz., protocatechuic acid, gives catechol (orientation known) when heated to its melting point:

$$CO_2H$$
 $CO_2H$ 
 $CO_2H$ 
 $CO_2H$ 
 $CO_2H$ 
 $OH$ 
 $OH$ 
 $OH$ 
 $OH$ 

Thus protocatechuic acid must be 3:4-dihydroxybenzoic acid. Hence the dimethoxy-derivative, veratric acid, must be 3:4-dimethoxybenzoic acid. At the same time, the orientations of the corresponding aldehydes, protocatechualdehyde and veratraldehyde, are established. Similarly, since piperonylic acid is the methylene ether of protocatechuic acid (shown by analytical and synthetic evidence), its orientation is also established. Finally, since homoprotocatechuic acid (and its methylated derivative, homoveratric acid) can be synthesised from veratraldehyde (see above), its orientation is thus ascertained.

Gallic acid (3:4:5-trihydroxybenzoic acid), m.p. 253°, occurs in the free state in tea and in many plants. It is best prepared by boiling tannin (tannic acid) with dilute acids. When heated at its melting point, it forms pyrogallol and carbon dioxide (p. 635). It is a powerful reducing agent and hence is used as a photographic developer. It is readily soluble in water, and its aqueous solution gives a bluish-black precipitate with ferric chloride. This property is used in the

manufacture of ink.

**Depsides.** These are esters of aromatic hydroxyacids with hydroxyacids. They are known as di-depsides, tri-depsides, etc., according to the number of molecules in the ester; e.g., the simplest di-depside is that formed from two molecules of p-hydroxybenzoic acid:

$$HO \bigcirc CO \cdot O - \bigcirc CO_2 H$$

Depsides are related to certain types of tannins.

The ortho-effect. As we have already seen, the properties of o-compounds usually differ very much from those of the corresponding m- and p-isomers. The effect of o-substituents was first observed in 1872 when Hofmann found that aminopentamethylbenzene gave little or no quaternary ammonium compound on heating with methyl iodide. This was soon followed by many other cases in which reaction was slowed down, or completely inhibited by the presence of substituents in the o-positions; e.g.,

(i) Benzamide is readily hydrolysed, whereas pentamethylbenzamide cannot be hydrolysed.

(ii) Benzaldehyde forms an anil with aniline but not with s-tribromo-

aniline

(iii) Benzoic acid and o-substituted benzoic acids form methyl esters with methanol and hydrogen chloride (Fischer-Speier method), but di-ortho-substituted benzoic acids do not form methyl esters under the same conditions (Victor Meyer, 1874).

Victor Meyer (1894) attempted to explain these abnormalities by steric hindrance, i.e., the o-groups mechanically interfered in the reaction of the carboxyl group, tending to shield it from the attacking reagent. This seemed to be supported by the fact that if the carboxyl group was removed from the ring by one carbon atom, esterification was normal; e.g., mesityl-

acetic acid, (I), esterifies readily, whereas mesitoic acid, (II), does not esterify at all (by the Fischer-Speier method):

$$\begin{array}{c} CO_2H \\ \dot{C}H_2 \\ CH_3 \\ CH_3 \\ CH_3 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} CO_2H \\ CH_3 \\ CH_3 \\ CH_3 \end{array} \qquad (II)$$

On the other hand, Kellas (1897) found that esterification of o-substituted benzoic acids is slower than that of the m- and p-isomers, and that the m-isomer is esterified more rapidly than the p-. This latter observation is contrary to Victor Meyer's explanation. On the basis of a purely spatial effect, the m- and p-substituted benzoic acids would have been expected to have esterified at the same rate, since in both acids the substituent groups do not mechanically interfere. Kellas also found that the nitro-group hindered esterification more effectively than the iodine atom, and since the former group has a smaller volume than the latter, the reverse results would

have been expected.

A detailed study of the reactivity and strength of o-substituted benzoic acids and o-substituted amines, and the abnormal effects of o-substituents on the hydrolysis of esters, amides and cyanides, has shown that the effects cannot be explained by mechanical interference alone. In fact, in many cases, it is doubtful whether the spatial factor (i.e., mechanical interference) operates at all. It is the polar influence of the substituents (and other factors) which usually plays a prominent part in the abnormal reactions of these o-substituted compounds. Thus the term steric hindrance, originally intended by Victor Meyer to denote a spatial effect, is misleading. Hence many chemists prefer to call the general phenomenon (of abnormal behaviour) the proximity effect, a term which denotes the special influence of groups near the reacting group. The ortho-effect is a special case of the proximity effect, being used only in connection with nuclear substituents. The term steric hindrance is, however, still used to denote the proximity effect (as defined above).

Steric factors play a part in the *ortho*-effect, but other contributing factors are chelation and the steric inhibition of resonance. These factors, particularly chelation, are also partly responsible for a number of proximity effects

in general

The ortho-effect due to chelation is exhibited by the o-nitro-, halogeno- and hydroxy-benzoic acids; e.g., salicylic acid is stronger than its corresponding m- and p-isomers. Owing to chelation there is an increased inductive effect (as shown), thereby facilitating the release of the proton. As already pointed

out, p-nitrobenzoic acid is stronger than benzoic acid due to the polar influence of the nitro-group transmitted through the ring. The nitro-group, however, behaves in the same way in the o-position, but the o-derivative is a stronger acid than the p-. Hence some other factor operates in the case of

the o-compound, and is absent in the p-. Chelation may also be used to explain the volatility of o-halogenophenols (p. 625), o-nitrophenol (p. 626), etc.

An alternative explanation for this *ortho*-effect in *o*-hydroxybenzoic acids is as follows. The carboxylate ion (IV), because of the equivalence of its

$$HO \qquad O \qquad \overrightarrow{O} \qquad \overrightarrow{O}$$

two resonating structures, has a greater resonance energy than the undissociated acid (III) and so is more stable (p. 184). Any structural change in the molecule that will stabilise the anion i.e., increases its contribution, will therefore increase the strength of the acid. An o-hydroxyl group can stabilise the anion by intramolecular hydrogen bonding (V), and so this o-hydroxyacid is stronger than the corresponding m- and p-isomers (where chelation is not possible). Furthermore, two o-hydroxyl groups should stabilise the anion even more (VI) and so p: 6-dihydroxybenzoic acid should be a much stronger acid than o-hydroxybenzoic acid; this has been found to be so in practice.

The dipole moment of p-nitroaniline is greater than the sum of the dipoles of the nitro- and amino-groups. This is attributed to increased resonance of both of these groups:

$$O \leftarrow N = O$$
  $O \leftarrow N = O$   $O \leftarrow$ 

On the other hand, the dipole moment of nitroaminodurene is the sum of the dipoles of the nitro- and amino-groups (Birtles and Hampson, 1937). This may be explained by the non-existence of any charged structures. These must be planar, and this is impossible in nitroaminodurene due to the steric effect of the methyl groups. This is an example of the steric inhibition of resonance.

The actual geometry of these highly substituted benzenes is an interesting problem. In benzene the ring is flat and the hydrogen atoms are coplanar with this ring. Electron-diffraction investigations of polyhalogenobenzenes suggest that such molecules are non-planar (Hassel et al., 1947), whereas X-ray studies indicate that in the solid state such molecules are very closely or even exactly planar (Tulinsky et al., 1958; Gafner et al., 1960). Ferguson et al. (1959, 1961) have examined, by X-ray analysis, various substituted benzoic acids, e.g., o-chloro- and bromo-benzoic acid, and 2-chloro-5-nitrobenzoic acid. In all three molecules the steric strain is relieved by small out-of-plane displacements of the exocyclic valency bonds in addition to the larger in-plane displacement of these bonds away from one another. This type of deformation is referred to as molecular overcrowding (see also p. 739).

# MONOBASIC ACIDS WITH THE CARBOXYL GROUP IN THE SIDE-CHAIN

Phenylacetic acid (α-toluic acid), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, occurs in certain esters; it may be prepared from benzyl chloride as follows:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CH_2Cl \xrightarrow{KCN} C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot CN \xrightarrow{(H_2SO_4)} C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot CO_2H \quad (60-70\%)$$

It may also be prepared by reducing mandelonitrile with hydriodic acid and red phosphorus:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CH(OH)\cdot CN \xrightarrow{HI/P} C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot CO_2H (90\%)$$

Phenylacetic acid is a white crystalline solid, m.p.  $77^{\circ}$ , soluble in hot water. Since it contains two  $\alpha$ -hydrogen atoms, it is reactive in the sidechain as well as in the ring, e.g., chlorination in the cold in the presence of a halogen carrier, gives o- and p-nuclear substitution; chlorination at the boiling point of the acid, in the absence of a halogen carrier, gives replacement of the  $\alpha$ -hydrogen (cf. toluene, p. 549). When oxidised with chromic acid, phenylacetic acid is converted into benzoic acid.

Mandelic acid (phenylglycollic acid), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CHOH·CO<sub>2</sub>H, may be obtained from the glucoside amygdalin by regulated hydrolysis (cf. benzaldehyde, p. 645). It may be prepared by adding a saturated solution of sodium hydrogen sulphite to a mixture of aqueous sodium cyanide and benzaldehyde, separating the layer of mandelonitrile, and hydrolysing this with cold concentrated hydrochloric acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5\text{`CHO}\xrightarrow{\mathrm{NaHSO_2}} C_6H_5\text{`CH(OH)}\text{`SO_3Na}\xrightarrow{\mathrm{NaCN}} \\ C_6H_5\text{`CH(OH)}\text{`CN}\xrightarrow{(H_2O)} C_6H_5\text{`CH(OH)}\text{`CO_2H} & (50-52\%) \end{array}$$

Mandelic acid may also be prepared by the hydrolysis of phenacylidene chloride (cf. p. 661):

$$\begin{array}{c} C_{6}H_{5}\text{\cdot}CO\text{\cdot}CH_{3} \xrightarrow[(CH_{3}\text{\cdot}CO_{9}H)]{} C_{6}H_{5}\text{\cdot}CO\text{\cdot}CHCl}_{2} \xrightarrow[(ii) \text{ NaOH}]{} \\ C_{6}H_{5}\text{\cdot}CHOH\text{\cdot}CO}_{2}H & (76-87\%) \end{array}$$

Mandelic acid is a white crystalline solid, fairly soluble in water. It behaves as a hydroxyacid, and is optically active. The acid obtained from amygdalin is levorotatory, m.p. 133°; the m.p. of the DL-acid is 118°. On vigorous oxidation, mandelic acid gives benzoic acid.

Hydratropic acid (α-phenylpropionic acid), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)·CO<sub>2</sub>H, b.p. 265°, may be prepared by the reduction of atropic acid, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·C(.CH<sub>2</sub>)·CO<sub>2</sub>H, obtained by heating tropic acid, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CH(CH<sub>2</sub>OH)·CO<sub>2</sub>H, which occurs in the alkaloid atropine.

β-Phenylpropionic acid (hydrocinnamic acid), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, may be prepared by reducing cinnamic acid with sodium amalgam:

$$C_6H_5$$
·CH·CH·CO<sub>2</sub>H + 2[H]  $\longrightarrow$   $C_6H_5$ ·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H (85%)

The reduction may also be carried out electrolytically, using a lead anode (yield: 80–90 per cent.). β-Phenylpropionic acid may be synthesised from benzyl chloride and malonic ester:

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm C_6H_5^{\bullet}CH_2Cl + [CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2]^{-}Na^{+} \longrightarrow C_6H_5^{\bullet}CH_2^{\bullet}CH(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 + NaCl} \\ \hline {\rm _{(i)~boil}^{(i)~boil}^{\bullet} C_6H_5^{\bullet}CH_2^{\bullet}CH_2^{\bullet}CO_2H + CO_2 + 2C_2H_5OH_2} \end{array}$$

 $\beta$ -Phenylpropionic acid is a white crystalline solid, m.p.  $47^{\circ}$ , soluble in hot water. It is oxidised by chromic acid to benzoic acid.

Cinnamic acid,  $C_6H_5$ ·CH·CH·CO<sub>2</sub>H, is the *trans*-isomer, and hence is also known as trans- $\beta$ -phenylacrylic acid. The *cis*-isomer (cis- $\beta$ -phenylacrylic acid) is usually called allocinnamic acid:

Cinnamic acid is the form that occurs naturally (free and as esters) in balsams and resins. It may be prepared:

(i) By Perkin's reaction (p. 651):

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHO + (CH<sub>3</sub>·CO)<sub>2</sub>O  $\xrightarrow{\text{CH}_5$ ·CO<sub>2</sub>Na  $\rightarrow$   $C_6H_5$ ·CH·CH·CO<sub>2</sub>H (85%)

(ii) By Knoevenagel's reaction (p. 280):

$$C_6H_5\cdot CHO + CH_2(CO_2H)_2 \xrightarrow{NH_3/C_2H_3OH} C_6H_5\cdot CH\cdot CH\cdot CO_2H \quad (80\%)$$

(iii) By the *Claisen condensation* between benzaldehyde and ethyl acetate in the presence of sodium ethoxide (since benzaldehyde is one of the reactants, this is also referred to as a *Claisen reaction*; see p. 158):

$$\begin{array}{c} {\rm C_6H_5 \cdot CHO} + {\rm CH_3 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5} \xrightarrow{{\rm C_2H_5 \circ Na}} {\rm C_6H_5 \cdot CH \cdot CH \cdot CO_2C_2H_5} \xrightarrow{{\rm H_2O}} \\ {\rm C_6H_5 \cdot CH \cdot CO_2H} + {\rm C_2H_5 OH} \quad (68-74\%) \end{array}$$

(iv) By heating benzylidene chloride with sodium acetate:

$${\rm C_6H_5\cdot CHCl_2} + {\rm CH_3\cdot CO_2Na} \longrightarrow {\rm C_6H_5\cdot CH: CH\cdot CO_2Na} + {\rm 2HCl}$$

(v) By the oxidation of benzylideneacetone with sodium hypochlorite (cf. the haloform reaction):

$$C_6H_5$$
·CH:CH·CO·CH<sub>3</sub>  $\xrightarrow{NaOCl}$   $C_6H_5$ ·CH:CH·CO<sub>2</sub>H

Methods (iv) and (v) are used industrially.

Cinnamic acid is a crystalline solid, m.p. 133°. It behaves as an  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated acid, and as a benzene derivative. It is reduced by sodium amalgam to  $\gamma$ -phenylpropionic acid; reduction of its ethyl ester, however, leads to the formation of the bimolecular product, ethyl  $\beta$ :  $\beta'$ -diphenyladipate (cf. p. 278):

$${}_{2C_{\theta}H_{5}\cdot CH: CH: CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5}} \xrightarrow{[H]} {}^{C_{\theta}H_{5}\cdot CH: CH_{2}\cdot CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5}} \\ C_{\theta}H_{5}\cdot CH: CH_{2}\cdot CO_{2}C_{2}H_{5}$$

When a phenyl group is attached to the  $\beta$ -carbon atom of an  $\alpha$ :  $\beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compound, both the double bond and carbonyl group are reduced by lithium aluminium hydride (cf. p. 276):

C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CH=CH·CO<sub>2</sub>H 
$$\xrightarrow{\text{LIAIH}_4}$$
 C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>OH

By using the inverse addition at -10°, the double bond is left intact, e.g.,

$$C_6H_5$$
·CH=CH·CO<sub>2</sub> $C_2H_5$   $\xrightarrow{\text{LiAlH}_4}$   $C_6H_5$ ·CH=CH·CH<sub>2</sub>OH

When oxidised with chromic acid, cinnamic acid forms a mixture of benzaldehyde and benzoic acid. Concentrated nitric acid nitrates it to a mixture of o- and p-nitrocinnamic acids, the latter predominating.

When distilled with soda-lime, cinnamic acid forms styrene:

$$C_6H_5$$
·CH:CH·CO<sub>2</sub>Na + NaOH  $\longrightarrow$   $C_6H_5$ ·CH:CH<sub>2</sub> + Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>

Styrene is also obtained when cinnamic acid is heated for some time just above its melting point. When exposed to sunlight, cinnamic acid dimerises to a mixture of truxinic acid (3: 4-diphenylcyclobutane-I: 2-dicarboxylic acid), (I), and truxillic acid (2: 4-diphenylcyclobutane-I: 3-dicarboxylic acid), (II):

$${}^{2\mathrm{C}_{6}\mathrm{H}_{5}\cdot\mathrm{CH}:\mathrm{CH}\cdot\mathrm{CO}_{2}\mathrm{H}} \xrightarrow{}^{\mathrm{C}_{6}\mathrm{H}_{5}\cdot\mathrm{CH}-\mathrm{CH}\cdot\mathrm{CO}_{2}\mathrm{H}} + \\ {}^{\mathrm{C}_{6}\mathrm{H}_{5}\cdot\mathrm{CH}-\mathrm{CH}\cdot\mathrm{CO}_{2}\mathrm{H}} + \\ {}^{\mathrm{C}_{6}\mathrm{H}_{5}\cdot\mathrm{CH}-\mathrm{CH}\cdot\mathrm{CO}_{2}\mathrm{H}} + \\ {}^{\mathrm{C}_{6}\mathrm{H}_{5}\cdot\mathrm{CH}-\mathrm{CH}\cdot\mathrm{CO}_{2}\mathrm{H}} + \\ {}^{\mathrm{C}_{6}\mathrm{H}_{5}\cdot\mathrm{CH}-\mathrm{CH}\cdot\mathrm{CO}_{2}\mathrm{H}}$$

Allocinnamic acid is believed to occur in four allotropic forms, m.ps 32°, 42°, 58°, and 68°; all are unstable, the form melting at 32° being the least stable. Allocinnamic acid may be prepared in one or other of its forms by exposing cinnamic acid to ultraviolet light, or by the partial reduction of phenylpropiolic acid with hydrogen and colloidal platinum as catalyst:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot C:C \cdot CO_2H + H_2 \xrightarrow{Pt} C_6H_5 \cdot CH:CH \cdot CO_2H$$

Allocinnamic acid readily changes into cinnamic acid, and under the influence

of light dimerises to truxinic acid.

Phenylpropiolic acid (phenylpropynoic acid), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·C:C·CO<sub>2</sub>H, may be prepared by boiling the ethyl ester of cinnamic acid dibromide with ethanolic potassium hydroxide:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CH: CH\cdot CO_2C_2H_5\xrightarrow{Br_2} C_6H_5\cdot CHBr\cdot CHBr\cdot CO_2C_2H_5\xrightarrow{(i)\ KOH/C_2H_5OH)} (ii)\ acid$$

Phenylpropiolic acid is a crystalline solid, m.p. 136°. On catalytic reduction (using colloidal platinum), phenylpropiolic acid forms allocinnamic acid. Reduction with zinc and acetic acid gives cinnamic acid, and with sodium amalgam, β-phenylpropionic acid. When refluxed with barium hydroxide solution, phenylpropiolic acid is converted into phenylacetylene:

$$C_6H_5$$
·C:C·CO<sub>2</sub>H  $\longrightarrow$   $C_6H_5$ ·C:CH + CO<sub>2</sub>

o-Coumaric acid (o-hydroxycinnamic acid), m.p. 108°, may be prepared by boiling coumarin (see below) with sodium ethoxide, or by diazotising o-aminocinnamic acid and then heating the diazonium sulphate solution. When exposed to ultraviolet light, o-coumaric acid (the stable trans-form) is converted into coumarinic acid (the unstable cis-form):

$$\begin{array}{c|c} C-H & \xrightarrow{h\nu} & OH & C-H \\ \hline OH & HO_2C-C-H & \\ \hline coumaring acid & coumaring acid \\ \end{array}$$

Coumarinic acid (o-hydroxyallocinnamic acid) is unstable, spontaneously forming its δ-lactone as soon as it is set free from its salts; the lactone is known as coumarin (benzo-α-pyrone), m.p. 67°:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} OH & \xrightarrow{H_0 \circ C} C-H & \xrightarrow{-H_1 \circ} & CH \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Coumarin may be prepared by the Perkin reaction.

One of the most convenient methods for synthesising coumarins is the Pechmann reaction (1883) which is the condensation of a phenol with a  $\beta$ -ketoester. The usual condensing reagents are sulphuric acid, phosphorus pentoxide, etc., but Koo (1955) has shown that polyphosphoric acid is very effective, e.g., resorcinol and ethyl acetoacetate give 7-hydroxy-4-methylcoumarin:

Coumarin is a natural perfume, and is also used as an artificial flavour. When heated with sodium ethoxide, it is converted into coumaric acid.

Crawford et al. (1956) have shown that free commarinic acids can be isolated from 8-nitrocommarins but not from other nitrocommarins. The stability of these acids is attributed to chelation of the nitro-group with the neighbouring hydroxyl group, e.g.,

# DIBASIC AROMATIC ACIDS

There are three benzenedicarboxylic acids possible, and all are known:

Phthalic acid (benzene-I: 2-dicarboxylic acid) may be prepared by the oxidation of any benzene derivative having only two side-chains in the o-positions; permanganate or dilute nitric acid is used as the oxidising agent (chromic acid brings about ring rupture; see p. 538):

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \mathbb{C}\mathrm{H}_3 & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{KMnO_4}} & \mathbb{C}\mathrm{O_2H} \\ \mathbb{C}\mathrm{H_3} & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{CO_2H}} & (v.g.) \end{array}$$

Industrially, phthalic acid is prepared by the oxidation of naphthalene with concentrated sulphuric acid and mercuric sulphate as a catalyst at a temperature of 200° (the yield varies between 25-60 per cent.). This method is almost obsolete, the oxidation being now carried out by passing

naphthalene vapour mixed with air over vanadium pentoxide as catalyst at 400-500°:

Maleic acid is obtained as a by-product. A more recent method is to use o-xylene as the starting material instead of naphthalene.

In all the above methods, the product of oxidation is phthalic anhydride. This is readily converted into the acid by heating it with alkali, and then acidifying:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_{\text{CO}} > \text{O} + 2 \text{NaOH} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_{2} \text{Na} \\ \text{CO}_{2} \text{Na} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{HCI}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_{2} \text{H} \\ \text{CO}_{2} \text{H} \end{array}$$

Phthalic acid is a white crystalline solid, m.p. 231° (rapid heating), with conversion into its anhydride. It is almost insoluble in cold water, but is fairly readily soluble in hot water. It undergoes most of the typical reactions of a dicarboxylic acid. When heated with potassium hydroxide, it is decarboxylated to benzene. It is reduced by sodium amalgam to ditetra- and hexahydrophthalic acids. Mercuration of phthalic acid is usually carried out by refluxing the sodium salt with aqueous mercuric acetate containing sodium acetate, until no ionic mercury remains in the solution. Phthalic acid may also be mercurated by fusing it with mercuric acetate, or by heating the mercury salt of phthalic acid until the mercury has been transferred to the nucleus:

$$COO>Hg$$
  $\rightarrow$   $COO>COO$ 

Phthalic anhydride is prepared industrially by the oxidation of naphthalene or o-xylene (see above). It is a white solid, m.p. 128°, slowly hydrolysed by water but rapidly by alkalis or acids. When nitrated, phthalic anhydride forms a mixture of 3- and 4-nitrophthalic acids. When these are reduced, their corresponding aminophthalic acids spontaneously decarboxylate to form m-aminobenzoic acid:

It is the carboxyl group o- or p- to the amino-group that is lost. The esters of these aminophthalic acids are quite stable.

Phthalic anhydride undergoes a large number of condensation reactions (see text). Phthalic anhydride and phthalic acid are used industrially in the preparation of dyes, plastics (glyptals), plasticisers, benzoic acid, etc.

Phthalide may be prepared by reducing phthalic anhydride with zinc dust and aqueous sodium hydroxide:

$$CO > O + 4[H] \rightarrow CH_2 O + H_2O$$

It is also formed when the anhydride is reduced catalytically with nickel at 200°, but is accompanied by varying amounts of toluic acid and ring-hydrogenated compounds, e.g., hexahydrophthalic acid. Phthalide may also be prepared by reducing phthalimide with a zinc-copper alloy and aqueous sodium hydroxide:

$$CO_{CO}$$
NH  $\xrightarrow{[H]}$   $CO_{2}$ Na  $\xrightarrow{HCI}$   $CO_$ 

Phthalide is a white crystalline solid, m.p. 75°. It may be converted into homophthalic acid, m.p. 175°, by fusing it with potassium cyanide at 180° and hydrolysing the product with boiling 50 per cent. sulphuric acid:

Phthalimide may be prepared by heating phthalic anhydride with dry ammonia at about 200° under pressure:

$$CO > O + NH_3 \rightarrow CO > NH + H_2O (90\%)$$

It is a white solid, m.p. 238°. It is weakly acidic; e.g., with ethanolic potassium hydroxide it forms potassio-phthalimide:

$$CO > NH + KOH \rightarrow CO > N K + H_2O (68\%)$$

This salt is used in Gabriel's synthesis of primary amines (p. 311), and for preparing many  $\alpha$ -aminoacids. The salt is decomposed into phthalimide by carbon dioxide.

Treatment of phthalimide with alkaline sodium hypochlorite results in the formation of anthranilic acid (p. 680). When hydrolysed with warm aqueous sodium hydroxide, phthalimide forms phthalic acid. If, however, phthalimide is allowed to stand in cold aqueous potassium hydroxide, or if warmed with barium hydroxide solution, it is converted into phthalamic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \\ \text{CO} \\ \text{NH} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CO} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \\ \end{array}$$

Phthaloyl chloride (phthalyl chloride) may be prepared by heating phthalic acid or phthalic anhydride with phosphorus pentachloride at 150°. It may also be prepared by heating phthalic acid with thionyl chloride in the presence of zinc chloride at 220° (cf. p. 377):

Phthaloyl chloride is a colourless oily liquid, m.p. 15–16°. When heated with aluminium chloride for some time, it is converted into as-phthaloyl chloride, m.p. 89° (cf. succinyl chloride):

$$\begin{array}{c|c} COCl & AlCl_3 \\ \hline COCl & \longrightarrow & \hline \\ CO & (72\%) \\ \hline \end{array}$$

When reduced with zinc and hydrochloric acid, phthaloyl chloride is converted into phthalide.

Phthalaldehydic acid (o-formylbenzoic acid), m.p. 100.5°, may be prepared by oxidising naphthalene with alkaline permanganate and decomposing the product, phthalonic acid, by boiling it in xylene solution:

Phthalaldehydic acid may be prepared by passing bromine vapour into phthalide and heating the product, 2-bromophthalide, with water:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \\ \text{CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{Br}_2} \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \\ \text{CHBr} \\ \text{(82-83\%)} \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_2\text{O}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CHO} \\ \end{array} + \text{HBr}$$

Opianic acid (5:6-dimethoxyphthalaldehydic acid), m.p. 150°, is one of the

products obtained by heating narcotine (an alkaloid of opium) with water. Phthalaldehyde, m.p. 56°, may be prepared by ozonolysis of naphthalene (p. 713), or by the reduction of phthalobisdimethylamide with lithium aluminium hydride (Weygand et al., 1951).

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \text{CO·N(CH_3)_2} & \xrightarrow{\text{LiAiH}_4} & \text{CHO} & \text{(70\%)} \\ & \text{CO·N(CH_3)_2} & & \text{CHO} & \text{(70\%)} \end{array}$$

Monoperphthalic acid may be prepared by adding phthalic acid to a cooled alkaline solution of hydrogen peroxide, acidifying, and extracting with ether:

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \\ \text{CO} \end{array} > \text{O} \ + \text{H}_2\text{O}_2 \ + \text{2NaOH} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \cdot \text{O}_2\text{Na} \\ \text{CO}_2\text{Na} \end{array} + \text{2H}_2\text{O} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_5\text{SO}_4} \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \cdot \text{O}_2\text{H} \\ \text{CO}_2\text{H} \end{array} (65-70\%) \end{array}$$

Monoperphthalic acid resembles perbenzoic acid in its properties, but is more stable.

isoPhthalic acid (benzene-1: 3-dicarboxylic acid) may be prepared by oxidising m-xylene with permanganate. It is a crystalline solid, m.p. 346°. It does not form an anhydride.

Terephthalic acid (benzene-1: 4-dicarboxylic acid) may be prepared by oxidising p-xylene with permanganate, or by oxidising p-methylacetophenone with concentrated nitric acid at about 300°:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{CO-CH}_3 & \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & \\ & & \\ & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & \\ & & \\ & \\ & \\ &$$

It is white powder which sublimes without melting when heated. It does not form an anhydride. It forms polyesters with glycol, and the plastic so obtained is known as terylene.

Polycarboxylic acids. Three isomeric tri- and three isomeric tetracarboxylic acids are known; one penta- and one hexacarboxylic acid are also known.

Mellitic acid (benzenehexacarboxylic acid) may be prepared by oxidising hexamethylbenzene with permanganate. It is also formed when graphite or woodcharcoal is oxidised with fuming nitric acid.

Mellitic acid is a stable solid, m.p. 288° (with decomposition). It occurs as its

aluminium salt in peat and lignite.

## QUESTIONS

1. Describe the methods for preparing benzoic acid in the laboratory and industrially. 2. How may each of the following compounds be prepared:—(a) Ph·CO·Cl, (b) Ph·CO·NH<sub>2</sub>, (c) Ph·CO·NH·CH<sub>3</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (d) (Ph·CO)<sub>2</sub>O, (e) (Ph·CO)<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>, (f) Ph·CO·O<sub>2</sub>H, (g) o<sub>7</sub>, m- and p-CH<sub>3</sub>·Co<sub>5</sub>H, (CO<sub>2</sub>H, (h) m-BrC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (i) o<sub>7</sub>, m- and p-NO<sub>2</sub>·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (h) o<sub>7</sub>-HO<sub>3</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H, (h) o<sub>7</sub>-HO<sub>3</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H, (h) o<sub>7</sub>-HO<sub>3</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H, (h) o<sub>7</sub>-HO<sub>3</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H, (h) o<sub>7</sub>-HO<sub>3</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H, (h) o<sub>7</sub>-HO<sub>3</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H, (h) o<sub>7</sub>-HO<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H, (h) o<sub>7</sub>-HO<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H, (h) o<sub>7</sub>-HO<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H, (h) o<sub>7</sub>-HO<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub>7</sub>Co<sub>7</sub>H<sub></sub>

acid. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when salicylic acid is treated with:—(a) heat, (b) NaOH/CaO, (c) H, (d) Br<sub>2</sub>, (e) Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, (f) NaOH, (g) HNO<sub>3</sub>, (h) MeOH, (i) PhOH, (j) Ac<sub>2</sub>O.

4. Starting with benzene or toluene, show how you would prepare:—(a) m- and p-HOC<sub>6</sub>H<sub>4</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (b) anisic acid, (c) protocatechuic acid, (d) veratric acid, (e) homoprotocatechuic acid, (f) homoveratric acid, (g) piperonylic acid, (h) gallic acid, (i) PhCH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (j) PhCH(OH)·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (k) hydratropic acid, (l) PhCH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (m) PhCiC·CO<sub>2</sub>H, (n) coumaric acid, (o) coumarinic acid, (p) coumarin.

5. Discuss the methods for determining the orientation of the groups in the acids (a)—(h) in question 4.

(a)-(h) in question 4.

6. Write an essay on the ortho-effect.7. Write an account of the preparation and properties of cinnamic and allocinnamic

8. Define and give examples of:—(a) the Schotten-Baumann reaction, (b) Erlenmeyer's azlactone synthesis, (c) the Prileschaiev reaction, (d) Kolbe-Schmitt reaction,

(e) Pechmann reaction.

9. Describe the preparation and some important reactions of:—(a) phthalic acid, (b) phthalic anhydride, (c) phthalide, (d) phthalimide, (e) homophthalic acid, (f) phthaloyl chloride, (g) phthalaldehydic acid, (h) monoperphthalic acid, (i) isophthalic acid, (j) terephthalic acid.

10. Write an account of the analytical and synthetic evidence (i) for the structure

of opianic acid, (ii) for the orientation of 3- and 4-nitrophthalic acids.

## READING REFERENCES

Downs, The Oxidation of Aromatic Hydrocarbons, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1940, 32, 1294.

Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. III (1946), Ch. 5. Azlactones. Vol. VII (1953), Ch. 1. The Pechmann Reaction.

Hughes, Steric Hindrance, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1948, 2, 107. Steric Strain, Ann. Reports (Chem. Soc.), 1955, 52, pp. 137-151.

Dippy et al., Steric Effects in Substituted Nitrobenzoic Acids, J.C.S., 1956, 2995.
Brown, Chemical Effects of Steric Strains, ibid., 1956, 1248.
Ingold, Quantitative Study of Steric Hindrance, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1957, 11, 1. Newman (Ed.), Steric Effects in Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1956). Lindsey and Jesky, The Kolbe-Schmitt Reaction, Chem. Reviews, 1957, 57, 583.

### CHAPTER XXIX

# POLYNUCLEAR HYDROCARBONS AND THEIR DERIVATIVES

POLYNUCLEAR hydrocarbons may be divided into two groups, those in which the rings are isolated, e.g., diphenyl, diphenylmethane, etc; and those in which two or more rings are fused together in the o-positions, e.g., naphthalene, anthracene, etc.

### ISOLATED SYSTEMS

Diphenyl (biphenyl), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, occurs in small quantities in coal-tar. It may be prepared:

(i) By Fittig's reaction (1863). This is carried out by treating bromobenzene with sodium in ethereal solution:

$$2C_6H_5Br + 2Na \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot C_6H_5 + 2NaBr (20-30\%)$$

Benzene, o-diphenylbenzene and triphenylene are obtained as by-products (cf. p. 534). It should be noted that the Fittig reaction is analogous to the Wurtz reaction. The former, however, involves the use of aryl halide only, the latter, alkyl halide. The Wurtz-Fittig reaction involves the use of both alkyl and aryl halides.

(ii) When bromobenzene in ethanolic solution is made alkaline and refluxed with hydrazine in the presence of a palladium catalyst on a calcium carbonate support, diphenyl is obtained (Busch et al., 1936):

$$2C_6H_5Br + 2[H] \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot C_6H_5 + 2HBr \quad (80\%)$$

(It is the hydrazine which supplies the hydrogen.)

(iii) (a) By warming benzenediazonium sulphate in ethanol with copper powder:

$$2C_6H_5\cdot N_2HSO_4 \xrightarrow{C_4} C_6H_5\cdot C_6H_5 + 2N_2 + 2H_2SO_4$$
 (25%)

(b) By diazotising benzidine and allowing the diazonium salt solution to stand in contact with hypophosphorous acid:

(iv) By the Ullmann diaryl synthesis (1903). Iodobenzene is heated with copper powder in a sealed tube:

$$2C_6H_5I + 2Cu \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot C_6H_5 + 2CuI$$
 (80%)

Aryl chlorides and bromides do not usually react unless there is a negative group o- or p- to the halogen atom, e.g., o-chloronitrobenzene forms 2:2'-dinitrodiphenyl:

Aryl iodides react readily, but aryl fluorides are not sufficiently reactive for

the Ullmann diaryl synthesis.

By choosing suitable starting materials, it is possible to prepare many diphenyl derivatives by the Ullmann synthesis, e.g., 4:4'-dimethyldiphenyl from p-iodotoluene:

$$_2CH_3$$
  $\longrightarrow$   $_2CH_3$   $\longrightarrow$   $_2CH_3$ 

Kornblum et al. (1952) have shown that dimethylformamide is a good solvent for this synthesis, and the yields obtained are higher.

There is a large amount of evidence to support a free-radical mechanism for the Ullmann diaryl synthesis (Rapson, 1941; Bell, 1954; Nursten, 1955).

(v) Arylmagnesium halides do not react with aryl halides. Reaction, however, will take place in the presence of small quantities of metal halides such as CoCl<sub>2</sub>, NiCl<sub>2</sub>, FeCl<sub>3</sub>, etc. (Kharasch and Fields, 1941); e.g., diphenyl is formed by reaction between phenylmagnesium bromide and bromobenzene in the presence of a small amount of cobaltous chloride:

$$C_6H_5\text{-}MgBr + C_6H_5Br \xrightarrow{\text{CoCl.}} C_6H_5\text{-}C_6H_5 + MgBr_2 \quad (g.)$$

Traces of benzene, terphenyl, etc. are also formed. The mechanism of the reaction is uncertain; Kharasch believes it takes place via free radicals:

$$\begin{split} & C_6H_5\text{*}MgBr + CoCl_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\text{*}CoCl + MgClBr \\ & 2C_6H_5\text{*}CoCl \longrightarrow C_6H_5\text{*}C_6H_5 + 2\text{*}CoCl \\ & \cdot CoCl + C_6H_5Br \longrightarrow CoClBr + C_6H_5\text{*} \\ & C_6H_5\text{*} \longrightarrow C_6H_6, C_6H_5, \text{etc.} \end{split}$$

Industrially, diphenyl is prepared by passing benzene vapour through a red-hot tube, preferably packed with pumice (600-800°):

$$2C_6H_6 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot C_6H_5 + H_2$$

A more recent method is to mix benzene vapour (preheated to 650°) with superheated steam (1000–1100°), and passing the mixture into steel vessels coated internally with a film of  $Fe_3O_4$ .

Diphenyl is a colourless crystalline solid, m.p. 71°, insoluble in water but soluble in ethanol and ether. It is increasing in use as a heat transfer

medium; chlorinated diphenyls are used as plasticisers.

Diphenyl undergoes the usual nuclear substitution reactions, the phenyl group being o- and p-orienting (one phenyl group behaving as an electron-releasing group and the other as an electron-acceptor). The first substituent enters mainly the 4-position, and to a lesser extent the 2-position. Introduction of a second substituent usually takes place in the unsubstituted ring; e.g., on nitration, the main product is 4-nitrodiphenyl, together with

$$\delta + \frac{\sqrt{\sqrt{\frac{8}{3}}}}{\sqrt{\frac{6}{3}}} \delta - \frac{m' \ o' \quad o \ m}{p' \left(\frac{\sqrt{\frac{8}{3}}}{\sqrt{\frac{6}{3}}}\right)^2} \sqrt{\frac{6}{3}} \delta p}$$

a small amount of 2-nitrodiphenyl. Further nitration gives 4:4'-dinitrodiphenyl (and some 2:4'- and 2:2'-dinitrodiphenyls). Diphenyl behaves similarly on halogenation and sulphonation.

When oxidised with chromic acid, diphenyl forms a small amount of benzoic acid, most of the hydrocarbon being oxidised completely to carbon

dioxide and water.

Benzidine (4:4'-diaminodiphenyl) may be prepared by the benzidine transformation (p. 603); hydrazobenzene, on warming with hydrochloric acid, rearranges to benzidine:

$$\sim$$
 NH·NH  $\sim$  NH<sub>2</sub>  $\sim$  NH<sub>2</sub> (90%)

The structure of benzidine may be shown by its formation on the reduction of 4:4'-dinitrodiphenyl (which may be prepared by the Ullmann synthesis

starting with p-bromonitrobenzene).

Benzidine is a colourless solid, m.p. 127°. Its hydrochloride is soluble, but its sulphate is sparingly soluble in water. It is very important commercially since it is used in the preparation of azo-dyes, e.g., congo red (p. 783).

o-Tolidine (4:4'-diamino-3:3'-dimethyldiphenyl), m.p. 129°, and dianisidine (4:4'-diamino-3:3'-dimethoxydiphenyl), m.p. 138°, are manufactured on a large scale as intermediates in the preparation of azo-dyes.

Diphenic acid (diphenyl-2: 2'-dicarboxylic acid) may be readily prepared by oxidising phenanthraquinone with potassium dichromate and sulphuric acid, or by the direct oxidation of phenanthrene with 50 per cent. hydrogen peroxide in glacial acetic (68% yield; O'Connor et al., 1951).

$$\begin{array}{c} O O \\ \hline \\ O O \\ \hline \end{array}$$
 
$$\begin{array}{c} O O \\ \hline \\ O O \\ \hline \end{array}$$
 
$$\begin{array}{c} O O \\ \hline \\ O O \\ \hline \end{array}$$

It may also be prepared by the action of ammoniacal cuprous oxide on diazotised anthranilic acid:

The methyl ester may be obtained by heating methyl o-iodobenzoate with copper powder (Ullmann synthesis):

Diphenic acid-is a solid, m.p. 229°. When heated with acetic anhydride, it forms diphenic anhydride, and when heated with concentrated sulphuric acid, fluorenone-4-carboxylic acid:

When the calcium salt of diphenic acid is distilled, fluorenone is obtained:

$$CO_2$$
  $CO_2$   $CO$   $CO$   $CO$   $CO$   $CO$ 

When oxidised with potassium permanganate, diphenic acid forms phthalic

acid. Distillation with soda-lime gives diphenyl.

If at least three of the positions 2, 2', 6 and 6' are occupied by sufficiently large groups, free rotation about the single bond joining the two phenyl groups is no longer possible. Provided each ring has not a vertical plane of symmetry, this restricted rotation gives rise to optical activity due to the molecule being asymmetric as a whole (p. 403); e.g., 6-nitrodiphenyl-2:2'-dicarboxylic acid (I), and 6:6'-diamino-2:2'-dimethyldiphenyl, (II), have been resolved. If the substituent group is large enough, then only two groups

$$NO_2$$
  $CO_2H$   $CH_3$   $NH_2$   $SO_3H$   $CO_2H$   $CH_3$   $NH_2$   $SO_3H$   $SO_3H$ 

in the o- and o'-positions will cause restricted rotation, e.g., diphenyl-2: 2'disulphonic acid, (III), has been resolved.

The cause of the restricted rotation is believed to be due mainly to the steric effects of the groups in the o- and o'-positions.

Since the optical activity of diphenyl compounds arises from restricted rotation, it might be expected that racemisation would not be possible. In practice, however, many optically active diphenyls can be racemised, e.g., by boiling in solution. The general theory of these racemisations is that heating increases the amplitude of vibrations of the substituents and also the amplitude of vibration of the interannular bond. In addition to these bond stretchings, the various valency angles between ring and substituents are also deformed. Thus the nuclei will pass through a common plane, and hence, when the molecule returns to its restricted state, it will do so equally in the (+)- and (-)-forms, i.e., the molecules are racemised.

o-Substituted diphenyls exhibit the phenomenon of molecular overcrowding, but in this type of molecule the strain can be relieved by rotation about the inter-

annular bond (see also p. 739).

A number of polyphenyls and some of their derivatives have been prepared, e.g., terphenyl, quaterphenyl, quinquephenyl, and sexiphenyl.

Diphenylmethane. Some related compounds of diphenylmethane have

already been discussed, e.g., benzophenone (p. 664). Diphenylmethane may

(i) By the Friedel-Crafts condensation between benzyl chloride and benzene:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CH_2Cl + C_6H_6 \xrightarrow{AlCl_9} C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot C_6H_5 + HCl$$
 (50%)

(ii) By the condensation between one molecule of formaldehyde and two molecules of benzene in the presence of concentrated sulphuric acid:

$$2C_6H_6 + CH_2O \xrightarrow{H_4SO_4} C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_5 + H_2O$$

(iii) By heating benzophenone with hydriodic acid and red phosphorus at 160° under pressure:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5 \xrightarrow{HI/P} C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_5 \quad (95\%)$$

(iv) By allowing a mixture of benzyl alcohol, benzene, acetic and sulphuric acids to stand for 6 hours:

$$C_6H_5\cdot CH_2OH + C_6H_6 \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH_2\cdot C_6H_5 + H_2O$$
 (25%)

(v) By reducing benzophenone with a mixture of lithium aluminium hydride and aluminium chloride.

Diphenylmethane is a crystalline solid, m.p. 26°. Its reactions are similar to those of diphenyl, e.g., on nitration, the nitro-group enters mainly the 4-position; the second nitro-group then enters the 4'-position (the benzyl group is o-p-orienting). Since the hydrogen of the methylene group is very active (due to each ring being electron-attracting, i.e., each ring behaves as a negative group), bromination of diphenylmethane gives rise to substitution at the methylene carbon atom, and not in the ring, to form, e.g., diphenylmethyl bromide:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_5 + Br_2 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot CHBr \cdot C_6H_5 + HBr$$

When oxidised with chromic acid, diphenylmethane forms benzophenone. When its vapour is passed through a red hot tube, diphenylmethane forms fluorene:

$$CH_2$$
  $CH_2$   $+ H_2$ 

Triphenylmethane may be prepared by the Friedel-Crafts condensation between benzene and either benzylidene chloride or chloroform:

$$2C_6H_6 + C_6H_5 \cdot CHCl_2 \xrightarrow{AlCl_9} (C_6H_5)_3CH + 2HCl$$
  
 $3C_6H_6 + CHCl_3 \xrightarrow{AlCl_9} (C_6H_5)_3CH + 3HCl \quad (33\%)$ 

It may also be prepared by condensing benzaldehyde with benzene in the presence of zinc chloride:

$$C_6H_5$$
•CHO +  $2C_6H_6 \xrightarrow{ZnCl_2} (C_6H_5)_3CH + H_2O$ 

Triphenylmethane is a colourless crystalline solid, m.p. 93°. It is the parent substance of the triphenylmethane dyes (p. 786). When brominated, it forms triphenylmethyl bromide, (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>s</sub>)<sub>3</sub>CBr (cf. diphenylmethane, above). Oxidation with chromium trioxide in acetic acid converts triphenylmethane into triphenylcarbinol, m.p. 165°:

$$(C_6H_5)_3CH + [O] \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_3COH$$
 (85%)

This compound may also be prepared by reaction between phenylmagnesium bromide and benzophenone or ethyl benzoate:

$$(C_6H_5)_2CO + C_6H_5\cdot MgBr \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_3COMgBr \xrightarrow{H_4O} (C_6H_5)_3COH$$

$$(75\%)$$

$$C_6H_5\cdot CO_2C_2H_5 + 2C_6H_5\cdot MgBr \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_3COMgBr \xrightarrow{H_2O} (C_6H_5)_3COH$$

$$(89-93\%)$$

Triphenylcarbinol reacts almost instantaneously with hydrochloric acid in acetic acid or with acetyl chloride to form triphenylmethyl chloride (cf. tertiary alcohols, p. 130):

$$(C_6H_5)_3COH + CH_3 \cdot COCl \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_3CCl + CH_3 \cdot CO_2H \quad (93-95\%)$$

In the presence of hydrochloric acid, triphenylcarbinol forms ethers with alcohols, e.g.,

$$(C_6H_5)_3COH + CH_3OH \xrightarrow{HCl} (C_6H_5)_3C \cdot O \cdot CH_3 + H_2O$$

It condenses with aniline hydrochloride to form p-aminotetraphenylmethane, and when refluxed with formic acid, it forms triphenylmethane.

Triphenylcarbinol is reduced to triphenylmethane by lithium aluminium

hydride containing aluminium chloride.

When treated with sodium in ethereal solution (or in liquid ammonia), triphenylmethane forms triphenylmethylsodium:

$$(C_6H_5)_3CH + Na \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_3CNa^+ + \frac{1}{2}H_2$$

This compound forms the sodium salt of triphenylacetic acid when heated with carbon dioxide.

Derivatives of triphenylmethane are best prepared synthetically (see,

e.g., p. 786).

Triphenylmethyl chloride may be prepared from triphenylcarbinol and acetyl chloride (see above), or by the Friedel-Crafts condensation between benzene and carbon tetrachloride; tetraphenylmethane is not formed:

$$3C_6H_6 + CCl_4 \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} (C_6H_5)_3CCl + 3HCl (68-84\%)$$

Triphenylmethyl chloride is a crystalline solid, m.p. 112°. The halogen atom is extremely reactive, e.g., when boiled with water, triphenylmethyl chloride forms the corresponding alcohol, and with ethanol it forms the ethyl ether:

$$(\mathsf{C}_6\mathsf{H}_5)_3\mathsf{C}\cdot\mathsf{O}\cdot\mathsf{C}_2\mathsf{H}_5 \xleftarrow{\mathsf{C}_2\mathsf{H}_4\mathsf{OH}} (\mathsf{C}_6\mathsf{H}_5)_3\mathsf{CCl} \xrightarrow{\;\;\mathsf{H}_4\mathsf{O}} (\mathsf{C}_6\mathsf{H}_5)_3\mathsf{COH}$$

Triphenylmethyl chloride may be converted into triphenylmethane as a follows:

$$(C_6H_5)_3CCI \xrightarrow{Mg} (C_6H_5)_3C \cdot MgCI \xrightarrow{H_3O} (C_6H_5)_3CH$$

This reaction is particularly interesting since the preparation of the Grignard reagent from triphenylmethyl bromide was shown to be via a free-radical mechanism (Gomberg and Bachmann, 1930). These authors showed that when half the total amount of magnesium had reacted, the solution contained triphenylmethyl and hexaphenylethane, but no Grignard reagent:

$$\begin{array}{c} 2(C_6H_5)_3C\mathrm{Br} + \mathrm{Mg} \longrightarrow 2(C_6H_5)_3C^{\centerdot} + \mathrm{MgBr_2} \\ \mathrm{Mg} + \mathrm{MgBr_2} \Longrightarrow 2{\cdot}\mathrm{MgBr} \\ (C_6H_5)_3C^{\centerdot} + {\cdot}\mathrm{MgBr} \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_3C{\cdot}\mathrm{MgBr} \end{array}$$

Conductivity measurements of triphenylmethyl chloride in liquid sulphur dioxide indicate that this compound is only partly ionised and that the conductance data can be analysed in terms of two processes, ionisation to ion pairs and dissociation of the ion pairs to free ions (Lichtin et al., 1951).

This is supported by spectroscopic evidence (Pocker, 1959).

Tetraphenylmethane may be prepared by the action of phenylmagnesium bromide on triphenylmethyl chloride:

$$(C_6H_5)_3CCl + C_6H_5 \cdot MgBr \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_4C + MgClBr \quad (v.p.)$$

It may also be prepared by diazotising p-aminotetraphenylmethane in ethanolic solution and then boiling (see also triphenylcarbinol, above):

hanolic solution and then boiling (see also triphenylcarbinol, above):
$$(C_6H_5)_3COH + C_6H_5 \cdot NH_2 \cdot HCl \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_3C \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot NH_2 \cdot HCl \xrightarrow{NaNO_5} (C_6H_5)_4C$$

Tetraphenylmethane cannot be prepared by reaction between benzene and carbon tetrachloride in the presence of aluminium chloride (see triphenylmethyl chloride, above). The reason for this is not certain, but it is likely that the steric effect plays a large part in hindering the reaction.

Tetraphenylmethane is a very stable crystalline solid, m.p. 282°.

Hexaphenylethane may be prepared by the action of silver, zinc or mercury on triphenylmethyl chloride in benzene solution in the absence of air:

$$2(C_6H_5)_3CC1 \xrightarrow{Ag} (C_6H_5)_3C \cdot C(C_6H_5)_3 + 2AgC1$$

It is a colourless solid, m.p. 145-147°, but when dissolved in a non-ionising solvent such as benzene or cyclohexane, it forms a yellow solution. This yellow colour is due to the dissociation of hexaphenylethane into the free radical triphenylmethyl (Gomberg, 1900):

$$(C_6H_5)_3C$$
— $C(C_6H_5)_3$   $\Longrightarrow$   $2(C_6H_5)_3C$ .

The stability of this free radical is attributed to resonance, a large number of resonating structures contributing to the resonance hybrid:

The reason for the colour of this free radical is uncertain.

Triphenylmethyl reacts immediately with a number of reagents to form triphenylmethyl derivatives, e.g., with oxygen, it forms a colourless peroxide:

$$2(C_6H_5)_3C \cdot + O_2 \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_3C \cdot O \cdot C(C_6H_5)_3$$

With iodine it forms triphenylmethyl iodide, and with nitric oxide, nitrosotriphenylmethane:

$$2(C_6H_5)_3C \cdot + I_2 \rightleftharpoons 2(C_6H_5)_3CI$$
  
 $(C_6H_5)_3C \cdot + NO \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_3C \cdot NO$ 

It also combines with sodium to form triphenylmethylsodium, a brick-red solid and an electrical conductor:

$$(C_6H_5)_3C^{\bullet} + Na \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_3\overline{C}Na^{+}$$

None of these reactions is typical of a hydrocarbon, and the dissociation of hexaphenylethane was finally proved by molecular weight determinations (freezing point and elevation of boiling point). Triphenylmethyl was the first free radical to be discovered.

In addition to the above reactions, triphenylmethyl can act as a powerful reducing agent, and will reduce the salts of silver, gold and mercury to the metals, e.g.,

$$(C_6H_5)_3C^{\bullet} + AgCl \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_3CCl + Ag$$

It will also reduce ferric chloride to ferrous chloride, and this reaction may be used as a test for the presence of a free radical. Yellow solutions of triphenylmethyl are slowly decolorised on exposure to sunlight, triphenylmethane and diphenyl-bisdiphenylene-ethane being formed due to disproportionation:

This hexa-arylethane can also dissociate into free radicals, but does so to a much smaller extent than hexaphenylethane.

The triphenylmethyl radical is an example of a long-life free radical (see also p. 365). The problem here is why does hexaphenylethane dissociate so readily (as compared to ethane)? The answer is believed to be as follows. The free radical is stabilised by resonance, which therefore acts as a "driving force" in the dissociation. At the same time, steric factors also operate. In hexaphenylethane  $(sp^3)$  hybridisation) there is steric strain due to crowding, and this is relieved by dissociation to form a planar or almost planar free radical  $(sp^3)$  hybridisation; resonance requires complete or almost complete planarity). That the steric effect is operating is supported by the fact that methyl groups in the opositions increase the dissociation. Further support for the steric effect is the case of Tschitschibabin's hydrocarbon:

$$\operatorname{Ph_2}\dot{\operatorname{C}} \longrightarrow \operatorname{CPh_2} \longleftrightarrow \operatorname{Ph_2}\operatorname{C} \longrightarrow \operatorname{CPh_2}$$

This compound contains about 4.5 per cent. free radical, but when all four opositions are occupied by chlorine the free-radical content is almost 100 per cent. In the chlorinated compound coplanarity of the two benzene rings is prevented, i.e., this is an example of steric inhibition of resonance (cf. the diphenyls).

When dissolved in liquid sulphur dioxide, the solution shows a high conductivity (Walden, 1903), and this was explained by assuming that the hexaphenylethane dissociates into positive and negative ions:

$$(C_6H_5)_3C - C(C_6H_5)_3 \Longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_3C^+ + (C_6H_5)_3C^-$$

According to Anderson (1935), however, the dissociation is probably:

$$(C_6H_5)_6C_2 + 2SO_2 \Longrightarrow 2(C_6H_5)_3C^+ + 2\dot{S}O_2^-$$

The existence of the triphenylmethyl carbonium ion has definitely been established by Dauben *et al.* (1960), who prepared the crystalline perchlorate, Ph<sub>3</sub>C<sup>+</sup>ClO<sub>4</sub><sup>-</sup>, and the borofluoride, Ph<sub>3</sub>C<sup>+</sup>BF<sub>4</sub><sup>-</sup>. These carbonium ions have been shown to have the property of abstracting hydride ions from hydrocarbons of low nucleophilic power:

This property thus affords a means of preparing new carbonium salts.

Dibenzyl (1:2-diphenylethane), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, may be prepared by the Friedel-Crafts condensation between benzene and ethylene chloride:

$$_2C_6H_6 + ClCH_2 \cdot CH_2Cl \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot C_6H_5 + 2HCl$$

Another method of preparation is by the action of sodium or copper on benzyl bromide:

$${}_{2}C_{6}H_{5} \cdot CH_{2}Br \xrightarrow{Na} C_{6}H_{5} \cdot CH_{2} \cdot CH_{2} \cdot C_{6}H_{5}$$

Dibenzyl is a white solid, m.p. 52°. It is oxidised by permanganate or chromic acid to benzoic acid.

Stilbene (trans-s-diphenylethylene), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CH·CH·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, may be prepared:
(i) By heating benzylidene chloride with sodium:

(ii) By treating benzylmagnesium bromide with benzaldehyde and dehydrating the product, benzylphenylmethanol:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5\text{\cdot}CHO + C_6H_5\text{\cdot}CH_2\text{\cdot}MgBr \longrightarrow C_6H_5\text{\cdot}CH & \xrightarrow{OMgBr} \xrightarrow{H_2O} \\ C_6H_5\text{\cdot}CHOH\text{\cdot}CH_2\text{\cdot}C_6H_5 & \xrightarrow{-H_2O} C_6H_5\text{\cdot}CH = CH\text{\cdot}C_6H_5 \end{array}$$

(iii) By reducing benzoin with amalgamated zinc and an ethanolic solution of hydrogen chloride:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CHOH \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5 \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot CH = CH \cdot C_6H_5$$
 (53-57%)

(iv) By heating  $\alpha$ -phenylcinnamic acid in quinoline in the presence of copper chromite:

$$\begin{array}{c} C_6H_5\text{-}CHO + C_6H_5\text{-}CH_2\text{-}CO_2K \xrightarrow{(OH_3\cdot CO)_3O} \\ \hline \\ C_6H_5\text{-}CH = C(C_6H_5)\text{-}CO_2H \longrightarrow C_6H_5\cdot CH = CH\cdot C_6H_5 \end{array}$$

(v) Stilbene may also be prepared by the Meerwein reaction (p. 588).

Stilbene, m.p. 124°, is the stable trans-isomer; isostilbene, b.p. 145° (13 mm.), is the unstable cis-isomer:

isoStilbene may be prepared by reducing tolan with zinc dust and ethanol:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot C \equiv C \cdot C_6H_5 + 2[H] \longrightarrow C_6H_5 \cdot CH = CH \cdot C_6H_5$$

isoStilbene may also be prepared by irradiating stilbene with ultraviolet light.

isoStilbene is readily converted into stilbene under the catalytic influence

of traces of hydrogen bromide and peroxides.

Stilbene is reduced by sodium and ethanol to dibenzyl. It adds on bromine to form stilbene bromide which, on heating with ethanolic potassium hydroxide, forms tolan (diphenylacetylene), m.p. 62°;

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CH = CH \cdot C_6H_5 \xrightarrow{\operatorname{Br}_3} C_6H_5 \cdot CHBr \cdot CHBr \cdot C_6H_5 \xrightarrow{\operatorname{KOH}} C_6H_5 \cdot C: C \cdot C_6H_5$$

Stilbene bromide reacts with silver acetate to form two isomeric diacetates. These, on hydrolysis, form hydrobenzoin and isohydrobenzoin (see later):

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CH(O \cdot CO \cdot CH_3) \cdot CH(O \cdot CO \cdot CH_3) \cdot C_6H_5 \xrightarrow{H_5 \cdot O} C_6H_5 \cdot CHOH \cdot CHOH \cdot C_6H_5$$

Benzoin,  $C_6H_5$ ·CHOH·CO· $C_6H_5$ , is usually prepared by the benzoin condensation, this reaction being carried out by refluxing benzaldehyde with aqueous ethanolic potassium cyanide:

$$2C_6H_5$$
·CHO  $\xrightarrow{\text{KCN}}$   $C_6H_5$ ·CHOH·CO· $C_6H_5$  (83%)

Weiss (1941) has proposed a chain mechanism. On the other hand, Lapworth (1903) proposed an ionic mechanism:

$$\begin{array}{c}
\overset{\bullet}{C_6H_5} \overset{\bullet}{C} + : \text{CN}^- \rightleftharpoons \begin{bmatrix} \overset{\bullet}{C_6H_5} & \overset{\bullet}{C} - \text{CN} \end{bmatrix} \rightleftharpoons \begin{bmatrix} \overset{\bullet}{C_6H_5} & \overset{\bullet}{C} - \text{CN} \end{bmatrix} \rightleftharpoons \begin{bmatrix} \overset{\bullet}{C_6H_5} & \overset{\bullet}{C} - \text{CN} \end{bmatrix} \stackrel{\bullet}{C_6H_5} & \overset{\bullet}{C} - \overset{\bullet}{C} & \overset{\bullet}{C_6H_5} & \overset{\bullet}{C} - \overset{\bullet}{C_6H_5} & \overset{\bullet}{C_6H_5} & \overset{\bullet}{C} - \overset{\bullet}{C} & \overset{\bullet}$$

Recently it has been shown that some thiazole and imidazole salts may also bring about the benzoin condensation (Breslow, 1958).

When a mixture of aldehydes is treated with aqueous ethanolic potassium cyanide, "mixed" benzoins (as well as the "single" benzoins) are obtained:

$$Ar\cdot CHO + Ar'\cdot CHO \xrightarrow{KCN} Ar\cdot CHOH\cdot CO\cdot Ar' + Ar'\cdot CHOH\cdot CO\cdot Ar$$

Furthermore, the reversibility of the benzoin condensation is indicated by the fact that when the benzoin Ar·CHOH·CO·Ar is heated with the aldehyde Ar'·CHO in the presence of potassium cyanide, a mixed benzoin is obtained (Buck and Ide, 1933):

Aliphatic aldehydes do not undergo the benzoin condensation.

Benzoin is a colourless solid, m.p. 137°. It contains an asymmetric carbon atom and both the (+)- and (-)-forms have been prepared (Mackenzie and Wren, 1908, 1913). Benzoin is reduced to deoxybenzoin (desoxy)

benzoin), C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·CO·C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>, m.p. 60°, which may also be prepared by the following Friedel-Crafts reaction:

$$C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot COCl + C_6H_6 \xrightarrow{AlCl_5} C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot C_6H_5 + HCl \quad (82-83\%)$$

The prefix deoxy- (formerly desoxy-) indicates the replacement of a hydroxyl group by hydrogen. Deoxybenzoin contains an active methylene group; e.g., it forms a sodio-derivative, condenses with aldehydes in the presence of piperidine, and adds on to  $\alpha\beta$ -unsaturated carbonyl compounds (cf. ethyl malonate).

Benzoin is an α-hydroxyketone; hence it reduces Fehling's solution and forms an osazone. When reduced by sodium amalgam, benzoin forms

mainly hydrobenzoin, and a small amount of isohydrobenzoin:

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHOH·CO· $C_6H_5 + 2[H] \longrightarrow C_6H_5$ ·CHOH·CHOH· $C_6H_5$ 

This formula (tolylene glycol) contains two identical asymmetric carbon atoms, and hence the compound can exist in the *dextro*, *laevo*, and *meso*-forms (*cf.* tartaric acid). The racemic modification is known as hydrobenzoin (m.p. 139°), and the *meso*-form as *iso*hydrobenzoin (m.p. 121°). Both forms give benzoic acid on oxidation.

Benzoin is oxidised by chromic acid to a mixture of benzaldehyde and

benzoic acid, and by nitric acid to benzil:

$$C_6H_5$$
·CHOH·CO· $C_6H_5 \xrightarrow{[O]} C_6H_5$ ·CO·CO· $C_6H_5 (96\%)$ 

Benzil is a yellow crystalline solid, m.p.  $95^{\circ}$ . It behaves as a typical  $\alpha$ -diketone, e.g., it is oxidised by hydrogen peroxide in acetic acid to benzoic acid, forms a monoxime and dioxime, etc.

Two monoximes of benzil are known:  $\alpha$ -(cis-), m.p. 134°, and  $\beta$ -(trans-), m.p. 113°. Three dioximes are possible and all are known:  $\alpha$ -(cis-cis-), m.p. 237°,  $\beta$ -(trans-trans-) m.p. 207°, and  $\gamma$ - or amphi-(cis-trans-), m.p. 166° (cf. p. 667).

Benzil condenses with o-phenylenediamine to form 2:3-diphenylquinox-aline:

The nature of the reduction products of benzil depends on the reducing agent used. Thus reduction with sodium amalgam gives hydrobenzoin (and some isohydrobenzoin); amalgamated zinc and hydrogen chloride in ethanol, stilbene; sodium hyposulphite in ethanol, benzoin; amalgamated tin and hydrogen chloride in ethanol, deoxybenzoin; and catalytic reduction using nickel at 230°, dibenzyl.

When heated with ethanolic potassium hydroxide, benzil undergoes the

benzilic acid rearrangement:

$$C_6H_5$$
·CO·CO· $C_6H_5$  + KOH  $\longrightarrow$   $(C_6H_5)_2$ C(OH)·CO<sub>2</sub>K (77-79%)

The mechanism of this rearrangement is uncertain. The rearrangement has been shown to be of the first order with respect to both benzil and hydroxide ion (Westheimer, 1936), and it has also been shown that when benzil is heated for a very short time with methanolic sodium hydroxide in water containing <sup>18</sup>O, the benzil recovered contained <sup>18</sup>O (Roberts and Urey, 1938). This is in keeping with the assumption that the first step is the rapid reversible addition of hydroxide

ion to benzil. All of these results are accounted for by the following mechanism that was proposed by Ingold in 1928:

This is an example of the 1,2-shift, and since a phenyl radical is involved, it is possible that a phenonium ion is formed as an intermediate. A prediction that can be made from the above mechanism is that when the two aryl groups are different, the one that is more electron-releasing (due to the presence of a suitable substituent, e.g., p-MeO) will tend to neutralise the positive charge on the carbon atom to which it is attached when the C=O bond is polarised. Thus it will be the other CO group that will link with the hydroxide ion, and consequently it will be the aryl group attached to this "other" CO group that migrates preferentially. This prediction is borne out in practice, e.g., in p-methoxybenzil, the methoxyphenyl group migration was about 32 per cent. (Roberts et al., 1951).

Pfeil et al. (1956) have shown that barium and thallous hydroxide are more effective reagents than sodium or potassium hydroxide. Furthermore, it has also been shown that the hydroxide ion is not a specific catalyst; sodium methoxide and potassium t-butoxide produce the corresponding esters of benzilic acid (Doering et al., 1956). Formation of these esters is strong evidence that the first step in the rearrangement is the addition of the nucleophilic reagent.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} O \subset O \\ \parallel C \parallel \\ Ph \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} O - O \\ \parallel \parallel \\ O \\ Me^- \longrightarrow Ph - C - C - OMe \xrightarrow{H_0O} Ph_2C(OH) \cdot CO_2Me \end{array}$$

Benzilic acid (m.p. 150°) forms diphenylacetic acid when refluxed in acetic acid solution with hydriodic acid and red phosphorus:

$$(C_6H_5)_2C(OH)\cdot CO_2H + 2[H] \longrightarrow (C_6H_5)_2CH\cdot CO_2H + H_2O \quad (94-97\%)$$

When oxidised with chromic acid, benzilic acid forms benzophenone.

# CONDENSED SYSTEMS

### NAPHTHALENE

Naphthalene, C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>8</sub>, is the largest single constituent of coal-tar (6 per cent.). It is obtained by cooling the middle and heavy oils (p. 499), where-upon naphthalene crystallises out. The oil is pressed free from the naphthalene, the crude naphthalene cake melted, treated with concentrated sulphuric acid (to remove basic impurities), washed with water, and then treated with aqueous sodium hydroxide (to remove acidic impurities). Finally the naphthalene is distilled to give the pure product. It is interesting to note that naphthalene does not occur in low-temperature carbonisation tar.

The modern tendency for isolating naphthalene is to replace the "hotpressing process" by the continuous washing or distillation processes. Naphthalene is also now being made synthetically from petroleum. Petroleum fractions are passed over a heated catalyst, e.g., copper, at 680° at atmospheric pressure; naphthalene and higher aromatics are obtained.

Structure of naphthalene. Erlenmeyer (1866) proposed the symmetrical formula, (I), for naphthalene, and Graebe (1869) proved that it did consist

of two benzene rings fused together in the o-positions. He used several methods, but the line of approach was the same, e.g., he found that on oxidation, naphthalene gave phthalic acid. Thus naphthalene contains the group (II), i.e., a benzene ring with two side-chains in the o-positions. When nitrated, naphthalene gave nitronaphthalene which, on oxidation,

$$(I) \qquad (II) \qquad C$$

gave o-nitrophthalic acid. This indicates that the nitro-group is in the benzene ring, and that it is the side-chains which are oxidised. When nitronaphthalene was reduced and the corresponding aminonaphthalene oxidised, phthalic acid was obtained. As we have seen (p. 539), an amino-group attached to the nucleus renders the latter extremely sensitive to oxidation. Hence the inference is that the benzene ring in phthalic acid obtained by oxidation of aminonaphthalene is not the same ring as that originally containing the nitro-group in nitronaphthalene, i.e., contains two benzene naphthalene rings. The above facts fit the following scheme:

$$\begin{array}{c|ccccc} & & & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & \\ & & & \\$$

This structure for naphthalene has been confirmed by many syntheses, e.g.,

(i) When 4-phenylbut-r-ene is passed over red-hot calcium oxide, naphthalene is formed:

$$CH_2$$
 $CH_2$ 
 $CH_2$ 
 $CH_2$ 
 $CH_2$ 
 $CH_2$ 

(ii) When 4-phenylbut-3-enoic acid is heated, 1-naphthol is formed and this, on distillation with zinc dust, gives naphthalene:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH \\ CH_2 \\ CH_2 \\ CO_2H \end{array} \xrightarrow{-H_9O} \begin{array}{c} CH \\ CH_2 \\ CH_2 \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{isomerises}} \begin{array}{c} CH \\ CH_2 \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{odd}} \begin{array}{c} Zn \\ OH \end{array}$$

(iii) o-Xylylene bromide combines with disodioethanetetracarboxylic ester to form tetrahydronaphthalenetetracarboxylic ester and this, when

refluxed in acid solution, gives tetrahydronaphthalenedicarboxylic acid When the silver salt of this acid is heated, naphthalene is formed:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_2Br \\ CH_2Br \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} NaC(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 \\ NaC(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \\ CH_2 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} C(CO_2C_2H_5)_2 \\ CH_2 \end{array} \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \\ CH_2 \end{array} \begin{array}{c}$$

(iv) Haworth synthesis (1932). Benzene is treated with succinic anhydride in the presence of aluminium chloride, and the ketonic acid produced (Burcker, 1882) is reduced by the Clemmensen method. The ring is closed by heating with concentrated sulphuric acid and the product,  $\alpha$ -tetralone, reduced to tetrahydronaphthalene by the Clemmensen method. This compound is then dehydrogenated to naphthalene by distilling it with selenium:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CO \\ CH_2 \cdot CO \\ CH_2 \cdot CO \\ CH_2 \\ CH_2 \\ CO_2H \\ \end{array} \xrightarrow{CH_2} \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \\ CH_2$$

It should be noted that ring closure may also be effected by means of a Friedel-Crafts reaction on the acid chloride as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_2 & CH_2 \\ \hline CH_2 & CH_2 \\ \hline CO_2H & COCl & CH_2 \\ \hline \end{array} \xrightarrow{CCH_2} \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \\ \hline CH_2 \\ \hline CH_2 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

It should be noted here that the formation of cyclic ketones by *intra-molecular* acylation is a very important synthetic process. Sulphuric, phosphoric, hydrofluoric acid, and especially polyphosphoric acid (PPA), are commonly used as catalysts for ring-closure of acids, and aluminium or stannic chlorides for acid chlorides.

Positions of the double bonds in naphthalene. Many suggestions have been made regarding the fourth valency of each carbon atom in naphthalene, but only two formulæ need be considered, the symmetrical formula (I), and the unsymmetrical, (II) (and III). Physico-chemical evidence, e.g., heat of combustion, etc., points towards naphthalene being a resonance hybrid of mainly three resonating structures, (I), (II) and (III):

It should be noted that there are n + 1 principal resonating structures for a polynuclear hydrocarbon containing n benzene rings fused together in a linear manner.

The resonance energy of naphthalene is 75 k. cal./mole. This value is larger than that for benzene and is to be expected, since in the case of the latter only two resonating structures contribute to the resonance hybrid

Fries rule (1935). Fries compared the possible arrangements of double bonds in polynuclear compounds with benzoquinones. Structures (II) and (III) have arrangements corresponding to o-benzoquinone. Since quinones are far more reactive than a purely aromatic compound, Fries believed that the

stable form of a polynuclear compound did not contain this quinonoid arrangement. He therefore formulated the following rule: the most stable arrangement of a polynuclear compound is that form which has the maximum number of rings in the benzenoid condition, i.e., three double bonds in each individual ring. Thus, according to the Fries rule, naphthalene tends to behave as structure (I) (with two benzenoid rings) rather than as (II) or (III) (with one benzenoid ring).

Isomerism and nomenclature of naphthalene derivatives. Positions 1, 4, 5 and 8 are identical ( $\alpha$ - positions), as are positions 2, 3, 6 and 7 ( $\beta$ - positions). In the old literature, the positions I: 2- were known as o-; I: 3-, m-; I: 4-,



p-; I:5-, ana; I:6-, epi; I:7-, kata; I:8-, peri; 2:6-, amphi; and 2:7-, pros. Some of these prefixes are still used, but it is best to use numbers; the Greek letters  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ - are still frequently used to indicate the position of a single substituent.

Monosubstitution products. Disubstitution products.

 $C_{10}H_{7}X$  Two: 1- and 2-  $C_{10}H_{6}X_{2}$  10 isomers  $C_{10}H_{6}XY$  14 isomers

There are 14 possible isomers for C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>5</sub>X<sub>3</sub>, 22 for C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>4</sub>X<sub>4</sub>, 14 for C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>3</sub>X<sub>5</sub>, 10 for C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>2</sub>X<sub>6</sub>, 2 for C<sub>10</sub>HX<sub>7</sub>, and 1 for C<sub>10</sub>X<sub>8</sub>.

Properties of naphthalene. Naphthalene exists as lustrous plates, m.p. 80°, insoluble in water but very soluble in hot ethanol, cold ether, benzene, etc. It has a characteristic odour and is very volatile. It is used as an insecticide and in the preparation of phthalic anhydride and dyes.

Naphthalene resembles benzene in many of its reactions but is more reactive, forming addition and substitution products more readily than benzene and is more readily oxidised and reduced (especially in the I:4-

positions).

Addition compounds of naphthalene. A number of reduction products of naphthalene can be isolated, the nature of the product depending on the reducing agent used. When reduced with sodium and ethanol, naphthalene gives I: 4-dihydronaphthalene (I: 4-dialin), m.p. 25°:

$$+2[H] \rightarrow$$

1:4-dialin is unstable, readily isomerising to 1:2-dialin (m.p.  $-8^{\circ}$ ) when heated with ethanolic sodium ethoxide. I: 2-Dialin is also unstable, fairly readily eliminating hydrogen to form naphthalene.

When reduced with sodium and isopentanol, naphthalene gives 1:2:3:4tetrahydronaphthalene (tetralin), b.p. 206-208°:

$$+4[H] \rightarrow ()$$

Tetralin is used as a solvent for varnishes, lacquers, etc. When treated with bromine in the presence of light, tetralin forms the mono- and dibromoderivatives, substitution occurring in the alicyclic ring. When these bromoderivatives are heated, hydrogen bromide is eliminated, the monobromocompound forming dialin, and the dibromo-, naphthalene. In the absence of light and in the presence of iron as halogen carrier, tetralin undergoes substitution in the aromatic ring to form 5- and 6-bromo-1:2:3:4-tetrahydronaphthalenes.

α-Tetralone, b.p. 129.4°/12 mm., may be prepared by synthesis (iv), p. 710, or by heating tetralin with air for 50 hours at 70° and decomposing the

peroxide with dilute sodium hydroxide:

$$\begin{array}{c} H_2 \\ H_2 \\ H_2 \end{array} + O_2 \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} H \\ O \cdot OH \\ H_2 \\ H_2 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \begin{array}{c} O \\ H_2 \\ H_2 \end{array} (44-56\%)$$

When naphthalene is catalytically reduced using nickel, tetralin and then decahydronaphthalene (decalin) are obtained:

Decalin exists in two geometrical isomeric forms, cis- (b.p. 193°) and trans- (b.p. 185°). With nickel as catalyst, the main product is the transisomer; with platinum, cis- (see also p. 492). The commercial product is a mixture of the two forms, and is used as a solvent for varnishes, lacquers,

Dry chlorine adds on to solid naphthalene to give naphthalene di- and tetrachlorides,  $C_{10}H_8Cl_2$  and  $C_{10}H_8Cl_4$ . In both of these compounds the chlorine atoms are in the same ring (shown by the fact that on oxidation, both form phthalic acid). When naphthalene dichloride is heated at 40°, hydrogen chloride is eliminated and r-chloronaphthalene is produced. When naphthalene tetrachloride is treated with alkali, a mixture of dichloronaphthalenes is formed, the 1:3-isomer predominating.

Naphthalene reacts with sodium without loss of hydrogen to give a highly coloured addition compound. It appears that this compound contains only one sodium atom, and is formed by the transfer of one electron to the

naphthalene.

$$C_{10}H_8 + Na \longrightarrow C_{10}H_8 - Na^+$$

Sodium-naphthalene reacts with water to give 1:4-dihydronaphthalene, and reacts with carbon dioxide to form mainly the sodium salt of 1:4dihydronaphthalene-i: 4-dicarboxylic acid; half of the sodium naphthalene is converted into naphthalene.

$$_{2}C_{10}H_{8}^{-}Na^{+} \xrightarrow{CO_{2}Na} + CO_{2}Na$$

Oxidation of naphthalene. Naphthalene is oxidised by concentrated sulphuric acid and mercuric sulphate or by air in the presence of vanadium pentoxide, to phthalic anhydride (p. 692). It is oxidised by acid permanganate to phthalic acid, and by alkaline permanganate to phthalonic acid (p. 695). Chromic acid oxidises it to I: 4-naphthaquinone (p. 722). When treated with ozone, naphthalene forms the diozonide and this, on treatment with water, gives phthalaldehyde:

$$\begin{array}{c} O_3 \\ O_3 \end{array} \xrightarrow{H_2O} \begin{array}{c} CHO \\ CHO \end{array}$$

Substitution products of naphthalene. Orientation in the naphthalene nucleus is more complicated than in the benzene nucleus, due to the presence of two rings in the former. The first group always enters the 1-position in naphthalene except in two cases, when the 2-derivative is the main product: (i) sulphonation at high temperature, and (ii) in the Friedel-Crafts reaction. Introduction of a second substituent can give rise to homonuclear (isomuclear) substitution (the second substituent entering the same ring as the first), or to heteronuclear substitution (the second substituent entering the other ring). The following empirical generalisations are useful for predicting the position taken up by the second substituent:

(a) When Cl, Br, OH, CH<sub>3</sub>, NH·R or NH·CO·CH<sub>2</sub> is in the 1-position, homonuclear substitution takes place mainly in position 4, and to a lesser extent in 2.

(b) When OH, CH<sub>3</sub>, NH·R or NH·CO·CH<sub>3</sub> is in the 2-position, homonuclear substitution usually takes place in the 1-position (the introduction of the SO<sub>3</sub>H group is an exception; this group enters position 6).

It is worth noting that homonuclear substitution usually occurs when the

group already present is o-p-orienting.

(c) When NO<sub>2</sub> or SO<sub>3</sub>H is in the 1- or 2-position, heteronuclear substitution occurs in position 5 or 8; if halogen or NH<sub>2</sub> is in the 2-position, hetero-

nuclear substitution also occurs in position 5 or 8.

It is relatively easy to determine the orientation of monosubstitution products of naphthalene by oxidation to the phthalic acid derivative or by synthesis. It is, however, not always easy for disubstituted derivatives. It can be readily ascertained by means of oxidation (to phthalic acid derivatives) whether both substituents are in the same ring or not. I:8-Compounds, if the substituents are of the right type, e.g., carboxyl groups, readily form cyclic derivatives, and hence these positions (I:8-) may be determined. In some cases it is possible to synthesise disubstituted derivatives by unambiguous syntheses; e.g., I:5-dichloronaphthalene may

be synthesised from o-chlorobenzaldehyde and succinic anhydride as follows (cf., p. 281):

Similarly, p-chlorobenzaldehyde gives 1:7-dichloronaphthalene. On the other hand, m-chlorobenzaldehyde gives rise to an ambiguous synthesis, since two chloronaphthols are obtained and there is no means (from the synthesis) of ascertaining which is which:

Naphthalene is an alternant hydrocarbon (p. 528), and the  $\pi$ -electron densities are unity at all positions. Hence, at first sight, it might be expected that positions 1 and 2 would be attacked equally well by the usual electrophilic

reagents. There is, however, another factor which must be considered when the charge densities are equal at various positions. This is the *self-polarisability* of the position, and the larger the magnitude of this self-polarisability, the more reactive will that point be to electrophilic (or nucleophilic) reagents. In benzene all the carbon atoms carry a charge of unity, and the self-polarisabilities are also equal (as shown by calculation). Hence no particular carbon atom in benzene is preferentially attacked. The case of naphthalene, however, is different. The self-polarisability is greater at position 1 than 2 (figures in parentheses in I), and hence the former is more readily attacked than the latter; this is the case in practice.

Bond order (or double-bond character) may also be used to study the reactivities of the various positions of the naphthalene molecule (cf. p. 529). (II) shows the bond orders obtained by calculation. (III) shows the double-bond character of the various bonds, and is obtained by taking the average of the three resonating structures of naphthalene given on p. 710. This average has been obtained on the assumption that each resonating structure contributes equally to the

resonance hybrid. The problem that always arises in polynuclear hydrocarbons is the weighting of the various possible valency structures. The usual practice is to omit Dewar structures (i.e., structures with formal bonds) and also polar structures, and to take the Kekulé structures as being of equal weights. On this basis, it can be seen that the  $\pi$ -electron density is greater in the 1:2-than in the 2:3-bond. It might therefore be expected that the former would be more reactive than the latter, since, although neither is a double bond, both can function as double bonds, the 1:2-bond being "nearer" to a double bond than the 2:3-. Badger (1948–50) has shown that double-bond reagents add to the bond having the highest order (cf. the ozonide of naphthalene, p. 713). It might also be noted that these bonds with the highest orders are those which were supposed to be "fixed" double bonds, i.e., in naphthalene the 1:2-bond was a "fixed" double bond, in accordance with the Fries rule (p. 711).

"fixed" double bond, in accordance with the Fries rule (p. 711). Still another way of studying organic reactions has been to calculate the energy of activation for the various positions in a molecule. When the attacking reagent forms the transition state, two of the delocalised  $\pi$ -electrons in the naphthalene molecule must be polarised to form a  $\sigma$ -bond with the attacking electrophilic reagent (p. 516). The lower the bond localisation energy, the more readily will the transition state be formed. Furthermore, the higher the bond order, i.e., the greater the  $\pi$ -electron density in that bond, the smaller will be the bond localisation energy. This accounts for substitution of 2-naphthol in

position I and not in 3. In (IV), the intermediate is formed by localisation of the I:2-bond; in (V), by that of the 2:3-bond. Since the former has the higher bond order, this one will be more readily localised, i.e., the energy of activation of (IV) is lower than that of (V), and so the reaction proceeds via (IV) and not via (V). In the substitution of naphthalene itself, two intermediates are possible, (VI) and (VII); the former is the more stable, and so I-substitution occurs rather than 2- (cf. self-polarisabilities, above).

The Friedel-Crafts reaction with naphthalene. Naphthalene is attacked by aluminium chloride when vigorous conditions are used (dinaphthyls and compounds with one of the naphthalene rings opened are formed). Hence to carry out the Friedel-Crafts reaction successfully, mild conditions (low temperatures) must be used, and even then the maximum yield is about 60 per cent. With methyl iodide, I- and 2-methylnaphthalenes are formed; with ethyl bromide, only 2-ethylnaphthalene; and with n-propyl bromide, 2-isopropylnaphthalene. With alcohols and aluminium chloride, 2:6-dialkylnaphthalenes are obtained but with alcohols and boron trifluoride, I:4-dialkylnaphthalenes (Price, 1943). Introduction of an acyl group in the presence of aluminium chloride gives a mixture of I- and 2-ketones, the nature of the solvent affecting the percentage of each; e.g., with acetyl chloride in carbon disulphide as solvent, I- and 2-naphthyl methyl ketone are formed in a ratio of 3:1; in nitrobenzene, I:9:

Chloromethylation of naphthalene using a mixture of paraformaldehyde, hydrochloric acid, glacial acetic acid and phosphoric acid gives mainly the I-derivative and a small amount of the I: 5-bischloromethyl-derivative:

When naphthalene is chloromethylated with boiling aqueous formaldehyde and concentrated hydrochloric acid, a mixture of compounds is obtained from which I: 4- and I: 5-bischloromethylnaphthalenes have been isolated

(Badger et al., 1947).

Halogen derivatives. Naphthalene is very easily halogenated, e.g., when brominated in boiling carbon tetrachloride solution, naphthalene forms I-bromonaphthalene (yield 72–75 per cent.). Further bromination gives mainly the I:4-dibromo-derivative, and some I:2-. Sulphuryl chloride (I equivalent) in the presence of aluminium chloride at 25° chlorinates naphthalene to give the I-chloro-derivative; with 2 equivalents of sulphuryl chloride (at 100–140°), I:4-dichloronaphthalene is formed.

2-Halogeno-naphthalenes are conveniently prepared from 2-naphthyl-

amine by diazotisation, etc. e.g.,

Chlorination of naphthalene at 250°, in the presence of iodine, gives I- and 2-monochloronaphthalenes in the proportion of 9:1; above 340°, the proportion is I: I (Wibaut *et al.*, 1950). The halogen atom in naphthalene behaves similarly as in the benzene ring, but is more reactive.

Nitronaphthalenes. Nitric acid attacks naphthalene at room temperature to form I-nitronaphthalene. This is a yellow solid, m.p. 60°, which behaves like nitrobenzene, but differs in that it forms I-chloronaphthalene when treated with phosphorus pentachloride (nitrobenzene does not react).

Nitration of naphthalene at high temperature gives a mixture of 1:5and 1:8-dinitronaphthalenes. Other dinitro-derivatives are prepared by

special means.

2-Nitronaphthalene (m.p. 79°) may be prepared by heating 2-naphthalene-

diazonium borofluoride with sodium nitrite and copper powder.

Naphthalenesulphonic acids. When naphthalene is treated with concentrated sulphuric acid at 40°, the main product is the 1-derivative (m.p. 91°); at 160°, the main product is the 2-derivative (m.p. 102°):

The two isomeric acids may be separated by means of their calcium or lead salts, those of the 1-acid being more soluble than the 2-. The 2-acid may be obtained pure by treating the mixture of 1- and 2-naphthalenesulphonic acids with superheated steam; the 1-acid is decomposed into naphthalene, the 2-acid being practically unaffected.

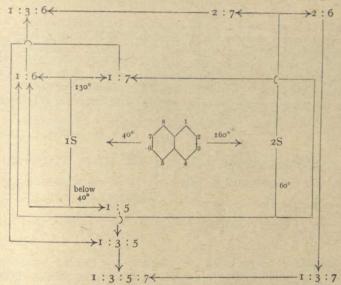
r- and 2-Naphthalenesulphonic acids behave similarly to benzenesulphonic acid, but the sulphonic acid group in the former is more easily replaced;

e.g., when fused with phosphorus pentachloride, both acids give the corresponding chloronaphthalenes. Both acids are oxidised to phthalic acid by acid permanganate. When heated with concentrated sulphuric acid, the I-acid is converted into the 2-isomer. Thus the former is the kinetically controlled product and the latter the thermodynamically controlled one.

β-Naphthalenesulphonic acid is the starting point of practically all β-

naphthalene derivatives.

Sulphonation of the I-sulphonic acid with concentrated sulphuric acid below 40° gives I:5- (70 per cent.) and I:6-disulphonic acids (25 per cent.); at I30°, the main products are I:6- and I:7-disulphonic acids. Sulphonation of the 2-acid at 60° gives I:6- (80 per cent.) and I:7-disulphonic acid (20 per cent.); above I40°, the main product is 2:7-disulphonic acid, and a small amount of 2:6-. Armstrong and Wynne's rule (1890) for the orientation of naphthalene-



polysulphonic acids is useful: two sulpho-groups never occupy positions o, p or peri to each other. This rule limits the number of isomers that can be formed by direct sulphonation of naphthalene to two mono-, six di-, three tri-, and one tetra-sulphonic acid. The table above summarises the products obtained by the sulphonation of naphthalene with concentrated sulphuric acid (note the various migrations).

Many of these sulphonic acids are very important dye-intermediates.

Naphthylamines. 1-Naphthylamine (α-naphthylamine) may be prepared by reducing 1-nitronaphthalene with iron and hydrochloric acid (yield 80-85 per cent.). This method is used industrially. 1-Naphthylamine may also be prepared by the Bucherer reaction (see below) or by heating 1-naphthol with the double compound of zinc chloride and ammonia (this amination occurs more easily than with phenol):

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
OH & NH_2 \\
+ NH_3 & \frac{ZnCl_2}{250^\circ} & + H_2O
\end{array}$$

I-Naphthylamine has recently been prepared by heating I-naphthoic acid with hydroxylamine and polyphosphoric acid (Snyder et al., 1953).

I-Naphthylamine is a colourless solid, m.p. 50°, almost insoluble in water but very soluble in ethanol and ether. It has an unpleasant odour, and turns red on exposure to air. It reduces ammoniacal silver nitrate, and solutions of its salts give a blue precipitate with ferric chloride. Oxidation with boiling chromic acid gives β-naphthaquinone; with permanganate, phthalic acid is obtained. I-Naphthylamine is reduced by sodium and isopentanol to ar-tetrahydro-I-naphthylamine; the prefix ar- is the abbreviation of aromatic and indicates that the four hydrogen atoms are not in the ring containing the amino-group:

$$\stackrel{\mathrm{NH_2}}{ } \stackrel{\mathrm{[H]}}{\longrightarrow} \stackrel{\mathrm{NH_2}}{ }$$

The systematic name is 5:6:7:8-tetrahydro-1-naphthylamine.
1-Naphthylamine couples with diazonium salts in the 4-position.

2-Naphthylamine (β-naphthylamine) is prepared industrially from 2-naphthol by the Bucherer reaction (1904). This is the reversible conversion of a naphthol into a naphthylamine in the presence of an aqueous sulphite or hydrogen sulphite. The mechanism of the formation of 2-naphthylamine from 2-naphthol, sodium hydrogen sulphite and ammonia is believed to be as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \rightleftharpoons \\ \hline \\ \text{NH}_{2} \\ \hline \\ \text{NH}_{2} \\ \hline \\ \text{SO}_{3} \text{Na} \\ \hline \\ \text{NH}_{2} \\ \hline \\ \text{SO}_{3} \text{Na} \\ \hline \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{NH}_{2} \\ \text{NH}_{3} \\ \hline \\ \text{SO}_{3} \text{Na} \\ \hline \end{array}$$

2-Naphthylamine is prepared commercially by heating 2-naphthol with aqueous ammonium hydrogen sulphite at 150° under pressure (yield: 94-96 per cent.). 2-Naphthylamine has also been prepared from 2-naphthoic

acid (cf. the I-isomer above).

2-Naphthylamine is a colourless solid, m.p. 112°, insoluble in water but soluble in ethanol and ether. It is odourless, reduces ammoniacal silver nitrate, but gives no coloration with ferric chloride. It is oxidised by permanganate to phthalic acid and reduced by sodium and isopentanol to ac-tetrahydro-2-naphthylamine (1:2:3:4-tetrahydro-2-naphthylamine); the prefix ac- is the abbreviation of alicyclic and indicates that the four hydrogen atoms are in the ring containing the amino-group (cf. above):

2-Naphthylamine couples with diazonium salts only in the 1-position; if

this is occupied, no coupling occurs.

Naphthylaminesulphonic acids. These are very important industrially for making dyes. When heated with excess concentrated sulphuric acid at 130°, 1-naphthylamine forms 1-naphthylamine-4-sulphonic acid (naphthionic

acid). This is used in the preparation of Congo red (p. 783), and is manufactured by the baking process of naphthylamine hydrogen sulphate (cf. sulphanilic acid). Prolonged action of sulphuric acid at 130° converts 1-naphthylamine into 1-naphthylamine-5-sulphonic acid (Laurent's acid). If the heating is prolonged still further, Laurent's acid rearranges to 1-naphthylamine-6-sulphonic acid (Cleve's acid).

I-Naphthylamine-8-sulphonic acid (Schollkopf's acid) may be prepared by reduction of the corresponding nitro-sulphonic acid. When heated with phosphoryl chloride, I-naphthylamine-8-sulphonic acid forms naphthsultam:

$$HO_3S$$
  $NH_2$   $POCl_3$   $POCl_3$ 

Sultams may be regarded as inner sulphonamides.

When heated with concentrated sulphuric acid, 2-naphthylamine gives four different sulphonic acids according to the temperature: 2-naphthylamine-5-sulphonic acid (Dahl's acid), 2-naphthylamine-6-sulphonic acid (Bronner's acid), 2-naphthylamine-7-sulphonic acid (F-acid), and 2-naphthylamine-8-sulphonic acid (Badische's acid).

Naphthols. Both r- and 2-naphthols are present in coal-tar. They are prepared industrially by fusing the corresponding naphthalenesulphonic acid with sodium hydroxide:

$$C_{10}H_7 \cdot SO_3Na + NaOH \xrightarrow{300^\circ} C_{10}H_7OH + Na_2SO_3$$
 (70-80%)

Pure 1-naphthol may be prepared by heating 1-naphthylamine with dilute sulphuric acid at 290° under pressure:

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
 & \text{NH}_2 & \text{OH} \\
\hline
 & H_9O \\
\hline
 & (H_9SO_4) & \end{array} + \text{NH}_3 \quad (95\%)$$

A most interesting preparation of 1-naphthol is by the reaction between o-bromofluorobenzene and lithium amalgam in the presence of furan (Wittig et al., 1955). The reaction proceeds via a benzyne intermediate (p. 547):

**1-Naphthol** (α-naphthol) is a colourless crystalline solid, m.p. 94°, with a faint phenolic odour. It is sparingly soluble in water, but is readily soluble in alkalis to form naphthoxides, e.g.,  $C_{10}H_7ONa$ . With ferric chloride it gives a violet-blue precipitate of α-dinaphthol (4:4'-bis-1-naphthol):

I-Naphthol reduces ammoniacal silver nitrate, is oxidised by alkaline permanganate to phthalonic acid and by chromic acid to α-naphthaquinone. It is reduced by sodium and isopentanol or ar-tetrahydro-I-naphthol

(ar-I-tetralol).

Direct sulphonation of I-naphthol under mild conditions gives a mixture of I-naphthol-2-sulphonic acid (Schaeffer's acid) and I-naphthol-4-sulphonic acid (Nevile-Winther's acid). More vigorous conditions result in the formation of I-naphthol-2:4-disulphonic acid and finally I-naphthol-2:4:7-trisulphonic acid.

I-Naphthol-8-sulphonic acid forms an inner ester when heated:

This is known as *naphthsultone*.

Treatment of 1-naphthol with nitrous acid gives mainly the 2-oxime of  $\beta$ -naphthaquinone, (I), and a small amount of the 4-oxime of  $\alpha$ -naphthaquinone, (II) (cf. nitrosophenol):

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \\
\text{HNO}_2
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{II} \\
\text{NOH}
\end{array}$$

I-Naphthol couples with diazonium salts in the 4-position.

2-Naphthol ( $\beta$ -naphthol) is a colourless crystalline solid, m.p. 123°, with a faint phenolic odour. It resembles 1-naphthol in most of its properties, but is more reactive. With ferric chloride it gives a green precipitate of  $\beta$ -dinaphthol (1:1'-bis-2-naphthol). It reduces ammoniacal silver nitrate, and is oxidised by alkaline permangante to phthalonic acid. It is reduced

by sodium and *iso*pentanol to mainly *ac*-tetrahydro-2-naphthol (*ac*-2-tetralol). With nitrous acid it forms the r-oxime of  $\beta$ -naphthaquinone (nitroso- $\beta$ -naphthol):

This is used for the detection and estimation of cobalt. 2-Naphthol couples with diazonium salts only in the adjacent 1-position; if this is occupied, no coupling takes place. Only the oxime form exists in the solid state, but

in solution only the other tautomer (nitrosonaphthol) is present (Burawov

et al., 1955).

Some 2-naphthol ethers (methyl and ethyl), known as nerolins, are used in perfumery. When 2-naphthol is sulphonated, the original product is 2-naphthol-I-sulphonic acid, but this is unstable and rearranges to 2naphthol-8-sulphonic acid (croceic acid) at low temperature. Croceic acid, at 100°, rearranges to 2-naphthol-6-sulphonic acid (Schaeffer's β-acid). When sulphonated with larger amounts of concentrated sulphuric acid, 2-naphthol gives disulphonic acids. At low temperature the main product is 2-naphthol-6:8-disulphonic acid (G-acid); at higher temperatures, mainly 2-naphthol-3: 6-disulphonic acid (R-acid). G- and R-acids are used in the manufacture of dyes.

Woodward (1940) prepared 10-methyldecal-2-one from av-2-tetralol by means of the Reimer-Tiemann reaction as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} H_2 \\ H_2 \\ H_2 \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} H_2 \\ \\ H_2 \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} H_2 \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} H_2 \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} H_2 \\$$

This synthesis is based on the fact that the intermediate product in the Reimer-Tiemann reaction can be isolated when the p-position to the hydroxyl group is

occupied by, e.g., a methyl group (p. 656).

Naphthalenecarboxylic acids. 1-Naphthoic acid (naphthalene-1-carboxylic acid), m.p. 161°, may be prepared by the hydrolysis of the corresponding cyanide, or by the oxidation of r-acetylnaphthalene with sodium hypochlorite. It may also be prepared from 1-naphthylmagnesium bromide as follows:

$$\text{1-C}_{10}\text{H}_{7}\text{*MgBr} + (\text{C}_{2}\text{H}_{5}\text{O})_{2}\text{CO} \xrightarrow{\text{ether}} \text{1-C}_{10}\text{H}_{7}\text{*CO}_{2}\text{C}_{2}\text{H}_{5} + \text{C}_{2}\text{H}_{5}\text{OMgBr}$$
(68-73%)

2-Naphthoic acid, m.p. 184°, may be prepared by methods similar to those used

for the 1-isomer.

1- and 2-Naphthoic acids are insoluble in cold or hot water, and both readily eliminate carbon dioxide to form naphthalene when heated with soda-lime. Both undergo most of the usual reactions of a carboxylic acid, but 1-naphthoic acid shows the proximity effect due to the carbon atom in position 8; e.g., 2chloro-r-naphthoic acid is not esterified by the Fischer-Speier method, whereas the isomeric 1-chloro-2-naphthoic acid gives the ester under the same conditions.

Naphthalic acid (naphthalene-1: 8-dicarboxylic acid) may be prepared by oxidising acenaphthene with acid dichromate:

It is a solid, and when heated at 180° forms naphthalic anhydride:

This is in keeping with the fact that all peri-(1:8)-substituents interact if possible (cf. sultams and sultones).

Naphthaquinones. Theoretically, six naphthaquinones are possible: 1:2-, 1:4-, 1:5-, 1:7-, 2:3- and 2:6-. Only three are known, the 1:2-, 1:4- and 2:6-, but it appears that derivatives of 2:3-naphthaquinone have been prepared.

1: 4-Naphthaquinone (β-naphthaquinone, 1: 4-dihydronaphthalene-1: 4dione) may be prepared by the oxidation of I: 4-diamino-, dihydroxy- or

aminohydroxynaphthalene, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{NH}_{2} \cdot \text{HCl} \\
\text{OH} \\
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{K}_{2}\text{Cr}_{2}\text{O}_{7} \\
\text{H}_{2}\text{SO}_{4}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{O} \\
\text{(78-81\%)}$$

It may also be prepared by the direct oxidation of naphthalene with dichromate and sulphuric acid, or chromium trioxide in glacial acetic acid

(yield 40 per cent.).

1:4-Naphthaquinone is a volatile yellow solid, m.p. 125°, with a pronounced odour. It resembles p-benzoquinone in many ways chemically, but it is not reduced by sulphurous acid. It is reduced by metal and acid to I: 4-dihydroxynaphthalene (naphthalene-I: 4-diol) and oxidised by nitric acid to phthalic acid. It forms a monoxime; this is tautomeric, and in the solid state it exists as the oxime, and in solution this form predominates in equilibrium with the nitrosophenol form (Havinga et al., 1955; Hadži, 1956). A most remarkable reaction is its conversion into indane-1:3dione (I: 3-diketohydrindene) on treatment with nitrous acid:

Vitamin K (the antihaemorrhagic factor) is a derivative of 1:4-naphtha-

quinone.

1: 2-Naphthaquinone (β-naphthaquinone, 1: 2-dihydronaphthalene-1: 2dione) may be prepared by oxidising I-amino-2-naphthol with dichromate and sulphuric acid (yield 75 per cent.). It is a non-volatile, odourless, red solid which decomposes at 115-120°. A most remarkable reaction is the fission of the quinone ring with simultaneous hydroxylation when I:2naphthaquinone is treated with chlorine-water (or with hypochlorous acid); phenylglyceric-o-carboxylic lactone is the final product:

2:6-Naphthaquinone (amphi-naphthaquinone, 2:6-dihydronaphthalene-2:6-dione) may be prepared by oxidising 2:6-dihydroxynaphthalene in benzene solution with "active" lead dioxide (this may be prepared by decomposing lead tetra-acetate with water; Kuhn et al., 1950):

It is an orange, non-volatile, odourless solid, m.p. 135°.

Acenaphthene,  $C_{12}H_{10}$ , occurs in coal-tar; it may be prepared by passing 1-ethylnaphthalene through a red-hot tube:

$$C_2H_5$$
  $\longrightarrow$   $H_2C$ — $CH_2$   $+$   $H_2$ 

It may also be prepared by a Friedel-Crafts reaction using naphthalene and oxalyl chloride and reducing the product, 1: 2-acenaphthaquinone, by the Wolff-Kishner method (p. 153):

Acenaphthene is a colourless solid, m.p. 96°. On oxidation with dichromate and sulphuric acid, acenaphthene is converted into 1:2-acenaphthaquinone which, by further action of the oxidising agent, gives naphthalic acid. This shows that the ethylene group occupies the 1:8- positions of naphthalene. Substitution in acenaphthene occurs most readily in the 5- and 6-positions, e.g., bromination, nitration and sulphonation give the corresponding 5-derivatives. When oxidised with lead peroxide or passed through a red-

hot tube, acenaphthene forms acenaphthylene:

$$H_2C$$
— $CH_2$   $CH=CH$   $+ H_2O$ 

Indene (benzocyclopentadiene), CoHs, occurs in the coal-tar fraction boiling at 175-185°. It may be obtained from this fraction by precipitating with picric acid and purifying the picrate by recrystallisation. When the picrate is steamdistilled, it is decomposed, the indene passing over in the distillate. Alternatively, indene may be obtained from the coal-tar fraction by heating the latter with sodium, separating the sodioindene formed (solid) and steamdistilling it, whereupon indene distils over.

Indene is a colourless liquid, b.p. 182°, which readily polymerises (cf. cyclo-

pentadiene). It is reduced by sodium and ethanol to 2: 3-dihydroindene (indane

or hydrindene):

$$\begin{array}{c} H_2 \\ \frac{6}{5} \\ 4 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\begin{array}{c} H_2 \\ \frac{2}{3} \end{array} } + 2[H] \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} H_2 \\ H_2 \\ H_2 \end{array}$$

Oxidation of indene with acid dichromate gives homophthalic acid.

Indane, b.p. 177°, occurs in coal-tar. Indene combines with halogen to form 2:3-dihalogeno-indane. The methylene group in indene is very reactive, e.g., indene forms a sodio-derivative:

$$+ Na \rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} \bar{1} \\ \bar{1} \end{bmatrix} Na^{+} + \frac{1}{2}H_{2}$$

It liberates paraffins from alkyl-magnesium halides, condenses with ethyl oxalate in the presence of sodium ethoxide to form indene-oxalic ester, and with aldehydes or ketones in the presence of alkali to form benzofulvenes:

$$\begin{array}{c} H_2 \\ \hline \\ + \text{R·CO·R'} & \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \end{array} + H_2\text{O}$$

These benzofulvenes are highly coloured; benzofulvene has been prepared (R = R' = H). All the foregoing reactions are characteristic of the methylene group in cyclopentadiene.

Indan-1-one (α-hydrindone), m.p. 42°, may be synthesised by an internal Friedel-Crafts reaction on β-phenylpropionyl chloride:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_2 \\ CH_2 \\ COC1 \end{array} \xrightarrow{AlCl_3} \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \\ CH_2 \end{array} + HC1$$

It may also be prepared by treating indene with hydrochloric acid and oxidising the product, 1-chloroindane, with chromium trioxide in acetic acid:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH & CHCl \\ \hline CH_2 & CH_2 & CH_2 \\ \hline CH_2 & CH_2 & CH_2 \\ \hline CH_2 & CH_2 & CH_2 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

725

Indan-2-one ( $\beta$ -hydrindone), m.p. 61°, may be prepared by heating xylylene-odicarboxylic acid:

$$CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow CH_2 \cdot CO_2 + H_2O$$

Indane-1:3-dione may be prepared by the action of nitrous acid on 1:4-

naphthaquinone (p. 722).

Fluorene (diphenylenemethane),  $C_{13}H_{10}$ , occurs in coal-tar (fraction 270–300°) and can be separated from the other compounds by means of its sodio-derivative (cf. indene). It may be prepared:

(i) By passing diphenylmethane through a red-hot tube:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_2 \\ \hline \end{array} \rightarrow \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \\ \hline \\ 7 \\ \hline \\ 6 \ 5 \end{array} + H_2$$

(ii) By passing o-methyldiphenyl over palladium at 450°:

$$CH_3$$
  $Pd$   $CH_2$   $+ H_2$ 

(iii) By heating the calcium salt of diphenic acid, reducing the product, fluorenone, with zinc dust and ethanolic sodium hydroxide, and then reducing the fluorenol so produced by the Clemmensen method:

$$CO_{2}$$
  $CO_{2}$   $C$ 

(iv) Fluorene may be prepared by means of the Pschorr synthesis (p. 735), starting with o-aminodiphenylmethane.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_2 & CH_2 \\ \hline NH_2 & \frac{NaNO_2}{H_2SO_4} & N_2HSO_4 & Cu \\ \end{array}$$

Alternatively, o-aminobenzophenone may be used as the starting material and the product, fluorenone, reduced to fluorene as in (iii).

Methods (iii) and (iv) are useful for preparing substituted fluorenes with the

substituents in known positions.

Fluorene is a colourless solid, m.p. 116°, with a blue fluorescence. The methylene group is active (cf. cyclopentadiene), e.g., fluorene forms a sodioderivative, liberates hydrocarbons from Grignard reagents, and condenses with aldehydes and ketones in the presence of alkali. These condensation products are colourless or slightly coloured (cf. indene). When fluorene is halogenated, nitrated or sulphonated, the first substituent enters the 2-position, and the second the 7-position. Fluorene is oxidised by chromium trioxide in glacial acetic acid to fluorenone (m.p. 84°). This is oxidised by permanganate to phthalic acid. When fused with potassium hydroxide, fluorenone is converted into diphenyl-2-carboxylic acid:

This acid is also formed when fluorenone is heated with potassium hydroxide in diphenyl ether at 180° (Huntress and Seikel, 1939). The opening of the fivemembered ring in this manner offers a means of determining the orientation of substituted fluorenones (and fluorenes).

#### ANTHRACENE

Anthracene, C14H10, is obtained from the anthracene oil fraction of coaltar by cooling the latter and pressing the solid (which crystallises out) free from liquid. The crude anthracene contains phenanthrene and carbazole. The anthracene cake is powdered and washed with "solvent naphtha" which dissolves the phenanthrene, and the remaining solid is then washed with pyridine which dissolves the carbazole. The anthracene is purified by sublimation. Alternatively, after removal of phenanthrene, the remaining solid is fused with potassium hydroxide, whereby potassio-carbazole is formed; unreacted anthracene is sublimed out of the melt and recovered.

Until recently, there has been very little use for carbazole, and thus the recovery of anthracene was expensive. Since anthracene is mainly used as the starting point of anthraquinone, a cheaper method of isolating anthracene from coal-tar is to remove the phenanthrene first, and then catalytically oxidise the remaining mixture of anthracene and carbazole by air and vanadium pentoxide at 300-500°. Under these conditions, anthracene is oxidised to anthraguinone and carbazole is completely oxidised (to carbon dioxide, etc.).

Structure of anthracene, Bromination of anthracene gives bromo-anthracene, C<sub>14</sub>H<sub>9</sub>Br, which, on fusion with potassium hydroxide, forms hydroxyanthracene, C14H9.OH, and this, on vigorous oxidation, gives phthalic acid and a small amount of o-benzoylbenzoic acid (Anschutz and Japp, 1878):

$$C_{14}H_9OH \xrightarrow{[O]} CO_2H + CO_2H$$

This suggests that anthracene contains at least two benzene rings, and that its skeleton is as shown. The presence of two benzene rings is confirmed

by the fact that on fusion with potassium hydroxide at 250°, anthraquinone (which may be obtained from anthracene by direct oxidation) gives two molecules of benzoic acid. The above skeleton contains 14 carbon atoms, and to fit in 10 hydrogen atoms and retain the quadrivalency

of carbon, the middle ring must be closed, i.e., a structure of anthracene which is consistent with the foregoing reactions is three benzene rings fused together in a linear manner. This structure has been amply

confirmed by many syntheses.

Synthesis of anthracene. (i) By a Friedel-Crafts reaction using benzyl chloride; 9: 10-dihydroanthracene, which is first formed, readily eliminates two hydrogen atoms under the conditions of the experiment to form anthracene:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_2CI \\ + \\ CICH_2 \end{array} \xrightarrow{AICI_s} \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \\ CH_2 \end{array} \end{array} \xrightarrow{-2H}$$

Anthracene is also formed by the Friedel-Crafts condensation between benzene and methylene bromide, or between benzene and acetylene tetrabromide:

(ii) By heating o-bromobenzyl bromide with sodium; the product, dihydroanthracene, is converted into anthracene by mild oxidation:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_{2}Br & Br \\ + 4Na + \\ Br & BrCH_{2} \end{array} \longrightarrow \\ CH_{2} & + 4NaBr & \xrightarrow{[0]} \end{array}$$

Some phenanthrene is formed at the same time:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_{2}Br \\ + 4Na + Br \\ Br \\ CH_{2}-CH_{2} \end{array} \longrightarrow \\ + 4NaBr \\ \begin{array}{c} OI \\ \end{array} \longrightarrow \\ \end{array}$$

(iii) When phthalic anhydride in benzene solution is treated with aluminium chloride, o-benzoylbenzoic acid is formed. This, on heating with concentrated sulphuric acid at 100°, forms anthraquinone, which, on distillation with zinc dust, gives anthracene:

$$\begin{array}{c} CO \\ CO \\ CO \\ \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CO \\ CO_2H \\ \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} H_{9}SO_{4} \\ \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CO \\ CO \\ \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CO \\ \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CO \\ CO \\ \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c}$$

According to Koo (1953), polyphosphoric acid is the best reagent for cyclising o-benzoylbenzoic acid.

Alternatively, anthraquinone may be prepared by the action of aluminium chloride on phthaloyl chloride in benzene solution:

$$\bigcirc_{COCI}^{COCI} + \bigcirc \longrightarrow \bigcirc_{CO}^{CO} \longrightarrow \bigcirc_{CO}^{CO}$$

(iv) Anthracene may be prepared by means of the Elbs reaction (see also p. 665):

$$CO$$
 $CH_3$ 
 $\longrightarrow$ 
 $-H_4O$ 

This reaction is usually carried out by heating the ketone under reflux or at 400–450° until water is no longer evolved. The yield of hydrocarbon is usually low, but often the Elbs reaction is the only means of preparing certain polynuclear hydrocarbons.

(v) Anthracene may be synthesised in the following ways starting with naphthalene (thereby showing the presence of the naphthalene nucleus in

anthracene):

(a) I: 4-Naphthaquinone undergoes the Diels-Alder reaction with butadiene to form I: 4-dihydroanthraquinone. This, on oxidation with chromium trioxide in glacial acetic acid, gives anthraquinone:

(b) In this method, naphthalene is converted into I:4-dihydronaphthalene-2-carboxylic ester, and this is then made to undergo the Michael condensation (p. 279) with acetoacetic ester, etc.:

Positions of the double bonds in anthracene. Many structures have been proposed for anthracene.

Structure (I) was accepted by many because of the synthesis of anthracene from benzene and acetylene tetrabromide (see method (i)). This structure,

however, has been considered unlikely for various reasons, e.g.,

(i) The synthesis of anthracene from naphthalene (and other syntheses) indicates the absence of a para-bond.

(ii) Anthracene adds on maleic anhydride to form endoanthracenemaleic anhydride, the addition occurring in the middle ring:

$$+ \bigcup_{\text{CH-CO}} + \bigcup_{\text{HCco}} + \bigcup_{\text{HCco}}$$

Since the middle ring behaves as a diene, this indicates it contains conjugated

double bonds (cf. Diels-Alder reaction).

(iii) X-Ray analysis studies have shown that all the carbon atoms of anthracene lie in a plane, and that the distance between the para-carbon atoms in each ring is the same as in benzene. According to calculations of Oakley et al. (1949), however, (I) is a contributing structure to the resonance hybrid, i.e., one of the resonating structures has a 9: 10 formal bond, (Ia) (cf. the Dewar structures of benzene, p. 507).

All the evidence points towards anthracene being a resonance hydrid of the four resonating structures (II-V):

$$(III) \longleftrightarrow (III) \longleftrightarrow (V)$$

The resonance energy of anthracene is 105 k. cal./mole.

Anthracene is an alternant hydrocarbon (p. 528), and the  $\pi$ -electron densities are unity at all positions. The self-polarisabilities are in the following order: 9 > 1 > 2 (I). Consequently position 9 will be the most reactive, then 1 and

finally 2. (II) shows bond orders (obtained by calculation), and (III) shows double-bond characters (obtained by taking the average of the four resonating structures of anthracene; cf. naphthalene, p. 714).

Isomerism of anthracene derivatives. There are three possible monosubstitution products: 1- or  $\alpha$ -, 2- or  $\beta$ - and 9- or  $\gamma$ - (or meso-). There are

15 possible disubstitution products if both substituents are identical; if the substituents are not identical, the number of isomers is larger.

 $\beta \begin{vmatrix} \alpha & \gamma & \alpha \\ \beta \begin{vmatrix} \gamma & \gamma & \alpha \\ \beta \begin{vmatrix} \gamma & \gamma & \alpha \\ \beta & \gamma & \alpha \end{vmatrix} \\ \alpha & \gamma & \alpha \end{vmatrix} \beta$ 

Orientation of anthracene derivatives. It is usually difficult to determine the orientation of anthracene derivatives except in the case where the substituents occupy the 9- and 10-positions. When a mono- or di-

substituted anthracene is oxidised with dichromate and sulphuric acid, an unsubstituted anthraquinone is generally obtained if the substituents were in the 9:10-positions:

$$(X) \xrightarrow{[0]} (0)$$

A substituted anthraquinone results if the substituents were not in the 9:10-positions, and on further oxidation phthalic acid or substituted phthalic acids are obtained, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} X \\ \\ Y \end{array} \xrightarrow{[O]} \begin{array}{c} X \\ \\ Y \end{array} \xrightarrow{[O]$$

Orientation of anthracene derivatives may also be ascertained by un-

ambiguous syntheses using method (iii).

Properties of anthracene. Anthracene is a colourless solid, m.p. 216°, with a blue fluorescence. It is insoluble in water and sparingly soluble in organic solvents. Anthracene is very reactive in the 9: 10-positions. The reason for this is not clear, but it has been suggested that anthracene is in equilibrium with a free diradical (Clar, 1932). This may possibly account for the reactivity at these positions:

A saturated solution of anthracene in xylene, on exposure to light, forms

crystals of the dimer, dianthracene (paranthracene). X-Ray analysis studies led to the suggestion that the two anthracene molecules are linked in the 9:9':10:10'-positions to give the structure shown (Hengstenberg, et al., 1932). For this structure to be possible, each anthracene molecule must be folded about the line

joining the 9:10-carbon atoms (since this dimer is actually a derivative of 9:10-hydroanthracene; the 9:10-carbon atoms are tetrahedrally

hybridised). This structure has been confirmed by ultraviolet spectrum studies of dianthracene (Weiss *et al.*, 1955). When dianthracene is melted, it reforms anthracene.

Anthracene adds on one molecule of oxygen in the presence of light to form a colourless photo-oxide (anthracene peroxide), the structure of which

is also believed to be folded, since this oxide is also actually a derivative of 9: 10-dihydroanthracene. Anthracene forms a red picrate (m.p. 138°) which dissociates into its constituents when treated with a large amount of ethanol; phenanthrene picrate is stable under these conditions.

Anthracene undergoes the Diels-Alder reaction in the 9:10-positions (see above); phenanthrene does not give the Diels-Alder reaction. When reduced with sodium and *iso*pentanol, anthracene forms 9:10-dihydro-anthracene, m.p. 107°, which is not fluorescent and which, on heating or on treatment with concentrated sulphuric acid, loses the two hydrogen atoms to reform anthracene. Catalytic reduction of anthracene using nickel at 200-250° gives, according to the amount of hydrogen used, tetra-, hexa-and octahydroanthracene, and finally perhydro-anthracene, C<sub>14</sub>H<sub>24</sub> (the prefix *per* is often used to denote complete hydrogenation of a ring system).

When chlorine is passed into a cold solution of anthracene in carbon

disulphide, anthracene dichloride is formed:

$$+ \operatorname{Cl_2} \longrightarrow \underbrace{\operatorname{CHCl}}_{\text{(heat)}} \xrightarrow{\operatorname{-HCl}} \underbrace{\operatorname{Cl}}_{\text{(heat)}}$$

If this is heated or treated with alkali, hydrogen chloride is eliminated with the formation of 9-chloroanthracene. This is also obtained by chlorinating anthracene at 100°, together with some 9:10-dichloroanthracene. Bromine reacts similarly, e.g., bromination of anthracene in boiling carbon tetrachloride solution gives 9:10-dibromoanthracene (yield: 83–88 per cent.). Sulphuryl chloride, at room temperature, converts anthracene into 9:10-dichloroanthracene. Oxidation of all these halogeno-anthracenes converts them into anthraquinone (thereby indicating the positions of the halogen atoms; cf. above).

Anthracene can be chloromethylated in the 9- and 9: 10-positions, and

can be formylated in the 9-position:

$$+ C_6H_5 \cdot N(CH_3) \cdot CHO \xrightarrow{POCl_9} CHO$$

$$+ C_6H_5 \cdot NH \cdot CH_3 \quad (77-84\%)$$

Attempts to nitrate anthracene with aqueous nitric acid lead to the formation of anthraquinone by oxidation. If, however, the nitration is carried out in acetic anhydride at 15–20°, 9-nitroanthracene (m.p. 145°) and 9: 10-dinitroanthracene (m.p. 294°) can be isolated. Anthracene is readily sulphonated to a mixture of the 1- and 2-sulphonic acids, some disulphonic acids also always being obtained; the 2-position is favoured at high temperature. If the sulphonation of anthracene is carried out in glacial acetic acid, a mixture of about equal amounts of 1- and 2-anthracenesulphonic acid is obtained; these acids may be separated by means of their barium salts, that of the

former acid being more soluble. The I-sulphonic acid shows no tendency to rearrange to the 2-acid (cf. naphthalenesulphonic acids, p. 716). With excess concentrated sulphuric acid, anthracene gives disulphonic acids, the I:8- at low temperatures, and the 2:7- at high temperatures.

Hydroxyanthracenes. 1- and 2-Hydroxyanthracenes are known as anthrols. Each may be obtained from the corresponding anthracenesulphonic acid by alkaline fusion. 1-Anthrol is a yellow solid, m.p. 152°; 2-anthrol is a

brownish solid which decomposes at 200°.

10-Hydroxyanthracene, also known as anthranol, is an unstable yellow solid, m.p. 120°, and when quickly heated, forms anthrone (10-keto-9:10-dihydroanthracene—the keto-group is numbered last and consequently its isomer is known as 10- and not 9-hydroxyanthracene). Anthrone is the stable form and is a colourless solid, m.p. 154°.

$$\stackrel{\mathrm{OH}}{\longrightarrow} \longrightarrow \stackrel{\mathrm{O}}{\longrightarrow} \longrightarrow$$

Since the hydrogen atom migrates across the ring, this type of tautomerism is called trans-annular tautomerism. Infrared spectroscopy studies by Flett (1948) indicate that solid anthrone does not exist in equilibrium with the enol form (anthranol). Anthrone may be prepared by heating o-benzylbenzoic acid with concentrated sulphuric acid, or by reducing anthraquinone with tin and hydrochloric acid in glacial acetic acid. Anthrone dissolves in warm dilute alkalis, and these solutions, on acidification, precipitate the enol form.

Reduction of anthraquinone with zinc dust and aqueous sodium hydroxide gives anthracene-9:10-diol or anthraquinol (anthrahydroquinone). This is a brown solid, m.p. 180°; its alkaline solutions (deep red) oxidise in air to give anthraquinone. When anthraquinol in alkaline solution is immediately acidified, it partly tautomerises to oxanthranol, m.p. 167° (trans-annular tautomerism):

Anthracenecarboxylic acids. 1- and 2-Anthroic acids may be prepared by the hydrolysis of the corresponding cyanides (prepared by fusion of the sodium sulphonate with sodium cyanide). 9-Anthroic acid may be prepared by hydrolysing its acid chloride which may be prepared by heating anthracene with oxalyl chloride at 160°. 9-Anthroic acid exhibits steric hindrance.

Anthraquinone (9:10-dihydroanthracene-9:10-dione). There are nine possible isomeric quinones of anthracene, but only three are known: 1:2-, 1:4- and 9:10-. The most important one is the 9:10-compound, and this

is referred to simply as anthraquinone.

Before 1914, anthraquinone was made by oxidising anthracene with sodium dichromate and sulphuric acid (yield: 90 per cent.). Later, instead of isolating anthracene free from carbazole, the mixture of these two compounds was oxidised under conditions whereby anthracene was converted into anthraquinone and the carbazole completely oxidised. This method is

cheaper than the original, but the cheapest method to-day is a synthetic one:

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} CO \\ CO \end{array} > O + \\ \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \end{array} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} CO \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} CO \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\$$

By using chlorobenzene or toluene instead of benzene, chloro- or methylanthraquinone is obtained; these are used in the manufacture of dyes.

A possible future industrial method may be that of Sachanen and Caesar (1946), who showed that anthraquinone can be obtained in one step from phthalic anhydride and benzene by using a silica-alumina catalyst at 370°:

Anthraquinone is a pale yellow compound which sublimes in needles that melt at 268°. When distilled with zinc dust, or heated with hydriodic acid at 150°, anthraquinone forms anthracene. Anthraquinone is very stable and shows very little resemblance to p-benzoquinone, e.g., it has no smell, is not very volatile, and is not reduced by sulphurous acid. When anthraquinone is reduced, the nature of the reduction product depends on the reducing agent used, e.g., with tin and hydrochloric acid in acetic acid, anthrone is formed; using zinc instead of tin, the main product is dianthryl, (I); with zinc dust and aqueous sodium hydroxide, anthraquinol; and with zinc dust and aqueous ammonium hydroxide, 9:10-dihydroanthranol, (II):

Nitration of anthraquinone with mixed acid gives I-nitroanthraquinone; further nitration gives mainly I:5- and I:8-dinitroanthraquinones, and small amounts of the I:6- and I:7-dinitro-compounds. The nitro-group in the I-position is very reactive, e.g., it is replaced by an amino-group when I-nitroanthraquinone is heated with ammonia.

Anthraquinone is very difficult to sulphonate with concentrated sulphuric acid, but it is readily sulphonated with oleum at 160°. The first product is the 2-sulphonic acid and a small amount of the 1-isomer; prolonged heating gives a mixture of 2:6- and 2:7-anthraquinonedisulphonic acids in about equal amounts. If mercuric sulphate is used as a catalyst, the sulphonation takes an entirely different course. The first product now is the 1-sulphonic acid, and then a mixture of the 1:5- and 1:8-disulphonic acids. The sulphonic acid group in the 1- or 2-positions is easily displaced;

e.g., when I- or 2-anthraquinonesulphonic acid is treated with chlorine, the corresponding chloroanthraquinone is obtained.

Anthraquinone does not undergo the Friedel-Crafts reaction, and is halogenated with very great difficulty; in fact, monohalogeno-anthraquinone

cannot be obtained directly.

2-Aminoanthraquinone, m.p. 304°, is very important as an intermediate in the preparation of indanthrene dyes. It is prepared industrially by heating the sodium salt of anthraquinone-2-sulphonic acid with a solution of ammonia, ammonium chloride and sodium arsenate under pressure at 200°. The sodium arsenate oxidises the liberated sulphite which otherwise would attack the amine produced.:

$$\begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \end{array} + NH_3 + [O] \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \end{array} + NaHSO_4$$

Alizarin (1:2-dihydroxyanthraquinone) is the most important dihydroxyderivative of anthraquinone, and is used as a mordant dye (p. 806).

#### PHENANTHRENE

**Phenanthrene**,  $C_{14}H_{10}$ , is isomeric with anthracene; it is an example of an *angular* polynuclear hydrocarbon. It occurs in the anthracene oil fraction of coal-tar, and is separated from anthracene by means of solution in solvent naphtha (see p. 726). Phenanthrene is structurally related to certain alkaloids, e.g., morphine, and to the steroids, e.g., cholesterol.

certain alkaloids, e.g., morphine, and to the steroids, e.g., cholesterol.

Structure of phenanthrene. When oxidised with sodium dichromate and acetic acid, phenanthrene forms phenanthraquinone which, on further oxidation with dichromate and sulphuric acid, gives diphenic acid. This, on distillation with soda-lime, gives diphenyl. The structures of the last two compounds are known. Therefore phenanthrene contains the skeleton (I).

This is equivalent to  $C_{14}H_8$ . Thus two hydrogen atoms are missing; these may be fitted in by closing the middle ring, *i.e.*, a possible structure for phenanthrene is (II). This structure has been amply confirmed by many syntheses.

Synthesis of phenanthrene. (i) By passing 2:2'-dimethyldiphenyl, dibenzyl or stilbene through a red-hot tube; the yields are poor in each

case:

An interesting preparation is the cyclodehydrogenation of 2:2'-dimethyl-diphenyl by means of sulphur:

$$CH_3$$
  $CH_3$   $+ 2S$   $\rightarrow$   $+ 2H_2S$ 

(ii) By treating benzil with aluminium chloride at 120° and then heating the product, phenanthraquinone, with zinc dust:

(iii) By treating o-bromobenzyl bromide with sodium; anthracene is also

formed (see method ii, p. 727).

(iv) Pschorr synthesis (1896). This is carried out by heating o-nitrobenzaldehyde with sodium β-phenylacetate in the presence of acetic anhydride (Perkin's reaction), reducing and diazotising the product, α-phenylo-nitrocinnamic acid, and treating the diazonium salt with sulphuric acid and copper powder. Phenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid is produced and this, on strong heating, forms phenanthrene:

In some cases ring closure of the diazonium salt occurs spontaneously with-

out the addition of copper powder.

The Pschorr synthesis offers a means of preparing substituted phenanthrenes with the substituents in known positions. In those cases, however, where isomerism in the cyclised product is possible, it is usual to obtain both isomers, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH=C\cdot CO}_2\text{H} \\ \\ \text{NH}_2 \\ \end{array} \rightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \\ \text{Me} \\ \end{array} + \text{Me} \\ \end{array}$$

A further point to note is that since ring closure is effected between two rings, these rings must be in the *cis* position, *e.g.*, *cis-o-*aminostilbene gives phenanthrene, but the *trans* isomer does not.

$$\begin{array}{c}
H \\
C = C \\
NH_2 \\
cis
\end{array}$$

The Pschorr synthesis is really an example of intramolecular phenylation. The uncatalysed decomposition is believed to proceed by the nucleophilic unimolecular mechanism (see p. 524). In the presence of copper, however, there is much evidence to show that the decomposition occurs by a homolytic mechanism (cf. p. 585).

## (v) Haworth synthesis (cf. naphthalene):

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_2 & CH_2 \\ CO & CH_2 \\ \hline \\ CH_2 \cdot CO \\ \hline \\ CH_2 \cdot CO \\ \hline \\ CH_2 \cdot CO \\ \hline \\ CH_2 \cdot CO_2H \\ \hline \\ CO_2H \\ CO_2H \\ \hline \\ CO_2H \\ CO_2H \\ \hline \\ CO_2H \\ CO_2H \\ \hline \\ CO_2H \\ CO_2H \\ \hline \\ CO_2H \\ C$$

Naphthalene also condenses with succinic anhydride in the 2-position, but this also gives phenanthrene when treated as above; no anthracene is formed since ring closure in only the 1-position of naphthalene, and not in 3.

The Haworth synthesis is very useful for preparing alkylphenanthrenes with the alkyl groups in known positions; e.g., after ring closure, 1-methylphenanthrene may be obtained by the action of methylmagnesium iodide on the ketone, etc.:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_2 & H_2 \\ \hline CH_2 & CO \\ \hline (i) CH_3 \cdot MgI \\ \hline (ii) H_2O \end{array} \xrightarrow{H_2} \begin{array}{c} H_2 \\ \hline CH_3 \end{array} \xrightarrow{Pd/C} \begin{array}{c} CH_3 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

By using methylsuccinic anhydride instead of succinic anhydride, a methyl group can be introduced into the 2-position:

$$(CH_{2} \xrightarrow{CH_{3} \cdot CH \cdot CO} \xrightarrow{AlCl_{3}} CO \xrightarrow{CH_{2} \cdot CO} CH \xrightarrow{CO_{2}H} CO_{2}H \xrightarrow{CH_{3} \cdot CH \cdot CH_{3}} CH_{3}$$

(vi) Stobbe condensation (1893). This is the condensation between succinic ester and a carbonyl compound in the presence of sodium ethoxide. Johnson (1944) has improved the yield by using potassium tert-butoxide in tert-butanol as the condensating agent, and has used this method to introduce a propionic acid residue at the site of the carbonyl group in an aromatic ketone. The condensation product is refluxed with concentrated hydrobromic acid in glacial acetic acid and the  $\gamma$ -lactone formed is catalytically reduced (using copper oxide-chromic oxide) via the sodium salt:

$$\begin{array}{c} > C = O + CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \\ CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \\ > C \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \\ > C \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2$$

Johnson has used this procedure to prepare polynuclear compounds, e.g., I-methylphenanthrene from 2-acetylnaphthalene. After introduction of the propionic acid residue at the site of the carbonyl group, the ring is closed by means of anhydrous hydrogen fluoride, and the product dehydrogenated over heated palladium on charcoal:

Positions of the double bonds in phenanthrene. Phenanthrene is best represented as a resonance hybrid of 5 resonating structures (its resonance energy is 105 k. cal./mole):

(I) shows the charge densities and self-polarisabilities, (II) the bond orders, and (III) the double-bond character in phenanthrene (cf. naphthalene, p. 714).

Isomerism of phenanthrene derivatives.

The formula of phenanthrene may be written in the three ways shown. There are 5 monosubstitution products possible: 1, 2, 3, 4 and 9. If the two substituents are identical, then 25 disubstitution products are possible. Due to the great number of isomers, derivatives of phenanthrene are usually prepared synthetically and not by direct substitution in the phenanthrene nucleus.

Properties of phenanthrene. Phenanthrene is a white solid, m.p. 99°; its solution in benzene shows a blue fluorescence. It is very reactive in

the 9:10-positions, and this reactivity may possibly be due to the large amount ( $\frac{4}{5}$ ) of double bond character; e.g., phenanthrene is readily catalytically reduced (using copper oxide-chromic oxide) to 9:10-dihydrophenanthrene, and it adds on bromine to form 9:10-phenanthrene dibromide. These addition reactions occur almost as easily as with a pure ethylenic bond. Dichromate in glacial acetic acid oxidises phenanthrene to phenanthraquinone. Schmitt et al. (1955) have prepared a stable mono-ozonide of phenanthrene. This has been shown to be the 9:10-compound by conversion into diphenic acid.

$$\begin{array}{c} CH-O \\ O \\ CH-O \end{array} \xrightarrow{H_2O} \begin{array}{c} CHO \\ CHO \end{array} \xrightarrow{KMnO_4} \begin{array}{c} CO_2H \\ CO_2H \end{array}$$

When treated with bromine in the presence of iron as halogen carrier, phenanthrene forms 9-bromophenanthrene. This is the starting point of 9-substituted phenanthrenes, e.g., when heated with cuprous cyanide at 260°, 9-bromophenanthrene forms the corresponding cyano-compound; this may be hydrolysed to phenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid. Phenanthrene undergoes the Friedel-Crafts reaction mainly in the 3-, and to a small extent, in the 2-position. It is chloromethylated in the 9-position. When nitrated phenanthrene gives a mixture of three mononitro-derivatives, the 3-isomer predominating. Sulphonation of phenanthrene gives a mixture of 1-, 2-, 3- and 9-phenanthrenesulphonic acids, and the ratio of these isomers depends on the temperature.

Hydroxyphenanthrenes. Five phenanthrols are known: 1, 2-, 3-, 4- and 9-3:4-Dihydroxyphenanthrene is a degradation product of morphine (an alkaloid).,

Phenanthraquinone (9: 10-dihydrophenanthrene-9: 10-dione) may be synthesised from benzil (method ii, p. 735), but it is conveniently prepared by oxidising phenanthrene with sodium dichromate or chromium trioxide in glacial acetic acid (yield is excellent).

Phenanthraquinone is an orange solid, m.p. 208°, which is odourless and not steam-volatile. It combines with one or two molecules of hydroxylamine to form phenanthraquinone monoxime and dioxime, respectively, and it is reduced by sulphurous acid to phenanthrene-9: ro-diol (phenanthraquinol). In all of these reactions phenanthraquinone resembles o-benzo-

quinone.

When nitrated, phenanthraquinone gives a mixture of 2- and 4-nitrophenanthraquinones; more vigorous nitration produces a mixture of the 2:7- and 4:5-dinitro-compounds. Oxidation with sodium dichromate and sulphuric acid converts phenanthraquinone into diphenic acid. When warmed with alkali, phenanthraquinone undergoes the benzilic acid rearrangement (p. 707) to form 9-hydroxyfluorene-9-carboxylic acid:

This, on heating in air, eliminates carbon dioxide and the product, fluorenol, is oxidised to fluorenone:

$$CO_2H$$
 $CO_2H$ 
 $CO_2$ 
 $CO_2$ 
 $CO_2$ 
 $CO_2$ 
 $CO_2$ 
 $CO_2$ 
 $CO_2$ 

Phenanthraquinone readily reacts with o-phenylenediamines to form phenazines which, since they are insoluble in many organic solvents, are very useful for characterising o-phenylenediamines (see also p. 579).

I: 2-, I: 4- and 3: 4-Phenanthraquinones have also been prepared.

Molecular overcrowding. Optical activity can arise from restricted rotation about a single bond, but it is also possible that, because of steric repulsion between groups, the molecule may become distorted due to molecular overcrowding in which the strain cannot be relieved by rotation as in the diphenyls. One example of this is the phenanthrene derivative (I). The

$$\begin{array}{c|c} Me & Me & Me \\ \hline \\ CH_2 & \\ \hline \\ CO_2H & \\ \hline \end{array}$$

phenanthrene nucleus is planar, and substituents lie in this plane. If, however, fairly large groups are in positions 4 and 5, there will not be enough room to accommodate both groups in the plane of the nucleus. leads to strain due to molecular overcrowding, and this strain is relieved by bending of substituents out of the plane of the nucleus and/or buckling of the aromatic rings. Such a molecule will not be planar, and hence is asymmetric and consequently should be resolvable. Newman et al. (1940, 1947) have partially resolved (I), and also (in 1955) prepared the optically active forms of (II) (see also p. 688).

#### QUESTIONS

1. Discuss the preparation and properties of diphenyl and diphenic acid.

2. Starting with benzene or toluene, show how you would synthesise:—(a) 4:4'-dimethyldiphenyl, (b) 2:2'-aminodiphenyl, (c) benzidine, (d) dibenzyl, (e) stilbene, (f) benzoin, (g) deoxybenzoin, (h) hydrobenzoin, (i) benzil, (j) benzilic acid, (k) diphenylacetic acid, (1) 2:4:6-trinitrostilbene.

3. How may each of the following compounds be prepared:—(a) CH<sub>2</sub>Ph<sub>2</sub>, (b) CHPh<sub>3</sub>, (c) CPh<sub>4</sub>, (d) C<sub>2</sub>Ph<sub>6</sub>?

Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when each of the above hydrocarbons is treated with:—(a) HNO<sub>3</sub>, (b) H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, (c) Br<sub>2</sub>, (d) I<sub>3</sub>, (c) cyidising the conditions of the short of the conditions of the short of the conditions of the conditions of the short of the conditions (e) oxidising agents, (f) NO, (g) Na.

4. Write an essay on the preparation and properties of free radicals.

5. Formulate the course of the reaction when each of the two benzil monoximes and three benzil dioximes undergoes the Beckmann transformation.

6. Write an account of the analytical and synthetic evidence for the structure of:-

 (a) naphthalene, (b) anthracene, (c) phenanthrene.
 7. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when naphthalene, anthracene and phenanthrene are each treated with:—(a) reducing agents, (b) oxidising agents, (c) Br<sub>2</sub>, (d) MeI, (e) HCHO, (f) HNO<sub>3</sub>, (g) H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, (h) Na, (i) AcCl, (h) SO Crips (a) SO Crips (a) SO Crips (a) SO Crips (b) SO Crips (b) SO Crips (b) SO Crips (c) S (j) SO<sub>3</sub>Cl<sub>3</sub>.

8. Describe the preparation and properties of:—(a) 1-, 2- and 10-hydroxyanthracenes,

(b) anthrone, (c) anthraquinone, (d) phenanthraquinone

9. Starting with any aromatic hydrocarbon you like, show how you would synthesise:—1:5-dichloronaphthalene, (b) 7-chloro-1-naphthylamine, (c) 2-naphthoic acid, (d) 1-naphthylacetic acid, (e) 2-bromonaphthalene, (f) 2:6-dihydroxynaphthalene, (g) indene, (h) acenaphthene, (i) 2-chlorofluorene, (j) 2-nitroanthracene, (k) 9-anthroic acid, (1) 2-chloroanthraquinone, (m) 3-chlorophenanthrene, (n) 1:2-dimethylphenanthrene, (o) 9-phenanthroic acid.

10. Define and give examples of:—(a) Fittig's reaction, (b) Ullmann's synthesis, (c) benzoin condensation, (d) benzilic acid rearrangement, (e) Haworth synthesis, (f) Fries rule, (g) Alternant hydrocarbon, (h) Elbs reaction, (i) Pschorr synthesis, (j) Stobbe

condensation, (k) molecular overcrowding.

11. Discuss the optical activity of diphenyl compounds.

#### READING REFERENCES

Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1942, 2nd Ed.). Vol. I, Ch. 3. Aromatic

Character. Ch. 6. Free Radicals.

Bunnett and Zahler, Ullmann Reactions, Chem. Reviews, 1951, 49, 392.

Organic Reactions, Wiley. (i) Vol. IV (1948), Ch. 5. The Synthesis of Benzoins.

Vol. V (1949). The Friedel-Crafts Reaction with Aliphatic Dibasic Anhydrides. The Benzilic Acid Rearrangement.

(i) Westheimer, J. Amer. Chem. Soc., 1936, 58, 2209.
(ii) Roberts and Urey, ibid., 1938, 60, 880.
Hodgson et al., Studies on Naphthalene Substitution. J. Soc. Dyers and Col., 1945, 61, 283; 1946, 62, 241; 1947, 63, 46, 109, 141, 177.

Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. I (1942), (i) Ch. 5. The Bucherer Reaction. (ii)

Ch. 6. The Elbs Reaction.

Cowdry et al., The Mechanism of the Bucherer Reaction, J.C.S., 1946, 1036, 1041, 1044, 1946.

Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. VI (1951), Ch. 1. The Stobbe Condensation. Waters, The Chemistry of Free Radicals. Oxford Press (1946).

Badger, The Aromatic Bond, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1951, 5, 147.
Brown, Molecular Orbitals and Organic Reactions, ibid., 1952, 6, 63.
Jacobs, Electron Distribution in Conjugated Free Radicals, J.C.S., 1952, 292.
Finar, Organic Chemistry, Vol. II, Longmans, Green (1956). Ch. V. Stereochemistry of Diphenyl Compounds. Ch. X. Polycyclic Aromatic Hydrocarbons.

Badger, The Structure and Reactions of the Aromatic Compounds, Cambridge Press (1954). Fanta, The Ullmann Synthesis of Biaryls, Chem. Reviews, 1946, 38, 139.

Fanta, The Ullmann Synthesis of Biaryls, Ohem. Herberg, Leake, The Pschorr Synthesis, ibid., 1956, 56, 27.

Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. IX (1957), Ch. 7. The Pschorr Synthesis and Related Programs Reactions.

Donaldson, The Chemistry and Technology of Naphthalene Compounds, Arnold (1958).

#### CHAPTER XXX

## HETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS

Heterocyclic compounds are cyclic compounds with the ring containing carbon and other elements, the commonest being oxygen, nitrogen and sulphur. There are a number of heterocyclic rings which are easily opened and do not possess any aromatic properties, e.g., ethylene oxide,  $\gamma$ - and  $\delta$ -lactones, etc. These are not considered to be heterocyclic compounds. Heterocycles are those compounds with five- or six-membered heterocyclic rings which are stable, contain conjugated double bonds, and exhibit aromatic character.

## FIVE-MEMBERED RINGS

## FURAN AND ITS DERIVATIVES

Furan (furfuran) contains one oxygen atom in its ring, and its structure is as shown. The position of side-chains or substituents is indicated by numbers (or by Greek letters), number I being given to the oxygen atom:

When a heterocyclic compound contains only one hetero-atom, this atom is always given the number I. If the heterocyclic ring is part of a condensed system, the number given to the hetero-atom depends on the type of compound in question (see later).

There are two monosubstituted derivatives of furan, 2 (or  $\alpha$ ) and 3 (or  $\beta$ ); there are four disubstitution products: 2:3 ( $\alpha$ :  $\beta$ ), 2:4 ( $\alpha$ :  $\beta$ '), 2:5 ( $\alpha$ :  $\alpha$ ')

and  $3:4(\beta:\beta')$ .

Furan is obtained when wood, especially pine-wood, is distilled. It may be prepared by the dry distillation of mucic acid, and heating the product, furoic acid, at its b.p.:

$$CO_2H \cdot (CHOH)_4 \cdot CO_2H \longrightarrow \begin{matrix} CH & CH & CH \\ \parallel & \parallel + CO_2 + 3H_2O \longrightarrow \begin{matrix} CH & CH \\ \parallel & \parallel + CO_2 \end{matrix}$$

A general method of preparing furan derivatives is to dehydrate 1:4-diketones or dialdehydes with, e.g., phosphorus pentoxide:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{--CH}_2 \\ \text{R-CO} & \text{CO-R} \end{array} \Longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH--CH} \\ \text{R-COH COH-R} & \text{--H2O} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{R-C}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH--CH} \\ \text{--H2O} \end{array}$$

Alternatively, furan derivatives may be prepared from ethyl acetoacetate as follows:

$${}^{2\text{CH}_3\text{-CO-CHNa-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5} + 1_2 \longrightarrow {}^{2\text{NaI}} + {}^{\text{CH}_3\text{-CO-CH-CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5}$$

When diacetosuccinic ester is heated with dilute sulphuric acid, 2:5-dimethyl-furan-3:4-dicarboxylic acid is formed:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} C_2H_5O_2C\cdot CH-CH\cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \\ CH_3\cdot CO & CO\cdot CH_3 \end{array} \iff \begin{array}{c|c} C_2H_5O_2C\cdot C-C\cdot CO_2C_2H_5 \\ CH_3\cdot COH & HOC\cdot CH_3 \end{array} \xrightarrow{H_3SO_4} \\ & HO_2C\cdot C-C\cdot CO_2H \\ CH_3\cdot CO & C\cdot CH_3 \end{array}$$

If ammonia is used instead of sulphuric acid, 2:5-dimethylpyrrole-3:4-dicarboxylic ester is obtained.

Furan is a colourless liquid, b.p. 32°, which turns green a pine splint moistened with hydrochloric acid. It is catalytically reduced (palladium-palladium oxide) to *tetrahydrofuran*:

Tetrahydrofuran may be manufactured synthetically from butyne-1: 4-diol (cf. p. 274):

$$CH_2OH \cdot C : C \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{H_2} CH_2OH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{-H_2O} CH_2 \xrightarrow{CH_2} CH_2$$

$$CH_2OH \cdot C : C \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{H_2} CH_2OH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2OH \xrightarrow{-H_2O} CH_$$

Tetrahydrofuran is a valuable solvent, and it can be made to react with carbon monoxide and water to give adipic acid. With ammonia it forms pyrrolidine, and with hydrogen chloride, tetramethylene chlorohydrin:

Kaluszyner (1957) has converted tetrahydrofuran into tetramethylene dibromide by reaction with sodium bromide and concentrated sulphuric acid. Bailey *et al.* (1960) have reduced tetrahydrofuran to *n*-butanol with a mixture of lithium aluminium hydride and aluminium chloride.

Furan undergoes the Diels-Alder reaction, and can be easily mercurated:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH \\ CH \\ CH \\ CH \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} CH \cdot CO \\ CH \cdot CO \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CH \\ CH \cdot CO \\ CH \cdot CO \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CH \\ CH \cdot CO \\ CH \cdot CO \end{array}$$

Substituents usually enter the 2- or 5-position if one is unoccupied, even though a m-orienting group, e.g., NO<sub>2</sub> or SO<sub>3</sub>H, is already present in one of these positions (some Friedel-Crafts reactions are exceptional, the alkyl radical entering the 3-position). When the 2- and 5-positions are both occupied, the substituent enters the 3-position. Furan is very readily attacked by oxidising agents, e.g., it cannot be directly nitrated with nitric acid; the furan nucleus is completely oxidised. 2-Nitrofuran may be pre-

pared by nitrating furan with acetyl nitrate. Similarly, furan cannot be directly sulphonated (resinified products are obtained), but the 2-sulphonic acid may be prepared by the action of pyridine-sulphur trioxide on furan. If a negative group is present in the ring, then sulphonation can be carried out directly, e.g., furoic acid gives furoic-5-sulphonic acid. The direct halogenation of furan is also not possible (the ring is destroyed), but if a negative group is present, halogenation can be carried out, e.g., furoic acid gives 5-bromofuroic acid.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \hline \\ O \\ \hline \end{array} CO_2 H & \xrightarrow{\operatorname{Br_2}} & \operatorname{Br} \\ \hline \end{array} \longrightarrow & \operatorname{Br} \\ \hline \end{array} \longrightarrow & \operatorname{Br} \\ \hline \end{array} \longrightarrow & \operatorname{Br} \\ \hline \longrightarrow & \operatorname{Br} \\ \end{array} \longrightarrow + \operatorname{CO_2}$$

Furan undergoes the Gattermann reaction (p. 646) to form furfural. Since aluminium chloride attacks the ring, Friedel-Crafts reactions are best carried out with stannic chloride as catalyst. If, however, a negative group is present in the ring, then alkylation may be carried out using aluminium chloride.

The action of an alcoholic solution of bromine on furan in the presence of potassium acetate, sodium carbonate, etc., produces 2:5-dialkoxy-2:5-dihydrofuran (Jones, 1947). The most important reaction of these compounds is their conversion into unsaturated 1:4-dicarbonyl compounds on acid hydrolysis:

Reduction of the dialkoxy-compound followed by hydrolysis gives saturated 1:4-dicarbonyl compounds.

Furan behaves as a resonance hybrid. It appears that (I), (II) and (III) are

$$(I) \longleftrightarrow (II) \longleftrightarrow (III) \longleftrightarrow (V)$$

the main contributing structures, since, as pointed out above, 2- (or 5-) substitution (with electrophilic reagents) occurs most readily. At the same time, (IV) and (V) would account for 3-substitution when the 2- and 5-positions are both occupied. Calculations of the bond lengths and comparison with the measured values show that (I) contributes about 85 per cent. to the resonance hybrid.

values show that (I) contributes about 85 per cent. to the resonance hybrid.

It should be noted that one of the lone pairs of the oxygen atom enters into resonance with the ring; we now have six electrons involved as in benzene. From the M.O. point of view, one lone pair of the oxygen atom conjugates with the four helectrons of the ring, thereby producing a "closed"

the four  $p_s$  electrons of the ring, thereby producing a "closed circuit" of six  $\pi$ -electrons (these will be in three M.O.s; cf. benzene, p. 509). Furan and all other five-membered rings are non-alternant compounds (p. 528), and since the oxygen atom has supplied two electrons to form the closed circuit, the  $\pi$ -electron densities at each carbon atom will be greater than unity, and are greatest at the  $2\pi$  and  $3\pi$ -positions (see pyrrole, p. 750).

and are greatest at the 2- and 5-positions (see pyrrole, p. 750). Thus electrophilic attack will occur most readily at position 2 (or 5), but if these are occupied, and provided the substituent groups leave the ring  $\pi$ -electron distribution very little affected, electrophilic attack can now occur at position 3 (or 4), since the charge density here is also greater than unity.

Furfural (furfuraldehyde) may be prepared by distilling pentoses with dilute sulphuric acid (p. 438):

$$CH_2OH \cdot (CHOH)_3 \cdot CHO \longrightarrow \bigcirc CHO + 3H_2O \quad (100\%)$$

It is manufactured by treating oat husks, cotton-seed hulls or maize cobs with dilute sulphuric acid followed by steam distillation (the starting materials are rich in pentoses).

Furfural is a colourless liquid, b.p. 162°. Chemically it is very similar to benzaldehyde, e.g., with aqueous sodium hydroxide furfural forms furfuryl

alcohol and furoic acid:

$$_{2}$$
 CHO + NaOH  $\longrightarrow$  CH<sub>2</sub>OH + CO<sub>2</sub>Na

With ethanolic potassium cyanide furoin is formed and this, on oxidation, gives furil:

$${}^{2} \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_{\text{CHO}} \xrightarrow{\text{KCN}} \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_{\text{CHOH-CO}} \xrightarrow{[0]} \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_{\text{O}} \xrightarrow{\text{CO-CO}} \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_{\text{O}}$$

When heated with aqueous potassium hydroxide, furil gives furilic acid:

Furfural reacts with ammonia to form furfuramide, (C<sub>5</sub>H<sub>4</sub>O)<sub>3</sub>N<sub>2</sub>, and can undergo the Perkin reaction and the Claisen reaction. It is easily oxidised by silver oxide to the corresponding acid; it is oxidised by sodium chlorate to maleic acid, and Salchinkin et al. (1955) have shown that 30 per cent. hydrogen peroxide oxidises furfural to succinic acid. Furfural condenses with dimethylaniline in the presence of zinc chloride to form furfuraldehyde green (analogous to malachite green, p. 786). A characteristic reaction of furfural is the red coloration it gives with aniline and hydrochloric acid; it also turns green a pine splint moistened with hydrochloric acid (cf. furan, above).

Furfural is used for the preparation of dyes, plastics and maleic acid. It is also used as a solvent in synthetic rubber manufacture, and as an extraction

liquid in petroleum refining.

Furfuryl alcohol, b.p. 170°, may be prepared by reducing furfural, or

by means of the Cannizzaro reaction on furfural (see above).

Furoic acid (furan-2-carboxylic acid, pyromucic acid) may be prepared by the dry disillation of mucic acid, or by the oxidation of furfural with acid dichromate.

It is a solid, m.p. 133°, and behaves more like an unsaturated aliphatic acid rather than benzoic acid (cf. furfural); e.g., furoic acid is readily oxidised by alkaline permanganate, brominated by bromine vapour (it adds on four bromine atoms), and oxidised by bromine-water to fumaric acid. The sodium salt of furoic acid is decarboxylated by mercuric chloride to give the mercuri-chloride (this does not occur with furan-3-carboxylic acid):

$$O_{\text{CO}_2\text{Na}} + \text{HgCl}_2 \longrightarrow O_{\text{HgCl}} + \text{CO}_2 + \text{NaCl}$$

Furan-3-carboxylic acid occurs naturally.

Benzofuran (benzfuran, coumarone) occurs in coal-tar. It is a liquid, b.p. 174°, and is used in the manufacture of plastics.

Dibenzofuran (dibenzfuran, diphenylene oxide) may be prepared by heating phenol with lead oxide at 150°:

It may also be prepared by passing diphenyl ether through a red-hot tube. is a white solid, m.p. 87°.

## THIOPHEN AND ITS DERIVATIVES

Thiophen occurs in coal-tar and shale oils. Its b.p. (84°) is close to that of benzene and hence it is difficult to separate from the benzene fraction obtained from coal-tar. Thiophen can be sulphonated more readily than

benzene, and this property is used to separate the two compounds by repeatedly shaking benzene (from coal-tar) with cold concentrated sulphuric acid, whereby the water-soluble thiophensulphonic acid is formed. A better means of separation is to reflux the benzene with aqueous mercuric separation is to reflux the benzene with aqueous mercuric acetate whereupon thiophen is mercurated and benzene is



not. Thiophen may be recovered from its mercurated derivative by distilling the latter with hydrochloric acid. The presence of thiophen in benzene may be detected by the indophenin reaction. This is the development of a blue colour when benzene is treated with isatin and sulphuric acid.

Thiophen may be prepared by passing a mixture of acetylene and hydrogen sulphide through a tube containing alumina at 400°.

$$2C_2H_2 + H_2S \longrightarrow C_4H_4S + H_2$$

This method is used commercially. It is also manufactured by reaction between n-butane and sulphur in the vapour phase. Since butadiene also forms thiophen under these conditions, and since sulphur is a dehydrogenating agent, the reaction with n-butane probably proceeds via butadiene as an intermediate. Thiophen may also be prepared by heating sodium succinate with phosphorus trisulphide:

$$\begin{array}{cccc} CH_2 \cdot CO_2 Na & \xrightarrow{P_2S_3} & CH = CH \\ CH_3 \cdot CO_5 Na & CH = CH \\ \end{array} S \quad (30\%)$$

Derivatives of thiophen may be prepared by heating 1:4-diketones with phosphorus trisulphide (cf. furan derivatives):

Thiophen is a liquid which is easily sulphonated, nitrated or chlorinated in the  $\alpha$ -position. It was this close chemical similarity to benzene that masked the presence of thiophen in benzene from coal-tar. V. Meyer (1882) found that a sample of benzene prepared by heating sodium benzoate with soda-lime did not give the indophenin test. Subsequently he showed that it was a sulphur-containing compound, which he called thiophene, that was responsible for the indophenin reaction.

Thiophen undergoes substitution mainly in the 2-position; some substitution may also occur in the 3-position, particularly when alkylated. Thiophen is fairly readily polymerised by acids, and stannic chloride is better than aluminium chloride for Friedel-Crafts reactions (cf. furan). It can be nitrated by fuming nitric acid in acetic anhydride to give mainly 2-nitrothiophen, and is readily sulphonated in the 2-position with cold concentrated sulphuric acid. 2-Halogenothiophens may be prepared by direct action between the halogen and thiophen under suitable conditions, e.g., chlorination at 100° gives almost 100 per cent. 2-chlorothiophen. Thiophen may be catalytically hydrogenated to thiophan (tetrahydrothiophen), provided a very large amount of the catalyst (palladium) is used to overcome the poisoning effect of the sulphur (Mozingo et al., 1945). On the other hand, reduction of thiophen with sodium in liquid ammonia gives 2:3- and 2:5-dihydrothiophen (Birch et al., 1951).

Various derivatives of thiophen may be prepared from the monobromo-

derivative, e.g.,

Thiophen does not form sulphonium salts and cannot be oxidised to a sulphoxide or sulphone; hydrogen peroxide opens the thiophen ring, the sulphur being oxidised to sulphuric acid. Thiophensulphone (thiophen-I: I-dioxide) has, however, been prepared indirectly as follows (Melles et al., 1953):

Many thiophen derivatives may be directly oxidised to the sulphone by perbenzoic acid.

Thiophen is a resonance hybrid (V.B. method), or forms a "closed circuit", the sulphur atom contributing two electrons (see furan, p. 743; replace the oxygen atom by sulphur). The problem of thiophen, however, appears to be more complicated than this because of the fact that sulphur can use a 3d orbital (oxygen cannot). The valency angle of C-S-C in thiophen is about 91°, and not the expected value of about 105°. Schomaker et al. (1939) explained this by assuming that some of the sulphur 3d orbitals are used in the V.B. structures (II-IV).

$$\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{array}{c$$

This has been supported and extended by calculations using the M.O. method

(Longuet-Higgins, 1949).

A number of condensed thiophen systems are known, e.g., benzothiophen (V) (also known as thionaphthen because it closely resembles naphthalene), dibenzothiophen (VI), and thiophthen (VII).

# PYRROLE AND ITS DERIVATIVES

Pyrrole is a very important five-membered heterocyclic ring because its nucleus occurs in many natural compounds, e.g., alkaloids, chlorophyll, hæmatin, etc. In addition to the 2- and 3-derivatives, pyrrole can form I- or N-derivatives in which imino hydrogen is replaced.

Pyrrole occurs in coal-tar and bone oil. It may be isolated from bone oil by washing the latter with dilute alkali to remove acidic substances, then

by washing the latter with dilute alkali to remove acidic substances, with acid to remove strongly basic substances, and finally fractionating. Pyrrole distils over in the fraction boiling between 100° and 150°, and may be purified by fusing with potassium hydroxide. Solid potassiopyrrole is formed and this, on steam distillation, gives pure pyrrole.

Description of the fraction boiling between 100° and 150°, and may be potassiopyrrole is formed and this, on steam distillation, gives pure pyrrole.

Pyrrole may be synthesised by passing a mixture of acetylene and ammonia through a red-hot tube:

$$2C_2H_2 + NH_3 \longrightarrow C_4H_5N + H_2$$

It is conveniently prepared by distilling a mixture of ammonium mucate and glycerol at 200°:

$$CO_2NH_4\cdot(CHOH)_4\cdot CO_2NH_4 \longrightarrow C_4H_5N + 2CO_2 + NH_3 + 4H_2O$$
 (37-40%)

If salts of mucic acid with primary amines are decomposed as above, then N-substituted pyrroles are obtained, e.g., aniline mucate gives N-phenylpyrrole.

Pyrrole is also formed when succinimide is distilled with zinc dust:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{-CO} \\ \mid \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-CO} \end{array} \text{NH} \xrightarrow{Z_n} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH=CH} \\ \mid \\ \text{CH=CH} \end{array} \text{NH}$$

Pyrrole is manufactured by passing a mixture of furan, ammonia and steam over heated alumina as catalyst:

Many methods are available for synthesising pyrrole derivatives, e.g., (i) Paal-Knorr synthesis (1885). This is carried out by treating a 1:4diketone with ammonia, primary amines, hydrazines, etc., e.g.,

If succinaldehyde is used as the 1:4-dicarbonyl compound, pyrrole itself is obtained

(ii) Knorr synthesis (1884; 1886). This is the most general method, and involves the condensation between an  $\alpha$ -aminoketone and a  $\beta$ -diketone or  $\beta$ -ketoester; e.g., 3:5-dimethylpyrrole-2:4-dicarboxylic ester may be prepared from acetoacetic ester as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-CO} & \text{HNO}_3 \\ \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}\text{-}\text{CH}_2 \\ \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C}\text{-}\text{C} \\ \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C} \\ \text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}_2\text{C} \\ \text{C}_2\text{C}_2\text{C} \\ \text{C}_2\text{C}_2\text{C}_2\text{C} \\ \text{C}_2\text$$

Since \alpha-aminoketones generally undergo self-condensation, they are best

prepared in situ (as illustrated above).

(iii) Hantzsch synthesis (1890). This is the condensation between chloroacetone, a β-ketoester, and a primary amine, e.g.,

Some furan derivative is also formed.

Properties of pyrrole. Pyrrole is a colourless liquid, b.p. 131°, which rapidly darkens on exposure to air. It is sparingly soluble in water but readily soluble in ethanol and ether. A characteristic reaction is the turning red of a pine splint moistened with hydrochloric acid when exposed to the vapour of pyrrole (and many of its derivatives). Pyrrole is a very weak secondary base, dissolving very slowly in cold dilute acids, and these solutions, on warming, form pyrrole-red (pyrrole polymers); concentrated acids resinify pyrrole rapidly. Pyrrole, however, gives 2-nitropyrrole (21 per cent. yield) when nitrated with nitric acid in acetic anhydride at —10° (Rinkes, 1934). Sulphonation of pyrrole with pyridine-sulphur trioxide in ethylene chloride gives the 2-sulphonic acid (Terentyev, 1949).

Pyrrole shows a number of resemblances to phenols and aromatic amines. The imino-hydrogen of pyrrole is replaceable by potassium, alkyl or acyl radicals. When pyrrole is heated with solid potassium hydroxide, potassiopyrrole is formed:

$$C_4H_4NH + KOH \longrightarrow C_4H_4\bar{N}K + H_2O$$

Potassiopyrrole reacts with carbon dioxide and with chloroform as do phenols in the Kolbe–Schmitt and Reimer–Tiemann reactions, to form 2-and 3-pyrrolecarboxylic acids and pyrrole-2-aldehyde, respectively. It reacts with acetyl chloride at about 80° to form N-acetylpyrrole, and with methyl iodide at about 60° to give N-methylpyrrole. When these last two reactions are carried out at higher temperatures (150–220°), the 2- or 3-substituted product is obtained instead of the N-compound; this may be due to rearrangement of the N-compound (cf. Hofmann–Martius rearrangement, p. 574).

Pyrrole may be readily halogenated, the most important halogeno-pyrrole being tetraiodopyrrole, formed by the action of potassium iodide-iodine solution on pyrrole:

This is often used as a substitute (under the name of *iodole*) for iodoform, but is much more expensive. Pyrrole couples with diazonium salts in the 2-position in weakly acid solution, and in the 2- and 5-positions (to give the bisazo-compound) in alkaline solution. If the 2- and 5-positions are occupied by, e.g., methyl groups, coupling takes place in the 3-position. When pyrrole is treated with methylmagnesium iodide, N-pyrrylmagnesium iodide is formed and this, on treatment with methyl iodide, gives mainly 3-methylpyrrole, and a little of the 2-isomer.

Pyrrole is mercurated with great difficulty. Experience has shown that the ease of mercuration of heterocyclic compounds varies considerably with the nature of the hetero-atom. Generally, those containing oxygen or

sulphur are easily mercurated (cf. thiophen), whereas those containing nitrogen are mercurated with great difficulty.

Pyrrole is oxidised by chromium trioxide in sulphuric acid to maleic-

imide:

Alkaline hypochlorite (or hypobromite) converts pyrrole into dichloro-(or dibromo-) maleic-imide. When pyrrole is treated with hydroxylamine, the ring is opened and succinaldehyde dioxime is formed:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH=CH} \\ \mid \\ \text{CH=CH} \end{array} \text{NH} + 2 \text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{OH} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH=N} \cdot \text{OH} \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH=N} \cdot \text{OH} \end{array} + \text{NH}_3$$

When potassiopyrrole is heated with chloroform and sodium ethoxide, ring expansion takes place, the product being 3-chloropyridine (cf. p. 117):

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
\hline
\widetilde{N} & \xrightarrow{CHCl_0} \\
\widetilde{K}^+ & & & \\
\hline
K^+ & & & \\
\end{array}$$

The yields are better if lithiopyrrole is used instead of potassiopyrrole (Alexander et al., 1950).

The same result may be achieved by passing a mixture of pyrrole and chloroform through a glass tube at 550° (Rice et al., 1955).

Reduction products of pyrrole. Pyrrole is reduced by zinc and acetic acid to pyrroline (2:5-dihydropyrrole), b.p. 91°. This, on heating with hydriodic acid and red phosphorus, gives pyrrolidine (tetrahydropyrrole), b.p. 88°:

Pyrrolidine may also be prepared by catalytically reducing pyrrole using nickel at 200°, or by the electrolytic reduction of succinimide. A potential source of pyrrolidine is its preparation by the action of ammonia on tetrahydrofuran (p. 742).

Pyrroline and pyrrolidine are both strong bases, and do not show any

tendency to polymerise.

2-Pyrrolidone, m.p. 25°, may be prepared by the electrolytic reduction of succinimide:

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \text{CH}_2 & \text{CH}_2 & \text{CH}_2 & \text{CH}_2 \\ \hline \text{CO} & \text{CO} & \text{CH}_2 & \text{CO} \\ \hline \text{NH} & \text{NH} & \text{NH} \end{array}$$

2-Pyrrolidone is the lactam (cf. lactones) of y-aminobutyric acid. 3-Pyrrolidone is also known.

Pyrrole behaves as a resonance hybrid, the main contributing structures being (I), (II) and (III). From the M.O. point of view, the lone pair on the nitrogen

atom conjugates with the four  $p_z$  electrons of the ring, thereby producing a "closed circuit" of six  $\pi$ -electrons (which are accommodated in three M.O.s).

Like all odd-membered rings, pyrrole is non-alternant (p. 528), and the charge densities will not be unity at each position in the molecule. Since the nitrogen atom has supplied two electrons to form the closed circuit, the charge density at each carbon atom is greater than unity, being greater at the α-positions than the

1-10 1-06 1-06 NH 1-10 Fig. 30.4.

 $\beta$ - (as shown by calculation). Hence electrophilic attack occurs most readily at the  $\alpha$ -position. Had the nitrogen atom retained its lone pair, its charge density would have been 2, but owing to conjugation, it is less than this, and so acquires a small positive charge.

Indole (benzopyrrole) occurs in coal-tar, jasmine flowers and orange blossoms. Some indole derivatives, e.g., indole-3-acetic acid, indole-3-

propionic acid, etc., have great growth-promoting action on plants (and are known as *heteroauxins*). Indole is the parent substance of indigotin (p. 800). It may be synthesised in many ways, e.g.,

many ways, e.g.,
(i) Lipp synthesis (1884). This is carried out by heating o-amino-ω-chlorostyrene with sodium ethoxide.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH = CHCl & C_2H_3ONa \\ NH_2 & & NH \end{array}$$

(ii) When heated with potassium alkoxides, formyl-o-toluidide gives indole (Friedman, 1948).

(iii) Fischer's indole synthesis (1886). This is the most important method of preparing indole derivatives, and is carried out by heating the phenylhydrazone or substituted phenylhydrazone of an appropriate aldehyde, ketone, or ketonic acid with zinc chloride as catalyst. Boron trifluoride has been found to be a very good reagent for converting phenylhydrazones into indole derivatives.

The mechanism of the reaction is uncertain, but a highly favoured one is that of Robinson (1918). According to him acetone phenylhydrazone forms 2-methylindole by first tautomerising, the tautomer then undergoing the o-benzidine rearrangement, and the diamino-compound so produced eliminating a molecule of ammonia with ring closure:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_3 \\ C-CH_3 \\ \end{array} \Longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \\ C-CH_3 \\ \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \\ C-CH_3 \\ \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CH_2 \\ C-CH_3 \\ \end{array}$$

Allen et al. (1943) and Clusius et al. (1952), using <sup>15</sup>N, have shown that it is the nitrogen atom attached to the aromatic ring that is retained in the product, the other nitrogen atom being eliminated as ammonia.

(iv) Reissert synthesis (1897). This is a very good method, and is carried out with o-nitrotoluene (or its substituted derivatives) and ethyl oxalate as follows:

Indole is a crystalline solid, m.p. 52°. It resembles pyrrole in many of its properties, and is oxidised by ozone to indigotin.

Indole is most readily substituted in the 3-position, e.g., treatment with iodine gives 3-iodoindole; the Reimer-Tiemann reaction produces indole-3-aldehyde; the rearrangement of, for example, N-acetylindole gives 3-acetylindole. The calculated charge densities for indole are as shown.

Indole behaves in some ways as a tautomeric substance, the tautomer being known as *indolenine*. Indolenine itself has never yet been isolated, but its

derivatives are known, and these may be prepared, e.g., by condensation between indoles and aldehydes.

Indoxyl is the term usually applied to the keto-form of 3-hydroxyindole (the enolic form):

Derivatives of both are known (see p. 802 for its preparation). Indoxyl is a bright yellow solid, m.p. 85°, and is readily oxidised in alkaline solution by air to indigotin.

Oxindole. There are three possible formulæ for oxindole:

Chemical evidence was assumed to favour the *lactam* form (I), but (II) and (III) were also considered to be present (Julian *et al.*, 1935). This has been supported by infrared measurements (Bergmann, 1955), but O'Sullivan *et al.* (1956), from infrared measurements of oxindole in chloroform solution, believe that only (I) is present.

Oxindole may be prepared by reducing o-nitrophenylacetic acid with tin and

hydrochloric acid.

It is a colourless solid, m.p. 120°.

Dioxindole (3-hydroxyoxindole) is tautomeric with 2:3-dihydroxyindole:

It may be prepared by reducing isatin with zinc and hydrochloric acid:

$$CO$$
 $CO$ 
 $NH$ 
 $CO$ 
 $NH$ 
 $CO$ 
 $NH$ 

It is a colourless solid, m.p. 180°.

Isatin exists in two forms, the term  $\psi$ -isatin being applied to the *lactam* form (I), and isatin to the *lactim* form (II) (both are derivatives of 2:3-dihydroindole; and the name isatin is often applied to I):

$$co \rightleftharpoons co$$

This is an example of the amido-imidol tautomeric system:

$$-NH-CO- \rightleftharpoons -N=C(OH)-$$

It appears to be the first case of tautomerism to be recognised. Isatin reacts as the lactam form towards most reagents, e.g., the N atom is readily acetylated by

heating with acetic anhydride, and when the sodium salt is heated with methyl iodide, the N-methyl is formed. On the other hand, when the silver salt is heated with methyl iodide, the O-ether is obtained (cf. amides). Infrared measurements of isatin (and a series of substituted isatins), however, provide no support for the existence of a classical lactim structure in the solid state or in dilute chloroform solution (O'Sullivan et al., 1956).

Isatin was first obtained by the oxidation of indigotin with nitric acid. It is best prepared by heating a solution of concentrated hydrochloric acid containing aniline, chloral hydrate, hydroxylamine and sodium sulphate. "isoNitrosoacetanilide" (oximinoacetanilide) crystallises out and this, on treatment with

concentrated sulphuric acid, forms isatin:

$$NH_{2} + NH_{2} \cdot OH + CCl_{3} \cdot C(OH)_{2} \xrightarrow{HCl}$$

$$NH \cdot CO \cdot CH : N \cdot OH + 3HCl + H_{2}O \xrightarrow{H_{2}O} \xrightarrow{(H_{4}SO_{4})} CO$$

$$(80-91\%)$$

$$(71-78\%)$$

The following synthesis from o-nitrobenzoyl chloride clearly shows the structure of isatin (Claisen et al., 1879):

Isatin is a red solid, m.p. 200°. With phosphorus pentachloride it forms isatin chloride, and with warm sodium hydroxide, isatic acid:

Carbazole (dibenzopyrrole) may be isolated from the anthracene fraction of coaltar (see p. 726). It may be synthesised by passing diphenylamine through a redhot tube, or better, by heating 2:2'-diaminodiphenyl at 200° with concentrated phosphoric acid (the yield is almost quantitative; Leditschke, 1953).

Carbazole is a colourless solid, m.p. 245°. Silver oxide converts it into N: N'-dicarbazyl, which is a colourless compound but gives coloured solutions due to its dissociation into free carbazyl radical (cf. p. 577). Carbazole is used in the preparation of polyvinylcarbazole plastics.

#### AZOLES

Azole is the suffix used for five-membered rings containing two or more hetero-

atoms, at least one of which is nitrogen.

Nomenclature. (i) When the heterocyclic compound contains two or more hetero-atoms, the starting point is the hetero-atom of as high a group in the periodic table and as low an atomic number in that group. Thus the order of naming will be O, S, N.

(ii) With the atom of the preferred kind as number 1, the ring is numbered in

such a way that the hetero-atoms are given the lowest numbers possible.

(iii) Of two or more numberings conforming to rules (i) and (ii), the one that is chosen is that which assigns low numbers most nearly in the order of precedence established by rule (i).

(iv) Of two or more numberings conforming to rules (i)-(iii), the one that is

chosen is that which gives hydrogen atoms the lowest numbers possible.

Hetero-atoms are indicated by prefixes: 0 by oxa, S by thia and N by aza.

Pyrazoles. Pyrazole may be prepared by passing acetylene into a cold ethereal solution of diazomethane.

$$\begin{array}{cccc} \text{CH} & \text{CH}_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}} \text{CH} & \text{CH}\\ \parallel \parallel & + & \parallel \parallel_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}} & \parallel \parallel_3 & \parallel \parallel \\ \text{CH} & \text{N}_2 & & \text{CH}^{5 \ 2} \text{N} & & \\ & & & \text{NH} & & \end{array}$$

Pyrazole is a colourless solid, m.p. 70°. It has aromatic properties, readily undergoing substitution (with the usual electrophilic reagents) in the 4-position.

Pyrazole is a tautomeric substance; this cannot be demonstrated in pyrazole itself, but may be shown as follows. If pyrazole is tautomeric, then positions 3 and 5 are identical; if not tautomeric, these positions are different. When the phenyl group in 3-methyl-1-phenyl- and 5-methyl-1-phenylpyrazole is removed, both compounds give the same methylpyrazole. Hence positions 3 and 5 are equivalent, and this can only be explained by assuming that pyrazole is tautomeric.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{CH--CH} & \rightleftharpoons & \text{CH=-CH} \\ \parallel^4 & \parallel^3 \parallel & \rightleftharpoons & \parallel^4 & \parallel^5 \parallel \\ \text{CH}^5 \, ^2\text{N} & \rightleftharpoons & \text{CH}^3 \, ^1\text{NH} \\ \parallel^1 & \parallel^2 & \parallel^2 & \parallel^2 & \parallel^2 \\ \text{NH} & & \parallel^2 & \parallel^2 & \parallel^2 \\ \end{array}$$

Pyrazole may be catalytically reduced to pyrazoline (I) and then to pyrazolidine (II). Both are stronger bases than pyrazole. 5-Ketopyrazoline or pyrazol-5-one is (III) (see below).

Pyrazole derivatives. One of the chief methods for preparing these is by reaction between hydrazines and 1:3-dicarbonyl compounds, e.g., hydrazine and acetylacetone form 3:5-dimethylpyrazole.

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_2\text{-CO·CH}_3 \\ CH_3\text{-CO} \end{array} \stackrel{CH}{\rightleftharpoons} \begin{array}{c} CH-\text{CO·CH}_3 \\ OH \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CH_3\text{-}C \\ CH_3\text{-}C \\ OH \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} CH_3\text{-}C$$

5-Pyrazolones are formed by reaction between hydrazines and  $\beta$ -ketonic esters, e.g., 3-methyl-1-phenylpyrazolone from phenylhydrazine and ethyl acetoacetate. This, on methylation, gives antipyrine (phenazone, 2:3-dimethyl-1-phenylpyrazol-5-one), which is used in medicine as a febrifuge.

Glyoxalines (iminazoles, imidazoles). Imidazole is isomeric with pyrazole, and occurs in the purine nucleus (p. 387) and in histidine (p. 323).

A general method for preparing imidazoles is by reaction between  $\alpha$ -dicarbonyl compounds, ammonia and an aldehyde.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R-C=O} \\ \text{R'-C=O} \end{array} + 2\text{NH}_3 + \text{R''-CHO} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{R-C} \\ \parallel^4 & 3 \parallel \\ \text{R'-C}^5 & \text{^2C-R''} \end{array} + 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$$

Glyoxal, ammonia and formaldehyde produce imidazole itself. This, however, is best prepared as follows: tartaric acid is treated with a mixture of concentrated nitric and sulphuric acids, the product, tartaric acid dinitrate ("dinitrotartaric acid"), then treated with formalin and ammonia solution, and the imidazole-4:5-dicarboxylic acid formed is then decarboxylated by heating with copper oxide.

Imidazole is a solid, m.p. 90°. It appears to be tautomeric (positions 4 and 5 are identical).

Oxazoles are formed by reaction between acid amides and  $\alpha$ -halogeno-ketones, e.g., acetamide and bromoacetone form 2:4-dimethyloxazole (the enol forms have been written to simplify the equation).

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-COH} \\ \parallel \\ \text{CHBr} \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \text{HN} \\ \parallel \\ \text{HO-C-CH}_3 \end{array} \xrightarrow{130^\circ} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{-C} \\ \parallel \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array} \xrightarrow{2\text{C-CH}_3} + \text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{HBr} \\ \parallel \\ \text{O} \end{array}$$

Only derivatives of oxazole are known.

iso-Oxazoles. These are formed by warming the mono-oximes of 1:3-diketones, e.g., 3:5-dimethylisooxazole from acetylacetonemonoxime.

Thiazoles may be prepared by reaction between an  $\alpha$ -chloro-carbonyl compound and a thioacid amide (enol forms have been written in the equation).

Thiazole itself may be prepared from chloroacetaldehyde and thioformamide. Thiazole is a liquid, b.p. 117°. Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> contains the thiazole nucleus.

Triazoles and tetrazoles are also known.

All are tautomeric substances. Osotriazoles may be prepared by oxidising

osazones (p. 444).

A very remarkable five-membered ring is that in sydnones. These were prepared by Earl and Mackney (1935), and the peculiar feature of these compounds is that it is not possible to give them a structure which represents covalent bonds by the usual paired electrons, e.g., sydnone (I, II, III). Dipole and infrared studies indicate this compound is a resonance hybrid; it has been named a

$$: NH \overset{CH=C-\bar{\bigcirc}:}{\overset{+}{N}H} \overset{CH=C-\bar{\longrightarrow}:}{\overset{+}{N}H} \overset{CH=C-\bar{\longrightarrow}:}{\overset{+}{N}H}$$

meso-ionic structure and may be written as (IV) (Baker et al., 1955). Sydnones possess an aromatic sextet; they undergo halogenation and nitration at the CH carbon atom.

#### SIX-MEMBERED RINGS

## PYRIDINE AND ITS DERIVATIVES

Pyridine occurs in the light oil fraction of coal-tar and in bone oil, and is a decomposition product of several alkaloids. Pyridine is obtained from light oil by treating the latter with dilute sulphuric acid. This dissolves pyridine and other basic substances. The acid layer is neutralised with

sodium hydroxide and the liquid repeatedly fractionated.

Pyridine is a colourless liquid, b.p. 115°, with a disagreeable odour. It is completely miscible with water and is hygroscopic. It is basic, and is only very slowly attacked by boiling concentrated nitric acid or chromic acid. It resembles benzene in many of its properties and this partly led Körner (1864) to adopt the ring structure for pyridine, a structure which is confirmed by synthesis.

Synthesis of pyridine. There are many methods available for the synthesis of pyridine, e.g.,

(i) By passing a mixture of acetylene and hydrogen cyanide through a

red-hot tube:

$$_{2}C_{2}H_{2} + HCN \longrightarrow N$$

(ii) By passing a mixture of formaldehyde (I part by volume), acetaldehyde (2 parts) and ammonia (I part) over heated alumina (other compounds are also formed).

(iii) By heating the hydrochloride of pentamethylenediamine and oxidising

the product, piperidine, with concentrated sulphuric acid at 300°:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{NH}_2\text{-}\text{HCl} \\ \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2 \\ \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2 \\ \\ \text{CH}_2\text{-}\text{CH}_2 \end{array} \\ \text{NH} + \text{NH}_4\text{Cl} + \text{HCl} \xrightarrow{\text{H}_5\text{SO}_4} \\ \end{array}$$

(iv) By heating pyrrole with methylene iodide and sodium methoxide at 200° (cf. p. 475):

Pyridine derivatives may be prepared by various methods. One important method is the *Hantzsch pyridine synthesis* (1882). A  $\beta$ -dicarbonyl compound (2 mol.) is condensed with an aldehyde (1 mol.) and ammonia (1 mol.). The dihydropyridine derivative is obtained, and this gives the pyridine derivative on oxidation with nitric acid, e.g.,

thydropyridine derivative is obtained, and this gives the pyridine derivative of sidation with nitric acid, e.g., 
$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C=CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \text{HN} \\ \text{H} \\ \text{OH} \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C=CH} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{C} \\ \text$$

This ester can be hydrolysed and then decarboxylated to 2:4:6-trimethyl-

If one molecule of ethyl acetoacetate and two molecules of acetaldehyde are used, the *dimethyl* derivative is obtained.

Reactions of pyridine. Pyridine can undergo substitution just as does benzene, but less easily than the latter. There are three possible monosubstitution products, and six disubstitution products if the two substituent groups are identical.

(i) At ordinary temperatures, pyridine adds on halogen to form dihalides,

e.g., C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>NBr}Br<sup>-</sup>. If, however, pyridine and bromine (or chlorine) are passed over a catalyst of pumice or charcoal at 300°, a mixture of 3-bromo-pyridine and 3:5-dibromopyridine is obtained; at 500° a mixture of the 2- and 2:6-bromo-derivatives is obtained. At 300° the reaction is probably electrophilic in character, whereas at 500° the mechanism is probably via free radicals.

3-Chloropyridine may be obtained by heating potassiopyrrole with chloroform and sodium ethoxide (see p. 749). 2- and 4-Chloropyridines may be obtained by diazotising the corresponding amino-compounds in concentrated hydrochloric acid and treating with cuprous chloride.

Halogen in the 2- or 4-position is reactive, being fairly readily replaced by OH, CN, NH<sub>2</sub>, etc. In this respect these halogeno-pyridines resemble o-

and p-chloronitrobenzenes (see later).

(ii) Pyridine reacts with nitric acid fairly readily only if a hydroxyl or an amino-group is present in the ring. Pyridine itself is nitrated to 3-nitro-pyridine by heating with concentrated sulphuric acid and potassium nitrate at 300°. 2- and 4-Nitropyridines may be obtained by oxidising the corresponding amino-compounds with hydrogen peroxide in sulphuric acid.

(iii) Sulphonation of pyridine is difficult, but when heated with concentrated sulphuric acid at 350° for some hours, pyridine gives pyridine-3-sulphonic acid. 2- and 4-Pyridinesulphonic acids may be prepared by oxidation of the corresponding thiols (prepared by the action of potassium hydrogen sulphide on the chloropyridine).

The sulphonic acid group can be replaced by hydroxyl or by the cyano-group. Fusion of pyridinesulphonic acid with potassium hydroxide is one method of preparing the monohydroxypyridines (pyridols). The structures of 2- and 4-hydroxypyridine have been the subject of much work. Originally, the hydroxy-structure, (I), was proposed, but it soon became apparent that this was unsatisfactory and so the ketonic formula (2-pyridone), (II), was proposed. X-Ray studies (Penfold, 1953) and infrared work (Gibson et al., 1955) have shown that, in the solid state, the structure is predominantly the amide form (II), and Mason (1957) has shown this is also the case in chloroform or carbon tetrachloride solution. On the other hand, 3-hydroxypyridine exhibits phenolic properties, but its structure contains a large proportion of the zwitterion (III).

(iv) Pyridine may be fairly easily mercurated in the 3-position with aqueous mercuric acetate.

(v) When heated with sodamide in toluene solution, pyridine forms 2-aminopyridine; excess of sodamide produces 2:6-diaminopyridine (Tschitschibabin (Chichibabin) reaction, 1914). Actually, the sodium salts are formed, but on treatment with water, are hydrolysed to the amine.

$$N + NaNH_2 \rightarrow N_{NH_2} + NaH \rightarrow N_{NHNa} + H_2$$

The three monoaminopyridines can be obtained by means of the Hofmann reaction on the amides of the pyridine monocarboxylic acids.

3-Aminopyridine can be diazotised easily; 2- and 4-aminopyridines are difficult to diazotise. Angyal et al. (1952), from an examination of the infrared absorption spectra, have concluded that 2- and 4-aminopyridine (and aminoquinolines) are mainly in the amino form (cf. the corresponding hydroxy compounds).

(vi) Pyridine is a strong tertiary base, forming salts with inorganic acids, e.g., pyridine hydrochloride or pyridinium chloride, C<sub>5</sub>H<sub>5</sub>NH}Cl<sup>-</sup>. Pyridine forms quaternary salts when heated with alkyl halides, e.g., pyridine methiodide

or N-methylpyridinium iodide, C<sub>5</sub>H<sub>5</sub>N·CH<sub>3</sub>I<sup>-</sup>. This, when heated at 300°,

gives 2- and 4-methylpyridines (cf. alkylanilines, p. 574).

(vii) Sodium and ethanol, electrolytic reduction, or catalytic reduction using nickel convert pyridine into piperidine (see later). On the other hand, when pyridine is heated with hydriodic acid at 300°, the ring is opened with the formation of *n*-pentane and ammonia.

(viii) Pyridine is oxidised by perbenzoic acid to pyridine-I-oxide. Dipole moment studies have shown it to be a resonance hybrid of the following

resonating structures (Linton, 1940; Ochiai, 1953):

In general, N-oxides may be prepared by direct oxidation with peracetic acid, but in a number of cases perbenzoic or monoperphthalic acid may be used.

(ix) When pyridine is treated with sodium, and the disodio-derivative so produced is exposed to the air, 4:4'-dipyridyl is formed:

$$2Na + 2 \underbrace{\hspace{1cm} N}_{N} \longrightarrow NaN \underbrace{\hspace{1cm} H \hspace{1cm} H}_{N} \longrightarrow NNa \xrightarrow{\hspace{1cm} O_{a}} N \underbrace{\hspace{1cm} N}_{N} N$$

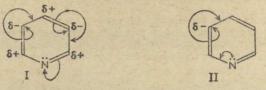
(x) When heated with *n*-butyl-lithium, pyridine forms 2-*n*-butylpyridine (Ziegler *et al.*, 1930).

Pyridine is a resonance hybrid of two Kekulé structures (the resonance energy is 31 k. cal./mole), and this leaves the lone pair of the nitrogen atom free to unite with a proton:

$$\bigcirc \longleftrightarrow \bigcirc \bigvee_{NH} \longleftrightarrow \bigcirc \bigvee_{NH} \longleftrightarrow - \bigvee_{NH}$$

In pyrrole the lone pair takes part in the resonance, and consequently is not so free to unite with a proton. Hence pyrrole is a much weaker base than pyridine.

Two types of electromeric effects are possible in pyridine, (I) and (II):



In (I) the 2, 4 and 6 positions are points of electron-deficiency, and hence attack at these positions is easy for nucleophilic reagents and difficult for electrophilic, and vice versa at positions 3 and 5; e.g., nitration and sulphonation (electrophilic reagents) give 3-substitution, whereas sodamide (the :NH<sub>2</sub>- ion is the attacking reagent, and is nucleophilic) gives 2-substitution. In (II), the 3- and 5-positions are points of high electron-density, and consequently will be attacked by electrophilic reagents as in (I). Positions 2, 4 and 6 are unaffected and hence attack at these points is difficult. In any case, substitution in pyridine is not so easy as in benzene, thereby resembling nitrobenzene rather than benzene. This may be due to the fact that since electrophilic reagents are used in acid solution, pyridine is converted into the pyridinium ion, thereby preventing the lone pair of the nitrogen atom from participating in the electromeric effect.

In pyridine each carbon atom supplies one  $p_s$  electron, and the nitrogen atom (in the trigonal state) also one  $p_s$  electron to form the "closed circuit". Pyridine is an even-membered ring, and so is an *alternant* compound (p. 528). The nitrogen atom, however, is strongly electron-attracting, and so the electron cloud

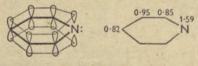


FIG. 30.3.

is concentrated round the nitrogen atom, thereby decreasing below unity all charge densities on the carbon atoms. Position 3 has the highest  $\pi$ -electron density, and so electrophilic substitution will occur here most easily. Nucleophilic substitution will occur most readily at position 4 and almost as easily at position 2; actually substitution in the latter position usually takes place in practice. Some other factors, e.g., bond order, polarisability, must therefore operate.

Pyridine finds great use in organic chemistry due mainly to its strong basic property and solvent properties. Because of its basic property, pyridine is used in many reactions where halogen acid is produced, or where it is desired to remove a molecule of halogen acid to form an unsaturated compound; e.g., acetylation (with acetyl chloride), benzoylation (with benzoyl chloride), removal of hydrogen bromide from bromosuccinic ester to form the unsaturated ester (ethanolic potassium hydroxide would saponify the ester at the same time). Pyridine is used as a halogen carrier in Dam's solution (pyridine, bromine and sulphuric acid dissolved in glacial acetic acid) which is used for the determination of the iodine number (p. 261) of unsaturated compounds. Pyridine is used as a catalyst in the formation of Grignard reagents, and also as a solvent in the estimation of active hydrogen (see p. 350); it may be used in epimerisation (p. 446). Pyridine dissolves copper oxide (to give a modified Fehling's solution) and potassium permanganate, and these solutions may be used for oxidation purposes where aqueous solutions fail or are undesirable. Pyridine acts as a catalyst in the Perkin and Knoevenagel reactions, and forms complexes with many metallic salts and so may be used for their identification.

Pyridine homologues occur in coal-tar and bone oil. There are three methylpyridines and these are known as picolines. The methyl group in 2- and 4-picolines is reactive (cf. nitrotoluenes, p. 559); e.g., 2-picoline condenses with acetaldehyde in the presence of warm aqueous sodium hydroxide to form 2-propenylpyridine:

$$CH_3 + CH_3 \cdot CHO \xrightarrow{N_0OH} CH: CH \cdot CH_3 + H_2O$$

Oxidation of gaseous picolines with air at 380° over mixed vanadium—molybdenum oxides gives mainly the pyridine—aldehydes (Mathes et al., 1955). There are six dimethylpyridines (lutidines) and six trimethylpyridines (collidines).

Pyridinecarboxylic acids. There are three monocarboxylic acids, and each may be obtained by oxidising the corresponding picoline:

All three acids may be reduced to the corresponding piperidinecarboxylic acids by means of sodium and ethanol, or better, catalytically.

There are six pyridinedicarboxylic acids, but only two are important: quinolinic acid (pyridine-2: 3-dicarboxylic acid), which is an oxidation product of quinoline, and cinchomeronic acid (pyridine-3: 4-dicarboxylic acid), an oxidation product of isoquinoline.

Piperidine occurs in the alkaloid piperine. It may be prepared by reducing pyridine (see reaction vii), or by heating the hydrochloride of pentamethylenediamine:

$$\mathsf{CH}_2\overset{\mathsf{CH}_2\cdot\mathsf{CH}_2\cdot\mathsf{NH}_2\cdot\mathsf{HCl}}{\hookrightarrow} \longrightarrow \overset{\mathsf{CH}_2}{\overset{\mathsf{CH}_2}{\hookrightarrow}} \overset{\mathsf{CH}_2}{\overset{\mathsf{Na/C,H,OH}}{\hookrightarrow}} \overset{\mathsf{Na/C,H,OH}}{\overset{\mathsf{NH}_2}{\hookrightarrow}}$$

It is a colourless liquid, b.p. 106°, and gives the reactions of a secondary aliphatic amine. It is oxidised by concentrated sulphuric acid at 300° to pyridine

Methods of ring fission. Many heterocyclic compounds (containing nitrogen) occur naturally, and an extremely important step in the determination of their structure is to ascertain the disposition of the carbon atoms. A common procedure is to first reduce the heterocyclic compounds, and then open the ring of the product by the following methods (in which piperidine is used as the example):

(i) Secondary cyclic amines may be opened by treatment with 3 per cent.

hydrogen peroxide, e.g., piperidine gives 8-aminovaleraldehyde:

(ii) Von Braun's method (1910) may be used to open secondary cyclic amines by treating them with benzoyl chloride in the presence of aqueous

sodium hydroxide, adding phosphorus tribromide and cooled bromine to the product, and then distilling under reduced pressure, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{--CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{--CH}_2 \\ \text{NH} \xrightarrow{\text{C}_6\text{H}_6\cdot\text{COCl}} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{--CH}_2 \\ \text{benzoylpiperidine} \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{--CH}_2 \\ \text{Denzoylpiperidine} \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{--CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{--CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{--CH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2\text{--CH}_2 \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{NCBr}_2\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \\ \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{--CH}_2 \\ \text{Denzoylpiperidine} \\ \end{array} \\ \end{array}$$

It might be noted that this provides a good method of preparing 1:5-

dibromopentane.

(iii) von Braun cyanogen bromide reaction (1900). This is the reaction of a tertiary amine with cyanogen bromide to form an alkyl bromide and disubstituted cyanamide:

$$R_3N + BrCN \longrightarrow RBr + R_2N \cdot CN$$

This reaction has been used in alkaloid chemistry for opening tertiary cyclic amines. The tertiary amine is treated with cyanogen bromide, and the product is then heated with constant boiling hydrobromic acid, e.g., an N-alkylpiperidine:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2\\ \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2\\ \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2\\ \end{array} \\ \text{N·R} \xrightarrow{\text{BrCN}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2\\ \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2\\ \end{array} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2\text{Br}\\ \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{NR·CN} \end{array} \\ \rightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{Br} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_4 \cdot \text{NH·R} \\ \text{CH}_2\text{--}\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NR·CN} \end{array}$$

(iv) Piperidine may be converted into n-pentane by heating with hydriodic acid at 300°:

(v) Hofmann's exhaustive methylation method (1881) is the most important method of opening heterocyclic rings, but it fails with unhydrogenated pyridine, quinoline and isoquinoline derivatives, and with hydrogenated quinolines. Consider piperidine as our example. This is heated with methyl iodide and the quaternary salt produced, dimethylpiperidinium iodide, is converted into the corresponding hydroxide by moist silver oxide. When this is heated, water is eliminated, a hydrogen atom in the β-position with respect to the nitrogen atom being eliminated, and the ring opened at the nitrogen atom on the same side as the β-hydrogen atom eliminated. The product is dimethyl-4-pentenylamine and this, when the above treatment is repeated, eliminates water (the β-hydrogen atom being removed) and trimethylamine, forming penta-1:4-diene. This, however, isomerises to piperylene (penta-1:3-diene). This isomerisation is general, an isolated double bond system always rearranging, if possible, to form a conjugated system (the double bond moving to the middle of the chain; see also p. 319 for mechanism):

Quinoline is present in coal-tar and bone oil, and was first obtained from the alkaloid quinine by alkaline decomposition. It is obtained commercially

from coal-tar, or prepared synthetically.

(i) Skraup synthesis (1880) is a very important method, and may be carried out by heating a mixture of aniline, nitrobenzene, glycerol, concentrated sulphuric acid and ferrous sulphate. Nitrobenzene acts as an oxidising agent, and ferrous sulphate makes the reaction less violent. Arsenic acid may be used instead of nitrobenzene and the former is better since the reaction is less violent. The mechanism of the Skraup synthesis is not certain. It is generally believed that the glycerol is converted into acraldehyde, and that the aniline adds on to this in the 3:4-positions (cf. p. 278):

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CHO} \\ \text{NH}_2 + \text{CH}_2 = \text{CH} - \text{CHO} \\ \hline \\ \text{NH} & \text{CH}_2 \\ \hline \\ \text{CH} & \text{CH}_2 \\ \hline \\ \text{CH}_2 \\ \hline \\$$

In general, the Skraup synthesis may be carried out with any primary aromatic amine in which at least one position *ortho* to the amino-group is vacant. If both o-positions are vacant, then both quinolines are usually formed e.g.,

$$CI$$
  $NH_2$   $\rightarrow$   $CI$   $N$   $+$   $N$ 

(ii) Friedländer's synthesis (1882) is another important method for synthesising quinoline and many of its derivatives; e.g., quinoline is formed when o-aminobenzaldehyde is condensed with acetaldehyde in aqueous sodium hydroxide:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CHO \\ NH_2 \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} CHO \\ CHO \end{array} \xrightarrow{NaOH} \begin{array}{c} CHO \\ CH \end{array} \xrightarrow{-H_2O} \begin{array}{c} CHO \\ N \end{array}$$

Derivatives of quinoline may be prepared by condensing o-aminoaldehydes or ketones with any aliphatic aldehyde or ketone containing the grouping —CH<sub>2</sub>·CO—:

$$\begin{array}{c} X \\ \downarrow \\ C = O \\ NH_2 \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} CH_2 - Y \\ CO - Z \end{array} \xrightarrow{NaOH} \begin{array}{c} X \\ \downarrow \\ N \end{array} + {}_2H_2O \end{array}$$

e.g., if X is  $\mathrm{CH_3}$ , Y  $\mathrm{CO_2C_2H_5}$ , and Z  $\mathrm{CH_3}$  (i.e., the compound YCH2•COZ is ethyl acetoacetate), the product is 2:4-dimethylquinoline-3-carboxylic ester.

(iii) Condensation between  $\beta$ -ketonic esters and primary aromatic amines produces quinolines, the nature of the product depending on the conditions,  $\epsilon$ .g., aniline and E.A.A.

(a) 
$$CO_2C_2H_5$$
  $CO_2C_2H_5$   $CO_2C_2H_5$   $CH$   $CO_2C_2H_5$   $CH$   $CO_2C_2H_5$   $CH$   $CO_2C_2H_5$   $CO_2C_2H_5$ 

(iv) Homologues of quinoline may be prepared by the **Doebner-Miller synthesis** (1881); e.g., aniline and paraldehyde heated with sulphuric acid form quinaldine (2-methylquinoline).

The Doebner-Miller synthesis is applicable to almost any aromatic primary amine, and the aldehyde may also be any  $\alpha$ :  $\beta$ -unsaturated aldehyde (cf. mechanism of Skraup reaction):

$$N_{\rm H_2}$$
 + R'-CH=CR-CHO  $\rightarrow$   $R_{\rm R'}$ 

(v) Pfitzinger reaction (1886). This is carried out by heating isatin with alkali in the presence of a ketone, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_2\text{Na} \\ \text{CO} \\ \text{NOH} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_2\text{Na} \\ \text{CO} \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_3\text{·CO·CH}_3} \begin{array}{c} \text{CO}_2\text{Na} \\ \text{CO}_2\text{Na} \\ \text{CO}_2\text{Na} \\ \text{CO}_2\text{Na} \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$$

Quinoline is a colourless oil, b.p. 238°, sparingly soluble in water but completely miscible with ethanol and ether. It is a tertiary base and forms salts with inorganic acids; with alkyl halides it forms quinolinium salts (quaternary salts), e.g., with methyl iodide it forms quinoline methiodide or N-methylquinolinium iodide, (I); with methyl sulphate it forms quinoline methylmethosulphate or N-methylquinolinium methyl sulphate, (II):

$$\ddot{c}_{H_3}^{\dagger}$$
I-  $\ddot{c}_{H_3}^{\dagger}$ SO<sub>4</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>

Quinoline is oxidised by permanganate to quinolinic acid (p. 761). The methyl group in the 2-position (quinaldine) and in the 4-position (lepidine) is very active and undergoes many condensation reactions (see cyanine dyes, p. 796).

The nitrogen atom deactivates the pyridine ring, and so substituents enter the benzene ring. Calculation of charge densities shows that position 8 will be attacked preferentially by electrophilic reagents, and position 2 by nucleophilic reagents. In practice, nitration gives a mixture of 5- and 8-nitroquinolines; bromination also occurs in the 5- and 8-position under conditions of high acidity (de la Mare et al., 1958).

isoQuinoline is always present with quinoline, and it may be separated from the latter by converting both compounds into their sulphates; these are separated by fractional crystallisation from ethanol in which isoquinoline sulphate is only sparingly soluble. isoQuinoline is a decomposition product of many alkaloids. It may be synthesised in many ways, e.g., (i) By passing benzylidene-ethylamine vapour through a red-hot tube:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_3 \\ CH_2 \\ N \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 4 & 3 \\ 7 & 8 & 1 & N \end{pmatrix} + 2H_2 \\ CH & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & N \end{pmatrix} + 2H_2 \\ \end{array}$$

(ii) By heating ammonium homophthalate, treating the product, homophthalimide, with phosphoryl chloride, and reducing the dichloro-compound so produced with hydriodic acid and red phosphorus:

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
CH_2 \cdot CO_2 NH_4 \\
CO_2 NH_4
\end{array}
\longrightarrow
\begin{array}{c|c}
CH_2 \\
CO \\
NH
\end{array}
\longrightarrow
\begin{array}{c|c}
CH \\
CO \\
NH
\end{array}
\longrightarrow
\begin{array}{c|c}
CH \\
CCI
\end{array}
\longrightarrow
\begin{array}{c|c}
CH \\
CCI$$

\text{N}
\tex

(iii) By heating the oxime of cinnamaldehyde with phosphorus pentoxide:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH} \\ \text{CH} \\ \text{CH} \\ \text{N-OH} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} \\ \text{CHOH} \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} \text{CH} \\ \text{CHOH} \end{array}$$

The formation of isoquinoline, and not quinoline, can only be explained by assuming that the oxime first undergoes the Beckmann transformation (p. 667), which is then followed by ring closure.

In addition to the above methods for *iso*quinoline itself, there are also three important methods which have a wide application. In the first two, partially reduced *iso*quinolines are obtained, but these may be readily dehydrogenated to the corresponding *iso*quinolines.

Bischler-Napieralski reaction (1893). In this method a β-phenylethylamide is made to undergo cyclodehydration to a 3:4-dihydroisoquinoline by heating with phosphorus pentoxide or anhydrous zinc chloride at high temperature; or better still, with phosphoryl chloride, phosphorus pentachloride, etc., at lower temperatures (about 140°).

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_2 \\ CH_2 \\ R \cdot CO \end{array} \xrightarrow{Pd} \begin{array}{c} -H_2O \\ \\ R \end{array} \xrightarrow{Pd} \begin{array}{c} Pd \\ \\ R \end{array}$$

Dehydrogenation to the *iso*quinoline may be effected by heating the dihydrocompound with sulphur or selenium, or catalytically with, e.g., palladium black. *iso*Quinolines can be obtained directly by using β-hydroxyethylamides, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \\
\text{CH} \\
\text{NH}
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{CH}_2 \\
\text{NH}
\end{array}$$

Pictet–Spengler reaction (1911). Condensation between a  $\beta$ -arylethylamine and an aldehyde in the presence of a large excess of hydrochloric acid at 100° produces a 1:2:3:4-tetrahydroisoquinoline. This reaction, however, is successful only if the aromatic nucleus contains a hydroxyl or an alkoxyl group para to the position of ring closure. The tetrahydro-compound may be

converted into the isoquinoline by catalytic dehydrogenation, or by heating with an ethanolic solution of iodine containing sodium acetate, or by heating with mercuric acetate.

Pomeranz-Fritsch reaction (1893). This is carried out by condensing an

aromatic aldehyde with an aminoacetal and then cyclising the product with sulphuric acid, e.g.,

If an aromatic ketone is used instead of the aldehyde, then the product is a I-substituted isoquinoline, e.g.,

isoQuinoline is a colourless solid (or liquid), m.p. 23°, and resembles quinoline in many of its properties. It is oxidised by permanganate to a mixture of phthalic and cinchomeronic acids (p. 761).

Nitration occurs at positions 5 and 8 in isoquinoline; the former agrees with expectations from charge densities, but position 7 would have been expected to be the next position to be attacked (cf. quinoline).

Acridine occurs in the anthracene fraction of coal-tar. It may be synthesised by passing the vapour of benzylaniline or o-aminodiphenylmethane through a red-hot tube (the outside numbering is to be used now):

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_2 & \longrightarrow & 7 & 8 & 9 & 1 \\ \hline & NH & \longrightarrow & 7 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 1 \\ \hline & NH_2 & \longrightarrow & 10 & 1 & 1 \\ \hline & NH_2 & \longrightarrow & NH_2 & \longrightarrow$$

Acridine is a colourless solid, m.p. 110°; it is a tertiary base, but weaker than quinoline. It is the parent substance of a number of dyes and antiseptics (p. 795).

# SIX-MEMBERED RINGS WITH ONE OXYGEN ATOM

The simplest six-membered rings with one oxygen are 1:2- (or  $\alpha$ -) pyran, (I), and 1:4- (or  $\gamma$ ) pyran, (II). These, however, are unknown, but dihydro-

(III) and tetrahydropyran (IV) have been prepared. The pyranose sugars (p. 452) are derivatives of tetrahydropyran.

The corresponding keto-derivatives of the pyrans are known as pyrones:

γ-Pyrone may be prepared by heating chelidonic acid just above its m.p. (262°). Chelidonic acid (a naturally occurring substance) may be prepared from acetone and ethyl oxalate.

$$\begin{array}{c} (\text{CH}_3 + 2(\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_3)_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{C}_3\text{H}_4\text{ONa}} & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5} \\ \text{CH}_3 & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{OH})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5} & \xrightarrow{\text{HCI}} & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}=\text{C}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}} & \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}=\text{CH}} \\ \text{CO} & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}=\text{C}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}} & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}=\text{C}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}} & \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}=\text{CH}} \\ \text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{OH})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}=\text{C}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}} & \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}=\text{C}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}} \\ \text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{OH})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}=\text{C}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}} & \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}=\text{C}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}} \\ \text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{OH})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}=\text{C}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}} & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}=\text{C}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}} \\ \text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{OH})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}=\text{C}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}} \\ \text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{OH})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_2\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 & \xrightarrow{\text{CH}=\text{C}\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{H}} \\ \text{CH}=\text{C}(\text{OH})\cdot\text{CO}_2\text{C}_$$

 $\gamma$ -Pyrone, m.p. 32·5°, is basic and shows some aromatic properties, and so it is possibly a resonance hybrid with contributing structures such as (III).  $\gamma$ -Pyrone does not form an oxime or phenylhydrazone. Similarly, the structure of  $\gamma$ -pyrone salts may be (VI) rather than (IV). According to Brown (1951), however, calculation of general charge distribution suggests (V) as the structure of the oxonium salts (this corresponds to (II) for  $\gamma$ -pyrone itself).

2:6-Dimethyl- $\gamma$ -pyrone is a very important derivative of  $\gamma$ -pyrone from the theoretical point of view, since its salt with hydrochloric acid was the first oxonium salt to be prepared (Collie and Tickle, 1890); the structure of this salt corresponds to that of (V) or (VI). The dimethyl- $\gamma$ -pyrone may be prepared from the copper salt of ethyl acetoacetate as follows:

Condensed pyrone systems are important since many occur naturally:

 $\alpha$ -Flavone is 2-phenyl-y-chromone, and many of its derivatives are the colouring matter of flowers:

## SIX-MEMBERED RINGS WITH TWO NITROGEN ATOMS

These are known collectively as the diazines, and the o-, m- and p-isomers are called pyridazines (oiazines), pyrimidines (miazines) and pyrazines (piazines), respectively:

The corresponding benzodiazines are:

The pyrimidines are a particularly important group of compounds, since the pyrimidine nucleus occurs in purines, nucleic acids and synthetic barbiturates (p. 387). Barbituric acid may be regarded as 2:4:6-trihydroxypyrimidine, and pyrimidine may be prepared from barbituric acid as follows:

A very important general method for preparing pyrimidines is the condensation between a \beta-dicarbonyl compound and a compound which has the amidine structure, e.g., 6-hydroxy-2: 4-dimethylpyrimidine from ethyl acetoacetate and acetamidine.

Some pyrimidines found in nucleic acids are:

## QUESTIONS

1. Discuss the preparation and properties of furan, furfural and furoic acid.
2. Describe the preparation of thiophen, and compare and contrast the behaviour of the sulphur atom in thiophen with that in the alkyl sulphides.

3. Describe the preparation of pyrrole and compare and contrast its reactions with

phenol and aniline. 4. Name the compounds and state the conditions under which they are formed when

pyridine is treated with:—(a) reducing agents, (b) oxidising agents, (c) Br<sub>2</sub>, (d) HNO<sub>2</sub>, (e) H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, (f) (AcO)<sub>2</sub>Hg, (g) NaNH<sub>2</sub>, (h) MeI, (i) Na.
5. Write an essay on the methods of opening heterocyclic rings containing one nitrogen atom.

 Suggest a synthesis for each of the following compounds:—(a) furan-3: 4-dicarboxylic acid, (b) 6-nitroquinoline, (c) 7-methylquinoline, (d) 2:3:4-trimethylquinoline, (c) 7-nitro-2:3-dimethylquinoline, (f) 1-methylisoquinoline.

7. Write an account of the analytical and synthetic evidence for the structure of:—

(a) quinoline, (b) isoquinoline.

8. Discuss the use of E.A.A. in the synthesis of heterocyclic compounds.

9. Define and give examples of:—(a) Paal-Knorr synthesis, (b) Knorr synthesis, (c) Hantzsch synthesis, (d) Fischer's indole synthesis, (e) Hofmann's exhaustive methylation method, (f) Skraup's synthesis, (g) Friedlander's quinoline synthesis, (h) Hantzsch pyridine synthesis, (i) Doebner-Miller synthesis, (j) Lipp synthesis, (k) Reissert synthesis, (1) Chichibabin reaction, (m) Pfitzinger reaction, (n) Bischler-Napieralski reaction, (o) Pictet-Spengler reaction, (p) Pomeranz-Fritsch reaction.

10. Discuss the procedure and results of the exhaustive methylation of: -(a) 3-methyl-

pyrrole, (b) indole, (c) quinoline, (d) isoquinoline.

11. Describe the preparation and properties of:—(a) pyrazole, (b) imidazole, (c) oxazoles, (d) iso-oxazoles, (e) thiazole, (f) sydnones, (g) pyrones, (h) pyrimidine, (i) antipyrine.

## READING REFERENCES

The Ring Index, Reinhold Publishing Co.

Handbook for Chemical Society Authors, Special Publication No. 14 (1960).

Mitchell, British Chemical Nomenclature, Arnold (1948).

Sidgwick, The Organic Chemistry of Nitrogen. Oxford Press (New Ed. by Taylor and Baker, 1937). Ch. XVII. Five-Membered Rings. Ch. XVIII. Six-Membered Rings.

Morton, The Chemistry of Heterocyclic Compounds. McGraw-Hill (1946).

Schofield, The Nitration of Heterocyclic Nitrogen Compounds. Quart. Reviews (Chem.

Soc.), 1950, 4, 382.
Elderfield (Editor), Heterocyclic Compounds, Wiley (1950-).

Acheson, An Introduction to the Chemistry of Heterocyclic Compounds, Interscience Publishers (1960).

Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1953). Vol. IV, Ch. 8. Heterocyclic Chemistry.

Finar, Organic Chemistry, Vol. II. Longmans, Green (2nd ed., 1959). Ch. XII. Heterocyclic Compounds Containing Two or more Hetero-atoms.

Organic Reactions, Wiley. Vol. VI (1951), Ch. 2, 3, 4. The Synthesis of isoQuinolines. Vol. VII (1953). Ch. 2. The Skraup Synthesis of Quinolines. Ch. 4. The von Braun Cyanogen Bromide Reaction.

Katritzky, The Chemistry of the Aromatic Heterocyclic N-Oxides, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1956, 10, 395. Baker and Ollis, Meso-ionic Compounds, ibid., 1957, 11, 15.

#### CHAPTER XXXI

#### DYES

For a substance to act as a dye, certain conditions must be fulfilled, viz.,

(i) It must have a suitable colour.

(ii) It must be able to "fix" itself or be capable of being "fixed" to the fabric.

(iii) When fixed, it must not be fugitive, i.e., it must be fast to light; and it must be resistant to the action of water and, to a certain extent (the more the better), to dilute acids and alkalis (particularly the latter on account of the alkaline nature of "washing soda").

Many natural dyes have been known for a long time. These were obtained from animal and vegetable sources. Today, however, practically all dyes are synthetic and are prepared from aromatic compounds, the only source of which, until recently, was coal-tar: hence the name coal-tar dyes.

source of which, until recently, was coal-tar; hence the name coal-tar dyes.

Colour. When white light (7,500-4,000 A) falls on a substance, the light may be totally reflected or totally absorbed. In the former case, the substance appears white; in the latter, black. If a certain proportion of the light is absorbed and the rest reflected, the substance has the colour of the reflected light. If only a single band is absorbed, the substance has the complementary colour (of the absorbed band).

TABLE IX

(A)	Colour absorbed	Visible (complementary) colour
4000-4350 4350-4800 4800-4900 4900-5000 5000-5600 5600-5800 5800-5950 5950-6050 6050-7500	violet blue green-blue blue-green green yellow-green yellow orange red	yellow-green yellow orange red purple violet blue green-blue blue-green

If a substance absorbs all visible light except one band, which it reflects, the substance will have the colour of that reflected band. Thus a substance can appear blue because it absorbs the yellow portion of the spectrum only; or because it absorbs all the visible spectrum except blue. The shades, however, will be different. Apparently no dye gives a pure shade, i.e., does not reflect only one band of wave-lengths; e.g., malachite green reflects green light, but also, to a small extent, red, blue and violet.

Many substances which appear to be colourless nevertheless have absorption spectra, but in these cases, absorption takes place in the infrared or

ultraviolet, and not in the region of the visible spectrum.

## RELATION BETWEEN COLOUR AND CONSTITUTION

Graebe and Liebermann (1868) observed that organic colouring matter could be reduced to colourless compounds, and that when the hydrogen atoms (added by the reduction) were removed by oxidation, the original colour was regenerated. It was Witt (1876), however, who was the first to point out that colour usually appeared in an organic compound when that compound contained certain "unsaturated groups". Consider, for example, diazomethane and glyoxal. These are the simplest coloured organic compounds. Both contain "unsaturated groups", and on reduction diazomethane gives methylhydrazine, and glyoxal, glycol; both reduction products are colourless. It is important to note that the carbonyl group is referred to as an unsaturated group (by Witt). Its presence in a compound, however, does not give rise to unsaturation (see definition of unsaturation, p. 8). As will be seen subsequently, a more appropriate term than unsaturated group would have been a group with multiple bonds.

Witt called these groups with multiple bonds chromophores; some of the

more important chromophoric groups are:

Nitro 
$$-N \stackrel{O}{=} O$$
 nitroso  $-N = O$ ; azo  $-N = N - O$  azoamino  $-N = N - O$  azoamino  $-N = N - O$  thiocarbonyl  $C = O$  thiocarbonyl  $C = O$ 

Witt named the compound containing the chromophoric group, a chromogen. Experience has shown that if the chromogen contains only one chromophore, it is usually coloured (yellow), and that the depth of colour (see later) generally increases with the number of chromophores. A single C=C group is not sufficient to produce colour, but if a number of them are present in conjugation, colour may develop, e.g., CH2=CH2 is colourless; CH3 (CH=CH)6 CH3 is yellow.

Witt also pointed out that the presence of certain groups in the chromogen deepen colour, although these groups are not chromophores. These he called auxochromes. Auxochromes are acidic (phenolic) or basic, the most

important being: OH, NH<sub>2</sub>, NH·R and NR<sub>2</sub>.

Radicals which bring about deepening of colour are known as bathochromic groups, and those which bring about the opposite effect, hypsochromic groups. Deepening of colour (in colour chemistry) means the change in colour as follows: yellow-orange-red-purple-violet-bluegreen-black. Since visible colour is the complementary colour of the absorbed band, bathochromic groups shift the absorption maxima from the violet towards the red (i.e., they lower the frequency of the light absorbed). Conversely, hypsochromic groups shift the absorption maxima from the red to the violet (i.e., they raise the frequency of the light absorbed). Experience has shown that auxochromes are usually bathochromic, and that replacement of hydrogen in the NH2 group by R or Ar generally has a bathochromic effect. On the other hand, acetylation of OH or NH, (i.e., replacement of hydrogen by an acetyl group) generally has a hypsochromic effect.

Nietzki (1879) stated that increase in molecular weight deepened colour; e.g., substitution of a naphthalene nucleus for benzene in azo-dyes, deepens the colour from yellow to red. Schütze (1892) showed that there were many exceptions to Nietzki's rule (it was Schütze who introduced the terms bathochrome and hypsochrome). Piccard (1913) also found that Nietzki's rule was not always true, and showed that in these cases the introduction of the heavier group introduced a second absorption band at the blue end of the spectrum.

It has already been pointed out that in order to act as a dye, a substance must be capable of fixing itself or being fixed to the fabric. No chromogens act as a dye; the presence of a salt-forming group is necessary. AuxoDYES 773

chromes are such groups and so, apart from their auxochromic properties (of deepening colour), they are also necessary to make the chromogen a dye. Thus auxochromes perform two functions. The sulphonic acid and carboxyl groups possess very little auxochromic properties; their presence, however, makes a chromogen a dye, the sulphonic acid group making the dye soluble in water, and the carboxyl group usually enabling the dye to form lakes (see later).

Armstrong (1885) pointed out that quinones (o- and p-) are coloured, and suggested that all colouring matters of known structure could generally be represented by a quinonoid structure. This meant that if the quinonoid structure was present, the substance would be coloured; if absent, colourless. This view was accepted quickly, but before long it was shown that the quinonoid formula could not be given to some coloured compounds, e.g., fulvenes. It is important to note, however, that these compounds all contain conjugated double bonds (see later).

Armstrong's quinonoid theory was very useful since it stimulated further work on this problem of the relation between colour and constitution.

Armstrong believed that the quinonoid structure accounted for the colour of nitrophenols but no proof of this belief was forthcoming until Hantzsch (1906) prepared the two kinds of ethers (p. 627). Hantzsch was thus led to believe that change in colour involved a change in structure, and he also thought that the quinonoid structure was essential for the production of colour in compounds containing benzene rings. As time went on, however,

$$\bigcap_{\mathrm{NO_2}}^{\mathrm{OH}} = \bigcap_{\mathrm{NO_2H}}^{\mathrm{O}}$$

Hantzsch changed his views about the significance of conjugation with respect to colour, and by 1919, he believed that some other factor played a part, viz., the state of the mloecule as a whole, and that it cannot be represented by a static formula (inset).

The relation between colour and constitution discussed above is empirical, and it is only recently that some headway has been made on the theoretical side of the problem. When light (this term will be used for electromagnetic waves of any wavelength) is absorbed by a molecule, the molecule undergoes transition from a state of lower to a state of higher energy. If E1 is the original energy content of the molecule and  $E_2$  the higher energy content, then  $hv = E_2 - E_1 = \Delta E$ , where h is Planck's constant and v the frequency of the absorbed light. molecule is monatomic, the energy absorbed can only be used to raise the energy levels of the electrons, thereby changing the atom from its ground state to some excited state. If, however, the molecule consists of more than one atom, the light absorbed may bring about changes in electronic, rotational or vibrational energy. Since electronic transitions are associated with large amounts of energy relative to rotational and vibrational transitions,  $\Delta E$  is large for the former, i.e., v is large (and consequently the wavelength is short); for the latter, ΔE is small, i.e., ν is small (and consequently the wavelength is long). Thus changes in electronic states give absorption (or emission) in the visible and ultraviolet parts of the spectrum, whereas changes in rotational and vibrational energies give absorption (or emission) respectively in the far and near infrared. Since we are concerned with colour, we shall deal mainly with the visible part of the spectrum.

As we have seen (p. 23) an electron must occupy some particular orbital. Thus  $\Delta E$  must have definite values (for physically stable molecules, i.e., molecules not undergoing any type of dissociation), and hence the frequency of the light absorbed (or emitted) will have definite values, i.e., each value will be associated with a particular line in the spectrum. In complex molecules there will be a very large number of possible excited states, and since, when we examine the absorption spectrum of a compound, we are dealing with very large numbers of molecules, all these excited states will be produced (under the right conditions), i.e., the spectrum will consist of a very large number of lines, and where these

lines are very close together (owing to the values of AE being very close), bands will appear in the spectrum (see also later). Thus the absorption spectra of complex molecules will appear as bands, these bands appearing in definite regions. It is the existence of these bands in definite parts of the spectrum that gives rise to colour. In practice the *first* absorption band of a compound is the most important, *i.e.*, the band which occurs at the *lowest* frequency ( $\Delta E$  smallest), and is due to transition from the ground state to the lowest (first) excited state.

Not only must the frequency of the light be considered, but also whether transitions between different energy levels in the molecule can occur, i.e., whether they are "permitted" or "forbidden" transitions. The probability of transition is related to the dipole moment of transition or transition dipole of the molecule. Light absorption by a molecule can occur only when the dipole moment changes in that molecule. The more symmetrical the molecule, the smaller is the possibility of a transition dipole, and therefore the less likely is the molecule to absorb light. Calculation has also shown that the greater is the transition dipole, the greater is the intensity of the absorption. If the electric dipole is zero, absorption may still occur if the transition magnetic dipole is not zero, tut absorption of light in this case is usually weak. The introduction of any group into a molecule which decreases symmetry will thus increase the transition dipole and consequently increase the intensity of absorption. At the same time, however, new "resonance paths" may be introduced, and hence not only is there a change in intensity of absorption (due to an increase in the transition dipole), but there is also a shift of the band to longer wavelengths (see below).

As pointed out on p. 31, an important difference between V.B. and M.O. theories is that in the former electrons are dealt with in pairs, whereas in the latter they can be dealt with singly. This has produced some differences in the theory of light absorption, but nevertheless there is a large amount of ground

common to both theories (V.B. and M.O.).

According to the V.B. theory, oscillating (vibrating) electrons in a molecule permit absorption of light by the substance. When light is absorbed by a molecule, there is an induced oscillation of the electron pairs (in bonds) throughout the length of the molecule. Lewis and Calvin, and Mulliken have assumed that the electrons are oscillating in the ground state of the molecule, the character of these oscillations being the same as that of the induced oscillation in the excited state. When the molecule is raised to its first excited state, the absorption spectrum corresponding to this will have the lowest frequency. the molecule is raised to its second excited state, i.e., the amplitude of vibration of the oscillating electrons is increased, then the second absorption band will For a long molecule which has an absorption band of low frequency, the electron displacements must be small compared to the dimensions of the molecule, and so the first two excited states occur close together. If the frequency of the absorption band is relatively high for a *short* molecule, the electronic displacements are effectively those in the resonating structures (see later), and so the two excited states are widely separated.

Absorption of light raises the molecule from its ground state to an (electronically) excited state, and the difference in energy between the two states will determine the frequency of the light absorbed. Whether the molecule is symmetrical or not, oscillation of electron pairs produces a changing dipole moment, since they become associated with one or other of the bonded pair of Thus a changing dipole moment is present in both ground and excited It has been shown experimentally that the ease of excitation of the

following groups is:

$$N=0 > C=S > N=N > C=O > C=N > C=C$$

Thus colour (due to the presence of one of these groups) will deepen from right to left.

The smaller the difference in energy between ground and excited states, the lower is the frequency, or longer the wavelength, of the light absorbed. thing that decreases  $\Delta E$  will therefore displace the bands to the longer wavelengths. It has been shown that resonance among charged structures lowers the energies of both ground and excited states, and since charged structures contribute more to the excited than to the ground state, the energy of the former will be

DYES 775

lowered more than that of the latter. Thus, in general, colour is deeper the greater is the resonance among the various charged forms. It was Bury (1935) who first pointed out that many dyes could be represented as resonance hybrids.

All the above unsaturated groups (N=O, etc.) are easily polarised, i.e., readily produce charged structures in the excited state; hence their presence in a molecule tends to produce colour. Let us now consider benzene. Its charged structures contribute relatively little to the ground or excited states, and so benzene absorbs only in the ultraviolet, and the absorption is weak due to the symmetry of the molecule. In nitrobenzene the contribution of charged structures is larger than in benzene, and consequently the absorption band is shifted to the longer wavelengths (blue), thereby producing a pale yellow colour (which is the complementary colour of the blue band); the intensity of absorption is also increased because of the loss of symmetry. In p-nitroaniline there is a still larger contribution of charged structures, and hence the colour is deeper (orange-red) and still more intense.

The colour of quinones may be explained by resonance among charged

structures:

There are similar resonating structures for o-benzoquinone:

Thus all compounds which can be represented as a quinonoid structure (ortho or para) will probably be coloured. Moreover, since the number of resonating structures is greater for the o-compound than for the p-, the former will be deeper in colour (o-quinone is red and p-quinone is yellow).

Let us now consider aminoazobenzene. This is a resonance hybrid of a number of resonating structures of which only the following two will be considered:

Aminoazobenzene is yellow, only one charged structure contributing to the resonance. In acid solution, aminoazobenzene exists as the following resonance hybrid:

This is violet, and the deepening of colour is due to the fact that only charged structures contribute to the resonance hybrid. Here is an example where the addition of acid produces a greater bathochromic effect than is caused by adding an auxochrome.

From the foregoing it can be seen that chromophores give rise to the potentiality of colour by introducing the possibility of resonance involving charged structures. Auxochromes (the "key atoms" of which have a lone pair of electrons) change the colour of the chromogen by enhancing resonance, or by producing new forms involving separation of charge.

The longer the conjugation in a molecule, the deeper will be the colour. Conjugation of chromophores also deepens colour. Lewis and Calvin showed that the effect of conjugation is due to the increase in the number of electrons involved in the oscillation. When the conjugated system also contains atoms

such as N, S, O, etc., then the absorption frequency is much lower than that of the corresponding conjugated carbon compound, e.g., the absorption frequency of (II) is lower than that of (I) because (II) has a charge and is less symmetrical than (I). Furthermore, the more the charge can be made to reside on the terminal atoms, the longer will be the wavelength of the absorbed light.

$$C = C - C = C - C$$
  $O = C - C = C - \bar{O}$ 

From the foregoing account it might have been expected that resonance among an increasingly larger number of resonating structures would deepen colour. Consider crystal violet (III), and malachite green (IV).

$$Me_2N$$
 $C$ 
 $NMe_2$ 
 $NMe_2$ 
 $Me_2N$ 
 $Me_2N$ 

(III) has a larger number of resonating structures than (IV), yet the colour of the latter is deeper than that of the former. In (III) the charge on each N atom is approximately two-thirds that on each N in (IV). Therefore the charge that migrates in (III) is smaller than that in (IV), and so the absorption frequency

of (III) is higher (or the wavelength is shorter) than that of (IV).

There is, however, another factor introduced. When a molecule has a conjugated system extending in two directions, there may be two optical axes, i.e., absorption will give rise to excited states of different energies and therefore to absorption bands of different frequencies. Lewis and Calvin associated the band of lowest frequency with the longest axis in the molecule. This is called the x-band, and the band corresponding to the axis at right angles to this major axis is the y-band. Generally the x-axis of a molecule can readily be determined from the structural formula. (IV) has x- and y-bands, but (III) has only one band (the x- and y-axes in (III) are identical). Furthermore, if each axis acts independently, the x-bands of both (III) and (IV) should be about the same wavelength. This has been found to be so in practice. (IV), however, also has a y-absorption band, and it is the presence of this that makes the colour of (IV) different from that of (III).

Another factor that plays a part in colour is the steric factor. Brode et al. (1952) prepared the cis and trans forms of the following hydroxyazo compound

(azophenol):

The trans form is coloured, whereas the cis is colourless; the former can undergo resonance, but in the latter a planar configuration is prevented by the spatial effect of the o-methyl groups, and consequently resonance is inhibited and there is therefore no colour (this is an example of steric inhibition of resonance, p. 688). The colourless cis form, on standing, changes to the coloured trans form. It is of interest to note, in this connection, that fading, with azo-dyes, may be due, at least partly, to the conversion of the trans form into the cis.

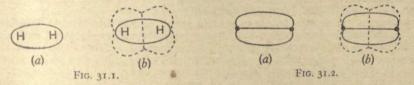
In general, when two conjugated fragments R and S are joined by a single bond, the electronic spectrum depends largely on the coplanarity between the

two fragments. If R and S lie in mutually perpendicular planes, the spectrum of the molecule is very similar to the superimposed spectra of RH and SH. Furthermore, in such a molecule the intensity of the absorption band usually decreases with increasing steric distortion from the coplanar configuration. There are, however, many cases where the frequency of a band remains unchanged or is shifted in either direction as the molecule is distorted.

Now let us consider the problem of light absorption from the M.O. point of view. In M.O. theory, an atom or a molecule is excited when one electron is transferred from an orbital of lower to one of higher energy. Such transitions can occur only between "permitted" orbitals. In atoms, allowable transitions are  $s \leftrightarrow p$ ,  $p \leftrightarrow d$ , etc.;  $s \longrightarrow s$  is forbidden (p. 24). In molecules, a g state must go to a u state, or vice versa; transitions  $u \longrightarrow u$ , and  $g \longrightarrow g$  are forbidden (p. 31).

An unsymmetrical molecule in the ground state has a dipole moment, and the dipole moment will generally change if the internuclear distances change. Absorption of light increases the amplitude of vibration. On the other hand, a symmetrical molecule will not have a dipole moment, but one may be produced in an excited state. In a diatomic molecule, transition of an electron from a bonding to the corresponding anti-bonding orbital is always an allowed transition.

Let us first consider the hydrogen molecule. The electron pair in the  $\sigma$ -bond can be excited, and excitation can be effected by absorption of light, e.g., the hydrogen molecule in the ground state (Fig. 1a) can be raised to its first excited state (Fig. 1b). In the ground state we have a og orbital (bonding orbital), and



in the first excited state we have one electron in the og orbital and the other electron in a ou orbital (antibonding orbital; see p. 30). Absorption of light of the requisite amount of energy can transfer one electron from a og to a ou orbital (this is an allowable transition). Now the amount of energy required to raise one electron from a og to a ou orbital is large, i.e., the frequency of the incident light must be high, and so the wavelength is very short. Thus the hydrogen molecule absorbs in the ultraviolet (we are not considering rotational and vibrational spectra).

The ethylene molecule in its ground state has, in addition to a  $\sigma$ -bond, a  $\pi u$ (bonding) orbital (Fig. 2a), and in the first excited state a  $\pi_g$  (antibonding) orbital (Fig. 2b) in which one electron has been excited (this is an allowable transition; see p. 31). Since it requires less energy to excite a  $\pi$ -electron than a  $\sigma$ -electron, the wavelength of the absorbed light necessary to raise one electron from a  $\pi u$  to a π<sub>g</sub> orbital will therefore be longer, i.e., the absorption spectrum of ethylene will

be in the longer wavelength region (than that of hydrogen).

In a compound containing two isolated double bonds (p. 83), the absorption band has about the same frequency as that of one double bond, but the intensity is greater. In a compound containing two bonds in conjugation we now have delocalised bonds. Let us consider the simple case of butadiene (p. 88, Fig. 4.1). (d) represents the molecule in the ground state; (e) and (f) represent excited states, that of (f) being a higher state. Excitation of butadiene can therefore cause the transfer of one electron from (b) to (e) or (f), or one from (c) to (e) or (f). If all these occurred, four absorption bands would be produced. Calculation has shown that the energy difference between (c) and (e) is lower than that of any other transition; (it should be noted that this transition is from the highest level of the ground state to the lowest level of the excited state; see also below). Thus when butadiene absorbs light (of requisite wavelength), the absorption band of longest wavelength corresponds to excitation of one electron from (c) to (e), and other bands of shorler wavelength correspond to the other transitions.

As we have seen (p. 88), in a conjugated system containing 2n π-electrons, there are n bonding and n antibonding orbitals. Calculation and experimental work have shown that as conjugation increases, the energy difference between the highest occupied and the lowest unoccupied  $\pi$ -orbitals decreases. Thus, as conjugation extends, the wavelength of the absorption band increases. When it reaches the *visible* part of the spectrum, colour will appear in the compound, e.g., in the polyenes,  $CH_3$ ·(CH = CH)n· $CH_3$ , when n = 6, the absorption band occurs in the blue region, and so the compound is yellow (complementary colour). Thus increased conjugation deepens colour, and this effect offers an explanation for Nietzki's rule (p. 772); e.g., when benzene rings are replaced by naphthalene, conjugation is extended.

Although it always requires less energy to transfer  $\pi$ -electrons than  $\sigma$ -electrons from one orbital to another, nevertheless all  $\pi$ -electrons are not transferred with equal ease. The energy required depends on the nature of the atoms embraced

in the M.O.

Now let us consider benzene. This is a symmetrical molecule, all the carbon atoms carrying equal charges of unity. Thus benzene has no transition dipole, and so would not be expected to absorb light. In practice, however, it shows weak absorption in the ultraviolet (one electron passes from (II) or (III) to (IV) or (V), p. 509; also see p. 775). When a nitro-group is introduced into the benzene ring, the molecule is no longer symmetrical; the nitro-group is conjugated with the rest of the molecule, and the carbon atoms are no longer equally charged (p. 528). Nitrobenzene therefore has a dipole moment and consequently a large transition dipole, and so strong absorption bands can be expected. Furthermore, because of the extended conjugation, the energy difference between the highest occupied and the lowest unoccupied orbitals is decreased, and so the absorption band will have a longer wavelength than that of benzene. It actually occurs in the blue region, and so nitrobenzene is yellow.

In aniline, the lone pair on the nitrogen atom becomes conjugated with the ring (p. 528), and the molecule now has a dipole moment and therefore a transition dipole. At the same time the absorption band of aniline has a longer wavelength than that of benzene. The absorption spectrum of aniline in acid solution, however, is almost the same as that of benzene. This is because the lone pair (on the "key atom", p. 518) has been removed from conjugation by co-ordina-

tion with a proton.

In p-nitroaniline, the conjugation is more extended than in either nitrobenzene or aniline, the separation of charge is greater, and so the wavelength of the absorbed light is longer. In general, any group which conjugates with the benzene ring will shift the frequency of the absorbed light to longer wavelengths (auxochromes behave like chromophores in this respect). Thus, for a compound to act as a dye (as far as colour is concerned), it is necessary for the molecule to have as large a changing dipole moment as possible, and this may be achieved by the presence of two or more polar groups as far apart as possible but connected by a conjugated system.

Free radicals are usually coloured, and this is because  $\Delta E$  is small.

The V.B. resonance approach to colour is satisfactory from a qualitative point of view, but the M.O. method appears to be more promising from a quantitative point of view. It has now been possible to calculate the light absorption of many molecules, and good agreement has been obtained between calculated and observed values. A simplified version of the M.O. method has now been developed (Coulson et al., 1947; Dewar, 1952).

NOMENCLATURE OF DYES. There is no systematic nomenclature of dyes. Many have names that have been given to them by the manufacturers, and so it is not unusual to find a given dye having several names. Generally, each dye has a trade name (or names), and the shade is indicated by a letter, e.g., Y or G = yellow (gelb); O = orange; R = red; B = blue. Sometimes the letter is repeated, the number of letters indicating roughly the intensity of the colour, e.g., methyl violet 6B is a very deep purple (close to blue). Sometimes the letters have other meanings, e.g., alizarin blue D; here the D means that this dye is a direct cotton colour; fuchsine S, the S indicating that the dye is an acid (sauer) colour. The letter F is often used to indicate that the dye is fast to light.

To avoid difficulties, the Society of Dyers and Colourists have compiled a Colour Index in which each dye is assigned its individual colour number (C.I. no.).

Classification of Dyes. Dyes are classified according to their chemical constitution or by their application to the fibre. The former is of theoretical value to the chemist but of little importance to the dyer who is mainly concerned with the reaction of dyes towards the fibre being dyed.

Chemical Classification. The chemical constitutions of dyes are so varied that it is difficult to classify them into distinct groups. The following classification is used in this book; in some cases a particular dye could be placed in one or other

(1) Nitro-dyes; (2) Nitroso-dyes; (3) Azo-dyes; (4) Diphenylmethane dyes; (5) Triphenylmethane dyes; (6) Xanthen dyes; (7) Diphenylamine dyes; (i) indamines, (ii) indophenols; (8) Heterocyclic dyes; (i) acridine group, (ii) quinoline group, (iii) azine group, (iv) thiazine group, (v) oxazine group; (9) Vat dyes: (i) indigoid group, (ii) anthraquinone group; (10) Anthraquinoid dyes (not vat dyes); (11) Sulphur dyes; (12) Phthalocyanine dyes.

## Classification according to application

I. Acid dyes are the sodium salts of sulphonic acids and nitrophenols. They dye animal fibres directly, but not vegetable; they are mostly applied to wool and silk.

2. Basic dyes are mostly the salts of colour bases (p. 786) with hydrochloric acid or zinc chloride. They dye animal fibres directly, and vegetable fibres which have been mordanted with tannin. Basic dyes are mostly applied to cotton and silk.

3. Direct dyes (substantive dyes) dye animal and vegetable fibres directly.

4. Mordant dyes (adjective dyes) dye neither animal nor vegetable fibres directly, but require a mordant. If the dye is acidic, the mordant must be basic; if the dye is basic, then the mordant must be acidic. For acidic dyes the mordants are metallic hydroxides; for basic dyes the mordant generally used is tannin (tannic acid). For metal mordanting, the fabric is dipped into a solution of the metallic salt and the "padded" fibre is then dipped into the solution of the dye; this produces an insoluble coloured lake which is fast to washing. For tannin mordanting, the fabric is dipped into a tannin bath, but since the lakes are dull and tend to be fugitive, potassium antimonyl tartrate (tartar emetic) is added to the tannin bath; this produces brighter and more insoluble lakes.

The colour of the lake depends on the metal used; the commonest metals are chromium, aluminium, iron and tin. Lakes are believed to be chelate compounds formed between the metal and the dye. The majority of mordant dyes owe their special properties to the presence of hydroxyl groups, and it appears that dyes containing one hydroxyl group will be mordanted if this hydroxyl group is ortho to a carboxyl, nitroso-, azo- or imino-group,

e.g.,

Chromium, aluminium and iron usually form chelate compounds containing three dye molecules. It is important to note that the sulphonic acid group cannot form lakes.

5. Vat dyes are insoluble in water, but are reduced by alkaline sodium hyposulphite (dithionite) to alkali-soluble compounds which are readily

reoxidised to the dye. These reduced compounds are often white or colourless, and so are called leuco-compounds. Dyes in the leuco-condition dye both animal and vegetable fibres directly. Vat dyes are used mostly on cotton.

6. Ingrain or developed dyes are dyes which are produced in the fibre.

They are divided into three broad groups:

(i) Ice-colours. These are produced generally on cotton by soaking the fibre (" padding ") in the secondary component (phenol or amine) of the azo-dye, and developing the colour by immersion in the diazonium salt solution. The name ice-colours was given because diazotisation and coupling are carried out at low temperatures.

(ii) A direct cotton-dye containing a free amino-group is applied to the fibre and diazotised by dipping into a nitrous acid solution, followed by dipping into a solution of the secondary component (phenol or amine), whereupon the azo-dye

is produced.

(iii) Aniline-black. This is produced by the oxidation of aniline hydrochloride either by oxidising the fibre impregnated with the amine salt, or by heating the fibre with a solution of aniline hydrochloride containing the oxidising agent (potassium chlorate, and vanadium salts as catalyst).

7. Sulphur dyes are dyes containing sulphur, and are soluble in aqueous sodium sulphide. Sulphur dyes are used exclusively for vegetable fibres, the dye being regenerated in the fabric by oxidation in the atmosphere, or by oxidation with dilute aqueous potassium dichromate.

8. Rayon dyes. Viscose rayon and cupra silk (p. 465) can be dyed in the usual way; acetate rayon, however, requires special dyes and techniques.

9. Organic pigments. These are not dyes in the sense that they dye fibres, but are solids which are generally insoluble in water, and are used for colouring paints, varnishes, etc. Some pigments have been made water soluble and then are used as dyes, e.g., phthalocyanine dyes.

Theory of Dyeing. It appears that the mechanism of dyeing depends on the nature of both the dye and the fibre. Textile fibres fall into two main groups, vegetable and animal. Vegetable fibres are cellulose fibres, e.g., cotton, linen, flax, hemp and jute. Animal fibres are protein fibres, e.g., wool, silk and leather.

There is also a third type of fibres, the artificial and synthetic fibres, e.g., rayons

(cellulose-type) and nylons (protein-type).

X-Ray photographs show that textile fibres are built up from long-chain molecules which are present as amorphous material containing crystalline regions which are known as crystallites or micelles. In these micelles the long-chain molecules are arranged parallel to one another, and are held together by the usual crystal forces, and in the case of wool, by cross-linkages between the chains. The edges of the micelles are not clearly defined but merge into amorphous material of the same chemical structure as the micelles, though not arranged in a definite oriented pattern. Thus a fibre consists of a number of micelles linked by amorphous parts.

When a fibre is placed in water, it swells owing to the osmotic pressure developed internally. It has been shown (by X-ray studies) that swelling takes place in the amorphous parts, producing open pores large enough to permit the passage of dye molecules. According to one theory of dyeing, the dye molecules enter the fibre by diffusing through these pores and then along the parallel

channels in the micellar portions.

In cellulose fibres, it has been suggested that the dye molecule is oriented parallel to the micellar chains, and is attached by hydrogen bonding. Since hydrogen bonding is not very strong, it is necessary to have a long dye molecule in order to get a number of points of attachment by hydrogen bonding. As the dye molecule becomes longer (bigger), however, it becomes less soluble and so less easily dissolved out, i.e., it becomes faster to washing. On the other hand, if the dye molecule becomes too large, it becomes too insoluble to be applied. In such cases it can be made soluble by reduction and then regenerated by oxidation, thereby giving a very fast dye since it is so highly insoluble. Furthermore, as

far as cellulose is concerned, the shape of the dye must be linear and planar. Thus, with azo-dyes the *cis* form, which is neither linear nor planar, cannot align itself parallel to the micellar chains (see p. 776).

Protein fibres contain free amino- and carboxyl groups. In acid solution the

carboxyl group is undissociated, and the charged  $-\mathrm{NH_3}$  ion is produced. These ions are capable of attracting dye anions to form salts. In alkaline solution it is the carboxylate ion,  $-\mathrm{CO_2}^-$ , which is present, and this is capable of attracting a dye cation to form a salt.

Nitro-dyes. These contain the nitro-group as the chromophore, and hydroxyl group usually as the auxochrome. The simplest nitro-dye is picric acid and was first prepared by Woulfe (1771), who noted its capacity to dye silk bright yellow; the colour, however, is fugitive. Picric acid is really the first synthetic dye, but it was Perkin (1856) who founded the synthetic coal-tar dye industry (see p. 798).

Martius Yellow (Manchester Yellow) is 2:4-dinitro-1-naphthol (I; Martius, 1864), and is prepared by nitrating 1-naphthol-2:4-disulphonic acid (cf. picric acid, p. 610). It has been used as the sodium, calcium or ammonium salt, but it

is fugitive and readily sublimes off the fibre. It has therefore been replaced by Naphthol Yellow S (Caro, 1879), 2:4-dinitro-1-naphthol-7-sulphonic acid (sodium or potassium salt; II). This is the most important nitro-dyestuff, and is now made by nitrating 1-naphthol-2:4:7-trisulphonic acid or 4-nitroso-1-naphthol-2:7-disulphonic acid. This dye has been very much used as an acid dye for wool and silk.

Lithol Fast Yellow GG (III) is a pigment, and is used as a non-poisonous substitute for *Chrome Yellow* (lead chromate). It is prepared by condensing p-chloro-o-nitroaniline with formaldehyde.

Nitroso-dyes. In these the chromophore is the nitroso-group, and the auxochrome the hydroxyl group. Nitroso-dyes are prepared by the action of nitrous acid on phenols and naphthols. Only the o-nitroso-compounds are useful, and these are used mainly in the form of their green iron lakes in dyeing and printing; e.g., Fast Green 0 (Fitz, 1875) is prepared by the action of nitrous acid on resorcinol, and it is the oxime form which produces the lakes (the oxime form is stabilised by intramolecual hydrogen bonding):

Two other nitroso-dyes are Gambine R (2-nitroso-1-naphthol, I) and Gambine Y (1-nitroso-2-naphthol, II).

## **AZO-DYES**

In azo-dyes the chromophore is the azo-group, and the common auxochromes are NH<sub>2</sub>, NR<sub>2</sub> and OH. Azo-dyes, as far as application is concerned, are classified as basic, acid, direct, ingrain and mordant dyes.

The structure of an azo-dye is readily found by reduction with stannous chloride and hydrochloric acid, or with sodium hyposulphite (dithionite), whereupon the azo-group is ruptured with the formation of primary amines which are then identified:

$$Ar \cdot N = N \cdot Ar' \xrightarrow{[H]} Ar \cdot NH_2 + Ar' \cdot NH_2$$

Basic Azo-dyes contain NH<sub>2</sub> or NR<sub>2</sub> as the auxochrome. Aniline Yellow (aminoazobenzene, p. 597) and Butter Yellow (p-dimethylaminoazobenzene, p. 598) are the simplest basic azo-dyes, but are of very little value as dyes since they are sensitive to acids. Phenylene Brown or Bismarck Brown G (Martius, 1863) was the first commercially important azo-dye, and was manufactured by the action of nitrous acid on excess of m-phenylenediamine. It consists of a mixture of the hydrochlorides of mono- and bisazo-derivatives (see p. 579). Chrysoidine G (Caro, 1875; Witt, 1876) is prepared by coupling diazotised aniline with m-phenylenediamine:

$$N_2$$
Cl +  $NH_2$   $NH_2$   $NH_2$   $NH_2$   $NH_2$   $NH_2$   $NH_2$   $NH_2$   $NH_2$ 

It is an orange dye, and is still used for dyeing cotton on a tannin mordant.

Acid Azo-dyes contain a sulphonic acid group. Methyl Orange (helianthin) is prepared by coupling diazotised sulphanilic acid with dimethylaniline:

It dyes only in fugitive shades; it is used as an indicator, being orange in alkaline solution and red in acid solution (cf. Congo red, below):

$$\bar{O}_3$$
S N=N-N-N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>
orange
 $\bar{O}_3$ S NH-N-N-(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>

Coupling diazotised sulphanilic acid with 1-naphthol gives Orange I (Griess, 1876), and with 2-naphthol it gives Orange II (Roussin, 1876). These Orange dyes were the first acidic azo-dyes to be put on the market.

Fast Red AV, (III), (Caro, 1877) is made by coupling diazotised naphthionic acid (p. 718) with 2-naphthol. Ponceau 2R, (IV), is prepared by coupling diazotised m-xylidine with the sodium salt of R-acid (p. 721).

Crystal Ponceau 6R is prepared by coupling diazotised 1-naphthylamine with the sodium salt of G-acid (p. 721).

Naphthol Blue Black B (Hofmann, 1891) is one of the most largely used black acid dyes. It is made by coupling H-acid with one molecule of diazotised p-nitroaniline in acid solution (coupling occurs in the 2-position), and then coupling the product, in alkaline solution, with one molecule of diazotised aniline (coupling occurs in the 7-position):

Direct Azo-dyes. Congo Red (Bottiger, 1885) is a bisazo-dye which is prepared by coupling tetrazotised benzidine with two molecules of I-naphthylamine-4-sulphonic acid:

This is red in alkaline solution, and its sodium salt dyes cotton a full red. Congo red was the first synthetic dye produced that was capable of dying cotton directly. It is very sensitive to acids, the colour changing from red

to blue in the presence of inorganic acids. This blue colour, *i.e.*, the deepening of colour, may be attributed to the formation of new structures similar to those of aminoazobenzene (see p. 775):

$$\begin{array}{c} NH_2 \\ N=N \\ N=N \\ NH=N \\ NH=N \\ NH=N \\ NH_2 \\ NH=N \\ NH=N$$

Stilbene dyes. These are examples of direct azo-dyes without the use of diazotisation and coupling, e.g., Sun Yellow (Walter, 1883) is made by heating 4-aminotoluene-2-sulphonic acid with sodium hydroxide solution. The structures of these stilbene dyes were elucidated by Green, Wahl et al. (1897–1908).

Ingrain Azo-dyes. These insoluble azo-dyes are known as azoic dyes. Dyeing with Para Red is carried out by "padding" the fibre with an alkaline solution of 2-naphthol containing Turkey-red oil, drying the cloth, and then immersing it in an ice-cold bath of diazotised p-nitroaniline:

$$NO_2$$
  $N_2CI + OH$   $NO_2$   $NO_2$   $N=N-OH$ 

The colour of ingrain azo-dyes can be varied from orange to blue by varying the amine component (diazotised), e.g.,

Mordant Azo-dyes. Chromium is the most important metal used in mordanting azo-dyes, producing the so-called azo-chrome mordant dyes. The fibre is mordanted by boiling with potassium dichromate solution, usually with a reducing agent such as formic, lactic, or oxalic acid (the dichromate is converted into chromic hydroxide).

Diamond Black F (Lauch and Krekeler, 1889) is one of the earliest chrome dyes, and is produced by coupling diazotised 5-aminosalicylic acid with 1-naphthylamine, and diazotising the product with 1-naphthol-4- or 5-sulphonic acid, e.g.,

Instead of mordanting the fibre first, the azo-dye may be applied to the fibre first, and then the dye "chromed" by boiling with sodium dichromate and a reducing agent. By this procedure the colour may be changed completely. Most of the azo-dyes that are "after-chromed" on the fibre are derived from chromotropic acid (1:8-dihydroxynaphthalene-3:6-disulphonic acid); e.g., Chromotrope 2B (Kuzel, 1890) is prepared by coupling p-nitroaniline with chromotropic acid:

This dyes wool a bluish-red; the colour is changed into blue to black by "after-

chroming ".

Cellulose acetate rayon dyes. It was found to be very difficult to dye rayon by the usual dyestuffs, since the dyeings were not fast. The first dyes specially designed for dyeing rayon were the *Ionamine dyes* (Green and Saunders, 1922). These are methyl-ω-sulphonates of insoluble aminoazo-compounds which are slowly hydrolysed in the hot dye bath (65–75°), giving formaldehyde bisulphite and the aminoazo-compound in a form readily absorbed by the fibre, e.g., Ionamine Red KA.

A more general method is one discovered independently by Shepherdson and Ellis (1923). The insoluble dye, by means of dispersing agents—originally sulphoricinoleic acid, but now replaced by more effective reagents—is prepared in a state of uniform fine dispersions in the dye bath. These dispersions are not satisfactory for all purposes.

## DIPHENYLMETHANE DYES

Auramine 0 was discovered independently by Kern and Caro (1883). They prepared it by fusing Michler's ketone (p. 665) with ammonium and zinc chlorides at  $150-160^{\circ}$ . It is now prepared by heating p:p'-tetramethyldiaminodiphenylmethane with sulphur, ammonium chloride and a large excess of sodium chloride

in a current of ammonia at about 200° (Sandmeyer, 1889); this produces Auramine Base. This, with hydrochloric acid forms the hydrochloride, Auramine O, a yellow basic dye. It has a low fastness, being readily hydrolysed to the corresponding ketone. Nevertheless, it is largely used for dyeing cotton, paper, leather, wool, silk and jute; it is also used for lake-making.

Auramine G (Grehn and Schmid, 1892) is made in a similar way from the condensation product of monomethyl-o-toluidine and formaldehyde, which is

heated with sulphur in a current of ammonia. Auramine G is a greenish-yellow basic dye.

## TRIPHENYLMETHANE DYES

Triphenylmethane dyes are obtained by the introduction of NH<sub>2</sub>, NR<sub>2</sub> or OH groups into the rings of triphenylmethane. The compounds so obtained are colourless—the leuco-compounds—and these, on oxidation, are converted into the corresponding tertiary alcohols, the colour bases, which readily change from the colourless benzenoid forms to the quinonoid dyes in the presence of acid, due to salt formation. The salts are easily reconverted into the leuco-base:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{leuco-base} & \xrightarrow{\text{oxidation}} & \text{colour base} & \xrightarrow{\text{acid}} & \text{dye} \\ \text{(colourless)} & \text{(colourless)} & \xrightarrow{\text{alkali}} & \text{(coloured)} \end{array}$$

Malachite Green (O. Fischer, 1877) is prepared by condensing dimethylaniline (2 molecules) with benzaldehyde (1 molecule) at 100° in the presence of concentrated sulphuric acid. The leuco-base produced is oxidised with lead dioxide in a solution of acetic acid containing hydrochloric acid; the resulting colour base gives malachite green with excess hydrochloric acid:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{CHO} + 2 & \text{N(CH}_3)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{H}_5\text{SO}_4} & \text{CH} & \text{N(CH}_3)_2 \xrightarrow{\text{[O]}} \\ \text{N(CH}_3)_2 & \text{N(CH}_3)_2 & \text{N(CH}_3)_2 \end{array}$$

Malachite green dyes wool and silk directly, and cotton mordanted with tannin. Fast Green or Brilliant Green (Bindschedler and Busch, 1879) is the sulphate of the corresponding ethyl derivative; it gives a more yellow shade than malachite green, and is also a powerful antiseptic.

**Pararosaniline** is prepared by oxidising a mixture of p-toluidine (1 molecule) and aniline (2 molecules) with arsenic acid or nitrobenzene:

In the newer process, pararosaniline hydrochloride is prepared by starting with aniline (2 molecules) and formaldehyde (1 molecule), and treating the product, 4:4'-diaminodiphenylmethane, with aniline hydrochloride in the presence of an oxidising agent:

$$2C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 + CH_2O \longrightarrow NH_2\cdot C_6H_4 - CH_2 - C_6H_4\cdot NH_2 \xrightarrow{C_6H_6\cdot NH_2\cdot HCl} (NH_2\cdot C_6H_4 - )_2C - C_6H_4 - NH_2\cdot Cl^-$$

Rosaniline, Magenta, Fuchsine (Verguin, 1859) is the o-methyl derivative of pararosaniline. It is produced by oxidising an equimolecular mixture of aniline, o- and p-toluidines, and their hydrochlorides, with nitrobenzene in the presence of iron filings. The product is a mixture of rosaniline and pararosaniline, in which the former predominates:

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_3 \\ H \searrow NH_2 \\ CH \longrightarrow H_2 + 2[O] + \\ H \searrow NH_2 \\ CH_3 \\ NH_2 \longrightarrow CH \longrightarrow NH_2 \\ CH_3 \\ NH_2 \longrightarrow CH_3 \\ NH_3 \longrightarrow CH_3 \\ NH_2 \longrightarrow CH_3 \longrightarrow CH_3 \\ NH_2 \longrightarrow CH_3 \\ NH_3 \longrightarrow CH_3 \longrightarrow CH_3$$

Crystals of rosaniline show a green metallic lustre, and dissolve in water to form a deep-red solution. This solution is decolorised by sulphur dioxide and is then known as Schiff's reagent, which is used as a test for aldehydes (see p. 160). The chemical changes involved in the preparation of Schiff's reagent are still uncertain.

Rosaniline (and pararosaniline) dyes wool and silk directly, producing a violet-red colour; cotton must first be mordanted with tannin.

Structure of rosaniline dyes. Determination of the structures of the rosaniline dyes was carried out by E. and O. Fischer (1878, 1880) as follows. Pararosaniline, on reduction, gives leucaniline (the leuco-base). This was shown to be a primary triamine which, on treatment with nitrous acid and subsequent boiling with ethanol, gave triphenylmethane (C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>16</sub>). Triphenylmethane, on treatment with fuming nitric acid, gave a trinitro-derivative which, on reduction, gave leucaniline, and this, on oxidation, gave pararosaniline base (the colour base):

Thus pararosaniline base is a triaminotriphenylcarbinol. Each benzene ring probably contains one amino-group since the colour base is synthesised from 2 molecules of aniline and one of p-toluidine. Also, nitration of triphenylmethane is likely to introduce one nitro-group into each ring, and furthermore, it is probable that each nitro-group is in the p-position (cf. diphenyland diphenylmethane). The positions of the three amino-groups, however, were found as follows. Condensation of benzaldehyde with aniline in the presence of zinc chloride gives diaminotriphenylmethane. This, on treatment with nitrous acid and followed by boiling with water, gives dihydroxytriphenylmethane which, on fusion with potassium hydroxide, gives p:p'-dihydroxybenzophenone. These reactions may be formulated as follows:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \text{CHO} + \\ \text{H} & \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CH}} \begin{array}{c} \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{(i) HNO}_9} \\ \text{OH} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{CO}} \begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \text{OH} \end{array}$$

The two amino-groups in diaminotriphenylmethane are therefore in the p-positions. Since p-nitrobenzaldehyde condenses with aniline to give a product which, on reduction, gives leucaniline, it follows that all three amino-

groups are in the p-positions to the methane carbon atom.

The structure of rosaniline was found in a similar manner. The hydrocarbon obtained was  $C_{20}H_{18}$ , and one structure that agrees with this is diphenyltolylmethane. The position of the methyl group in the tolyl ring is indicated by the fact that, in order to obtain rosaniline, o-toluidine must be used as one of the starting materials (see above). This position (ortho to the p-amino-group) is confirmed by condensing 4-nitro-3-methylbenzaldehyde with aniline, and reducing the product; leucorosaniline is obtained.

Aniline Blue (Girard and de Laire, 1861) is the diphenyl derivative of rosaniline, and is prepared by heating the latter with aniline and benzoic acid (the function of the acid in this reaction is obscure). The o-methyl group prevents phenylation of the amino-group in this ring (steric effect). If pararosaniline is used,

the triphenyl derivative is obtained.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH_3 & NH_2 \\ \hline NH_2 & + 2C_6H_5\cdot NH_2 & \longrightarrow \\ \hline NH_2 & NH\cdot C_6H_5 & CH_3 \\ \hline NH_2 & - C & NH\cdot C_6H_5 \\ \hline NH_2 & - C & NH\cdot C_6H_5 \\ \hline NH_2 & - C & NH\cdot C_6H_5 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Aniline Blue is readily sulphonated, the sulphonic acid group entering the substituted phenyl radicals. Nicholson (1862) thus prepared Alkali Blue (the monosulphonic acid) and Soluble Blue (the trisulphonic acid). These compounds dye wool and silk directly.

Crystal Violet (Kern, 1883) may be prepared by heating Michler's kelone with dimethylaniline in the presence of phosphoryl chloride or carbonyl

chloride. If the latter compound is used, then crystal violet may be prepared directly by heating carbonyl chloride and dimethylaniline:

A weakly acid solution of crystal violet is purple. In strongly acid solution the colour is green, and in still more strongly acid solution, the colour is yellow. The explanation of these colour changes may be as follows (cf. p. 775). In weakly acid solution crystal violet exists as the singly charged ion (I). In this state two-thirds of the charge can oscillate in the horizontal direction. In strongly acid solution, if crystal violet exists as the doubly charged ion (II), the whole unit of charge can oscillate in the horizontal

$$(CH_3)_2N \longrightarrow C \longrightarrow N(CH_3)_2$$

$$\uparrow NH(CH_3)_2$$

$$\downarrow NH(CH_3)_3$$

$$\downarrow NH(C$$

direction, and consequently the colour deepens (the vertical direction of oscillation is inhibited due to the fixation of the lone pair by proton addition). In very strongly acid solution another proton is added to form the ion (III) with three charges. In this ion relatively little resonance (with oscillation of charge) is possible, and consequently the colour lightens.

CC2

Rosolic acid, Aurin is prepared by diazotising rosaniline and boiling the diazonium compound with water. It crystallises in red prisms, which are soluble in alkalis to form intense red solutions. It is used as an indicator,

and has been used in the form of lakes for the printing of wall-papers. Paraaurin is the corresponding hydroxy-compound of pararosaniline.

## XANTHEN DYES

The parent substance of this group of dyes is **xanthen** (dibenzo-1: 4-pyran). This, on oxidation, yields **xanthone** (9-ketoxanthen) which, on reduction, yields **xanth-hydrol** (9-hydroxyanthen). This forms oxonium salts with inorganic acids (cf. p. 768):

Dyes are obtained from xanthen by the introduction of auxochromes into positions 3 and 6 (i.e., the p-positions with respect to the carbon atom linking the two benzene nuclei).

**Pyronines.** Pyronine G (Bender, 1889) is prepared by condensing formaldehyde (1 mol.) with m-dimethylaminophenol (2 mols.) in the presence of concentrated sulphuric acid, and then oxidising the leuco-compound with ferric chloride.

Pyronine G dyes silk and cotton mordanted with tannin a crimson red. Since two electronic structures are possible in which the conjugation is totally different, more information is necessary to say which form predominates, or even whether both forms are present.

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Me}_2\text{N} & \text{HO} \\ \text{H} & \text{HO} \\ \text{H} & \text{HO} \\ \text{H} & \text{NMe}_2 \\ \text{H} &$$

Phthaleins. A sub-group of the xanthen dyes is the phthaleins. These are obtained by condensing phenols with phthalic anhydride in the presence

of certain dehydrating agents, viz., concentrated sulphuric acid, zinc chloride or anhydrous oxalic acid.

Phenolphthalein (Baeyer, 1871) is not a xanthen derivative but a triphenylmethane derivative. Since, however, it is prepared from phenol and phthalic anhydride, it is more closely allied to the phthaleins in (preparation and properties), and hence is here considered in the phthalein group. Phenolphthalein is prepared by heating phthalic anhydride (r molecule) with phenol (2 molecules) in the presence of concentrated sulphuric acid:

It is a white crystalline solid, insoluble in water, but soluble in alkalis to form deep red solutions:

In the presence of excess strong alkali, the solution of phenolphthalein becomes colourless again due to the loss of the quinonoid structure and resonance (but see fluorescein, below).

Structure of phenolphthalein. Phthaloyl chloride condenses with benzene in the presence of aluminium chloride to form 3:3-diphenylphthalide (phthalophenone), (I). This, on heating with ethanolic potassium hydroxide, gives triphenylcarbinol-o-carboxylic acid, (II), which, on treatment with zinc dust and ethanolic sodium hydroxide, gives triphenylmethane-o-carboxylic acid, (III). This on dry distillation gives triphenylmethane, (IV). When 3:3-diphenylphthalide is nitrated, a mixture of two dinitro-derivatives is obtained. Reduction of these two dinitro-compounds results in the formation of two diamino-compounds, one of which, being much less soluble than the other, crystallises out first. This less soluble diamino-compound gives phenolphthalein when treated with nitrous acid. These reactions show that phenolphthalein contains the triphenylmethane nucleus, and that it is a dihydroxy-derivative of 3: 3-diphenylphthalide. The problem now is to ascertain the positions of the two hydroxyl groups. That they are in different rings is indicated by the fact that phenolphthalein is formed when phthalic anhydride (1 molecule) is heated with phenol (2 molecules). Thus, when 3:3-diphenylphthalide is nitrated, we may assume that the dinitro-compound produced contains one nitro-group in each benzene ring, the phthalic acid ring remaining unsubstituted (this ring may be regarded as already substituted, and hence the nitro-groups will enter the unsubstituted rings, and probably in the p-positions; cf. diphenyl). When phenolphthalein is fused with potassium hydroxide, it gives benzoic acid and

p:p'-dihydroxybenzophenone. Thus each hydroxyl group occupies a p-position with respect to the methane carbon atom. The foregoing reactions may therefore be formulated:

Fluorescein is a xanthen derivative, and is prepared by heating phthalic anhydride (1 molecule) with resorcinol (2 molecules) at 200°, or at 110-120° with anhydrous oxalic acid:

Fluorescein is a red powder insoluble in water. Since it is coloured, the non-quinonoid uncharged structure V has been considered unsatisfactory. Two quinonoid structures are possible in which the conjugation is totally different, one having the p-quinonoid structure, VI, and the other the o-quinonoid, VII (which contains tercovalent oxygen):

HO 
$$CO_2H$$
  $CO_2$   $CO_2$   $CO_2$ 

Davies et al. (1954) have examined the infrared absorptions of phenol, phenolphthalein, fluorescein, and some of their alkali derivatives, and have concluded that the classical representation of fluorescein (V) is to be preferred. (VI) is eliminated because of the absence of the characteristic absorption of the carboxyl group, and similarly, the frequencies of the carboxylate ion (in VII) are also absent.

Fluorescein dissolves in alkalis to give a reddish-brown solution which, on dilution, gives a strong yellowish-green fluorescence. The structure of the fluorescein anion is (VIII) (oxygen becomes tercovalent unielectrovalent only in acid solution). The sodium salt of fluorescein is known as **Uranine**, and dyes wool and silk yellow from an acid bath; the colours are fugitive.

Eosin (Caro, 1871) is tetrabromofluorescein, and is prepared by the action of bromine on fluorescein in glacial acetic acid solution:

Eosin itself is a red powder and so its structure may not be (IX), but may be (X) or (XI) (cf. fluorescein):

Eosin dyes wool and silk a pure red, with a yellow fluorescence in the case of silk. Eosin is also used as the lead lake *Vermilionette* for poster printing. Most red inks are dilute solutions of eosin.

Mercurochrome 220 is a derivative of fluorescein, and is used as an antiseptic.

$$(C_2H_5)_2N \xrightarrow{HO \quad H} O \\ H \quad O \quad H \\ C-O \quad (C_2H_5)_2N \xrightarrow{CO} O \\ CO \quad CO$$

The hydrochloride of Rhodamine B may be (XII) or (XIII) (cf. above):

Rhodamine 6G is the ethyl ester of diethylrhodamine.

$$\begin{array}{c} C_2H_5NH \\ \hline \\ C \\ \hline \\ CO_2C_2H_5 \end{array}$$
 or the o-form

The rhodamines are red basic dyes, the N-alklyated derivatives being more highly coloured than the unsubstituted compounds. They dye wool and silk directly, and cotton mordanted with tannin.

# DIPHENYLAMINE (QUINONE-IMINE) DYES

One group of these dyes is the Indamines (Nietzki, 1877). The simplest indamine is Phenylene Blue, and is prepared by oxidising a solution of a mixture of p-phenylenediamine and aniline with potassium dichromate in acetic acid-concentrated hydrochloric acid.

$$_{\mathrm{NH_{2}}}$$
  $^{\mathrm{NH_{2}}}$   $^{\mathrm{H}}$   $^{\mathrm{N}}$   $_{\mathrm{NH_{2}}}$   $^{\mathrm{N}}$   $^{\mathrm{N}}$   $_{\mathrm{NH_{2}}}$   $^{\mathrm{N}}$ 

The indamines (which form blue or green salts) are very sensitive to the action of acids, which hydrolyse them to quinones. Hence they are not used as dyes but mainly as starting materials for the manufacture of azines, thiazines and oxazines.

The Indophenols are another group of diphenylamine dyes. The simplest is Indophenol (Blue), and is prepared by oxidising a mixture of p-phenylenediamine and phenol with alkaline hypochlorite solution:

Indophenol is usually given the amino-structure and not the imino-structure because it is insoluble in alkalis but soluble in acids which hydrolyse them to quinones.

The indophenols are blue in colour, and owing to their sensitivity to acids, are not used now as dyestuffs, but only as the starting materials for various sulphur dyes.

### HETEROCYCLIC DYES

Acridine Group. Acridine dyes are all yellow to orange and brown, basic dyes; they are used in calico printing, dyeing cotton, silk and particularly leather. Some acridine dyes have medicinal and antiseptic properties.

3:6-Diaminoacridine is made by heating a mixture of *m*-phenylene-diamine, glycerol, oxalic acid and zinc chloride, and oxidising the leuco-compound (see p. 767 for numbering):

The corresponding sulphate is the antiseptic proflavine. On acetylating 3:6-diaminoacridine, methylating the 10-N atom by means of methyl

p-toluenesulphonate, and then hydrolysing the product with dilute hydrochloric acid, 3:6-diamino-10-methylacridinium chloride is produced. This is known as acriflavine, and possesses trypanocidal action (i.e., the power to kill trypanosomes which are micro-organisms causing sleeping sickness and other diseases). It has now been replaced by more potent trypanocides, but it is still used as an antiseptic:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{CH} \end{array}$$

Acridine Yellow is one of the more important acridine dyes, and is prepared from 2:4-diaminotoluene and formaldehyde:

Quinoline group. Most of these dyes are more important as photographic sensitisers than as dyes for fabrics.

Quinoline Yellow (Jacobsen, 1882) is the most important quinoline compound used as a dyestuff for textiles. It is prepared by condensing phthalic anhydride with quinaldine in the presence of zinc chloride.

This structure is probably incorrect, since the dye is coloured and so requires a charged structure; it also forms an N-methyl derivative which has almost the same absorption spectrum as Quinoline Yellow, thereby indicating a similarity in structure. Hence Quinoline Yellow is considered to be the following resonance hybrid (the *extended* conjugation in the dipolar ion should be noted).

$$\left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right) \xrightarrow[H]{\text{co}} \longleftrightarrow \left( \begin{array}{c} C_{\text{co}} \\ C_{\text{co}} \end{array} \right)$$

Cyanine (Quinoline Blue). The cyanine dyes contain two quinoline nuclei linked in the 4:4'-positions by a =CH— group. They were discovered by Williams (1856). They are too fugitive and apparently too expensive to be used as dyes. Vogel (1873) first discovered the photographic sensitising properties of cyanine. Ordinary silver halide photographic plates are sensitive only to the blue and violet regions of the spectrum. By adding a suitable cyanine compound the plates are made sensitive to other regions of the spectrum; yellow, orange, red or green. Plates can also be made sensitive to all parts of the spectrum; they are then said to be panchromatic.

Cyanine is formed by the air oxidation of a mixture of amylquinolinium and amyllepidinium iodides in the presence of aqueous alkali.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} C_{\delta}H_{11}-\stackrel{\uparrow}{N} & \xrightarrow{C_{\delta}}H_{11}-\stackrel{\downarrow}{N} & \xrightarrow{C_{\delta}}H_{11}-\stackrel{\downarrow}{N} & \xrightarrow{C_{\delta}}H_{11} \\ \hline \\ C_{\delta}H_{11}-\stackrel{\downarrow}{N} & \xrightarrow{C_{\delta}}H_{11} & \xrightarrow{} & \xrightarrow{C_{\delta}}H_{11}-\stackrel{\downarrow}{N} & \xrightarrow{C_{\delta}}H_{11} \\ \hline \\ C_{\delta}H_{11}-\stackrel{\downarrow}{N} & \xrightarrow{C_{\delta}}H_{11} & \xrightarrow{} & \xrightarrow{C_{\delta}}H_{11}-\stackrel{\downarrow}{N} & \xrightarrow{C_{\delta}}H_{11} \\ \hline \end{array}$$

isoCyanine dyes contain two quinoline nuclei linked in the 2:4'-positions by a =CH—group. The first isocyanine was Ethyl Red (Hoogewerff and van Dorp, 1883), and is prepared from quinoline and quinaldine ethiodides by air oxidation in the presence of alkali.

$$\begin{array}{c|c} & & & & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & & & \\ & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ & & \\ &$$

Ethyl Red sensitises plates evenly from orange to the ultraviolet.

Pseudocyanine dyes contain two quinoline nuclei linked in the 2:2'-positions by a =CH— group. They are prepared by the action of ethanolic potassium hydroxide on a mixture of a 2-iodoquinoline alkiodide and a quinaldine alkiodide, e.g.,

The pseudocyanines are sensitisers for the blue to the green part of the spectrum. Acidification destroys the colour of cyanine dyes. This is due to the fact that both nitrogen atoms become charged, a proton is taken into the chain, and so resonance is prevented between the two nitrogen atoms (see p. 775).

Sensitol Red or Pinacyanole (König, 1905) is a carbocyanine, and sensitises in the red-to-orange region. Carbocyanines are compounds containing two quinoline nuclei linked in the 2:2'-positions by =CH—CH=CH—. Sensitol Red is prepared by the action of excess ethyl orthoformate on quinaldine ethiodide in boiling pyridine solution.

The isomeric 4:4'-carbocyanines are known as *kryptocyanines*, and are sensitisers for the red and infrared regions. 2:4'-Carbocyanines are known as *dicyanines*.

Azine Dyes. Perkin (1856), in search for the synthesis of the alkaloid quinine, oxidised crude aniline sulphate with potassium dichromate, and obtained a black precipitate from which he extracted a mauve colouring matter with methylated spirit. Perkin found that this material had the properties of a dye. This was the first synthetic dye to be used, and was used for dyeing silk under the name of Aniline Purple or Tyrian Purple. Aniline Purple was the first basic dye to be used, but no method was known (when it was discovered) for applying it to cotton. Perkin and Pullar, independently in 1857, discovered the general method of applying basic dyes to cotton mordanted with insoluble inorganic compounds of tannin. Aniline Purple was used in France under the name of mauve, and the dye afterwards became known by this name; it is also known as mauveine.

Perkin found that his material contained two products, one from pure aniline—pseudo-mauveine, and the other from aniline and o-toluidine (the latter was an impurity in crude aniline)—mauveine. The structure of pseudomauveine was established by Nietzki who prepared it by oxidising a mixture of p-phenylenediamine and diphenyl-m-phenylenediamine:

$$C_6H_5\cdot NH$$
  $NH\cdot C_6H_5$   $+$   $NH_2$   $NH_2$   $NH_2$   $NH_2$   $NH_3\cdot NH$   $NH_2$   $NH_2$   $NH_2$   $NH_2$ 

The structure may be the p-quinonoid instead of the o- shown above (cf. fluorescein, etc.).

Mauveine is a mixture of compounds of the type

More useful dyes than Mauveine are the Safranines—these are more strongly basic than the mauveines. Safranine T (Williams, 1859) is prepared by oxidising a mixture of 2:5-diaminotoluene, o-toluidine and aniline with sodium dichromate and hydrochloric acid (an indamine is formed as an intermediate).

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \\ \text{H}_2\text{N} \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{Me} \\ \text{NH}_2} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{Me} \\ \text{NH}_2} \begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{N}} \begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{N}} \begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{array}$$

It is a red basic dye, dyeing wool, silk and "tanned" cotton red shades.

Indulines (Caro, 1863) are phenylamino-derivatives of the mauveines, and are prepared by heating a mixture of aminoazobenzene, aniline and its hydrochloride under pressure. They are very much used for colouring leather polishes, for printing cotton and for newspapers.

Induline Blue 6B is insoluble in water (as are other indulines), but is made water soluble by sulphonation; the alkaline solutions are used as dyes and for making

lakes and inks.

$$\begin{array}{c} C_{6}H_{5}\cdot NH \\ C_{6}H_{5}\cdot NH \end{array} \begin{array}{c} NH\cdot C_{6}H_{5} \\ NH\cdot C_{6}H_{5} \end{array}$$

Thiazine dyes. Lauth's Violet (1876) was the first thiazine dye to be prepared; it is made by oxidising with ferric chloride in hydrochloric acid a hydrochloric acid solution of p-phenylenediamine saturated with hydrogen sulphide.

Methylene Blue (Caro, 1876) may be prepared in a similar way to Lauth's violet, but p-aminodimethylaniline is used instead of p-phenylenediamine. A better preparation is to oxidise a mixture of p-aminodimethylaniline and

dimethylaniline with potassium dichromate in the presence of sodium thiosulphate and aluminium sulphate (Bernthsen). The zinc double chloride is used in dyeing, and is largely used for dyeing cotton mordanted with tannin. Methylene Blue, free from the zinc, is used in calico printing, as an indicator and in medicine.

Oxazine dyes. Meldola's Blue or Naphthol Blue (1879) is prepared by the

action of excess p-nitrosodimethylaniline hydrochloride on 2-naphthol in hot methanol solution.

It is used commercially as the zinc double chloride for dyeing cotton mordanted with tannin; it dyes the fabric an indigo blue. It is also used as a leather dye.

### VAT DYES

Indigoid Group. India appears to be the birth-place of indigo—indigotin is its official name. It is the oldest known dye—mummy cloths, 5000 years old, have been found that were dyed with indigotin. Woad, which is an impure form of indigotin (and is obtained from the plant Isatis tinctoria), contains a small amount of indican which is the glucoside of indoxyl:

Indigotin used to be obtained from plants of the *indigofera* group, but is now prepared synthetically. These plants do not contain indigotin but indican which, on hydrolysis with hydrochloric acid or by enzymes which occur in the crushed plant, is converted into indoxyl and this, on oxidation by atmospheric oxygen, gives indigotin:

Structure of indigotin. Vapour density determination shows that the molecular formula of indigotin is  $C_{16}H_{10}O_2N_2$ . Oxidation of indigotin with nitric acid gives two molecules of isatin only, two oxygen atoms being added on in the process. This implies that the indigotin molecule contains two identical units joined together, and that each unit, when indigotin is oxidised, gives a molecule of isatin. There are three possible structures of indigotin which meet these requirements:

The carbon skeletons of these are different, viz.,

Synthesis (iv) below, in particular, indicates (I), and this structure is supported by the fact that on hydrolysis with dilute alkali, indigotin gives anthranilic

acid and indoxyl-2-aldehyde. Only structure (I) can give rise to these two products. Actually, all three compounds (I), (II) and (III), are known: (I) is indigotin, (II) isoindigotin, and (III) indirubin. Furthermore, indigotin is the trans-isomer of (I) (see below).

Synthesis of indigotin. Many syntheses of indigotin are known, and they may be divided into two groups:

A. Syntheses of historical and theoretical interest (these show the structure of

indigotin.) All are due to Baeyer.

(i) When isatin is treated with phosphorus pentachloride and the product, isatin chloride, reduced with zinc dust in glacial acetic acid, indoxyl is formed and this, on atmospheric oxidation, gives indigotin (Baeyer, 1878):

$$\begin{array}{c} O \\ H \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ H \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ O \\ \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c}$$

(ii) When o-nitrobenzaldehyde is warmed with acetone in the presence of a little sodium hydroxide, indigotin is formed (Baeyer, 1882):

$$\begin{array}{c}
2 & \stackrel{\text{CHO}}{\text{NO}_2} + 2\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \xrightarrow{\text{NaOH}} \\
& \stackrel{\text{CO}}{\text{C=C}} & \stackrel{\text{NH}}{\text{CO}} + 2\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}
\end{array}$$

(iii) Bromination of o-nitrocinnamic acid, followed by treatment with ethanolic potassium hydroxide, produces o-nitrophenylpropiolic acid. This, on heating with glucose and aqueous sodium hydroxide, gives indigotin, possibly via isatogenic acid (Baeyer, 1880):

$$\begin{array}{c|c} CH = CH \cdot CO_2H & \text{(i) Br}_{\bullet} \\ NO_2 & \text{(ii) KOH/C}_{\bullet}H_{\bullet}OH \\ \hline \\ & & \\ \hline \\ & & \\$$

(iv) o-Nitrophenylacetylene, produced by heating o-nitrophenylpropiolic acid, forms the copper salt when treated with ammoniacal cuprous chloride. On treatment with potassium ferricyanide, this salt is converted into a diyne

derivative which, by means of concentrated sulphuric acid, is converted into di-isatogen and this, on reduction with aqueous ammonium polysulphide, gives indigotin (Baeyer, 1882):

$$\begin{array}{c|cccc} C:C:CO_2H & \xrightarrow{\text{heat}} & C:CH & \xrightarrow{\text{CuCl}} & C:CCu & \xrightarrow{\text{K}_8\text{Fe}(CN)_8} \\ \hline NO_2 & NO_2 & & & & & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & NO_2 & & & & & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & NO_2 & & & & & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & \\ NO_2 & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & & & \\ \hline NO_2 & & &$$

This synthesis shows clearly that the carbon skeleton of indigotin is

C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>—C—C—C—C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub> (cf. above). B. Commercial syntheses of indigotin. Natural indigotin is now produced only on a very small scale. It is interesting to note that Noelting (1886) expressed the opinion that although Baeyer had synthesised indigotin (in 1878), he (Noelting) did not think it was possible to manufacture synthetic indigotin on a scale large enough to compete with natural indigotin:

(i) Anthranilic acid (prepared from naphthalene as the starting material) is heated with chloroacetic acid and the product, phenylglycine-o-carboxylic acid, is heated with a mixture of potassium hydroxide and sodamide. Indoxylic acid is thereby produced, and this decarboxylates into indoxyl which, on exposure to air, is oxidised to indigotin:

$$\begin{array}{c|c} \hline \text{CO}_2\text{H} + \text{CH}_2\text{CI} \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} & \longrightarrow & \text{CO}_2\text{H} & \xrightarrow{\text{KOH}} \\ \hline \text{NH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO}_2\text{H} & \longrightarrow & \text{CO}_2\text{H} & \longrightarrow & \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \hline \hline \\ \hline \text{CO}_2\text{H} & \longrightarrow & \text{CO}_2\text{H} & \longrightarrow & \text{CO}_2\text{H} & \longrightarrow & \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \hline \\ \hline \text{NH} & \xrightarrow{\text{CO}_2}\text{H} & \longrightarrow & \text{CO}_2\text{H} & \longrightarrow & \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \hline \\ \hline \text{NH} & \xrightarrow{\text{CO}_2\text{H}} & \longrightarrow & \text{CO}_2\text{H} & \longrightarrow & \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \hline \\ \hline \text{NH} & \xrightarrow{\text{CO}_2\text{H}} & \longrightarrow & \text{CO}_2\text{H} & \longrightarrow & \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \hline \\ \hline \text{NH} & \xrightarrow{\text{CO}_2\text{H}} & \longrightarrow & \text{CO}_2\text{H} & \longrightarrow & \text{CO}_2\text{H} \\ \hline \\ \hline \end{array}$$

This method is due to Heumann (1896).

(ii) Aniline is heated with chloroacetic acid, the product, phenylglycine, converted into a mixture of its sodium and potassium salts, and these fused with sodamide and a mixture of sodium and potassium hydroxides at 220-240°. Indoxyl which is thereby obtained is converted into indigotin by atmospheric oxygen (the "mixed salt" requires a lower temperature of fusion, and consequently the yield of indoxyl is better):

This method was first used in 1890, the fusion, however, being carried out with potassium hydroxide alone (Heumann). In 1896 this method was abandoned, and method (i) was used due to the cheap cost of phthalic anhydride from naphthalene. This oxidation was successful due to the accidental breaking of a thermometer, an accident which led to the discovery in 1893 that mercury catalyses the oxidation of naphthalene with sulphuric acid. Furthermore, method (i) gave better yields than (ii). About 1898, however, it was found that the addition of sodamide in the fusion in method (ii) increased the yield, and so (ii) was used again. Still later the preparation of phenylglycine was modified as follows. Formaldehyde is converted into its bisulphite compound on treatment with an aqueous saturated solution of sodium hydrogen sulphite at 50–80°. This compound is then warmed with aniline at 50–70°, then treated with aqueous sodium cyanide, and the product hydrolysed with water at 70°:

$$\begin{array}{c} \mathrm{CH_{2}O} + \mathrm{NaHSO_{3}} \longrightarrow \mathrm{CH_{2}(OH) \cdot SO_{3}Na} \xrightarrow{C_{6}H_{5} \cdot \mathrm{NH} \cdot \mathrm{CH_{2} \cdot SO_{3}Na}} \\ \xrightarrow{\mathrm{NaCN}} \mathrm{C_{6}H_{5} \cdot \mathrm{NH} \cdot \mathrm{CH_{2} \cdot CN}} \xrightarrow{H_{2}\mathrm{O}} \mathrm{C_{6}H_{5} \cdot \mathrm{NH} \cdot \mathrm{CH_{2} \cdot CO_{2}H}} \end{array}$$

(iii) Aniline, on treatment with ethylene oxide, forms N-phenyl-2-hydroxyethylamine and this, on fusion with a mixture of sodium and potassium hydroxides at 200°, gives the sodium (and potassium) alkoxide. When this sodium salt is heated with sodamide and a mixture of sodium and potassium hydroxides at 200°, the N-sodio-derivative is produced. This is dehydrogenated on heating rapidly to 300°, and on rapid cooling to 235°, ring closure takes place with the formation of the sodium salt of indoxyl. This, when treated with water and allowed to stand exposed to the air, gives indigotin:

Properties of indigotin. Indigotin is a dark blue powder with a coppered lustre. It is insoluble in water, but when its paste is agitated with alkaline sodium hyposulphite in large vats, the insoluble indigotin is reduced to the soluble leuco-compound, *indigotin-white*:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \\ \text{NH} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \\ \text{CO} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{NH} \\ \text{CO} \\ \text{ONa} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{NH} \\ \text{ONa} \end{array}$$

The material to be dyed is soaked in this alkaline solution and then exposed to the air, whereupon the original blue dye is regenerated in the cloth.

In vat-colour printing (of calico), "local dyeing" is achieved by making the dye pigment into a thick paste (by means of a "thickener", e.g., starch), and applying this locally in the presence of alkali and a reducing agent, e.g., sodium formaldehyde-sulphoxylate (Rongalite, formosul), CH<sub>2</sub>(OH)·SO<sub>2</sub>Na, which is

prepared by reducing formaldehyde bisulphite with zinc and acetic acid. The colour is finally developed by means of an oxidising agent, e.g., sodium nitrite.

In textile printing, e.g., shirtings, dress materials, etc., indigotin-white is not sufficiently stable to be used. Hence textile printing (and ordinary dyeing) may be effected by first converting indigotin into indigosol 0 by treating indigotin-white with chlorosulphonic acid in the presence of pyridine. This produces the disulphuric ester which, by means of sodium hydroxide, is converted into its sodium salt, indigosol O. This is readily applied to animal or vegetable fibres

by soaking the fabric in the solution, and then oxidising the indigosol O in *acid* solution (with sodium nitrite) to the original insoluble vat dye. Here we have an example of a vat dye being applied without the vatting process. Indigosol O is stable in neutral or alkaline solution, but is hydrolysed to indigotin-white in acid solution.

When heated with concentrated alkali, indigotin gives a brownish-red solid which, on distillation, gives aniline. Aniline was actually first obtained this way (Fritzsche, 1840). When refluxed first with dilute alkali and then with sulphuric acid, indigotin gives anthranilic acid. If the acid stage is omitted, indoxyl-2-aldehyde can be isolated, but this tends to condense with the anthranilic acid; the acid decomposes this complex and also any free aldehyde.

With metals indigotin forms complexes, the structure of which is not certain,

but is probably chelate.

Two geometrical isomers are possible for indigotin:

Derivatives of both are known, but the stable form is the *trans-*; X-ray analysis shows that the indigotin molecule contains a centre of symmetry. There is, however, some evidence to show that it is the *cis-*form which is produced in the cloth, and that it slowly changes into the stable *trans-*form.

The colour of indigotin requires explanation by charged structures, e.g., the o-quinonoid charged structure (IV) is a possibility; at the same time, this structure would be stabilised by hydrogen bonding:

An alternative charged structure for indigotin is V; this does not involve any quinonoid structures, but it is again stabilised by hydrogen bonding. Furthermore, the presence of this resonating structure may be used to explain the

conversion of the labile cis-form into the stable trans-form since it contains a single bond linking the two units together. If we imagine that the cis form is formed first, and that (VI) is the main contributing resonating structure, then due to the repulsion between the strongly electron-attracting oxygen atoms, and the attraction between the negatively charged oxygen atom and the positively charged nitrogen atom, rotation will take place about the

C—C single bond to give the stable trans-form V. This form is so stabilised by intramolecular hydrogen bonding that it cannot be isomerised to the cis form by the action of light (Brode et al., 1954). The problem, however, cannot be regarded as settled. According to Holt et al. (1956), the hydrogen bonding in indigotin is intermolecular and not intramolecular; thus (VII) represents the molecule. Furthermore, indigotin has been shown to be dimeric in p-toluidine solution.

Derivatives of indigotin. Indigotin can be chlorinated or brominated directly in the 5, 5', 7 and 7' positions. The tetrachloro-derivative, Brilliant Indigo B, and the tetrabromo-derivative, Brilliant Indigo 2B, are both used commercially; both are brighter than indigotin. Tyrian Purple ("Purple of the Ancients") is 6:6'-dibromoindigotin, and was originally obtained from a species of molluscs in the Mediterranean. It is not commercially important since much cheaper dyes of similar colour are available. Indigo Carmine is the sodium salt of indigotin 5:5'-disulphonic acid. Thioindigo Red (Friedländer, 1905) is an important vat dye. An interesting point about this compound is that, as in the case of indigotin, two geometrical isomers are possible, but since hydrogen bonding is not possible in the sulphur compound, neither form is stabilised, and in solution both forms appear to exist in equilibrium (Wyman et al., 1951).

Anthraquinone type of vat dyes. The algol colours are acylaminoanthraquinones, e.g., Algol Yellow W.G. This dyes cotton in yellow shades, and is readily prepared by heating the corresponding amino-compound with benzoic acid.

Indanthrone (Indanthrene Blue R; Bohn, 1901) is prepared by fusing 2-aminoanthraquinone with potassium hydroxide in the presence of potassium chlorate or nitrate at 250°.

$$\begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ NH_2 \\ H_2N \end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ NH \\ O \end{array}$$

It is reduced by alkaline sodium hyposulphite to the alkali-soluble form (leuco-compound; brown) which is oxidised to the dye by exposure to air.

Substituted indanthrones are also very important vat dyes, e.g., 4:4'-dichloro- and dibromo-derivatives give greener blues than the parent compound.

Flavanthrone (Flavanthrene, Indanthrene Yellow G.; Bohn, 1901) is formed by fusing 2-aminoanthraquinone with potassium hydroxide at 350° (cf. above).

$$\begin{array}{c} O \\ O \\ O \\ + O \\ H_2N \end{array} \xrightarrow{350^{\circ}} \begin{array}{c} O \\ N \\ N \\ N \end{array}$$

It is now made by the action of antimony pentachloride on 2-aminoanthraquinone in boiling nitrobenzene solution.

## ANTHRAQUINOID DYES

Alizarin is one of the most important anthraquinoid dyes; it is the chief constituent of the madder root. Alizarin is 1:2-dihydroxyanthraquinone, and is now manufactured synthetically by sulphonating anthraquinone with fuming sulphuric acid at high temperatures, and fusing the sodium salt of the product, anthraquinone-2-sulphonic acid, with sodium hydroxide and the calculated quantity of potassium chlorate at 180-200° under pressure:

The function of the potassium chlorate is to provide oxygen for the oxidation of the I-carbon atom to COH.

Structure of alizarin. Analysis and molecular weight determinations show that the molecular formula of alizarin is  $C_{14}H_8O_4$ . When distilled with zinc dust, alizarin gives anthracene; this shows that it is an anthracene derivative. When heated with the calculated quantity of bromine, anthraquinone forms dibromoanthraquinone and this, on fusion with potassium hydroxide, gives alizarin; this indicates that alizarin is dihydroxyanthraquinone. Actually this was the method used by Graebe and Liebermann, who were the first to synthesise alizarin. A most interesting feature of this synthesis is that these authors thought they had obtained 1:2-dibromoanthraquinone. Much later work has shown that they were actually working with 2:3-dibromoanthraquinone, and that rearrangement had therefore taken place during the fusion with alkali.

Vigorous oxidation of alizarin gives phthalic acid, thereby indicating that the two hydroxyl groups are in the same ring; otherwise an hydroxyphthalic acid would have been obtained, or the whole molecule broken down completely. Thus alizarin must be the 1:2-, 1:3-, 1:4- or 2:3-dihydroxy-derivative of anthraquinone. Since alizarin may be obtained by heating a mixture of phthalic anhydride and catechol with a little sulphuric acid at 130°, the two hydroxyl

groups must be in the o-positions in alizarin:

$$CO$$
 +  $OH$   $OH$   $CO$   $CO$   $C_6H_2(OH)_2$ 

There are two possibilities, viz., 1:2-(I) and 2:3-(II):

When oxidised with manganese dioxide and sulphuric acid, alizarin forms purpurin, a trihydroxy-derivative of anthraquinone in which the three hydroxyl groups are in the same ring (as shown by oxidation to phthalic acid). (I) can give rise to two trihydroxy-derivatives, 1:2:3- and 1:2:4-; (II), only one, 1:2:3-. Purpurin has been shown to be 1:2:4-trihydroxyanthraquinone by condensing phthalic anhydride with quinol, and oxidising the product, quinizarin:

Thus structure (I) is alizarin, and this is supported by the facts (i) that nitration of alizarin under different conditions gives *two* isomeric mononitro-derivatives in both of which the nitro-group is in the same ring as the hydroxyl groups (oxidation gives no nitrophthalic acid), and (ii) that alizarin forms *two* monoacyl derivatives (1- and 2-).

Properties of alizarin. Alizarin forms ruby red crystals, m.p. 290°, almost insoluble in water but fairly soluble in ethanol. It dissolves in alkalis to give purple solutions. It is a mordant dye, and the colour of

the lake depends on the metal used. Aluminium gives a red lake (Turkey Red), iron (ferric) a violet-black and chromium a brown-violet. Aluminium and iron lakes are usually employed for cotton dyeing and for printing, and aluminium and chromium lakes for wood dyeing.

In addition to the aluminium compound, the lake contains calcium salts, Turkey-red oil and sodium phosphate. These additional compounds affect the brightness of the lake and increase its stability towards acids and alkalis. It appears that aluminium hydroxide alone does not yield a lake with alizarin, but only after the addition of a calcium salt.

only after the addition of a calcium salt.

Alizarin Orange (Rosenstiehl, 1876) is prepared by nitrating alizarin in sulphuric acid solution in the presence of boric acid. It forms orange lakes with aluminium. Alizarin Blue (Prud'homme, 1877) may be prepared by first reducing Alizarin Orange to the corresponding amino-compound and then heating this with glycerol, sulphuric acid and nitrobenzene (Skraup's synthesis). It dyes

wool mordanted with chromium a blue colour. Alizarin Blue S (Brunck, 1881) is the soluble bisulphite compound of Alizarin Blue. It gives a reddish-blue lake with chromium. Alizarin Red S (Graebe and Liebermann, 1871) is prepared by sulphonating alizarin with fuming sulphuric acid. It dyes wool mordanted with aluminium a scarlet red, and a bordeaux when mordanted with chromium.

#### SULPHUR DYES

Sulphur dyes are prepared by heating various organic compounds such as amines, aminophenols and nitrophenols, with sodium polysulphide. Sulphur dyes are coloured solids, insoluble in water and acids, but soluble in cold alkaline solutions of sodium sulphide, in which the dyes are reduced to the leucocompound. Cotton is dipped and then exposed to the air, whereupon the leucocompound is oxidised to the dye. Oxidation may also be effected by immersion in a warm bath of dilute potassium dichromate.

Sulphur dyes have complex structures, many of which are uncertain or inknown.

A largely used sulphur dye is that for dyeing cloth khaki. This dye is made by heating p-phenylenediamine, p-aminoacetanilide and sulphur, with or without benzidine, and then heating the product with sodium sulphide.

## PHTHALOCYANINE PIGMENTS AND DYES

The phthalocyanines are a very important new class of organic dyes and pigments; they are coloured blue to green. They are very fast to light, heat, acids and alkalis, and are very useful for paints, printing inks, synthetic plastics and fibres, rubber, etc.

The phthalocyanine dyes were discovered by accident at the works of Scottish Dyes Ltd. in 1928. It was there observed that some lots of phthalimide, manufactured by the action of ammonia on molten phthalic anhydride in an iron vessel, were contaminated with a blue pigment. The structure and method of formation of this iron compound were established by Linstead and his co-workers (1934).

The first commercial phthalocvanine dye was Monastral Fast Blue BS. This is copper phthalocyanine, the copper atom taking place of the hydrogen

atoms in the two NH groups of phthalocyanine itself and being co-ordinated with the other two nitrogen atoms. The colour depends on the metal (copper, magnesium, lead, etc.), and the greener shades are obtained by direct chlorination or bromination.

Metal phthalocyanines may be prepared:

(i) By passing ammonia into molten phthalic anhydride or phthalimide in the presence of a metal salt.

(ii) By heating o-cyanoarylamides or phthalonitriles with metals or

metallic salts.

(iii) By heating phthalic anhydride or phthalimide with urea and a metallic salt, preferably in the presence of a catalyst such as boric acid.

Phthalocyanine may be prepared by heating phthalonitrile with a little triethanolamine.

Phthalocyanines are made water soluble by sulphonation, and these soluble salts are used as direct dyes.

#### QUESTIONS

1. Write an essay on the relation between colour and constitution. 2. Discuss the classification of dyes according to their application.

3. Write an essay on the azo-dyes.
4. Discuss the analytical and synthetic evidence for the structure of:—(a) triphenyl-

methane dyes, (b) indigotin, (c) alizarin.

5. Describe the preparation of:—(a) Bismarck Brown G, (b) Methyl Orange, (c) Congo Red, (d) Chromotrope 2B, (e) Malachite Green, (f) Pararosaniline, (g) Rosaniline, (h) Crystal Violet, (i) Phenolphthalein, (j) Fluorescein, (k) Rhodamine B, (l) Indigotin, (m) Alizarin, (n) Copper phthalocyanine, (o) Naphthol Yellow S, (p) Aniline Blue, (g) Pyronine G, (r) Quinoline Yellow, (s) Methylene Blue, (t) Meldola's Blue.

6. Write an essay on the Cyanine dyes.

7. Write an account of the Vat Dyes.

7. Write an account of the Vat Dyes.

#### READING REFERENCES

Lewis and Calvin, The Colour of Organic Substances, *Chem. Reviews*, 1939, 25, 273. Symposium on Colour and the Electronic Structure of Complex Molecules, *ibid.*, 1947,

Maccoll, Colour and Constitution, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1947, 1, 16.

Mason, Molecular Electronic Absorption Spectra, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1961, 15,

287.
Rowe, The Development of the Chemistry of Commercial Synthetic Dyes (1856–1938), Institute of Chemistry of Great Britain and Ireland (1938).

Phthalocyanines. (i) Linstead et al., J.C.S., 1934, 1016-1039.
(ii) Dahlen, Ind. Eng. Chem., 1939, 31, 839.
Bowen, Light Absorption and Photochemistry, Quart. Reviews (Chem. Soc.), 1950, 4, 236.

Dewar, Colour and Constitution, J.C.S., 1950, 2329; 1952, 3532, 3544.

Ferguson, Relationship between Absorption Spectra and Chemical Constitution of Organic Molecules, Chem. Reviews, 1948, 43, 385.

Fierz-David and Blangey, Fundamental Processes of Dye Chemistry, Interscience

Publishers (1949; translated by Vittum).
Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1953). Vol. III, Ch. 4. Organic Dyes. Wheland, Resonance in Organic Chemistry, Wiley (1955), Ch. 6. Resonance and Molecular Spectra.

Lubs (Ed.), The Chemistry of Synthetic Dyes and Pigments, Reinhold (1955).

Recent Advances in the Chemistry of Colouring Matters. Special Publication No. 4. Chemical Society (1956).

Bradley, Recent Progress in the Chemistry of Dyes and Pigments, Roy. Inst. Chem.,

Lectures, Monographs and Reports, 1958, No. 5. Stallmann, Use of Metal Complexes in Organic Dyes and Pigments, J. Chem. Educ.,

1960, 37, 220.

Giles, Rahman and Smith, Absorption Spectra of Dyes in Solution and Adsorbed in Solid Films, J.C.S., 1961, 1209.

#### EXAMINATION QUESTIONS

I. By means of equations and short notes indicate some typical examples of the use of (a) malonic ester in the synthesis of homocyclic compounds, and (b) acetoacetic ester

in the synthesis of heterocyclic compounds (B.Sc. Special, U.L., 1948).

2. A hydrocarbon of molecular formula  $C_{12}H_{10}$  is nitrated to a substance  $C_{12}H_0NO_2$  which is converted by the action of chromic acid mixture into a dicarboxylic acid  $C_{12}H_7NO_6$ . Further oxidation of this acid yields 4-nitrobenzene-i:2:3-tricarboxylic acid, whereas reduction of the nitro-group followed by drastic oxidation produces benzene-1:2:3-tricarboxylic acid.

Explain these facts and give the structural formula of the original hydrocarbon

(A.R.I.C., 1948).

3. Write an essay on one of the following topics:-

(a) The concept of resonance (mesomerism) in relation to the structure of molecules.

(b) The influence of substituents on the strengths of organic acids and bases. (c) Keto-enol tautomerism-including methods for the estimation of the proportions of tautomerides in such equilibrium mixtures (B.Sc. Special, U.L., 1948).

4. Outline the methods of preparation and the characteristic reactions of five of the following compounds:—(a) urea, (b) ethyl chloroformate, (c) keten, (d) chloroform, (e) diacetyl, (f) acetonylacetone, (g) phenyl isocyanate (phenylcarbimide) (B.Sc. Special, U.L., 1945).

5. Indicate briefly by means of formulæ and equations how each of the following substances may be prepared from nitrobenzene:-nitrosobenzene, diphenyl, phenacetin, quinoline, phenylhydrazine, azoxybenzene, Bismarck Brown, p-aminoacetophenone (A.R.I.C., 1946).

6. Classify the different types of isomerism which are known and give formulæ illustrating one example of each type (A.R.I.C., 1948).

7. A substance is believed to possess the following structure:

Suggest reactions you would carry out in order to confirm it. Indicate a method of synthesising this compound (B.Sc. Special, U.L., 1945).

8. Describe methods for the preparation of aromatic sulphonic acids, and indicate the most important reactions of these compounds (B.Sc. General, U.L., 1939).

9. Write an account of the preparation of aromatic aldehydes, and give three condensation reactions of benzaldehyde (B.Sc. General, U.L., 1946).

10. Give an account of methods which have been used to convert aldohexoses into aldopentoses and aldoheptoses. Outline the essential proof of the structure of glucose (B.Sc. General, U.L., 1944).

II. Discuss the work which has been carried out in investigating the kinetics of any

one organic reaction or class of reactions (F.R.I.C., Branch C, 1948).

12. Describe and explain the reactions which have been observed in aromatic compounds where substitution or displacement is effected by an anionoid (nucleophilic) reagent (F.R.I.C., Branch C, 1948).

13. State briefly how any five of the following substances could be conveniently prepared in the laboratory, ethyl alcohol and acetic acid being available as starting

materials:-

Methyldiethylcarbinol, diethylacetic acid, dichloroacetic acid, methyl ethyl ketone,

sulphonal, methylamine (A.R.I.C., 1947).

14. Give the approximate conditions under which phenol (or a simple derivative of phenol) may be caused to react with (a) carbon dioxide, (b) chloroform, (c) a diazo solution, (d) hydrogen and (e) methylating agent. Indicate the products in each case and give any necessary explanation of the process involved (B.Sc. General, U.L., 1943).

15. Mention six general reactions used in organic chemistry by which a new carboncarbon bond is formed. Give one example of each, indicate any essential experimental conditions and explain the range of applicability of the reaction (A.R.I.C., 1945).

16. Give an account of the ways in which acetylene has been used for synthetic

purposes (F.R.I.C., Branch C, 1947).

17. Classify the more important reactions of the diazo-compounds, differentiating between reactions in which nitrogen is eliminated and reactions in which it is not (B.Sc. General, U.L., 1943).

18. Suggest methods by which five of the following compounds can be obtained from easily accessible materials. Write notes on any points of interest in connection with the substances you select:

19. Discuss any four of the following terms: Centre of symmetry; optical (Walden) inversion; asymmetric synthesis; restricted rotation; racemisation. Give clear examples to illustrate your answer (B.Sc. General, U.L., 1943).

20. Give a brief account of methods which have been used to prove the presence in

a molecule of the following groups:

$$\cdot$$
COCH<sub>3</sub>  $\cdot$ COCH<sub>3</sub>  $\cdot$ CECH  $\cdot$ CH(OH) $\cdot$  ·NH·CH<sub>3</sub>  $\cdot$ CECH  $\cdot$ CH(OH) $\cdot$ C

21. Explain, giving examples, the use of any six of the following substances in

organic chemistry: selenium, maleic anhydride, diazoacetic ester, periodic acid, sodamide, thoria, copper powder, phenyl isocyanate (F.R.I.C., Branch C, 1946).

22. Indicate briefly by means of formulæ and equations how the following substances may be conveniently prepared from phenol:—(a) chloropicrin, (b) p-hydroxyacetophenone, (c) pimelic acid, (d) p-dinitrobenzene, (e) adipic acid, (f) aurin, (g) p-hydroxybenzene-azo-naphthalene (A.R.I.C., 1946).

23. Give the more important methods available for the synthesis of pyrrole and its derivatives. Describe the characteristic properties and behaviour of these compounds. In which respects do they show resemblance to aromatic substances?

How can pyrrole be converted into (a) an open-chain compound, (b) a pyridine

derivative, (c) a strong cyclic base? (A.R.I.C., 1946).

24. Indicate the methods available for the preparation of the aliphatic amines. In what ways do primary, secondary and tertiary amines differ in their chemical behaviour? (B.Sc. General, 1937).

25. Write a general account of the use of organo-metallic compounds for synthetic

purposes, giving examples.

In which circumstances is zinc used in preference to magnesium? (A.R.I.C., 1945). 26. What are the main classes of dye-stuffs? Give an example of each class, referring to its mode of manufacture and its use in dyeing (B.Sc. Special, U.L., 1947).

27. Write a concise essay on one of the following subjects:—(a) Free radicals, (b) alcoholic fermentation, (c) "aromatic character" (B.Sc. Special, U.L., 1943).

28. Write a full account of the formation and properties of formaldehyde and its poly-

meric modifications (B.Sc. Special, U.L., 1948).

29. What methods are available for the preparation of ketones of the aliphatic and aromatic series, including aromatic hydroxy-ketones?

What is Michler's ketone? How is it prepared, and how may it be used in the preparation of dyes? (A.R.I.C., 1945).

30. Review the methods by which cyclic polymethylene compounds have been obtained, with special reference to the methods of Ruzicka and of Ziegler (B.Sc. Special,

U.L., 1945).

31. Indicate three methods of synthesising aliphatic monocarboxylic acids, and three methods of introducing the carboxyl group into an aromatic nucleus. In each case give examples, and mention the reagents employed and the essential conditions for reaction (B.Sc. Special, U.L., 1944).

32. Discuss the influence of neighbouring groups or atoms on the reactivity of hydrogen which is in combination with carbon (B.Sc. Special, U.L., 1943).

33. Write notes on *three* of the following:—Hofmann's conversion of amides into primary amines, (b) Perkin's reaction, (c) the benzidine change, (d) Sandmeyer's reaction, (e) catalytic hydrogenation (B.Sc. Special, U.L., 1943).

34. Outline the important advances which have been made in recent years in the

utilisation of petroleum as an initial material for the preparation of organic compounds

(B.Sc. Special, U.L., 1943).
35. Write notes on two of the following:—(a) Friedel-Crafts' reaction, (b) the reduction of nitrobenzene, (c) hydroxy-azo-dyestuffs, (d) quinones (B.Sc. Special, U.L., 1944).

36. Write a general account of the industrially important esters of glycerol (B.Sc. Special, U.L., 1946).

37. Discuss one of the following physical properties in relation to molecular structure:—(a) dipole moment, (b) molecular refraction, (c) diamagnetic susceptibility,

(d) colour (i.e., the electronic absorption spectrum) (B.Sc. Special, U.L., 1946).
38. Discuss the significance of the terms "electrophilic reagent" and "nucleophilic reagent "with reference to:—(a) addition to the carbonyl double bond, (b) addition to the ethylenic double bond, (c) substitution in the benzene nucleus (B.Sc. Special, U.L., 1946).

39. Discuss the structure of any three of the following substances: urea, glycine, glucose, anthraquinone, phenolphthalein, sulphanilic acid (B.Sc. General, U.L., 1939).

40. Compare and contrast the reactions of (a) acetaldehyde and acetone, (b) ethyl nitrite and nitroethane (B.Sc. General, U.L., 1936).

41. Describe briefly the experiments you would carry out in order to confirm the constitution of substances which are stated to have the following formulæ:

42. Review both direct and indirect methods which are available for the introduction of halogen atoms into an aromatic nucleus. Include a brief statement indicating the causes of the known results of the direct chlorination and dichlorination of benzene (B.Sc. General, U.L., 1944).

43. Review the methods which are available for methylating hydroxylic compounds

(B.Sc. Special, U.L., 1939).

44. Suggest practicable syntheses, from readily accessible materials, of any five of the following:

813 DYES

45. Describe (a) a method of manufacture, and (b) an alternative small scale method of preparation of each of the following: acetaldehyde; phenol; benzoic acid (B.Sc.

Special, U.L., 1939).

46. Describe the main uses of any five of the following in the organic chemical laboratory:—Aluminium tri-isopropoxide; selenium dioxide; perbenzoic acid; pyridine; maleic anhydride; picric acid; metallic palladium (B.Sc. Special, U.L., 1940).
47. To what uses have metals been put as catalysts in organic chemistry? (B.Sc.

Special, U.L., 1938).

48. Compare and contrast the reactions of (a) acetaldehyde and benzaldehyde, (b) ethyl alcohol and phenol, (c) ethyl iodide and iodobenzene (B.Sc. General, U.L., 1935). 49. By means of suitable examples show how the electronic theory of valency has proved helpful in explaining the reactivity of organic compounds (A.R.I.C., 1940).

50. Give an account of the structure and synthesis of either alizarin or indigotin

(A.R.I.C., 1945).

## APPENDIX

### NOMENCLATURE

In dealing with the systematic methods of nomenclature, no attempt has been made to indicate whether a particular system is described in the Geneva system, or whether it is described in the I.U.P.A.C. rules. Irrespective of its origin the method of nomenclature has been referred to in the text as the I.U.P.A.C. system. In any case, the reader should appreciate that organic nomenclature is in a state of flux. This is unfortunate, but inevitable. What is more unfortunate is that there is no complete agreement among the various publishing societies.

Many of the I.U.P.A.C. rules have been given in the text. The reader

should find the following remarks of some assistance in nomenclature.

Order of radicals. In British usage, the following order was adopted for naming radicals prior to April, 1950: Cl, Br, I, F, NO<sub>2</sub>, NO, NH<sub>2</sub>, NH·CO·CH<sub>1</sub>, NH, OH, CHO, CO, CN, CNS, CO<sub>2</sub>H, R·CO<sub>2</sub>, RO, R·CO, R, H. R is an alkyl or aryl radical, and these radicals were named in the following order:

(i) Cyclic precede acyclic radicals.

(ii) More saturated precede less saturated radicals.(iii) Less complex precede more complex radicals.

(iv) Univalent precede bivalent radicals.

Since April, 1950 (but see also below) the *Chemical Society* has adopted an order for prefixes denoting substituents, which, in general, follows American usage, except for differences in nomenclature, spelling, italicising or punctuation.

(i) The names of substituents cited as prefixes are arranged alphabetically, regardless of the number of each (see list above); e.g.,

3-amino-4-chloro-2-naphthol ethyl methyl ketone 5-nitro-1: 4-diphenylnaphthalene 1-acetyl-2-amino-4-hydroxy-3: 5: 6-trimethylanthracene methyl propyl succinate

N.B.

methyl hydrogen phthalate

(ii) Compound radical names are treated as *units*, and when several prefixes begin with the same letter, short names precede longer ones, e.g.,

I-(2:4-dinitrophenyl)-3-methylnaphthalene I-methyl-4-methylaminoanthracene I-dimethylamino-2-ethylnaphthalene

(iii) Italicised prefixes are neglected when assembling substituents; but isomeric substituents are arranged in alphabetical order of the italicised prefixes, except that iso follows directly after n, and o precedes m. The following are some of the more important italicised prefixes: aci, allo, amphi, anti, as, cis, cyclo, endo, gem, iso, meso, neo, peri, sec, spiro, syn, tert, trans, vic.

r-fluoro-4-cyclopentylbenzene n-propyl isopropyl ether o-nitrophenyl-m-nitrophenylacetic acid (iv) When a compound contains one principal function, then this is expressed in the ending of the name, e.g.,

# 3-ethyl-2-methylcyclohexane-1-carboxylic acid

This rule also applies to aromatic compounds.

(v) When a compound contains more than one functional group, the compound is named by using the suffix of the principal function and the prefixes of all the other functions (p. 235). This rule also applies to aromatic compounds.

(vi) In some cases the order may be changed to avoid ambiguity, e.g., phenyldichloroarsine is used for C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·AsCl<sub>2</sub>, as dichlorophenylarsine might

be taken as C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>·AsH<sub>2</sub>.

The Chemical Society now follows the I.U.P.A.C. rules (1957), according to which prefixes are to be italicised when they define the positions of named substitutents or which are used to define stereoisomers. Furthermore, prefixes are to be arranged alphabetically, and of the above-mentioned italicised prefixes (section iii), those which retain their italics are anti, cis, endo, meso, peri, syn, trans. Thus:

4-cyclopentyl-I-fluorobenzene; isopropyl propyl ether

Also, commas are to be used to separate numerals:

# 1,2,3-tribromobenzene

# Use of Greek letters. The Greek alphabet is:

alpha β beta γ δ (Δ) gamma delta ε epsilon 5 zeta eta 2 0 theta J iota K kappa λ lambda mu U. V nu 3 xi 0 omicron 70 pi rho 0 O sigma τ tau U upsilon φ phi chi 4 psi w omega

The use of Greek letters to indicate the positions of substituents in a chain is to be avoided; numerals should be used. Greek letters, however, may be used (and are preferable) to indicate positions of substituents in compounds described by trivial names, e.g., α-hydroxypropionic acid (lactic acid). Greek letters are also used to indicate the class of compound, e.g., α, β, γ-, ... diketones; γ- and δ-lactones, etc.

Writing of names. The general practice is to "run on" the names of radicals replacing hydrogen atoms in a compound, e.g., chlorobenzene, I-nitropropane, ethylmethylcarbinol, etc. If the compound is named by any general term, then each part of the name is written separately, e.g., ethyl alcohol, ethyl methyl ether, acetic acid, methyl propyl ketone, butyraldehyde oxime (but butyraldoxime), acetaldehyde phenylhydrazone, etc.

## ORGANIC CHEMISTRY PUBLICATIONS

Before using any book, consult the preface for information about the contents. The preface usually gives all the information necessary. Also note the date of the publication.

## **Chemical Dictionaries**

Thorpe's Dictionary of Applied Chemistry. This contains short articles on a very wide field of subjects, and also contains a large bibliography of original literature.

*Heilbron's Dictionary of Organic Compounds.* This gives a concise account of the physical and chemical properties of organic compounds, and references to good methods of preparation.

## **Physical Constants**

Heilbron's Dictionary of Organic Compounds.
International Critical Tables.
Kaye and Laby, Tables of Physical and Chemical Constants.
Landolt and Bornstein, Physikalisch-Chemische Tabellen.
Chemist's Year Book (British).
Handbook of Chemistry and Physics (American).
Lange's Handbook of Chemistry.

## Reference Books

There are many excellent single volume texts available on Organic Chemistry. The following, however, are of a more specialised character:

Sidgwick, The Organic Chemistry of Nitrogen.
Morton, The Chemistry of Heterocyclic Compounds.
Cohen, Organic Chemistry for Advanced Students (3 vols.).
Gilman, Advanced Organic Chemistry (4 vols.).

Richter's Organic Chemistry (4 vols.).

Huckel, Theoretical Principles of Organic Chemistry (two volumes; translated by Rathmann).

Stewart, Recent Advances in Organic Chemistry (3 vols.). Elderfield (Ed.), Heterocyclic Compounds (1950—).

Chemistry of the Carbon Compounds (Edited by Rodd), Elsevier (1951—).

Radt (Ed.), Elsevier's Encyclopædia of Organic Chemistry (1940-).

Gowan and Wheeler, Name Index of Organic Reactions, Longmans, Green (1960).

Progress in Organic Chemistry, Butterworths (1952—). Progress in Stereochemistry, Butterworths (1954—). Beitstein's Handbuch der Organischen Chemie.

In addition to the above reference books which are mainly theoretical in character, there are also a number of reference books on practical organic chemistry, e.g.,

Houben-Weyl, Die Methoden der Organischen Chemie.

Organic Syntheses. These are published annually (1921—). There are now also three collected volumes.

Organic Reactions (1942—). These contain detailed discussions of a large number of organic reactions, and also include an account of the practical methods.

Weissberger, Physical Methods of Organic Chemistry. Theilheimer, Synthetic Methods of Organic Chemistry (1947—).

817 APPENDIX

Migrdichian, Organic Synthesis, Reinhold (Vol. I and II, 1957). Hickinbottom, Reactions of Organic Compounds, Longmans, Green (3rd ed., Weygand, Organic Preparations, Interscience publishers (1945).

# LITERATURE

The more important periodicals are:

American: Journal of the American Chemical Society (J. Amer. Chem. Soc.). It was first issued in 1879, and was incorporated with the American Chemical Journal since 1913. It is now issued twice a month. Belgian: Bulletin de la Société chimique de Belgique (Bull. Soc. chim. Belg.).

It was first issued in 1887. Monthly.

British: Journal of the Chemical Society (J.C.S.). Issued since 1848. Monthly.

Dutch: Recueil des travaux chimiques des Pays-Bas (Rev. trav. chim.). Issued since 1882. Monthly.

French: Bulletin de la Société chimique de France (Bull. Soc. chim.). Issued since 1858. Monthly.

German: Berichte der deutschen chemischen Gesellschaft (Ber.). Issued since 1868. Monthly.

Italian: Gazzetta chimica italiana (Gazzetta). Issued since 1871. Monthly. Russian: Journal of General Chemistry (U.S.S.R.) (J. Gen. Chem. (U.S.S.R.).) This is a U.S. translation of Zhurnal obschei Khimii.

Swiss: Helvetica Chimica Acta (Helv. Chim. Acta). Issued since 1918.

Intermittent.

The above journals are general in that they publish research on all branches of chemistry. Besides these, however, are a large number of specialised journals which deal with only Organic, Physical, Analytical, Biological, Industrial chemistry, etc.

Other useful sources of Organic Chemistry are:

Justus Leibig's Annalen der Chemie (Annalen). Journal of Organic Chemistry (J. Org. Chem.)

Journal für praktische Chemie (J. pr. Chem.). Monatshefte für Chemie und verwandte Teile anderer Wissenschaften (Monatsh.).

Tetrahedron (The International Journal of Organic Chemistry). Transactions of the Faraday Society (Trans. Faraday Soc.).

Owing to the large number of journals, it is impossible to read everything published. Hence abstracting journals have appeared for the benefit of the chemist. The most important abstracting journals are:

Chemical Abstracts. These are American, were begun in 1907, and are issued twice a month. Four decennial indexes have appeared: 1917, 1927,

1937 and 1947. British Chemical Abstracts. These began in 1871 and were issued monthly until January, 1954, when the publication of the abstracts in "Pure

Chemistry" was discontinued.

Current Chemical Papers. This is a new publication of the Chemical Society, and began January 1954. It is issued monthly, and its aim is to inform chemists of new work as quickly as possible. Since only the titles of papers are given, this periodical does not replace abstracts.

Chemisches Zentrallblatt. This began in 1830 (under the name of Pharmaceutisches Zentrallblatt, and subsequently modified several times). It is

issued weekly.

Index Chemicus. This is a service of the Institute for Scientific Information (American). It is a twice-monthly register and index of new chemical compounds. It reports and indexes new chemical compounds within 30 days after their appearance in the primary journals. It was begun in 1960.

All good abstracts have the following three indexes: author, subject and formula.

Author index. This is arranged alphabetically. To search the author index it is necessary to know the name of the author and also how to spell it; care must be exercised with some surnames, e.g., Tschitschibabin or Chichibabin.

Subject index. This is arranged alphabetically. When searching the literature about a particular subject, the word (name) and related words (names) should be looked up, e.g., suppose we wish to ascertain the work that has been done on fats. The procedure would be to look up:

- (i) Fats.
- (ii) Oils. (iii) Esters.
- (iv) Individuals, e.g., olein, palmitin, etc.

(v) Saponification.

(vi) Soaps.

(vii) Hydrolysis.

(viii) Edible fats and oils.

(ix) The author index of the various papers, since it is quite likely that the author has published more than one paper on the subject.

When using the subject index, it is advisable to work backwards chronologically, since recent papers will give references to earlier ones.

When searching for a particular compound, the reader should bear in mind alternative names for that particular compound, and also the possibility of alternative methods of numbering.

Formula Index should offer no difficulties. It is probably best to search

this

In addition to journals containing original papers, there are reviews published by various societies. These are critical surveys of literature published during a certain period, and are extremely valuable sources of information, e.g.,

Annual Reports of the Chemical Society (published annually). There is

now a cumulative (subject) index for volumes 1-46 (1904-1949). Quarterly Reviews (Chem. Soc).. These began in 1947.

Chemical Reviews (six a year).

Journal of Chemical Education (monthly).

Many journals also give critical surveys, or publish lectures that have been given by specialists, e.g., Journal of the Chemical Society, Journal of Industrial and Engineering Chemistry, Journal of the Society of Chemical Industry. The periodicals Nature and Chemistry and Industry are used as a means of correspondence as well as for publications. The Chemical Society also now issues monthly the (new) Proceedings of the Chemical Society (1957—) in which communications and lectures are printed. There are also the Tetrahedron Letters (begun 1959).

### SEARCHING THE LITERATURE

Some indication of searching the literature has already been given in the

foregoing.

Finding a paper given the reference. Original papers are given as author, name of periodical, year of publication, volume number (in heavy print, or underlined in written work), and page, e.g.,

E. F. Armstrong, J.C.S., 1903, 83, 1305. This is British practice. American practice is slightly different, viz.

E. F. Armstrong, J.C.S., 83, 1305 (1903).

Sometimes mistakes are made in giving a reference.

Wrong author. No difficulty will be encountered here, provided the nature of the article is known.

Wrong Journal. In this case it is best to consult the author or subject indexes of the abstracting journals.

Wrong year. If the volume number is correct, there should be no difficulty.

Wrong volume. If the year is correct, there should be no difficulty. Wrong page. In this case one should look up the annual index of the authors or subjects, or both.

When consulting a reference in an abstracting journal, the reader should look up the same year and at least two years afterwards. The more efficient the abstracting journal, the sooner will an abstract of a publication appear.

Finding information about a compound of known formula (and structure). This is usually done by looking up Beilstein, and then the Chemical Abstracts.

Beilstein's Handbuch. There is now a fourth edition, and this is intended to give a complete survey of organic chemistry up to Jan. 1st, 1910. The plan of the arrangement is described in volume I, pp. 1-46 and pp. 939-944. The subject matter is divided into four main divisions:

(i) Acyclic compounds. (ii) Isocyclic compounds.

Volumes I-IV. Volumes V-XVI.

(iii) Heterocyclic compounds. Volumes XVII–XXVII. (iv) Natural products. Volumes XXX and XXXI.

Volume XXVIII is the general names index: part 1, A-G; part 2, H-Z. Volume XXIX is the general formulæ index: part 1, C1-C13; part 2, C14-C195.

The names index is arranged alphabetically. To look up the formulæ index, the molecular formula of the compound is written down with the

elements in the following order:

# HONCI Br I F S P

After P the elements appear in alphabetical order. Each page is marked at the top by (a) an arabic number which gives the number of carbon atoms in the compound listed on that page, and (b) a Roman number which gives the number of other elements present in the compounds listed e.g., mchloronitrobenzene:

$$NO_2$$
 $CI = C_6H_4O_2NCI$ 

This contains six carbon atoms and four other elements. Therefore the page marked 6IV is found, and looking down the pages marked in this way,

the desired compound will soon be found.

There is now a new Index which covers the main work and the first and second supplements (volumes I-XXVII). In the formula index, the compounds are listed by the number of carbon atoms, the number of hydrogen atoms, and according to the alphabetical order of the other elements, e.g., CBrCl<sub>3</sub>O<sub>2</sub>S, C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>NO<sub>2</sub>S. Alongside the compound will be found various numbers, e.g., 18, 548 (this is the main work, Vol. 18, p. 548); 19, 402, II 413 (this is the main work, Vol. 19, p. 402; and the second supplement, Vol. 19 this is not repeated, p. 413); 5, I 357; 3, 69, I 31, II 55.

There is a first supplement to Beilstein's fourth edition, in most cases one to each volume; otherwise, the supplements may be combined, e.g., the supplements for volumes III and IV are combined into one volume. The literature survey of the first supplement is from Jan. 1st, 1910 to Jan. 1st, 1920. There is also a second supplement giving the literature survey from Jan. 1st, 1920 to Jan. 1st, 1930. A third supplement has now been begun.

How to use Beilstein. Each volume and supplement has a table of contents and an index consisting partly of names and partly of formulæ. The simplest way to find a compound is to look up the collected indexes of names and formulæ. Having found the compound in the main volumes, the searcher will then find later information (if any) in the corresponding supplements. System numbers are used for cross-reference purposes.

In Beilstein will be found an account of methods of preparation, properties,

derivatives, etc.

Each main division of Beilstein is subdivided into functional group

compounds in the following order:

Acyclic and Isocyclic. Hydrocarbons, hydroxy-compounds, carbonyl compounds, hydroxy-carbonyl compounds, carboxylic acids, hydroxy-acids, carbonyl acids, hydroxy-carbonyl acids, sulphinic acids, sulphinic acids, sulphonic acids, hydroxy-sulphonic acids, carboxy-sulphonic acids, amines, hydroxyamines, carbonyl-amines, hydroxy-carbonyl-amines, aminoacids, hydroxylamines, hydrazines, azo-compounds, diazo-compounds, azoxy-compounds, metallic compounds.

Heterocyclic. I cyclic oxygen (S, Se, Te); 2 cyclic oxygen; 3 cyclic

oxygen; 4 cyclic oxygen; 5 cyclic oxygen.

r cyclic nitrogen; 2 cyclic nitrogen; . . . . 8 cyclic nitrogen.

Natural products. Hydrocarbons (petroleum), ethereal oils, sterols, fats,

waxes, carbohydrates, alkaloids, proteins.

The division of a particular compound is determined by its *stem-nucleus*. This is obtained by replacing in the formula all the atoms or groups attached to carbon by the equivalent number of hydrogen atoms, except where replacement involves the breaking of a cyclic chain. When the stemnucleus has been obtained, the following general rule is applied: when the compound is derived from two or more compounds, or contains two or more functional groups, that compound is discussed under the parent compound to be found *last* in the classification.

Example 1.

$$Cl$$
 $CH_2$ 
 $NH$ 

The stem nuclei are:

Since pyrrole is described last in the classification of these three compounds, the compound under consideration will be found under pyrrole.

Example 2.

# CICH2·CH2OH

This is a derivative of ethanol, and will therefore be found under the substitution products of ethanol (described immediately after ethanol).

It is important to note that X, NO, NO<sub>2</sub> and N<sub>3</sub> are not functional groups, and that their order (of discussion) is F, Cl, Br, I, NO, NO<sub>2</sub>, N<sub>3</sub> (immediately

after the parent compound).

Difficulty may be encountered when more than one functional group, or one functional group and one or more *apparent* functional groups are attached to the *same* carbon atom. The following examples show how to find the compound:

Replace the functional groups in (I) by hydroxyl groups. This gives (II), which is an acid (ortho-acid). (I) will therefore be found under the derivatives of the acid  $R \cdot CO_2H$ :

(iv) R·CCl<sub>3</sub>. Since there is no functional group present, this compound will be found under R·CH<sub>3</sub>:

(v) 
$$CH_3 - C - C_2H_5 = CH_3OH + C_2H_5OH$$
  
HO

This compound will be found under the derivatives of ethanol (ethanol occurs later than methanol):

(vi) 
$$R \cdot CO \cdot OR' \equiv R \cdot CO_2H + R'OH$$
  
 $HO \mid H$ 

This will be found under R·CO<sub>2</sub>H, since this is discussed later than R'OH. Note however:

$$RO \cdot NO_2 \equiv ROH + HNO_3$$
  
H OH

This compound will be described under ROH, since HNO<sub>3</sub> is inorganic. Inorganic acid derivatives are discussed in the following order: hydrogen peroxide, halogen-oxyacids, sulphur-oxyacids, nitrogen-oxyacids, phosphorus oxyacids, arsenic-oxyacids, silicon-oxyacids, halogen acids, . . .

(vii) 
$$CH_3$$
  $CH_3$   $CH_3$   $CH_3$   $CH_3$   $CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot CH \cdot CO_2H$   $CH_2 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot CH \cdot CO_2H$   $CH_3 \cdot CH_4 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot CH \cdot CO_2H$   $CH_4 \cdot CH_4 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot CH \cdot CO_2H$   $CH_5 \cdot CO \cdot NH \cdot CH \cdot CO_2H$   $CH_6 \cdot CO$ 

This is an example where a compound may be broken up in two (or more) ways. In such cases, the decomposition is carried out in the way which gives the stem-nucleus described later than any obtained in any other way. (III) gives glycine and alanine; (IV) gives glycine (amide derivative) and

lactic acid. Since alanine is described later than any other decomposition product, the compound will be found under alanine:

(V) and (VI) are both to be found under *heterocyclic* compounds, the former under the division of I cyclic oxygen atom, and the latter, I cyclic nitrogen atom.

# READING REFERENCES

Huntress, A Brief Introduction to the Use of Beilstein's Handbuch der Organischen Chemie, Wiley (1930).

Soule, Library Guide for the Chemist, McGraw-Hill (1938).

Dyson, A Short Guide to Chemical Literature, Longmans, Green (1951).

Crane, Patterson and Marr, A Guide to the Literature of Chemistry, Wiley (2nd ed., 1957).

Handbook for Chemical Society Authors, Special Publication No. 14 (1960).

# INDEX

Pages printed in bold type are the more important references. Letters marking the pages have the following meanings: d indicates definitions (of reactions, etc.); n, nomenclature; p, preparations; r, reactions. These letters are not used for single page references. Physical constants of a compound will be found described immediately after the methods of preparation. Derivatives of a parent substance will be found under the initial letter of the name, e.g., nitrobenzene will be found under N. Names with prefixes will be found under the initial letter, e.g., isobutanes will be found under I; eyclopropane under C. The alphabetical order has been used to name prefixes (see p. 814 for the old order). Also the suffix methanol has been used as well as carbinol (p. 124). Salts are not listed separately, but are included with the references of the corresponding acids or bases. Names of authors are indexed only when they are associated with a particular reaction, condensation, etc. Dyestuffs are listed under Dyes; individual dyes are listed separately.

```
A_{\rm AC} reactions, 188, 191
  A_{\rm AL} reactions, 188, 191
  Absolute alcohol, 135
  Absorption spectra, 6, 22, 27, 53, 108, 118,
        166, 185, 204, 218, 292, 299, 307, 328, 336, 366, 480, 485, 508, 523, 591, 594,
        601, 615, 620, 625, 630, 636, 658, 667, 672, 703, 732, 752, 753, 756, 758, 759, 773–778, 793
           see also Raman and NMR Spectra
 ac = alicyclic, 718
 Accelerators, 341
 Accessibility of compounds, 50
 Acenaphthaquinone, 723
 Acenaphthene, 723
 Acenaphthylene, 723
Acetaldehyde, 60, 84, 93, 134, 135, 137,
155, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 166p-168r,
       181, 185, 218, 238, 244, 250, 265, 274, 275, 280, 398, 650, 757, 761, 763, 764
Acetals, 131, 161, 355
cyclic, 249, 258
Acetamide, 281, 289, 755
p-Acetamidophenol, 629
Acetanilide, 568, 570, 572, 575, 576
Aceta acid, 60, 93, 121, 169, 181p-185r,
201, 244, 288, 344, 369, 629, 660,
      664
Acetic anhydride, 143, 185, 201p-202r, 241, 244, 277, 294, 495, 651, 662
Acetic formic anhydride, 201
Acetoacetamides, 290
Acetoacetic acid, 225
Acetoacetic ester, 216-219, 223, 224p-
      231r, 279, 285, 589
Acetoacetic ester syntheses
  dicarboxylic acids, 231
   1: 3-diketones, 230, 241
   1: 4-diketones, 241
  fatty acids, 227-229, 231
  heterocyclic compounds, 741, 747, 748,
      755, 757, 764, 769
  homocyclic compounds, 470, 494, 728
  keto-acids, 245, 494
  ketones, 227-229
```

Acetoin, 240 Acetomesitylene, 633

```
Acetone, 49, 60, 83, 85, 93, 115, 117, 118, 137, 151, 154–155, 157, 162, 163, 164, 169p–170r, 218, 219, 222, 225, 230, 240, 241, 253, 277, 278, 281, 284, 287, 303, 327, 440, 512, 619, 650, 750, 768,
        801
  Acetonedicarboxylic acid, 422
  Acetonitrile, see Methyl cyanide
  Acetonylacetone, 241-242
Acetophenone, 151, 230, 531, 538, 646,
        650, 660p-661r
  Acetoxycrotonic ester, 231
  Acetoxylation, 475
  Acetoxymercuribenzene, 540
  o-Acetoxymercuriphenol, 622, 625
  Acetylacetoacetic ester, 241
  Acetylacetone, 219, 223, 240p-241r
 N-Acetylaminophenol, see p-Acetamido-
       phenol
 Acetylation, 200d, 206, 289, 341, 629, 670
         see also Acetic anhydride and
            Acetyl chloride
 Acetyl bromide, 289
 Acetyl chloride, 76, 197p-200r, 231, 243,
       277, 289
 Acetyl cyanide, 243
 Acetylene, 90p-97r, 131, 169, 284, 295,
      321, 327, 329, 345, 351, 745, 747, 754,
 Acetylene dibromide, 92
 Acetylenedicarboxylic acid, 428, 432
Acetylene dichloride, 92
Acetylene di-iodide, 92
Acetylene tetrabromide, 92p, 727
Acetylene tetrachloride, 92p, 119
Acetylenic hydrocarbons, see Alkynes
Acetylglycollic acid, 394
Acetylides, 95-96
Acetylnaphthalene, 715p, 721, 737
Acetyl nitrate, 72, 202p, 553, 554, 558
Acetyl peroxide, 202
Acetylpyrrole, 748
Acetylsalicylic acid, 683
Acetylurea, 386
Acetyl value, 261
Aci-compounds, 304
Acid amides, 156, 193, 202p-207r, 283, 289, 295, 310, 327, 356, 383, 663, 677,
     755, 766
```

Acid anhydrides, 198, 201p-202r, 288, 295, Aglycon, 454 356, 611, 677-678 Alanine, 323, 328, 398 cyclic, 374, 375, 378, 379, 380, 423, 424, Alcohols, aliphatic, 49, 124np-133r, 133-425, 473, 693, 699, 722 138, 147, 187, 196, 197, 212, 250, 288, 305, 309, 312, 316, 326, 332, 342, 352-Acid azides, 209 Acid bromides, 198 354p, 359, 362, 376, 387, 533, 610, 670 Acid chlorides (carboxylic), 148, 197n, 197p-200r, 231, 234, 241, 258, 316, 327, classification of, 124 Alcohols, aliphatic (unsaturated), 147, 265-274 355, 356, 357, 363, 372, 377, 425, 533, 676, 694 Alcohols, aromatic, 644-645 Acid esters (of dicarboxylic acids), 175, Alcoholysis, 193, 199 192, 374, 380p, 393 Aldehyde-ammonias, 161 Acid fluorides, 121, 198 Aldehydes, aliphatic, 64, 132, 145n, 146p-Acid hydrazides, 209 162r, 164-169, 209, 212, 280, 281, 283, Acid iodides, 198 289, 305, 327, 340, 354-355p, 362, 376, 395, 479, 755, 757 unsaturated, 275p-277r, 359-360 Acidolysis, 193 Acids, aliphatic, dicarboxylic (saturated), 368np-369r, Aldehydes, aromatic, 588, 645-655, 767 370-381, 493, 494 unsaturated, 654 dicarboxylic (unsaturated), 423-432 Aldehydic acids, 242-243 monocarboxylic (saturated), 174n, Aldehydrol, 452 175p-179r, 179-186, 229-230, 233. Aldimines, 149, 316 304, 340, 354, 356, 362, 369, 387, 394, Aldoketens, 287, 494 Aldol, 237, 407 monocarboxylic (unsaturated), 279n, Aldol condensation, 157d, 163, 237, 277, 455 280p-283r, 284-286, 396 Aldonic acids, 440d, 446, 447 Aldoses, conversion into ketoses, 449 polycarboxylic, 421 Acids, aromatic, stepping-down of, 448-449 dicarboxylic, 692-696 stepping-up of, 447-448 monocarboxylic, 675-691 Acids, strength of, **180**, **212-213**, **281**, 369, Aldoximes, aliphatic, 152, 308, 317 Aldoximes, aromatic, 649 stereochemistry of, 666-667. 425, 608, 625, 626, 628, 687 Algol Yellow W. G., 805 Acid value, 261 Aconitic acid, 422, 432pr Aliphatic compounds, 8, 38d, 499 Acraldehyde, 255, 275p-276r, 277, 472, from aromatic compounds, 542 474, 763 Acridine, 767p, 795 Alizarin, 806–808 Alizarin Blue, 808 Acridine yellow, 796 Alizarin Blue S., 808 Acriflavine, 796 Alizarin Orange, 808 Alizarin Red S., 808 Acrolein, see Acraldehyde α-Acrose, 165, 455 Alkaldienes, 83n, 83p-89r, 253 B-Acrose, 455 Alkali Blue, 788 Acrylic acid, 267, 282–283, 284p Acrylonitrile, see Vinyl cyanide Alkanes, see Paraffins Alkenes, see Olefins, Activated complex, 34 Alkenynes, 95 Activation energy, 33, 106 Alkoxides, 129 Active amyl alcohol, see 2-Methylbutan-1-Alkyd resins, 257, 374 Alkylation, 113, 196, 227, 228, 229, 230, 232, 233, 311, 352, 369, 381, 529–533, Active hydrogen atom, 198d, 200, 288, 306, 315, 329, 350 610, 612 Active methylene group, **155d**, 226, 244, 265, 279, 280, **281**, 306, 373, 374, 479, 539, 561, **589**, 701, 725, 761 see also individual Alkyl halides, Alkyl sulphates and Methylation N-Alkylanilines, 571 Active methyne group, 155 Alkyl-arsines, 343 Alkyl-bismuthines, 345 Active valeric acid, 186 Alkyl borates, 196 Acyclic compounds, 38 Acylation, see Acetylation Alkyl-borons, 76 Acyl halides, see Acid chlorides Alkyl bromides, see Alkyl halides Alkyl chlorides, see Alkyl halides Alkyl cyanides, 205, 206, 289, 292, 293np-Acyloins, 193p, 253, 494 Acyl-oxygen fission, 187-189, 191-192 Adams' catalyst, 65 297r, 357p, 381 1: 4-Addition, 85-89, 278-279, 359-360, 655, 669, 763 Alkylenes, see Olefins Alkyl fluorides, see Fluoro-compounds, Addition to double bonds, 65-79, 83, 337, aliphatic Alkyl halides, 80, 100np-114r, 114-115, 376, 428-429, 472, 475 130, 227, 228, 229, 230, 232, 233, 302 Adduct, 473 Adipic acid, 50, 378p-379r, 481, 487, 690 332, 334, 335, 342, 343, 345, 346, 348, 352, 358, 361, 362, 363, 390, 532 Adipic anhydride, 379 Adonitol, 259 see also individuals Adrenaline, 633 classification of, 106

825

INDEX Alkvlhydrogen sulphates, 142, 195-196p, 294, 332, 334 Alkyl hydrogen sulphites, 339 Alkyl-hydroxylamines, 357-358 Alkylidene halides, see Dihalides Alkyliminocarbonyl halides, 297 Alkyl iodides, see Alkyl halides Alkyl isocyanates, 206, 207, 209, 297, 311 Alkyl isocyanides, 293, 294, 297pr, 349 Alkyl isothiocyanates, 297, 336p-337r Alkyl-metallic compounds, see under individual metals Alkyl nitrates, 196 Alkyl nitrites, 113, 196p, 301, 307 Alkyl-oxygen fission, 187-189, 191-192 Alkylphosphates, 196 Alkyl-phosphines, 341-343 Alkyl radicals, 45n, 51 short-hand notation of, 46 Alkyl-silanes, 345-346 Alkyl-stibines, 345 Alkyl sulphates, 195-196 see also individuals Alkyl sulphides, 334–336 Alkyl sulphites, 195 Alkyl sulphones, 338 Alkyl-sulphonic acids, see Sulphonic acids, aliphatic Alkyl sulphoxides, 338 Alkyl thiocyanates, 336-337 S-Alkylthiouronium salts, 390 Alkynes, 76, 89-90n, 90-98, 121, 663 Allelotropic mixture, 221 Allene, 83, 98, 432 Allitol, 259 Allocinnamic acid, 691 Allodulcitol, 259 Allomucic acid, 421, 457 Allophanic acid, 299 Allose, 259, 438, 457 O-Allylacetoacetic ester, 640 Allyl acrylate, 275 Allyl alcohol, 236, 266p-268r, 476 Allylamine, 321 Allyl bromide, 268, 360, 639, 640 Allyl chloride, 67, 266, 268p-271r Allyl cyanide, 282 Allyl disulphide, 334 Allylic rearrangement, 272-273 Allyl iodide, 268p, 321 Allyl isothiocyanate, 322, 337 Allyl phenyl ether, 640 Allyl radical, 82 Allyl substitution, 67, 82, 269, 376 Allyl sulphide, 267 Alpha-elimination mechanism, 117 Alternant compounds, 528d, 714, 729, 760 Alternating axis of symmetry, 410 Altroheptulose, 455 Altrose, 259, 457 Aluminium acetate, 182 Aluminium t-butoxide, 129 see also Oppenauer oxidation Aluminium carbide, 39 Aluminium ethoxide, 129, 168 see also Tischenko reaction Aluminium isopropoxide, 129 see also Meerwein-Ponndorf-Verley reduction Aluminium trialkyls, 126

Amadori rearrangement, 444 Amatol, 558 Ambrettolide, 397 Amides, see Acid amides Amidines, 208pr, 295, 769 Amido-chlorides, 205 Amidol, 629 Amidoximes, 207-208 Amine oxides, 317 Amines, aliphatic, 206-207, 289, 297, 306, 307, 308np-318r, 319-320, 325, 326, 337, 341, 350, 357p, 610, 663, 748 classification of, 308 separation of, 309-310 Amines, aliphatic (unsaturated), 321-322 Amines, aromatic, 203, 564p-578r, 589, 598, 652, 763, 764 Aminoacetal, 767 Amino-acids, 289, 312, 322p-325r Aminoalcohols, 322 2-Aminoanthraquinone, 734p, 806 p-Aminoazobenzene, 597p-599r, 775, 782, Aminoazo-compounds, 597-599 Aminobenzaldehydes, 653 m-Aminobenzenesulphonic acid, 611 Aminobenzoic acids, 680 o-Amino-ω-chlorostyrene, 750 2-Aminodiphenylamine, 603 4-Aminodiphenylamine, 603 o-Aminodiphenylmethane, 767 2-Aminoethanol, 322 2-Amino-5-nitrotoluene, 680 *m*-Aminophenol, 628p, 794 *o*-Aminophenol, 628p, 639 *p*-Aminophenol, 289, 590, 628p-629r, 634, 639, 672 Aminophthalic acids, 693 Aminopyridines, 759 5-Aminosalicylic acid, 784 o-Aminostilbene, 735 4-Aminotoluene-2-sulphonic acid, 784 Ammonolysis, 193d, 198-199, 203, 309, 320, 321, 322, 340, 382, 396, 566, 569, 620, 694 Ampholytes, 324 Amphoteric electrolytes, 324 Amygdalin, 645, 689 Amyl acetate, 191 Amyl alcohols, 138 Amyl chlorides, 138 Amyl nitrite, 196 Amylopectin, 463 α-Amylose, 463 β-Amylose, 463 Analysis, qualitative, 2 Analysis, quantitative, 3 Anchimeric assistance, 102d, 415, 491 Anethole, 639, 659 Angelic acid, 285 Angelica lactones, 245 Angular-compounds, 734 648, 670, 753, 763, 764, 786, 787, 795, 798, 802, 803, 804 Aniline-black, 780 Aniline Blue, 788

Aniline Purple, 798 Aniline Yellow, 782 Anilino-compounds, 602, 670 Anils, 162, 567, 650 Anionoid reagents, 33 Anionotropy, 221d, 272–273 see also Tautomerism Anisaldehyde, 659 Anisic acid, 684 Anisidines, 639 Anisole, 637 Anisyl alcohol, 659 Anthracene, 529, 726p-732r, 807 orientation in, 730 Anthracenecarboxylic acids, 732 Anthracene dichloride, 731 Anthracene oil, 499, 726, 734 Anthracene peroxide, 731 Anthracenesulphonic acids, 731 Anthrahydroquinone, see Anthraquinol Anthranilic acid, 680pr, 699, 800 Anthranol, 732 Anthraquinol, 732 Anthraquinone, 726, 727, 730, 732p-734r. Anthraquinonesulphonic acids, 733, 806 Anthroic acids, 732 Anthrols, 732 Anthrone, 732 Anti and Syn forms, 592 Antifebrin, 568 Antiknock compounds, 57 Antimony compounds, 345 Antipyrine, 755 Apiose, 456 Aponal, 383 ar = aromatic, 718 Arabinose, 259, 437, 448, 449, 456 Arabitol, 259 Arabonic acid, 461 Arachidic acid, 186 Arachidonic acid, 263 Arenes, 511 Arginine, 389 Argol, 420 Armstrong-Baeyer benzene formula, 505 Arndt-Eistert synthesis, 327-328 Aromatic compounds, 8, 59, 499, 511 from aliphatic compounds, 59, 541 Aromaticity, 503, 506, 507-511 Aromatic sextet theory, 508 Aromatic substitution, 514-529, 547 Arsenic compounds, 343-345, 587 Artificial silk, 464 Aryl cyanides, 586, 648 Aryl halides, 479, 544p-552r, 585-586 as = asymmetrical, 62, 502 Aseptic distillation, 217 Asphaltic bitumen, 57 Aspirin, see Acetylsalicylic acid Association, 21, 53, 127, 176, 204, 307 see also Hydrogen bonding Asymmetric carbon atom, 406 Asymmetric synthesis, 416 absolute, 417 Asymmetric transformation, 412 Asymmetry, 403 Atropic acid, 689 Auramine G, 785 Auramine O, 785

Aurin, 790 Autoracemisation, 412 Autoxidation, 185, 648 Auxochromes, 772d, 775, 778 Axial bond, 489 Azelaic acid, 380, 496 Azimuthal quantum number, 10 Azines, 152, 649 Aziridine, 321 Azlactones, 677, 685 Azobenzene, 562, 600pr Azo-compounds, 349, 589, 595d, 600-602 see also Dyes, azo Azoles, 753-756 Azomethines, see Anils Azonhenol, see p-Hydroxyazobenzene Azoxybenzene, 562, 599p-600r, 602 Azulene, 510 Azulmic acid, 298

B

Baker-Nathan effect, see Hyperconjuga-

 $B_{AC}$  reactions, 191-192  $B_{AL}$  reactions, 191-192

Baeyer strain theory, 486-488

Badische's acid, 719

Bakelite, 79

Balz-Schiemann reaction, 586 Barbitone, 386 Barbituric acid, 386 Bart reaction, 587 Bathochromes, 772d, 775 Baudisch reaction, 631 Beckmann rearrangement, 667d, 766 Behenic acid, 186 Benzal-, see Benzylidene-Benzaldehyde, 165, 258, 260, 559, 644, 645p-654r, 701, 705, 706, 786, 788 Benzaldehydesulphonic acids, 654 Benzaldoxime, 649 Benzandoxine, 645
Benzandide, 565, 677
Benzene, 290, 379, 421, 424, 431, 480, 483, 499, 500p-529r, 534, 535, 539, 540, 541, 542, 545, 546, 548, 554, 587, 607, 646, 647, 661, 664, 665, 675, 698, 700, 701, 705, 707, 727, 733, 745, 775, 778, 702 792 see also Benzene ring from petroleum, 59, 500 Benzeneazo-compounds, see Phenylazocompounds Benzenediazonium chloride, see Diazonium salts Benzenedicarboxylic acids, 692-696 Benzenedisulphonic acids, 611, 629 Benzene hexachloride, 544 Benzene ring, 511 isomerism in, 502 orientation in, 511-515, 540 structure of, 503-511 substitution in, 514-529, 540 Benzenesulphinic acid, 610, 614-615 Benzenesulphonic acid, 481, 608p-611r Benzenesulphonyl chloride, 610p-611r, 614, 615 Benzene triozonide, 503 s-Benzenetrisulphonic acid, 611

INDEX

827

Bishydroxymethylphenol, 624 Benzenoid compounds, 499 Bismarck Brown, 579, 782 Benzhydrol, 664 Benzidine, 602, 697, 699pr, 783 Bismuth compounds, 345 Benzidine transformation, 602d-604, 750 Bismuth oxide (use of), 240 Benzil, 707pr, 735 Benzilic acid, 707 Bisulphite compounds, 151, 279 Biuret, 386 Benzilic acid rearrangement, 707d, 739, Biuret reaction, 386 744 Blanc's rule, 380 Blasting gelatin, 256 Benziminazole, 579 Boiling points of isomers, 53, 105, 127, 141, 190 Benzine, 57, 500 Benzocyclobutene, 477 π-Bond, 26 Benzofulvenes, 724 σ-Bond, 26 Benzofuran, 744 Benzoic acid, 179, 500, 661, 664, 665, Bond diagrams, 7 675p-680r, 698, 707, 726, 791 Bond energies, 19 Benzoic anhydride, 677 Bond lengths, 18, 25, 271 Benzoin, 706-708 Bond number, 89d Bond order, see Double-bond character Bone oil, 747, 756, 761, 763, 765 Benzoin condensation, 706d, 744 Benzol, 500 Benzonitrile, see Phenyl cyanide Borazole, 510 Benzophenone, 664p-666r, 701, 702, 708 Boric acid complexes, 257 Borinic and Boronic acids, 619 Benzopinacol, 664 Benzopinacolone, 665 Boron trifluoride (use of), 143, 175, 190, Benzopyrone, 691, 768 206, 241, 294, 530, 531, 533, 553, 554, 608, 662, 715, 750 o-Benzoquinone, 672, 775 p-Benzoquinone, 146, 598, 668p-672r, 775 Bouveault-Blanc reduction, 125d di-imine, 672 Brassidic acid, 286 von Braun method, 316, 761-762 imine, 672 Bridged carbonium ions, 33, 101d, 172, oximes, 672 206, 416, 478, 668, 708 Brilliant Green, 786 Benzothiophen, 746 Benzotrichloride, 521, 551 Benzoylacetone, 290, 662 Brilliant Indigo B, 805 Brilliant Indigo 2B, 805 o-Benzoylbenzoic acid, 664, 726, 733p Benzoyl chloride, 647, 664, 675, 676pr, Bromamides, 206 678, 762 Bromination, see Halogenation Benzoylformic acid, 417, 661 Bromoacetanilides, 568 Bromoacetone, 154-155, 237, 241, 755 Benzoylglycine, see Hippuric acid Benzoyl peroxide, 68, 78, 678p ω-Bromoacetophenone, see Phenacyl bro-Benzoylpiperidine, 762 mide Bromoacetyl bromide, 287, 289 Benztriazole, 579 Benzylacetophenone, 650 Bromoacetylene, 541 Bromoanilines, 568, 616 Benzyl alcohol, 578, 644pr, 701 p-Bromoazobenzene, 600 Benzylamine, 577p-578r, 647 Benzylaniline, 767 Bromoazoxybenzene, 600 p-Bromobenzaldehyde, 654 o-Benzylbenzoic acid, 732 Benzyl bromide, 705 Bromobenzene, 539, 544p, 545, 546p, 547, Benzyl chloride, 535, 550pr, 645, 647, 700, 576, 607, 639 726 Bromobenzenesulphonic acids, 633 Bromobenzoic acids, 679, 688 Benzyl cyanide, 550p, 559, 561 Benzylidene acetate, 646 o-Bromobenzyl bromide, 727 Benzylideneacetone, 650p, 690 Bromobutanes, 111 ε-Bromocaproic acid, 212 Benzylideneacetophenone, 650, 662 Benzylideneaniline, 567, 650 p-Bromochlorobenzene, 569 Benzylidene chloride, 549, 550p-551r, 645, 2-Bromocyclohexanone, 490 690, 701, 705 p-Bromodiphenyl, 587 1-Bromo-1: 2-diphenylpropanes, 430 Benzylidene-ethylamine, 765 1: 3-Benzylideneglycerol, 258p, 260 Bromoform, 118 S-Benzylisothiouronium salts, 611 Bromoheptafluoropropane, 207 α-Bromoisobutyric acid, 284 Benzylphenylmethanol, 705 α-Bromoisobutyryl bromide, 287 Benzyltrimethylammonium hydroxide, 265 Bromomalonic acid, 235, 373p, 417 Benzyne, 535, 547, 548, 719 Bromonaphthalenes, 716 p-Bromonitrobenzene, 699 Bergius process, 60 Bromonitrosobenzene, 522 Betaines, 325 Bromophenols, 624, 625 Bicyclo-compounds, 467n α-Bromopropionic acid, 398, 411 Bimolecular mechanism, 106-110 β-Bromopropionic acid, 211p, 407 Bis-compounds, 143 Bromopyridines, 758 Bisazo-compounds, 580, 590, 783, 784 Bromosuccinic acid, 418, 423 Bischler-Napieralski reaction, 766 N-Bromosuccinimide, 147, 375p-376r Bisdiazoaminobenzene, 596

m-Bromotoluene, 584 o-Bromotoluene, 545, 658 p-Bromotoluene, 545, 585, 654 y-Bromo-n-valeric acid, 211 Bromural, 386 Bronner's acid, 719 Bucherer reaction, 718 Buna rubber, 84 Buna N rubber, 93 Butadiene, 84p-89r, 122, 472, 473, 474, 589, 728, 777 n-Butane, 43p, 50, 51, 52, 59, 84 Butane-1:3-diol, 84, 225 Butane-2:3-dione, see Dimethylglyoxal Butane-1:1:4:4-tetracarboxylic ester, n-Butanol, 60, 97, 127p, 135, 137p, 185, 190, 276, 383 sec.-Butanol (Butan-2-ol), 60, 127p, 130, t-Butanol, 55, 60, 127p, 130, 138p, 148 Butanone, 151, 163, 170p, 199, 229, 230, 240, 250, 541 Butatriene, 84 But-1-ene, 76, 82p, 84, 130 But-2-ene, 82p, 130, 424 t-Butoxyaluminium hydride, 148 Butter Yellow, 782 Butyl alcohols, 137-138 see also Butanols and Isobutanol n-Butylbenzene, 534 n-Butyl n-butyrate, 190 n-Butyl carbamate, 383 Butylenes, see Butenes and Isobutene t-Butyl ethyl ether, 140 n-Butyl halides, 111, 474, 534 t-Butyl halides, 43, 76, **107**, **130**, 137, 363 n-Butyl-lithium, 362, 759 n-Butylmethylacetic acid, 442 t-Butylsulphonic acid, 55 But-1-yne, 97, 98 But-2-yne, 98 Butyne-1: 4-diol, 84, 254, 742 Butraldehyde, 276 n-Butyric acid, 185p, 229, 374 γ-Butyrolactone, 212, 374, 396 Butyrophenone, 663

C

Cacodyl, 344
Cacodyl chloride, 344
Cacodyl oxide, 344
Cacodyl sulphide, 345
Cacodylic acid, 344
Cadaverine, see Pentamethylenediamine
Cadet's liquid, 344
Cadmium organo-compounds, 364
Caffeine, 387
Cage complexes, see Clathrates
Calcium carbide, 90, 265, 300
Camphor, 464, 481, 632
Canal complexes, see Channel complexes
Cane-sugar, see Sucrose
Cannizzaro reaction, 160d, 214, 243, 649,

744 crossed, 161d, 165–166 Canonical structure, 17 Capric acid, see Decoic acid

Caproic acid, see Hexoic acid Caprylic acid, see Octoic acid Carbamic acid, 383 Carbamide, see Urea Carbanilide, see s-Diphenylurea Carbanions, 33d, 480, 526 Carbazole, 753 Carbene, see Methylene Carbene dichloride, see Dichloromethylene Carbides, 96 t-Carbinamines, 303 Carbinol, see Methanol Carbitols, 252 Carbocyclic compounds, 467 Carbohydrates, 134, 185, 322, 436n, 436-465 Carbolic acid, see Phenol Carbonation, 194d, 230, 372, 385, 633, 681, 702 see also Acids Carbon atom, electronic configuration of. 11, 12, 25 primary, 44 quaternary, 44 secondary, 44 tertiary, 44 Carbon atom, valency of, 7, 12, 25 valency hybridisation of, 25-28 Carbon black, 41, 55 Carbon dioxide, 17-20, 29, 38, 96, 133, 135, 175, 179, 194, 356, 362, 370, 383, 454, Carbon disulphide, 118, 315, 317, 337, 341, 358, 567 Carbonic acid, 381 amides of, 382-386 esters of, 381 Carbonium ions, 33d, 108, 415, 516, 522 Carbon monoxide, 38, 60, 126, 133, 175, 176, 179, 190, 200, 214, 284, 292, 379, 381, 397, 541, 646 Carbon suboxide, 372 Carbon tetrachloride, 118p-119r, 121, 183, 664, 702 Carbonylation reaction, 127d Carbonyl chloride, 118, 119, 300, 381p-382r, 664, 675, 789 Carbonyl sulphide, 337 Carboxylation, see Carbonation Carbylamine test, see Isocyanide reaction Carius method, 3 Carnaubyl alcohol, 138 Carone, 481 Caro's acid (use of), 317, 397, 429, 555, 568, 673 Carvacrol, 632 Casing-head gas, 60 Castor oil, 285, 380 Catalytic reforming, 500 Catechol, 59, 68, 611, 621, 632p-633r, 638, 659 Catenation, 2 Cationoid reagents, 33 Cationotropy, 221 see also Tautomerism Celanese silk, 465 Cellobiose, 462 Cellophane, 465 Cellosolve, ethyl, 251 methyl, 251

Cellotetrose, 464 Cellotriose, 464 Celluloid, 464 Cellulose, 79, 462, 464-465 Cellulose acetates, 79, 465 Cellulose nitrates, 79, 464 Cellulose xanthates, 465 Centre of symmetry, 410 Cerotic acid, 186 Ceryl alcohol, 138 Cetyl alcohol, 138 Cetyl palmitate, 138 Chalkones, 650 Channel complexes, 387, 390, 412 Chardonnet process, 464 Charge-cloud, 23 Charge densities, 89, 528, 714, 729, 737, 750, 751, 760, 765, 767 Charge-transfer compounds, 517, 557, 670 Chaulmoogric acid, 479 Chelation, 14d, 22, 185, 217, 223, 226, 240, 241, 299, 324, 372, 425, 445, 570, 625, 626, 631, 658, 687, 692, 779 Chelidonic acid, 768 Chichibabin reaction, 758 Chloral, 167-169, 549 Chloral alcoholate, 167-168 Chloral condensation, 657 Chloral hydrate, 168-169, 753 Chloramine, 357 Chloramine T, 612 Chloranil, 669 Chloretone, 118 Chlorination, see Halogenation Chlorinolysis, 119d Chloroacetaldehyde, 98, 756 Chloroacetamide, 213 N-Chloroacetanilide, 575 Chloroacetic acid, 213pr, 302, 322, 325, 397, 802 Chloroacetone, 748 ω-Chloroacetophenone, see Phenacyl chloride Chloroacetyl chloride, 289, 394, 661 Chloroanilines, 569 Chloroanthracenes, 731 Chlorobenzaldehydes, 653-654, 714 Chlorobenzene, 479, 525, 544-545, 548po-Chlorobenzoic acid, 679 p-Chlorobenzoic acid, 679, 684 γ-Chlorobutyric acid, 212 Chlorocarbonic esters, see Chloroformic esters Chlorocyclohexane, 490 α-Chlorodi-isopropyl ketone, 154 1-Chloro-2: 4-dinitrobenzene, 595, 627p α-Chloroethylbenzene, 549 β-Chloroethylbenzene, 549 Chloroform, 26, 69, 116p-118r, 122, 194, 214, 297, 431, 655, 659, 701, 749 Chloroformic acid, 214 Chloroformic esters, 382p, 622 Chlorohydrins, 69, 212 Chlorohydroquinone, see Chloroquinol p-Chloroiodobenzene, 551 β-Chloroisocrotonic ester, 285 Chloromethylation, 535d, 622, 685, 715, 731, 738 2-Chloro-2-methylbutane, 111

Chloromethylene, 476 Chloromethyleneformamidine, 647 Chloromethyl ether, 76, 535 Chloronaphthalenes, 684-685, 716 m-Chloronitrobenzene, 585 o-Chloronitrobenzene, 606, 616, 697 p-Chloronitrobenzene, 586, 618 2-Chloro-octane, 52, 412 Chloropentanes, see Amyl chlorides o-Chlorophenol, 625, 632 Chloropicrin, 117, 305p, 381, 628 Chloroprene, 95 α-Chloropropionic acid, 398 β-Chloropropionic acid, 211 Chloropyridines, 749, 758 Chloroquinol, 669 α-Chlorostyrene, 538 B-Chlorostyrene, 538 Chlorosuccinic acid, 413 m-Chlorotoluene, 631 o-Chlorotoluene, 609p, 631, 679 Cholamine, 263, 322p Choline, 263, 322p Chromatography, 2, 151 Chromogens, 772 Chromones, 768 Chromophores, 772d, 774, 775 Chromotrope 2B, 785 Chromotropic acid, 785 Chrysoidine G, 782 Cinchomeronic acid, 761 Cine-substitution, 547 Cinnamaldehyde, 655, 766 Cinnamic acid, 520, 588, 654, 690 Cinnamyl alcohol, 655 Cis-addition, 428-429, 473, 475 Cisoid form, 405 Cis-trans isomerism, see Geometrical isomerism Citraconic acid, 422, 430 Citraconic anhydride, 422, 430 Citral, 277 Citric acid, 421-423, 431 Citronellal, 277 Citronellol, 273 Civetane, 496 Civetone, 496 Claisen condensation, 224d, 230, 240, 287 Claisen reaction, 158d, 650, 651, 690 Claisen rearrangement, 640-642 Claisen-Schmidt condensation, see Claisen reaction Clathrates, 387, 634-635 Claus benzene formula, 504 Clemmensen reduction, 150d, 177, 363, 468, 495, 496, 497, 531, 661, 705, 710, 725 Cleve's acid, 719 Coal, petrol from, 60 tar, 60, 479, 499 Coal-tar dyes, 771 Collidines, 761 Collision theory of reactions, 33 Collodion, 464 Colour, 771 deepening of, 772d, 773-778, 784, 789 Colour base, 786 Colour and constitution, 771-778 Compensation, external, 407 internal, 409

Competitive reactions, 517 Cyanic acid, 298 Compression energy, 108 Cyanides, see Alkyl and Aryl cyanides Cyanine, 796 Concerted mechanism, 222d, 452 Condensation, 156d, 281 Cyanoacetic acid, 232p, 372 Condensation polymers, 79d, 249 Cyanoacetic ester, see Ethyl cyanoacetate Configuration, 8, 366, 399 absolute, 402, 419 α-Cyanoesters, 381 Cyanoethylation, 265 correlation of, 413-414, 417 Cyanogen, 298pr, 357, 370, 371 Cyanogen bromide, 298, 318, 762 determination of, 419, 426-427, 456-460, 666-668 Cyanogen chloride, 298, 300, 337, 357 Cyanohydrins, 151-152 Cyanuric acid, 298-299 specification of, 419-420 Conformation, 8, 53, 405, 452, 488, 544 Conformational analysis, 417, 488-492 Cyanuric bromide, 298 Congo Red, 783 Cyanuric chloride, 298 Conjugation, 84d, 85-89, 88d, 184, 772, Cyclic compounds, 467 776, 778 Cyclic ureides, 386 balanced, 88 Cycloalkanes, see Cycloparaffins crossed, 669 Cycloalkenes, see Cyclo-olefins Conjugative effect, 20 Cycloalkynes, 486 Constancy of valency angle, principle of, Cyclobutadiene, 477 404 Cyclobutane, 474, 476, 488 Constellation, 488 derivatives of, 290, 469, 476, 477, 484, Constitution, 7 691 Co-ordinate valency, 13 Cyclobutanol, 477 Copolymerisation, 79 Cyclobutene, 477 Cyclobutylamine, 477 Cyclobutylcarbinol, 478 Copper organo-compounds, 362 Cordite, 257 Cordycepose, 456 Cyclobutylmethylamine, 477 o-Coumaric acid, 691 Cycloheptadecanone, see Dihydrocivetene Coumarin, 691p, 768 Coumarinic acid, 691–692 Cycloheptane, 484p Cycloheptanone, 470 Coumarone, 744 Cycloheptatriene, 477, 484 Coupling reactions, 589-591, 601 Cyclohexadienes, 483, 506 see also Dyes, azo Cyclohexane, 379, 481p-482r, 488-491, 501, Covalency, 12d, 13-14, 15 Cracking, 58 derivatives of, 470, 481-484, 488catalytic 59, 501 491 methods of, 58-59 Cyclohexanediol, 475 Cream of tartar, 420 Cyclohexanol, 361, 469, 481, 482p, 506 Creatine, 389 Cyclohexanone, 379, 469, 479, 482 Cyclohexatriene, see Benzene Cyclohexene, 68, 84, 376, 483, 506 reduction with, 424, 483, 565, 567 Creatinine, 389 Creosote, 631 Creosote oil, see Heavy oil m-Cresol, 631 o-Cresol, 583, 631 Cyclohexyl methyl ketone, 470 Cyclo-octadiene, 484 p-Cresol, 535, 550, 589, 596, 631, 656, 673, Cyclo-octane, 485 684 Cyclo-octatetraene, 485pr, 507, 509 Cresylic acid, 631 Cyclo-octatriene, 485 Croceic acid, 721 Cyclo-octene, 484, 485 Cyclo-olefins, 467n, 468-486 Crotonaldehyde, 271, 276pr, 285, 424, Cycloparaffins, 467n, 468-486 Crotonic acid, 282, 283, 285 Crotyl alcohol, 271-272, 276 Cyclopentadecanone, 497 Cyclopentadiene, 473, 479-480, 511 Crotyl compounds, 272-273 Cyclo-pentadienides, 481 Crowding, see Molecular crowding Cyclopentane, 474, 478-479 Crum-Brown and Gibson rule, 515 derivatives of, 468, 470, 471, 478, Crum-Brown and Walker synthesis, 368 479 Crystal Ponceau 6R, 783 Crystal Violet, 776, 788-789 Cyclopentanol, 478 Cyclopentanone, 468, 470, 471, 479 Cumene, see Isopropylbenzene Cyclopentene, 479 4-Cumene, 537 Cyclopentyl bromide, 479, 480 5-4-Cumenesulphonic acid, 613 Cyclopropane, 474, 475-476, 487, 531 Cumulenes, 84 derivatives of, 83, 469, 476 Cupferron, 562 Cyclopropanol, 476 Cyclopropene, 477 Cuprammonium process, 465 Cupra silk, 465 Cyclopropylamine, 476 Curtius reaction, 209d, 311, 383 Cyclopropylcarbinol, 477 Cyamelide, 299 Cyclopropylmethylamine, 478 Cyanamide, 300-301p, 388 p-Cymene, 537 derivatives of, 312, 318 Cytosine, 769

D

Dahl's acid, 719 Dakin reaction, 632 Dam's solution, 261 Darzens glycidic ester condensation, 159 Darzens procedure, 103 Dative link, see Co-ordinate valency D.D.T., 549 Debenzylation, 644 Decahydronaphthalene, 491-492, 712 n-Decaldehyde, 169 Decalins, 491-492, 712 Decamethylene bromide, 468 676, 682, 683, 693, 705, 735, 741, 751, Decoic acid, 186 Degeneracy, 18 Dehalogenation, **64**, 83, 84, 249, 287, 548 Dehydration, 179, 201, 203, 237, 250, 257, 281, 289, 372, 395, 741, 755, 756 of alcohols, 70, 80, 130, 469, 535 of aldoximes, 294, 448, 766 of amides, 205 Dehydroacetic acid, 227 Dehydrogenation, 132d of alcohols, 132 of alicyclic compounds, 482, 542 of hydrocarbons, 65, 84, 85, 537, 725, 727, 734 see also Cracking Dehydrohalogenation, 63d, 82, 83, 90, 111-113, 119, 122, 128, 205, 212, 265, 274, 284, 285, 321, 423, 430, 712, 731, 760 Delocalisation energy, 88 Delocalised bonds, 88-89, 184, 480, 509-Demjanov rearrangement, 476, 477-478 Denaturing, 135 3-Deoxyapiose, 456 Deoxy-compounds, 707n Deoxybenzoin, 706-707 Deoxyhexose, 259, 438 Depsides, 686 Desmotropism (Desmotropy), 221 Desoxy-compounds, see Deoxy-compounds Desulphonation, 609 Desulphuration, 154 Detergents, 138, 196 Deuterium compounds, 36, 132, 150, 218, 283, 407, 450, 604, 608, 641, 649, 666 Dewar benzene formula, 504, 508 Dextrins, 463 Dextrose, see Glucose Diacetonamine, 278 Diacetone alcohol, 237-238 Diacetosuccinic ester, 242, Dialdehydes, aliphatic, 238-239 Dialins, see Dihydronaphthalene Diallyl, 83pr, 239, 360 Diallyl ether, 275 Diamagnetic susceptibility, 510 Diamines, aliphatic, 320-321, 358 aromatic, 578-580 3: 6-(2: 8)-Diaminoacridine, 795 Diaminobenzoic acids, 512

2: 2'-Diaminodiphenyl, 603, 753 4: 4'-Diaminodiphenylmethane, 787 2: 3-Diaminophenazine, 578 2:5-Diaminotoluene, 598, 799 Diamond Black F, 784 Dianisidine, 699 Dianisidine Blue, 784 Dianthryl, 733 Diastase, 134, 461 Diastereoisomers, 408d, 411, 416-417 Diazines, 769 Diazoacetic ester, 329 Diazoamino-aminoazo rearrangement, 597, 598 Diazoaminobenzene, 595-596 Diazoamino-compounds, 595-599 Diazoates (Diazotates), 592 Diazo-compounds, aliphatic, 325-329 aromatic, 595 Diazocyanides, 593 Diazohydroxides, 592 Diazoketones, 327-328, 394 Diazomethane, 80, 283, 325p-329r, 475, 479, 637, 754, 772 Diazonium hydroxides, 582, 592-593 Diazonium perbromides, 588 Diazonium salts, 524, 582-583p, 583np-591r, 592n, 634, 648, 652, 661 also Coupling reactions and Dyes structure of, 591-594 Diazo-oxides, 601-602 Diazophenols, 601-602 Diazosulphonates, 593 Diazotisation, 582-583 abnormal, 588, 759 Dibenzenechromium (O), 541 Dibenzofuran, 745 Dibenzothiophen, 746 Dibenzoylmethane, 662 Dibenzyl, 705, 734 Dibenzylideneacetone, 650 Diborane (use of), 76, 126 Dibromoacraldehyde, 455 α: α'-Dibromoadipic acid, 431 Dibromoanthraquinone, 807 Dibromobenzenes, 511 1: 2-Dibromobutane, 97 2: 6-Dibromo-p-cresol, 550 3: 3'-Dibromo-5: 5'-dimethylhydrazobenzene, 603 Dibromomethylene, 83 1:5-Dibromopentane, see Pentamethylene bromide 1: 2-Dibromopropane, see Propylene bromide 3-Dibromopropane, see Trimethylene bromide α: α-Dibromopropionic acid, 243 2: 3-Dibromopropylene, 83 α: α'-Dibromosuccinic acid, 420, 429 N: N'-Dicarbazyl, 753 Dicarboxylic acids, see under Acids Dichloramine T, 612 Dichloroacetaldehyde, 94 Dichloroacetic acid, 94, 213pr s-Dichloroacetone, 256, 422 Dichloracetylene, 92 2: 6-Dichloroaniline, 569 2: 6-Dichlorobenzaldehyde, 654

Dichlorobenzenes, 513, 544, 632, 672 1: 1'-Dichlorodiethyl ether, 142 2: 2'-Dichlorodiethyl ether, 143p, 252, s-Dichloroethylene, 120 Dichloromethylene, 106, 297, 477, 479, 655 Dichloronaphthalenes, 716 Dicyanodiamide, 300, 389 α: δ-Dicyanovaleric ester, 471 Dieckmann reaction, 470 Diels-Alder reaction, 472-474, 501, 634, 728, 729 Diene-synthesis, see Diels-Alder reaction Dienophile, 472 Diesters, 253, 371p, 386 Diethylamine, 310, 378 Diethyl esters, see Ethyl esters Diethyl ketone, 230 Diethylene glycol, 250, 252 o-Diethynylbenzene, 495 Digonal hybridisation, 27, 96, 271 Dihalides, 100n, 115p-116r, 360, 368, 369, 416, 468 gem-Dihalides, 115-116 vic-Dihalides, 115-116 Dihydric alcohols, see 1: 2-Glycols Dihydroanthracene, 726 Dihydroanthranol, 733 1: 4-Dihydroanthraquinone, 728 Dihydrobenzene, 483, 506 Dihydrocivetone, 496 Dihydronaphthalenes, 711 1: 4-Dihydronaphthalene-2-carboxylic ester, 728 9: 10-Dihydrophenanthrene, 738 Dihydroxyacetic acid, 242 Dihydroxyacetone, 437, 455 p: p'-Dihydroxybenzophenone, 788, 792 p: p'-Dihydroxydiphenylmethane, 624 2: 3-Dihydroxyindole, 752 Dihydroxymaleic acid, 236 1:4-Dihydroxynaphthalene, 722 9:10-Dihydroxystearic acid, 286 Dihydroxytartaric acid, 632-633 Di-iodoacetylene, 92 Di-isatogen, 802 Di-isoamyl ether, 144 Di-isobutene, 219 Di-isocyanates, 300 Di-isopropyl ether, 143 Di-isopropyl ketone, 154, 359 Di-isopropylideneglucose, 440 Diketen, 289-290 Diketones, 240n α or 1: 2-, 94, 240, 253, 707, 755 β or 1: 3-, 230-231, 240-241, 747, 756, 757, 769 γ or 1: 4-, 241-242, 741, 743, 745, 747 Dimedone, 484 Dimethylacetic acid, 233 Dimethylacetylene, 95 α: α'-Dimethyladipic acid, 487 α: α-Dimethylallyl compounds, 273 Dimethylamine, 319 p-Dimethylaminoazobenzene, 598p, 782 m-Dimethylaminophenol, 790 Dimethylaniline, 212, 571p-576r, 598, 744, 782, 786, 789 2: 4-Dimethylcyclobutane-1: 3-dicarboxylic acid, 410

Dimethylcyclopentanone, 487 Dimethyldiketopiperazine, 410 2: 2'-Dimethyldiphenyl, 734 4:4'-Dimethyldiphenyl, 698 Dimethyl ether, 143 Dimethylformamide, 302, 610, 657, 698 2:5-Dimethylfuran, 242 2:5-Dimethylfuran-3:4-dicarboxylic acid, 742 β: β-Dimethylglutaric acid, 487 Dimethylglyoxal, 240pr, 253, 505 Dimethylglyoxime, 240 Dimethylketen, 287 Dimethylmalonic acid, 233 Dimethylmethylene glycol, 169 4: 4-Dimethyl-5-nitropentan-2-one, 306 3: 5-Dimethyl-1-phenylpyrazole, 241 2: 6-Dimethyl-y-pyrone, 768 2: 6-Dimethyl-y-pyrone, 2:5-Dimethylpyrrole, 242 3: 5-Dimethylpyrrole-2: 4-dicarboxylic ester, 747 Dimethyl sulphoxide, 338, 661 Dimethyltartaric acid, 244 2: 5-Dimethylthiophen, 242 Dinaphthylenes, 477 2: 4-Dinitroaniline, 571p, 784 3: 5-Dinitroanisole, 557 2: 4-Dinitrobenzaldehyde, 653 Dinitrobenzenes, 483, 536, 553, 554p-556r, 2: 4-Dinitrobenzenesulphenyl chloride, 69 2: 5-Dinitrobenzoic acid, 680 3: 5-Dinitrobenzoic acid, 679 2: 2'-Dinitrodiphenyl, 697, 698 4: 4'-Dinitrodiphenyl, 698 Dinitrophenols, 555, 627 2: 4-Dinitrophenylhydrazine, 595 Dinitrosoresorcinol, 633, 781 Dinitrotoluenes, 513, 558, 564, 653 Diolefins, see Alkadienes Dioxalin, 267 Dioxan, 252 Dioxindole, 752 Dioxolanes, 249 Diphenic acid, 699-700, 738 Diphenic anhydride, 699 Diphenyl, 697-698 Diphenylacetic acid, 708 Diphenylacetylene, see Tolan Diphenylamine, 68, 576p-577r, 753 o-Diphenylbenzene, 534, 697 Diphenyl-2-carboxylic acid, 725 Diphenyldiazomethane, 326 Diphenylene, 477 Diphenyl ether, 619, 639, 745 Diphenylhydrazine, 440 Diphenyline, 602 Diphenyliodonium hydroxide, 552 Diphenyliodonium iodate, 552 Diphenyliodonium iodide, 552 Diphenylmercury, 539 Diphenylmethane, 700–701 Diphenylmethyl bromide, 701 Diphenylnitrogen, 577 Diphenylphthalide, 791 Diphenylsulphone, 608 s-Diphenylthiourea, 567 Diphenyltolylmethane, 788 s-Diphenylurea, 129, 387 Dipolar ions, 324, 510

Dipole moments, 6, 14-15d, 19, 25, 30, 53, Dves, contd .: 81, 88, 106, 167, 271, 292, 293, 301, rayon, 780, 785 324, 328, 385, 389, 403, 405, 427, 480, substantive, 779 487, 508, **513**, 594, 688, 756 transition, 774, 778 4: 4'-Dipyridyl, 759 sulphur, 808 xanthen, 790-794 Dynamite, 256 Direct effect, 16, 213 Directive power of groups, 515 Disaccharides, 460-463 Dypnone, 662 Dismutation, see Disproportionation Displacement reaction, 40 Disproportionation, 51d, 78, 161, 238, 359, 366, 483, 534, 704 Dissociation, 109 E-effect, 16d, 20-21, 27, 518-521 Dissociation constants (of acids), 180, 425 El mechanism, 111-113 Dissymmetry, 403 Disulphides, 58, 333p Disulphoxides, 615 Eigenfunctions, 23 Eigenvalues, 23 Elaidic acid, 286 Dithio-acids, 341 Dithiocarbamic acid, 317, 390p, 567 Dithiocarbonic acid, 341 Divinylacetylene, 95 Divinyl ether, 275 Doctor solution, 58, 333 Dodecitol, 440 Electron-affinity, 15 Doebner-Miller synthesis, 764 Double-bond character, 89d, 529, 714-715, 492, 508 729, 737 Double bonds, 8, 26-27, 426 conjugated, 84d, 85-89r, 777 cumulated, 83 detection of, 82 isolated, 83, 777 position of, 72-75 Drying oils, 263 Duff reaction, 657 Dulcin, 640 mobile, 26 Dulcitol, 259 molecular, 24 Dumas method, 3 p, 10, 23 Duplet, 11 Durene, 613 Dyeing, theory of, 780 Dyes, 771d, 778n s, 10, 23, 24 unpaired, 32 acid, 779d, 782 unsaturation, 26 adjective, 779 σ, 26 anthraquinoid, 806-808 azo, 782-785 azoic, 784 basic, 779d, 782 chrome, 784-785 Electrovalency, 12 classification of, 779-780 developed, 780 diphenylamine, 795 diphenylmethane, 785 direct, 779d, 783-784 heterocyclic, 795-800 Empirical formulae, 4 Emulsin, 462 Enantiomorphs, 403 acridine group, 795-796 azine group, 798-800 induline group, 799 oxazine group, 799 End-on approach, 34 Energy barrier, 35 quinoline group, 796-798 thiazine group, 799 thiazine group, ingrain, 780d, 784 mordant, 779d, 784, 807-808 Enols, 217d, 220 nitro, 781 nitroso, 781-782 Eosin, 793 Epichlorohydrin, 256 phthalein, 790-794 phthalocyanine, 808 pigment, 780 Epimerisation, 446 327 pyronine, 790

triphenylmethane, 786-790 vat, 779d, 800-806

### E

E3 mechanism, 111-113 Eclipsed form, 404, 405 Elbs persulphate oxidation, 621 Elbs reaction, 665, 728 Electromeric effect, 16d, 20-21, 27, 518-Electron-attracting groups, 16, 281 Electron diffraction, 6, 183, 328, 340, 490, Electronegativity, 15d, 54, 96,-271 Electronic formulae, 13 Electronic theory of valency, 11-14 Electron-repelling groups, 16d, 108 Electrons, 10, 22 d, 10, 23 f, 10, 23 lone pair of, 13, 28-29 paired, 11, 23 π, 26-27d, 428, 777 Electron spin, 10 Electrophilic reagents, 33d, 66, 150 Elimination reaction, 108, 111-113, 336, 429-430, 491, 666-667 see also Decarboxylation, Dehalogenation, Dehydration and Dehydrohalogenation Endo-compounds, 473 Endo-anthracenemaleic anhydride, 729 Energy profile diagram, 35 Enolisation, 220 see also Tautomerism estimation of, 218-219 Epoxy-compounds, 74, 159-160, 185, 250,

Ethylene nitrosochloride, 70

Equatorial bonds, 489 Erlenmeyer azlactone synthesis, 677, 685 Erucic acid, 286 Erythritol, 258 Erythrose, 456 Erythrulose, 437 Essential oils, 273, 277 Esterification, 186-187d, 686-687 mechanism of, 187-189 Esters, 52, 105, 143, 186np-195r, 195-197, 243, 244, 319, 327, 356, 387, 610 see also individual esters Estragole, 639 Etard reaction, 646 Ethane, 41p-42r, 51, 59, 120 Ethanetetracarboxylic ester, 235, 710 Ethanol, 60, 84, 114, 126p, 127p, 128, 129, 132, **134p-136r**, 140, 143, 166, 169, 181, 194, 195, 238, 242, 341, 443, 584 Ethanolamines, 252, 321, 322 Ethenyl radical, see Vinyl radical Ether, 121, 125, 134, 143pr Ether peroxide, 143 Ethers, aliphatic, 113, 125, 140np-144r, 258, 334, 354 cyclic, 250 unsaturated, 274-275 Ethers, aromatic, 584, 637p-642r Ethinylation, 94d Ethoxyacetylene, 98 Ethoxyaluminium hydrides, 149 Ethyl acetate, 130, 161, 193, 216, 240, 371, 662, 690 Ethyl acetoacetate, see Acetoacetic ester Ethyl β-acetotricarballylate, 228 Ethyl adipate, 254, 470 Ethyl alcohol, see Ethanol Ethylamine, 165, 309, 316, 388 Ethylbenzene, 151, 500, 531, 536, 537, 549, 646 Ethyl benzoate, 224, 662 Ethyl bromide, 43, 51, 67, 534 Ethyl bromoacetate, 228, 368, 422 Ethyl α-bromobutyrate, 212 Ethyl carbamate, see Urethan Ethyl carbonate, 354, 381, 721 Ethyl chloride, 68, 110, 114 Ethyl chloroacetate, 209, 213, 231, 234, 245, 329 Ethyl chloroformate, 325, 337, 357, 382pr Ethyl crotonate, 212p, 287 Ethyl cyanoacetate, 232, 281, 471 Ethyl diacetylacetate, 231 Ethyldimethylcarbinol, 132, 138 Ethyldimethylmethanol, 132, 138
Ethylene, 26-28, 51, 52, 59, 63p, 63, 64,
65-77r, 80p-82r, 111, 119, 121, 134,
143, 169, 176, 195, 247, 249, 318, 327, 329, 335, 336, 362, 537 Ethylene bromide, **65**, **66**, 90, 233, 247, 248, 249, 320, 321, 365, 373, 469 Ethylene chloride, 66, 116, 248, 265 Ethylene chlorohydrin, 69p, 143, 213, 247, 248, 250, 251, 336, 352, 407 Ethylene cyanohydrin, 211, 248, 251, 284, Ethylenediamine, 320 Ethylene fluoride, 122 Ethylene glycol, see Glycol Ethylene-imine, 321

Ethylene oxalate, 371 Ethylene oxide, 250p-252r, 322, 353, 645, Ethyl fluoride, 121 Ethyl formate, 237, 353, 355, 648 Ethyl fumarate, 423 Ethyl glutarate, 471 Ethyl hydrogen sulphate, 134, 195 Ethylidene acetate, 202 Ethylidene bromide, 115 Ethylidene chloride, 90, 116 Ethylidene glycol, 168, 169 Ethyl iodide, 41, 43, 195, 196, 309, 313 Ethyl maleate, 475 Ethyl malonate, 223, 232pr, 279, 280, 373, 381, 423 Ethyl malonate syntheses, dicarboxylic acids, 233-235, 369, 378, fatty acids, 233, 689 heterocyclic compounds, 386 homocyclic compounds, 469, 541 ketones, 234 ketonic acids, 234 polybasic acids, 234, 423, 432 unsaturated acids, 280, 431 Ethylmethylacetic acid, 186, 416 Ethylmethylamine, 165 Ethyl methyl ketone, see Butanone Ethyl nitrate, 196 Ethyl nitrite, 196, 307 Ethyl orthocarbonate, 381p, 388 Ethyl orthoformate, 163, 194p, 355, 658 Ethyl oxalate, 243, 248, 287, 371p, 471, 724, 751, 768 Ethylphenylurea, 388 Ethyl pimelate, 470 Ethyl propionate, 194, 225, 297 Ethyl Red, 797 Ethyl sebacate, 254 Ethyl suberate, 470 Ethyl succinate, 254, 471, 736, 737 Ethyl sulphate, 141, 195p, 352, 640, 660 Ethyl-N-tricarboxylate, 382 Ethyltrimethylammonium iodide, 313 Ethylvanillin, 660 Eugenol, 638 Exaltone, 497 Excited state, 11d, 24d, 30, 773, 777 Exo-compounds, 473 F F-acid, 719 Farnesol, 274 Fast Green, 786 Fast Green O, 633, 781 Fast Red AV, 783 Fats, 259-263, 322 analysis of, 261

Farnesol, 274
Fast Green, 786
Fast Green O, 633, 781
Fast Red AV, 783
Fats, 259-263, 322
analysis of, 261
synthetic, 262
Fatty acids, see Acids, monocarboxylic
Favorsky reaction, 482
Fehling's solution, 160, 421p
Fenton's reagent, 236
Fermentation processes, 38, 134-135, 137, 181, 185, 254, 268, 373, 398, 420, 421, 424, 430, 440, 441, 443

Ferrocene, 480-481 Fibres, animal, 780 natural, 780 synthetic, 780 Field effect, 16 Fire-damp, 39 Fischer-Hepp rearrangement, 574 Fischer indole synthesis, 750 Fischer-Speier esterification, 187 Fischer-Tropsch gasoline synthesis, 60 Fittig reaction, 697 Flash photolysis, 366 Flavanthrone, 806 Flavone, 768 Flexible molecules, 405 Fluorene, 725-726 Fluorenol, 725, 739 Fluorenone, 700, 725, 739 Fluorenone-4-carboxylic acid, 699 Fluorescein, 792 Fluorination, 120-122, 546 Fluoroacetic acid, 214 Fluoro-compounds, aliphatic, 67, 120-122, aromatic, 546, 550, 586 1-Fluoro-2: 4-dinitrobenzene, 448, 559 Fluoroform, 122 Flürscheim's theory of benzene substitution, 515 Formal bond, 87d, 508, 627, 729 Formaldehyde, 60, 73, 94, **164**p-**166**r, 181, 214, 236, 239, 275, 277, 306, 319, 320, 325, 352, 362, 378, 396, 397, 455, 484, 572, 623-624, 662, 701, 755, 787, 790, 796, 803 Formaldehydesulphoxylate, 803 Formalin, 164p, 354, 379, 535 Formamide, 156, 292, 356 Formamidine disulphide, 390 Formamidine hydrochloride, 647 Formic acid, 117, 147, 176, 177, 179p-181r, 214, 267, 297, 573, 579, 784 Formidic ester, 195 Formose, 455 Formylation, 573, 657, 731 Formyl chloride, 200 Formyl fluoride, 200 Fractional bond order, 89d Frankland's method, 52 Free radicals, 32–33d, 51, 52, 59, 66–67, 68–69, 71, 78–79, 103–104, 194, 269, 288, 307, 335, 348, 359, 362, 365p–366r, 376, 526–527, 534, 544, 549, 557, 585, 587, 596, **621**, 648, 651, 665, **698**, 703-704r, 730, 735, 753, 758 Free rotation, principle of, 404-406, 700 Freons, 122 Freund method, 468 Friedel-Crafts reaction, 76-77, 290, 377, 481, 495, 529-534, 661, 664, 675, 700, 701, 702, 705, 707, **710**, **715**, 723, 724, 726, 727, 733, **735**, 736, 737, 738, 792 Friedländer synthesis, **763** Fries rearrangement, 622 Fries rule, 711 Frozen free radicals, 366 Fructosazone, 444-446 Fructose, 442-446, 449-450, 454, 455, 458, 461, 463 Fructosides, 454

Fuchsine, see Rosaniline Fuels, synthetic, 60 Fulminic acid, 300 Fulvenes, 479, 529 Fumaric acid, 90, 418, 424p-425r, 426, 427, 429, 473 Fumaroyl chloride, 425 Functional groups, 48d names of, 48, 235 order of naming, 235 principal, 235 Furan, 239, 741p-743r derivatives of, 743-745 Furanose sugars, 452-454, 458 Furfural, 743 Furfuraldehyde green, 744 Furfuramide, 744 Furfuryl alcohol, 744 Furil, 744 Furilic acid, 744 Furoic acid, 741, 744 Furoin, 744 Fusel oil 135d, 136, 138

G

G-acid, 721, 783 Gabriel's phthalimide synthesis, 311d, 322 Galactose, 259, 438, 441 Gallacetophenone, 664 Gallic acid, 686 Gambine R, 782 Gambine Y, 782 Gas oil, 57, 58 Gasoline, 57, 58, 60 refining of, 58 Gattermann aldehyde synthesis, 646d, Gattermann-Koch aldehyde synthesis, 646 Gattermann reaction, 586 Gauche form, 405 Gelignite, 256 gem. = geminal, 100General acid and base catalysis, 168 Gentianose, 462 Gentiobiose, 462 Geometrical isomerism, 399d, 425-432, 592-594, 666-668 Geometrical isomers, 82, 120, 156, 273, 276, 285, 286, 307, 340, 378, 425-432. 450, 475, 476, 482, 491-492, 600, 601, 625, 649, 690, 691, 705, 735, 776, 804 configuration of, 426-428, 666-668 interconversion of, 428 properties of, 428-430 Geranial, 277 Geraniol, 273 Girard's reagents, 154, 209p Glucitol, 259 Gluconic acid, 440, 446 Glucopyranose, 452-453, 458-459 Glucosates, 441 Glucosazone, 443–446 Glucose, 135, 255, 292, 398, 424, 430, 439p-441r. 443-447, 450, 451, 452, 453, 455, 457-460, 461, 462, 463, 464, 599, 800, 801 α- and β-Glucose, 451-454 Glucosides, 454

Glucosone, 446 Glucuronic acid, 440 Glutaconic acid, 431 Glutaric acid, 378 Glutaric anhydride, 378 Glutose, 450 Glyceraldehyde, 255, 257, 401-402, 437, Glyceric acid. 257 Glycerides, 259-262 Glycerol, 179, 254p-258r, 261p, 422, 763, Glycerol a: a'-dichlorohydrin, 255, 256 Glycerol α: β-dichlorohydrin, 255, 256 Glycerol a-monochlorohydrin, 255, 260 Glycerol β-monochlorohydrin, 255p, 267 Glycerol trichlorohydrin, 255p, 258 Glycerose, 257, 455 Glyceryl monoformate, 179, 267 Glyceryl monoxalate, 179, 267 Glyceryl trinitrate, see Nitroglycerine Glycidic esters, 159–160, 244 Glycine, 312, 322p-325r, 329 Glycogen, 463. Glycol, 122, 236, 238, 242, 247p-250r, 251, 252, 257, 371, 374 Glycolaldehyde, 236, 252 Glycollic acid, 214, 236, 243, 249, 324, 325, 372, 397pr Glycollide, 397 Glycols, 247-254 1: 2-Glycols, 212, 247-253 Glycosides, 454 Glyoxal, 94, 238p-239r, 505, 755, 772 Glyoxalines, see Imidazoles Glyoxylic acid, 242-243, 424 Glyptals, 257 Gomberg reaction, 587 Greek alphabet, 815 Grignard reagents, 348p-360r, 479, 548, 702, 703 abnormal behaviour of, 359, 698 structure of, 348-349 Grignard syntheses, acetals, 355 acetylenes, 98, 351 acids, 328, 356 alcohols, 352-354, 417 aldehydes, 354-355, 658 alkyl-arsines, 343 alkyl-bismuthines, 345 alkyl cyanides, 357 alkyl iodides, 358 alkyl-phosphines, 342 alkyl-silanes, 345 alkyl-stibines, 345 amines, 357 chloromercuri-compounds, 548 cyclic compounds, 472 dicyclopentadienyls, 480 dithioic acids, 358 esters, 356-357, 721 ethers, 64, 354 ferrocenes, 480 1: 2-glycols, 253 hydrocarbons, 351-352, 359, 698 ketals, 355 ketones, 277, 289, 355-356 organometallic compounds, 358 organo-non-metallic compounds, 358

Grignard syntheses, contd.:
phenols, 618
sulphinic acids, 358, 614
thioalcohols, 358
Ground state, 11d, 24, 30, 773, 777
Groves process, 100
Guaiacol, 638
Guanidine, 388-389
Guerbet reaction, 131
Gulose, 259, 438, 457
Gun-cotton, 256, 464

H

H-acid. 783 Halochromic salts, 662-663 Haloform reaction, 162-163 Halogenation, acid anhydrides, 210 acid chlorides, 210 acids, aliphatic, 210-211, 235 acids, aromatic, 679, 683 alcohols, 128, 167-168 alkynes, 92 amines, aliphatic, 315 amines, aromatic, 568-569 carbonyl compounds, 154-155, 650, 661 ethers, 142 heterocycles, 748, 758, 805 hydrocarbons, aliphatic, 103-105, 114, 118-119 hydrocarbons, aromatic, 544-546, 549-552, 701, 716, 731, 738 hydrocarbons, cyclic, 474 nitroparaffins, 305 olefins, 67, 82, 375-376 phenols, 624-626 phenolsulphonic acids, 630 see also Fluoro-compounds Halogeno-acids, 159, 160, 178, 210np-213r, 213-214, 302, 368, 396, 397 Halohydrins, 69 Hamamelose, 456 Hammick-Illingworth rule, 515 Hantzsch pyridine synthesis, 757 Hantzsch synthesis, 748 Hauser rearrangement, 578 Haworth synthesis, 710, 736 Heavy oil, **57**, 59, **499**, 618, 708 Hell-Volhard-Zelinsky reaction, 210 Hemiacetals, 161, 190 cyclic, 237 Hemicelluloses, 464 Hemimellitene, 537 n-Heptadecanoic acid, 186 Heptafluorobutyramide, 207 n-Heptaldehyde, 186, 285 n-Heptane, 53, 57, 120, 500 Heptan-2-one, 171 n-Heptoic acid, 186p, 438 Herzig-Meyer method, 314 Heterocyclic compounds, 741-769 Heterolytic fission, 32d Hexachlorocyclohexane, 483, 544 Hexachloroethane, 119p, 122, 183 Hexachloropropane, 120 Hexa-1: 5-diene, see Diallyl Hexahydric alcohols, 259 Hexahydroanthracene, 731

Hexahydrobenzene, see Cyclohexane Hexahydrophthalic acid, 693 Hexahydroterephthalic acid, 428 Hexahydroxybenzene, 541 Hexamethylacetone, 230, 359 Hexamethylbenzene, 95, 613, 696 Hexamethylenediamine, 321p, 379 Hexamethylene glycol, 254 Hexamethylenetetramine, 149, 164p, 647, n-Hexanal, 149 n-Hexane, 56, 59, 438, 442, 500 Hexane-2: 4-dione, 220 Hexane-2: 5-dione, see Acetonylacetone Hexan-3-one, 162 Hexaphenylethane, 703-705 Hex-1-ene, 307 Hex-2-ene, 307 Hex-3-ene, 64 ·n-Hexoic acid, 186, 437 Hexoses, aldo-, 438-441, 457-460 keto, 442-443, 458 High dilution principle, 397d, 470, 493-Hinsberg separation, 309 Hippuric acid, 677 van't Hoff-Le Bel theory, 403 Hofmann amine preparation, 308 Hofmann exhaustive methylation action, 318-319d, 476, 506, 762 Hofmann mustard oil reaction, 390 Hofmann reaction (degradation), 206-207d, 283, 385, 565, 577, 680, 759 Hofmann-Martius rearrangement, 574 Hofmann rule, 318 Homocyclic compounds, 467 Homologous series, 47 Homolytic fission, 32 Homophthalic acid, 694, 724, 765 Homophthalimide, 765 Homoprotocatechuic acid, 685 Homoveratric acid, 685 Houben-Hoesch synthesis, 663 Hubl method, 261 Hund's rules, 11 Hunsdiecker reaction, 105, 546 Hybridisation, 25-29, 96, 184, 271, 366 see also Digonal, Trigonal and Tetrahedral hybridisation Hydnocarpic acid, 479 Hydracrylic acid, see β-Hydroxypropionic Hydratropic acid, 689 Hydrazides, see Acid Hydrazides Hydrazines, 317, 326, 572, 594-595 Hydrazobenzene, 562, 599, 600, 602p-604r Hydrazones, 152-153 Hydrindene, see Indane Hydrindone, see Indanone Hydroaromatic compounds, 481 Hydrobenzamide, 650 Hydrobenzoin, 650, 707 Hydroboronation, 76 Hydrocinnamic acid, 689 Hydrocyanic acid, see Hydrogen cyanide Hydroforming, 500 Hydroformylation reaction, 127d ortho Hydrogen, 366 para Hydrogen, 366

Hydrogenation, acetylene, 91 acid anhydrides, 126, 693 acid chlorides, 126, 148 acids, aliphatic, 126, 178 unsaturated, 282, 424 acyloins, 253 amides, 310 anils, 312, 572 carbon, 38 carbon monoxide, 38, 60, 126 coal, 60 cyanides, 296, 321 cycloalkynes, 486 diesters, 253-254 esters, 126, 193 Grignard reagents, 352 heterocycles, 742, 749, 754, 759 hydrocarbons, aromatic, 379, 495, 501, 712, 731, 738 cyclic, 474 hydroxyacids, 736 isocyanides, 297 ketones, 163 nitro-compounds, 303, 565 nitroso-compounds, 560 oils, 262 olefins, 65 cyclic, 469 oximes, 310 ozonides, 75 phenols, 482, 620 sugars, 440, 443, 461 unsaturated carbonyl compounds, 276. 278, 650 see also Reduction Hydrogen atom active, 198d primary, 44 secondary, 44 tertiary, 44 Hydrogen bonding, 21–22d, 217, 671, 780, 804, 805 see also Association and Chelation Hydrogen cyanide, 93, 151, 195, 279, 292p-293r, 355, 646-647, 670, 757 Hydrogen fluoride (use of), 67, 121, 122 198, 214, 529, 531, 550, 586, 710, 737 Hydrogen isocyanide, 292, 293, 297 Hydrogen molecule, 24-25 Hydrolysis, acid anhydrides, 202, 375, 423, 424, 678 acid halides, 199, 382, 676 alkyl halides, 106-110 amides, 204, 686 anils, 567 aryl halides, 547, 550, 551, 619, 645, 702 carbon tetrachloride, 119 chloroform, 117 cyanamide, 301, 312 cyanides, 204 diazoamino-compounds, 596 dihalides, 115 esters, 73, 191-192 ethers, 141 fats, 261 halogeno-acids, 212 imides, 326, 375, 694 imidic esters, 208 isocyanates, 310

Hydrolysis, cont.: isocyanides, 297 isothiocyanates, 337 nitroparaffins, 304, 447 N-nitroso-compounds, 317, 572 sulphonamides, 310 sulphonic acids, 609 sulphonyl chlorides, 340, 610 Hydronium ion, see Hydroxonium ion Hydroquinone, see Quinol Hydroxamic acids, 207pr, 317 Hydroxonium ion, 28 Hydroxyacetic acid, see Glycollic acid Hydroxyacetone, 237, 239 Hydroxyacids, aliphatic, dibasic, 417-421 monobasic, 254, 393-398 polybasic, 421-423 Hydroxyacids, aromatic, see Phenolic Hydroxyaldehydes, aliphatic, 165, 236-Hydroxyaldehydes, aromatic, see Phenolic aldehydes Hydroxyanthracenes, 732 Hydroxyazo-compounds, 601-602, 776 p-Hydroxyazobenzene, 599, 629 o-Hydroxybenzaldehyde, see Salicylaldehvde m-Hydroxybenzoic acid, 684, 687 o-Hydroxybenzoic acid, 681-683, 687 p-Hydroxybenzoic acid, 590, 684, 687 Hydroxybenzyl alcohols, 623, **645**, 656 β-Hydroxybutyraldehyde, see Aldol β-Hydroxybutyric acid, 407 y-Hydroxybutyric acid, 211 €-Hydroxycaproic acid, 212 o-Hydroxycinnamic acid, 691 Hydroxydiphenyl, 619 9-Hydroxyfluorene-9-carboxylic acid, 738-739 Hydroxyfumaric acid, 378 Hydroxyhydroquinone, see Hydroxyquinol 2-Hydroxyindole, 752 3-Hydroxyindole, 752 4-Hydroxyisophthalic acid, 682 β-Hydroxyisovaleric acid, 238 Hydroxyketones, aliphatic, 235n, 237-238 Hydroxyketones, aromatic, see Phenolic ketones Hydroxylamines, aliphatic, 303, 317, 357 Hydroxylation, 72, 73, 74, 429, 621 Hydroxymaleic acid, 243, 378 Hydroxymethylfurfural, 441 2-Hydroxy-5-nitrobenzyl chloride, 622 4-Hydroxypentan-2-one, 157 Hydroxyphenanthrenes, 738 α-Hydroxypropionic acid, see Lactic acid β-Hydroxypropionic acid, 407 Hydroxypyridines, 758 Hydroxyquinol, 635 Hyperconjugation, 87, 112, 222, 269-271d, 272, 521, 550

Is-effect, 20-21 Ice colours, 780 Iditol, 259 Idose, 259, 438, 457 Imidazoles, 239, 240, 579, 755 Imidic esters, 208 Imido-chlorides, 205, 295 Iminazole, see Imidazoles Imines, 149, 445, 647 Imino-chlorides, 149, 205, 647 Imino-ethers, see Imidic esters Inclusion complexes, 53, 261, 387 Indane, 724 Indane-1: 3-dione, 725 Indan-1-one, 724 Indan-2-one, 725 Indanthrone, 806 Indene, 724 Indican, 800 Indigo, see Indigotin Indigo Carmine, 805 Indigosol O, 804 Indigotin, 800-805 Indigotin-white, 803 Indirubin, 801 Indole, 750-751 Indolenine, 751 Indophenin reaction, 745 Indophenol, 672, 795 Indoxyl, 752, 801, 802, 803 Indoxyl-2-aldehyde, 801 Indoxylic acid, 802 Induced ring currents, 511 Inductive effect, 15-16, 107, 269, 519 Inductomeric effect, 20-21 Induline Blue 6B, 799 Industrial alcohol, 135 Industrial methylated spirit, 135 Inhibitors, 59, 68 Inner salts, 324d, 616 Inositol, 483 Interaction polarisation, 106 Intermolecular reactions, 102d Internal return, 109 Intramolecular reactions, 102d Inulin, 441, 442 Inversion, see Walden inversion Inversion of cane-sugar, 461 Invert sugar, 461 Iodination, see Halogenation Iodine value (number), 261 Iodinium ion, 679 p-Iodoaniline, 569 Iodobenzene, 546p, 551, 577, 697 m-Iodobenzoic acid, 679 o-Iodobenzoic acid, 699 p-Iodobenzoic acid, 679 Iodoform, 90, 118p, 163 2-Iodohexane, 438, 442 Iodole, see Tetraiodopyrrole o-Iodophenol, 625 p-Iodophenol, 625 Iodosobenzene, 551-552 Iodosobenzene dichloride, 551 Iodosobenzene dinitrate, 551 p-Iodotoluene, 698 Iodoxybenzene, 522, 551pr Ionamine Red KA, 785 Ionic bond, 12, 14, 25 Ionic character, 25, 30

I-effect, 15-16 Id-effect, 20-21

Hypsochromic group, 772

Ion pairs, 109d, 273, 703 Isatic acid, 753 Isatin, 745, 752p-753r, 764, 800, 801 Isatin chloride, 801 Isatogenic acid, 801 Iso-compounds, 45 Isoamyl alcohol, see Isopentanol Isoamyl chloride, 85, 138 Isobutane, 43p, 55, 59, 76 Isobutanol, 127p, 135, 137p, 185 Isobutene, 76, 82pr, 111, 306 Isobutyl alcohol, see Isobutanol Isobutylene, see Isobutene Isobutylene glycol, 73
Isobutylene oxide, 169 Isobutyl halides, 137, 530 Isobutyraldehyde, 161, 169p Isobutyric acid, 176, 185 Isocrotonic acid, 285 Isocyanates, see Alkyl isocyanates Isocyanide reaction, 118, 315 Isocyanides, see Alkyl isocyanides Isodiazoates, 592-593 Isodiazohydroxides, 592-593 Isodurene, 589 Isoeugenol, 638 Isohydrobenzoin, 707 Isoindigotin, 801
Isomerisation, 55, 75, 76, 83, 87, 98, 111, 169, 250, 282–283, 297, 307–308, 337, 424, 428, 430, 480, 532, 711 see also Racemisation and Rearrangements Isomerism, 7 chain, 43, 399 dynamic, 217 functional group, 399 position, 399 rotational, 53, 405, 488 structural, 7d, 399 see also Geometrical, Optical and Stereo-isomerism Isomers (benzene), separation of, 516 Isomesityl oxide, 277 Isonicotinic acid, 761 Isonitriles, see Alkyl isocyanides Isonitrosoacetone, see Oximinoacetone Isonitroso-compounds, see Oximino-compounds Iso-octane, 57, 76p Iso-oxazoles, 756 Iso-oxazolones, 226 Isopalmitic acid, 186 Isopentane, 44, 59, 85, 138 Isopentanol, 85, 135, 138, 144 Isopentene, 85 Isoprene, 84p-85r, 474 Isopropanol, 60, 126, 137p, 531, 631, 664 Isopropyl alcohol, see Isopropanol Isopropylbenzene, 535, 537, 619 Isopropyl halides, 67, 68, 107, 111, 256, Isopropylidenecyanoacetic ester, 281 Isopropylideneglucose, 440 Isopropylidene halides, 116 Isoquinoline, 765-767 Isorropesis, 221 Isosafrole, 639 Isostilbene, 705 Isosuccinic, 377

Isothiocyanic acid, 336
Isothiouronium salts, 332, 390
Isotopic indicators, 35-37, 72, 147, 151, 170, 188, 191, 209, 261, 273, 290, 328, 366, 415, 478, 482, 516, 527, 547, 575, 576, 597, 604, 615, 641, 707, 751
see also Deuterium compounds
Isourea, 384
Isovaleric acid, 186
Isovanillin, 659
Itaconic acid, 422, 430
Itaconic anhydride, 422, 430

Jacobsen rearrangement, 613 Japp-Klingermann reaction, 589

### K

Kekulé benzene formula, 504-507 Kephalins, 263 Kerosene, 57, 59 refining of, 58 Ketals, 163, 355 cyclic, 249 Keten, 287-289 Ketimines, 316, 355 Keto-form, 217 €-Ketoheptoic acid, 234 Ketoketens, 287 Ketones, aliphatic, 64, 132, 145np-160r, 162-164r, 169-172, 229, 230, 234, 281, 304, 305, 311, 327, 340, 355-356, 362, 364, 376, 381, 394, 479 unsaturated, 277-279, 359-360 Ketones, aliphatic-aromatic, 535, 660-663, 667, 767 Ketones, aromatic, 536, 664-666 Ketones, cyclic, 380, 397, 468-471, 493-497, 724, 725 see also individuals α-Ketonic acids, 243-245, 253 β-Ketonic acids, 225, 230, 234, 381 y-Ketonic acid, 245 δ-Ketonic acids, etc., 234 Ketoses, conversion into aldoses, 449-450 α-Keto-γ-valerolactone-γ-carboxylic acid, 244 Ketoximes, aliphatic, 152, 317 Ketoximes, aromatic, stereochemistry of, 667-668 Ketyls, metallic, 665 Kiliani reaction, 447 Kinetically controlled product, 32d, 87, 473, 611, 717 Kinetic isotope effect, 36 see also Isotopic indicators Kjeldahl method, 3 Knocking, 57 Knoevenagel reaction, 280d, 424, 479, Knorr synthesis, 747 Kolbe electrolytic synthesis, 52d, 80, 175 Kolbe synthesis, 681 Kolbe-Schmitt synthesis, 681, 748 Körner's absolute method, 511

Labile form, 217d, 428, 593 Lactams, 328, 389, 749, 752 Lactase, 462 Lactic acid, 237, 284, 393, 398pr, 406-407. 417, 784 Lactides, 395 Lactim, 752 Lactols, 245, 451 Lactones, 244, 245, 395-397, 447, 723, 736, large-ring, 397 Lactose, 398, 462 Ladenburg benzene formula, 504 Lævulic acid, 245pr, 441 Lævulinic acid, see Lævulic acid Lævulose, see Fructose Lakes, 779 Large ring compounds, 397, 492-497 Lassaigne method, 2 Laurent's acid, 719 Lauric acid, 186, 259 Lauryl alcohol, 138 Lauth's Violet, 799 Lead organo-compounds, 365 Lead susceptibility, 58 Lead tetra-acetate (use of), 73, 148, 249, 374, 449, 475, 668, 723 Lecithins, 263 Lederer-Manasse reaction, 623, 660 Lepidine, 797 Leucaniline, 787 Leuckart reaction, 156d, 311 Leuco-compounds, 780, 786 Lewisite, 345 Liebermann's nitroso-reaction, 317, 572, 619 Light oil, 499 Light petrol, 57 Lignin, 464 Lignoceric acid, 186 Ligroin, 57 Linalool, 273 Linoleic acid, 259, 263, 286 Linolenic acid, 259, 263, 286 Lipp synthesis, 750 Lithium aluminium hydride (use of), 110, 125–126, 149, 178, 193, 199, 205, 212, 214, 219, 225, 240, 250, 253, 276, 282, 296, 324, 338, 340, 350, 358, 396, 407, 563, 600, 610, 615, 644, 652, 690, Lithium aluminium hydride-aluminium chloride (use of), 278, 653, 661, 665, 701, 702 Lithium borohydride (use of), 126, 179 Lithium hydride (use of), 148, 199 Lithium organo-compounds, 98, 245, 266, 326, 359, 361p-362r, 539, 658, 759 Lithium tri-t-butoxyaluminium hydride (use of), 148, 199 Lithol Fast Yellow GG, 781 Lobry de Bruyn-van Ekenstein rearrangement, 257, 450 Localised bonds, 25 Lone pair electrons, 28 Lossen rearrangement, 207 Lubricating oil, 57, 58 Lutidines, 761

Lysol, 631 Lyxitol, 259 Lyxose, 259, 437, 456

M

M-effect, 17, 20-21, 518-521 Macromolecules, 77 Magenta, see Rosaniline Magnesium organo-compounds, see Grignard reagents Magnetic quantum number, 10 Makarov-Zemlianskii-Prokin method, 645 Malachite Green, 776, 786p Maleic acid, 90, 418, 423p-424r, 425, 426, 428, 473, 671 Maleic anhydride, 423-424pr, 426, 472-473, 634, 729 Maleic-imide, 749 Malic acid, 372, 413, 418pr Malonamide, 373 Malonic acid, 232, 280, 372p-373r, 407, 424, 651 alkyl derivatives of, 211, 232-233, 377 416 Malonic ester, see Ethyl malonate Malt, 134 Maltase, 135, 462 Maltose, 134, 135, **461**, 463 Mandelic acid, 689 Mandelonitrile, 649, 689 Mannich reaction, 306d, 315, 662 Mannitol, 259, 440, 461 Mannoheptulose; 455 Mannonic acid, 446 Mannose, 259, 438, 441pr, 446, 449, 450, Margaric acid, 186 Markownikoff's rule, 67-68d, 70, 72, 92, 95, 211, 267, 275, 282 Marsh gas, 38 Martius Yellow, 781 Mauve (Mauveine), 798 Mechanism, 31-32, 106, 187-189 Meerwein-Ponndorf-Verley reduction, 150d, 271, 276 Meerwein reaction, 588, 705 Melamine, 300 formaldehyde plastics, 79, 300 Meldola's Blue, 799 Melibiose, 462 Melissic acid, 186 Melissyl alcohol, see Myristyl alcohol Mellitic acid, 696 Melting point, of isomers, 53 oscillation rule of, 176 Mendius reaction, 296 Mercaptals, 154, 161, 334, 449 Mercaptans, see Thioalcohols Mercaptides, 333pr, 334, 336 Mercaptols, 154, 334p, 338 Mercerised cotton, 465 Mercuration, 365, 481, 539-540d, 548, 568, 588, 615, 622, 625, 693, 742, 744, 745, 748, 758 Mercurochrome 220, 794 Mercury organo-compounds, 343, 361, 365pr see also Mercuration

Nethylene iodide, 116p, 378, 469, 475, 660,

Mesaconic acid, 422, 430pr Mesaconic anhydride, see Citraconic anhydride Mesitoic acid, 179, 189, 687 Mesitylacetic acid, 687 Mesitylene, 512p, 537, 541, 589 Mesitylenic acid, 512 Mesityl oxide, 157, 277, 306 Meso-compounds, 409d Mesohydric tautomerism, 597 Meso-ionic structure, 756
Meso-meric effect, 17, 20–21, 518–521
Mesomeric state, 20–21
Mesomerism, see Resonance Mesotartaric acid, 421p, 424, 542 Mesoxalic acid, 257, 373 Metaformaldehyde, see Trioxymethylene Metalation, 539-541 Metaldehyde, 167 Metamerism, 144d, 399 Metanilic acid, 611, 616 Metastyrene, 537 Methacrylic acid, 284 Methane, 38p-41r, 97, 114, 120, 133, 164, 292, 350, 536 Methanol, 44, 59, 94, 114, 126, 133p-134r. 143, 164, 179, 188, 195, 274, 283, 320, 371, 397, 571, 584 p-Methoxybenzaldehyde, see Anisaldehyde p-Methoxybenzoic acid, see Anisic acid Methoxyl groups, estimation of, 637 Methylacetylene, 93, 95, 97p Methyl acrylate, 284 Methyl alcohol, see Methanol Methylallyl compounds, 272-273 Methylamine, 292, 312, 316, 319p, 325, 326, 387 Methylaminoazobenzene, 598 Methylammonium chloride, 314 Methylaniline, 571p-573r, 598 Methylated spirit, 135 Methylation, 165, 195, 319, 326, 352, 795 see also Diazomethane, Methyl Methyl iodide and Methyl sulphate Methylation, exhaustive, see Hofmann exhaustive methylation o-Methylbenzophenone, 666 2-Methylbenzoxazole. 629 Methylbenzyl chloride, 549 Methyl bromide, 43 2-Methylbutan-1-ol, 138 3-Methylbutan-2-ol, 138 2-Methylbut-2-ene, 130 Methyl chloride, 114p, 182, 326 α-Methylcinnamic acid, 651 Methyl cyanide, 182, 294, 297, 355, 663 Methyl*cyclo*hexanol, 491 Methylcyclopentane, 478 5-Methylcytosine, 769 10-Methyldecal-2-one, 721 Methyldiazoaminobenzene, 598 o-Methyldiphenyl, 725 Methylene Blue, 799 Methylene bromide, 116p, 727 Methylene chloride, 116p Methylenecyclobutane, 478 Methylene, 80, 475, 483, 757 Methyleneglycine, 325 Methylene glycol, 165, 169

N-Methylformanilide, 573p, 658, 731 β-Methylglutaconic acid, 431 Methyl glycollate, 248, 397 Methylglyoxal, 155, 239p, 308, 505 3-Methylheptane, 55 Methylhydrazine, 772 N-Methylhydrazobenzene, 603 Methyl hydrogen succinate, 192 O-Methylhydroxylamine, 357 Methylimino groups, estimation of, 314 Methyl iodide, 39, 42, 114p, 195, 325, 350, 351, 359, 497, 535, 571, 572, 621, 736, 748, 759, 762, 765 Methyl isopropyl ketone, 163, 170p, 230 359 Methylisourea, 388 Methyl methacrylate, 284 Methylnaphthalenes, 715 2-Methyl-2-nitropropane-1: 3-diol, 306 2-Methyl-1-nitroprop-1-ene, 303 Methylol compounds, 166 Methyl Orange, 782 14-Methylpentadecanoic acid, 186 Methylpentanes, 55, 76 3-Methylpentan-2-one, 229 Methylphenanthrenes, 736-737 as-Methylphenylhydrazine, 572 Methyl-n-propylmethanol, 132 N-Methylpyridinium iodide, 759 Methylpyrroles, 748 Methyl salicylate, 683 Methyl sulphate, 114, 141, 195pr, 349, 352, 388, 572, 638, 659, 685, 765 13-Methyltetradecanoic acid, 186 Methyltetrahydrobenzaldehyde, 474 Methyltridecane-1: 11-dicarboxylic acid, 497 Methylurea, 387 α-Methyl-n-valeric acid, 229 Methylvinylcarbinyl halides, 272 Methyl vinyl ether, 274-275 Methyl vinyl ketone, 277 Metol, 629 Michael condensation, 279d, 306, 423, 432, Michler's ketone, 665, 785, 788 Middle oil, 499, 618, 708 Mineral oil, see Petroleum Mirror image forms, 403, 406 superimposability of, 403, 406, 408, 409 Mixed double bond, see Co-ordinate valency Mobile electrons, 26 Molasses, 134, 137, 460 Molecular complexes, 557, 628, 633, 671 Molecular diagram, 89 Molecular formulæ, 4d, 7 M.O. method, 22-31, 88-89, 97, 183-184, 266, 270-271, 302, 329, 509, 517, 521, 528, 559, 567, 571, 714, 729, 737, 743, 750, 754, 760, 777-778 Molecular overcrowding, 688, 700, 739 Molecular weight determination, 4-5 of organic acids, 4 of organic bases, 5 Molozonides, 74 Monastral Fast Blue BS, 809

Monobromoacetone, see Bromoacetone

Monochlorodimethyl ether, 354, 535 Monomer, 77 Monoperphthalic acid, 74, 82, 695p, 759 Monosaccharides, 436-460 synthesis of, 454-455 Mordants, 779 Morpholine, 663 Mucic acid, 741, 747 Muconic acid, 431, 542 Multiple bonds, 8 Muscone, 496 Musk, artificial, see Nitro-musks Mustard gas, 336 Mustard oil, see Allyl isothiocyanate Mustard oils, see Alkyl isothiocyanates Mutarotation, 451 Myricyl alcohol, 138 Myristic acid, 186, 259 Myristyl alcohol, 138

n-Compounds, 45 N-Compounds, 304 Naphtha, solvent, 500 Naphthalene, 500, 529, 708p-716r, 728, 736 derivatives of, 716-723 orientation in, 711n, 713-717 Naphthalenecarboxylic acids, 721-722 Naphthalene dichloride, 712 Naphthalene diozonide, 713 Naphthalenesulphonic acids, 716-717 Naphthalene tetrachloride, 712 Naphthalic acid, 721-722 Naphthalic anhydride, 722 α- or 1: 4-Naphthaquinone, 601, 713, 720, 722pr, 728 β- or 1: 2-Naphthaquinone, 718, 722pr amphi or 2: 6-Naphthaquinone, 723 Naphthenes, 468 Naphthionic acid, 718, 783 Naphthoic acid, 717, 721 α- or 1-Naphthol, 601, 709, 717, 719p-720r, 782 β- or 2-Naphthol, 590, 718, 719p, 720-721r, 782, 783, 784 Naphthol Blue Black B, 783 Naphtholsulphonic acids, 720, 721, 781. 784 Naphthol Yellow S, 781 Naphthsultam, 719 Naphthsultone, 720 α- or 1-Naphthylamine, 717p-718r, 719, 783, 784 β- or 2-Naphthylamine, 59, 716, 718pr Naphthylaminesulphonic acids, 718-719, 783 Natural gas, 56d, 59-60, 164, 166, 169, Negative groups, 207, 281d, 625, 656, 701 Neighbouring group participation, 102d, 250, 415-416 Neo-compounds, 45 Neopentane, 44, 59, 363 Neopentyl alcohol, 102, 130, 138 Neopentyl chloride, 102, 111 Neoprene, 95 Neral, 277

Nerol, 273 Nerolins, 721 Nervonic acid, 286 Neurine, 321 Neutron, 10 Nevile-Winther's acid, 720 Newman projection formulæ, 404, 430 Nicotinic acid, 761 Nietzki rule, 772, 778 Nitracidium ion, 553–554 Nitramines, 317 Nitration, 54d, 302-303, 554, 569, 626, 679, 758 abnormal, 560, 569, 573, 610, 616, 683, 731, 748 Nitriles, see Alkyl cyanides Nitroacetanilides, 565, 570 Nitro-acetates, 72 Nitroalcohols, 71 Nitroamide, 388 m-Nitroaniline, 570pr, 784 o-Nitroaniline, 556, 570p-571r p-Nitroaniline, 483, 555, 570p-571r, 688, 775, 783, 784 Nitroaniline Orange, 784 o-Nitsoanisole, 531, 556, 639 Nitroanthracenes, 731 Nitroanthraquinones, 733 m-Nitrobenzaldehyde, 565, 652-653 o-Nitrobenzaldehyde, 652p-653r, 735, 801 p-Nitrobenzaldehyde, 653p, 788 Nitrobenzene, 519, 523, 528, 531, 536, 540, **554**p, 559, 561, **562–563**, 565, 566, 599, 600, **602**, 607, 660, 763, 775, m-Nitrobenzenesulphonic acid, 607, 616 o-Nitrobenzenesulphonic acid, 606, 607, Nitrobenzoic acids, 679, 687, 753 Nitrocellulose, 79, 464 Nitrochloroform, see Chloropicrin o-Nitrocinnamic acid, 652, 691p, 801 p-Nitrocinnamic acid, 653, 691p Nitro-compounds, aliphatic, 54, 71, 301n, 302p-306r, 447 aromatic, 553p-563r, 586 p-Nitrodimethylaniline, 573 4-Nitrodiphenyl, 587, 698 Nitroethane, 303, 305, 306, 351 Nitroform, 117 Nitrogen atom, electronic configuration of, 28-29, 313 Nitroglycerine, 256 Nitroguanidine, 325, 389p Nitrolic acids, 305 Nitromethane, 302, 303, 305, 306, 447, 651 Nitro-musks, 558 Nitronaphthalenes, 716 Nitronic acids, 304, 306, 559 Nitro-nitrates, 71 Nitro-nitrites, 71 Nitro-nitroso compounds, 71 5-Nitro-2-nitrosotoluene, 680 Nitronium free radical, 71 Nitronium ion, 553-554 Nitroparaffins, see Nitro-compounds, aliphatic Nitrophenanthraquinones, 738 Nitrophenanthrenes, 738 m-Nitrophenol, 626-627

o-Nitrophenol, 525, 556, 570, 626p-627r p-Nitrophenol, 556, 570, 618, 622, 626p-627r, 640, 773 Nitrophenol ethers, 626 o-Nitrophenylacetic acid, 752 o-Nitrophenylacetylene, 802 o-Nitrophenylpropiolic acid, 801, 802 Nitrophthalic acids, 693, 709 Nitropropanes, 303p, 304 Nitropyridines, 758 Nitrosamines, see N-Nitroso-compounds Nitrosites, 307 Nitrosobenzene, 185, 522, 560p-561r, 562, 588, 656 Nitrosobenztoluidide, 592 Nitrosochlorides, 70, 307, 308 C-Nitroso-compounds, aliphatic, 225, 306aromatic, 560p-564, 573, 630, 653 N-Nitroso-compounds, 315, aliphatic, 317pr, 326 aromatic, 572, 577 p-Nitrosodimethylaniline, 573, 653, 800 o-Nitrosophenol, 630, 631 p-Nitrosophenol, 561, 630pr, 672 ω-Nitrostyrene, 651 m-Nitrotoluene, 558pr, 584 o-Nitrotoluene, 557p-558r, 652, 654, 679, 751 p-Nitrotoluene, 557p-558r, 653, 679 Nitrourea, 385, 388 No-bond resonance, see Hyperconjugation Nodal plane, 23 Nomenclature, 44-47, 814-815 see also individual homologous series and Functional groups n-Nonaldehyde, 169 Non-alternant hydrocarbons, 528d, 743, 750 Non-benzenoid aromatic compounds, 509-511 Non-localised bonds, 88-89 n-Nonoic acid, 186, 286 Norcarane, 483 Novocaine, 680 NMR spectra, 188, 218 Nucleophilic reagents, 33d, 106, 150, 524-526 Nucleus, 10 Numbering, rules of, 46, 47, 63, 502-503, 741, 753-754 see also individual homologous series and Functional groups Nylon, 79, 379

0

O-compounds, 304
Octadecan-1-ol, see Stearyl alcohol
Octafluoroadipic acid, 546
Octahydroanthracene, 731
n-Octaldehyde, 169
n-Octane, 500
Octane number, 57d
Octan-2-ol, 285
Octa-1: 3: 5-triene, 485-486
Octet, 11
Octoic acid, 186

Odd electron molecules, 11d, 32 see also Free radicals Oenanthal, see n-Heptaldehyde Oenanthylic acid, see n-Heptoic acid Oils, 259-262 analysis of, 261 essential, 273 hardening of, 262 Olefin oxides, 74, 250-252, 327 Olefins, 51, 57, 59, 60, 62-63n, 63p-79r, 80-82, 83, 111-112, 121, 130-131, 176, 200, 306-307, 309, 312, 318, 334, 335, 339, 475, 529, 533 Oleic acid, 259, 263, 283, 285r, 307, 396 Oleyl alcohol, 282 Open sextet, 101 Opianic acid, 695 Oppenauer oxidation, 146d Optical activity, 399-404, 700 Optical antipodes, 403 Optical inversion, see Walden inversion Optical isomerism, 399-407, 408-411. 476, 490, 700 Optical isomers, 403d, 408 Orange I, 782 Orange II, 782 Orbital quantum number, 10 Orbitals, 10 anti-bonding, 30 atomic, 22 bonding, 30 delocalised molecular, 88-89 localised molecular, 26 molecular, 24-25  $\pi_g$ , 31  $\pi_u$ , 31  $\sigma_g$ , 30  $\sigma_u$ , 30 Orcinol, 634 Order of naming of groups, 47, 814 Organic chemistry, 1, 2d Organic compounds, classification of, 8 Organo-metallic compounds, 51, 348-366, 480, 534, 585, 588 see also Mercuration and Metalation Orientation in benzene ring, 511-515 rules of, 514-515 Orthanilic acid, 615-616 Orthocarbonic acid, 381 Orthocarbonic esters, 381p, 388 Ortho-effect, 686-688 see also Steric effect Ortho-esters, 194p, 208, 355, 381 Orthoformic ester, see Ethyl orthoformate Ortho-para ratio, 523-524 Orton rearrangement, 575 Osazones, 236, 237, 238, 443-446, 449, 455 Oscillation rule, 176, 369 Oscillation theory, 221 Osmic esters, 72-73 Osmium tetroxide (use of), 72, 255, 421 Osones, 446 Osotriazoles, 444, 756 Oxalacetic acid, 243, 244, 372, 377pr Oxalacetic ester, 243, 244, 377pr, 422 Oxalic acid, 242, 244, 249, 370p-372r, 386, 421, 461, 795 Oxalyl chloride, 372p, 723, 732 Oxamic acid, 371 Oxamide, 371

Oxanthranol, 732 Ozonides, 74-75 Oxazoles, 755 Ozonolysis, 74-75d, 131, 148, 220, 236, Oxazolones, see Azlactones 239, 286, 376, 496, 505, 659, 713, 738 Oxidation acids, 178, 282, 285, 286, 370, 380, 420, alcohols. dihydric, 73, 148, 236, 239, 242, Paal-Knorr synthesis, 747 249, 286, 393, 396 Palmitic acid, 186, 259, 263, 283 monohydric, 132, 146-147, Palmityl alcohol, see Cetyl alcohol 164. 166, 170, 190, 213, 242, 256, 267, Para-aurin, 790 376, 378, 644, 656 polyhydric, 257, 441 aldehydes, 94, **155**, **160**, 179, 181, 185, Parabanic acid, 386 Parachor, 6 Paraconic acids, 281, 374, 714 186, 214, 275, 282 Paracyanogen, 298 alkylborons, 76, 127 Paracyclophanes, 494 arsenic compounds, 344 Paraffins, 38-44, 44-47n, 49p-56r, 58-59, amines, aliphatic, 303, 307, 316-317, 376, 757 60, 339, 351-352, 362, 372, 387 cyclisation of, 59, 500 aromatic, 214, 551, 555, 568, 573, 580, 599, 634, 669, 709, 718 molecular formulæ of, 5 Paraffin wax, 57, 120 heterocycles, 424, 749, 759, 761, 800 Paraformaldehyde, 165p, 352, 535 hydrocarbons, aliphatic, 55, 133, 164, Paraldehyde, 167 175, 303 Paramagnetic resonance, 366 aromatic, 424, 431, 501, 538, 542, Paramagnetism, 32 695, 699, 709, 713, 721, 725, 731, Paranthracene, 730 732, 738 Para-red, 784 cyclic, 481, 485 Pararosaniline, 786-788, 790 hydroxyacids, 243, 372, 394, 407 Partial ionic character, 15 hydroxyaldehydes, 236, 407, 632 Pauli exclusion principle, 10, 23 hydroxyketones, 239, 707 Pechmann reaction, 692 ketones, 155, 162-163 Pectins, 464 cyclic, 378, 397, 493, 496, 497 ketonic acids, 240 Pelargonic acid, see n-Nonoic acid Pentachloroethane, 120 methyl ketones, 155, 162-163, 171, 177, Pentachloroethylbenzene, 549 238, 282, 661, 690, 721 Pentadecane-1: 15-dicarboxylic acid, 496 nitroso-compounds, aliphatic, 308, 317 n-Pentadecanoic acid, 186 aromatic, 555, 561, 573 Pentadienyl anion, 525-526 olefins, 72-75, 81, 275, 678 Pentadienyl cation, 516, 522, 524 phenacyl bromide, 661 Pentadienyl radical, 526-527 phenols, 542, 621, 633, 634, 635, 668, 673, 719, 720, 722, 723 Pentaerythritol, 166 Pentahydric alcohols, 259 phosphorus compounds, 342 Pentamethylene bromide, 254, 320, 380, quinones, 671, 673, 722 478, 762p side-chains, 536, 538-539, 556, 558, 619, Pentamethylenediamine, 320p-321r, 358, 621, 644, 645-646, 652, 653, 654, 656, 757, 761 658, 660, 661, 675, 680, 761 sugars, 370, 437, 438, **440**, 442, 448, 449– 450, **459**, 461, 465 Pentamethylene glycol, 254 n-Pentane, 44, 59, 138, 474, 762 Pentane-2: 4-dione, see Acetylacetone sulphur compounds, 333, 334, 337, 338, Pentan-1-ol (n-Pentanol), 138 339, 390, 449, 551 Pentan-2-ol, 138 Pentan-3-ol, 138 see also specific oxidising agents. Autoxidation, Dehydrogenation t-Pentanol, 138, 170 and Ozonolysis Pentan-2-one, 132 Oxidation, indirect, 675 Oximes, 152pr, 225, 279, 303, 305, 307-Pentan-3-one, 151 Pentaphenylbismuth, 345 308, 310, 588, 666-668 Pentaphenylphosphorus, 343 see also Aldoximes and Ketoximes Pentasol, 138 Pentenes, 76 Oximinoacetanilide, 753 Oximinoacetone, 163p, 239 Pentenoic acid, 211 Oximinobutan-2-one, 240 Pentosans, 437 Oximino-compounds, 163, 308n Oxindole, 752 Oxirans, 250 Pentoses, aldo-, 437 keto, 438 Peracetic acid, 72, 75, 181, 185pr, 307, 542, Oxonium salts, 68, 141, 658, 662, 768, 790 599, 759 Oxo-process, 127d, 169 Perbenzoic acid, 74, 82, 335, 601, 678pr. Oxotropy, 221 Perchlorobenzene, 546 Oxygen atom, electronic configuration of, 28 - 29Perchlorodiethyl ether, 142 Oxynitration, 540, 628 Perchloroethane, see Hexachloroethane

INDEX 845

Perfluorobenzene, 546 4-Phenylbut-1-ene, 709 Perfluoroheptane, 120, 122 4-Phenylbut-3-enoic acid, 307, 709 α-Phenylcinnamic acid, 705 Perhydroanthracene, 731 Phenyl cyanide, 547, 678pr peri-compounds, 711 Periodic acid (use of), 73, 249, 459-460 Phenylene Blue, 795 Perkin reaction, 651d, 692 Phenylene Brown, 782 m-Phenylenediamine, 579p-580r, 782, 795 o-Phenylenediamine, 240, 578p-579r Permanent Red 2G, 784 Peroxide effect, 68-69, 92, 268 Peroxytrifluoroacetic acid, 74, 317, 555, p-Phenylenediamine, 578p-579r, 598, 672, 795, 798 α-Phenylethanol, see Phenylmethylmeth-Perspex, 79, 284 Petrol, see Gasoline anol Petrolatum, 57 2-Phenylethanol, 645 Phenylglyceric-o-carboxylic lactone, 722 Petroleum, 80, 82, 84, 115, 134, 137, 138, Phenylglycine, 802, 803 424, 481, 484 Phenylglycine-o-carboxylic acid, 802 composition of, 56-57 Phenylglyoxal, 661 cracking of, 58-59, 65, 501 Phenylglyoxylic acid, 661 distillation of, 57 refining of, 57-58 Phenylhydrazine, 594p-595r, 596, 601, 755 Phenylhydrazones, 152, 443-446, 454, 595, Petroleum ether, see Light petrol 601, 750 Pfitzinger reaction, 764 see also Osazones Phenacetin, 640 Phenacyl bromide, 661 Phenacyl chloride, 661 Phenylhydroxylamine, 560, 561p-562r, Phenacylidene bromide, 661 Phenyl-isocyanate, 300pr, 315, 328 Phenacylidene chloride, 689 Phenyl isocyanide, 118 Phenyl isothiocyanate, 567-568 Phenanthraquinol, 738 Phenanthraquinone, 579, 738p-739r Phenanthrene, 726, 727, 731, 734p-738r Phenyl-lithium, 539 Phenylmercury acetate, 540 Phenylmercury nitrate, 540 derivatives of, 738 orientation in, 737 Phenylmethylmethanol, 151, 192, 511p, 661 Phenanthrene-9-carboxylic acid, 735, 738 9:10-Phenanthrene dibromide, 738 Phenylnitromethane, 559-560 5-Phenylpentadienal, 651 Phenanthrenesulphonic acids, 738 5-Phenylpent-4-enoic acid, 307 Phenanthrols, 738 Phenazines, 578 Phenazone, 755 Phenylpropiolic acid, 691 β-Phenylpropionic acid, 689pr, 724 N-Phenylpyrrole, 747 Phenetidines, 639 Phenyl salicylate, 682, 683 Phenetole, 637 Phenobarbitone, 386 Phenylsodium, 483, 539 Phenyl styryl ketone, 650 Phenol, 576, 596, 609, 610, 615, 619p-631r, 639, 640, 655, 656, 671, 681, 682, 745, 791 Phenylsulphamic acid, 615 Phenylurea, 387 Phloroacetophenone, 663 -formaldehyde resins, 79, 624 Phloroglucinol, 541, 635p-636r, 663 Phenolic acids, 681-683 Phenolic aldehydes, 655-660 Phorone, 278 Phosgene, see Carbonyl chloride Phenolic ethers, 636, 637-642 Phosphatides, 263 Phenolic ketones, 622, 663-664 Phospholipids, see Phosphatides Phenolphthalein, 791-792 Phenols, 206, 531, 535, 589, 590, 601, 618p-636r, 652, 655-658 Phosphoranes, 64, 343 Phosphorus compounds, 64, 105, 341-343, 545 dihydric, 163, 632-635 monohydric, 618-632 Photohalogenation, 103 trihydric, 635-636, 663 Photosynthesis, 455 Phenolsulphonic acids, 590, 629p-630r, Phthalaldehyde, 695, 713 Phthalaldehydic acid, 695 632 Phthalamic acid, 695 Phenonium ion, 172d, 206, 708 Phthalic acid, 513, 676, 692p-693r, 694, 726, 730, 767, 807 Phenoquinone, 670 Phenothiazine, 576 Phthalic anhydride, 257, 412, 513, 676, 693pr, 733, 791, 792, 794, 807, 809 Phenylacetaldehyde, 646 Phenylacetamide, 577, 663 Phthalide, 693p-694r Phenylacetic acid, 645, 663, 689pr Phthalimide, 680, 694pr, 809 Phenylacetylene, 538 see also Gabriel's phthalimide syn-Phenylalanine, 323, 677 Phenylarsonic acid, 587 thesis Phthalobismethylamide, 695 Phenyl azide, 588 Phthalocyanines, 808 Phenylazo-1-naphthol, 601 Phthalonic acid, 695p, 720 Phenylazo-2-naphthol, 590 Phthalonitrile, 809 Phenylazo-compounds, 590

Phthalophenone, 791

Phenyl benzoate, 676

Phthaloyl chloride, 425, 694p-695r, 727, Prileschaiev reaction, 74 Principal quantum number, 10 Principle of microscopic reversibility, 32d, Phytin, 483 Phytol, 274 70, 188 Picolines, 761 Probability factor, 33 Picolinic acid, 761 Proflavine, 795 Pi-complex, 66, 70d, 75, 541, 682 Projection formulæ, 404 Propadiene, see Allene Propane, 42p-43r, 49, 55, 59, 119, 474 n-Propanol, 60, 82, 127, 136p-137r, 185, Pi-electron resonance, 21 Picramic acid, 628 Picramide, 589, 628p Picrates, 628, 731 Picric acid, 628pr, 683, 781 Propargyl alcohol, 137, 267, 274pr, 277 Picryl chloride, 557, 628 Pictet-Spengler reaction, 766 Propargylaldehyde, 277 Propargyllic acid, see Propiolic acid Pimelic acid, 379p, 496, 683 Propene, see Propylene Pinacol, 253 2-Propenylpyridine, 761 Pinacolic deamination, 171 β-Propiolactone, 396 Pinacolone, 151, 171-172, 253 Propiolic acid, 96, 286 Pinacol-pinacolone rearrangement, 171-Propionaldehyde, 152, 161, 169p, 476 172, 253, 665 Propionic acid, 43, 52, 175, 176, 185, 286, Pinacol reduction, 163, 253, 471 304, 651 Pinacone, see Pinacolone Propionin, 194 α-Pinene, 481 Propionylmethyl cyanide, 297 Piperazine, 320 Piperidine, 279, 280, 761p-763r Piperonal, 660 n-Propyl alcohol, see n-Propanol Propyl alcohols, 136-137 n-Propylamine, 316 Piperonylic acid, 685 Propylene, 63, 67, 68, 70, 72, 82p, 111, 116, 127, 131, 137, 143, 169, 176, 255, 270, Piperylene, 762 Pitch, 499, 618 275, 475, 619 Pivalic acid, see Trimethylacetic acid Propylene bromide, 64, 97, 115p, 268 Plane of symmetry, 409d Propylene glycol, 73, 239, 398 Propylene iodide, 116 Plasticisers, 80d, 194, 196, 197, 423, 432, Propylene oxide, 169 Plastics, 79d, 93, 265, 275, 277, 300, 430, 537, 696, 744, 753 Propyl halides, 42, 43, 63, 67, 68, 82, 111, 474, 530 Polar effects, 107 Propylidene halides, 64 Polarimeter, 400 Propyl propionate, 161 Polarisability, 17d, 20-21 self, 714, 729, 737 Propyne, 83, 95, 97 Protection of aldehydic group, 161, 277, Polarisation bonding, 557 Polarisation effects, 20 of amino-group, 539, 555, 558 of double bond, 64, 267, 282 Polarity of bonds, 15d Polyacetylenes, 486 of halogen atom, 254 Polyamides, 379 of hydroxyl group, **142**, 252, 258, 621, **627**, 637, 658 Proteins, 79, 322, 386 Polycondensation, 79d, 157, 249 Polyenes, 374 Polyesters, 374, 395, 396 Protocatechualdehyde, 659 Polyethylene glycols, 250 Protocatechuic acid, 684 Polyhalogen derivatives, 100n, 118p-120r Polyhydric alcohols, 247n, 258p-259r Proton, 10 Proton resonance, 218 Polymer, 77 Prototropy, 75, 83, 98, 221, 431, 638, 639 see also Tautomerism Polymerisation, 58, 59, 63, 77-80d, 81, 85, 95, 122, 160, 165, 167, 227, 249, 275, 277, 284, 286, 288, 289, 298, 299, 300, 338, 340, 346, 379, 479, 535, 537, 541 Polymers, classification of, 79 Proximity effect, 686-688 see also Steric effect Pschorr synthesis, 725, 735 Pseudo-acids, 304 Polymethylene glycols, 247n, 253p-254r Pseudo-mauveine, 798 Polymethylene halides, 100n, 115p, 116r, Pseudomerism, 221 254 Pseudo-nitroles, 305 Polymethylenes, see Cycloparaffins Psicose, 442, 450, 458 Polynuclear hydrocarbons, 697-739 Purdie method, 113 Polyoxymethylenes, 165 Purification, methods of, 2 Polysaccharides, 436d, 463-465 Purines, 387 Purpurin, 807 Push-pull mechanism, Polysulphones, 338 Polythene, 79, 81 Concerted see Polyvinyl chloride, 80 mechanism Putrescine, see Tetramethylenediamine Pomeranz-Fritsch reaction, 766-767 Ponceau 2R, 783 Pyranose sugars, 452-453, 458-460 Potassium organo-compounds, 361 Pyrans, 767 Prehnitenesulphonic acid, 613 Pyrazines, 769

Pyrazole, 327, 754-755 Pyrazole-3-carboxylic ester, 329 Pyrazolidine, 754 Pyrazoline, 327, 754 derivatives of, 283, 329, 475 Pyrazolones, 754, 755 Pyrene (fire extinguisher), 119 Pyridazines, 769 Pyridine, 202, 209, 756p-760r Pyridinecarboxylic acids, 761 Pyridine methiodide, 759 Pyridine-N-oxide, 759 Pyridinesulphonic acids, 758 Pyridiniumacetohydrazide chloride, 154, 209p Pyridinium compounds, 209, 759 Pyrimidines, 296, 769 Pyrogallol, 635, 664 Pyroligneous acid, 133, 181 Pyrolysis, 3, 58d, 243, 275, 287, 307, 423, 698, 701, 723, 725, 734, 741, 745, 765 Pyrones, 767 Pyronine G, 790 Pyroxylin, 464 Pyrrole, 746-750, 757 Pyrrole-2-aldehyde, 748 Pyrrolecarboxylic acids, 747, 748 Pyrrolidine, 320, 375, 742, 749 Pyrrolidone, 749 Pyrroline, 749 Pyruvaldehyde, see Methylglyoxal Pyruvic acid, 243p-244r, 417 Pyrylium salts, 658

### 0

Quantum mechanics, 22
Quantum numbers, 10
Quaternary ammonium compounds, 308n, 313p, 318-319r, 759, 762, 765
Quercitol, 483
Quinaldine, 764p, 797
Quinhydrone, 634, 670-671
Quinitol, 482
Quinizarin, 807
Quinoline, 763p-765r, 796-798
Quinoline, 763p-765r, 796-798
Quinoline Yellow, 796
Quinolinic acid, 761
Quinone, see o- and p-Benzoquinone
Quinones, 163, 668-673, 722-723, 732-734, 738
Quinonoid structure, 669, 773, 775
Quinoxaline, 238, 240, 707

R

R-acid, 721, 783
Racemic modification, 407d
resolution of, 411–412
Racemisation, 55, 102, 412–415, 700
Raffinose, 462
Raman spectra, 6, 53, 218, 293, 485, 508
Raney nickel, 38–39
Raschig process, 548
Rayon, 464, 465

Reactions, type of, 21 Reactivity and structure, 21, 517 Rearrangements, alcohols, 101, 102, 130, 137, 476 allylic, 272-273 Amadori, 444 ammonium cyanate-urea, 299, 384 Arndt-Eistert reaction, 327-328 aspirin, 683 Beckmann, 667d, 766 benzidine, 602-604, 750 benzilic acid, 707-708, 738, 744 cine-substitution, 547d, 807 Claisen, 640-642 Curtius, 209, 311, 383 Demjanov, 476, 477-478 diazoamino-aminoazo, 597, 598 diazomethane reactions, see Arndt-Eistert reaction diazonium hydroxide, 592 Favorsky, 482 Fischer-Hepp, 574 Fries, 622 glyceryl esters, 261 Hauser, 578 Hofmann degradation, 206 Hofmann-Martius, 574 Tacobsen, 613 Lobry de Bruyn-van Ekenstein, 257, 450 Lossen, 207, 311 molozonides, 74 neopentyl systems, 102, 111, 130 Orton, 575 phenolic ethers, 638 phenylhydroxylamine, 561 phenylsulphamic acid, 615 pinacolic deamination, 171 pinacol-pinacolone, 171-172, 253, 665 retropinacol, 131d Richter reaction, 548 Schmidt reaction, 156, 178 semidine, 602 1,2-Shifts, 101-102 see also individual rearrangements sulphonic acids, 611, 615, 629, 717, 719, 732 thiocyanates, 337, 388 Wagner, 131 Wallach, 599 Whitmore mechanism, 101d Wolff, 327-328 (unclassified) 387, 388, 389, 430, 479, 481, 501, 530, 601, 630, 631, 633, 661, 671, 673, 748 see also Isomerisation and Tautomerism Rectified spirit, 135 Reduction, acetylenes, 80, 91, 706 Acid anhydrides, 126, 148 cyclic, 374, 693 acid chlorides, 125, 126, 148, 199, 652, 695 acids, saturated, 50, 125-126, 178, 372, unsaturated, 282, 286, 373, 677, 689, 690, 691 alcohols, 49, 128, 644, 702, 725

Reactions, see under ndividual names

Reduction, cont .: Resonance, cont .: aldehydes, 49, 125-126, 150, 153, 650, aldehydes and ketones, 167, 519 653 allyl systems, 269-270, 272-273 unsaturated, 271, 276 amides, 204 alkyl halides, 49, 110 amidines, 208 amides, 149, 310 amines, aromatic, 566, 572 amidines, 209 aminoazobenzene, 775 amines, aromatic, 718 anthracene, 729 aryl halides, 548, 557, 616, 629, 697 benzene, 507-508 azo-compounds, 483, 578, 598, 601, 782 p-benzoquinone, 775 bimolecular, 243, 244, 253, 276, 278, 440, butadiene, 87 664, 690, 697 carbethoxy group, 191, 223 cyanides, 149, 292, 296, 310, 577 carbon dioxide, 17-19, 20, 29 diazo-compounds, 326, 329, 596 carboxylic acids, 183, 188 diazonium salts, 589, 594 cyanides, 292 esters, 125-126, 192, 225, 282, 285, 329, cyanogen, 298 690 cyanuric acid, 299 ethers, 142 cyclopentadiene, 480 halogeno-acids, 212, 214, 285 diazomethane, 328 heterocycles, 749, 759 diazonium cation, 592 hydrocarbons, aromatic, 481, 501, 711diazophenols, 601, 602 712, 731 diphenylene, 477 cyclic, 474 dyes, 773-778, 784, 804 hydroxyacids, 373, 395, 418, 683 free radicals, 703-704 hydroxyketones, 253, 707 furan, 743 imides, 375, 694 guanidine, 389 isocyanides, 297, 312 halides, aromatic, 519 ketones, 49, 125-126, 150, 153, 163, 253, hyperconjugation, 269-270 278, 359, 661, 664, 665, 701, 707 naphthalene, 710-711 cyclic, 468, 469 nitroanilines, 571, 688 unsaturated, 278 nitro-compounds, 301, 519 ketonic acids, 225, 244, 393, 417 m-nitrophenol, 627 lactones, 396, 447 nitroso-compounds, 522 mercaptols, 154 non-benzenoid aromatics, 510 nitrates, 196 nitrites, 301 phenanthrene, 737 phenol, 620 nitro-compounds, aliphatic, 303, 388 phenolic ethers, 518 aromatic, 483, 561, 563, 564-565, 599, 600, 602, 752 pyrazole, 754 pyridine, 759 nitronic acids, 305 pyridine oxide, 759 C-nitroso-compounds, 308, 561 γ-pyrone, 768 pyrrole, 750 N-nitroso-compounds, 572 olefins, 65, 76 quinhydrone, 670 oximes, 310 steric inhibition of, 19, 688, 704, 776 ozonides, 75 phenols, 720 sulphonic acids, 519 sydnones, 756 thiophen, 746 phenylhydrazones, 595 polyhalogen derivatives, 116, 117, 120, urea, 385 vinyl halides, 266 quinones, 634, 670, 722, 732, 733, 738 see also M.O. method sugars, 259, 440, 442, 449 Resonance energy, 18-19d Resonance hybrid, 17 sulphonyl chlorides, 610, 614 see also specific reducing reagents, Hydrogenation and Zinc dust Resonating structure, 17 Resorcinol, 590, 628, 633pr, 635, 63 distillation Reductive alkylation, 311, 572 Restricted rotation, 406, 688, 700 Reformatsky reaction, 363d, 422 Retropinacol rearrangement, 131 Reforming process, 59, 500 Refrachor, 218 Rhamnitol, 259 Rhamnohexitol, 259 Refractive index, 6 Rhamnohexose, 259, 436 Rhamnose, 259, 436, 438 Reichert-Meissl value, 261 Reissert synthesis, 751 Rhenium compounds (use of), 276 Reimer-Teimann reaction, 655-656d, 659, 681, 721, 748 Rhodamine B, 794 Rhodamine 6G, 794 Replacement reaction, 40 Ribitol, 259 Resolution, 411-412 Ribose, 259, 437, 456 Resonance, 17-21, 25, 27, 29-30 Ribulose, 438, 455 Ricinoleic acid, 186, 285, 380 acetylene, 96 acid azides, 209 Ring contraction, 477, 482 acids, 183, 188 Ring expansion, 478, 479, 719

Ring fission, 474, 476, 542, 761-762
Rochelle salt, 421
Rosaniline, 787-788, 790
Rosenmund reduction, 148d, 647
Rosolic acid, see Aurin
Rotational isomers, 53, 405, 488
Ruff, degradation, 448
Ruggli principle, see High dilution principle
Ruthenium tetroxide (use of), 73, 147

### S

s = symmetrical, 62 502 SE reactions, 33 S<sub>N</sub> reactions, 33, 106-110, 414-415 S<sub>N</sub>i reactions, 415 S<sub>N</sub> 1', 2' reactions, 272 Sabatier-Senderens reduction, 38 Saccharic acid, 400, 440, 457, 461 Saccharin, 681 Sachse-Mohr theory, 488, 491-492 Safranine T, 799 Safrole, 639, 660 Salicin, 454
Salicyl alcohol, see o-Hydroxybenzyl alcohol Salicylaldehyde, 655, 658pr, 692 Salicylic acid, 681-683 Saligenin, see o-Hydroxybenzyl alcohol Salol, see Phenyl salicylate Sandmeyer reaction, 585d, 654, 678, 758 Saponification, 191 Saponification value, 261 Sarcolactic acid, 398 Saturated compounds, 8d Saytzeff's rule, 111-112, 130 Schaeffer's acid, 720 Schaeffer's B-acid, 721 Schiff bases, see Anils Schiff test, 160d, 787 Schmidt reaction, 156d, 178, 311, 566 Schollkopf's acid, 719 Schotten-Baumann reaction, 676 Schweitzer's reagent, 464 Sebacic acid, 285, 380 Sedoheptulose, 455 Selenium (use of), 542, 710, 736 Selenium dioxide (use of), 72, 155, 238, 240, 373, 379, 538, 661 Semicarbazide, 153, 388 Semicarbazones, 153 Semidine transformation, 602 Semi-ionic bond, see Co-ordinate valency Seminine, 441 Semi-polar double bond, see Co-ordinate valency Sensitol Red, 798 Serial quantum number, 10 Shape of molecules, 27-29 1,2-Shifts, 56, 101-102 see also individual rearrangements Sigma complex, 517 Silanols, 346 Silicon compounds, 345-347 Silicones, 79, 347 Skew form, 405 Skraup syntheses, 763, 808

Soaps, 262

Sodamide (use of), 90, 98, 164, 194, 205, 224, 230, 241, 297, 361, 369, 576, 758, 802, 803 Sodium bismuthate (use of), 73, 449 Sodium borohydride (use of), 126, 197, 440, 653 Sodium hydride (use of), 125, 228, 648 Sodium organo-compounds, 51, 96, 97, 98, 175, 361pr, 534, 539 Sodium triethoxyaluminium hydride (use of), 648 Solubility of compounds, 53 Soluble Blue, 788 Solutiser process, 58 Solvation, 109 Solvent effects, 109-110 Solvolysis, 108d Sommelet reaction, 149, 647 Sorbitol, 259, 440, 442, 461 Sorbose, 442, 455, 458 Sörensen titration, 325 Space formulæ, 401-402 Spermine, 321 Spin quantum number, 10 Spirans, 257, 410 Stability of compounds, 488 see also Resonance energy Staggered form, 404, 405 Starch, 134, 137, 439, 440, 461, 463 Stearic acid, 125, 186, 259, 263, 286 y-Steorolactone, 396 Stearyl alcohol, 125, 138 Stephen reaction, 148d, 295, 648 Stepping down a series, 105, 131, 177, 206–207, 209, 283, 376, 395, 448–449
Stepping up a series, 97, 98, 177, 193, 258, 327, 354, 368, 447–448 Stereochemistry, 399-420, 425-430 of addition reactions, 72, 417 of substitution reactions, 102, 106-110 of elimination reactions, 409 Stereoisomerism, 8, 14, 399 aldoximes and ketoximes, 433, 666-668 allenes, 432 arsenic compounds, 434 diazo-compounds, 592-594 diphenyl compounds, 700 fumaric and maleic acids, 425-430 hydrobenzoins, 707 lactic acids, 407 nitrogen compounds, 156, 410, 432-433 phosphorus compounds, 434 spirans, 410, 433 sugars, 456-458 sulphur compounds, 434 tartaric acids, 418-419 Steric acceleration, 108d Steric effect, 19, 107-108, 112, 149, 150, 153, 156, 189, 222, 229, 273, 313, 359, 364, 521, 523, 524, 648, 654, 661, 665, 686-688, 700, 704, 721, 732, 776 Steric factor, 33, 107-108 Steric hindrance, 107-108, 686-688 see also Ortho-, Proximity and the Steric effect Steric inhibition of resonance, 19, 688, 776 Steric repulsion, 108 Steric retardation, 108d Steric strain, 108, 489

Stilbene, 705-706, 734

Stilbene dyes, 784 Sweetening (of gasoline), 58 Stobble condensation, 736 Sydnones, 756 Strainless rings, 488, 496 sym = symmetrical, 62, 502 Strecker reaction, 339 Symmetry, 403 elements of, 409-411 Structural formulæ, 7-8d, 13 writing of, 41, 42, 56 Syn-forms, see anti- and syn-forms Structure, 6 Synthesis, 6 of atom, 10-11 complete (absolute), 7 determination of, 6-7, 136 gas, 60, 133 Structure and reactivity, 21 Synthine process, 60 Styphnic acid, 633 Styrene, 500, 537-538 Suberic acid, 380p, 496 T Substitution, 40 aliphatic, 106-110 T-effect, 20-21 aromatic Tagatose, 442, 458 activated nucleophilic, 525 Talitol, 259 benzyne mechanism, 547 Talomucic acid, 457 electrophilic, 516 Talose, 259, 438, 457 free-radical, 526 Tartar emetic, 421, 779 nucleophilic, 524 Tartaric acids, 243, 259, 420p-421r. 423. transfer, 621 424, 425, 442, 461, 542, 755 Succinaldehyde, 239, 747 Tartronic acid, 257, 417pr Succinaldoxime, 239 Succinamic acid, 375 Taurine, 321 Tautomeric effect, 20-21 Succinamide, 375 Tautomeric systems, 220-221 Succinic acid, 80, 231, 281, 373p-374r, 379, amidine, 207, 220d, 300, 756 421, 496, 745 amido-imidol, 207, 220d, 298, 299, 375, Succinic anhydride, 374pr, 710, 714, 736 752, 758 Succinimide, 375pr, 747, 749 azo-hydrazone, 221d, 589 Succinosuccinic ester, 470 Succinoylation, 710 diazo-amino, 221d, 596 diazo-nitrosamine, 221d, 593 Succinyl chloride, 377 keto-enol, 220d, 221-224, 241, 351, 413, Sucrose, 245, 370, 398, 421, 442, 460 633, 636, 718 Sugars, 436n, 436-463 lactam-lactim, see amino-imidol classification of, 436 mesohydric, 597 Sulphanilamide, 569 nitrile-isonitrile, 293 Sulphanilic acid, 615p-616r, 782 nitro-acinitro, 220d, 304-305, 354, 560, Sulphate process, 464 627 Sulphenyl chlorides, 69-70, 394 nitroso-oximino, 220d, 307-308, 630, Sulphides, see Alkyl sulphides 633 Sulphinic acids, 338, 358p, 614p-615r, 681 ring-chain, 221, 237, 245, 377, 451 Sulphite process, 464 three carbon, 75, 220d, 274, 431, 638, Sulphobenzoic acids, 680 639 Sulpholene, 85 three nitrogen, see diazo-amino Sulphonal, 338 trans-annular, 732d, 758 Sulphonamides, 309-310, 326, 340p, 611p, triazene, see diazo-amino valence, 485-486 Sulphonation, 55d, 606-608, 615, 716-717, Tautomerism, 216-224, 281 718-719, 733, 758 solvent effect on, 217, 223 abnormal, 561, 565, 606, 614 theories of, 221-223 Sulphones, 85, 335, 338, 449, 608, 746 Teflon, 122 Sulphonic acids, aliphatic, 55, 279, 337, Terephthalic acid, 513, 696p 338p-340r Terpenes, 273-274, 481 aromatic, 590, 606p-614r, 624, 629, 630, Terylene, 696 Tetrabromofluorescein, see Eosin isolation of, 613 : 2: 2: 3-Tetrabromopropane, 83 Sulphonium salts, 335 Tetrachloroethane, see Acetylene tetra-Sulphonyl chlorides, 55, 337, 340, 390, 610 chloride Sulphoxides, 335, 338pr Tetrachloroethylene, 120, 121, 183 Sulphur atom, electronic configuration of, Tetrachloromethane, see Carbon chloride Sulphur compounds, aliphatic, 332-341 Tetracyanoethylene, 472 Sulphuryl chloride (use of), 55, 104, 155, Tetradecane-1: 14-dicarboxylic acid, 497 198, 201, 211, 339, 545, 549, 569, 606, Tetraethyl-lead, 365 624, 716, 731 Tetraethylmethylenediamine, 321 Tetrafluoroethylene, 122 Sultams, 719 Tetrahedral hybridisation, 25-26d, 96, Sultones, 720 Sun Yellow, 784 271, 404, 487 Swarts reaction, 121 Tetrahydric alcohols, 258

p-Toluenesulphonic esters, 121, 141, Tetrahydroanthracene, 731 Tetrahydrobenzaldehyde, 472 Tetrahydrobenzene, 483 Tetrahydrofuran, 348, 351, 379, 742p Tetrahydronaphthalene, 712 Tetrahydronaphthols, 720 Tetrahydronaphthylamines, 718 Tetrahydrophthalic acid, 473, 693 Tetraiodopyrrole, 748 Tetralin, see Tetrahydronaphthalene Tetralols, 720 α-Tetralone, 710, **712** Tetramethylene chlorohydrin, 742 Tetramethylenediamine, 320 Tetramethylene glycol, 254p, 300, 374 Tetraphenylhydrazine, 577 Tetraphenylmethane, 703 Tetrazoles, 756 Tetroses, 236, 437, 456 Tetroxalates, 372 Theory of alternating polarities, 515 Thermodynamically controlled product, 32d, 87, 473, 530, 611, 717 Thiazines, 799 Thiazoles, 756 Thiele acetylation, 670 Thiele benzene formula, 505 Thiele theory of Partial Valencies, 85-86 Thioacids, 340-341 Thioalcohols, 58, 225, 289, 332np-334r, 336, 339, 358 Thioaldehydes, 340 Thioamides, 663, 756 Thiocarbanilide, see s-Diphenylurea Thiocyanation, 337 Thiocyanic acid, 336 Thiocyanogen, 337 Thioethers, see Alkyl sulphides Thioformaldehyde, 337, 340 Thioindigo Red, 805 Thioketones, 340 Thiolesters, 148, 333 Thionaphthen, 746 Thionyl chloride (use of), 103, 198, 202, 294, 300, 377, 386, 415, 431, 676, 694 Thiophan, 746 Thiophen, 58, 239, 745p-746r Thiophenol, 609, 610, 615 Thiophthen, 746 Thiourea, 332, 386, 389p-390r Thorpe reaction, 471, 493 Three-centre reaction, 34d threo-3-Bromobutan-2-ol, 416 Threose, 456 Thymine, 769 Thymol, 631 Tiglic acid, 285 Tischenko reaction, 161d, 275 T.N.T., see 2:4:6-Trinitrotoluene Tolan, 706 o-Tolidine, 699 Tollens reagent, 160 Toluene, 500, 521, 523, 536pr, 545, 549, 550, 551, 557, 558, 559, 644, 645, 646, p-Toluenesulphinic acid, 615 o-Toluenesulphonamide, 681 p-Toluenesulphonamide, 612 Trimethylene cyanide, 378 Toluenesulphonic acids, 611-613

332, 336, 352, 414, 491, 637, 796 p-Toluenesulphonyl chloride, 294, 309 310, 414, 612 Toluic acids, 678 m-Toluidine, 571p, 598 o-Toluidine, 571p, 787 p-Toluidine, 558, 571p, 597, 786, 787 o-Tolunitrile, 675 p-Toluquinol, 673 Tolyl compounds, 545 Tolylene glycol, 707 p-Tolylhydrazine, 596 p-Tolylhydroxylamine, 673 Tolylmercuric chloride, 615p, 679 Tosylates, see p-Toluenesulphonic esters Tracers, see Isotopic indicators trans-Addition, 428-429, 475 trans-forms, see Geometrical isomerism Transesterification, 193, 197 Transfer substitution, 621 Transition state theory of reactions, 33-35, 108, 473, 517 Transmission effect, 16 Transoid form, 405 Triacetonamine, 163, 278 Triacetylmethane, 220 Triaminotriphenylcarbinol, 788 p-Triaminotriphenylmethane, 787 Triazene system, 597 Triazoles, 579, 756 2:4:6-Tribromoaniline, 568p, 569, 584, 616, 686 s-Tribromobenzene, 541, 584p 2:4:6-Tribromophenol, 624p, 626, 683 1:2:3-Tribromopropane, 258, 274, 423 Tricarballylic acid, 423 Trichloroacetaldehyde, see Chloral Trichloroacetic acid, 180, 183, 214pr Trichloroacetone, 117 Trichloroethanol, 168 Trichloroethylene, 119p, 213 Trichloromethane, see Chloroform 1:2:3-Trichloropropane, 255p, 258 Tridecanoic acid, 186 Triethylamine, 64, 309 s-Triethylbenzene, 541 Triethylin, 257 Trifluoroacetaldehyde, 214 Trifluoroacetic acid, 214, 550 Trifluoracetoacetic acid, 225 Trifluoroacetyl fluoride, 121 Trifluoromethylbenzene, 550 Trifluoromethyl iodide, 122 p-Trifluoromethyltoluidine, 214 Trigonal hybridisation, 26-27d, 96, 108, 271, 427 Trihalides, 116-118 Trihydric alcohols, see Glycerol Trihydroxyglutaric acid, 437, 442, 458 Trimesic acid, 286 Trimethylacetic acid, 171p, 180, 186, 210 Trimethylamine, 209, 313, 319p, 321, 325 Trimethylaminoacetohydrazide chloride, 154, 209p s-Trimethylbenzene, see Mesitylene Trimethylene bromide, 254, 268-269, 320, 360, 379, 468, 474 Trimethylene chlorohydrin, 211

Trimethylene glycol, 254 Trimethylhexahydrotriazine, 161 Trimethylphenylammonium chloride, 574 s-Trinitroaniline, 589 s-Trinitrobenzene, 556p, 627 Trinitrobenzoic acid, 556p, 635 2:4:6-Trinitrophenol, see Picric acid Trinitrostilbene, 559 2:4:6-Trinitrotoluene, 556, 558p, 559 Trinitrophenylmethane, 787 Trioses, 437, 456 Trioxan, 165 Trioxymethylene, 165 Triphenylacetic acid, 702 Triphenylamine, 577 s-Triphenylbenzene, 662 Triphenylcarbinol, 701-702 Triphenylcarbinol-o-carboxylic acid, 791 Triphenylene, 534, 697 Triphenylmethane, 361, 701pr, 702, 705, 787, 791 Triphenylmethane-o-carboxylic acid, 791 Triphenylmethyl bromide, 702 Triphenylmethyl chloride, 258, 702pr Triphenylmethyl free radical, 703-704 Triphenylmethylsodium, 109, 224, 230, 244, 361p, 702p, 704
Triphenyl phosphate, 620 Triphenylphosphinemethylene, 64, 343 Triphenyl phosphite, 105 Triple bond, 27, 89d, 91, 97 detection of, 82 Tris-azo compounds, 590 Trithians, 340 Trityl chloride, see Triphenylmethyl chloride Triuret, 386 Tröger's base, 433 Tropic acid, 689 Tropilidene, 484 Tropolone, 484, 510 Tropylium ion, 484, 511 Truxillic acid, 691 Truxinic acid, 691 Tschitschibabin's hydrocarbon, 704 Tschitschibabin reaction, 758 Tschugaev reaction, 131 Turkey Red, 808 Turkey-red oil, 285, 784 Tyrian Purple, 798, 805

### U

Ullmann diaryl synthesis, 697–698, 699
Ullmann reaction, 576, 577, 639
Undecanoic acid, 186
Undecan-2-one, 171
Undecylenic acid, 285
Unimolecular mechanism, 106
Unperturbed structure, 17
Unsaturated compounds, 8d, 82
unsym. = unsymmetrical, 62, 502
Uracil, 769
Uranine, 793
Urea, 1, 196, 203, 261, 298, 299, 300, 302, 383p–388r, 640, 809
—formaldehyde plastics, 79
Ureides, 386
cyclic, 386–387

Urethan, 383 Urethans, 207, 283, 383pr Uric acid, 387 Uronic acids, 440

### V

Valence state, 27 Valency bonds, 7d, 13 n-Valeric acid, 186, 233 Vanillin, 656, 659p-660r, 684 Vaseline, 57, 257 V.B. method, 24, 29, 31, 773-777 see also Resonance Veratraldehyde, 659, 685 Veratric acid, 685 Veratrole, 638 Veronal, see Barbitone vic = vicinal, 100, 502 Vinegar, 181 Vinyl acetate, 93p, 265 Vinylacetylene, 95, 277 Vinyl alcohol, 93, 265 Vinylamine, 321 Vinylation, 94d Vinyl bromide, 92-93, 247, 265p-266r 360, 362 Vinyl chloride, 81, 265p-266r, 360, 362 Vinyl cyanide, 93p, 265r, 284 Vinylogy, principle of, 287d, 431, 651 Vinyl radical, 81 Vinyon, 265 Viscose rayon (silk), 465 Vital force theory, 1 von Richter reaction, 548 Vorländer's rule, 515 Vulcanisation, 79, 341

### W

Wagner rearrangement, 131 Walden inversion, 34, 107, 171, 413-416, Wallach transformation, 599 Wave function, 22-25, 29-30 Wave-mechanics, 22 Wax, bees-, 138, 263 carnauba, 254, 263 chinese, 138 paraffin, 57 spermaceti, 138, 263 wool, 263 Waxes, 138, 263 Weerman degradation, 449 Weizmann process, 137 Westron, 119 Westrosol, 119 Whitmore mechanism, 101d Wijs' method, 261 Willgerodt reaction, 494, 663 Williamson synthesis, 141 Witt colour theory, 772 Wittig reaction, 60, 343 Woad, 800 Wohl degradation, 448 Wolffenstein-Böters reaction, 628 Wolff-Kishner reduction, 153d Wood-spirit, 133

Wool-grease, 138 Wort, 135, 181 Wurtz-Fittig reaction, 534 Wurtz reaction, 51-52d, 110, 705

X

X-ray analysis, 6, 53, 96, 161, 240, 299, 385, 389, 390, 402, 452, 480, 485, 495, 508, 557, 688, 729, 758, 780, 804
Xanthates, 129, 131, 341, 465
Xanth-hydrol, 790
Xanth-hydrol, 790
Xanthone, 768, 790
Xylenes, 505, 512, 536, 549, 609, 692, 695, 696
Xylenols, 618
m-Xylidine, 783

Xylitol, 259
Xylose, 259, 437, 456
Xylulose, 438
o-Xylylene bromide, 710
Xylylene chloride, 549
Xylylene-o-carboxylic acid, 725

Z

Zeisel method, 314d, 637
Zerewitinoff determination, 350
Zinc dust distillation, 535, 620, 665, 709, 727, 735, 747
Zinc organo-compounds, 39, 345, 361, 363p-364r
Zwitterion, 324
Zymase, 135



The ENGLISH LANGUAGE BOOK SOCIETY, co-operation with leading publishers, brings you essential textbooks at greatly reduced prices. Most of the titles at present are in the scientific and technical range, and a list of them will be found inside this book. In every case the original text has been used.

This book (dark red label) is for sale at a U.K. price of:

18s

Each title in the LOW-PRICED TEXTBOOK series carries its distinctive coloured label (blue, orange, green or dark red) according to the approved U.K. price, which is also marked on the back of the book.

Ask your bookseller to show you his stock of the E.L.B.S. series, and always remember to look for this label on the cover:

